This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

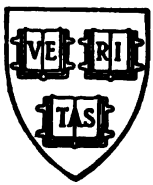
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

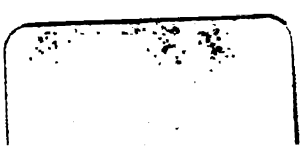
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Digitized by Google



HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY



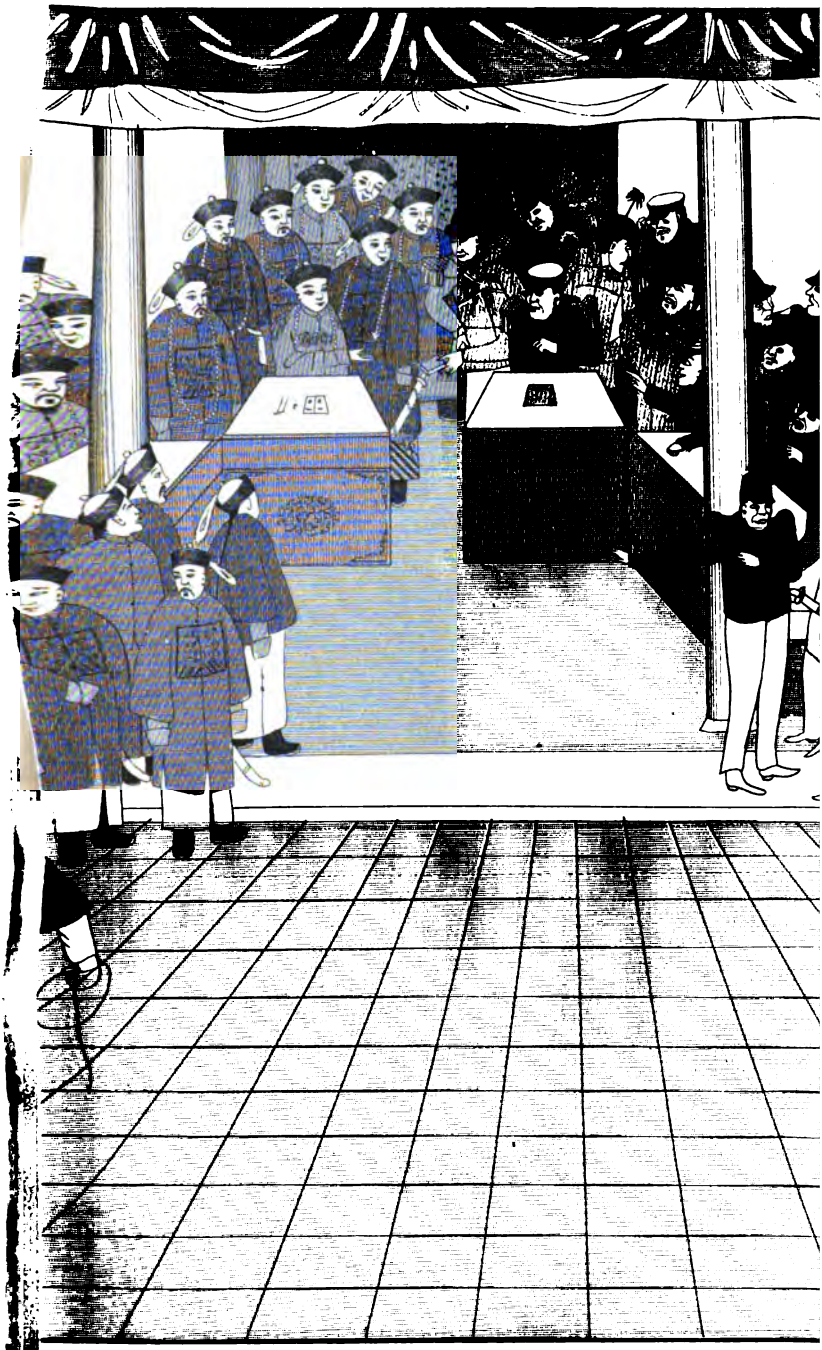
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



TREATY OF PEKING BY LORD ELGIN AND F

Digitized by Google

PRINCE KUNG.

FROM A CHINESE PAINTING.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

中國總論

THE MIDDLE KINGDOM

A SURVEY OF THE GEOGRAPHY, GOVERNMENT, LITERATURE, SOCIAL LIFE, ARTS, AND HISTORY

OF

THE CHINESE EMPIRE

AND

ITS INHABITANTS

BY

S. WELLS WILLIAMS, LL.D.

PROFESSOR OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE AT YALE COLLEGE; AUTHOR OF TONIC AND SYLLABIC DICTIONARIES OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE

REVISED EDITION, WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND A NEW MAP OF THE EMPIRE

VOLUME II.

NEW YORK
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS
1883

Digitized by Google

Copyright, 1882, by
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

34.961.

Trow's
Printing and Bookbinding Company
201–213 *East Twelfth Street*
New York

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF VOLUME II.

CHAPTER XV.

PAGE

INDUSTRIAL ARTS OF THE CHINESE, ... 1–64

Tenure of land in China, 2; Agricultural utensils, 3; Horse-shoeing, 4; Cultivation of rice, 5; Terraces and methods of irrigation, 7; Manner of using manure, 9; Hemp, the mulberry, sugar, and the tallow-tree, 11; Efforts in arboriculture, 12; Celebration of the annual ploughing ceremony, 13; Modes of catching and rearing fish, 15; Mechanical arts, metallurgy, 18; Glass and precious stones, 21; Ingredients and manufacture of porcelain, 23; Its decoration, 25; Chinese snuff-bottles discovered in Egyptian tombs, 27; The preparation of lacquered-ware, 30; Silk culture and manufacture in China, 32; Chinese skill in embroidery, 36; Growth and manufacture of cotton, 37; Leather, felt, etc., 38; Tea culture, 39; Method of curing and preparing, 42; Green and black teas, 44; Historical notice, 51; Constituents and effects of tea, 52; Preparation of cassia (*cinnamomum*) and camphor, 55; Ingenious methods of Chinese craftsmen, 56; The blacksmith and dish-mender, 57; Carving in wood and ivory, 59; Manufacture of cloisonné, matting, etc., 61. General aspect of Chinese industrial society, 62.

CHAPTER XVI.

SCIENCE AMONG THE CHINESE, ... 65–134

Attainments of the Chinese in the exact sciences: Arithmetic, 65; Astronomy, 68; Arrangement of the calendar, 69; Divisions of the zodiac, 71; Chinese observations of comets and eclipses, 73; Their notions concerning the "Action and Reaction of the Elements," 74; Astronomical myths: Story of the herdsman and weaver-girl, 76; Divisions of the day: arrangement of the almanac, 79; Geographical knowledge, 80; Measures of length, money, and weight, 81; System of banks and use of paper

Digitized by Google

PAGE

money, 85; Pawnshops, 86; Popular associations, or *hwui*, 87; The theory and practice of war, arms in use, 89; Introduction and employment of gunpowder, 90; Chinese policy in warfare, 92; Their regard for music, 94; Examples of Chinese tunes, 97; Musical instruments, 99; Dancing and posture-making, 104; Drawing and painting, 105; Samples of Chinese illustrative art, 107; Their symbolism, 111; Paintings on pith-paper and leaves, 113; Sculpture and architecture, 115; Notions on the internal structure of the human body, 119; Functions of the viscera and their connection with the *yin* and *yang*, 122; Surgical operations, 123; A Chinese doctor, 125; Drugs and medicines employed, 127; The common diseases of China, 129; Native treatises on medicine, 133.

CHAPTER XVII.

HISTORY AND CHRONOLOGY OF CHINA, ... 135–187

General doubts and ignorance concerning the subject, 136; The mythological period, 137; Chinese notions of cosmogony, 138; The god Pwanku, 139; Chu Hí's cosmogony, 141; The legendary period, Fuh-hí, 143; The eight monarchs, 145; Hwangtí and the sexagenary cycle, 146; The deluge of Yao, 147; The historical period: The Hia dynasty, 148; Yu the Great, his inscription on the rocks of Kau-lau shan, 149; Records of the Hia, 152; The Shang dynasty, 154; Chau-sin, 156; Rise of the house of Chau, 157; Credibility of these early annals, 159; The Tsin dynasties, Tsin Chí Hwangtí, 160; The dynasty of Han, 162; From the Han to the Sui, 165; The great Tang dynasty, 167; Taitsung and the Empress Wu, 169; The Five Dynasties, 172; The Sung dynasty, 173; The Mongol conquest, Kublai Khan, 175; The Mings, 177; The Manchus, or Tsing dynasty, 179; Kanghí, 180; Yungching and Kienlung, 181; Kiaking and Taukwang, 183; Tables of the monarchs and dynasties, 186.

CHAPTER XVIII.

RELIGION OF THE CHINESE, ... 188–274

Causes of the perpetuity of Chinese institutions, 188; Isolation of the people, 189; The slight influence upon them of foreign thought and customs, 191; Their religious beliefs, two negative features, 191; Three sects: the State religion, called Confucianism, 194; Objects and methods of State worship, 195;

Digitized by Google

PAGE

The Emperor as High Priest, 198; The *Ju kiao*, or Sect of Literati, 199; Religious functions of government officers, 202; Purity and coldness of this religious system, 205; Rationalism (*Tao kia*), Lau-tsz' its founder, 207; His classic, the *Tao-teh King*, 208; Visit of Confucius to the philosopher Lau-tsz', 212; Rites and mythology of the Taoists, 214; Their degeneracy into fetich worshippers, 215; Their organization, 217; The Sect of Fuh, or Buddhism, 218; Life of Buddha, 219; Influence of the creed among the people, 221; Checks to its power, 223; Its tenets and liturgy, 224; Opposition to this sect by the literati, 227; Perpetuated in monasteries and nunneries, 229; Similarity between the Buddhist and Roman Catholic rites, 231; Shamanism, its form in Tibet and Mongolia, 233; Buddhist temples, 235; Ancestral worship, its ancient origin, 236; Its influence upon the family and society, 237; Infanticide in China, its prevalence, 239; Comparison with Greece and Rome, 242; Customs and ceremonies attending a decease, 243; Funerals and burial-places, 245; *Fung-shui*, 246; Interment and mourning, 248; Family worship of ancestors, 250; Character of the rites, 252; Popular superstitions, 255; Dread of wandering ghosts, 257; Methods of divination, 260; Worship at graves and shrines, 262; Chinese benevolent institutions and the practice of charity, 263; General condition of religion among them, 266; Secret societies, 267; Mohammedanism in China, 268; Jews in Kaifung, 271; Their miserable condition, 273.

CHAPTER XIX.

CHRISTIAN MISSIONS AMONG THE CHINESE, ... 275–371

Arrival of the Nestorians in China, 275; The tablet of Sí-ngan, 277; Prester John and traces of Nestorian labors, 286; First epoch of Roman Catholic missions in Eastern Asia, 287; John of Montecorvino, *ibid.*; Other priests of the fourteenth century, 288; Second period: Xavier's attempt, 289; Landing of Ricci, 290; His life and character, 292; The Jesuits in Peking, 294; Faber, 295; Adam Schaal, 297; Verbiest, 298; Discussion concerning the rites, 299; The Pope and the Emperor Kanghí, 300; Quarrels between the missionaries, 302; Third period: The edict of Yungching expels the Catholics, 304; Statistics of their numbers, 307; Their methods: the baptism of dying infants, 311; Collisions between converts and magistrates, 312; Pagan and Christian superstitions: casting out devils, 314; Character of Catholic missionary work, 317; Protestantism in

Digitized by Google

PAGE

China: The arrival of Morrison in Canton, 318; His missionary and literary work, 320; Comparison with that of Ricci, 322; Protestant missions among the Chinese of the Archipelago, 323; Early efforts, tract distribution, 328; Gutzlaff's voyages along the coast, 329; Foundation of the Medical Missionary Society, 333; Success of hospital work among the natives, 338; Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge in China, 340; The Morrison Education Society, 341; Protestant mission work at Canton, 346; At Amoy and Fuhchan, 348; In Chehkiang province, 351; At Shanghai, 352; Toleration of Christianity in China obtained through Kíying, 355; Policy of the government toward missionaries, 359; Articles of toleration in the treaties of 1858, 360; Bible translation and the Term Question among missionaries, 363; Female missionaries, 364; Statistics of Protestant missions in China, 366; Notices of deceased missionaries, 368; Facilities and difficulties attending the work, 369.

CHAPTER XX

COMMERCE OF THE CHINESE, ... 372–405

Ancient notices of foreign trade, 373; The principal import, opium, 374; Peculiarities of its cultivation in India, *ibid.*; Its preparation and sale in Calcutta, 376; Early efforts at introduction into China, 377; Rise of the smuggling trade, 378; Manipulation of the drug in smoking, 380; The pipe and its use, 382; Effects of the practice, 383; Quantity and value of the import, 387; Coasting and inland navigation in China, 389; Detail of the principal exports from China, 391; Of the imports, 396; An example of pigeon-English, 402; Present management of the maritime customs, 403; Trade tables, 404.

CHAPTER XXI.

FOREIGN INTERCOURSE WITH CHINA, ... 406–462

Limited conception of the Chinese as to embassies, 406; Earliest mention of China or Cathay, 408; Acquaintance between Rome and Seres, or Sinæ, 409; Knowledge of China under the Greek Empire, 412; Narratives of Buddhist pilgrims, 413; Notices of Arab travellers, 414; Plano Carpini's mission from the Pope to Kuyuk Khan, 415; Rubruquis sent by Louis XI. to Mangu Khan, 418; Travels of Marco Polo and King Hayton of Armenia,

Digitized by Google

PAGE

420; Of the Moor, Ibn Batuta, 421; Of Friar Odoric, 422; Of Benedict Goës, 424; Of Ibn Wahab, 425; The Manchus confine foreign trade to Canton, 426; Character of early Portuguese traders, 427; Their settlement at Macao and embassies to Peking, 428; Relations of Spain with China, 431; The Dutch come to China, 433; They occupy Formosa, 434; Koxinga expels them from the island, 437; Van Hoorn's embassy to Peking, 438; Van Braam's mission to Kienlung, 439; France and China, 440; Russian embassies to the court at Peking, 441; Intercourse of the English with China, 443; Attempts of the East India Company to establish trade, 445; The Co-hong, 447; Treatment of Mr. Flint, 448; Anomalous position of foreigners in China during the eighteenth century, 450; Chinese action in sundry cases of homicide among foreigners, 451; Lord Macartney's embassy to Peking, 454; Attitude of the Chinese regarding Macao, 456; Regarding English and American "squabbles," 457; Embassy of Lord Amherst, 458; Close of the East India Company monopoly, 459; American trade with China, 460; Chinese terms for foreigners, 461.

CHAPTER XXII.

ORIGIN OF THE FIRST WAR WITH ENGLAND, ... 463–513

Features of the war with England, 463; Lord Napier appointed superintendent of British trade, 464; He goes to Canton, 467; His contest with the governor, 468; Chinese notions of supremacy, 472; Lord Napier retires from Canton, his sudden death, 474; Petition of the British merchants to the king, 476; Trade continued as before, 478; Sir B. G. Robinson the superintendent at Lintin, 479; Is succeeded by Captain Elliot, 481; Hü Nai-tsí proposes to legalize the opium trade, 482; Countermemorials to the Emperor, 483; Discussion of the matter among foreigners, 487; Canton officers enforce the prohibitory laws, 490; Elliot ordered to drive the opium ships from Lintin, 491; Arrival of Admiral Sir F. Maitland, 492; Smuggling increases, 493; A mob before the factories, 495; Captain Elliot's papers and actions regarding the opium traffic, 496; Commissioner Lin sent to Canton, 497; He demands a surrender of opium held by foreigners, 499; Imprisons them in the factories, 500; The opium given up and destroyed, 502; Homicide of Lin Wei-hí at Hongkong, 505; Motives and position of Governor Lin, 508; The war an opium war, 510; Debate in Parliament upon the question, 512.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIII.

PAGE

PROGRESS AND RESULTS OF THE FIRST WAR BETWEEN ENGLAND AND CHINA, ... 514–574

Arrival of the British fleet and commencement of hostilities, 514; Fall of Tinghai, 515; Lin recalled to Peking, 516; Kíshen sent to Canton, negotiates a treaty with Captain Elliot at the Bogue, 517; The negotiations fail, 519; Capture of the Canton River defences, 521; The city ransomed, 523; Amoy and Tinghai taken, 525; Fall of Chinhai and Ningpo, 527; The Emperor determines to resist, 529; Attempt to recapture Ningpo, 531; The British reduce the neighboring towns, 533; The fleet enters the Yangtsz', capture of Wusung, 535; Shanghai taken, 536; Proclamations issued by both parties respecting the war, 537; Storming of Chinkiang, 540; Terrible carnage among its Manchu inhabitants, 542; Singular contrast at Íching, 544; Kíying communicates with Sir H. Pottinger, 546; The envoy and commissioners meet, 547; A treaty drawn up, 549; Conversation on the opium question, 550; The Treaty of Nanking signed, 553; Massacre of shipwrecked crews on Formosa, 554; Losses and rewards on both sides after the war, 556; Settlement of a tariff and commercial relations, 557; Deaths of Howqua and John R. Morrison, 559; A supplementary treaty signed, 561; Renewal of opium vexations, 562; Treaties arranged with other foreign powers, 565; The ambassador and letter from the United States to China, 566; Caleb Cushing negotiates a treaty with Kíying, 567; Homicide by an American at Canton, and subsequent correspondence, 568; A French treaty concluded by M. de Lagrené at Whampoa, 571; Position of England and China after the war, 572.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE TAI-PING REBELLION, ... 575–624

Attitude of the ruling classes in China toward foreigners, 575; Governor Sir J. Davis and Commissioner Kíying, 577; Killing of six Englishmen at Canton, 578; Chinese notions of treaties, *ibid.*; Causes of the Tai-ping Rebellion, 581; Life of Hung Siu-tsuen, its leader, 582; His wonderful vision, 583; He interprets it by Christian ideas, 585; Early phases of the movement, 587; Commencement of the insurrection, 590; Political and religious tenets of the rebels, 592; Rapid advance to the Yangtsz' and occupation of Nanking, 596; The expedition against Pe-

Digitized by Google

PAGE

king, 597; Its failure, 599; Dissensions among the rebel *wangs*, or leaders, 602; Rebel sortie from Nanking, 605; Assistance of foreigners sought by imperialists, 607; Achievements of the Chung Wang, 608; Colonel Gordon assumes control of the "Ever-Victorious force," 609; His successful campaigns, 611; Environment of Suchau, 613; The city surrenders, 614; Execution of its wangs by Governor Lí, 615; Gordon's responsibility in the matter, 616; Further operations against the insurgents, 617; The Ever-Victorious force disbanded, 618; Fall of Nanking and dispersion of the rebels, 621; Subsequent efforts of the Shí and Kan wangs, 622; Disastrous character of the rebellion, 623.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE SECOND WAR BETWEEN GREAT BRITAIN AND CHINA, . . 625–689

Relations between the Cantonese and foreigners after the first war, 626; Collecting of customs duties at Shanghai entrusted to foreigners, 627; Common measures of defence against the rebels there, 629; The insurrection in Kwangtung, 630; Frightful destruction of life, 632; Governor Yeh's policy of seclusion, 633; Smuggling lorchas at Hongkong and Macao, 634; The lorcha Arrow affair, 635; The initial acts of the war, 638; Collision with Americans at the Barrier forts, 639; View of the war in England, 641; Arrival of Lord Elgin and Baron Gros in China, 643; Bombardment and capture of Canton, *ibid.*; Problem of governing the city, 646; The allies repair to the Pei ho, 649; Capture of the Taku forts, 651; Negotiations with Kweiliang and Hwashana at Tientsin, 652; Unexpected appearance of Kíying, 653; Difficulties of Lord Elgin's position at Tientsin, 654; The treaties signed and ratified, 656; Revision of the tariff undertaken at Shanghai, 657; Effect of treaty stipulations and foreign trade on the people of China, 658; Lord Elgin visits the Tai-ping rebels at Hankow, 659; Sentiment of officials and people in China regarding foreigners, 660; Coolie trade outrages, 663; The foreign ministers repair to Taku, 664; Repulse at the Taku forts, 666; The American minister conducted to Peking, 668; Discussion concerning the formalities of an audience, 669; He retires and ratifies the treaty at Pehtang, 670; Lord Elgin and Baron Gros sent back to China, 671; War resumed, the allies at Pehtang, 673; Capture of villages about Taku, 674; Fall of the Taku forts, 676; Lord Elgin declines to remain at Tientsin, 677; Interpreters Wade and Parkes sent to Tungchau, 678; Capture of Parkes and Loch, 680; Skirmish of

Digitized by Google

PAGE

Pa-lí-kiau, 682; Pillage of Yuen-ming Yuen, 683; Its destruction upon the return of the prisoners, 684; Entry into Peking and signing of the treaties, 686; Permanent settlement of foreign embassies at the capital, 688.

CHAPTER XXVI.

NARRATIVE OF RECENT EVENTS IN CHINA, ... 690–742

Palace conspiracy upon the death of Hienfung, 690; The regency established at Peking, 691; The Lay-Osborne flotilla, 693; Collapse of the scheme and dismissal of Lay, 695; The Burlingame mission to foreign countries, 696; Its treaty with the United States, 698; Outbreak at Tientsin, 700; Investigation into the riot, 703; Bitter feeling among foreigners, 705; Memorandum from the Tsung-lí Yamun on the missionary question, 707; Conclusion of the Kansuh insurrection, 709; Marriage of the Emperor Tungchí, 710; The foreign ministers demand an audience, 712; Reception of the ambassadors by Tungchí, 714; Stopping of the coolie trade, 715; Japanese descent upon Formosa, 717; English expedition to Yunnan, 719; Second mission, murder of Margary, 721; The Grosvenor mission of inquiry, 723; The Chifu Convention between Lí Hung-chang and Sir T. Wade, 725; Death of Tungchí and accession of Kwangsü, 727; The rebellion of Yakub Beg in Turkestan, 727; He overthrows the Dungani Confederation, 730; His forces conquered by Tso Tsung-tang, 731; Negotiations as to the cession of Kuldja, 732; The great famine of 1878, 734; Efforts of foreigners for its relief, 736; Chinese boys sent to America for education, 739; Grounds of hope for the future of China, 741.

Digitized by Google

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN VOLUME II.

	PAGE
Signing of the Treaty of Peking,	*Frontispiece*
Manner of Shoeing Horses,	4
Pedler's Barrow,	8
Group and Residence of Fishermen near Canton,	15
The Fishing Cormorant,	16
The Cobbler and his Movable Workshop,	38
Mode of Firing Tea,	43
Travelling Blacksmith and Equipment,	57
Itinerant Dish-mender,	58
Fancy Carved Work,	61
Fable of the Herdsman and Weaver-girl. (From a bowl.),	77
Representation of a Man Dreaming,	106
The Vengeance of Heaven upon the False Grave,	108
A would-be Assassin Followed by Spirits,	110
Symbols of Happiness and Old Age. (From a plaque.),	112
Caricature of an English Foraging Party,	116
Chinese Notions of the Internal Structure of the Human Body,	120
Pwanku Chiselling Out the Universe,	139
Gateway of the Yuen Dynasty, Kŭ-yung Kwan, Great Wall,	*to face* 176
Ancestral Hall and Mode of Worshipping the Tablets,	251
Buddhist Priests,	256
Consulting a Fortune-teller,	261
Head of Nestorian Tablet at Si-ngan,	276

Digitized by Google

PAGE

ROMAN CATHOLIC ALTAR NEAR SHANGHAI, ... 315
MANNER OF SMOKING OPIUM, ... 385
WALL OF CANTON CITY. (From Fisher.), ... *to face* 523
PLAN OF CANTON AND VICINITY, ... 645
PORTRAIT OF COMMISSIONER KÍYING, ... *to face* 654
PLAN OF THE PEI HO AND FORTS. (From Fisher.), ... 667
PORTRAIT OF PRINCE KUNG, ... *to face* 690
PORTRAIT OF WÁNSIANG, ... *to face* 715

MAP OF THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

(*In pocket at end of this volume.*)

Digitized by Google

THE

MIDDLE KINGDOM.

CHAPTER XV.

INDUSTRIAL ARTS OF THE CHINESE.

THE superiority of the Chinese over their immediate neighbors in the enjoyments of life and in the degree of security for which individuals can look under the protection of law have their bases chiefly in the industry of the people. Agriculture holds the first place among the branches of labor, and the honors paid to it by the annual ploughing ceremony are given from a deep sense of its importance to the public welfare; not alone to provide a regular supply of food and labor for the population, but also to meet the wants of government by moderate taxes, and long experience of the greater ease of governing an agricultural than a mercantile or warlike community. Notwithstanding the encouragement given to tillage, many tracts of land still lie waste, some of it the most fertile in the country; partly because the people have not the skill and capital to drain and render it productive, partly because they have not sufficient prospect of remuneration to encourage them to make the necessary outlay, and sometimes from the outrages of local banditti making it unsafe to live in secluded districts.

Landed property is held in clans or families as much as possible, and is not entailed, nor are overgrown estates frequent. The land is all held directly from the crown, no allodial property being acknowledged; if mesne lords existed in feudal times

Digitized by Google

they are now unknown. The conditions of common tenure are the payment of an annual tax, the fee for alienation, with a money composition for personal service to the government, a charge generally incorporated into the direct tax as a kind of scutage. The proprietors of land record their names in the district and take out a *hung ki*, or 'red deed,' which secures them in possession as long as the ground tax is paid. This sum varies according to the fertility, location, and use of the land, from $1.50 per acre for the best, down to twenty or thirty cents for unproductive or hilly fields. As the exactions for alienation or sale of lands are high, amounting to as much as one-third of the sale price sometimes, the people accept white deeds from each other as proofs of ownership and responsibility for taxes. As many as twenty or thirty such deeds of sale occasionally accompany the original *hung ki*, without which they are suspicious if not valueless. In order to keep the knowledge of the alienations of land in government offices, so that the taxes can be assured, it is customary to furnish a *ki-wei*, or 'deed-end,' containing a note of the terms of sale and amount of tax liable on the property. There is no other proof of ownership required; and the simplicity and efficiency of this mode of transfer offer a striking contrast to the cumbrous rules enforced in western kingdoms. Revised codes of land laws are issued by the provincial authorities when necessary, as was done in 1846 at Canton.[1]

The paternal estate and houses thereon descend to the eldest son, but his brothers can remain upon it with their families, and devise their portion *in perpetuo* to their children, or an amicable composition can be made; daughters never inherit, nor can an adopted son of another clan succeed. A mortgagee must enter into possession of the property and make himself responsible for the payment of the taxes; unless explicitly stated, the land can be redeemed any time within thirty years on payment of the original sum. Sections XC. to C. of the Code contain the laws relating to this subject, some of which bear a resemblance to those established among the Hebrews, and intended to secure a similar result of retaining the land in the same clan or tribe.

[1] T. T. Meadows in *N. C. Br. R. A. S. Transactions*, Hongkong, 1848, Vol. I.

Digitized by Google

The enclosure of recent alluvial deposits cannot be made without the cognizance of the authorities, but the terms are not onerous; for waste hillsides and poor spots ample time is allowed for a return of the capital expended in reclaiming them before assessment is made.

The Chinese are rather gardeners than farmers, if regard be had to the small size of their grounds. They are ignorant, too, of many of those operations whereby soils naturally unfruitful are made fertile and the natural fertility sustained at the cheapest rate by proper manuring and rotation of crops; but they make up for the disadvantages of poor implements by hard work. Their agricultural utensils are few and simple, and are probably now made similar to those used centuries ago. The broad hoe is used in soft land more than any other tool; the weight of its large wooden blade, which is edged with iron, adds impetus to the blow. Spades, rakes, and mattocks are employed in kitchen gardening, and the plough and harrow in rice cultivation. The plough is made of wood, except the iron-edged share, which lies flat and penetrates the soil about five inches. The whole implement is so simple and rude that one would think the inventor of it was a laborer, who, tired of the toil of spading, called the ox to his aid and tied his shovel to a rail;—fastening the animal at one end and guiding the other, he was so pleased with the relief that he never thought of improving it much further than to sharpen the spade to a coulter and bend the rail to a beam and handle. The harrow is a heavy stick armed with a single row of stout wooden teeth, and furnished with a framework to guide it; or a triangular machine, with rows of iron teeth, on which the driver rides to sink it in the ooze.

The buffalo is used in rice cultivation, and the ox and ass in dry ploughing; horses, mules, cows, and goats likewise render service to the farmer in various ways, and are often yoked in most ludicrous combinations. The team which Nieuhoff depicts of a man driving his wife and his ass yoked to the same plough is too bad for China often to present, though it has been so frequently repeated and used to point a comparison that one almost expects on landing to see half the women in the harness. It may be doubted, however, if this country can vie with some por-

Digitized by Google

tions of Germany and Holland in the matter of mongrel teams employed on farms.

The arrangements of farriers' shops in China are very similar to those of European countries, saving that the tools are of the simplest character. The manner of trussing up the poor beast

Manner of Shoeing Horses.

which is to be shod would seem, however, an unnecessary exercise of caution in the case of a majority of the over-worked horses and mules. The animal is fastened to a frame and lifted almost entirely off the ground, while a rope twisted about his nose and tightened at will with a turn-stick controls the least attempt at unruliness. Iron shoes are employed in the north; in the south, where horses are little used, they are usually left

Digitized by Google

unshod, though the fore feet are often covered with leather shoes which fit the hoof.

An early rain is necessary to the preparation of rice-fields, except where water can be turned upon them. The grain is first soaked, and when it begins to swell is sown very thickly in a small plat containing liquid manure. When about six inches high the shoots are planted into the fields, which, from being an unsightly marsh, are in a few days transformed to fields clothed with living green. Holding the seedlings in one hand, the laborer wades through the mud, at every step sticking into it five or six sprouts, which take root without further care; six men can transplant two acres a day, one or two of whom are engaged in supplying the others with shoots. The amount of grain required to sow a Chinese *mao* in this way is thirty-seven and one-half catties, or three hundred and thirty pounds—about two and one-half bushels to an English acre. The produce is on an average tenfold. Rent of land is usually paid according to the amount of the crop, the landlord paying the taxes and the tenant stocking the farm; leases are for three, four, or seven years; the terms vary according to the position and goodness of the soil.[1]

Grain is not sown broadcast, and this facilitates hoeing and weeding the fields as they require. Two crops are planted, one of which ripens after the other; maize and pulse, millet and sesamum, or sorghum and squash are thus grown together. The plough is an efficient tool in soft soil, but a wide hoe, the blade set almost at a right angle, is the common implement in the north. Barrow describes a drill-plough in common use in the north which remarkably economizes time and seed. "It consisted of two parallel poles of wood shod at the lower extremity

---

[1] The amount of tribute rice sent to Peking from

Kiangsu Province is	696,000	tons of	640	catties,	or	974,400	peculs
Chehkiang "	445,000	"	"	"		633,000	"
Kiangsi "	80,000	"	"	"		112,000	"
Hupeh "	50,000	"	"	"		70,000	"
						1,789,400	"
Of this the Chinese Company carried in 1875 to Tientsin						626,900	"
Went by junks						1,162,500	"

Digitized by Google

with iron to open the furrows; these poles were placed upon wheels; a small hopper was attached to each pole to drop the seeds into the furrow, which were covered with earth by a transverse piece of wood fixed behind, that just swept the face of the ground."[1]

The extent to which terrace cultivation has been described as common is a good instance of the way in which erroneous impressions concerning China obtain currency from accounts not exactly incorrect, perhaps, but made to convey wrong notions by the mode of their description. The hills are terraced chiefly for rice cultivation or to retain soil which would otherwise be washed away; and this restricts their gradation, generally speaking, to the southern and eastern provinces. Most of the hills in Kwangtung and Fuhkien are unfit for the plough except near their bases, while in the north it is unnecessary to go to great expense in terracing for a crop of cotton, wheat, or millet. Much labor has been expended in terracing, and many hillsides otherwise useless are thus rendered productive; but this does not mean that every hill is cut into plats, nor that the entire face of the country is one vast garden. Terracing was probably a more important feature of agriculture in Palestine in former days than it is in China. The natural terraces of the loess districts, and their extraordinary convenience as well as fertility, have already been noticed in a former chapter. These, it should however be remembered, do not occur south of the Yangtsz' River.

The ingenuity of the farmer is well exhibited in the various modes he employs to insure a supply of water for his rice. In some places pools are made in level fields as reservoirs of rain, from which the water is lifted as occasion requires by well-sweeps. It is also expeditiously raised by two men holding a pail between them by ropes, and with a swinging motion rapidly dipping the water out of the tank into little furrows. A favorite plan is to use a natural brooklet and conduct it from one plat to another till it has irrigated the whole hillside. It is where such water privileges offer that the terrace cultivation is best

[1] *Travels in China*, London, 1804.

Digitized by Google

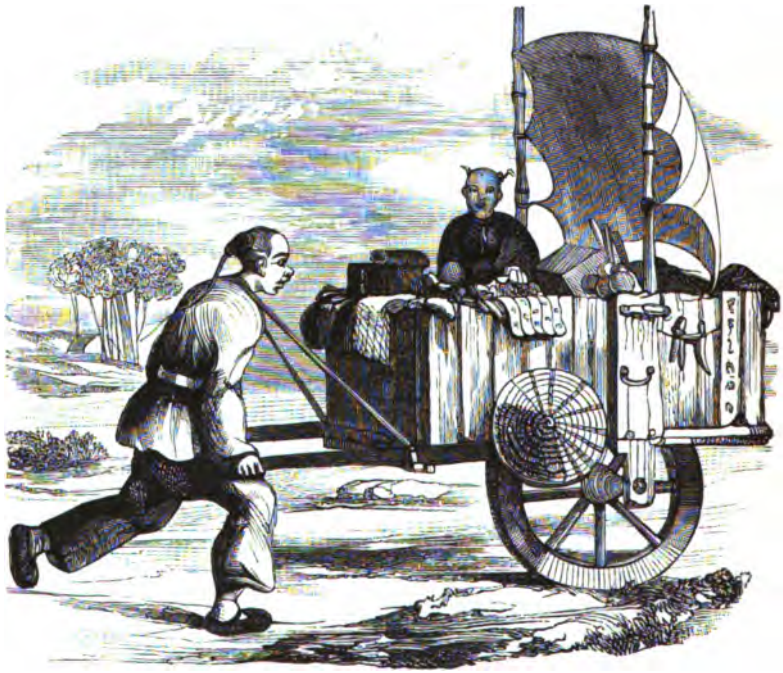
developed, especially in the neighborhood of large cities, where the demand for provisions promises the cultivator a sure reward for his labor. The appearance of the slopes thus graduated into small ledges is beautiful; each plat is divided by a bank serving the triple purpose of fence, path, and dyke, and near which the rills glide with refreshing lapse, turning whithersoever the master willeth. This primitive method of upland irrigation is carried out far more perfectly in China than in Switzerland, where it is better known to the generality of travellers. Water is not often wasted upon grass meadows in the former country. The food these marshy plats furnish to insects, mollusks, snakes, and birds is surprising to one who examines them for the first time. Wheels of various sorts are also contrived to assist in this labor, some worked by cattle, some by human toil, and others carried round by the stream whose waters they elevate. The last are very common on the banks of the rivers Siang, Kan, Min, and their affluents, wherever the banks are convenient for this purpose. High wheels of bamboo, firmly fixed on an axle in the bank, or on pillars driven into the bed, and furnished with buckets, pursue their stately round, and pour their earnings of two hundred and fifty or three hundred tons a day into troughs fixed at an elevation of twenty or thirty feet above the stream. The box-trough, containing an axle to be turned by two men treading the pedals, is rather a more clumsy contrivance, used for slight elevations; the chain of paddles runs around two axles and in the trough as closely as possible, and raises the water ten or twelve feet in an equable current.

Few carts or wagons are used with animals in the southern and eastern provinces where boats are at all available, human strength supplying the means of transportation; the implements of husbandry and the grain taken from the fields both being carried on the back of the laborer. It is not an uncommon sight about Canton to see a ploughman, when he has done his work, turn his buffalo loose and shoulder his plough, harrow, and hoe, with the harness, and carry them all home. It is when one crosses the Yangtsz' on his way north that pack animals are met transporting goods and food in great droves; here, too, people on carts and wheelbarrows fill the roads. On the Great

Digitized by Google

Plain a sail is raised on the latter when a fair wind will help the man to trundle it over a level way.

The Chinese manure the plant rather than the ground, both in the seed and growing grain. The preparation of manure from night soil, by mixing it with earth and drying it into cakes, furnishes employment to multitudes who transport at all hours their noisome loads through the narrow city streets. Tanks



Pedler's Barrow.

are dug by the wayside, pails are placed in the streets and retiring stalls opened among the dwellings, whose contents are carried away in boats and buckets; but it is a small compensation for this constant pollution of the sweet breath of heaven to know that the avails are to be by and by brought to market. Science may yet ascertain how the benefits of this necessary work can be obtained without its disgusting exposure among the Chinese. Besides this principal ingredient of manure vats,

Digitized by Google

other substances are diligently collected, as hair from the barber's shop, exploded fire-crackers and sweepings from the streets, lime and plaster from kitchens and old buildings, soot, bones, fish and animal remains, the mud from the bottom of canals and tanks, and dung of every kind. In Kiangsu a small leaf clover (*Medicago sativa*) is grown through the winter upon ridges raised in the rice-fields, and the plants pulled up in the spring and scattered over the fields to be ploughed and harrowed into the wet soil with the stubble, their decomposition furnishing large quantities of ammonia to the seedlings. Vegetable rubbish is also collected and covered with turf, and then slowly burned; the residue is a rich black earth, which is laid upon the seeds themselves when planted. The refuse left after expressing the oil from ground-nuts, beans, vegetable tallow, tea, and cabbage seeds, etc., is mixed with earth and made into cakes, to be sold to farmers. The bean-cake made in Liautung thus aids the cotton and sugar planter in Swatow with a rich compost.

The ripe grain is cut with bill-hooks and sickles, or pulled up by the roots; scythes, mowing-machines, and cradles are unknown where human arms are so plenty. Rice-straw is made into brooms and besoms; the rice is thrashed out against the side of a tub having a curtain on one side, or bound into sheaves and carried away to be stacked. The thrashing-floors about Canton are made of a mixture of sand and lime, well pounded upon an inclined surface enclosed by a curb; a little cement added in the last coat makes it impervious to the rain; with proper care it lasts many years, and is used by all the villagers for thrashing rice, peas, mustard, turnips, and other seeds, either with unshod oxen or flails. Where frost and snow come the ground requires to be repaired every season; and each farmer usually has his own.

The cultivation of food plants forms so large a proportion of those demanding the attention of the Chinese, that excepting hemp, indigo, cotton, silk, and tea, those raised for manufacture are quite unimportant. The great cotton region is the basin of the Yangtsz' kiang, where the white and yellow varieties grow side by side. The manure used is mud taken from the canals and spread with ashes over the ploughed fields, in which seeds

Digitized by Google

are sown about the 20th of April. The seeds are planted, after sprouting, five or six in a hole, being rubbed with ashes as they are put in, and weeded out if necessary. After the winter crops have been gathered cotton-fields are easily made ready for the shoots, which, while growing, are carefully tended, thinned, hoed, and weeded, until the flowers begin to appear about August. As the pods begin to ripen and burst the cultivator collects them before they fall, to clean the cotton of seeds and husks. The weather is carefully watched, for a dry summer or a wet autumn are alike unpropitious, and as the pods are ripening from August to October, it is not uncommon for the crop to be partially lost. The seeds are separated by a wheel turning two rollers, and the cotton sold by each farmer to merchants in the towns. Some he keeps for weaving at home; spinning-wheels and looms being common articles of furniture in the houses of the peasantry. Cotton is cultivated in every province, and most of it is used where it grows. Around Peking the plant is hardly a foot high; the bolls are cleaned for wadding to a great extent, while the woody stalks supply fuel to the poor. Minute directions are given in Sü's *Encyclopædia of Agriculture* respecting the cultivation of this plant, whose total crop clothes the millions of the Empire without depending on any other land.[1]

Hemp is largely cultivated north of the Mei ling, and also grows in Fuhkien; grass-cloth made from the *Dolichos bulbosus* is used for summer dresses. There are four plants which produce a fibre made into cloth known under this name, viz.: the *Cannabis sativa*, or common hemp, at Canton; the *Bœhmeria nivea*, a species of nettle; the *Sida tiliæfolia*, or abutilon hemp, in Chihlí; and the *Hibiscus cannabinus*. The coloring matter used for dyeing blue is derived from two plants, the *Polygonum tinctorium* at the south, and the *tien tsing* (*Isatis indigotica*), cultivated at Shanghai and Chusan. The mulberry is raised as a shade and fruit tree in the northern provinces, where it forms a beautiful plant fifty feet high; elsewhere the consumption of the leaves renders its culture an important branch of labor in

[1] Fortune's *Wanderings*, Chap. XIV.; *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XVIII., pp. 449–469.

Digitized by Google

the silk-producing provinces. Some growers allow it to attain its natural height, others cut it down to increase the branches and the produce of leaves. In Chehkiang it is cut in January and deprived of its useless branches, leaving only the outer ones, which are trimmed into two or three points in order to force the plant to extend itself. The trees are set out in rows twelve feet or more apart, each tree being half that distance from its neighbor and opposite the intervals in the parallel rows; the interspaces are occupied with legumes or greens. The trees are propagated by seed and by suckers, but soon losing their vigor from being constantly stripped of leaves, are then rooted up and replaced by fresh nurslings.

Sugar is only a southern and southeastern crop. The name *ché*, by which it is known, is an original character, which favors the opinion that the plant is indigenous in China, and the same argument is applicable to wheat, hemp, mulberry, tea, and some of the common fruits, as the plum, pear, and orange. The canes are pressed in machines, and the juice boiled to sugar or boiled and hawked about the streets for consumption by the people. The sugar-mill consists merely of two upright cylinders, between which the cane is introduced as they turn, and the juice received into reservoirs; it is then boiled down and sent to the refiners to undergo the necessary processes to fit it for market; much is lost by this slovenly manufacture.

Many plants are cultivated for their oil, used in the arts or in cooking. The seeds of two or three species of *Eleococea* belonging to the Euphorbiaceous family, and the *Curcas purgans*, are gathered, and by pressure furnish an oil to mix with lacker and paints, or to smear boats as a preservative against teredoes and other insects. It is deleterious when taken into the system, but does not appear to injure those who use or express it. The tallow-tree (*Stillingia sebifera*) grows over the eastern provinces; it is a beautiful tree, resembling the aspen in its shape and foliage, and would form a valuable addition to the list of shade-trees in any country. Mr. Denny, the United States Consul at Shanghai, has recently sent a quantity of these seeds to California, where efforts are being made to grow them. The tree has been introduced into India for its timber. The

Digitized by Google

seeds grow in clusters like ivy berries, and are collected in November; when ripe the capsule divides, and falling off discovers two or three kernels covered with the pure, hard white tallow. When the tallow is to be prepared, these are picked from the stalks and put into an open wooden cylinder with a perforated bottom, in which they are well steamed over boiling water. In ten or fifteen minutes the tallow covering the seeds becomes soft, and they are thrown into a stone mortar and gently beaten with mallets to detach it. The whole is then sifted on a hot sieve, by which the tallow is separated from the kernels, though containing the brown skin which envelops the latter and presenting a dirty appearance. The tallow in this state is enclosed in a straw cylinder, or laid upon layers of straw held together by iron hoops, and subjected to pressure in a rude press, from which it runs clear in a semifluid state and soon hardens into cakes. The candles made from it become soft in hot weather, and are sometimes coated by dipping them in colored wax.[1] From one hundred and thirty-three pounds of nuts is obtained some forty or fifty pounds of tallow.

The departments of floriculture and arboriculture have received great attention, but the efforts of their promoters are directed to producing something curious or bizarre, rather than improving the quality of their fruits or enlarging the number of their flowers. A common mode of multiplying specimens is to slit the stem and insert half of it in damp earth tied around the stalk until it has rooted, and then cutting off the whole. Dwarfing trees or forcing them to grow in grotesque shapes employs much time and patience. The juniper, cypress, pine, elm, bamboo, peach, plum, and flowering-almond are selected for this purpose; the former is trained into the shapes of deer or other animals, pagodas, etc., with extraordinary fidelity, the eyes, tongue, or other parts being added to complete the resemblance. The principle of the operation depends upon retarding the circulation of the sap by stinting the supply of water, confining the roots, and bending the branches into the desired form when young and pliable, afterwards retaining them in

[1] Fortune's *Wanderings*, p. 78.

Digitized by Google

their forced position in pots, and clipping off all the vigorous shoots, until, as is the case of the cramped feet of women, nature gives up the contest and yields to art. These, like the similar exhibitions in sculpture and painting, indicate the uncultivated taste of the people, who admire the fantastic and monstrous more than the natural. Some of the clumps placed in large earthen vases, consisting of bamboos, flowers, and dwarf trees growing closely together upon a piece of rock-work, and overshadowing the water in the vase, in which gold-fish swim through the crevices of the stone, are beautiful specimens of Chinese art. Without understanding the principles of an aquarium, the people have succeeded in combining animal and vegetable life in these elegant ornaments of their houses.

The annual ceremony of ploughing is of very ancient origin. At Peking it consists in ploughing the sacred field in the Temple of Agriculture with a highly ornamented plough kept for the purpose, the Emperor holding it while turning over three furrows, the princes five, and the high ministers nine. These furrows were, however, so short that the monarchs of the present dynasty altered the ancient rule, ploughing four furrows and returning again over the ground. The ceremony finished, the Emperor and his ministers repair to the terrace adjoining the plat, and remain till it has all been ploughed. The crop of wheat is used in idolatrous services. The rank of the actors renders the ceremony more imposing at Peking, but the people of the capital only know that such a performance takes place, as they are not admitted inside of the enclosure when it is observed by the Emperor and his suite. This ceremony is also required of all high officers throughout the Empire, and is attended with more or less parade in April.

In the provinces its celebration varies, and as there are two festivals coming near together connected with agriculture, one or the other of them is apt to predominate. The annual ploughing ritual is one, and the *lih chun*, or 'First day of spring,' is the other and prior in date. The prefect of every city and his subordinates on that day repair to the appointed spot outside of the walls, accompanied by music and a great procession of the citizens, carrying through the streets a paper image of the buf-

Digitized by Google

falo or ox, which, with the idol image worshipped at the same time, are at some places taken into his *yamun*. Here the whole is placed on an altar, and the officials present walk around and whip the effigy with rods before it is set on fire and scrambled for by the people present. Besides the paper ox, a clay one is also made and taken beyond the eastern gate, sometimes accompanied by or holding hundreds of little images inside; after the ceremonies are over it is broken up, and the pieces and small images are carried off by the crowd to scatter the powder on their own fields, in the hope of thereby insuring a good crop.

In Ningpo the principal features of the ceremony consist of a solemn worship by all the local officers of a clay image of a buffalo and an idol of a cow-herd. The prefect then ploughs a small piece of ground, and he and his associates disperse till the morrow, when they come together in another temple at dawn. Here a series of prostrations and recitals of prayers are performed by the "fathers of the people" in their presence, some of whom have no respect for the worship, while others, perhaps, evince deep reverence. As soon as it is over the clay ox is brought out, and a procession consisting of all the officers pass around it repeatedly, striking the body at a given signal, and concluding the ceremony by a heavy blow on the head. The crowd then rush in and tear the effigy to pieces, each one carrying off a portion to strew on his fields.[1]

The various modes of catching and rearing fish exhibit the contrivance and skill of the Chinese quite as much as their agricultural operations. Some persons reckon that at least one-tenth of the population in the prefecture of Kwangchau derive their food from the water, and necessity leads them to invent and try many ingenious ways of securing the finny tribes.

---

[1] Père Cibot in *Mém. conc. les Chinois*, Tome III., p. 499. *Penal Code*, pp. 94–106, 526. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. II., p. 350; Vol. III., pp. 121, 231; Vol. V., p. 485. *La Chine Ouverte*, p. 346. *Foreign Missionary Chronicle*, Vol. XIII., p. 296. Gray's *China*, Vol. II., pp. 115–117. Doolittle's *Social Life*, Vol. II., pp. 18–23. *Revue de l'Orient*, Tome V. (1844), p. 297. Baron d'Hervey Saint-Denys, *Recherches sur l'Agriculture et l'Horticulture des Chinois*, Paris, 1850. *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, No. IV., pp. 209 ff.

Digitized by Google

Nets woven of hempen thread are boiled in a solution of gambier to preserve them from rotting. The smacks which swarm along the coast go out in pairs, partly that the crews may afford mutual relief and protection, but chiefly to join in dragging the net. In the shallows of rivers rows of heavy posts are driven down and nets secured to them, which are examined and changed at every tide. Those who attend these nets, more-

Group and Residence of Fishermen near Canton.

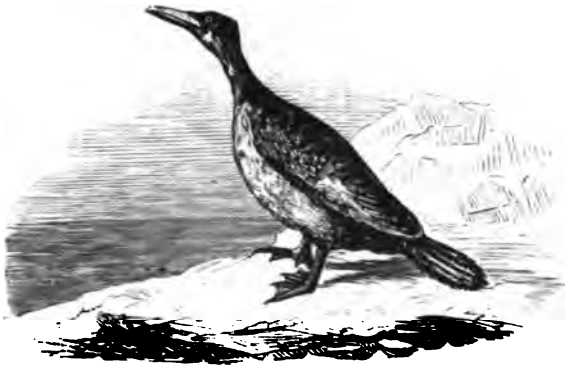
over, attach scoops or drag-nets to their boats, so loaded that they will sink and gather the sole, ray, and other fish feeding near the bottom. Lifting-nets, twenty feet square, are suspended from poles elevated and depressed by a hawser worked by a windlass on shore; the nets are baited with the whites of eggs spread on the meshes.

The fishermen along the coast form an industrious, though rather turbulent community, by no means confining their enter-

Digitized by Google

prises to their professed business when piracy, dakoity, or marauding on shore hold out greater prospects of gain. When their boats become unseaworthy they are still considered landworthy, and are transformed into houses by setting them bodily upon a stone foundation above the reach of the tide, or breaking them up to construct rude huts.

Cormorants are trained in great numbers to capture fish in the rivers and lakes; they will disperse at a given signal and return with their prey, but not often without the precaution of a neck-ring. A single boatman can easily oversee twelve or fifteen of these birds, and although hundreds may be out upon the



The Fishing Cormorant.

water each one knows its own master. If one seize a fish too heavy for him alone, another comes to his assistance, and the two carry it aboard; but such cases are very rare compared with others where the weak or young bird is unceremoniously robbed of its capture. When several hundreds of them fish together the scene becomes animated and noisy in the extreme. The birds themselves are fed on bean-curd and eels or fish. They lay eggs when three years old, which are often hatched under barnyard hens, and the chickens fed with eel's blood and hash. They do not fish during the summer months. The price of a pair varies from five to eight dollars.

Mussels are caught in cylindrical basket-traps attached to a single rope and drifted with the tide near the bottom. Simi-

Digitized by Google

lar traps for catching land-crabs are laid along the edges of rice-fields, baited with dried fish. When the receding tide leaves the river banks dry the boat people get overboard and wade in the mud, or push themselves along on a board with one foot, in search of such things as harbor in the ooze.

In moonlight nights low, narrow shallops, provided with a wide white board fastened to the wale and floating upon the water, are anchored in still water; as the moon shines on the board the deceived fish leap out upon it or into the boat; twenty or thirty of these decoy boats can be seen near Macao engaged in this fishery on moonlight evenings. Sometimes a boat furnished with a treadle goes up and down near the shores striking boards against its bottom and sides; the startled fish are caught in the net dragging astern. The crews of many small boats combine to drive the fish into their nets by splashing and striking the water, or into a pool on the margin of the river at high tide, in which they are easily retained by wattles, and scooped out when the water has fallen. Divers clap sticks together under water to drive their prey into the nets set for them, or catch them with their toes when, terrified at the noise, they hide in the mud. Neither fly-fishing nor angling with hook and line is much practised; its tedium and small returns would be poor amends to a Chinese for the elegance of the tackle or the science displayed in adapting the fly to the fish's taste.

By these and other contrivances the Chinese capture the finny tribes, and it is no surprise to hear that China contains as many millions of people as there are days in the year when one sees upon what a large proportion of them feed and how they live. Their expenditure of human labor appears enormous to those who are accustomed to the manufactories and engines of western lands, but perhaps nothing would cause so much distress in China as the premature and inconsiderate introduction of labor-saving machines. Population is so close upon the means of production, not seldom overpassing them, that those who would be thrown out of employment would, owing to their ignorance as to the best resources and want of means to do anything by themselves, suffer and cause incalculable distress before relief and labor could be furnished them. There

Digitized by Google

are, for instance, six or seven yards near Canton where logs are sawed by hand, but all of them together hardly turn out as many feet of boards as one water-wheel turning three or four saws would do. Yet the two hundred men employed in these yards would perhaps be half-starved if turned off in their present condition, even if they did not destroy their competitor; though there is every reason for believing that improvements will be introduced as soon as those who see their superiority are assured they can be made profitable.

The mechanical arts and implements of the Chinese partake of the same simplicity which has been remarked in their agricultural,—as if the faculty of invention or the notion of altering a thing had died with the discoverer, and he had had the best guarantee for the patent of his contrivance in the deprivation of all desire in his successors to alter it. This servility of imitation marks them in many things, but in machinery and metallurgy is chiefly owing to ignorance of the real nature of the materials they use, a knowledge which has only recently become familiar to ourselves. In the absence of superior models, it produces a degree of apathy to all improvement which strangely contrasts with their general industry and literary tastes. Simplicity of design pervades all operations, and when a machine directs in the best known manner the power of the hand which wields it, or aids in executing tiresome operations, its purpose is considered to be fully answered, for it was intended to assist and not to supplant human labor. Yet with all their simplicity some of them are both effectual and ingenious, and not a few are made to answer two or three ends. For example, the bellows, an oblong box divided into two compartments, and worked by a piston and two valves in the upper, which forces the wind into the lower part and out of the nozzle, is used by the travelling tinker as a seat when at work and a chest for his tools when his work is done; though it does not, indeed, serve all these purposes with efficiency.

In the arts of metallurgy the Chinese have attained only to mediocrity, and on the whole do not equal the Japanese. To this deficiency may perhaps be ascribed their little progress in some other branches, which could not be executed without tools

Digitized by Google

of peculiar size or nicety. Mines of iron, lead, copper, and zinc are worked, though the modes employed in digging the ore, preparing and smelting it, and purifying the metals have not yet been fully examined. Gold is used sparingly for ornaments, but is consumed in vast quantities for gilding; gold thread is commonly imported, and the ingots are known only as bullion. Mr. Gordon found the people in the country parts of Fuhkien quite ignorant of its value, for he could only pass doubloons for a dollar apiece, the natives having never seen them before.

The Chinese workmanship in chased, repoussé, and carved work of gold and silver—baskets, card-cases, teapots, combs, etc.—is almost unequalled. Their jewelry, too, admirably exhibits the delicate filigree work which agrees so well with their genius. Flower-baskets with chased flowers and figures of various sorts enamelled on the outside of the open work of wire, and set with precious stones, may perhaps be regarded as the masterpiece of native art in the working of metals.

Steel is everywhere manufactured in a rude way, but the foreign importation is gradually supplying a better article. The quality of this metal made is best shown by the carvings in the hardest stones for ornaments, which have never been exceeded elsewhere. Iron is cast into thin plates and various machines of considerable size, but the largest pieces they make, viz., bells and cannon, are small compared with the shafts and steam-hammers turned out abroad. Wrought iron is chiefly worked up into nails, screws, hinges, and small articles needed in daily life, though its quality is remarkably good. The *peh tung*, argentan or 'white copper' of the Chinese, is an alloy of copper 40.4, zinc 25.4, nickel 31.6, and iron 2.6, and occasionally a little silver; these proportions are nearly the same as German-silver. "When in a state of ore, it is said to be powdered, mixed with charcoal dust, and placed in jars over a slow fire, the metal rising in the form of vapor in a distilling apparatus, and afterward condensed in water."[1] When new, this alloy ap-

[1] Davis' *Chinese*, Vol. II., p. 235. *Penny Cyclopædia*, Art. COPPER. Natalis Rondot, *Commerce de la Chine*, 1849, p. 142.

Digitized by Google

pears as lustrous as silver, and is manufactured into incense-jars, flower-stands for temple service, boxes, a vast variety of fancy articles, and a few household utensils not intended to be used near the fire. Puzzling specimens of work are made of it, such as teapots enclosed in chinaware and ornamented with a handle and a spout of stone, and having characters on the sides. The white copper varies a good deal in its appearance and malleability, owing probably to mixtures added after distillation.

Copper is less used than iron for culinary vessels, but will probably increase as rapid importation diminishes the cost, for iron rusts quickly in the southern parts. The manufactures of gongs, cymbals and trumpets, lamps, brass-leaf for working into the *kin hwa*, or tinsel-flowers used in worship, and the copper coin of the country, consume probably four-fifths of all the copper used. The gong is employed on all occasions, and its piercing clamor can be heard at any time of day and night, especially if one lives near the water. It is an alloy of twenty parts of tin with eighty of copper, and is made by melting one hundred catties of *hung tung*, or 'red copper,' with twenty-five catties of tin. The alloy is run into thin plates, and the gongs are made by long and expert hammering until the requisite sonorousness is obtained.

Bells and tripods are frequently cast of a large size. The bells at Peking (mentioned in Volume I., p. 79) are peculiarly rich in quality of tone; they are almost invariably made without tongues, being sounded with a mallet. The tripods for receiving the ashes of papers consumed in worship also bear inscriptions of a religious character; the priests of temples containing them take great pride in showing their ancient bells, tripods, and other like rarities. The pieces of bronze formerly produced under the patronage of the Emperor Kienlung, as incense tripods, lions, astronomical instruments, and the infinite variety of ornaments, probably represent their highest attainments in this branch of metallurgy for beauty and excellence. The metallic mirrors, once the only reflectors the Chinese manufactured, are now nearly superseded by glass; the alloy is like that of gongs with a little silver added. These mirrors

Digitized by Google

have long been remarkable for a singular property which some of them possess of reflecting the raised characters or device on the back when held in the sun; this is caused by their outline being traced upon the polished surface in very shallow lines, the whole plate being afterward rubbed until the lines are equally bright with the other parts, and only rendered visible by the strongest sunlight.[1] Besides the metallic articles already mentioned, the ornamental and antique bronze and copper figures, noticeable for their curious forms and fine polishing and tracery, afford the best specimens of Chinese art in imitating the human figure. They are mostly statuettes, representing men, gods, birds, monsters, etc., in grotesque shapes and attitudes; some of them are beautifully ornamented with delicate scrolls and flowers in niello work of silver or gold wire inserted into grooves cut in the metal.

The manufacture of glass is carried on chiefly at Canton, and its increasing use for windows, tumblers, lamps, mirrors, and other articles of household furniture, shows that the Chinese are quite ready to adopt such things from foreign countries as they find to be advantageous. The importation of broken glass for remelting has entirely ceased, but flints are carried from England for the use of glass-blowers. The furnaces are small, and from the ignorance, on the part of the workmen, of the constituents of good glass, their products are not uniform. Foreign window-glass is now brought so cheaply that the native inferior article, which distorts objects seen through it, is disappearing; colored articles and chandeliers are still made. The most finished articles which the Chinese have yet produced are ground shades for Argand lamps. Beautiful ornaments are made of the *liao-li*, the old native name for a vitreous composition like strass, between glass and porcelain. Ear-rings, wristlets, snuff-bottles, jars, cups, etc., are made of it, plain, colored, and variegated, in vast variety. Some of these articles exhibit different tints in layers, each layer being ground away where it is not wanted, as in cameo carving; blue, red, and yel-

[1] Other and perhaps more correct explanations of this peculiarity have been given.

Digitized by Google

low are the prevailing colors. The art of producing it has been known longer than glass-making, but was invented later than that of porcelain.

The cutting and setting of hard and precious stones is carried on to some extent. Spectacles are cut and ground in lathes from crystal, smoky quartz, and a variety of rose quartz resembling the cairngorm-stone, which the Chinese call *cha-tsing*, or 'tea-stone,' from its color. Their spectacles are not always true, and the wearer is obliged to have them ground away until his eyes are suited. The pebble is cut in a lathe, by a wire-saw working in its own dust, into a round shape with plane edges. When worn, the rim rests upon the cheek-bones; the frame has a hinge between the glasses, and the machine is sometimes kept on the ears by loops or weights. Foreign-shaped spectacles are supplanting these primitive optics, but the prejudice is still in favor of crystal. The cutting of diamonds is sometimes attempted, but it is not a favorite gem among the Chinese. Diamonds and corundums are both employed to drill holes in clamping and mending broken glass and porcelain; tumblers, jars, etc., are joined so securely in this way without cement as to hold fluids. Both these gems are used to cut glass, but another mode, not uncommon, is to grease the place to be fractured, and slowly follow the line along by a lighted joss-stick until it breaks.

Sir John Davis condensed all the important information known half a century ago concerning the materials and manufacture of porcelain in his valuable work, but great advance has since been made in a better understanding of this branch of Chinese industry. The word *porcelain* is derived from *porcellana*, which was given to the ware by the Portuguese under the belief that it was made from the fusion of egg-shells and fish's glue and scales to resemble the nacre of sea-shells (Cypræa) or porcellana. This instance of off-hand nomenclature is like that of the Chinese calling caoutchouc *elephant's skin* from its appearance.

M. Julien's translation of the *King-teh chin Tau Luh* (Paris, 1856) furnishes the native accounts of the porcelain manufactures at Kingteh chin, in Kiangsi, and adds so much from

Digitized by Google

other sources that his work is a veritable classic in its special branch. He places the invention of porcelain between B.C. 185 and A.D. 85, and opening the first kiln, at Sinping (not far from the present centre of Honan province), under the reign of Changtí of the Eastern Han dynasty. From this the manufacture gradually extended as raw materials were found in other localities, especially in Fauliang, on the eastern shores of the Poyang Lake, where the best ware is still made. A second preface to this work, written by M. Salvétat, of the manufactory at Sèvres, gives the details of the introduction of the art into Europe about 1722, and the subsequent improvement to the time when European wares far exceeded the Chinese or Japanese for beauty. During the dreadful ravages of the Taiping rebellion the manufactories at Kingteh were all stopped.

A very brief epitome of M. Salvétat's paper will indicate the ingredients of porcelain and their manipulation: Two substances enter into all kinds of this ware; one a strong, infusible material which endures great heat, and the other, fusible at a low temperature, which communicates its transparency to the other as they together pass through the furnace. The first of these is called *kaolin*, from the name of a range of hills east of Kingteh chin, known as *Kao Ling* or 'High Ridge,' a word that has been adopted in Europe as a term for all varieties of the argillaceous or feldspathic components of porcelain. The other is known as *peh-tun-tsz'*, a Chinese term properly applied to the bricks of prepared silex, called *tun*, but now generally adopted to denote the fusible element. The discovery near Taochau fu of both of these in great purity led to the establishment of the kilns there in A.D. 583; and Chinese artists discriminate many varieties of each. It is apparently only since A.D. 1000, or thereabouts, that these kilns have produced the choice pieces now so highly prized.

The kaolin comes from decomposed granite, and is reduced by trituration and several washings to an impalpable powder; this last precipitate is put on cloths, one above another, and dried under slight pressure to a uniform paste ready for the furnace. The cakes of *peh-tun-tsz'* are prepared in a similar manner; other workmen mix the clay and the quartz—the bones

Digitized by Google

and the flesh, as they are aptly called by the Chinese—in such proportions as the ware requires. In general, Chinese porcelain is more silicious than European, containing 70 parts of silex, 22 of alumine, 6 of potash and soda, with traces of lime, manganese, magnesia, and iron. Sèvres ware has 58 silex, 34½ alumine, 3 alkali, and 4½ lime; as the feldspar decreases the beauty of the ware diminishes, but its durability and usefulness increase.

To make ready the paste for the furnace, the bricks of both ingredients are trodden in a large basin by buffaloes or men till they are well mixed into a watery mass, which is then worked and kneaded again on slate slabs in small pieces till it is delivered into the hands of workmen to be fashioned on lathes and frames into the desired forms and sizes. These craftsmen work with very simple machinery, as is apparent from the rude drawings of their operations. M. Salvétat gives high praise to their skill in producing large jars without the aid of the machinery used in Europe, and indicates the great use they make of their feet in these operations—a feature of all Asiatic artisans which attracts the traveller's notice wherever he goes. Some of their procedures are inferior and ruder than the Japanese potters exhibit, but space does not allow them to be described in this sketch.

The glazing on Chinese ware contains silex mixed with lime and the ashes of burnt ferns, in such proportions as are found suitable for the different varieties. During the mixing of these ingredients the ashes are mostly eliminated, and the glazing really consists of quartz flexed by carbonate of lime. The liquid glaze is applied to the biscuit by dipping, by aspersion, and by washing, according to the nature of the ware; sometimes it is blown through a tube in a dewy shower oft repeated.

When ready for the furnace, the pieces are carried to workmen specially skilled in properly firing them, where the different sizes are placed in ovens particularly fitted to bake each kind. Large jars require a separate oven so as to adapt the fire to their size and thickness, continuing it at a uniform blast for several days. Cups and small pieces are baked one on top of another in smaller ovens, some of which are open and others closed. Coal and wood are both used for fuel. The pieces are

Digitized by Google

taken from the furnaces when successfully baked, to be decorated and colored in all the various hues and pictures which have made Chinese porcelain so much sought after. Some of their ground colors of red, yellow, and green have not been equalled elsewhere; a careful analysis indicates the presence of the oxides of copper, cobalt, iron, lead, antimony, and manganese. Some of the rarest and most beautiful tints seem to have been the result of happy experiment, the knowledge of which died with its manufacture. It is not often that the Chinese artist adorns his plaque or jar with mythological or religious characters, preferring to let his fancy run riot in grotesque combinations of natural scenes, amid which, however, the unerring instinct or the accumulated experience of many successive generations seldom permit him to wander from a truly artistic conception. The amount of labor devoted to some minute treasure of porcelain decoration is little short of fabulous. Mr. Matthew Arnold's picture of the "cunning workman" who

> Pricks with vermilion some clear porcelain vase,
> An emperor's gift—at early morn he paints,
> And all day long, and when night comes, the lamp
> Lights up his studious forehead and thin hands,

could probably be seen scores of times in the humbler quarters of great cities in China.

Their ignorance of analytical chemistry compels them to follow a rule of thumb in the composition of their colors; but generally they use oxide of copper for green and bluish greens, gold for reds, oxide of cobalt for blues, of antimony for yellows, and of arsenic and tin for whites. The preparation and application of these materials admit of less scope and beauty than are found on the finest European ware, and their result is more like enamelling than painting. M. Salvétat admits that the Chinese potter has excelled in producing craquele ware, and certain hues, as sea-green, deep rosedon reds, and brilliant blues, which have not been equalled in Europe.

One elegant mode of ornament peculiar to them is seen in the *tao-ming tsz'-ki*, *lit.*, 'clear, bright porcelain,' called eyelet-hole ware or grains of rice, made in the reign Kienlung. The paste

Digitized by Google

is cut through by a kind of stamp which takes out enough to form the figure, in which the glaze is inserted before the piece is finally joined and ready for the kiln. When fired the glaze becomes transparent; different patterns are frequently painted on the two surfaces, in which advantage is taken of the eyelet-holes to adapt them to two sets of figures. An instance of mechanical skill is occasionally seen in their articulated vases, in which one jar is baked inside of another, the outer one being perforated so as to show off the object within; the baking of such pieces must be very difficult and uncertain.

The ware sold at Canton for foreign use is painted in that city to suit the caprice of purchasers, and during the present century has become identified abroad with Chinese art, while it is really a combination of two or three styles. Its peculiarity consists in covering the dish with medallions and vignettes in bright colors, containing figures of heroes, arms, birds, etc., or scenes on a colored or white ground. Such ware is not commonly used by the Chinese, but its manufacture is unhappily beginning to affect their national taste. This style is quite different from the well-known blue willow pattern which has long been regarded as the *real Celestial ware*. This color does mark the common pottery and stoneware used all over the Empire by the poor, but the pattern is not so common.

It is not possible to enter here into all the niceties of this subject, which is now attracting great attention, and has been examined by Jacquemart, Prime, Young, and many others. Further researches into native and foreign books and collections will bring out new facts, legends, and specimens, while we may look for rare old pieces, as has been the case with the discovery of the small perfume bottles in Egypt, as soon as full liberty is given over all Asia to seek and dig.

Besides table furniture, porcelain statuettes and idols are common, and vases often bring extravagant prices, owing to some quality of fineness, coloring, antiquity, or shape, which native connoisseurs can only appreciate. The god of porcelain himself is usually made of this material. D'Entrecolles, in his account of the manufacture of the ware, says that this deity owes his divinity to his self-immolation in one of the furnaces

Digitized by Google

in utter despair at being able to accomplish the Emperor's orders for the production of some vases of peculiar fineness; the pieces which came out of the furnace after the wretch was burned pleased his Majesty so much that he deified him. Cheap stoneware is made at Shauking, in Kwangtung, and many other places, some of it very pure and white.

The exportation of porcelain has formed a very ancient branch of commerce westward, and it is not strange that specimens should occasionally be met with even at a great distance from China. The discovery of Chinese bottles in Egypt and Asia Minor, containing quotations from Chinese poets, shows that intercourse existed between the extremes of Asia in the tenth or eleventh centuries. Rosellini seems to have been the earliest to notice these relics of an ancient trade, during his researches in Egypt in 1828, when he obtained two or three. In a letter written in reply to one from Sir J. F. Davis, he states that he found one of these little bottles in a "petit panier tissu de feuilles de palmier," with other objects of Egyptian manufacture, in a tomb, whose date he places between B.C. 1800 and 1100. His words are, "Ayant penétré dans un de ces trois tombeaux j'y ai trouvé," etc., which is as explicit as possible. He also adds, that many fragments of similar bottles had been offered to him by the peasants, which he had looked upon as quite modern till this discovery showed that they were real antiques.

Since then, several more have been picked up; Dr. Abbott's Egyptian collection in New York contains seventeen, all of which came from Egypt, but none, besides Rosellini's, out of a tomb directly into the hands of an Egyptologist. Layard and Cesnola bought similar bottles in Cyprus and Arban. However, one well-authenticated fact, like that of Rosellini's discovery, gives some evidence of a similar ancient origin to others precisely like it in shape, coloring, and inscriptions, for the trade between Arabia and Egypt to China has long since ceased; but as fifty years have passed without another bottle occurring in any of the numerous tombs opened by careful and competent persons, one is inclined to think that Rosellini's tomb may have been twice used to bury mummies in, or that he mistook its age.

Digitized by Google

The inscriptions and style of writing of five different kinds have been engraved, and Sir Walter H. Medhurst gives a translation of each, tracing the lines to their original authors. One of them is from Wang Wai (A.D. 702–745), and reads, *Ming yueh sung chung chao*, 'The bright moon shines amidst the firs.' A second reads, *Chih tsai tsz' shan chung*, 'Only in the midst of these mountains,' and it dates A.D. 831–837. A third is contracted from a line by Wei Ying-wuh (A.D. 702–795), being part of a stanza of eight lines, as follows: *Hwo kai yiu yih nien*, 'The flowers open, and lo, another year!' A fourth dates from A.D. 1068–1085, and is from the famous poet Su Tung-po: *Hăng hwa hung shih li*, 'The apricot flowers bloom for miles around;' this is abridged from a distich in pentameter as follows:

> One mass of color, the apricot flowers bloom for miles around;
> The successful graduate urges on his steed as if flying.

Sir John Davis ascribes this inscription to a Chinese song written prior to the Christian era, but gives no proof of so early a date, and he is probably in error. The fifth inscription is of the same date as the last; it forms part of a quatrain by Chao Yung, and reads, *Liao teh shao jin chi*, 'Which few, I ween, can comprehend.' In Prime's work on pottery he has given fac-similes of five bottles whose inscriptions are the same as those explained by Medhurst; his No. 142 and No. 146 is the second in this list; his No. 143 is the first; his 144 is the third; and his 145 is the fifth and is different in shape from the others. The characters on the one found at Arban by Layard are written in a very cursive style.[1]

The age and origin of these bottles has excited much inquiry, but the weight of evidence points to their having been taken to Egypt and Arabia by the Arabs who traded at Canton and Hangchau down to the end of the Sung dynasty in 1278. They were, as Wilkinson suggests in his *Ancient Egyptians*, probably used by the purchasers to hold *kohl* to paint the eyes and

[1] Davis' *Sketches*, Vol. II., pp. 72–84. Medhurst's *China*, p. 135. Julien's *Histoire de la Porcelain Chinoise*, pp. xi–xxii. Prime's *Pottery and Porcelain*, p. 232. *N. C. Br. R. A. S. Transactions*, 1852, pp. 34–40; 1854, p. 93.

Digitized by Google

eyelids of women; their original use was probably to hold peppermint and other oils, bandoline and tooth-powders, though snuff is now generally carried in them, as glass bottles contain the essences and oils seen in shops. The uniformity in size, shape, coloring, and decoration in these bottles indicates that the trade was rather confined to one port in China, for at present a vast variety in all these particulars would be seen, as I ascertained some years ago at Canton when unsuccessfully looking in the shops for some having inscriptions like those discovered in Egypt. Mr. Fortune found one having the same inscription as No. 2, and Sir Harry Parkes came across three others, but their rarity now proves the change; and these were probably real antiques. The latter found two other inscriptions on similar bottles in China, whose authors lived A.D. 584 and later; and argues against their high antiquity from the metre having been introduced in later times. The strongest proof of their modern origin is the material and the date of the style of writing, neither of which could have been prior to the Han dynasty if Chinese records are worth anything; such simple lines as these five could indeed have been handed down and adopted by later poets from lost authors, but this possibility weighs nothing against the others. The more antiquarian researches extend in Asia, however, the more shall we find that the books and inscriptions now extant do not contain the earliest dates of inventions and travels.

The cheap pottery of the Chinese resembles the Egyptian ware in color and brittleness, but is less porous when unglazed. Tea-kettles, pans, plates, teapots, and articles of household use, bathing-tubs, immense jars, comparable to hogsheads, for holding water, fancy images, statuettes, figurines, toys, flower-pots, and a thousand other articles are everywhere burned from clay and sold at extremely low prices. The jars are used in shops to contain liquids, powders, etc.; in gardens to keep fish, collect rain, and receive manure and offal; and in boats and houses for the same purposes that barrels, pails, and pans are put to elsewhere. Water will boil sooner and a dish of vegetables be cooked more expeditiously in one of these earthen pots than in metal; the caloric seems to permeate the clay almost as soon as

Digitized by Google

it is over the fire. Drum-shaped stools and garden seats, vitruvian ornaments for balustrades, fanciful flower-pots in the shape of buffaloes, representing the animal feeding under the shade of a tree growing out of its body, fishes, dragons, phœnixes, and other objects for decorating the ridges and for gargoyles are manufactured of this ware. Flat figures of the human form are set into frames to represent groups of persons, or elegantly shaped characters are arranged into sentences, both of them to put on the walls of rooms, making altogether a great variety of purposes to which this material is applied.

The lacquered-ware peculiar to China and Japan owes its lustre to the prepared sap of a kind of sumach (*Rhus vernicifera*) cultivated in both countries for this purpose. Wood oils are obtained from other plants, such as the *Curcas*, *Augia*, *Eleococcus*, and *Rhus semi-alatus*, and the different qualities of lacquered-ware are owing to the use of these inferior ingredients. The real varnish-tree is described by De Guignes as resembling the ash in its foliage and bark; it is about fifteen feet in height, and when seven years old furnishes the sap, which is carefully collected in the summer nights from incisions cut in the trunk. It comes to market in tubs holding the cakes, and those who collect it are careful to cover their faces and hands from contact with this irritating juice as they prepare it for market. A good yield of a thousand trees in one night would be twenty pounds avoirdupois weight of sap. The best sort is tawny rather than white in its inspissated state, and is kept well protected from the air by tarred paper. The body of lacquered-ware is usually seasoned pine, well smoothed, and the grooves covered with hempen lint or paper. A sizing of pig's gall, often mixed with very fine sand, makes a priming. The prepared lacquer is composed of the sap dissolved in spring-water, adding ground-nut oil, pig's gall, and rice vinegar in the sunshine with broad flat brushes till it is thoroughly mixed.

The principal object in preparing the wood is to cover it with a priming that will receive the lacquer and remain impervious to changes in temperature. This preparation varies a good deal according to the quality of the ware; it is laid on evenly, coat after coat, allowing each to dry before the next is spread.

Digitized by Google

The last coating is rubbed with pumice or the finest sandstone, finishing this priming with a smooth piece of slate. When ready the piece is taken into a close room having paper lattices and shut out from any air, where it receives a coating of clear lacquer. It is then put into a dark room to dry. The operation is repeated ten or fifteen times for the best kinds. Some workmen are so sensitive to the liquid lacquer that they cannot safely do this part of the manufacture; others go through all the processes without annoyance. Coloring matter to give the lacquer a brown hue, or to make an imitation of *venturina* (or *aventurine*, a brownish glass spangled throughout with copper filings) by mixing gold leaf, is added during these operations.

The gilding is performed by another set of workmen in a large workshop. The figures of the design are drawn on thick paper, which is then pricked all over to allow the powdered chalk to fall on the table and form the outline. Another workman completes the picture by cutting the lines with a burin or needle, and filling them with vermilion mixed in lacquer, as thick as needed. This afterward is covered by means of a hair-pencil with gold in leaf, or in powder laid on with a dossil; the gold is often mixed with fine lampblack. The proper lacquer is seldom used otherwise than in making this ware. The Chinese term for *tsih* includes this and all kinds of oils and paints, so that some confusion arises in describing their materials.[1] A beautiful fabric of lacquered-ware is made by inlaying the nacre of fresh and salt-water shells in a rough mosaic of flowers, animals, etc., into the composition, and then varnishing it. Another highly prized kind is made by covering the wood with a coating of fine powdered cinnabar and varnish three or four lines in thickness, and then carving figures upon it in relief. The great labor necessary to produce this ware renders it expensive, and it is not now produced.

The oils obtained from the nuts of other trees by simple pressure and by refining them afterward are quite numerous.

---

[1] N. Rondot, *Commerce de la Chine*, p. 120; *Journal Asiatique*, IV. Series, Tome XI., 1848, pp. 34–65; *Chinese Commercial Guide*, 5th Ed., p. 124.

Digitized by Google

The details of their manufacture and application may yet furnish many new hints and processes to western arts. The oil of the Eleococcus, after pressing (according to De Guignes), is boiled with Spanish white in the proportion of one ounce to half a pound of oil; as it begins to thicken it is taken off and poured into close vessels. It dissolves in turpentine and is used as a varnish, either clear or mixed with different colors; it defends woodwork from injury for a long time, and forms a good painter's oil. Boiled with iron rust it forms a reddish brown varnish. In order to prevent its penetrating into the wood when used clear, and to increase the lustre, a priming of lime and hog's blood simmered together into a paste is previously laid on.

The manufacture of silk is original among the Chinese, as well as those of porcelain and lacquered-ware, and in none of these have foreigners yet succeeded in fully equalling the native products. The notices of the cultivation of the mulberry and the rearing of silk-worms found in Chinese works have been industriously collected and published by M. Julien by order of the French government—another instance of the intelligent care of this nation to aid one of its great industries. The introduction by M. Beauvais indicates certain points worthy of the notice of cultivators; it has been remarked that the hints thus obtained from Julien's translation have been of more value to the people employed in silk culture in France than all that has been paid by the government for the promotion of Chinese literature from their first outlay in the last century.

The earliest notice in the *Shu King* of silk culture occurs in the *Yu Kung*. It is said the mulberry grounds were made fit for silk-worms, when speaking of the draining of Yen Chau (parts of Shantung and Chihlí), as if it was an usual culture; other references to silk in the same book show it to have been a well-known fabric at that date (B.C. 2204). The allusion, therefore, in the *Book of Odes* to silks of many sorts also strengthen the notice in the *Wei Kí*, which says:

> Síling shí, the Empress of Hwangtí, began to rear silk-worms:
> At this period Hwangtí invented the art of making clothing.

Digitized by Google

This legend carries the art back to B.C. 2600, or perhaps five centuries after the Deluge. Síling is said to have been her birthplace, and Lui Tsu her right name; she was deified and is still worshipped as the goddess of silk under the name of Yuenfí. In this act, as De Guignes observes, the Chinese resemble other ancient nations in ascribing the invention of spinning to women, and deifying them; thus the Egyptian Isis, the Lydian Arachne, and the Grecian Athene also handled the distaff. A temple called the *Sien-tsan Tao* exists in the palace grounds dedicated to Yuenfí, wherein she is worshipped annually in April by the Empress. The altar, grounds, sacrifices, ritual, and buildings are all in imitation of those in the Temple of Agriculture, of which they are a counterpart. The *Book of Rites* contains a notice of the festival held in honor of weaving, which corresponds to that of ploughing by the Emperor. "In the last month of spring the young Empress purified herself and offered a sacrifice to the goddess of silk-worms. She went into the eastern fields and collected mulberry leaves. She forbade noble dames and the ladies of statesmen adorning themselves, and excused her attendants from their sewing and embroidery, in order that they might give all their care to the rearing of silk-worms." The present enclosure was put up by Yungching in 1742, but its buildings are now much dilapidated.

The attention of the Chinese government to this important branch of industry has been unremitted, and at this day it supplies perhaps one-half of all the garments worn by the people. In the paraphrase to the fourth maxim of the *Shing Yu*, it is remarked: "In ancient times emperors ploughed the lands and empresses cultivated the mulberry. Though the most honorable, they did not disdain to toil and labor, as examples to the whole Empire, in order to induce all the people to seek these essential supports." One-half of the *Illustrations of Agriculture and Weaving* are devoted to delineating the various processes attending this manufacture; and Julien quotes more than twenty works and authors on this subject. Among other uses to which this material is put, may be remembered, in the second chapter of this work, the burning of many thousand pieces of plain, coarse silk as part of the offerings to the gods

Digitized by Google

at Peking, and in the annual sacrifices before the tablets of Confucius.[1]

While the worms are growing, care is taken to keep them undisturbed by either noise or bright light; they are often changed from one hurdle to another that they may have roomy and cleanly places; the utmost attention is paid to their condition and feeding, and noting the right time for preparing them for spinning cocoons. Three days are required for this, and in six it is time to stifle the larvæ and reel the silk from the cocoons; but this being usually done by other workmen, those who rear the worms enclose the cocoons in a jar buried in the ground and lined with mats and leaves, interlaying them with salt, which kills the pupæ but keeps the silk supple, strong, and lustrous; preserved in this manner, they can be transported to any distance, or the reeling of the silk can be delayed until convenient. Another mode of destroying the cocoons is to spread them on trays and expose them by twos to the steam of boiling water, putting the upper in the place of the lower one according to the degree of heat they are in, taking care that the chrysalides are killed and the silk not injured. After exposure to steam the silk can be reeled off immediately, but if placed in the jars they must be put into warm water to dissolve the glue before the floss can be unwound.

The commission sent from France to China in 1844 to make inquiries into its industries consisted of skilled men, and their reports embody a great amount of details nowhere else to be found. The digested catalogue of the exhibits of M. Hedde at St. Etienne in 1848 contains four hundred and fifty-three articles relating to silk and mulberry alone. The amount of silk goods exported has never regained its value previous to 1854, in consequence of the destruction of skilled workmen and manufactories during the Tai-ping rebellion, and raw silk still forms the bulk of the export. The finest silk comes from Chehkiang province, and is known as *tsatli*, *tay-saam*, and *yuenhwa* in com-

[1] Julien, *Culturer des Muriers*, 1837; Pauthier, *Chine Moderne*, p. 21; Hedde, *Catalogue des Produits Sérigènes*, 1848, pp. 106–287; *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XVIII., pp. 303–314; *Commercial Guide*, 5th Ed., p. 136; Mailla, *Histoire de la Chine*, Tome I., p. 24; Biot, *Tcheou-li*, passim, 1851.

Digitized by Google

merce; the centre of the culture is at Hū-chau, a prefecture in the northwest of that province. The mulberry grows everywhere, and none of the provinces are without some silk, but Kwangtung, Sz'chuen, and Chehkiang furnish the best and most.

Great attention is paid in Shantung, Sz'chuen, and Kweichau to collecting wild silk from the cocoons of worms which feed on the ailantus, oak, and xanthoxylum. The insect is the *Attacus cynthia*, and its food the tender leaves of the ailantus and *Quercus mongholica* in Shantung, where great quantities of durable silk is woven. It is not so lustrous as that produced by the bombyx-worm, which feeds on the mulberry leaf, and comparatively little is exported. The proportion of manufactured silks sent abroad is less now than it was fifty years ago, but the home consumption is so enormous that an annual export to the value of nearly ninety millions of dollars has little effect on the prices. In 1854 the price of the best raw silk was about $330 a bale, and the export over fifty-one thousand bales; in 1860, the same sort was $550, and the export nearly eighty thousand bales; this increase in price was owing chiefly to disease in the trees in Europe, though the ravages of war in both Chehkiang and Kwangtung had destroyed much property in this branch.

The loom in China is worked by two hands, one of whom sits on the top of the frame, where he pulls the treadles and assists in changing the various parts of the machine. The workmen imitate almost any pattern, excelling particularly in crapes, and flowered satins and damasks for official dresses. The common people wear pongee and senshaw, which they frequently dye in gambier to a dust or black color; these fabrics constitute most durable garments. Many of the delicate silk tissues known in Europe are not manufactured by the Chinese, most of their fabrics being heavy. The *lo*, or law, is a beautiful article like grenadine and seldom sent abroad; it is used for summer robes, musquito curtains, festoons, and other purposes. The English words *satin*, *senshaw*, and *silk* are probably derived from the Chinese terms *sz'-twan*, *sien-sha*, and *sz'*, intermediately through other languages.

Digitized by Google

The skill of the Chinese in embroidery is well known, and the demand for such work to adorn the dresses of officers and ladies of every rank, for ornamenting purses, shoes, caps, fans, and other appendages of the dress of both sexes, and in working shawls, table covers, etc., for exportation, furnishes employment to myriads of men and women. The frame is placed on pivots and the pattern marked out upon the plain surface. There are many styles, with thread, braid, or floss, and an infinite variety in the quality, pattern, and beauty of the work; it is the art of Chinese women, and every young lady is expected to know how to do it. On fire screens the design appears the same on both sides, the ends of the threads being neatly concealed. This mode of embroidery seems also to have been known among the Hebrews, from the expression in Deborah's song (Judges v. 30), "Of divers colors of needle-work on both sides," which Sisera's mother vainly looked for him to bring home as spoil for her. Books are prepared for embroiderers containing patterns for their imitation or combination. The silk used is of the finest kind and color, gold and silver thread being introduced to impart a lustre to the figures on caps, purses, and shoes. Tassels and twisted cords for sedans or lanterns, knobs or buttons worn on the winter caps, and elegant fan and pipe-cases, purses or fobs, constitute only a few of the products of their needles. Spangles are made from brass leaves by cutting out a small ring by means of a double-edged stamp, which at one drive detaches from the sheet a wheel-shaped circle; these are flattened by a single stroke of the hammer upon an anvil, leaving a minute hole in the centre. Another way of making them is to bend a copper wire into a circle and flatten it. Their own needles are very slender, and are rapidly giving way to the foreign article; in sewing the tailor holds it between the forefinger and thumb, pressing against the thimble on the thumb as he pushes it into the cloth.

Our ascertaining the date of the introduction of cotton as a textile plant into China depends very much on the meaning of certain words rendered *cotton* by some annotators in the *Shu King*. The weight of proof is, however, strongly adverse to this view; but a historical notice dated about A.D. 500 plainly

Digitized by Google

refers to cotton robes; in A.D. 670 it was called by a foreign name *kih-pei*, a contracted form of the Sanscrit name *karpasi*. The present name of *mien-hwa*, or 'cotton flower,' was naturally given to it from the resemblance of its seed envelope to the silky covering of the seeds of the *muh-mien shu*, or tree cotton (*Bombax*), common in Southern China. It was, however, one thing to admire cotton cloth brought as tribute, and quite another to introduce cotton-growing into China, which does not seem to have been attempted until the Sung dynasty. Early in the eleventh century the plant was brought over and cultivated in the northwestern provinces by persons from Khoten, where it was grown. If this tardy adoption seems difficult to explain, the still slower introduction of silk-growing (in A.D. 550) into Asia Minor from China, twelve centuries after her fabrics had been seen there, is more surprising. The opposition to cotton cultivation on the part of silk and hemp growers was so persistent that the plant had not fairly won its way into favor until the Yuen dynasty; and this was owing to a public-spirited woman, Lady Hwang, who distributed seeds throughout Kiangnan, now the great cotton region.

The durable cotton cloth made in the central provinces, called *nankeen* by foreigners, because Nanking is famous for its manufacture, is the chief produce of Chinese looms. It is now seldom sent out of the country, and the natives are even taking to the foreign fabric in its stead. Cotton seed in that part of China is sown early in June, about eighty pounds to an acre; in a good year the produce is about two thousand pounds, diminishing to one-half in poor seasons. It is manured with liquid bean-cake, often hoed, and the bolls gathered in October, usually by each family in its own plot. The seeds are separated by passing the pods between an iron and wooden roller on a frame, which presses out the seeds and does not break them. The cleaned cotton is then bowed ready for spinning, and the cloth is woven in simple looms by the people who are to wear it after it is dyed blue. The looms used in weaving cotton vary from twelve to sixteen inches in width; they are simple in their construction; no figures are woven in cotton fabrics, nor have the Chinese learned to print them as chintz or calico.

Digitized by Google

Whether the varied articles from the west now brought into close competition with this primitive Chinese manufacture will finally captivate the consumer's choice, and neutralize its production, depends chiefly on what can be substituted therefor. At present, such is the extent of the native crop that prices would not probably advance ten per cent. if the whole foreign importation of raw and manufactured cotton should suddenly stop. The only attempt to estimate the product has been in Kiangnan, at

The Cobbler and his Movable Workshop.

twenty-eight thousand five hundred tons, a figure below rather than above the truth.[1]

Leather is used to protect the felt soles of shoes and make saddles, bridles, quivers, harness, etc., but the entire consumption is small, and the leather extremely poor. Buffalo and horse-hides are tanned for sole leather, and calf-skin for upper leather to supply shoes for foreigners at the ports. Alum, saltpetre, gambier, and urine are the tanning materials employed, and the rapid manner in which the process is completed renders the leather both porous and tender.

Cobblers go about the streets plying their trade, provided

[1] *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. S.* (1859); *Chinese Repository*, XVIII., pp. 449–469; N. Rondot, *Commerce de la Chine*, 1849, p. 72; Fortune, *Wanderings*, Chap. XIV. (1847); Grosier, *Histoire de la Chine*, Tome III., pp. 193–204.

Digitized by Google

with a few bits of nankeen, silk, and yellowish sole leather with which to patch their customers' shoes. It is no small convenience to a man, as he passes along the street, to give his old shoe to a cobbler and his ragged jacket to a seamstress, while he calls the barber to shave him as he waits for them; and such a trio at work for a man is not an uncommon sight.

The chief woollen fabrics produced are felts of different qualities and rugs or carpets woven from coarse camel's-hair yarn. Tanned sheep-skins furnish the laboring poor in the northern provinces with clothing, and elsewhere felt supplies them with material for shoes, hats, and carpets. The fulling process is not very thoroughly done, and the fabric soon disintegrates unless protected by matting or cotton. The consumption of the good qualities for hats is large among out-door workmen, who prefer the doubled kind made in the shape of a hollow cycloid, so that it can be turned inside out. Camel's-hair rugs supply a durable and cheap covering for the brick divans and tiled floors in the colder districts, but the thick soles of Chinese shoes obviate the need of additional protection to the feet. Some of these rugs are fine specimens of art in their arrangement of patterns and figures in colored woollen yarns, though far inferior to the Persian. Pretty rugs are also made of dog, deer, and fox-skins sewed together in a kind of mosaic. Knitting and ornamental works in wool are unknown, since the far more elegant and durable embroidery in silk takes the place of these as fancy work among dames of high and low degree.

The subject of tea culture and the preparation of its leaf have engaged the attention of writers among the Chinese and Japanese; while its effects on the human system as a beverage have been discussed most carefully by eminent western chemists and pathologists. Its virtue in restoring the energies of the body and furnishing a drink of the gentlest and most salubrious nature has been fully tested in its native land for many centuries, and is rapidly becoming known the world over. The following are some of the leading facts relating to the plant and the preparation and nature of the leaf, derived from personal observation in the country or from the writings of competent observers.

Digitized by Google

Tea does not grow in the northern provinces of China and Japan; its range lies between the twenty-third and thirty-fifth degrees of latitude, and reaching in longitude from Yedo to Assam. No accounts have come to us of the tea shrub being cultivated for its infusion till A.D. 350. The people in different parts of China gave different names to the successive pickings of the leaves, which have now become disused. Our word *tea* is derived from the common sound of the character for the plant at the city of Amoy, where it is *tay;* at Canton and Peking it is *cha*, at Shanghai *dzo*, at Fuhchau *ta*. The Russians and Portuguese have retained the word *cha*, the Spanish is *te* or *tay*, and the Italians have both *te* and *cha*. Tea is so nearly akin to the various species of camellia that the Chinese have only one name for all. The principal difference to the common observer is in the thin leaf of the tea and the leathery glabrous leaf of the beautiful Camellia Japonica. When allowed to grow they both become high trees. The tea flower is small, single, and white, has no smell, and soon falls; its petals are less erect than the camellia. The seeds are three small nuts, like filberts in color, enclosed in a triangular shell which splits open when ripe, with valves between the seeds. Its taste is oily and bitter. Two species of camellia are cultivated for their oily seeds, the oil being known as tea-oil among the natives; it is used for lamps and cooking. There is probably only one species of the tea plant, and all the varieties have resulted from culture; but the *Thea viridis* is most cultivated. The nuts are ripe in October. They are put in a mixture of sand and earth, dampened to keep them fresh till spring; they generate heat and spoil if not thus separated. In March they are sown in a nursery, and the thrifty shoots transplanted the next year in rows about four feet apart. Leaves are collected when the plant is three years old, and this process is continued annually to a greater or less extent, according to the demand and strength, until the whole bush becomes so weak and diseased that it is pulled up for firewood to give place to a new shoot. On the average this is about the eighth year. The plants seldom exceed three feet; most of them are half that height, straggling and full of twigs, often covered with lichens, but well hoed and clean around their roots.

Digitized by Google

All tea plantations are merely patches of the shrubs cared for by small farmers, who cultivate the plants and sell the leaves to middle-men, or more often pick the crop themselves if they can afford to do so. The great plantation or farm, with its landlord and the needy laborer, each class trying to get as much as possible out of the other, are unknown in China; the farmer has not there learned to employ skill, machinery, and capital all for his own advantage, but each farmstead is worked by the family, who rather emulate each other in the reputation of their tea. Tea is cultivated on the slopes or bases of hills, where the drainage is quick and the moisture unfailing. This is of more consequence than the ingredients of the soil, but plants so continually depauperated and stripped require rich manure to supply their waste. In Japan the tea shrubs are sometimes grown as a hedge around a garden lot, but such plants are not stripped in this way. In gathering the earliest leaves, the pickers are careful to leave enough foliage at the end of the twigs; and the spring rains are depended on to stimulate the second and full crop of leaves. When these are scant or fail the tea harvest diminishes, and the regularity of the rains is so essential to a profitable cultivation that it will be one of the causes of failure where everything else in soil, climate, manuring, and manufacture may be favorable.

The first gathering is the most carefully done, for it goes to make the best sorts of black and green tea; and as the greatest part of the leaves are still undeveloped, the price must necessarily be very much higher. Such tea has a whitish down, like that on young birch leaves, and is called *pecoe*, or 'white hair,' and is most of it sent to England and Russia. In the last century, the green tea known as Young Hyson was made of these half-opened leaves picked in April and named from two words meaning 'rains before.' The second gathering varies somewhat according to the latitude—May 15th to June, when the foliage is fullest. This season is looked forward to by women and children in the tea districts as their working time; they run in crowds to the middle-men, who have bargained for the leaves on the plants, or apply to farmers who have not hands. The average produce is from sixteen to twenty-two ounces of green

Digitized by Google

leaves for the healthiest plants, down to ten and eight ounces. The tea when cured is about one-fifth of its first weight, and one thousand square yards will contain about three hundred and fifty plants, each two feet across. They strip the twigs in the most summary manner, and fill their baskets with healthy leaves as they pick out the sticks and yellow leaves, for they are paid in this manner. Fifteen pounds is a good day's work, and six to eight cents is a day's wages. The time for picking lasts only ten or twelve days. There are curing houses, where families who grow and pick their own leaves bring them for sale at the market rate. The sorting employs many hands, for it is an important point in connection with the purity of the various descriptions, and much care is taken by dealers, in maintaining the quality of their lots, to have them cured carefully as well as sorted properly.

The management of this great branch of industry exhibits some of the best features of Chinese country life. It is only over a portion of each farm that the plant is grown, and its cultivation requires but little attention compared with rice and vegetables. The most delicate kinds are looked after and cured by priests in their secluded temples among the hills; these often have many acolytes who aid in preparing small lots to be sold at a high price.

When the leaves are brought in to the curers they are thinly spread on shallow trays to dry off all moisture by two or three hours' exposure. Meanwhile the roasting pans are heating, and when properly warmed some handfuls of leaves are thrown on them, and rapidly moved and shaken up for four or five minutes. The leaves make a slight crackling noise, become moist and flaccid as the juice is expelled, and give off even a sensible vapor. The whole is then poured out upon the rolling table, where each workman takes up a handful and makes it into a manageable ball, which he rolls back and forth on the rattan table to get rid of the sap and moisture as the leaves are twisted. This operation chafes the hands even with great precaution. The balls are opened and shaken out and then passed on to other workmen, who go through the same operation till they reach the headman, who examines the leaves to see if they

Digitized by Google

have become curled. When properly done, and cooled, they are returned to the iron pans, under which a low charcoal fire is burning in the brickwork which supports them, and there kept in motion by the hand. If they need another rolling on the table it is now given them; an hour or more is spent in this manipu-

Mode of Firing Tea.

lation, when they are dried to a dull green color, and can be put away for sifting and sorting. This color becomes brighter after the exposure in sifting the cured leaves through sieves of various sizes; they are also winnowed to separate the dust, and afterward sorted into the various descriptions of green tea. Finally, the finer kinds are again fired three or four times, and

Digitized by Google

the coarse kinds, as Twankay, Hyson, and Hyson Skin, once. The others furnish the Young Hyson, Gunpowder, Imperial, etc. Tea cured in this way is called *luh cha*, or 'green tea,' by the Chinese, while the other, or black tea, is termed *hung cha*, or 'red tea,' each name being taken from the tint of the infusion.

After the fresh leaves are allowed to lie exposed to the air on the bamboo trays over night or several hours, they are thrown into the air and tossed about and patted till they become soft; a heap is made of these wilted leaves and left to lie for an hour or more, when they have become moist and dark in color. They are then thrown on the hot pans for five minutes and rolled on the rattan table, previous to exposure out-of-doors for three or four hours on sieves, during which time they are turned over and opened out. After this they get a second roasting and rolling to give them their final curl. When the charcoal fire is ready, a basket shaped something like an hour-glass is placed endwise over it, having a sieve in the middle on which the leaves are thinly spread. When dried five minutes in this way they undergo another rolling, and are then thrown into a heap, until all the lot has passed over the fire. When this firing is finished, the leaves are opened out and are again thinly spread on the sieve in the basket for a few minutes, which finishes the drying and rolling for most of the heap, and makes the leaves a uniform black. They are now replaced in the basket in greater mass, and pushed against its sides by the hands in order to allow the heat to come up through the sieve and the vapor to escape; a basket over all retains the heat, but the contents are turned over until perfectly dry and the leaves become uniformly dark.

It will be seen from this that green tea retains far more of the peculiar oil and sap in the leaves than the black, which undergo a partial fermentation and emit a sensibly warm vapor as they lie in heaps after the first roasting. They thus become oxidized by longer contact in a warm moist state with the atmosphere, and a delicate analysis will detect a greater amount of oxidized insoluble extract in an infusion of black than green tea. The same difference has been observed in

Digitized by Google

drying medicinal plants, as hemlock, belladonna, etc., for the apothecary's shop.

Green teas are mostly produced in the region south of the Yangtsz' River and west of Ningpo among the hills as one goes toward the Poyang Lake in Chehkiang and Nganhwui. The black tea comes from Fuhkien in the southeast and Hupeh and Hunan in the central region; Kwangtung and Sz'chuen provinces produce black, green, and brick teas. While the leaves of each species of the shrub can be cured into either green or black tea, the workmen in one district are able, by practice, to produce one kind in a superior style and quality; those in another region will do better with another kind. Soil, too, has a great influence, as it has in grape culture, in modifying the produce. Though the natives distinguish only these three kinds, their varieties are far too numerous to remember, and the names are mostly unknown in commerce.

Of black teas, the great mass is called *Congou*, or the 'well-worked,' a name which took the place of the *Bohea* of one hundred and fifty years ago, and is now itself giving way to the term English Breakfast tea. The finest sorts are either named from the place of their growth, or more frequently have fancy appellations in allusion to their color or form. Orange Pekoe is named "superior perfume;" pure Pekoe is "Lau-tsz' eyebrows;" "carnation hair," "red plum blossom," "lotus kernel," "sparrow's tongue," "dragon's pellet," "dragon's whiskers," "autumn dew," "pearl flower," or *Chu-lan*, are other names; *Souchong* and *Powchong* refer to the modes of packing.

In the trade, teas are more commonly classified by their locality than their names, as it is found that well-marked differences in the style of the produce continue year after year, all equally well-cured tea. These arise from diversities in soil, climate, age, and manufacturing, and furnish materials for still further multiplying the sorts by skilfully mixing them. Thus in black teas we have Hunan and Hupeh from two provinces, just as Georgia uplands and Sea Island indicate two sorts of cotton; Ningyong, Kai-sau, Ho-hau, Sing-chune-kí, etc., and many others, which are unknown out of China, are all names of places. One gentleman has given a list of localities, each furnishing its

Digitized by Google

quota and peculiar product, amounting in all to forty-five for black and nine for green. The area of these regions is about four hundred and seventy thousand square miles.

It will have been seen already that the color of green tea, as well as its quality, depends very much on rapid and expert drying. When this kind is intended for home consumption soon after it is made, the color is of little consequence; but when the hue influences the sale, then it is not to be overlooked by the manufacturer or the broker. The first tea brought to Europe was from Fuhkien and all black; but as the trade extended probably some of the delicate Hyson sorts were now and then seen at Canton, and their appearance in England and Holland appreciated as more and more was sent. It was found, however, to be very difficult to maintain a uniform tint. If cured too slightly, the leaf was liable to fermentation during the voyage; if cured too much, it was unmarketable, which for the manufacturer was worse yet. Chinese ingenuity was equal to the call. Though no patent office was at hand to register the date when coloring green tea commenced, it is probably more than one hundred years since. The three hundred and forty-two chests and half chests which were so summarily opened on board the Dartmouth, the Eleanor, and the Beaver, when their contents were thrown overboard in Boston harbor, on December 16, 1773, furnishes probably no index of the consumption of tea in New England at that time. It was all called Bohea by John Adams, who speaks of three cargoes, as if the vessels had nothing else of note in their holds.

Dr. Holmes, in his ballad on the Boston Tea Party at its centennial celebration, says in the last verse:

> The waters in the rebel bay
> Have kept the tea-leaf savor—
> Our old North Enders in their spray
> Still taste a Hyson flavor;
> And Freedom's teacup still o'erflows
> With ever fresh libations,
> To cheat of slumber all her foes
> And cheer the wakening nations.

It has been noticed that emigrants to Australia, who had seldom tasted green tea before leaving England, usually prefer it in

Digitized by Google

their new homes, as new settlers do in this country. The prevailing notion that green tea is cured on copper arose, no doubt, from the conclusion that real verdigris was the only source of a verdigris color, and the astringent taste confirmed the wrong idea. A more difficult question to answer is the inquiry, Why is it still believed?

The operation of giving green tea its color is a simple one. A quantity of Prussian blue is pulverized to a very fine powder, and kept ready at the last roasting. Pure gypsum is burned in the charcoal fire till it is soft and fit for easily triturating. Four parts are then thoroughly mixed with three parts of Prussian blue, making a light blue powder. About five minutes before finally taking off the dried leaves this powder is sprinkled on them, and instantly the whole panful of two or three pounds is turned over by the workman's hands till a uniform color is obtained. His hands come out quite blue, but the compound gives the green leaves a brighter green hue. The quantity is not great, say about half a pound in a hundred of tea; and as gypsum is not a dangerous or irritating substance, being constantly eaten by the Chinese, the other ingredient remains in an almost infinitesimal degree. If foreigners preferred yellow teas no doubt they could be favored, for the Chinese are much perplexed to account for this strange predilection, as they never drink this colored or faced tea. Turmeric root has been detected, too, in a very few analyses, but probably these were lots that needed to be refined at Canton to cover up mildew or supply a demand. The reasons for not drinking this tea are, however, owing more to the nature than the color of the leaf. The kinds of green tea are fewer than the black, and the regions producing it are less in area. Gunpowder and Imperial are foreign-made terms; the teas are known as *siau chu* and *ta chu* by native dealers. The first is rolled to resemble shot or coarse gunpowder; the other is named "sore crab's eyes," "sesamum seeds," and "pearls." Hyson is a corruption of *yu-tsien*, 'before the rains,' and of *Hi-chun*, meaning 'flourishing spring.' The last is alleged to be the name of a maiden who suggested to her father as long ago as 1700, or thereabouts, a better mode of sorting tea, and his business increased so much as his

Digitized by Google

fine Hyson became known that he gave it her name. Members of this same family are still engaged in making this same tea, and the chop, known as the *Li Yih-hing*, or 'Li's Extra Perfume,' is now in market, and has maintained its reputation for nearly two hundred years. Oolong is obtained in Fuhkien—a black tea with a green tea flavor, named Black Dragon from a story that Su was struck with the fragrance of the leaf from a plant where a black snake was found coiled. The great mart for green tea is Twankay, in Chehkiang province.

A *chop* is a well-known term in the tea trade; it is derived from the Chinese word *chop*, or 'stamp', such as an official uses, and in the tea trade denotes a certain number of packages from the same place, and all of the same quality. In the course of years the uniform excellence of a certain chop, like that of a certain vineyard, gives it a marketable value. A lawsuit arose in 1873 between two American houses at Canton in regard to the right to a certain chop of tea, among two brokers, each of whom claimed to sell the genuine lot. Such chops range from fifty to one thousand two hundred chests, averaging six hundred. English tea-tasters have learned that an admixture of scented teas in common sorts of Congou adds much to the flavor and sale. This is not often done for native-drank tea, and is chiefly practised at Canton. The flowers used are roses, Olea fragrans, tuberose, orange, jasmine, gardenia, and azalea. The stems, calyx, and other parts are carefully sorted out, so that only the petals remain. When the tea is ready for packing, dry and warm, the fresh flowers are mixed with it (forty pounds to one hundred pounds for the orange), and left thus in a mass for twenty-four hours; it is then sifted and winnowed in a fanning mill till the petals are separated. If the odor is insufficient, the operation may be repeated with the jasmine or orange. The proportion of jasmine is a little more than orange; of the azalea, nearly half and half. The length of time required to obtain the proper smell from these flowers differs, and among them all tea scented with the azalea is said to keep its perfume the longest.

The mode of scenting tea differs somewhat according to the flower itself, for the small blossom of the Olea cannot be separated by sifting as rose or jasmine leaves can. Tea thus

Digitized by Google

perfumed is sent to England as Orange Pekoe and Scented Caper. It is mixed with fine teas; and there is much to commend in thus increasing the aroma and taste of this healthy beverage. The Scented Caper comes in the form of round pellets, which are made of black tea softened by sprinkling water on it until it is pliable; it is then tied in canvas bags and rolled with the feet by treading on it for a good while till most of the quantity takes this form; as soon as perfumed it is packed for shipment. When rolled and dried, such tea needs only a facing to make it into Imperial and Gunpowder among the green teas.

The Chinese have been charged with adulterating their tea by mixing in other leaves with the true tea-leaf, and adding other ingredients far worse than rose, jujube, and fern leaves, and the cases which have been proved of *lie-tea* being sent off have been applied to the entire export. The stimulus for some of this adulteration has come from the foreigner, who desires to get good pure tea at half its cost of manufacture. The foregoing details will plainly show that an article which has to go through so many hands before its infusion is poured out of the teapot on the other side of the world, and where the only machinery used is a fanning mill and a roasting pan, cannot be furnished at much under twenty-five cents a pound for the common sorts. The villanous mixture known at Shanghai as *ma-lu cha*, or 'race-course tea,' was the answer on the part of the native manufacturer to the demand for cheap tea, until the consumers in Great Britain protested at the deception put on them, and its importation was prohibited. Which of the parties was most blameworthy may be left for them to settle, but in our own papers, of course, most of the blame rested on the tempted party. It is not to be inferred, however, that all cheap tea is adulterated. The process of manufacture leaves a large percentage of broken material, which can be worked into passable tea; the produce of many regions has not the flavor of the finest sorts, and, as it is with wines, will not bear so much cost in curing. The tea brokers know this, and things equalize themselves. The dust, the leaf ribs, and the siftings are all consumed by the poor natives, who mix other leaves, too, with the real leaf. Tea can perhaps bear comparison with any other great staple of food in

Digitized by Google

this respect; and when we can fairly estimate the consumption of tea sent out of China and Japan at more than three hundred millions of pounds, it must be conceded that it is a very pure article—not as much, probably, as even five per cent. of false leaf.

One mode of using tea known among Tibetans and Mongols remains to be noticed. The rich province of Sz'chuen, in the western part of China, furnishes an abundance of good tea; much of which is exported to Russia by way of Sí-ngan fu and Kansuh, to supply the inhabitants of Siberia. This brick tea is cured by pressing the damp leaves into the form of a brick or tile, varying in size and weight, eight to twelve inches long and one thick; in this form it is far more easily carried than in the leaf. In Tibet, as we have seen, it appears more as a soup than an infusion. The brick tea is composed of coarse leaves, or of stalks moistened by steaming over boiling water, and then pressed till dry and hard. When used, a piece is broken off and simmered with milk and butter and water, with a touch of vinegar or pepper. The dish is not inviting at first, but Abbé Huc endorses its refreshing qualities in restoring the failing energies. The pressing and drying is assisted by sprinkling the mass with rice-water as it is forced into the moulds. The Chinese mix other leaves with real tea to eke it out, in districts where it is not commonly grown, but they do not regard this as adulteration. Willow leaves are common in such mixtures. Large caravans cross the plateau laden with brick tea.

Packing tea is mostly done in the interior, where it is cured. The large dry leaves frequently found inside are usually furnished by a peculiar species of bamboo; the lead is made into thin sheets by pouring the melted metal on to a large square brick, covered with several thicknesses of paper, and letting another brick drop down instantly on it. In order to test the honesty of the packing, the foreign merchant often walks over the three hundred to six hundred chests which make a chop, and selects any four or five he may choose for examination. If they stand the inspection the whole is taken on their guaranty, and are then weighed, papered, labelled, and mottoed ready for shipping. In all these matters the Chinese are very expert. It

Digitized by Google

is impossible to calculate the number of persons to whom the tea trade furnishes employment; nor could machinery well come into use to displace human labor.

The introduction of tea among western nations was slow at first. Marco Polo has no notice of its use. The Dutch brought it to Europe in 1591 according to some accounts; but a sample or two did not make a trade, and there would have been reference to it if it had been used. In 1660 Samuel Pepys writes, September 28th: "I did send for a cup of tea (a China drink), of which I had never drank before." Nearly seven years after he says: "Home, and there find my wife making of tea, a drink which Mr. Pellin, the pothicary, tells her is good for her cold and defluxions." In 1670 the importation into England was 79 pounds; in 1685 it was 12,070 pounds; most of it came from Batavia and sold for a long time between £10 and £5 a pound weight. In 1657 Mr. Garney opened a shop in London to sell the infusion, and paid an excise of 8d. per gallon; the present duty is 2s. 1d. per pound, or 4⅓ pounds to each person in a year, nearly all of which, as it is in Europe and elsewhere, is black tea. In 1725 only 375,000 pounds were consumed in Great Britain. The actual quantity now in the United Kingdom is 126,000,000 pounds, besides much on the way. The importation into the United States is worth $18,000,000 to $19,000,000, say 60,000,000 pounds. Russia takes more good tea than any other nation and pays more for it, because the former overland trade to Siberia could not afford to transport poor tea. The export from Assam is now 20,000,000 pounds, but those sorts are too strong for the public taste when used alone, and are consumed in mixtures. Tea is a native of Assam, but its discovery only dates from 1836 or thereabouts. It is cultivated in Java and Brazil, but there is not much to encourage the manufacturer in any country where coffee supplies a similar beverage, and the price of labor makes it equal to the imported article.

The remarkable work on agriculture of Paul Sü, a convert to Christianity in 1620, contains a brief account and directions for cultivating tea. In concluding the chapter he urges the greater use of tea as against spirits. "Tea is of a cooling nature, and if drunk too freely will produce exhaustion and lassitude. Country

Digitized by Google

people before drinking it add ginger and salt to counteract this cooling property. It is an exceedingly useful plant; cultivate it and the benefit will be widely spread; drink it and the animal spirits will be lively and clear. The chief rulers, lords, and great men esteem it; the lower people, the poor and beggarly, will not be destitute of it; all use it daily and like it."

The chemical analyses which have made known to us the components of the four or five substances used as warm beverages, viz., tea, coffee, maté, cocoa, guarana, and kola, indicate three constituents found in them, to which, no doubt, their virtues are owing.

A volatile oil is observed when tea is distilled with water; about one pound comes from one hundred pounds of dried tea, possessing its peculiar aroma and flavor to a high degree. Much of it is pressed from the leaves when rolled and cured, but little as still remains, its effects upon the human system are noticeable and sometimes powerful. Tea-tasters who continually taste the quality of the various lots submitted by sample for their approval, do so by breathing upon a handful of leaves and instantly covering the nose, so as to get this volatile aroma as one important test. They also examine the infusion in several different ways, by its taste, color, and strength. Long practice in this business is alleged to have deleterious influence upon their nervous systems. The other beverages we drink, as well as tea, derive their peculiar and esteemed flavor and aroma from chemical substances produced in them during the process of drying and roasting; at least nothing of them can be perceived in their natural state. Another substance in tea regarded as the chief inducement and reward in its effect on the system is the peculiar principle called theine. If a few finely powdered leaves are placed on a watch-glass, covered with a paper cap and placed on a hot plate, a white vapor slowly rises and condenses in the cap in the form of colorless crystals. They exist in different proportions in the different kinds of tea, from one and one-half to five or six per cent. in green tea. Theine has no smell and a slightly bitter taste, and does not therefore attract us to drink the infusion; but the chemists tell us that it contains nearly thirty per cent. of nitrogen. The salts in

Digitized by Google

other beverages, as coffee and cocoa, likewise contain much nitrogen, and all tend to repair the waste going on in the human system, reduce the amount of solid food necessary, diminish too the wear and tear of the body and consequent lassitude of the mind, and maintain the vigor of both upon a smaller amount of food. Tea does this more pleasantly, perhaps, than any of the others; but it does more than they do for old people in supplementing the impaired powers of digestion, and helping them to maintain their flesh and uphold the system in health longer than they otherwise would. It is no wonder, therefore, that tea has become one of the necessaries of life; and the sexagenarian invalid, too poor to buy a bit of meat for her meal, takes her pot of tea with what she has, and knows that she feels lighter, happier, and better fitted for her toil, and enjoys life more than if she had no tea. Unconsciously she echoes what the Chinese said centuries ago, "Drink it, and the animal spirits will be lively and clear."

The third substance (which is contained in tea more than in the other beverages mentioned) forms also an important ingredient in betel-nut and gambier, so extensively chewed in Southern Asia, viz., tannin or tannic acid. This gives the astringent taste to tea-leaves and their infusion, and is found to amount to seventeen per cent. in well-dried black tea, and much more than that in green tea, especially the Japan leaf. The effects of tannin are not clearly ascertained as apart from the oil and the theine, but Johnston considers them as conducing to the exhilarating, satisfying, and narcotic action of the beverage.

A remaining ingredient worthy of notice in tea, in common with other food-plants, is gluten. This forms one-fourth of the weight of the leaves, but in order to derive the greatest good from it which proper methods of cooking might bring out, we must contrive a mode of eating the leaves. The nutritious property of the gluten accounts for the general use of brick tea throughout the Asiatic plateau. Huc says he drank the dish in default of something better, for he was unaccustomed to it, but his cameleers would often take twenty to forty cups a day.

Digitized by Google

If the sanitary effects of tea upon the system are so great and wholesome, its influence since its general introduction among occidentals cannot be overlooked. The domestic, quiet life and habits of the Chinese owe much of their strength to the constant use of this beverage, for the weak infusion which they sip allows them to spend all the time they choose at the tea-table. If they were in the habit of sipping even their weak whiskey in the same way, misery, poverty, quarrels, and sickness would take the place of thrift, quiet, and industry. The general temperance seen among them is owing to the tea much more than any other cause. It has, moreover, won its way with us, till in the present generation the associations that cluster around the tea-table form an integral part of the social life among English-speaking peoples. One of the most likely means to restrict the use of spirits among them is to substitute the use of warm beverages of all kinds by those whose system has not become vitiated. Tea is one of the greatest benefits to the Chinese, Japanese, and Mongols, and its universal use, for at least fifteen centuries, throughout their territories has proven its satisfaction as a nervine, a stimulant, and a beverage. If one passing through the streets of Peking, Canton, or Ohosaka, and seeing the good-natured hilarity of the groups of laborers and loiterers around the *cha-kwan* and the *cha-ya* of those cities, doubts the value of tea as a harmonizer and satisfier of human wants and passions, it must be taken as a proof of his own unsatisfied cravings.

It is a necessary of life to all classes of natives, and that its use is not injurious is abundantly evident from its general acceptance and increasing adoption; the prejudice against the beverage out of China may be attributed chiefly to the use of strong green tea, which is no doubt prejudicial. If those who have given it up on this account will adopt a weaker infusion of black tea, general experience is proof that it will do them no harm, and they may be sure that they will not be so likely to be deceived by a colored article. Neither the Chinese nor Japanese use milk or sugar in their tea, and the peculiar taste and aroma of the infusion is much better perceived without those additions. Tea, when clear, cannot be drunk so strong

Digitized by Google

without tasting an unpleasant bitterness, which these diluents partly hide.[1]

Among other vegetable productions whose preparation affords employment are cassia and camphor. The cassia tree (*Cinnamomum cassia*) grows commonly in Kwangsí, Yunnan, and further south; the leading mart for all the varieties of this spice in China is Ping-nan, in the former of these provinces. The kind known as *kwei-pí*, or 'skinny cassia,' affords the principal part of that spice used at the west. The bark is stripped from the twigs by running a knife along the branch and gradually loosening it; after it is taken off it lies a day in the sun, when the epidermis is easily scraped off, and it is dried into the quilled shape in which it comes to market. The immature flowers of this and two other species of Cinnamomum are also collected and dried under the name of *cassia buds*, and often packed with the bark; they require little or no other preparation than simple drying. The leaves and bark of the tree are also distilled, and furnish oil of cassia, a powerful and pleasant oil employed by perfumers and cooks. Few genera of plants are more useful to man than those included under the old name of Laurus, to which these fragrant spices of cassia and cinnamon belong; their wood, bark, buds, seeds, flowers, leaves, and oil are all used by the Chinese in carpentry, medicine, perfumery, and cookery. The confusion arising from using the term *cassia* for the spice instead of confining it to the medicine (*Cassia senna*) has been a constant source of error.

The camphor tree (*Camphora officinarum*) is another species of Laurus, found along the southern maritime regions and Formosa, and affords both timber and gum for exportation and domestic use. The tree itself is large, and furnishes excellent planks, beams, and boards. The gum is procured from the branches, roots, leaves, and chips by soaking them in water until the liquid becomes saturated; a gentle heat is then applied to this solution, and the sublimed camphor received in inverted cones made of rice-straw, from which it is detached in impure

[1] Fortune's *Tea Districts* (1852); *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VIII., pp. 132–164, Vol. XVIII., pp. 13–18; Davis' *Chinese*, Vol. II., pp. 336–449; *Chinese Commercial Guide* (1863), pp. 141–148; Ball's *Tea Culture and Manufacture*.

Digitized by Google

grains, resembling unrefined sugar in color. Grosier describes another mode of getting it by taking out the coagulum inspissated from the solution into an iron dish and covering with powdered earth; two or three layers are thus placed in the dish, when a cover is luted on, and by a slow heat the camphor sublimes into it in a cake. It comes to market in a crude state, and is refined after reaching Europe. The preparation of the gum, sawing the timber for trunks, articles of furniture, and vessels in whole or in part, occupies great numbers of carpenters, shipwrights, and boat-builders. The increasing demand for the gum and boards has caused the rapid destruction of so many trees in Formosa that there is some ground for fear lest they ere long be all cut off.

Many of the common manipulations of Chinese workmen afford good examples of their ingenious modes of attaining the same end which is elsewhere reached by complex machinery. For instance, the baker places his fire on a large iron plate worked by a crane, and swings it over a shallow pan embedded in masonry, in which the cakes and pastry are laid and soon baked. The price of fuel compels its economical use wherever it is employed; in the forge, the kitchen, the kiln, or the dwelling, no waste of wood or coal is seen. As an instance in point, the mode of burning shells to lime affords a good example. A low wall encloses a space ten or twelve feet across, in the middle of which a hole communicates underneath the wall through a passage to the pit, where the fire is urged by a fan turned by the feet. The wood is loosely laid over the bottom of the area, and the fire kindled at the orifice in the centre and fanned into a blaze as the shells are rapidly thrown in until the wall is filled up; in twelve hours the shells are calcined. Toward evening scores of villagers collect around the burning pile, bringing their kettles of rice or vegetables to cook. The good-humor manifested by these groups of old and young is a pleasing instance of the sociability and equality witnessed among the lower classes of Chinese. The lime is taken out next morning and sifted for the mason.

Handicraftsmen of every name are content with coarse-looking tools compared with those turned out at Sheffield, but the

Digitized by Google

work produced by some of them is far from contemptible. The bench of a carpenter is a low, narrow, inclined form, like a drawing-knife frame, upon which he sits to plane, groove, and work his boards, using his feet and toes to steady them. His augurs, bits, and gimlets are worked with a bow, but most of the edge-tools employed by him and the blacksmith, though similar in shape, are less convenient than our own. They are sharpened with hones or grindstones, and also with a cold steel like a spoke-shave, with which the edge is scraped thin. The aptitude of Chinese workmen has often been noticed, and

Travelling Blacksmith and Equipment.

among them all the travelling blacksmith takes the palm for his compendious establishment. "I saw a blacksmith a few days since," writes one observer, "mending a pan, the arrangement of whose tools was singularly compact. His fire was held in an iron basin not unlike a coal-scuttle in shape, in the back corner of which the mouthpiece of the bellows entered. The anvil was a small square mass of iron, not very unlike our own, placed on a block, and a partition basket close by held the charcoal and tools, with the old iron and other rubbish he carried. The water to temper his iron was in an earthen pot, which just at this time was most usefully employed in boiling his dinner over the forge fire After he had done the job he took off his

Digitized by Google

dinner, threw the water on the fire, picked out the coals and put them back into the basket, threw away the ashes, set the anvil astride of the bellows, and laying the fire-pan on the basket, slung the bellows on one end of his pole and the basket on the other, and walked off."[1] The mode of mending holes in cast-iron pans here noticed is a peculiar operation. The smith first files the lips of the hole clean, and after heating the dish firmly

Itinerant Dish-mender.

places it on a tile covered with wet felt. He then pours the liquid iron, fused in a crucible by the assistance of a flux, upon the hole, and immediately patters it down with a dossil of felt until it covers the edges of the pan above and below, and is then, while cooling, hammered until firmly fixed in its place.

Another ingenious and effectual method of mending porcelain and all manner of crockery ware is performed by itinerant workmen, who travel about with their workshop on their

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. X., p. 473.

Digitized by Google

shoulders, as seen in the cut. By means of minute copper clamps, even the most delicate article of China-ware may be repaired and made to answer the purpose of a new piece; since no cement is used in this style of mending, it has the additional advantage of standing immersion in water.

The great number of craftsmen who ply their vocations in the street, as well as the more numerous class of hucksters who supply food as they go from house to house, furnish much to amuse and interest. Each of them has a peculiar call. The barber twangs a sort of tweezers like a long tuning-fork, the peddler twirls a hand-drum with clappers strung on each side, the refuse-buyer strikes a little gong, the fruiterer claps two bamboo sticks, and the fortune-teller tinkles a gong-bell; these, with the varied calls and cries of beggars, cadgers, chapmen, etc., fill the streets with a concert of strange sounds.

The delicate carving of Chinese workmen has often been described; many specimens of it are annually sent abroad. Few products of their skill are more remarkable than the balls containing ten or twelve separate spheres one within another. The manner of cutting them is ingenious. A piece of ivory or wood is first made perfectly globular, and then several conical holes are bored into it in such a manner that their apices all meet at the centre, which becomes hollow as the holes are bored into it. The sides of each having been marked with lines to indicate the number of globes to be cut out, the workman inserts a chisel or burin with a semicircular blade, bent so that the edge cuts the ivory, as the shaft is worked on the pivot, at the same depth in each hole. By successively cutting a little on the inside of each conical hole, the incisures meet, and a sphericle is at last detached, which is now turned over and its faces one after another brought opposite the largest hole, and firmly secured by wedges in the other apertures, while its surfaces are smoothed and carved. When the central sphere is done, a similar tool, somewhat larger, is again introduced into the holes, and another sphere detached and smoothed in the same way, and then another, until the whole is completed, each being polished and carved before the next outer one is commenced. It takes three or four months to complete a ball

Digitized by Google

with fifteen inner globes, the price of which ranges from twenty to thirty dollars, according to the delicacy of the carving. Some writers have asserted that these curious toys were made of semispheres nicely luted together, and they have been boiled in oil for hours in order to separate them and solve the mystery of their construction.

Fans and card-cases are carved of wood, ivory, and mother-of-pearl in alto-relievo, with an elaborateness which shows the great skill and patience of the workman, and at the same time his crude conception of drawing, the figures, houses, trees, and other objects being grouped in violation of all propriety and perspective. Beautiful ornaments are made by carving roots of plants, branches, gnarled knots, etc., into fantastic groups of birds or animals, the artist taking advantage of the natural form of his material in the arrangement of his figures. Models of pagodas, boats, and houses are entirely constructed of ivory, even to representing the ornamental roofs, the men working at the oar, and women looking from the balconies. Baskets of elegant shape are woven from ivory splinths; and the shopmen at Canton exhibit a variety of seals, paper-knives, chessmen, counters, combs, etc., exceeding in finish and delicacy the same kind of work found anywhere else in the world. The most elaborate coat of arms, or complicated cypher, will also be imitated by these skilful carvers. The national taste prefers this style of carving on plane surfaces; it is seen on the walls of houses and granite slabs of fences, the woodwork of boats and shops, and on articles of furniture. Most of it is pretty, but the disproportion and cramped position of the figures detract from its beauty when judged by strict rules of western art.

The manufacture of enamels and cloisonné wares has lately received a great stimulus from their foreign demand. A copper vase is formed of the desired shape by hammering and soldering, on whose clean surface the figures to be enamelled are etched to show where the strips of copper are to be soldered before their interspaces are enamelled. This solder is made of borax and silver, and melts at a higher temperature than the enamel, which is reduced to a paste and filled into each cell of the pattern by brushes and styles, until the whole design is

Digitized by Google

gone over. The various colored *liao*, or ingredients, are prepared in cakes by artists who keep their composition secret, but all the substances occur in China. The quality of the ware depends on the skill in mixing these cakes and fusing the colors in a charcoal fire, into which the piece is placed; imperfections and holes are covered and filled up when it is cooled, and the piece is again and again exposed to the fire. After the third ordeal it is ground smooth and polished on a lathe, and the brass work gilt. The specimens now made show very fine work, but their coloring hardly equals those of Kienlung's reign or still earlier in the Ming dynasty. Much inferior work has also been palmed off for that of the golden period of this art.

Fancy Carved Work.

The manufacture of mats for sails of junks and boats, floors, bedding, etc., employs thousands. A sail containing nearly four hundred square feet can be obtained for ten dollars. The rolls are largely exported, and still more extensively used in the country for covering packages for shipment. A stouter kind made of bamboo splinths serves as a material for huts, and fulfils many other purposes that are elsewhere attained by boards or canvas. Rattans are largely worked into mats, chairs, baskets, and other articles of domestic service. Several branches of manufacture have entirely grown up, or been much encouraged by the foreign trade, among which the preparation of vermilion, beating gold-leaf, cutting pearl buttons, dyeing and trimming pith-paper for artificial flowers, weaving and painting fancy window-blinds, and the preparation of sweetmeats are the principal.

The beautiful vermilion exported from Canton is prepared by triturating one part of quicksilver with two of sulphur until

Digitized by Google

they form a blackish powder, which is put into a crucible having an iron lid closely luted down. When the fire acts on the mixture the lid is cooled to effect the sublimation; the deposit on the top is cinnabar and that on the sides is vermilion, according to the Chinese; all of them are powdered, levigated, decanted, and dried on tiles for use in painting and pharmacy, coloring candles and paper, and making red ink. The excellence of Chinese vermilion depends on the thoroughness of the grinding.[1]

It has often been said that the Chinese are so averse to change and improvement that they will obstinately adhere to their own modes, but, though slow to alter well-tried methods, such is not the case. Three new manufactures have been introduced during the present century, viz., that of glass, bronze-work, and Prussian blue. A Chinese sailor brought home the manufacture of the latter, which he had learned thoroughly in London, and the people now supply themselves. Works in bronze and brass have of late been set up, and watches and clocks are both extensively manufactured, with the exception of the springs. Fire-engines in imitation of foreign hand-engines are gradually coming into use. Brass cannon were made during the war with England in imitation of pieces taken from a wreck, and the frames of one or two vessels to be worked with wheels by men at a crank, in imitation of steamers, were found on the stocks at Ningpo when the English took the place. Since then the establishment of government arsenals at Fuhchau, Shanghai, Nanking, and Tientsin has stimulated and suggested as well as taught the people many applications of machinery. Yet until they can see their way clear to be remunerated for their outlay, it is unwise to urge or start doubtful experiments. This was shown at Canton ten years ago when a native company was formed to spin cotton yarn by steam machinery, and when the apparatus was all ready for work the cotton growers were quite unwilling to trust their raw cotton out of their hands. Moreover, it should be observed that few have taken the trouble to

[1] Compare an article by Julien in the *Nouv. Journ. Asiatique*, Tome V., 1830, pp. 208 ff.

Digitized by Google

explain or show them the improvements they are supposed to be so disinclined to adopt. Ploughs have been given the farmers near Shanghai, but they would not use them, which, however, may have been as much owing to the want of a proper harness, or a little instruction regarding their use, as to a dislike to take a new article.

The general aspect of Chinese society, in an industrial point of view, is one of its most pleasing features. The great body of the people are obliged to engage in manual labor in order to subsist, yet only a trifling proportion of them can be called beggars, while still fewer possess such a degree of wealth that they can live on its income. Property is safe enough to afford assurance to honest toil that it shall generally reap the reward of its labors, but if that toil prosper beyond the usual limits, the avarice of officials and the envy of neighbors easily find a multitude of contrivances to harass and impoverish the fortunate man, and the laws are not executed with such strictness as to deter them. The mechanical arts supply their wants, but having no better models before them, nor any scientific acquaintance with elementary principles and powers applicable to a great number of purposes, these arts have remained stationary. The abundance of labor must be employed, and its cheapness obviates the necessity of finding substitutes in machinery. The adoption of even a few things from abroad might involve so many changes, that even those intelligent natives who saw their advantages would hesitate in view of the momentous contingencies of a failure. The conflict between capital and labor in its various phases and struggles is becoming more and more marked the world over as civilization advances, and the Chinese polity is destined to endure its greatest strain in adjusting their forces among its industrious millions.

Imitation is a remarkable trait in the Chinese mind, though invention is not altogether wanting; the former leads the people to rest content with what they can get along with, even at some expense of time and waste of labor, where, too, an exhibition of ingenuity and science would perhaps be accompanied with suspicion, expense, or hindrances from both neighbors and rulers. The existence of the germ of arts and discoveries, whose devel-

Digitized by Google

opment would have brought with them so many advantages and pointed to still further discoveries, leads one to inquire the reason why they were not carried out. Setting aside the view, which may properly be taken, that the wonderful discoveries now made in the arts by Europeans form part of God's great plan for the redemption of the race, the want of mutual confidence, insecurity of property, and debasing effects of heathenism upon the intellect will explain much of the apathy shown toward improvement. Invention among them has rather lacked encouragement than ceased to exist:—more than that, it has been checked by a suspicious, despotic sway, while no stimulus of necessity has existed to counterbalance and urge it forward, and has been stunted by the mode and materials of education. It was not till religious liberty and discussion arose in Europe that the inhabitants began to improve in science and arts as well as morals and good government; and when the ennobling and expanding principles of an enlarged civilization find their way into Chinese society and mind, it may reasonably be expected that rapid advances will be made in the comforts of this life, as well as in adopting the principles and exhibiting the conduct which prove a fitness for the enjoyments of the next.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVI.

SCIENCE AMONG THE CHINESE.

THAT enlargement of the mind which results from the collection and investigation of facts, or from extensive reading of books on whose statements reliance can be placed, and which leads to the cultivation of knowledge for its own sake, has no existence in China. Sir John Davis justly observes that the Chinese "set no value on abstract science, apart from some obvious and immediate end of utility;" and he properly compares the actual state of the sciences among them with their condition in Europe previous to the adoption of the inductive mode of investigation. Even their few theories in explanation of the mysteries of nature are devoid of all fancy to make amends for want of fact and experiment, so that in reading them we are neither amused by their imagination nor instructed by their research. Perhaps the rapid advances made by Europeans, during the two past centuries, in the investigation of nature in all her departments and powers, has made us somewhat impatient of such a parade of nonsense as Chinese books exhibit. In addition to the general inferiority of Chinese mind to European in genius and imagination, it has moreover been hampered by a language the most tedious and meagre of all tongues, and wearied with a literature abounding in tiresome repetitions and unsatisfactory theories. Under these conditions, science, whether mathematical, physical, or natural, has made few advances during the last few centuries, and is now awaiting a new impulse from abroad in all its departments.

Murray's *China* (Vol. III., Chap. IV.) contains a fair account of the attainments of the Chinese in mathematics and astronomy. The notation of the Chinese is based on the decimal principle,

Digitized by Google

but as their figures are not changed in value by position, it is difficult to write out clearly the several steps in solving a problem. Experiments have shown that it is easy enough to perform them with Chinese figures used in our way, omitting the characters for 100, 1,000, and 10,000 (*peh*, *tsien*, and *wan*); but it will be long before the change will become general, even if it be desirable. Arithmetical calculations are performed with the assistance of an abacus, called a *swanpan*, or 'counting-board,' which is simply a shallow case divided longitudinally by a bar and crossed by several wires; on one side of this bar the wires bear five balls, on the other two. The five balls stand for units, the two balls being each worth five units. When the balls on any wire are taken for units, those next to the right stand for tens, the third for hundreds, and so on; while those on the left denote tenths, hundredths, etc. Simple calculations are done on this machine with accuracy and rapidity, but as it is only a convenient index for the progress and result of a calculation performed in the head, if an error be made the whole must be performed again, since the result only appears when the sum is finished. There are three sorts of figures, partly answering to the English, Roman, and Arabic forms—as *Seven*, VII., and 7—the most common of which are given on page 619 of Vol. I.; the complicated form is used for security in drafts and bills, and the abbreviated in common operations, accounts, etc., and in setting down large amounts in a more compact form than can be done by the other characters. This mode of notation is employed by the Japanese and Cochinchinese, and possesses some advantages over the method of using letters practised by the Greeks and Romans, as well as over the counters once employed in England, but falls far behind the Arabic system now in general use in the west.

Treatises on arithmetic are common, in which the simple rules are explained and illustrated by examples and questions. One of the best is the *Swan-fah Tung Tsung*, or 'General Comprehensive Arithmetic,' in five volumes, octavo, the author of which, Ching Yu-sz', lived in the Ming dynasty. The *Tsu-wei-shan Fang Sho Hioh*, or 'Mathematics of the Lagerstræmia Hill Institution,' in thirty-eight books, octavo, 1828, contains a com-

Digitized by Google

plete course of mathematical instruction in geometry, trigonometry, mensuration, etc., together with a table of natural sines and tangents, and one of logarithmic sines, tangents, secants, etc., for every degree and minute. Both these compilations derive most of their value from the mathematical writings of the Roman Catholic missionaries; it is stated in the latter work that "the western scholar, John Napier, made logarithms."

The study of arithmetic has attracted attention among the Chinese from very early times, and the notices found in historical works indicate some treatises even extant in the Han dynasty, followed by a great number of general and particular works down to the Sung dynasty. One author of the Tang dynasty, in his problems on solid mensuration, offered one thousand taels of silver to whoever found a single word of error in the book. The Hindu processes in algebra were known to Chinese mathematicians, and are still studied, though all intellectual intercourse between the countries has long ceased. Down to the end of the Ming dynasty, these branches made slow progress. Since foreigners have begun to apply western science, the development has been rapid. Mr. Wylie has given, in his *Notes on Chinese Literature* (pp. 86–104), a digested account of the most valuable native works on astronomy and mathematics. One very comprehensive work on them is the *Thesaurus of Mathematics and Chronology*, published by imperial order about 1750.

The knowledge of mathematics, even among learned men, is very small, and the common people study it only as far as their business requires; the cumbersome notation and the little aid such studies give in the examinations doubtless discourage men from pursuing what they seem to have no taste for as a people.[1] A curious fact regarding the existence of six errors in these tables, discovered by Babbage to have been perpetuated in most of the European logarithmic tables since the publication of the *Trigonometria Artificialis* of Vlacq in 1633, proves the source whence the Chinese derived them, and their imitative fidelity in copying them. Chinese authors readily acknowledge the

[1] See *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. I., p. 166, and Vol. III., p. 153.

Digitized by Google

superiority of western mathematicians, and generally ascribe their advances in the exact sciences to them.

The attainments made by the ancient Chinese in astronomy are not easily understood from their scanty records, for the mere notice of an eclipse is a very different thing from its calculation or description. They have been examined recently with renewed interest and care in view of the discoveries at Nineveh, which have furnished so many reliable notices in Western Asia of early days, and may lend some rays of light to illustrate the history and condition of Eastern Asia when more fully studied. The *Book of Records* contains some notices of instructions given by Yao to his astronomers Hí and Ho to ascertain the solstices and equinoxes, to employ intercalary months, and to fix the four seasons, in order that the husbandman might know when to commit his seed to the ground. If the time of the deluge be reckoned, according to Hales, at B.C. 3155, there will be an interval of about eight centuries to the days of Yao, B.C. 2357; this would be ample time for the observation that the primitive sacred year of three hundred and sixty days in Noah's time was wrong; also that the lunar year of about three hundred and fifty-four days was quite as incorrect, and required additional correction, which this ancient monarch is said to have made by an intercalation of seven lunar months in nineteen years. It is remarkable, too, that the time given as the date of the commencement of the astronomical observations sent to Aristotle from Babylon by command of Alexander should be B.C. 2233, or only a few years after the death of Yao; at that time the five additional days to complete the solar year were intercalated by the Chaldeans, and celebrated as days of festivity. Dr. Hales, who mentions this, says that many ancient nations, and also the Mexicans, had the same custom, but there are no traces of any particular observance of them by the Chinese, who, indeed, could not notice them in a lunar year.

The intercalation made by Yao has continued with little variation to this day. The Romish missionaries rectified the calendar during the reign of Kanghí, and have continued its preparation since that time. The adoption of the Julian solar

Digitized by Google

year of three hundred and sixty-five and one-fourth days at this remote period is far from certain, though the fact of its existence among nations in the west is mentioned by the commentator upon the *Book of Records*, who flourished A.D. 1200. The attention the Chinese paid to the lunar year, and the very small difference their seven intercalations left between the true harmonizing of the lunar and solar years (only 1h. 27m. 32s.), would not derange the calculations to a degree to attract their notice. The period of the adoption of the cycle of sixty years, called *luh-shih hwa kiah-tsz'*, cannot be ascertained even with any close approach to probability. Though negative evidence is always the poorest basis on which to found a theory in any branch of knowledge, it still bears great influence in early Chinese history and science, and in no department more than astronomy. This sexagenary cycle, the Chinese assert, was contrived nearly three centuries before the time of Yao (B.C. 2637), and seems to have been perfectly arbitrary, for no explanation now exists of the reasons which induced its inventor, Hwangtí, or his minister, Nao the Great, to select this number. The years have each of them a separate name, formed by taking ten characters, called *shih kan*, or 'ten stems,' and joining to them twelve other characters, called the *shih-'rh chí*, or 'twelve branches,' five times repeated.

These two sets of horary characters are also applied to minutes and seconds, hours, days, and months, signs of the zodiac, points of the compass, etc. By giving the twelve branches the names of as many animals and apportioning the ten stems in couplets among the five elements, they are also made to play an important part in divination and astrology. The present year (1882) is the eighteenth year of the seventy-sixth cycle, or the four thousand five hundred and eighteenth since its institution; but no trace of a serial numbering of the sexagenary periods has yet been found in Chinese writings. The application of the characters to hours and days dates from about B.C. 1752, according to the *Shu King*, perhaps even before they were combined in a cyclic arrangement. This sexagenary division existed in India in early times, too, and is still followed there, where it is named the Cycle of Jupiter, "because the

Digitized by Google

length of its years is measured by the passage of that planet, by its mean motion, through one sign of the zodiac." Rev. E. Burgess, in his translation of the *Surya Siddhanta*, says that the length of Jupiter's years is reckoned in that book at 361d. 0h. 38m., and adds: "It was doubtless on account of the near coincidence of this period with the true solar year that it was adopted as a measure of time; but it has not been satisfactorily ascertained, as far as we are aware, where the cycle originated, or what is its age, or why it was made to consist of sixty years, including five whole revolutions of the planet." It is not improbable, therefore, that the cycle, the two sets of characters, the twenty-four solar terms, with the twelve and twenty-eight lunar mansions or zodiacal asterisms, all of which play such an important part in Chinese astrology and astronomy, will be found to have been derived from the Chaldeans, and not from the Hindus, as has been confidently asserted. Though confessedly ancient in both India and China, their adoption was slow in its growth, while some striking similarities indicate a common origin, and so remote that its genesis is all a mystery.

The year is lunar, but its commencement is regulated by the sun. New Year falls on the first new moon after the sun enters Aquarius, which makes it come not before January 21st nor after February 19th. Besides the division into lunar months, the year is apportioned into twenty-four *tsieh*, or 'terms,' of about fifteen days each, depending upon the position of the sun; these are continued on from year to year, irrespective of the intercalations, the first one commencing about February 6th, when the sun is 15° in Aquarius. Their names have reference to the season of the year and obvious changes in nature at the time they come round, as *rain-water*, *vernal-equinox*, *spiked-grain*, *little-heat*, etc.

The Chinese divide the zodiac (*hwang tao*, or 'yellow road') into twenty-eight *siu* or *kung*, 'constellations' or 'lunar mansions,' but instead of an equable allotment, the signs occupy from 1° up to 31°; the Hindus arrange them nearly in spaces of 13° each. Their names and corresponding animals, with the principal stars answering to each asterism, are given in the table.

Digitized by Google

	Chin siu.	Corresponding Animal.	Constellation.		Chin siu.	Corresponding Animal.	Constellation.
1	*Kioh.*	Earth Dragon.	Spica, ζ Virgo.	15	*Kwei.*	Wolf.	Mirac.
2	*Kang.*	Sky Dragon.	ικλμ Virgo.	16	*Leu.*	Dog.	αβ Aries.
3	*Ti.*	Badger.	αβγδ Libra.	17	*Wei.*	Pheasant.	Musca.
4	*Fang.*	Hare.	β δ Scorpio.	18	*Mao.*	Cock.	Pleiades.
5	*Sin.*	Fox.	Antares.	19	*Pih.*	Raven.	Hyades.
6	*Wei.*	Tiger.	εμ Scorpio.	20	*Tsui.*	Monkey.	λ Orion.
7	*Ki.*	Leopard.	γδ Sagittarius.	21	*Tsan.*	Ape.	Rigel, Orion.
8	*Teu.*	Griffon.	ξλ Sagittarius.	22	*Tsing.*	Tapir.	Gemini.
9	*Niu.*	Ox.	αβ Sagittarius.	23	*Kwei.*	Sheep.	γδθ Cancer.
10	*Nü.*	Bat.	εμγ Aquarius.	24	*Liu.*	Muntjak.	δεζ Hydra.
11	*Hü.*	Rat.	β Aquarius.	25	*Sing.*	Horse.	Alphard.
12	*Wei.*	Swallow.	α Aquarius & ε Pegasus.	26	*Chang.*	Deer.	κλμ Hydra.
				27	*Yih.*	Snake.	α Crater.
13	*Shih.*	Boar.	Markab.	28	*Chin.*	Worm.	γε Corvus.
14	*Pih.*	Porcupine.	Algenib.				

Instead of being equally divided in the four seasons, they are apportioned very empirically. Those numbered 7 to 14 belong to Aquarius and the north, and measure 98¼°; those from 1 to 7 belong to Scorpio and the east, and measure 75°; those from 15 to 21 belong to Taurus and the west, and measure 80°; and the last 7 belong to Leo and the south, and measure 112°. All these things show very crude knowledge of the heavenly bodies.

The zodiac is further divided into twelve signs or palaces, varying from 25° to 38° in length, named after the twelve branches or animals representing them, commencing with Aquarius or the rat, followed by the ox, tiger, hare, dragon, snake, horse, sheep, monkey, cock, dog, and bear. These animals also occur among the twenty-eight asterisms, but they are used to denote the twelve branches in all astrological calculations, and not often referred to the zodiac. They are in constant use among the nations of Eastern Asia, so that the common people of Mongolia, Siam, and Japan are really more conversant with them, through their application to times of various length, than they are with the technical characters. The Hindus and Arabians, on the other hand, do not associate these or any other animals with the twelve signs, hours, and months, nor with the twenty-eight mansions; and this fact tends to show that the Chinese obtained them from a more ancient source. The name

Digitized by Google

of one of the twenty-eight lunar mansions is given to every day in the year in perpetual rotation, consequently the same day of our week in every fourth week has the same character applied to it. The days are numbered from the first to the last day of the month, and the months from one to twelve through the year, except the intercalary month, called *jun yueh;* and there is also a trine division of the month into decades.[1]

The astronomical ideas of the common Chinese are vague and inaccurate. The knowledge contained in their own scientific books has not been taught, and they still believe the earth to be a plain surface, measuring each way about one thousand five hundred miles; around it the sun, moon, and stars revolve, the first at a distance of four thousand miles. This figure comes so near the earth's radius that it is reasonable to infer, with Chalmers, that it was calculated from the different elevation of the sun in different latitudes. The distance of the heavens from the earth was ascertained by one observer to be 81,394 *li*, and by another subsequent to him to be 216,781½ *li*, or about 73,000 miles; all of which indicates the lack of careful observation. The constellation of the *Peh Tao*, or Dipper, plays an important part in popular astronomy; the common saying is: 'When the handle of the *Northern Peck* points east at nightfall, it is spring over the land; when it points south, it is summer; and when west or north, it is respectively autumn and winter.' The Dipper has become a kind of natural clock from this circumstance, and as its handle always points to the bright stars in Scorpio, these two constellations are among the most familiar. These popular notions must not, however, be taken as a test of what was known in early times; it is quite as just to their scientific attainments in this branch to give them credit (as Wylie does) for having known more than has come down to our days; as to deny belief in the little that remains, because it presents some insoluble difficulties, as Chalmers is disposed to do.

---

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. IX., pp. 573–584. De Guignes' *Voyages*, Vol. II., p. 414. *Chinese Chrestomathy*. Legge's *Shoo King*, passim. Chalmers, *On the Astronomy of the Ancient Chinese*. *Journal of the Am. Oriental Society*, Vol. VI., Art. III., and Vol. VIII., Arts. I. and VII. Whitney's *Oriental and Linguistic Studies*, Art. XII. *North China Br. R. A. S. Journal*, Nos. III. and IV.

Digitized by Google

Astronomy has been studied by the Chinese for astrological and state purposes, and their recorded observations of eclipses, comets, etc., have no small value to European astronomers and chronologists. Mailla has collected the notices of 460 solar eclipses, extending from B.C. 2159 to A.D. 1699, and Wylie furnishes a careful list of 925 solar and 574 lunar eclipses, extracted from Chinese works, observed between 2150 and A.D. 1785. Comets have been carefully noted whenever their brilliancy has enabled them to be seen, for they are regarded as portents by the people, and their course among the stars somewhat determines their influence. A list of 373 comets mentioned in Chinese records has been published by John Williams,[1] mostly extracted from Ma Twan-lin's *Antiquarian Researches*, and the *Shi Ki*. They extend from B.C. 611 to A.D. 1621; the general value of these records is estimated by the learned author as entitling them to credence. The curious and intimate connection between geomancy, horoscopy, and astrology, which the Chinese suppose exists, has a powerful influence in maintaining their errors, because of its bearing on every man's luck. Even with all the aid they have derived from Europeans, the Chinese seem to be unable to advance in the science of astronomy, when left to themselves, and to cling to their superstitions against every evidence. Some clouds having on one occasion covered the sky, so that an eclipse could not be seen, the courtiers joyfully repaired to the Emperor to felicitate him, that Heaven, touched by his virtues, had spared him the pain of witnessing the "eating of the sun." A native writer on astronomy, called Tsinglai, who published several works under the patronage of Yuen Yuen, the liberal-minded governor of Kwangtung in 1820, even at that late day, "makes the heavens to consist of ten concentric hollow spheres or envelopes: the first contains the moon's orbit; the second that of Mercury; those of Venus, the Sun, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, and the twenty-eight constellations, follow; the ninth envelops and binds together the eight interior ones, and revolves daily; while the tenth is the abode of the

[1] *Observations of Comets, from* B.C. 611 *to* A.D. 1640. *Extracted from the Chinese Annals.* London, 1871.

Digitized by Google

Celestial Sovereign, the Great Ruler, with all the gods and sages, where they enjoy eternal tranquillity." He further says, "there are two north and two south poles, those of the equator and those of the ecliptic. The poles of the ecliptic regulate the varied machinery of the heavenly revolutions, and turn round unceasingly. The poles of the equator are the pivots of the primitive celestial body, and remain permanently unmoved. What are called the two poles, therefore, are really not stars, but two immovable points in the north and in the south."[1] The author of this astute cosmogony studied under Europeans, and published these remarks as the fruit of his researches.

The action and reaction of the elements furnish a satisfactory explanation to Chinese philosophers of the changes going on in the visible universe, for no possible contingency can arise which they are not prepared to solve by their analysis of the evolution of its powers. Through their speculations by this curious system they have been led away from carefully recording facts and processes, and have gone on, like a squirrel in a cage, making no progress toward the real knowledge of the elements they treat of. The following table contains the leading elementary correspondences which they use, but a full explanation would be out of place here.

This fanciful system is more or less received by their most intelligent men; and forms a sort of abracadabra in the hands of geomancers and fortune-tellers, by which, with a show of great learning, they impose on the people. The sun, moon, and planets influence sublunary events, especially the life and death of human beings, and changes in their color menace approaching calamities. Alterations in the appearance of the sun announce misfortunes to the state or its head, as revolts, famines, or the death of the Emperor; when the moon waxes red, or turns pale, men should be in awe at the unlucky times thus foreomened.

The sun is symbolized by the figure of a raven in a circle, and the moon by a rabbit on his hind legs pounding rice in a mortar, or by a three-legged toad. The last refers to the

[1] *Chinese Chrestomathy*, p. 397.

Digitized by Google

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF ELEMENTARY NATURE—PRINCIPLES WHICH ACT AND REACT ON EACH OTHER IN PRODUCING ALL THINGS.

Five *Hing*, or Elemental Powers.	Qualities of the Five *Hing* given in the *Shu King*.	Five Tastes produced by the Five *Hing*.	Five Points of Compass.	Dualities of the Ten Stems influenced by the Five *Hing*.	Activities of the Five *Hing*.	Five Corresponding Planets.	Five Colors.	Five Viscera.	Five Musical Notes.	Five Early Emperors.	Four Seasons.	Four Quarters of Lunar Zodiac.
水 Water.	Imbuing and Descending.	Salt.	North.	Jin-kwei.	Strengthening.	Mercury	Black.	Kidneys.	Yu.	Chuen-hŭh, B.C. 2513.	Winter.	Sable Warrior.
火 Fire.	Blazing and Ascending.	Bitter.	South.	Ping-ting.	Penetrating.	Mars.	Carnation.	Heart.	Wei.	Yentí, (Shinnung) B.C. 2737.	Summer.	Vermilion Sparrow.
木 Wood.	Bending, Straightening.	Sour.	East.	Kiah-yih.	Nourishing.	Jupiter.	Azure.	Liver.	Kioh.	Tai-hao, (Fuh-hí) B.C. 2852.	Spring.	Azure Dragon.
金 Metal.	Obeying, Resisting.	Acid.	West.	Kăng-sin.	Destroying.	Venus.	White.	Lungs.	Shang.	Shao-hao, B.C. 2597.	Autumn.	White Tiger.
土 Earth.	Sowing, Reaping.	Sweet.	Centre.	Wu-kí.	Harmonizing.	Saturn.	Yellow.	Stomach.	Kung.	Hwangtí, B.C. 2697.		

Digitized by Google

legend of an ancient beauty, Chang-ngo, who drank the liquor of immortality and straightway ascended to the moon, where she was transformed into a toad, still to be traced in its face. It is a special object of worship in autumn, and moon-cakes dedicated to it are sold at this season. All the stars are ranged into constellations, and an emperor is installed over them, who resides at the north pole; five monarchs, also, live in the five stars in Leo, where is a palace, called *Wu Ti tso*, or 'Throne of the Five Emperors.' In this celestial government there is also an heir-apparent, empresses, sons and daughters, tribunals, and the constellations receive the names of men, animals, and other terrestrial objects. The Dipper is worshipped as the residence of the fates, where the duration of life, and other events relating to mankind, are measured and meted out. Doolittle's *Social Life* contains other popular notions connected with the stars, showing the ignorance still existing, and the fears excited by unusual phenomena among the heavenly bodies. Both heaven and the sun are worshipped by the government in appropriate temples on the west and east sides of Peking. The rainbow is the product of the impure vapors ascending from the earth meeting those descending from the sun.

If their knowledge of astronomy can be criticised as being anything but an exact science, the Chinese should not be denied credit for a certain amount of beauty in what may be called the romantic side of this study. In the myths and legends which have clustered about and doubtless in many cases perverted their observations of the stars, there are the sources of fêtes and subjects for pictorial illustration without number. One of these stories, forming the motive of a bowl decoration given upon the opposite page, is the fable of Aquila (*niu*) and Vega, known in Chinese and Japanese mythology as the Herdsman and Weaver-girl. The latter, the daughter of the sun-god, was so continually busied with her loom that her father became worried at her close habits and thought that by marrying her to a neighbor, who herded cattle on the banks of the Silver Stream of Heaven (the Milky Way), she might awake to a brighter manner of living.

"No sooner did the maiden become wife than her habits

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

and character utterly changed for the worse. She became not only very merry and lively, but quite forsook loom and needle, giving up her nights and days to play and idleness; no silly lover could have been more foolish than she. The sun-king, in great wrath at all this, concluded that the husband was the cause of it and determined to separate the couple. So he ordered him to remove to the other side of the river of stars, and told him that hereafter they should meet only once a year, on the seventh night of the seventh month. To make a bridge over the flood of stars, the sun-king called myriads of magpies, which thereupon flew together, and, making a bridge, supported the poor lover on their wings and backs as if it were a roadway of solid land. So bidding his weeping wife farewell, the lover-husband sorrowfully crossed the River of Heaven, and all the magpies instantly flew away. But the two were separated, the one to lead his ox, the other to ply her shuttle during the long hours of the day with diligent toil, and the sun-king again rejoiced in his daughter's industry.

"At last the time for their reunion drew near, and only one fear possessed the loving wife. What if it should rain? For the River of Heaven is always full to the brim, and one extra drop causes a flood which sweeps away even the bird bridge. But not a drop fell; all the heavens were clear. The magpies flew joyfully in myriads, making a way for the tiny feet of the little lady. Trembling with joy, and with heart fluttering more than the bridge of wings, she crossed the River of Heaven and was in the arms of her husband. This she did every year. The husband staid on his side of the river, and the wife came to him on the magpie bridge, save on the sad occasion when it rained. So every year the people hope for clear weather, and the happy festival is celebrated alike by old and young."[1]

These two constellations are worshipped principally by women, that they may gain cunning in the arts of needlework and making of fancy flowers. Watermelons, fruits, vegetables, cakes, etc., are placed with incense in the reception-room, and

[1] Somewhat abridged from Mr. W. E. Griffis' *Japanese Fairy World*, a book which has given us the cream of a great variety of stories from Eastern wonder-lore.

Digitized by Google

before these offerings are performed the kneelings and knockings in the usual way.

The entire day is divided into twelve two-hour periods called *shin*, commencing at eleven o'clock, P.M.; each hour is further subdivided into *kih*, or eighths, equal to fifteen of our minutes, and receives the same characters. There are various means employed to measure time, but the people are rapidly learning to reckon its progress by watches and clocks, and follow our divisions in preference to their own. A common substitute for watches are *time-sticks*, long round pieces of a composition of clay and sawdust, well mixed and wound in a spiral manner; the lapse of time is indicated by its equable slow combustion from one hour mark to another, until the whole is consumed, which in the longest is not less than a week. Dials are in common use, and frequently attached to the mariner's compass, by making the string which retains the cover in its place cast a shadow on the face of it. This lesson in dialing, Davis supposes they learned from the Jesuits. Clepsydras of various forms were anciently employed, some of which, from their description, were so disproportionately elegant and costly for such a clumsy mode of noting time, that their beauty more than their use was perhaps the principal object in preparing them.

The almanac holds an important place, its preparation having been early taken under the special care of the government, which looks upon a present of this important publication as one of the highest favors which it can confer on tributary vassals or friendly nations. It is annually prepared at Peking, under the direction of a bureau attached to the Board of Rites, and, by making it a penal offence to issue a counterfeit or pirated edition the governmental astrologers have monopolized the management of the superstitions of the people in regard to the fortunate or unlucky conjunctions of each day and hour. Besides the cabalistic part of it, the ephemeris also contains tables of the rising of the sun according to the latitudes of the principal places, times of the new and full moon, the beginning and length of the twenty-four terms, eclipses, application of the horary characters, conjunction of the planets, etc. Two or three editions are published for the convenience of the people,

Digitized by Google

the prices of which vary from three to ten cents a copy. No one ventures to be without an almanac, lest he be liable to the greatest misfortunes, and run the imminent hazard of undertaking important events on black-balled days. The Europeans who were employed for many years in compiling the calendar were not allowed to interfere in the astrological part; it is to the discredit of the Chinese to aid thus in perpetuating folly and ignorance among the people, when they know that the whole system is false and absurd. Such governments as that of China, however, deem it necessary to uphold ancient superstitions, if they can thereby influence their security, or strengthen the reverence due them.

If their astronomical notions are vague, their geographical knowledge is ridiculous. The maps of their own territories are tolerably good, being originally drawn from actual surveys by nine of the Jesuits, between the years 1708–1718, and since that time have been filled up and changed to conform to the alterations and divisions. Their full surveys were engraved on copper at Paris, by order of Louis XIV., on sheets, measuring in all over a hundred square feet, and have formed the basis of all subsequent maps. The Chinese do not teach geography in their schools, even of their own empire. The common people have no knowledge, therefore, of the form and divisions of the globe, and the size and position of the kingdoms of the earth. Their common maps delineate them very erroneously, not even excepting their own possessions in Mongolia and Ílí—scattering islands, kingdoms, and continents, as they have heard of their existence, at haphazard in various corners beyond the frontiers. The two Americas and Africa are entirely omitted on most of them, and England, Holland, Portugal, Goa, Luçonia, Bokhara, Germany, France, and India, are arranged along the western side, from north to south, in a series of islands and headlands. The southern and eastern sides are similarly garnished by islands, as Japan, Lewchew, Formosa, Siam, Birmah, Java, the Sulu Islands, and others, while Russia occupies the whole of the northern frontier of their Middle Kingdom.

The geographical works of Tsinglai are not quite so erroneous as his astronomical, but the uneducated people, notwithstanding

Digitized by Google

his efforts to teach them better, still generally suppose the earth to be an immense extended stationary plain. Their notions of its inhabitants are equally whimsical, and would grace the pages of Sir John Mandeville. In some parts of its surface they imagine the inhabitants to be all dwarfs, who tie themselves together in bunches for fear of being carried away by the eagles; in others they are all women, who conceive by looking at their shadows; and in a third kingdom, all the people have holes in their breasts, through which they thrust a pole, when carrying one another from place to place. Charts for the guidance of the navigator, or instruments to aid him in determining his position at sea, the Chinese are nearly or quite destitute of; they have retrograded rather than advanced in navigation, judging from the accounts of Fa-hian, Ibn Batuta, and other travellers, when their vessels frequented the ports in the Persian Gulf and on the Malabar coast, and carried on a large trade with the Archipelago. Itineraries are published, containing the distances between places on the principal thoroughfares throughout the provinces, and also lists of the ports, harbors, and islands on the coast, but nothing like sailing directions accompany the latter, nor do maps of the routes illustrate the former. Such knowledge as they have on these points is hidden away in their libraries, as the Latin and Greek classics were in European convents and castles a thousand years ago.

In the various branches of mensuration and formulæ used to describe the dimensions and weight of bodies, they have reached only a practical mediocrity. With a partial knowledge of trigonometry, and no instruments for ascertaining the heights of objects or their distances from the observer, still their lands are well measured, and the area of lots in towns and cities accurately ascertained. The *chih* or foot is the integer of length, but its standard value cannot be easily ascertained. In the *Chinese Commercial Guide*, p. 285, is a table of eighty-four observations on this point, taken at different times and places in China, whose extremes differ more than six inches. It is fixed by the Board of Works at 13⅛ in. English, but tradesmen at Canton employ foot measures varying from 14.625 to 14.81 in.; according to the tariff, it is reckoned at 14.1 in. English, and the *chang*

Digitized by Google

of ten *chih* at 3⅓ yds. During the past thirty years, the tariff weights and measures have gradually obtained acceptance as the standards, and this will probably result in securing uniformity in course of time. The *chih* is subdivided into ten *tsun* or puntos, and each *tsun* into ten *fän*. The *li* is used for distances, and is usually reckoned at 1,825.55 ft. English, which gives 2.89 *li* to an English mile; this is based on the estimate of 200 *li* to a degree, but there were only 180 *li* to a degree before Europeans came, which increases its length to 2,028.39 ft. or 2.6 *li* to a mile, which is nearer the common estimate. The French missionaries divided the degree into 250 *li* (each being then exactly 1,460.44 ft. English, or one-tenth of a French astronomical league), and also into sixty minutes and sixty seconds, to make it correspond to western notation; this measure has not been adopted in common use. The present rulers have established post-houses very generally, at intervals of ten *li*, or about a league. The land measures are the *mao* and *king;* the former measures 6,000 square *chih*, or 808.6 square yards, and a hundred of them make a *king*. Taxes are collected, land is leased, and crops are estimated by the *mao* and its decimal parts; but examination has shown that the actual area of a *mao* grows less as one goes north; in Canton, it is about 4.76 *mao* to an acre, and at Peking it is six, and even smaller.

The weights and measures of the Chinese are twenty-four in all, and vary in their value even more than those of long measure. The common weights are called *tael*, *catty*, and *pecul* by foreigners; their values are respectively 1⅓ oz. av., 1⅓ lb. av., and 133⅓ lbs. av., and thus roughly correspond to the English ounce, pound, and hundredweight. The Chinese deal in many articles by weight which among western nations are sold according to their quality—such as wood, silk, oil, whiskey, cloth, grain, poultry, etc.—so that it has been humorously observed that the Chinese sell everything by weight, except eggs and children. Their common measures correspond nearly to our gill, half-pint, pint, and peck, and are used to retail rice, beans, etc. The smaller ones are not very accurately constructed from bamboo-joints, but the peck measure, or *tao*, shaped like the frustum of a pyramid, must be officially examined and sealed before it can

Digitized by Google

be used; at Canton it contains 6⅓ catties weight, or about 1.13 gallon. The decimals of the tael, called *mace*, *candareen*, and *cash* (*tsien*, *fǎn*, and *lí*), are employed in reckoning bullion, pearls, gems, drugs, etc.; ten cash making one candareen, ten candareens one mace, etc. The proportions between the Chinese and American moneys and weights is such that so many taels per pecul, or candareens per catty, is the same as so many dollars per hundredweight, or cents per pound.[1]

The monetary system is arranged on the principle of weight, and the divisions have the same names, *tael*, *mace*, *candareen*, and *cash*. The only native coin is a copper piece called *tsien*, because it originally weighed a mace; it is thin and circular, rather more than an inch in diameter, with a square hole in the middle for the convenience of stringing. The obverse bears the word *pao*, or 'current,' and the name of the province in Manchu, on each side of the square hole; the reverse has four words, *Taukwang*, *tung*, *pao*, *i.e.*, 'money current [during the reign of] Taukwang.' Mints for casting cash are established in each provincial capital under the direction of the Board of Revenue. The coin should consist of an alloy of copper, 50; zinc, 41⅓; lead, 6⅔; and tin, 2; or of equal parts of copper and zinc; but it has been so debased by iron and reduced in size during the last fifty years that it does not pay to counterfeit it. Each piece should weigh 58 grains troy, or 3.78 grammes, but most of those now in circulation are under 30 grains, and the rate of exchange varies in different parts of the land from 900 to 1,800 for a silver dollar.

The workmen in the mint are required to remain within the building except when leave of absence is obtained, but in spite of all the efforts of government, private coinage is issued to a great amount, and sometimes with the connivance of the mint-master. Neither silver nor gold has ever been coined to any extent in China. In seeking for the cause of this difference from all other Asiatic nations, it seems to lie in the commercial freedom which has done so much to elevate them. The gov-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. X., p. 650; *Chinese Chrestomathy*; *Chinese Commercial Guide*, Fifth Ed., pp. 265–288; Rondot, *Commerce de la Chine*, 1819.

Digitized by Google

ernment on the one hand is not strong enough to restrain counterfeiters, and not honest enough, on the other hand, to issue pieces of uniform standard for a series of years till it has obtained the confidence of its subjects. It will not receive base metal for taxes, and cannot force merchants to accept adulterated coins. As its foreign relations extend it will no doubt be obliged to issue a better national currency in the three metals. Attempts have been made to introduce a silver piece of the size of a tael, and specimens were made at Shanghai in 1856. A large coinage of native dollars was attempted in Fuhkien and Formosa, about 1835, to pay the troops on that island. One of them indicated that the piece was "pure silver for current use from the Chang-chau Commissariat; [weight] seven *mace* two *candareens*." The other was of the same weight and purity (417.4 grains troy), and besides the inscription in Chinese on the obverse, and in Manchu on the reverse, it had an effigy of the god of Longevity on the head and a tripod on the tail, to authenticate its official origin. These pieces were either melted or counterfeited to such an extent on their appearance, that they soon disappeared.

Foreign dollars are imported in great quantities from Mexico and San Francisco, and form the medium of trade at the open ports. They are often stamped by the person who pays them out, which soon destroys them as a coin, and they are then melted and refined to be cast into ingots of bullion, called *shoes of sycee*, from *si-sz'* or 'fine floss'; these weigh from five mace to fifty taels, the larger pieces being stamped with the district magistrate's title and the date, to verify them. They are from ninety-seven to ninety-nine per cent. pure silver, but small ingots of ten or fifteen taels weight are less pure than the large *shoes*, as they are called from their shape. Gold bullion is cast into bars like cakes of India-ink in shape, weighing about ten taels, or hammered into thick leaves which can be examined but not separated by driving a punch through a pile of a hundred or more—a precaution against cheating. Large quantities are sent abroad in this shape.

Taxes and duties are paid in sycee of ninety-eight per cent. fineness, and licensed bankers are connected with the revenue

Digitized by Google

department to whom the proceeds are paid, and who are allowed a small percentage for refining and becoming responsible for its purity. Dollars and ingots are counterfeited, and all classes have them inspected by *shroffs*, who, by practice, are able to decide by the sight alone upon the degree of alloy in a piece of silver, though usually they employ touchstone needles to assist them, different degrees of fineness imparting a different color to the needle. Books are prepared as aids to the detection of counterfeit dollars; in these the process of manufacture is carefully described; some of the pieces are marvels of skill in forgery.

Chartered banking companies are unknown, for a government warrant or charter would carry no weight with it, but private bankers are found in all large towns. Paper money was issued in immense quantities under the Mongol dynasty, and its convenience is highly praised by Marco Polo, who looked upon its emission by the Grand Khan as the highest secret of alchemy. Polo's ideas of this operation would please the "greenbackers" in the United States. He says, when describing Kublai's purchases: "So he buys such a quantity of those precious things every year that his treasure is endless, while all the while the money he pays away costs him nothing at all. If any of those pieces of paper are spoilt the owner carries them to the mint, and by paying three per cent. on the value he gets new pieces in exchange." The total issues of this highest secret of alchemy during Kublai's reign of thirty-four years are reckoned by Pauthier, the *Yuen Annals*, at equal to $624,135,500. The Khan's successors, however, overdid the manufacture, and when the people found out that they had nothing but paper to show for all the valuables they had parted with to the Mongols, it added strength to the rebellion of Hung-wu (A.D. 1359), which ended in their expulsion nine years afterward. The new dynasty was, nevertheless, obliged to issue its notes at first, but the mercantile instincts of the people soon asserted their power, and as industry revived they were superseded about 1455. The Manchus did not issue any Governmental paper till 1858, during the Tai-ping rebellion, and its circulation was limited to the capital from the first; seeing that even then it was known to have no basis of credit or funds.

Digitized by Google

A bank can be opened by any person or company, subject to certain laws and payments to Government, on reporting its organization. The number of these offices of deposit and emission is large in proportion to the business of a town, but their capital averages only two or three thousand taels; the number in Tientsin is stated at three hundred, at Peking it is less than four hundred, of which scores in each are mere branches. The check on over-issue of notes lies in the control exercised by the clearing-house of every city, where the standing of each bank is known by its operations. The circulation of the notes is limited in some cases to the street or neighborhood wherein the establishment is situated; often the payee has a claim on the payer of a bill for a full day if it be found to be counterfeit or worthless—a custom which involves a good deal of scribbling on the back of the bill to certify the names. Proportionally few counterfeit notes are met with, owing more to the limited range of the bills, making it easy to ask the bank, which recognizes its own paper by the check-tallies, of which the register contains two or three halves printed across the check-book. When silver is presented for exchange, the bills are usually, in Peking, filled up and dated as the customer wishes while he waits for them. Their face value ranges from one to a hundred *tiao*, or strings of cash, but their worth depends on the exchange between silver and cash, and as this fluctuates daily, the bills soon find their way home. These notes are unknown in the southern provinces, where dollars have long circulated; but their convenience is so great that people are willing to run slight risks on this account. Hongkong bills circulate on the mainland to very remote districts.

Banks issue circular letters of credit to travel through the Empire, and the system of remittance by drafts is as complete as in Europe; the rates charged are high, however, and vast sums of silver are constantly on the move. The habit of pawning goods is very general, and carries its disastrous results among all classes. There are three kinds of pawnshops, and the laws regulating them are strict and equitable; the chief evil arising from their number is the facility they give to thieves. Pawn tickets are exposed for sale in the streets, and form a curious

Digitized by Google

branch of traffic. These establishments are generally very extensive, and the vast amount of goods stored in them, especially garments and jewelry, shows their universal patronage. One pawnbroker's warehouse at Tinghai was used by the English forces as a hospital, and accommodated between two and three hundred patients. The insecurity of commercial operations involves, of course, a high rate of interest, sometimes up to three per cent. a month, lowering according to circumstances to twelve or ten per cent. per annum. The legal pawnshops (*tang pu*) are allowed three years to redeem, and give three years' notice of dissolution. The restrictions on selling pawned articles works injuriously to the shops, in consequence of rapid depreciation or risks to the articles. If a fire occurs on the premises the pawner claims the full amount of his pledge; only one-half is paid if it communicates from a neighbor's house.[1]

One characteristic feature of Chinese society cannot be omitted in this connection, namely, its tendency to associate. It is a fertile principle applied to every branch of life, but especially conspicuous in all industrial operations. The people crystallize into associations; in the town and in the country, in buying and in selling, in studies, in fights, and in politics, everybody must co-operate with somebody else—women as well as men. To belong to one or more *hwui*, and be identified with its fortunes, and enlisted in its struggles, seems to be the stimulus to activity, resulting from the democratic element in the Chinese polity, to which we are to refer the continuity as well as many singular features of the national character. In trade capitalists associate to found great banks, to sell favorite medicines, or engross leading staples; little farmers club together to buy an ox, pedlers to get the custom of a street, porters to monopolize the loads in a ward, or chair-bearers to furnish all the sedans for a town. Beggars are allotted to one or

[1] Ed. Biot in *Journal Asiatique*, 1837, Tome III., p. 422, and Tome IV., pp. 97, 209; *Chinese Commercial Guide*, 1863, pp. 264–275; *N. C. As. Journal*, No. VI., pp. 52–71; Yule's *Marco Polo*, 1871, Vol. I., p. 378–385; Pauthier *Le Livre de M. Polo*, Cap. XCV., p. 319; Vissering *On Chinese Currency*, 1877; *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XX., p. 289; Doolittle's *Social Life*, Vol. II., pp. 138–247; *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. II., p. 108.

Digitized by Google

two streets by their *hwui*, and driven off another's beat if they encroach. Each guild of carpenters, silkmen, masons, or even of physicians and teachers, works to advance its own interests, keep its own members in order, and defend itself against its opponents. Villagers form themselves into organizations against the wiles of powerful clans; and unscrupulous officials are met and balked by popular unions when they least expect it. Women and mothers get up a company to procure a trousseau, to buy an article of dress or furniture, to pay for a son's wedding. Associations are limited to a year, to a month, to a decade, according to their design. These various forms of co-operation teach the people to know each other, while they also furnish agencies for unscrupulous men to oppress and crush out their enemies, gratify their revenge, and intimidate enterprise. Nevertheless, until the people learn higher principles of morality, these habits of combining themselves bring more benefits to the whole body than evils, at the same time quickening the vitality of the mass, without which it would die out in brigandage and despair.[1]

The theory of war has received more attention among the Chinese than its practice, and their reputation as an unwarlike people is as ancient and general among their neighbors as that of their seclusion and ingenuity. The Mongols and Manchus, Huns and Tartars, all despised the effeminate braggadocio of Chinese troops, and easily overcame them in war, but were themselves in turn conquered in times of peace. Minute directions are given in books with regard to the drilling of troops, which are seldom reduced to practice. The puerile nature of the examinations which candidates for promotion in the army pass through, proves the remains of the ancient hand-to-hand encounter, and evinces the low standard still entertained of what an officer should be. Personal courage and brawn are highly esteemed, and the prowess of ancient heroes in the battle-field is lauded in songs, and embellished in novels.

The arms of the Chinese still consist of bows and arrows,

[1] For an account of the money *hwui* and details of their system, see M. Eug. Simon, Les Petites Sociétés d'Argent en Chine, *N. C. Br. R. As. Soc. Journal*, No. V., Art. I. (1868).

Digitized by Google

spears, matchlocks, swords, and cannon of various sizes and lengths. The bow is used more for show in the military examinations, than for service in battle. Rattan shields, painted with tigers' heads, are used on board the revenue cutters to turn the thrust of spears, and on ceremonial occasions, when the companies are paraded in full uniforms and equipments. The uniform of the different regiments of the *luh-ying* or 'native army,' consists of a jacket of brown, yellow, or blue, bordered with a wide edging of another color; the trowsers are usually blue. The cuirass is made of quilted and doubled cotton cloth, and covered with iron plates or brass knobs connected by copper bands; the helmet is iron or polished steel, sometimes inlaid, weighing two and one-fourth pounds, and has neck and ear lappets to protect those parts. The back of the jacket bears the word *yung*, 'courage,' and on the breast is painted the service to which the corps is attached, whether to the governor, commandant, or Emperor. The exhibition of courage among Chinese troops is not, however, always deferred to the time when they run away, spite of the disparaging reputation they have obtained in this respect from their British conquerors—who have, nevertheless, on more than one occasion, been led to admire the cool pluck of the same men when led by competent officers.

The matchlock is of wrought iron and plain bore; it has a longer barrel than a musket, so long that a rest is sometimes attached to the stock for greater ease in firing; the match is a cord of hemp or coir, and the pan must be uncovered with the hand before it can be fired, which necessarily interferes with, and almosts prevents its use in wet or windy weather. The cannon are cast, and although not of very uniform calibre from the mode of manufacture, are serviceable for salutes. The ginjal is a kind of swivel from six to fourteen feet long, resting on a tripod; being less liable to burst than the cannon, it is the most effective gun the Chinese possess.

Gunpowder was probably known to the Chinese in the latter part of the Han dynasty (A.D. 250), but its application in firearms at that time is not so plain. The exploits of Kung-ming in that period owe their interest to his use of gunpowder in

Digitized by Google

modes like the Greek fire of the Byzantines, though the animated narratives of Lo Kwan-chung (A.D. 1300) in his *History of the Three States*, are not reliable history in this particular. Grosier (Vol. VII., pp. 176–200) has adduced the evidences proving the use of powder at or before the Christian era. The inferences that Europe obtained it from India rather than China have, however, a good deal of weight. Early Arab historians refer to it as Chinese snow and Chinese salt—a fact which only shows its eastern origin—while the Chinese compound term of *hwo-yioh*, or 'fire drug,' rather indicates a foreign source than otherwise.

Mr. W. F. Mayers has searched out and collated a considerable mass of evidence from Chinese sources bearing upon the introduction of explosives in native warfare and ordinary life. The conclusions of this writer point both to a foreign origin of gunpowder in China, and a much later use of the compound among their warriors than has generally been supposed. Coming, probably, from India or Central Asia about the fifth century A.D. the invention, he says, "perhaps found its way into China in connection with the manufacture of fireworks for purposes of diversion; and supplanting at some unascertained period the practice of producing a crepitating noise by burning bamboos as a charm against evil spirits." No evidence exists of the use of gunpowder as an agent of warfare until the middle of the twelfth century, nor did a knowledge of its propulsive effects come to the Chinese until the reign of Yungloh, in the fifteenth century—a thousand years after its first employment in fire-crackers.[1]

Fire-arms of large size were introduced toward the end of the Ming dynasty by foreign instructors; ginjals and matchlocks were known four centuries earlier in all the eastern and central regions of Asia, but none of those people could forge or cast large artillery, owing to their imperfect machinery. The gunpowder is badly mixed and triturated, though the proportions are nearly the same as our own. The native arms are now

[1] *North China Br. Royal Asiatic Soc. Journal*, 1870, No. VI., Art. V. Compare *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*

Digitized by Google

rapidly giving place to foreign in the imperial army, and the establishment of four or five arsenals under the management of competent instructors, where implements of warfare of every kind are manufactured, will, ere long, make an entire change in Chinese weapons and tactics. Some of their brass guns were of enormous size and great strength, but were of little use for practical warfare, owing to the bad carriages and rude means of working them.

The uniforms of Chinese troops are not even calculated to give them a fine appearance when drawn up for parade, and no one, looking at them, can believe that men dressed in loose jackets and trousers, with heavy shoes and bamboo caps, could be trained to cope with western soldiers. Fans or umbrellas are often made use of on parade to assuage the heat or protect from the rain, while the chief object of these reviews is to salute and knock head before some high officer. In order to repress insurrection, the government has been frequently compelled to buy off turbulent leaders with office and rewards, and thus disorganize and scatter the enemy it could not vanquish.

But however ridiculous the army and navy of the Chinese were half a century ago, in the isolation and ignorance which then held them, it cannot be alleged of what has been attempted within twenty years, and the promise of what may be done in as many more. The following *résumé* of the qualities of the Chinese soldier, from experience with Col. Gordon's "Ever Victorious Force" during the Tai-ping insurrection will be *à propos* of this subject to which this work cannot devote further space. "The old notion is pretty well got rid of, that they are at all a cowardly people when properly paid and efficiently led; while the regularity and order of their habits, which dispose them to peace in ordinary times, give place to a daring bordering upon recklessness in time of war. Their intelligence and capacity for remembering facts make them well fitted for use in modern warfare, as do also the coolness and calmness of their disposition. Physically they are on the average not so strong as Europeans, but considerably more so than most of the other races of the East; and on a cheap diet of rice, vegetables, salt fish, and pork, they can go through

Digitized by Google

a vast amount of fatigue, whether in a temperate climate or a tropical one, where Europeans are ill-fitted for exertion. Their wants are few; they have no caste prejudices, and hardly any appetite for intoxicating liquors. Being of a lymphatic or lymphatic-bilious temperament, they enjoy a remarkable immunity from inflammatory disease, and the tubercular diathesis is little known amongst them."[1]

Their progress in real civilization is not to be fairly measured by their attainments in war, although it has been said that the two best general criteria of civilization among any people are superior skill in destroying their fellow men, and the degree of respect they pay to women. China falls far behind her place among the nations if judged by these tests alone, and in reality owes her present advance in numbers, industry, and wealth mainly to her peaceful character and policy. She would have probably presented a spectacle similar to the disunited hordes of Central Asia, had her people been actuated by a warlike spirit, for when divided into fifty or more feudal states, as was the case in the days of Confucius, she made no progress in the arts of life. The Manchu Emperors have endeavored to conquer their neighbors, the Birmans and Coreans, but in both cases had to be satisfied with the outward homage of a *kotow*, and a few articles of tribute, when a formal embassy presented itself in Peking. The Siamese, Cochinchinese, Coreans, Tibetans, Lewchewans, and some of the tribes of Turkestan, are nominally vassals of the Son of Heaven, and their names remain on the roll of feifs. The first two have ceased to *tsin kung*, or send tribute, since about 1860; and the Lewchewans are not likely to revisit their old quarters at Peking in any capacity; while the others derive advantage from the facilities of traffic which they are unwilling to give up.

The precepts of Confucius taught the rulers of China to conquer their neighbors by showing the excellence of a good government, for then their enemies would come and voluntarily range themselves under their sway; and although the kindness

[1] Andrew Wilson, *The "Ever Victorious Army." A History of the Chinese Campaign under Lieut.-Col. Gordon.* London, 1868, p. 269.

Digitized by Google

of the rulers of China to those fully in their power is as hypocritical as their rule is unjust, those nations who pay them this homage do it voluntarily, and experience no interference in their internal affairs. The maxims of Confucian polity, aided by the temper of the people, have had some effect, in the lapse of years, upon the nature of this quasi feudality. The weaker nations looked up to China, since they could look no higher, and their advances in just government, industry, and arts, is not a little owing to their political intercourse during past centuries. The Chinese Empire is a notable example of the admirable results of a peaceful policy; and the sincere desire of every well-wisher of his race doubtless is that this mighty mass of human beings may be Christianized and elevated from their present ignorance and weakness by a like peaceful infusion of the true principles of good order and liberty.

Many treatises upon the art and practice of war exist, one of which, called the *Soldier's Manual*,[1] in eighteen chapters, contains some good directions. The first chapter treats of the mode of marching, necessity of having plans of the country through which the army is to pass, and cautions the troops against harassing the people unnecessarily—not a useless admonition, for a body of Chinese soldiers is too often like a swarm of locusts upon the land. The second chapter teaches the mode of building bridges, the need there is of cautious explorations in marching, and of sending out scouts; this subject is also continued in the next section, and directions given about castrametation, placing sentries, and keeping the troops on the alert, as well as under strict discipline in camp. The rest of the book is chiefly devoted to directions for the management of an actual battle, sending out spies beforehand, choosing positions, and bringing the various parts of the army into action at the best time. The hope of reward is held out to induce the soldier to be brave, and the threats of punishment and death if he desert or turn his back in time of battle.

The utility of music in encouraging the soldiers and exciting them to the charge is fully appreciated, but to our notions it

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XI., p. 487.

Digitized by Google

no more deserves the name of music than the collection of half-drilled louts in petticoats does that of an army, when compared with a European force. Still, its antiquity, if nothing else, renders it a subject of great interest to the musical student, while its power over the people seems to be none the less because it is unscientific. However small their attainments in the theory and practice of music, no nation gives to this art a higher place. It was regarded by Confucius as an essential part in the government of a state, harmonizing and softening the relations between the different ranks of society, and causing them all to move on in consentaneous accord. It is remarked of the sage himself that having heard a tune in one of his ramblings, he did not know the taste of food for three weeks after—but, with all deference to the feelings of so distinguished a man, we cannot help thinking his food might have been quite as palatable without music, if it was no better then than it is at the present day. The Chinese never had anything like the musical contests among the Greeks, and their efforts have been directed to develop instrumental rather than vocal music.

The names and characters used for notes in vocal music are here given, though their real tone cannot be accurately represented by our staff. The second octave is denoted by affixing the sign *jin*, 'a man,' to the simple notes, or as shown in the second *ché*, by a peculiar hooked bottom.

合 四 乙 上 尺 工 凡 六 五 仜 仕 尺/仜 仜

ho sz' i chang ché kung fan liu wu i chang ché kung fan

If the first note in this scale be taken as the tonic, then they form a diatonic octave, with a supernumerary note, which is an octave above the second one *sz'*, the first one, *ho*, being an octave below *liu*, the eighth. But the semitones *i* and *fan* are very little used, and it loses in some degree its diatonic character. No chromatic scale exists among them, at least none of their instruments are made to express flat and sharp notes.

Digitized by Google

Barrow says that the Chinese learned this mode of writing music from Pereira, a Roman Catholic missionary, in 1670, but its existence in Japan and Corea invalidates this statement.

There are two kinds of music, known as the Southern and Northern, which differ in their character, and are readily recognized by the people. The octave in the former seems to have had only six notes, and the songs of the Miaotsz' and rural people in that portion of China are referable to such a gamut, while the eight-tone scale generally prevails in all theatres and more cultivated circles. Further examination by competent observers who can jot down on such a gamut the airs they hear in various regions of China, is necessary to ascertain these interesting points, which now seem to carry us back to remote antiquity, and have been noticed in other countries than China.

In writing instrumental music, marks, meaning to *push*, *fillip*, *hook*, etc., are added to denote the mode of playing the string; the two are united into very complicated combinations. For instance, in writing a tune for the lute or *kin*, "each note is a cluster of characters; one denotes the string, another the stud, a third informs you in what manner the fingers of the right hand are to be used, a fourth does the same in reference to the left, a fifth tells the performer in what way he must slide the hand before or after the appropriate sound has been given, and a sixth says, perhaps, that two notes are to be struck at the same time." These complex notes are difficult to learn and remember, therefore the Chinese usually play by the ear. This mode of notation, in addition to its complexity, must be varied by nearly every kind of instrument, inasmuch as the combinations fitted for one instrument are inapplicable to another; but music is written for only a few instruments, such as the lute and the guitar.

These notes, when simply written without directions combined with them as described above, indicate only their pitch in a certain scale, and do not denote either the length or the absolute pitch; they are written perpendicularly, and various marks of direction are given on the side of the column regarding the proportionate length of time in which certain notes are to be played, others to be trilled or repeated once, twice, or more

Digitized by Google

times, and when the performer is to pause. Beats occur at regular intervals in some of the written tunes; all music is in common time and no triple measures are used, yet time is pretty well observed in orchestras. Of harmony and counterpoint they know nothing; the swell, diminish, flat, sharp, appogiatura, tie, and other marks which assist in giving expression to our written music, are for the most part unknown, nor are tunes set to any key. The neatness and adaptation of the European notation is better appreciated after studying the clumsy, imperfect mode which is here briefly described.[1]

No description can convey a true idea of Chinese vocal music, and few persons are able to imitate it when they have heard it. De Guignes says, "It is possible to sing a Chinese song, but I think it would be very difficult to give it the proper tone without having heard it by a native, and I rather believe that no one can perfectly imitate their notes." They seem, in some cases, to issue from the larynx and nose, the tongue, teeth, and lips having little to do with them, the modulation being made mostly with the muscles of the bronchia; at other times, the enunciation of the words requires a little more use of the lips and teeth. Singing is generally on a falsetto key; and this feature prevails throughout. Whether in the theatre or in the street, about the house or holding the guitar or lute, both men and women sing in this artificial tone somewhere between a squeal and a scream, and which no western musical instrument is able to imitate. Its character is plaintive and soft, not full or exhibiting much compass, though when two or three females sing together in recitative, not destitute of sweetness. Bass and tenor are not sung by men, nor a second treble by females, and the two performers are seldom heard together among the thousands of street musicians who get a precarious living by their skill in this line, as they accompany the guitar or rebeck. The chanting in Buddhist services resembles the Ambrosian and early Gregorian tones, and is accompanied only by striking a block

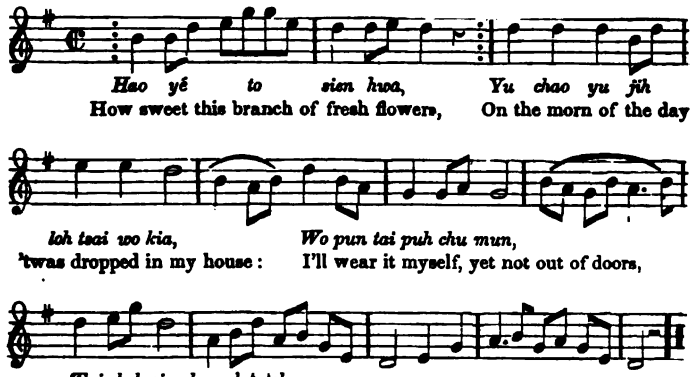
[1] Compare Dr. Jenkins in the *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. S.*, Vol. V., 1868, pp. 30 ff., and Rev. E. W. Syle in *ib.* Vol. II., 1859, p. 176; Père Amiot in *Mém. conc. les Chinois*, Vol. VI., pp. 1 ff.; *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. IV., Arts. 2 and 3. Perny *Dict.*, app. No. XIV., p. 443.

Digitized by Google

and marking the time; the tenor voices of boys make a strong contrast to the gruff bass voices of the men in this service; some of the latter will carry their part as low as an octave below C or D in the bass, sounding most sepulchrally, like a trombone.

Three of the tunes inserted in Barrow's *Travels* are here quoted as specimens of Chinese airs The first is the most popular, the second, common at Shanghai, is called *Luh pan*, or 'Six Boards,' it has a strain at the beginning and end additional to the usual form.

MOH-LÍ HWA; OR, THE JASMINE FLOWER.


Hao yé to sien hwa,
How sweet this branch of fresh flowers,
Yu chao yu jih
On the morn of the day
loh tsai wo kia,
'twas dropped in my house:
Wo pun tai puh chu mun,
I'll wear it myself, yet not out of doors,
Tui choh sien hwa, 'rh loh.
But will match it with others, and make myself glad.

Hao yé to Moh-lí hwa,
Mwan yuen hwa kai sho puh kwei ta,
Wo pun tai tsz' yé ta,
Tai yu kung kan hwa jin ma.

How sweet this sprig of the jasmine flower!
Through the whole plat there's none to equal it;
I myself will wear this new plucked sprig,
Though I fear all who see it will envy me.

Digitized by Google

LUH PAN; OR, THE SIX BOARDS.

The literature on the art of music is large. One treatise on beating drums scientifically dates from about the year 860 A.D., and contains a list of about one hundred and twenty-nine symphonies, many of which are of Indian origin. Among the seventy-two instruments briefly described in the *Chinese Chrestomathy*, there are seventeen kinds of drums, from the large

Digitized by Google

ones suspended in temples to assist in worship to others of lesser size and diverse shape used in war, in theatres, and in bands. Gongs, cymbals, tambourines, and musical vases are also described in considerable variety; the last consisting of a curious arrangement of twelve cups, more or less filled with water, and struck with rods. The Chinese are fond of the tinkling of small pieces of sonorous glass, caused by the wind striking them against each other as they are suspended from a frame or lamp. The simple succession of sounds arising from striking upon a harmonicon, jingling these glasses together, or touching different sized cymbals suspended in a frame, is a favorite species of music.

The stringed instruments to be played by thrumming are not as numerous as those of percussion, but they display more science. Nothing resembling the harp or Apollo's lyre has been observed among them. The *kin*, or 'scholar's lute,' is considered as the most finished, and has received more attention than any other orchestral implement; to excel in playing it is regarded as a scholarly accomplishment. A work entitled *The Lute-Player's Easy Lessons*, in two volumes, contains explanations of one hundred and nine terms and is illustrated by twenty-nine pictures of the position of the hands to aid in a full understanding of the twenty-three sets of tunes given in the second volume. This lute, it may be added, is of very ancient origin and derives its name from the word *kin*, 'to prohibit,' "because it restrains and checks evil passions and corrects the human heart." It is a board about four feet in length and eighteen inches wide, convex above and flat beneath, where are two holes opening into hollows. There are seven strings of silk, which pass over a bridge near the wide end through the board, and are tightened by nuts beneath; they are secured on two pegs at the smaller end. The sounding-board is divided by thirteen studs, "so placed that the length of the strings is divided first into two equal parts, then into three, etc., up to eight, with the omission of the seventh. The seven strings inclose the compass of a ninth or two-fifths, the middle one being treated like A upon the violin, viz., as a middle string, and each of the outer ones is tuned a fifth from it. This interval is

Digitized by Google

treated like our octave in the violin, for the compass of the *kin* is made up of fifths. Each of the outer strings is tuned a fourth from the alternate string within the system, so that there is a major tone, an interval tone less than a minor third, and a major tone in the fifth. The Chinese leave the interval entire, and skip the half tone, while we divide it into two unequal parts. It will therefore readily appear that the mood or character of the music of the *kin* must be very different from that of western instruments, so that none of them can exactly do justice to the Chinese airs. One of the peculiarities in performing on the lute is sliding the left hand fingers along the string, and the trilling and other evolutions they are made to execute."

There are other instruments similar to the *kin*, one with thirty, and another with thirteen strings, played with plectrums. The number of instruments resembling the guitar, lute, cithern, spinet, etc., is considerable, some with silken, others with wire strings, but none of catgut. The balloon-shaped guitar, or *pipa*, has four strings arranged and secured like those of a violin; it is about three feet long, and the unvarnished upper table has twelve frets to guide the performer. The strings are tuned at the intervals of a fourth, a major tone, and a fourth, so that the outer strings are octaves to each other; but the player generally avoids the semitones. The *pipa* frequently accompanies the songs of strolling musicians and ballad singers. The *san hien*, or 'three-stringed guitar,' resembles a rebeck in its contour, but the neck and head is three feet long, and the body is cylindrical and hollow, usually covered with snake's skin, upon which the bridge is set. The strings are tuned as fourths to each other, and in this respect it seems to be the counterpart of the Grecian mercurian; their sound is low and dull, and the instrument is sometimes played in company with the *pipa*. Another kind of guitar, called *yueh kin*, or 'full moon guitar,' has a large round belly and short neck, resembling the theorbo or arch lute of Europe, but with only four strings, while that had ten or more. These four strings stand in pairs that are unisons with each other, having an interval of a fifth interposed between the pairs. The sound is smarter than that from the *pipa* or *kin*, and it is used in lively tunes, the strings being

Digitized by Google

struck briskly with the nail or a plectrum. Similar in its construction to the *san hien* is the rebeck, or two-stringed fiddle, the rude appearance of which corresponds to the thin grating sounds which issue from it. This instrument is merely a bamboo stick thrust into a cylinder of the same material, and having two strings fastened at one end of the stick on pegs, and passing over a bridge on the cylinder to the other end; they are tuned at intervals of a fifth. The bow passes between the two strings, and as they are near each other, much of the skill required to play it is exhibited in wielding the bow so as not to make discord by scraping it against the wrong string while trying to produce a given sound. Europeans wonder how the Chinese can be delighted with the harsh gratings of this wretched machine, but none of their musical instruments are more popular, and the skill they exhibit in playing it deserves a better reward in the melody of the notes. A modification of it, called *tí kin*, or 'crowing lute,' is made by employing a cocoanut for the belly; its sounds are, if anything, more dissonant.

The *yang kin* is a kind of dulcimer, consisting of a greater or less number of brass wires of different lengths, tuned at proper intervals, and fastened upon a sounding-board; it is played with light hammers, and forms a rudimentary piano-forte, but the sounds are very attenuated. The *sǎng* is in like manner the embryo of the organ; it is a hollow conical-shaped box, which corresponds to a wind-chest, having a mouthpiece on one side, and communicating with thirteen reeds of different lengths inserted in the top; some of the tubes are provided with valves, part of them opening upward and part downward, so that some of them sound when the breath fills the wind-box, and others are only heard when it is sucked out and the air rushes down the tubes to refill it. The tubes stand in groups of four, four, three, two, around the top, and those having ventiges are placed so that the performer can open or close them at pleasure as he holds it. By covering the first set of holes and gently breathing in the mouthpiece, a sweet concert of sounds is produced, augmented to the octave and twelfth as the force of the breath is increased. By stopping certain groups, other notes, shriller and louder, are emitted; and any single tube can be sounded by

Digitized by Google

inhaling the wind from the wind-box and stopping the other holes. It is a simple thing and no doubt among the most ancient of musical instruments, but it possesses no scope nor means of varying the tone of the tubes. Mr. Lay thinks it to be identical in principle and form with the organ invented by Jubal; the Chinese regard it more as a curious instrument than one possessing claims to admiration or attention.

Their wind instruments are numerous, but most of them are remarkable rather for clamor than sweetness or compass. The *hwang tih*, or flute, is about twice the length of our fife, and made of a bamboo tube neatly prepared and pierced with ten holes, two of which are placed near the end and unused, and one midway between the embouchure and the six equidistant ones for the fingers. This additional hole is covered with a thin film; the mouth-hole is bored about one-third of the way from the top. There are no keys, and the performers generally blow upon the embouchure so violently that the sounds are shrill and harsh, but when several of them play together the concert is more agreeable. The congener of the flute is the *shu tih*, or clarinet, which takes the lead in all musical performances, as it does in western bands. It has seven effective holes, one of which is stopped by the thumb, but no keys; the bell is of copper and sits loose upon the end, and the copper mouthpiece is ornamented with rings, and blown through a reed. The tones produced by it are shrill and deafening, and none of their instruments better characterize Chinese musical taste. A smaller one, of a sweeter tone, like a flageolet, is sometimes fitted with a singular shaped reed, so that it can be played upon by the nose. Street musicians sometimes endeavor to transform themselves into a travelling orchestra. One of these peripatetic Orpheuses will fit a flageolet to his nose, sling a small drum under one shoulder, and suspend a framework of four small cymbals upon the breast; the man, thus accoutred, aided by a couple of monkeys running after him, or sitting on his head and shoulders, goes from street to street singing a plaintive ditty, and accompanying his voice with his instruments, and drawing a crowd with his monkeys.

The horn resembles a trombone in principle, for the shaft is retractible within the cylindrical copper bell, and can be length-

Digitized by Google

ened at pleasure. The sound is very grave, and in processions its hollow booming forms a great contrast to the shrill clarinets and cymbals. Another kind of horn, less grave, is made of a crooked stem expanding into a small bell at the end; the shaft is of two parts, one drawing into the other, so that the depth of tone can be modified. A long straight horn, resembling the funeral pipe of the Jews, is sometimes heard on funeral occasions, but this and the clarion, trumpet, and other kinds of pipes of ancient and modern make are not common.

The *lo*, or gong, is the type of Chinese music: a crashing harangue of rapid blows upon this sonorous plate, with a rattling accompaniment on small drums, and a crackling symphony of shrill notes from the clarinet and cymbal, constitute the chief features of their musical performances. The Emperor Kanghí endeavored to introduce foreign tunes and instruments among his courtiers, and the natives at Macao have heard good music from the Portuguese bands and choirs in that city from childhood, but not an instrument or a tune has been adopted by them. It seems to be a rule in Chinese music that the gong should only vary in rapidity of strokes, while the alternations of time into agreeable intervals are left to the drums. "This want of perception as to what is pleasing in rhythmical succession of sounds," Lay well observes, "is connected with another fact—the total absence of metrical effect in national poetry. The verses contain a particular number of words and set pauses in each line, but there is nothing like an interchange of long and short sounds. Among the Greeks the fall of the smith's hammer, the stroke of the oar, and the tread of the soldier in armor suggested some poetic measure, and their music exhibits a world of curious metres. But nothing of the sort can be heard in China, amid all the sounds and noises that salute the ear in a noisy country." It is probable that the impracticable, monosyllabic nature of the language has contributed to this result; though the genius and temperament of the people are the chief reasons.

A Chinese orchestra or band, when in full note, strikes upon the ear of a European as a collection of the most discordant sounds, and he immediately thinks of Hogarth's picture of the

Digitized by Google

Enraged Musician, as the best likeness of its dissonance. It seems, when hearing them, as if each performer had his own tune, and was trying to distinguish himself above his competitors by his zeal and force; but on listening carefully he will observe, amid the clangor, that they keep good time, one taking the octave, and the different instruments striking in with some regard to parts, only, however, to confound the confusion still more because they are not tuned on the same key. Bands and orchestras are employed on occasions of marriages and funerals, theatrical exhibitions, religious or civic processions, and reception of officers, but not to a very great extent in temples or ancestral worship; no nation makes more use of such music as they have than the Chinese. The people have an ear for music, and young men form clubs to learn and practise on various instruments and fit themselves for playing at weddings or birthday festivals. In respect to adopting foreign harmonies, which youths soon learn to appreciate when taught in mission schools, there is likely to be no competition, owing to the great differences between them. [1]

From this account of Chinese music, it may be readily inferred that it is not of such a character as to start the hearers off in a lively dance. A sort of mummer or posture-making is practised by persons attached to theatrical companies, and pantomimic art seems to have been understood in ancient times, but the exhibitions of it were probably as jejune as the caperings of puppets. As acrobats the Chinese are equal to any nation, and companies have performed in many western capitals within a few years past. Some of their performances are highly exciting, as throwing sharp cleavers at a man fastened to a post, till he cannot stir without cutting himself against their blades, is a common exhibition. To go through the tragedy of trying, con-

[1] *Chinese as They Are*, Chap. VIII. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VIII., pp. 30–54. *Chinese Chrestomathy*, pp. 356–365. *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, No. II., 1859, p. 176; No. V., 1868, p. 30. *Journal of the Asiatic Soc. of Japan*, 1877, Vol. V., pp. 170–179. *German Asiatic Soc. of Japan*, 1876. Grosier, *Description générale de la Chine*, Tome VI., p. 258. Doolittle, *Social Life*, Vol. II., p. 216. Barrow's *Travels*, pp. 313–323. *Mémoires conc. les Chinois*, Tomes I., III., VI., etc.; for ancient musical knowledge, the last still furnishes the best analysis yet made.

Digitized by Google

demning, and killing a boy by stabbing him in the belly is not so common; the imitation of the gasping chest and pallid death hue are wonderfully natural. Ventriloquism, writing answers to questions asked of the spirits by means of rods moving over a dusted table, and other black art or magical tricks have long been known. In dancing and other forms of graceful motion they are entirely wanting, and one would almost as soon think of associating music and medicine as that Chinese music should be accompanied by quadrilles and cotillons, or that men with shoes like pattens could lead off women with feet like hoofs through the turns and mazes of a waltz or fandango.

Their deficiencies in music will not lead us to expect much from them in painting or sculpture, for all flow so much from the same general perception of the beautiful in sound, form, and color, that where one is deficient all are likely to be unappreciated. This want in Chinese mind (for we are hardly at liberty to call it a defect) is, to a greater or less degree, observable in all the races of Eastern Asia, none of whom exhibit a high appreciation of the beautiful or sublime in nature or art, or have produced much which proves that their true principles were ever understood. Painting is rather behind sculpture, but neither can be said to have advanced beyond rude imitations of nature.

Even the best painters have no proper idea of perspective or of blending light and shade, but the objects are exhibited as much as possible on a flat surface, as if the painter drew his picture from a balloon, and looked at the country with a vertical sun shining above him. As might be inferred from their deficiencies in linear drawing and landscapes, they eminently fail in delineating the human figure in its right proportions, position, and expressions, and of grouping the persons introduced into a piece in natural attitudes. The study of the human figure in all its proportions has not been attended to by painters any more than its anatomy has by surgeons. Shadows upon portraits are considered a great defect, and in order to avoid them a front view is usually taken. Landscapes are also painted without shading, the remote objects being as minutely depicted as those in the foreground, and the point of view in

Digitized by Google

pieces of any size is changed for the nearer and remote parts. There is no vanishing point to their pictures, as might be inferred from their ignorance of perspective and the true elements of art.

Outline drawing is a favorite style of the art, and the wealthy adorn their houses with rough sketches in ink of figures and landscapes; but the humblest of such compositions as are common in the galleries and studios of western countries have never been produced by Chinese artists. Some of their

Representation of a Man Dreaming.

representations of abstract ideas are at least singular to us, and, like many other things brought from their country, attract notice from their oddity.

Their coloring is executed with great skill and accuracy—too much, indeed, in many cases, so that the painting loses something of the effect it would otherwise have from the scrupulous minuteness of the detail, though it looks well in paintings of flowers, animals, costumes, ornaments, and other single objects where this filling up is necessary to a true idea of the original. The tints of the human countenance are no better done, however,

Digitized by Google

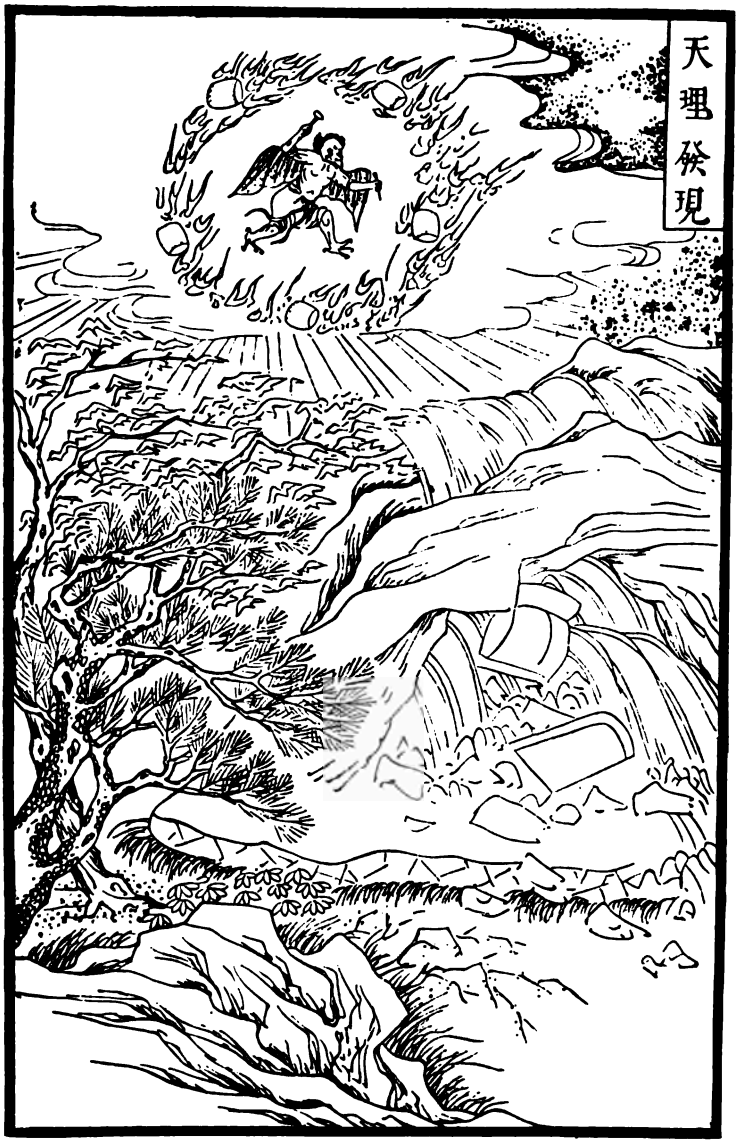
than its lineaments, and the lifeless opacity suggests the idea that the artist was not called in until his patron was about to be entombed from the sight of his sorrowing family. The paintings obtained at Canton may, some of them, seem to disprove these opinions of the mediocrity attained by the artists in that country, but the productions of the copyists in that city are not the proper criteria of native uneducated art. Some of them have had so much practice in copying foreign productions that it has begun to correct their own notions of designing. These constitute, however, a very small proportion of the whole, and have had no effect on national taste. The designs to be seen on plates and bowls are, although not the best, fairer specimens of art than the pieces sometimes procured at Canton. The beautiful fidelity with which engravings are copied at Canton is well seen in the paintings on ivory, especially miniatures and figures, some of which fully equal similar productions made elsewhere.[1]

As samples of Chinese illustrative art, the two adjoining wood-cuts may be considered as quite up to the average of their fairest achievements. The story of the first in brief is as follows: In the district of Tsung-ngan lived a crafty plebeian, who, envying the good fortune of all about him, became especially covetous of the burial ground of his district magistrate Chu. Hoping to gain a surreptitious benefit from the felicitous luck of the plat, he secretly buried his own tombstone there, and at the end of several years brought suit for its recovery. Unable to comprehend the affair, Chu repaired to the burial spot, where indeed the geomancy of the grave was found to be entirely in accord with the rules, but upon removing the earth the stone of his enemy's remote ancestry was disclosed. The suit was in consequence declared against him, Chu removed his residence to the black tea country, and his envious neighbor entered in triumph upon possession of the graveyard.

Not so readily, however, did the powers above condone this iniquity. One night there arose a tempest of unheard-of vio-

[1] Compare Owen Jones, *Grammar of Ornament*, Chap. XIV., and *Examples of Chinese Ornament* (London, 1867). *Gazette des Beaux-Arts* for October and November, 1873, and January, 1874.

Digitized by Google



The Vengeance of Heaven upon the False Grave.

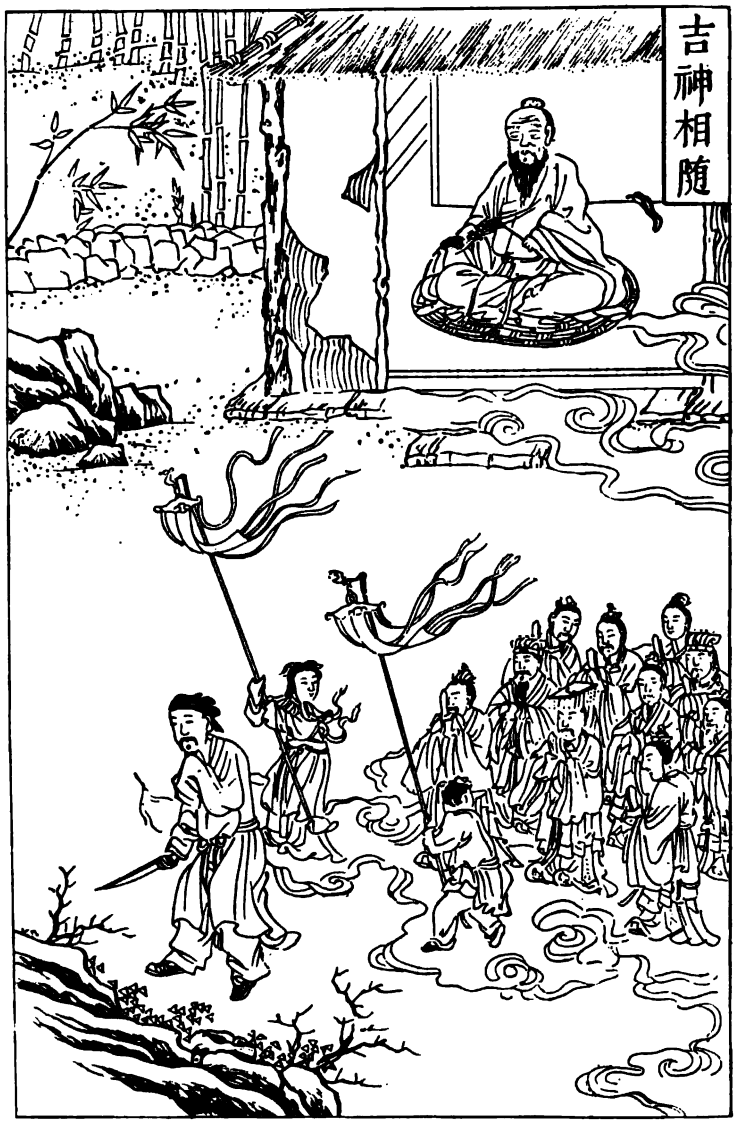
Digitized by Google

lence, when the thunder and lightning were indescribable, the hideous roar and flash of which terrified the country far and near, boding no good to its wretched inhabitants. The following morning the grave was discovered in ruins, stone and epitaph uprooted, even the corpse and coffin missing. The vengeance of Heaven had repaired the injustice of man.

The illustration which depicts the tempest personified in its full terror shows us the *Lui Kung*, or God of Thunder, almost the only Chinese mythological deity who is drawn with wings. The cock's head and claws, the hammer and chisel, representing the splitting peal attending a flash, the circlet of fire encompassing a number of drums to typify the reverberating thunder and the ravages of the irresistible lightning, present a grotesque ensemble which is quite unique even among the *bizarrerie* of oriental figures; the somewhat juvenile attempts of the artist to sketch the destruction and rifling of the grave are much less notable.

Concerning the subject of the second illustration (taken, with the other, from the *Sacred Edict* of Kanghí), we are told that one Yuen, having conceived a violent hatred against an acquaintance, set out one morning, knife in hand, with the purpose of killing him. A venerable man sitting in a convent saw him pass, and was amazed to observe several scores of spirits closely following him, some of whom clutched his weapon, while others seemed endeavoring to delay his progress. "About the space of a meal-time" the patriarch noticed Yuen's return, accompanied this time by more than a hundred spirits wearing golden caps and bearing banners raised on high. Yuen himself appeared with so happy a face, in place of his gloomy countenance of the early morning, that the old man sadly concluded that his enemy must be dead and his revenge gratified. "When you passed this way at daybreak," he asked, "where were you going, and how do you return so soon?" "It was owing to my quarrel with Miu," said Yuen, "that made me wish to kill him. But in passing this convent door better thoughts came to me as I pondered upon the stress his wife and children would come to, and of his aged mother, none of whom had done me wrong. I determined then not to kill him, and return thus promptly

Digitized by Google



A would-be Assassin followed by Spirits.

Digitized by Google

from my evil purpose." It hardly needed the sage's commendations to increase the reformed murderer's inner contentment, imparted by the train of ghostly helpers; he continued on his way rejoicing. The reader may notice a pictorial idea as well as a moral not unlike those of more western countries.

The symbolism of the Chinese has not attracted the notice of foreign writers as much as it deserves. It meets us everywhere—on plates and crockery, on carpets, rugs, vases, wall pictures, shop signs, and visiting cards. Certain animals stand for well-understood characters in the language, and convey their sense to the native without any confusion. Owing to the similarity of sound, *fuh* denotes *bat* and *happiness*, and *luh* stands for *deer* and *official emolument*. The character *shao*, meaning 'longevity,' is represented in many ways—an old man leaning on his staff; a pine tree cut into the form of the character; a tortoise, which is among the longest-lived reptiles; a stork, supposed to be a bird which attains a great age, and a fabulous peach which is a thousand years ripening. A dragon and a phœnix, or *fung-whang*, are emblems of a newly wedded pair, and various modes of combination are adopted to represent marriage relations.

A rug will sometimes tell a story very neatly to the eye. In the centre is the *swastica*, or 'hammer of Thor,' which denotes *all*, and symbolizes all happiness that humanity desires. On the right is the *luh*, or 'deer,' which denotes honor and success in study, carrying the *yü-í*, or Buddhist sceptre, in its mouth, meaning success in literary labors. On the left is pictured a goose, indicating domestic felicity, and two bats complete the rug, with its good wishes.

In the plate represented in the picture the central figure is clad in the ancient costume of officials bearing the insignia or baton of a minister of State. The old man, with his gourd and peach, indicates an extreme and happy old age; and the figure with the basket corresponds to the cornucopia of western emblems. The five *bats* symbolize the *wu fuh*, or 'five happinesses,' which all mankind desires—riches, longevity, sound body, love of virtue, and a peaceful end.

The visiting card and note paper often indicate in their

Digitized by Google

adornments a good wish and a motto which does credit to the taste and heart of the designer. A most graceful and not uncommon way of wishing a guest good luck is to depict some happy emblem or a sentence of the language with a fortunate meaning on the bottom of his tea-cup. The characters "May your happiness know no bounds" frequently occur in this posi-

Symbols of Happiness and Old Age. (From a plaque.)

tion, and the oft-recurring five bats or three peaches can be employed with like signification. The mandarin duck is a well-understood emblem for conjugal affection; again, a cock and hen standing on an artificial rock-work symbolize the pleasures of a country life. Sometimes the eight symbols peculiar to the Buddhist sect, or the *pah sien* ('eight genii') indicative of their protection, are seen in the border of a plaque amid a device of running arabesques. The favorite dragon, in an infinite di-

Digitized by Google

versity of shapes, adorns the finer qualities of cups, plates, bowls, and vases, to represent imperial grandeur, but common people are not wont to use such patterns.

The brilliant paintings on pith-paper, or *rice-paper*, as it is commonly but incorrectly called, deserve special mention for their singular delicacy and spirit. This substance, whose velvety surface contrasts so admirably with bright colors, is a delicate vegetable film, consisting of long hexagonal cells, whose length is parallel to the surface of the film, and which are filled with air when the film is in its usual state; the peculiar softness which so well adapts it for receiving colors is owing to this structure. It is obtained from the pith of a species of Fatsia, a plant allied to the Aralia, growing in Formosa and Yunnan, in marshy districts. It is cultivated to some extent, but mostly gathered by cutting the branches of the wild plants, which resemble the elder. This pith forms a large item in the internal trade of China, and is worked up into toys as well as cut into sheets. The fragments are used to stuff pillows or fill up the soles of shoes, or wherever a light, dry material is needed. The largest and best sheets (ten by fifteen inches) are selected for the painters at Hongkong and Canton, where many hundreds of workmen are employed in making them. Under the direction of foreign ladies at Amoy and elsewhere, most accurate imitations of flowers and bouquets are now made by natives out of pith-paper. The pieces are cut nearly a foot long, and the pith is forced out by driving a stick into one end; it is then wet and put into bamboos, where it swells and dries straight. If too short to furnish the required breadth, several bits are pressed together until they adhere and make one long straight piece. The paring knife resembles a butcher's cleaver, a thin and sharp blade, which is touched up on a block of iron-wood at the last moment. The pith is pared on a square tile, having its ends guarded by a thin strip of brass, on which the knife rests. The pith is rolled over against its edge with the left hand; the right firmly holds it, slowly moving it leftward, as the workman pulls and rolls the pith in the same direction, as far as the tile allows. The pared sheet runs under the knife, and the paring goes on until only a centre three or four lines thick is left; and

Digitized by Google

this remnant the thrifty workmen use or sell for an aperient. The paring resembles the operation of cutting out corks, and produces a smooth sheet about four feet long, the first half foot being too much grooved to be of use. The fresh sheets are pressed in a pile, smoothed by ironing and their fractures mended with mica. Most of the paper is trimmed into square sheets for the makers of artificial flowers, and sold in Formosa at about eight cents for five hundred sheets. An India-ink outline is first transferred by dampening and pressing it upon the paper, when the ink strikes off sufficiently to enable the workman to fill up the sketch; one outline will serve for limning several copies, and in large establishments the separate colors are laid on by different workmen. The manufacture of these paintings at Canton employs between two and three thousand hands.

Another tissue sometimes used by the Chinese for painting, more remarkable for its singularity than elegance, is the reticulated nerve-work of leaves, the parenchyma of the leaf having been removed by maceration, and the membrane filled with isinglass. The appearance of a painting on this transparent substance is pretty, but the colors do not retain their brilliancy. The Chinese admire paintings on glass, and some of the moonlight scenes or thunderstorms are good specimens of their art. The clouds and dark parts are done with India-ink, and a dark shade well befitting the subject is imparted to the whole scene by underlaying it with a piece of blackish paper. Portraits and other subjects are also done on glass, but the indifferent execution is rendered still more conspicuous by the transparency of the ground; the Hindus purchase large quantities of such glass pictures of their gods and goddesses. Looking-glasses are also painted on the back with singular effect by removing the quicksilver with a steel point according to a design previously sketched, and then painting the denuded portion.

Statuary is confined chiefly to molding idols out of clay or cutting them from wood, and carving animals to adorn balustrades and temples. Idols are generally made in a sitting posture and dressed, the face and hands being the only parts of the body seen, so that no opportunity is afforded for imitating the

Digitized by Google

muscles and contour of the figure. The hideous monsters which guard the entrance of temples often exhibit more artistic skill than the unmeaning images enshrined within, and some even display much knowledge of character and proportion. Among their best performances in statuettes are the accurate baked and painted models of different classes of people; Canton and Tien-tsin artists excel in this branch.

Animals are sculptured in granite and cast in bronze, showing great skill and patience in the detail work; deformity in the model has resulted in the production of such animals, indeed, as were probably never beheld in any world. Images of lions, tigers, tortoises, elephants, rams, and other animals ornament bridges, temples, and tombs. The elephants in the long avenue of warriors, horses, lions, etc., leading up to the tomb of the Emperor Hungwu at Nanking are the only tolerable representations of their originals; the gigantic images guarding the tomb of Yungloh, his son, at Changping, near Peking, are noticeable for size alone. The united effect of the elaborate carving and grotesque ornaments seen upon the roofs, woodwork, and pillars of buildings is not devoid of beauty, though in their details there is a great violation of the true principles of art, just as the expression of a face may please which still has not a handsome feature in it. Short columns of stone or wood, surmounted by a lion, and a dragon twining around the shaft, the whole cut out of one block; or a lion sejant with half a dozen cubs crawling over his body, are among the ornaments of temples and graves which show the taste of the people.

The Chinese have a sense of the ridiculous, and exhibit it both in their sculpture and drawing in many ways. Lampoons, pasquinades, and caricatures are common, nor is any person below the dragon's throne spared by their pens or pencils, though they prefer subjects not likely to involve the authors—as in the one here selected from the many elicited during the war of 1840.

By far the best specimens of sculpture are their imitations of fruits, flowers, animals, etc., cut out of many kinds of stone, from gnarled roots of bamboo, wood, and other materials; but in these we admire the unwearied patience and cunning of the workmen in making grotesque combinations and figures out of

Digitized by Google

apparently intractable materials, and do not seek for any indications of a pure taste or embodiment of an exalted conception. Inscriptions of a religious or geomantic character are often cut upon the faces of rocks, as was the case in India and Arabia,[1] and the picturesque characters of the language make a pretty appearance in such situations.

The small advances made in architecture have already been noticed in Chapter XIII.—a deficiency exhibited in the Huns and other nations of the Mongolian stock long after they had

Caricature of an English Foraging Party.

settled in Europe and Western Asia; nor was it until their amalgamation with the imaginative nations of Southern Europe had changed their original character that grand performances in architecture appeared among the latter. If the Chinese had a model of the Parthenon or the Pantheon in their own country, belike they would measurably imitate it in every part, but they would erect dozens in the same fashion. Perhaps an infusion of elegance and taste would have been imparted to them if the people had had frequent intercourse with more im-

[1] Compare Job XXX., 24.

Digitized by Google

aginative nations, but when there were no models of this superior kind to follow there was no likelihood of their originating them. In lighter edifices, as pavilions, rest-houses, kiosks, and arbors, there is, however, a degree of taste and adaptation that is unusual in other buildings, and quite in keeping with their fondness for tinsel and gilding rather than solidity and grandeur. On this point Lay's remark on the characteristics of the Attic, Egyptian, Gothic, and Chinese styles is apposite. "If we would see beauty, size, and proportion in all their excellence, we should look for it among the models of Greece; if we desire something that was wild and stupendous, we should find it in Egypt; if grandeur with a never-sated minuteness of decoration please us, we need look no further than to a cathedral; and lastly, if the romantic and the old-fashioned attract our fancy, the Chinese can point us to an exhaustless store in the recesses of their vast Empire. A lack of science and of conception is seen in all their buildings, but fancy seems to have had free license to gambol at pleasure; and what the architect wanted in developing a scheme he made up in a redundancy of imagination."

The Chinese have made but little progress in investigating the principles and forces of mechanics, but have practically understood most of the common powers in the various applications of which they are capable. The lever, wheel and axle, wedge and pinion, are all known in some form or other, but the modification of the wedge in the screw is not frequent. The sheave-blocks on board their vessels have only one pulley, but they understand the advantages of the windlass, and have adopted the capstain in working vessels, driving piles, raising timber, etc. They have long understood the mode of raising weights by a hooked pulley running on a rope, attached at each end to a cylinder of unequal diameters; by this contrivance, as the rope wound around the larger diameter it ran off the smaller one, raising the weight to the amount of the difference between the circumference of the two cylinders at a very small expense of strength. The graduations of the weighing-beam indicate their acquaintance with the relations between the balance and the weight on the long and short arm of the lever, and this

Digitized by Google

mode of weighing is preferred for gold, pearls, and other valuable things. The overshot water-wheel is used to turn stones for grinding wheat and set in motion pestles to hull rice and press oil from seeds, and the undershot power for raising water. There is a great expenditure of human strength in most of their contrivances; in many, indeed, the object seems to have been rather to give a direction to this strength than to abridge it. For instance, they put a number of slings under a heavy stone and carry it off bodily on poles, in preference to making a low car to roll it away at half the expense of human power.

In other departments of science the attainments of the people are few and imperfect. Chemistry and metallurgy are unknown as sciences, but many operations in them are performed with a considerable degree of success. Sir J. Davis gives the detail of some experiments in oxidizing quicksilver and preparation of mercurial medicines which were performed by a native in the presence and at the request of Dr. Pearson at Canton, and "afforded a curious proof of similar results obtained by the most different and distant nations possessing very unequal scientific attainments, and bore no unfavorable testimony to Chinese shrewdness and ingenuity in the existing state of their knowledge."[1] The same opinion might be safely predicated of their metallurgic manipulations; the character of the work is the only index of the efficacy of the process. In bronzes they take a high place, and the delicacy of their niello work in gold and silver, upon wood as well as metal, cannot be surpassed.

This compendious review of the science of the Chinese can be brought to a close by a brief account of their theory and practice of medicine and surgery. Although they are almost as superstitious as the Hindus or North American Indians, they do not depend upon incantations and charms for relief in case of sickness, but resort to the prescriptions of the physician as the most reasonable and likely way to recover; mixed up, indeed, with many strange practices to assist the efficacy of the doses. These vary in every part of the Empire, and show the power of ignorance to perpetuate and strengthen the strangest supersti-

[1] *The Chinese*, Vol. II., pp. 266–270, 286.

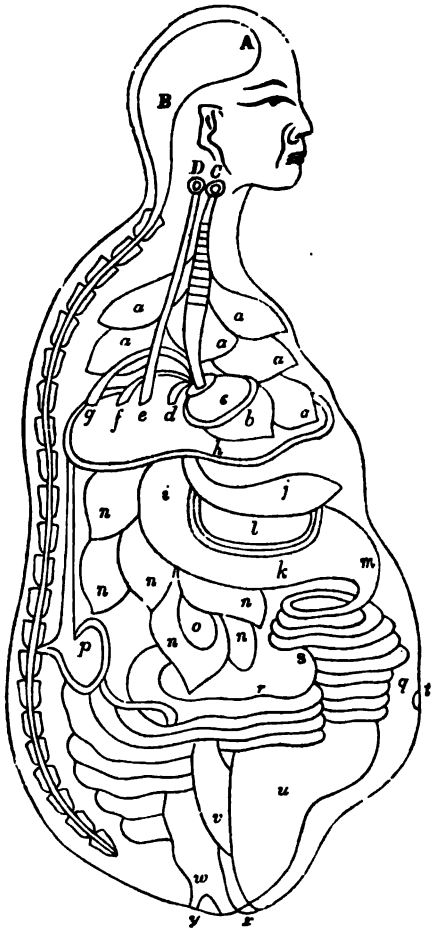
Digitized by Google

tions where health and life are involved. Doolittle has collected many instances, and the experience of medical missionaries is uniform in this matter.

The dissection of the human body is never attempted, though some notions of its internal structure are taught in medical works, which are published in many forms. Mr. Wylie notices fifty-nine treatises of a medical and physiological character in his *Notes on Chinese Literature*. They contain references to a far greater number of authors, some of whom flourished in the earliest days of China, and many of whose writings exhibit good sense and sound advice amid the strangest theories. Dr. Harland has described the Chinese ideas of the organization of the body and the functions of the chief viscera in a lucid manner, and the diagram shown on p. 120 presents the popular opinions on this subject, for whatever foreigners may have imparted to them has not yet become generally known.

The Chinese seem to have no idea of the distinction between venous and arterial blood, nor between muscles and nerves, applying the word *kin* to both tendons and nerves. According to these physiologists, the brain (A) is the abode of the *yin* principle in its perfection, and at its base (B), where there is a reservoir of the marrow, communicates through the spine with the whole body. The larynx (C) goes through the lungs directly to the heart, expanding a little in its course, while the pharynx (D) passes over them to the stomach. The lungs (*a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*) are white, and placed in the thorax; they consist of six lobes or leaves suspended from the spine, four on one side and two on the other; sound proceeds from holes in them, and they rule the various parts of the body. The centre of the thorax (or pit of the stomach) is the seat of the breath; joy and delight emanate from it, and it cannot be injured without danger. The heart (*b*) lies underneath the lungs, and is the prince of the body; thoughts proceed from it. The pericardium (*c*) comes from and envelops the heart and extends to the kidneys. There are three tubes communicating from the heart to the spleen, liver, and kidneys, but no clear ideas are held as to their office. Like the pharynx, they pass through the diaphragm, which is itself connected with the spine, ribs, and bowels. The

Digitized by Google



Chinese Notions of the Internal Structure of the Human Body.

A, B—The brain. *C*—Larynx. *D*—Pharynx. *a, a, a, a, a, a*—Lungs. *b*—Heart. *c*—Pericardium. *d*—Bond of connection with the spleen. *e*—The œsophagus. *f*—Bond of connection with the liver. *g*—Bond of connection with the kidneys. *h*—The diaphragm. *i*—Cardiac extremity. *j*—The spleen. *k*—The stomach. *l*—Omentum. *m*—The pylorus. *n, n, n, n, n, n*—The liver. *o*—The gall-bladder. *p*—The kidneys. *q*—The small intestines. *r*—The large intestines. *s*—Caput coli. *t*—The navel. *u*—The bladder. *v*—The "gate of life," sometimes placed in the right kidney. *w*—The rectum. *x, y*—The urinal and fœcal passages.

liver (*n, n, n, n, n, n*) is on the right side and has seven lobes; the soul resides in it, and schemes emanate from it; the gall-bladder (*o*) is below and projects upward into it, and when the person is angry it ascends; courage dwells in it; hence the Chinese sometimes procure the gall-bladder of animals, as tigers and bears, and even of men, especially notorious bandits executed for their crimes, and eat the bile contained in them, under the idea that it will impart courage. The spleen (*j*) lies between the stomach and diaphragm and assists in digestion, and the food passes from it into the stomach (*k*), and hence through the pylorus (*m*) into the large intestines. The omentum (*l*) overlies the stomach, but its office is unknown, and the mesentery and pancreas are entirely omitted.

The small intestines (*q*) are connected with the heart, and the urine passes through them into the bladder, separating from the food or fæces

Digitized by Google

at the caput coli (*s*), where they divide from the larger intestines. The large intestines (*r*) are connected with the lungs and lie in the loins, having sixteen convolutions. The kidneys (*p*) are attached to the spinal marrow, and resemble an egg in shape, and the subtle generative fluid is eliminated by them above to the brain and below to the spermatic cord and sacral extremity; the testes, called *wai shin*, or 'outside kidneys,' communicate with them. The right kidney, or the passage from it (*v*), is called the "gate of life," and sends forth the subtle fluid to the spermatic vessels. The bladder (*u*) lies below the kidneys, and receives the urine from the small intestines at the iliac valve.

The osteology of the frame is briefly despatched: the pelvis, skull, forearm, and leg are considered as single bones, the processes of the joints being quite dispensed with, and the whole considered merely as a kind of internal framework, on and in which the necessary fleshy parts are upheld, but with which they have not much more connection by muscles and ligaments than the post has with the pile of mud it upholds. The *Tai-i Yuen*, or Medical College at Peking, contains a copper model of a man, about six feet high, on which are given the names of the pulses in different places; it is pierced with many small holes. In A.D. 1027 the Emperor had two anatomical figures made to illustrate the art of acupuncture, which is still practised. The irrigation of the body with blood is rather complicated, and authors vary greatly as to the manner in which it is accomplished. Some pictures represent tubes issuing from the fingers and toes, and running up the limbs into the trunk, where they are lost, or reach the heart, lungs, or some other organ as well as they can, wandering over most parts of the body in their course.

Theories are furnished in great variety to account for the nourishment of the body and the functions of the viscera, and upon their harmonious connection with each other and the five metals, colors, tastes, and planets is founded the well-being of the system; with all they hold an intimate relation, and their actions are alike built on the all-pervading functions of the *yin* and *yang*—those universal solvents in Chinese philosophy. The pulse is very carefully studied, and its condition regarded as the

Digitized by Google

index of every condition of the body, even to determining the sex of an unborn infant; great parade is usually made by every practitioner in examining this important symptom.

Dr. Harland has made a table showing the sympathy supposed to exist between the different points of the pulses and the internal organs.[1] In each wrist the pulses are named *Inch*, *Bar*, and *Cubit* (the first being nearest the hand); a change in degree of pressure doubles the range of viscera thus indexed:

LEFT WRIST.

Inch,	when	lightly	pressed,	indicates	the	state	of the small intestines.
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	heart.
Bar,	"	lightly	"	"	"	"	gall-bladder.
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	liver.
Cubit,	"	lightly	"	"	"	"	urinary bladder.
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	kidneys.

RIGHT WRIST.

Inch,	when	lightly	pressed,	indicates	the	state	of the large intestines.
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	lungs.
Bar,	"	lightly	"	"	"	"	stomach.
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	spleen.
Cubit,	"	lightly	"	"	"	"	*san tsiaou.*
"	"	heavily	"	"	"	"	*ming mân.*

The two latter meaning respectively 'Three Passages' and 'Gate of Life,' being purely imaginary organs, are difficult to describe.

A diseased state of an organ is supposed to be owing to a disagreement of the *yin* and *yang*, the presence of bad humors, or the more powerful agency of evil spirits, and until these agencies are corrected medicines cannot exercise their full efficacy. The surface of the body receives the closest attention, for there is not a square inch without its appropriate name. Plasters and lotions are applied to these places according to the diagnosis of the disease, predicated on the dual theory; and the strolling quacks and regular practitioners both administer the rationale and the dose together—considering, probably, that the medicine would lose half its efficacy upon the organs it was intended to affect if it was not mixed with faith to operate upon the sentient principle lodged there.

[1] *Transactions of the China Br. of Royal Asiatic Society*, Hongkong, Part I., 1847, p. 43.

Digitized by Google

The practice of the Chinese is far in advance of their theory, and some of their treatises on dietetics and medical practice contain good advice, the result of experience. Dr. W. Lockhart has translated a native treatise on midwifery, in which the author, confining himself principally to the best modes of treatment in all the stages of parturition, and dwelling briefly on the reasons of things, has greatly improved upon the physiologists. This branch of the profession is almost entirely in the hands of women. Surgical operations are chiefly confined to removing a tooth, puncturing sores and tumors with needles, or trying to reduce dislocations and reunite fractures by pressure or bandaging. Sometimes they successfully execute more difficult cases, as the amputation of a finger, operation for a harelip, and insertion of false teeth. In one case of dentistry four incisor teeth made of ivory were strung upon a piece of catgut and secured in their place by tying the string to the eye-teeth; they were renewed quarterly, and served their purpose tolerably well. The practice of acupuncture has some good results among the bad ones.[1] That of applying cauteries and caustics of various degrees of power is more general, and sometimes entails shocking distress upon the patient. Cases have presented themselves at the hospitals, where small sores, by the application of escharotics, have extended until a large part of the tissue, and even important organs, have been destroyed, the charlatan amusing his suffering patient by promises of ultimate cure. The moxa, or burning the flowers of the amaranthus upon the skin, is attended with less injury.

Turning in of the eyelashes is a common ailment, and native practitioners attempt to cure it by everting the lid and fastening it in its place by two slips of bamboo tightly bound on, or by a pair of tweezers, until the loose fold on the edge sloughs off; the eye is, however, more frequently disfigured by this clumsy process than is the trouble remedied. Poultices made of many strange or disgusting substances are applied to injured parts.

[1] Compare Rémusat (*Nouveaux Mélanges Asiatiques*, Tome I., pp. 358–380), who says that the first notion of acupuncture as practised in China was brought into Europe by one Ten-Rhyne, a Dutch surgeon, at the end of the seventeenth century.

Digitized by Google

Dr. Parker mentions the case of a man who, having injured the iris by a fall, was ordered by his native physician to cut a chicken in halves, laying one portion on the eye as a cataplasm and eating the other as an internal cure. Venesection is rarely attempted, but leeches and cupping are employed to remove the blood from a particular spot. Blood-letting is disapproved in fevers, "for," says the Chinese reasoner, "a fever is like a pot boiling; it is requisite to reduce the fire and not diminish the liquid in the vessel if we wish to cure the patient."

Many of the operations in cases of fracture present a strange mixture of folly and sense, proceeding from their ideas of the internal structure of the human body conflicting with those which common sense and experience teach. Père Ripa's description of the treatment he underwent to prevent the ill effects of a fall will serve as an illustration. Having been thrown from his horse and left fainting in the street, he was carried into a house, where a surgeon soon visited him. "He made me sit up in bed, placing near me a large basin filled with water, in which he put a thick piece of ice to reduce it to a freezing point. Then stripping me to the waist, he made me stretch my neck over the basin, while he continued for a good while to pour the water on my neck with a cup. The pain caused by this operation upon those nerves which take their rise from the pia mater was so great and insufferable that it seemed to me unequalled, but he said it would stanch the blood and restore me to my senses, which was actually the case, for in a short time my sight became clear and my mind resumed its powers. He next bound my head with a band drawn tight by two men who held the ends, while he struck the intermediate parts vigorously with a piece of wood, which shook my head violently, and gave me dreadful pain. This, he said, was to set the brain, which he supposed had been displaced, and it is true that after the second operation my head felt more free. A third operation was now performed, during which he made me, still stripped to the waist, walk in the open air supported by two persons; and while thus walking he unexpectedly threw a basin of freezing cold water over my breast. As this caused me to draw my breath with great vehemence, and as my

Digitized by Google

chest had been injured by the fall, it may easily be imagined what were my sufferings under this infliction; but I was consoled by the information that if any rib had been dislocated, this sudden and hard breathing would restore it to its natural position. The next proceeding was not less painful and extravagant. The operator made me sit on the ground, and, assisted by two men, held a cloth upon my mouth and nose till I was almost suffocated. 'This,' said the Chinese Esculapius, 'by causing a violent heaving of the chest, will force back any rib that may have been dislocated.' The wound in my head not being deep, he healed it by stuffing it with burnt cotton. He then ordered that I should continue to walk much, supported by two persons; that I should not sit long, nor be allowed to sleep till ten o'clock at night, at which time I should eat a little thin rice soup. He assured me that these walks in the open air while fasting would prevent the blood from settling upon the chest, where it might corrupt. These remedies, though barbarous and excruciating, cured me so completely that in seven days I was able to resume my journey."[1]

The active daily practice of a popular Chinese doctor may be very well illustrated from Dr. Hobson's description of one Ta wang siensăng, or 'Dr. Rhubarb,' a medical practitioner in Canton. This man, after prescribing for the sick at his office until the hour of ten in the morning, would commence his rounds "in the sedan chair carried in great haste by three or four men. Those patients were visited first who had their names and residences first placed in the entry book, and as the streets were narrow and crowded, to avoid trouble in finding the house, a copy of the doctor's sign-board would be posted up outside the patient's door, so that the chairmen should be able at once to recognize the house without delay."

The doctor being ushered into the hall, or principal room, is met with bows and salutations by the father or elder brother of the family. Tea and pipes are offered in due form, and he is requested to feel his patient's pulse; if a male, he sits opposite

[1] Père Ripa, *Memoirs and Residence at Peking*, translated by F. Prandi, London, 1844, p. 67.

Digitized by Google

to him; if a female, a screen of bamboo intervenes, which is only removed in case it is requisite to see the tongue. The right hand is placed upon a book to steady it, and the doctor, with much gravity and a learned look, places his three fingers upon the pulsating vessel, pressing it alternately with each finger on the inner and outer side, and then making with three fingers a steady pressure for several minutes, not with watch in hand, to note the frequency of its beats, but with a thoughtful and calculating mind, to diagnose the disease and prognosticate its issue. The fingers being removed the patient immediately stretches out the other hand, which is felt in the same manner. Perhaps certain questions are asked of the father or mother concerning the sick person, but these are usually few, as it is presumed the pulse reveals everything needful to know. Ink and paper are produced and a prescription is written out, which consists of numerous ingredients, but there are one or two of only prime importance—the rest are servants or adjuvants. They are all taken from the vegetable kingdom, and are mostly simples of little efficacy. The prescription is taken to a druggist to be dispensed; the prescriber seldom makes up the medicine himself, and as large doses are popular (a *quid pro quo*), so the decoction made from the whole amounts to pints or even quarts, which are swallowed in large portions with the greatest ease: powders, boluses, pills, and electuaries are also used. If the patient is an officer of the government or a wealthy person, the nature of the disease, prognosis, and treatment are written down for the inspection of the family; for this the doctor's fee is a dollar. But generally speaking, both the doctor and the patient's friends are quite satisfied with a verbal communication; and if the man has a gift for speaking and has brass enough to use it to his advantage (both of which are seldom wanting in time-serving men), he will describe with a learned, self-satisfied air the ailment of the patient, and the number of days it will take to cure him. The fee is wrapped up in red paper, and called "golden thanks," varying in amount from fifteen to seventy cents or more, according to the means of the patient; the chair-bearers being paid extra. The doctor returns to make another visit if invited, but not otherwise. It is more common, if the

Digitized by Google

patient is not at once benefited by the prescription, to call in another, then a third, then a fourth, and even more, until tired of physicians (for the Chinese patience is soon exhausted, and their faith by no means strong in all their doctors' asseverations) they have, as a last resort, application made to one of the genii, or a god possessing wonderful healing powers. The result is that the patient dies or lives, not according to the treatment received, for that must be generally inefficacious, but according as his natural strength is equal to surmount the difficulties by which he is surrounded.[1]

Dr. Hobson has given an analysis of 442 medicinal agents enumerated in one of the popular dispensatories; of the whole number, 314 are vegetable, 50 mineral, and 78 animal. The author gives the name of each one, the organ it affects, its properties, and lastly the mode of its exhibition. Medicines are arranged under six heads—tonics, astringents, resolvents, purgatives, alteratives of poisonous humors, and of the blood. Among the agents employed are many strange and repulsive substances, as snake-skins, fossil bones, rhinoceros or hart's horn shavings, silk-worm and human secretions, asbestos, moths, oyster-shells, etc. Calomel, vermilion, red precipitate, minium, arsenic, plumbago, and sulphate of copper are among the metallic medicines used by physicians; Dr. Henderson enumerates thirty-three distinct mineral medicines. The number of apothecary shops in towns indicates the great consumption of medicine; their arrangement is like the druggist shops in the west, though instead of huge glass jars at the windows filled with bright colored liquids, and long rows of vials and decanters in glass cases, three or four branching deer's horns are suspended from the walls, and lines of white and black gallipots cover the shelves. Hartshorn is reduced to a dust by filing, for exhibition in consumption. Many roots, as rhubarb, gentian, etc., are prepared by paring them into thin laminæ; others are powdered in a mortar with a pestle, or triturated in a narrow iron trough in which a close-fitting wheel is worked. The use of acids

[1] Dr. James Henderson in *Journal of the N. C. Br. of Royal Asiatic Society*, 1864, No. I., p. 54.

Digitized by Google

and reagents is unknown, for they imply more knowledge of chemistry than the Chinese possess. Vegetable substances, as camphor, myrrh, ginseng, rhubarb, gentian, and a great variety of roots, leaves, seeds, and barks, are generally taken as pills or decoctions. Many valuable recipes will probably be discovered in their books as soon as the terms used are accurately ascertained, and a better acquaintance with the botany and mineralogy enables the foreign student to test them intelligently.

The people sometimes cast lots as to which one of a dozen doctors they shall employ, and then scrupulously follow his directions, whatever they may be, as a departure therefrom would vitiate the sortilege. Sometimes an invalid will go to a doctor and ask for how much he will cure him, and how soon the cure can be performed. He states the diagnosis of his case, the pulse is examined, and every other symptom investigated, when the bargain is struck and a portion of the price paid. The patient then receives the suitable medicines, in quantity and variety better fitted for a horse than a man, for the doctor reasons that out of a great number it is more likely that some will prove efficacious, and the more he gets paid for the more he ought to administer. A decoction of a kettleful of simples is drunk down by the sick man, and he gives up both working and eating; if, however, at the expiration of the time specified he is not cured, he scolds his physician for an ignorant charlatan who cheats him out of his money, and seeks another, with whom he makes a similar bargain, and probably with similar results. Sagacious observance of cause and effect, symptoms and pains, gradually give a shrewd physician great power over his ignorant patients, and some of them become both rich and influential; a skilful physician is termed the "nation's hand."

A regular system of fees exists among the profession, but the remuneration is as often left to the generosity of the patient. New medicines, pills, powders, and salves are advertised and puffed by flaunting placards on the walls of the streets, some of them most disgustingly obscene; but the Chinese do not puff new nostrums by publishing a long list of recommendations from patients. The various ways devised by persons to dispose

Digitized by Google

of their medicines exhibit much ingenuity. Sometimes a man, having spread a mat at the side of the street, and marshalled his gallipots and salves, will commence a harangue upon the goodness and efficacy of his preparations in loud and eloquent tones, until he has collected a crowd of hearers, some of whom he manages to persuade will be the better for taking some of his potions. He will exhibit their efficacy by first pounding his naked breast with a brick till it is livid, and then immediately healing the contusion by a lotion, having previously fortified the inner parts with a remedy; or he will cut open his flesh and heal the wound in a few moments by a wonderful elixir, which he alone can sell. Others, more learned or more professional, erect a pavilion or awning, fluttering with signs and streamers, and quietly seat themselves under it to wait for customers; or content themselves with a flag perched on a pole setting forth the potency of their pills. Dentists make a necklace of the rotten teeth they have obtained from the jaws of their customers, and perambulate the streets with these trophies of their skill hanging around their necks like a rosary. In general, however, the Chinese enjoy good health, and when ill from colds or fevers, lie abed and suspend working and eating, which in most cases allows nature to work her own cure, whatever doses they may take. They are perhaps as long-lived as most nations, though sanatory statistics are wanting to enable us to form any indisputable conclusions on this head.

The classes of diseases which most prevail in China are ophthalmic, cutaneous, and digestive; intermittent fevers are also common. The great disproportion of affections of the eye has often attracted observation. Dr. Lockhart ascribes it partly to the inflammation which often comes on at the commencement of winter, and which is allowed to run its course, leaving the organ in an unhealthy condition and very obnoxious to other diseases. This inflammation is beyond the skill of the native practitioners, and sometimes destroys the sight in a few days. Another fruitful source of disease is the practice of the barbers of turning the lids over and clearing their surfaces of the mucus which may be lodged there. He adds: "If the person's eyes be examined after this process, they will be found to be very red

Digitized by Google

and irritated, and in process of time chronic conjunctivitis supervenes, which being considered proof of insufficient cleansing, the practice is persisted in, and the inner surface of the lid becomes covered with granulations. In other cases it becomes indurated like thin parchment, and the tarsal cartilages contract and induce entropium." Dense opacity of the cornea itself is frequently caused by this *barberous* practice, or constant pain and weeping ensues, both of which materially injure the sight, if the patient does not lose it. The practice of cleansing the ears in a similar way frequently results in their serious injury, and sometimes destruction. When the ill effects of such treatment of these delicate organs must be plain to every observing person in his own case, it is strange that he should still allow the operation to be repeated.

The physicians in charge of the missionary hospitals successfully established at so many cities in Eastern China have attended more to tumors, dislocations, wounds, and surgical cases, ophthalmic and cutaneous diseases, than to common clinical ailments. The hospitals here spoken of are little more than dispensaries, with a room or two for extreme or peculiarly interesting cases; there is little visiting the natives at their own houses.

Asthma, even in boys, is common at Amoy, and consumption at Canton and Chusan. Intermittent fevers prevail more or less wherever the cultivation of rice is carried on near villages and towns. Elephantiasis is known between Shanghai and Canton, but in the southern provinces leprosy seems to exist as its equivalent. This loathsome disease is regarded by the Chinese as incurable and contagious. Lazar-houses are provided for the residence of the infected, but as the allowance of poor patients is insufficient for their support, they go from street to street soliciting alms, to the great annoyance of every one. As soon as it appears in an individual, he is immediately separated from his family and driven forth an outcast, to herd with others similarly affected, and get his living from precarious charity. The institution of lazarettoes is praiseworthy, but they fail of affording relief on account of the mismanagement and peculation of those who have their supervision; and those who cannot get

Digitized by Google

in are obliged to live in a village set apart for them north of the city. Lepers can intermarry among themselves, but on account of poverty and other causes they do not often do so, and the hardships of their lot soon end their days. This disease will probably exist among the Chinese until houses are built more above the ground, better ventilation of cities and improvement in diet are adopted, when it will disappear as it has in Southern Europe.

Diseases of an inflammatory nature are not so fatal or rapid among the Chinese as Europeans, nor do consumptions carry off so large a proportion of the inhabitants as in the United States. Dyspepsia has been frequently treated; it is ascribed by Dr. Hepburn to the abundant use of salt provisions, pickled vegetables, and fish, irregularity in eating, opium smoking, and immoderate use of tea; though it may be questioned whether the two last reasons are more general and powerful at Amoy than Canton, where dyspepsia is comparatively rare. The surgeons at the latter place have successfully treated hundreds of cases of stone, losing less than fifteen per cent. of all. Some of the patients were under ten years, and a few of the calculi weighed nearly half a pound. This malady is almost unknown in Northern China. The diseases which result from intemperate and licentious habits are not as violent in their effects as in countries where a greater use of animal food and higher living render the system more susceptible to the noxious consequences of the virus.

The existence of tumors and unnatural growths in great abundance and variety is satisfactorily accounted for by the inability of the native practitioners to remove them. Those which had a healthy growth increased until a morbid action supervened, and consequently sometimes grew to an enormous size. A peasant named Hu Lu went to England in 1831 to have an abdominal tumor extirpated weighing about seventy pounds; he died under the operation. No patients bear operations with more fortitude than the Chinese, and, owing to their lymphatic temperament, they are followed with less inflammation than is usual in European practice. Goitre is very common in the mountainous regions of the northern provinces; Dr. Gillan es-

Digitized by Google

timated that nearly one-sixth of the inhabitants met in the villages on the high land between Peking and Jeh ho were afflicted with this deformity, which, however, is said not to be so considered by the villagers themselves.

The Asiatic cholera has been a great scourge in China, but does not often become an epidemic anywhere, though sporadic cases constantly occur. It raged at Ningpo in May, 1820, and an intelligent native doctor informed Mr. Milne[1] that it was computed that ten thousand persons were carried off by it in the city and department of Ningpo during the summers of 1820–23. In 1842 it prevailed at Amoy and Changchau and their vicinity; more than a hundred deaths daily occurred at the former place for six or seven weeks. It raged violently at Hangchau in Chehkiang during the years 1821 and 1822, persons dropping down dead in the streets, or dying within an hour or two after the attack; many myriads were computed to have fallen victims, and the native doctors, finding their remedies useless, gave up all treatment. It carried off multitudes in Shantung and Kiangsu during the same years, and was as fitful in its progress in China as in Europe, going from one city to another, passing by towns apparently as obnoxious as those visited. The plague is said to have existed in Southern China about the beginning of the sixteenth century, but it has not been heard of lately.

Small-pox is a terrible scath, and although the practice and utility of vaccination have been known for fifty years past at Canton, its adoption is still limited even in that city. It was introduced in 1820 by Dr. Pearson, of the East India Company's establishment, and native assistants were fully instructed by him in the practice. Vaccination has now extended over all the Eighteen Provinces, and the government has given its sanction and assistance; it is chiefly owing to the heedlessness of the people in not availing themselves of it in time that it has done no more to lessen the ravages of the disease. Where children were gratuitously vaccinated it was found almost impossible to induce parents to bring them; and when the chil-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XII., p. 487.

Digitized by Google

dren had been vaccinated it was increasingly difficult to get them to return to allow the physician to see the result of the operation. Inoculation has long been practised by inserting a pledget in the nostrils containing the virus; this mode is occasionally adopted in vaccination. The slovenly habits of the people, as well as insufficient protection and unwholesome food, give rise to many diseases of the skin, some of them incurable.

The science of medicine attracted very early attention, and there are numerous treatises on its various branches. But the search for the liquor of immortality and the philosopher's stone, with careful observations on the pulse as the leading tests of diseases, have led them astray from accurate diagnosis age after age. The common classification of diseases is under nine heads, viz., those which affect the pulse violently or feebly, those arising from cold, female and cutaneous diseases, those needing acupuncture, and diseases of the eyes, the mouth and its parts, and the bones. A professor of each of these classes is attached to the imperial family, who is taken from the Medical College at Peking; but he has no greater advantages there than he could get in his own reading and practice. No museums of morbid or comparative anatomy exist in the country, nor are there any lectures or dissections; and the routine which old custom has sanctioned will go on until modern practice, now rapidly taking its place, wins its way. Section CCXCVII. of the code orders that "whenever an unskilful practitioner, in administering medicine or using the puncturing needle, proceeds contrary to the established forms, and thereby causes the death of a patient, the magistrate shall call in other practitioners to examine the medicine or the wound, and if it appear that the injury done was unintentional, the practitioner shall then be treated according to the statute for accidental homicides, and shall not be any longer allowed to practise medicine. But if designedly he depart from the established forms, and deceives in his attempt to cure the malady in order to obtain property, then, according to its amount, he shall be treated as a thief; and if death ensue from his malpractice, then, for having thus used medicine with intent to kill, he shall be

Digitized by Google

beheaded."[1] This statute is seldom carried into execution, however, and the doctors are allowed to kill and cure, *secundum artem*, as their patients give them the opportunity.

Natural history, in its various branches of geology, botany, zoölogy, etc., has received some attention, because the objects which come under it could not escape the notice of all the writers in Chinese literature. As sciences, however, none of them have an existence, and they are studied chiefly for their assistance in furnishing articles for the materia medica of the native physician. To these persons nothing comes amiss, and, like the ingredients of the hubbling, bubbling caldron of Macbeth's witches, the stranger it is the more potent they think a dose will be; in this particular they now act very much as the faculty did in England two centuries ago. It is to be regretted that their investigation should have taken such a direction, but the man of commanding influence has not yet arisen to direct their researches into nature and divert them from the marvellous and theoretical. On the whole, it may be said that in all departments of learning the Chinese are unscientific; and that while they have collected a great variety of facts, invented many arts, and brought a few to a high degree of excellence, they have never pursued a single subject in a way calculated to lead them to a right understanding of it, or reached a proper classification of the information they possessed relating to it.

[1] *Chinese Chrestomathy*, Chap. XVI., pp. 497–532. *Asiatic Soc. Transactions*, Hongkong, Art. III., 1847; No. III., 1852, Art. III. *Jour. N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, No. I., 1864, and No. VI., 1869. W. Lockhart, *Medical Missionary in China*, 1861. *Chinese Repository*, *passim*. Porter Smith's *Contributions to Chinese Materia Medica*, Shanghai, 1871. Flückiger & Hanbury, *Pharmacographia*, London, 1874. *China Review*, Vol. I., p. 176; Vol. III., p. 224. J. Dudgeon, *The Diseases of China*, Glasgow, 1877; *id.* in the *Chinese Recorder*, Vols. II., III., and IV., *passim*.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVII.

HISTORY AND CHRONOLOGY OF CHINA.

The history of the Chinese people has excited less attention among western scholars than it deserves, though in some respects no nation offers more claims to have its chronicles carefully and fairly examined. The belief is generally entertained that their pretensions to antiquity are extravagant and ridiculous, and incompatible with the Mosaic chronology; that they not only make the world to have existed myriads of years, but reckon the succession of their monarchs far beyond the creation, and ascribe to them a longevity that carries its own confutation on its face. In consequence of this opinion, some have denied the credibility of native historians altogether, and the whole subject of the settlement and early progress of this ancient race has been considered beyond the reach, and almost unworthy the attempt, of sober investigation. This erroneous and hasty conclusion is gradually giving way to a careful inquiry into those histories which show that the early records of the sons of Han contain much which is worthy of credence, and much more that is highly probable. A wide field is here opened for the researches of a Gibbon or a Niebuhr; for as long as we are destitute of a good history of China and its connections with other Asiatic nations, we shall not only be unable to form a correct opinion respecting the people, but shall lack many important data for a full illustration of the early history of the human race. It is easy to laud the early records of the Chinese to the skies, as French writers have done; and it is quite as easy to cry them down as worthless—manufactured in after-ages to please the variety of their writers. The reputation both people and records have received is owing, in some measure, to this

Digitized by Google

undue laudation and depreciation, as well as to the intrinsic merits and defects of their histories. These, however, still mostly remain in their originals, and will require the united labors of many scholars to be fully brought to light and made a part of the world's library.

The enormous difficulties arising from the extent and tedious minuteness of native historians, coupled with the scarcity of translators competent or willing to undertake the labor of even such a *résumé* of these works as will satisfy rational curiosity, are now being slowly overcome, both by Chinese and foreign students. These researches, it is to be earnestly hoped, will be rewarded by promoting a juster estimate in the minds of both classes of their relative positions among the nations of the earth.

China, like other countries, has her mythological history, and it should be separated from the more recent and received, as her own historians regard it, as the fabrication of subsequent times. She also has her ancient history, whose earliest dates and events blend confusedly with the mythological, but gradually grow more credible and distinct as they come down the stream of time to the beginning of modern history. The early accounts of every nation whose founding was anterior to the practice of making and preserving authentic records must necessarily be obscure and doubtful. What is applicable to the Chinese has been true of other ancient people: "national vanity and a love of the marvellous have influenced them all, and furnished materials for many tales, as soon as the spirit of investigation has supplanted that appetite for wonders which marks the infancy of nations as well as of individuals." The ignorance of the "art preservative of all arts" will greatly explain the subsequent record of the wonderful, without supposing that the infancy of nations partook of the same traits of weakness and credulity as that of individuals. There is neither space nor time in this work to give the details concerning the history and succession of dynasties that have swayed the Middle Kingdom, for to one not specially engaged in their examination their recital is proverbially dry; the array of uncouth names destitute of lasting interest, and the absence of the charm

Digitized by Google

of association with western nations render them uninviting to the general reader. Some account of the leading events and changes is all that is necessary to explain what has been elsewhere incidentally referred to.[1]

Chinese historians have endeavored to explain the creation and origin of the world around them; but, ignorant of the sublime fact that there is one Creator who upholds his works by the word of his power, they have invented various modes to account for it, and wearied themselves in theorizing and disputing with each other. One of them, Yangtsz', remarks, in view of these conflicting suppositions: "Who knows the affairs of remote antiquity, since no authentic records have come down to us? He who examines these stories will find it difficult to believe them, and careful scrutiny will convince him that they are without foundation. In the primeval ages no historical records were kept. Why then, since the ancient books that described those times were burnt by Tsin, should we misrepresent those remote ages, and satisfy ourselves with vague fables? However, as everything except heaven and earth must have a cause, it is clear that they have always existed, and that cause produced all sorts of men and beings, and endowed them with their various qualities. But it must have been man who in the beginning produced all things on earth, and who may therefore be viewed as the lord, and from whom rulers derive their dignities."

This extract is not a bad example of Chinese writers and historians; a mixture of sense and nonsense, partially laying the foundation of a just argument, and ending with a tremendous non-sequitur, apparently satisfactory to themselves, but showing pretty conclusively how little pains they take to gather facts and discuss their bearings. Some of these writers imagine that the world owes its existence to the retroactive agency of the dual powers *yin* and *yang*, which first formed the outline of the universe, and were themselves influenced by

[1] Among the works which will repay perusal on this topic are Mailla's *Histoire de la Chine* and Panthier's *Chine*, in French, and Du Halde's *History*, translated into English; besides the briefer compilations of Murray, Grosier, Gutzlaff, Davis, and more recently of Boulger and Richthofen, Band I.

Digitized by Google

their own creations. One of the most sensible of their authors says:

Heaven was formless, an utter chaos; the whole mass was nothing but confusion. Order was first produced in the pure ether, and out of it the universe came forth; the universe produced air, and air the milky-way. When the pure male principle *yang* had been diluted, it formed the heavens; the heavy and thick parts coagulated, and formed the earth. The refined particles united very soon, but the union of the thick and heavy went on slowly; therefore the heavens came into existence first, and the earth afterward. From the subtle essence of heaven and earth, the dual principles *yin* and *yang* were formed; from their joint operation came the four seasons, and these putting forth their energies gave birth to all the products of the earth. The warm effluence of the *yang* being condensed, produced fire; and the finest parts of fire formed the sun. The cold exhalations of the *yin* being likewise condensed, produced water; and the finest parts of the watery substance formed the moon. By the seminal influence of the sun and moon, came the stars. Thus heaven was adorned with the sun, moon, and stars; the earth also received rain, rivers, and dust.[1]

But this acute explanation, like the notions of Hesiod among the Greeks, was too subtle for the common people; they also wanted to personify and deify these powers and operations, but lacking the imaginative genius and fine taste of the Greeks, their divine personages are outrageous and their ideal beings shapeless monsters. No creator is known or imagined who, like Brahm, lives in space, ineffable, formless; but the first being, Pwanku, had the herculean task to mould the chaos which produced him and chisel out the earth that was to contain him. One legend is that "the dual powers were fixed when the primeval chaos separated. Chaos is bubbling turbid water, which enclosed and mingled with the dual powers, like a chick *in ovo*, but when their offspring Pwanku appeared their distinctiveness and operations were apparent. *Pwan* means a 'basin,' referring to the shell of the egg; *ku* means 'solid,' 'to secure,' intending to show how the first man Pwanku was hatched from the chaos by the dual powers, and then settled and exhibited the arrangement of the causes which produced him."

The Rationalists have penetrated furthest into the Dædalian

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 55.

Digitized by Google

mystery of this cosmogony,[1] and they go on to show what Pwanku did and how he did it. They picture him holding a chisel and mallet in his hands, splitting and fashioning vast

Pwanku Chiselling Out the Universe.

masses of granite floating confusedly in space. Behind the openings his powerful hand has made are seen the sun, moon, and stars, monuments of his stupendous labors; at his right

[1] For the Buddhist notions of cosmography and creation, see Rémusat, *Mélanges Posthumes*, pp. 65–131.

Digitized by Google

hand, inseparable companions of his toils, but whose generation is left in obscurity, stand the dragon, the phœnix, and the tortoise, and sometimes the unicorn, divine types and progenitors with himself of the animal creation. His efforts were continued eighteen thousand years, and by small degrees he and his work increased; the heavens rose, the earth spread out and thickened, and Pwanku grew in stature, six feet every day, till, his labors done, he died for the benefit of his handiwork. His head became mountains, his breath wind and clouds, and his voice thunder; his limbs were changed into the four poles, his veins into rivers, his sinews into the undulations of the earth's surface, and his flesh into fields; his beard, like Berenice's hair, was turned into stars, his skin and hair into herbs and trees, and his teeth, bones, and marrow into metals, rocks, and precious stones; his dropping sweat increased to rain, and lastly (*nascitur ridiculus mus*) the insects which stuck to his body were transformed into people!

Such was Pwanku, and these were his works. But these grotesque myths afford none of the pleasing images and personifications of Greek fable or Egyptian symbols; they fatigue without entertaining, and only illustrate the childish imagination of their authors. Pwanku was succeeded by three rulers of monstrous forms called the Celestial, Terrestrial, and Human sovereigns, impersonations of a trinity of powers, whose traces and influences run through Chinese philosophy, religion, and politics; their acts and characters are detailed with the utmost gravity, and more than Methusalean longevity allowed them to complete their plans. Their reigns continued eighteen thousand years (more or less according to the author quoted), during which time good government commenced, men learned to eat and drink, the sexes united, sleep was invented, and other improvements adopted. One would think, if the subjects of these wonderful beings were as long-lived, great perfection might have been attained in these and other useful arts; but the mysterious tortoise, companion of Pwanku, on whose carapace was written, in tadpole-headed characters, the history of the anterior world, did not survive, and their record has not come down. After them flourished two other monarchs, one of them called

Digitized by Google

Yu-chau, which means 'having a nest,' and the other Sui-jin, or 'match-man.' Whether the former invented nests for the abodes of his subjects, such as the Indians on the Orinoco have, is not stated; but the latter brought down fire from heaven for them to cook with, and became a second, or rather the first, Prometheus.

These fancies are gathered from a popular summary of knowledge, called the *Coral Forest of Ancient Matters*, and from the opening chapters of *History Made Easy*. A higher style of philosophizing is found in Chu Hí's disquisition, from which an extract has been given in Chapter XII. Another on Cosmogony will show that he comes no nearer to the great fact of creation than ancient western writers.

In the beginning heaven and earth were just the light and dark air. This one air revolved, grinding round and round. When it ground quickly much sediment was compressed, which, having no means of exit, coagulated and formed the earth in the centre. The subtle portion of the air then became heaven and the sun, moon, and stars, which unceasingly revolve on the outside. The earth is in the centre and motionless; it is not below the centre.

Heaven revolving without ceasing, day and night also revolve, and hence the earth is exactly in the centre. If heaven should stand still for one moment, then the earth must fall down; but heaven revolves quickly, and hence much sediment is coagulated in the centre. The earth is the sediment of the air; and hence it is said, the light, pure air became heaven, the heavy, muddy air became earth. . . .

At the beginning of heaven and earth, before chaos was divided, I think there were only two things—fire and water; and the sediment of the water formed the earth. When one ascends a height and looks down, the crowd of hills resemble the waves of the sea in appearance: the water just flowed like this. I know not at what period it coagulated. At first it was very soft, but afterward it coagulated and became hard. One asked whether it resembled sand thrown up by the tide? He replied, Just so; the coarsest sediment of the water became earth, and the purest portion of the fire became wind, thunder, lightning, sun, and stars. . . .

Before chaos was divided, the *yin-yang*, or light-dark air, was mixed up and dark, and when it divided the centre formed an enormous and most brilliant opening, and the two *i* or principles were established. Shao Kang-tsieh considers one hundred and twenty-nine thousand six hundred years to be a *yuen*, or kalpa; then, before this period of one hundred and twenty-nine thousand six hundred years there was another opening and spreading out of the world; and before that again, there was another like the present; so that motion and rest, light and darkness, have no beginning. As little things shadow

Digitized by Google

forth great things, this may be illustrated by the revolutions of day and night. . . .

Kang-tsieh says, Heaven rests upon form, and earth reclines upon air. The reason why he repeats this frequently, and does not deviate from the idea, is lest people should seek some other place beyond heaven and earth. There is nothing outside heaven and earth, and hence their form has limits, while their air has no limit. Because the air is extremely condensed, therefore it can support the earth; if it were not so the earth would fall down.[1]

A third belief respecting the position of the earth in the centre of the universe derives great strength in the opinion of intelligent natives from these speculations of Chu Hí. His theory considers the world to be a plane surface, straight, square, and large, measuring each way about 1,500 miles (5,600 *li*), and bounded on the four sides by the four seas. The sun is estimated to be about 4,000 miles from the earth. Another calculation made it 81,394 *li*, and a third 216,781½ *li*.

One thing is observable in these fictions, characteristic of the Chinese at the present day: there is no hierarchy of gods brought in to rule and inhabit the world they made, no conclave on Mt. Olympus, nor judgment of the mortal soul by Osiris; no transfer of human love and hate, passions and hopes, to the powers above; all here is ascribed to disembodied agencies or principles, and their works are represented as moving on in quiet order. There is no religion, no imagination; all is impassible, passionless, uninteresting. It may, perhaps, be considered of itself as sensible as the Greek or Egyptian mythology, if one looks for *sense* in such figments; but it has not, as in the latter countries, been explained in sublime poetry, shadowed forth in gorgeous ritual and magnificent festivals, represented in exquisite sculptures, nor preserved in faultless, imposing fanes and temples, filled with ideal creations. For this reason it appears more in its true colors, and, when compared with theirs, "loses discountenanced and like folly shows"—at least to us, who can examine both and compare them with the truth.

Their pure mythological history ends with the appearance of Fuh-hí, and their chronology has nothing to do with the long periods antecedent, varying from forty-five to five hundred

[1] Canon McClatchie's *Confucian Cosmogony*, pp. 58–59.

Digitized by Google

thousand years. These periods are, however, a mere twinkling compared with the kulpas of the Hindus, whose highest era, called the Unspeakably Inexpressible, requires four million four hundred and fifty-six thousand four hundred and forty-eight cyphers following a unit to represent it. If the epoch of Fuh-hí could be ascertained with any probability by comparison with the history of other nations, or with existing remains, it would tend not a little to settle some disputed chronological points in other countries; but the isolation of the Chinese throughout their whole existence makes it nearly impossible to weave in the events of their history with those of other nations, by comparing and verifying them with biblical, Egyptian, or Persian annals. Perhaps further investigations in the vast regions of Eastern and Central Asia may bring to light corroborative testimony as striking and unexpected as the explorations in Mosul, Persepolis, and Thebes.

The accession of Fuh-hí is placed in the Chinese annals B.C. 2852,[1] and with him commences the period known among them as the "highest antiquity." The weight of evidence which the later chronological examinations of Hales and Jackson have brought to bear against the common period of four thousand and four years prior to the Advent, is such as to cast great doubt over its authenticity, and lead to the adoption of a longer period in order to afford time for many occurrences, which otherwise would be crowded into too narrow a space. Chinese chronology, if it be allowed the least credit, strongly corroborates the results of Dr. Hales' researches, and particularly so in the date of Fuh-hí's accession. This is not the place to discuss the respective claims of the two eras, but by reckoning, as he does, the creation to be five thousand four hundred and eleven years, and the deluge three thousand one hundred and fifty-five years, before the Advent, we bring the commencement of ancient Chinese history three hundred and three years subsequent to the deluge, forty-seven before the death of Noah, and about three centuries before the confusion of tongues. If we suppose that the ante-

[1] Or 3322, according to Dr. Legge, whose date has been used elsewhere in this work, and has probably quite as much authority as the one above.

Digitized by Google

diluvians possessed a knowledge of the geography of the world, and that Noah, regarding himself as the monarch of the whole, divided it among his descendants before his death, there is nothing improbable in the further supposition that the progenitors of the black-haired race, and others of the house and lineage of Shem, found their way from the valley of the Euphrates across the defiles and steppes of Central Asia, to the fertile plains of China before the end of the third diluvian century. Whether the surface of the world was the same after the cataclysm as before does not affect this point; there was ample time for the multiplication of the species with the blessing promised by God, sufficient to form colonies, if there was time enough to increase to such a multitude as conspired to build the tower of Babel.

The views of Dr. Legge, that the present Chinese descend from settlers who came through Central Asia along the Tarim Valley and across the Desert into Kansuh, about B.C. 2200, and settled around the elbow of the Yellow River, under the leadership of Yao, Shun, Yu, and others, are very reasonable. These settlers found the land at that time occupied with tribes, whom they partly merged with themselves or drove into mountain recesses in Kweichau, where some of their descendants perhaps still remain. These earlier tribes may have furnished the names and reigns prior to Yao, and the later Chinese annalists incorporated them into their own histories, taking everything in early times as of course belonging to the *lí min*, or 'black-haired race.' The lapse of a millennium between the Deluge and Yao allows plenty of time for several successive emigrations from Western and Central Asia into the inviting plains of China, which, through the want of a written language or the destruction of records, have come down to us in misty, doubtful legends.

Fuh-hí and his seven successors are stated to have reigned seven hundred and forty-seven years, averaging ninety-three each. Those who follow Usher consider these monarchs to be Chinese travesties of the eight antediluvian patriarchs; and Marquis d'Urban has gone so far as to write what he calls the *Antediluvian History of China*, collecting all the notices his-

Digitized by Google

tory affords of their acts. The common chronology brings the deluge about thirteen years after the accession of Yao and the death of Shun (the last of the eight), B.C. 2205, or twenty-five years after the confusion of tongues. According to Hales, the last epoch is one hundred and twelve years before the call of Abraham, and these eight Chinese monarchs are therefore contemporaries of the patriarchs who lived between Shem and Abraham, commencing with Salah and ending with Nahor. The duration of their reigns, moreover, is such as would bear the same proportion to ages of five hundred years, which their contemporaries lived, as the present average of twenty and twenty-five years does to a life of sixty. The Assyrian tablets, deciphered by George Smith, contain a reference to the twenty-eighth century B.C., as the founding of that monarchy; which is a notice of more value as a chronological epoch than anything in Chinese annals, indeed, and may help to countenance a date that had before been regarded as mythological.

Supposing that the descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japheth, knowing from their fathers and grandfather, that the void world was before them, began to colonize almost as soon as they began to form families, three centuries would not be too long a time for some of them to settle in China, perhaps offsetting from Elam and Asshur, and other descendants of Shem in Persia. The capital of Fuh-hí slightly indicates, it may be thought, their route through Central Asia across the Desert to Kiayü kwan in Kansuh, and then down the Yellow River to the Great Plain near Kaifung. But these suppositions are only by the way, as is also the suggestion that teaching of fishing and grazing, the regulation of times and seasons, cultivation of music, and establishment of government, etc., compare well enough with the duties that might reasonably be supposed to belong to the founder of a colony and his successors, and subsequently ascribed to them as their own inventions. The long period allotted to human life at that date would allow these arts and sciences to take root and their memory to remain in popular legends until subsequent historians incorporated them into their writings. The Chinese annalists fill up the reigns of these chiefs, down to the time of Yao, with a series of inven-

Digitized by Google

tions and improvements in the arts of life and good government, sufficient to bring society to that degree of comfort and order they suppose consonant with the character of the monarchs. The earliest records of the Chinese correspond much too closely with their present character to receive full belief; but they present an appearance of probability and naturalness not possessed by the early annals of Greece. No one contends for their credibility as history, but they are better than the Arabian Nights.

The commencement of the sexagenary cycle[1] in the sixty-first year of Hwangtí's reign (or B.C. 2637), five hundred and eighteen years after the deluge, eighty-two years after the death of Arphaxad, and about that time before the confusion of tongues, is worthy of notice. The use of the ten horary characters applied to days in order to denote their chronological sequence dates from the reign of Yu in the twentieth century B.C., and there are other passages in the *Shu King* showing similar application. Sz'ma Tsien's history now contains the first attempt to arrange the years in cycles of sixty; but he cannot fairly be claimed as the inventor of this system. He might almost as well be regarded as the inventor of his whole *annals*, for all the materials out of which he compiled them have now perished except the canonical books. The mention of the individual Nao the Great, who invented it, and the odd date of its adoption in the middle of a reign, do not weaken the alleged date of its origin in the minds of those who are inclined to take a statement of this kind on its own basis.

Three reigns, averaging eighty years' duration, intervened between that of Hwangtí and Yao, whose occupants were elected by the people, much as were Shemgar, Jephthah, and other judges in Israel, and probably exercised a similar sway. The reigns and characters of Yao and Shun have been immortalized by Confucius and Mencius; whatever was their real history, those sages showed great sagacity in going back to those remote times for models and fixing upon a period neither fabulous nor certain, one which prevented alike the cavils of scepticism and the appearance of complete fabrication.

---

[1] *Journal Asiatique*, Avril, 1836, p. 394.

Digitized by Google

A tremendous deluge occurred during the reign of Yao, B.C. 2293, caused, it is said, by the overflowing of the rivers in the north of China. Those who place the Noachic deluge B.C. 2348 regard this as only a different version of that event; Klaproth, who favors the Septuagint chronology, says that it is nearly synchronous with the deluge of Xisuthrus, B.C. 2297, a name derived, as is reasonably inferred by George Smith, from the Assyrian name Hasisadra, the ancient hero who survived the deluge. The record of this catastrophe in the *Shu King* is hardly applicable to an overwhelming flood: "The Emperor said, Oh! chief of the four mountains, destructive in their overthrow are the waters of the inundation. In their vast extent they embrace the mountains and overtop the hills, threatening the heavens with their floods, so that the inferior people groan and murmur. Is there a capable man to whom I can assign the correction of this calamity?"[1] They presented Kwăn as a proper man, but he showed his inefficiency in laboring nine years without success to drain off the waters. Yao was then advised to employ Shun, who called in Yu, a son of Kwăn, to his aid, and the floods were assuaged by deepening the beds of the rivers and opening new channels. These slight notices hardly comport with a flood like the Noachic deluge, and are with much greater probability referred to an overflow or a change in the bed of the Yellow River from its present course into the Gulf of Pechele through Chihlí northeast, to its recent one along the lowlands of Kiangsu. The weight of topographical evidence, combined with the strong chronological argument, the discussions in council said to have taken place regarding the disaster, and the time which elapsed before the region was drained, all pre-suppose and indicate a partial inundation, and strengthen the assumption that no traces of the Deluge exist in the histories of the Chinese. In our view of the chronology of the Bible, as compared with the Chinese, it requires a far greater constraint upon these records to bring them to refer to that event, than to suppose they allude to a local disaster not beyond the power of remedy.

[1] Legge's *Shu King*, p. 24, Hongkong, 1867.

Digitized by Google

The series of chieftains down to the accession of Yu may here be recapitulated. The entirely fabulous period ends with Sui-jin, and legendary history commences with Fuh-hí, who with four of his successors (Nos. 2, 3, 7, and 8) are commonly known as the Five Sovereigns. Their names and reigns are as follows:

	Names.	Years reigned.	Began B.C.	Other Events.
1	Fuh-hí..... ...	115	2852	The Deluge, B.C. 3155.
2	Shinnung	140	2737	Death of Noah, B.C. 2805.
3	Hwangtí	100	2697	
4	Shauhau	84	2597	Death of Arphaxad, 2715.
5	Chwenhüh	78	2513	Death of Shem, 2555.
6	Kuh	78	2435	Rise of Egyptian monarchy, 2450.
7	Yao	102	2357	Rise of Babylonian " 2300.
8	Shun	50	2255	Abraham's birth, 2153.

The records in the *Shu King* of Yao, Shun, and Yu the Great (B.C. 2205) are longer than those of any other persons who lived prior to Abraham. The chronicle represents the merits of Yu to have been first exhibited in reducing the waters and dividing the country into nine regions, and as he had assisted Shun in his government during his lifetime, he was unanimously called to the vacant dignity, and became the founder of the Hia dynasty. Allowing that the records of these times and people are brief and disjointed, and many things in them impossible to reconcile, still they are superior to the absurd tales describing the formation of some other ancient States, and should not be ridiculed as trivial or rejected as fabulous. The great advances made in settling obscure points in early history, by the success in deciphering records brought to light in Western Asia, lead to more respect for what we possess in Eastern Asia, rather than to reject the fragmentary records remaining. No one regards them as trustworthy, like the clay tablets exhumed at Nineveh, but if Abraham found the Egyptians to be living under a regular government not one hundred and fifty years after this, and Damascus, Babylon, Erech, and other cities were then old, no one need be unwilling to give the Chinese a line of monarchs, and a population quite

Digitized by Google

sufficient to have deepened the channel of a river or raised dikes to restrain it. The glorious reigns and spotless characters of these three sovereigns are looked upon by the Chinese with much the same feelings of veneration that the Jews regard their three patriarchs; and to have had, or to have imagined, such progenitors and heroes is, to say the least, as much to their credit as the Achilles, Ulysses, and Romulus of the Greeks and Romans. A curious analogy can also be traced between the scheming Ulysses, warlike Romulus, and methodical Yao, and the subsequent character of the three great nations they represent.

Chinese historians supply many details regarding the conduct of Yu and Kieh Kwei, the first and last princes of the house of Hia, all the credible particulars of which are taken from the *Book of Records* and the *Bamboo Annals*. Dr. Legge candidly weighs the arguments in respect to the eclipse mentioned in the *Yuh Ching*, and gives his opinion as to its authenticity, even if it cannot yet be certainly referred to the year B.C. 2154. One such authentic notice lends strength to the reception of many vague statements, which are more likely to be the relics of fuller documents long since lost than the fabrications of later writers, such as were the Decretals of Isidore in the Middle Ages. In giving a full translation of the *Bamboo Books* in the prolegomena of the *Shu King*, Dr. Legge has shown one of the sources of ancient Chinese history outside of that work. There were many other works accessible to Sz'ma Tsien, nearly four centuries before they were discovered (A.D. 279), when he wrote his *Annals*. Pan Ku gives a list of the various books recovered after the death of Tsin Chí Hwangtí, amounting in all to thirteen thousand two hundred and nineteen volumes or chapters contained in six hundred and twenty different works. Well does Pauthier speak of the inestimable value which a similar catalogue of the extant literature of Greece and Rome at that epoch (B.C. 100) would now be.

One of the alleged records of the reign of Yu is an inscription traced on the rocks of Kau-lau shan, one of the peaks of Mount Hăng in Hunan, relating to the inundation. It contains seventy-seven characters only, and Amiot, who regarded it as genuine, has given its sense as follows:

Digitized by Google

The venerable Emperor said, Oh! aid and councillor! Who will help me in administering my affairs? The great and little islets (the inhabited places) even to their summits, the abodes of the beasts and birds, and all beings are widely inundated. Advise, send back the waters, and raise the dikes. For a long time, I have quite forgotten my family; I repose on the top of the mountain Yoh-lu. By prudence and my labors, I have moved the spirits; I know not the hours, but repose myself only in my incessant labors. The mountains Hwa, Yoh, Tai, and Hăng, have been the beginning and end of my enterprise; when my labors were completed, I offered a thanksgiving sacrifice at the solstice. My affliction has ceased; the confusion in nature has disappeared; the deep currents coming from the south flow into the sea; clothes can now be made, food can be prepared, all kingdoms will be at peace, and we can give ourselves to continual joy.[1]

Since Amiot's time, however, further opportunities have offered for more thorough inquiry into this relic by foreigners, and the results of their researches throw much doubt upon its authenticity, though they do not altogether destroy it. In the Introduction to the *Shu King*, Dr. Legge discusses the value of this tablet among other early records of that reign, and comes to the conclusion that it is a fabrication of the Han dynasty, if not later. The poet Han Yu (A.D. 800) gave it wide notoriety by his verses about its location and nature; but when he was there he could not find it on the peak, and cited only a Taoist priest as having seen it. More than three centuries afterward Chu Hí was equally unsuccessful, and his opinion that it was made by the priests of that sect has had much weight with his countrymen. It was not till one Ho Chí went to Mount Hăng, about A.D. 1210, and took a copy of the inscription from the stone then in a Taoist temple, that it was actually seen; and not till about 1510, that Chang Kí-wăn, another antiquary of Hunan province, published his copy in the form now generally accepted. In 1666 one Mao Tsăng-kien again found the tablet on the summit of Kau-lau, but reached it with much difficulty by the help of ladders and hooks, and found it so broken that the inscription could not be made out. A reduced *fac-simile* of Mao's copy is given by

[1] Pauthier, *La Chine*, p. 53; J. Hager's *Inscription of Yu*, Paris, 1802; Legge's *Shu King*, pp. 67–74; *Transactions of the N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, No. V., 1869, pp. 78–84; *Journal Asiatique*, 1867, Tome X., pp. 197–337.

Digitized by Google

Dr. Legge, whose translation differs from Amiot's in some particulars.

I received *the words of* the Emperor, saying, "Ah! Associate helper, aiding noble! The islands and islets may now be ascended, *that were* doors for the birds and beasts. *You* devoted your person to the great overflowings, and with the daybreak you rose up. Long were *you* abroad, forgetting your family; *you* lodged at the mountain's foot as in a hall; *your* wisdom schemed; *your* body was broken; *your* heart was all in a tremble. *You* went and sought to produce order and settlement. At Hwa, Yoh, Tai, and Hăng, by adopting the principle of dividing *the waters*, *your* undertakings were completed. With the remains of a taper, *you* offered your pure sacrifice. There were entanglement and obstruction, being swamped, and removals. The southern river flows on its course; for ever is the provision of food made sure; the myriad States enjoy repose; the beasts and birds are for ever fled away."

The characters in which this tablet is written are of an ancient tadpole form, and so difficult to read that grave doubts exist as to their proper meaning—and even as to which of two or three forms is the correct one. Since the copy of Mao was taken, the Manchu scholar Kwan-wăn, when Governor-General of Liang Hu in 1868, erected a stone tablet at Wu-chang, in the Pavilion of the Yellow Stork, upon the eminence overlooking the Yangtsz'. This he regarded as a true copy of the authentic *Yu Pai*, or 'Tablet of Yu.' A *fac-simile* of this tablet, and of another rubbing from a stone now existing at the foot of Mount Hăng (which is alleged to be an exact reproduction of the original on its top), was published by W. H. Medhurst in the *N. C. Asiatic Society Journal* for 1869. A comparison of these three will give the reader an idea of the difficulties and doubts attending the settlement of the credibility of this inscription. A living native writer quoted by Mr. Medhurst says that the earliest notice of the tablet is by Tsin Yung of the Tăng dynasty, about A.D. 700, from which he infers that the people of the time of Tăng must have seen the rock and its inscription. He regards the latter as consisting of fairy characters, utterly unreadable, and therefore all attempts to decipher them as valueless and misleading.

Amid so many conflicting opinions among native scholars, the verdict of foreigners may safely await further discoveries,

Digitized by Google

and the day when competent observers can examine these localities and tablets for themselves. Without exaggerating the importance and credibility of the *Shu King* and other ancient Chinese records, they can be received as the writings of a very remote period; and while their claims to trustworthiness would be fortified if more intimations had been given of the manner in which they were kept during the long period antecedent to the era of Confucius, they still deserve a more respectful consideration than some modern writers are disposed to allow them. For instance, Davis remarks: "Yu is described as nine cubits in height, and it is stated that the skies rained gold in those days, which certainly (as Dr. Morrison observes) lessens the credit of the history of this period." Now, without laying too much stress upon the record, or the objections against it, this height is but little more than that of Og of Bashan, even if we adopt the present length of the cubit fourteen and one-tenth inches, English; and if *kin*, here called *gold*, be translated *metal* (which it can just as well be), it may be a notice of a meteoric shower of extraordinary duration. Let these venerable writings be investigated in a candid, cautious manner, weighing their internal evidence, and comparing their notices of those remote periods as much as they can be with those of other nations, and they will illustrate ancient history and customs in no slight degree. Mr. Murray has given a synopsis from Mailla of what is recorded of the Hia dynasty, which will fairly exhibit the matter of Chinese history. It is here introduced somewhat abridged, with dates inserted.

The accession of Yu (B.C. 2205) forms a remarkable era in Chinese history. The throne, which hitherto had been more or less elective, became from this period hereditary in the eldest son, with only those occasional and violent interruptions to which every despotic government is liable. The national annals, too, assume a more regular and authentic shape, the reigns of the sovereigns being at the same time reduced to a probable duration.

Yu justly acquired a lasting veneration, but it was chiefly by his labors under his two predecessors. When he himself ascended the throne, age had already overtaken him; still the lustre of his government was supported by able councillors, till it closed with his life at the end of seven years. Many of the grandees wished, according to former practice, to raise to the throne Pi-yih, his first minister, and a person of distinguished merit; but regard for the father, in this case, was strengthened by the excellent qualities of his son

Digitized by Google

Kí, or Tí Kí (*i.e.*, the Emperor Kí), and even Pí-yih insisted that the prince should be preferred (2197). His reign of nine years was only disturbed by the rebellion of a turbulent subject, and he was succeeded (2188) by his son, Tai Kang. But this youth was devoted to pleasure; music, wine, and hunting entirely engrossed his attention. The Chinese, after enduring him for twenty-nine years, dethroned him (2159), and his brother, Chung Kang, was nominated to succeed, and held the reins of government for thirteen years with a vigorous hand. He was followed by his son, Siang (2146), who, destitute of the energy his situation required, gave himself up to the advice of his minister Yeh, and was by him, in connection with his accomplice, Hantsu, declared incapable of reigning. The usurper ruled for seven years, when he was killed; and the rightful monarch collected his adherents and gave battle to Hantsu and the son of Yeh in the endeavor to regain his throne. Siang was completely defeated, and lost both his crown and life; the victors immediately marched to the capital, and made so general a massacre of the family that they believed the name and race of Yu to be for ever extinguished.

The Empress Min, however, managed to escape, and fled to a remote city, where she brought forth a son, called Shau Kang; and the better to conceal his origin, she employed him as a shepherd boy to tend flocks. Reports of the existence of such a youth, and his occupation, at length reached the ears of Hantsu, who sent orders to bring him, dead or alive. The royal widow then placed her son as under-cook in the household of a neighboring governor, where the lad soon distinguished himself by a spirit and temper so superior to this humble station, that the master's suspicions were roused, and obliged him to disclose his name and birth. The officer, being devotedly attached to the house of Yu, not only kept the secret, but watched for an opportunity to reinstate him, and meanwhile gave him a small government in a secluded situation, which he prudently administered. Yet he was more than thirty years old before the governor, by engaging other chiefs in his interest, could assemble such a force as might justify the attempt to make head against the usurper. The latter hastily assembled his troops and led them to the attack, but was defeated and taken prisoner by the young prince Chu himself; and Shau Kang, with his mother, returned with acclamations to the capital. His reign is reckoned to have been sixty-one years' duration in the chronology of the time, which includes the usurpation of forty years of Hantsu.

The country was ably governed by Shau Kang, and also by his son, Chu (2057), who ruled for seventeen years; but the succeeding sovereigns, in many instances, abandoned themselves to indolence and pleasure, and brought the kingly name into contempt. From Hwai to Kieh Kwei, a space of two hundred and twenty-two years, between B.C. 2040 and 1818, few records remain of the nine sovereigns, whose bare names succeed each other in the annals. At length the throne was occupied by Kieh Kwei (1818), a prince who is represented as having, in connexion with his consort, Mei-hí, practised every kind of violence and extortion, in order to accumulate treasure, which they spent in unbridled voluptuousness. They formed a large pond of wine, deep enough to float a boat, at which three thousand men drank at once. It was surrounded, too, by pyramids of delicate viands, which no one, however, was allowed to taste, till he had first intoxicated himself out of the lake. The drunken quarrels which ensued were

Digitized by Google

their favorite amusement. In the interior of the palace the vilest orgies were celebrated, and the venerable ministers, who attempted to remonstrate against these excesses, were either put to death or exiled. The people were at once indignant and grieved at such crimes, which threatened the downfall of the dynasty; and the discarded statesmen put themselves under the direction of the wise Í Yin, and advised Chingtang, the ablest of their number, and a descendant of Hwangtí, to assume the reins of government, assuring him of their support. He with reluctance yielded to their solicitations, and assembling a force marched against Kieh Kwei, who came out to meet him at the head of a numerous army, but fled from the contest on seeing the defection of his troops, and ended his days in despicable obscurity, after occupying the throne fifty-two years.[1]

Chinese annals are generally occupied in this way; the Emperor and his ministers fill the whole field of historic vision; little is recorded of the condition, habits, arts, or occupations of the people, who are merely considered as attendants of the monarch, which is, in truth, a feature of the ancient records of nearly all countries and people. Monarchs controlled the chronicles of their reigns, and their own vanity, as well as their ideas of government and authority led them to represent the people as a mere background to their own stately dignity and acts.

The Shang dynasty began B.C. 1766, or about one hundred and twenty years before the Exodus, and maintained an unequal sway over the feudal States composing the Empire for a period of six hundred and forty-four years. Its first monarch, Chingtang, or Tang the Successful, is described as having paid religious worship to Shangtí, under which name, perhaps, the true God was intended. On account of a severe drought of seven years' duration, this monarch is reported to have prayed, saying, "I the child Lí presume to use a dark colored victim, and announce to thee, O Shang-tien Hao ('High Heaven's Ruler'). Now there is a great drought, and it is right I should be held responsible for it. I do not know but that I have offended the powers above and below." With regard to his own conduct, he blamed himself in six particulars, and his words were not ended when the rain descended copiously.

The fragmentary records of this dynasty contained in the *Shu King* are not so valuable to the student who wishes merely

[1] Hugh Murray, *China*, Vol. I., pp. 51–55. (edition of 1843).

Digitized by Google

to learn the succession of monarchs in those days, as to one who inquires what were the principles on which they ruled, what were the polity, the religion, the jurisdiction, and the checks of the Chinese government in those remote times. The regular records of those days will never be recovered, but the preservation of the last two parts of the *Shu King* indicates their existence by fair inference, and encourages those who try to reconstruct the early annals of China to give full value even to slight fragments. But these parts have been of great service to the people since they were written, in teaching them by precept and example on what the prosperity of a State was founded, and how their rulers could bring it to ruin. In these respects there are no ancient works outside of the Bible with which they can at all be compared. The later system of examination has given them an unparalleled influence in molding the national character of the Chinese. Of the eleven chapters now remaining all are occupied more or less with the relative duties of the prince and rulers, enforcing on each that the welfare of all was bound up with their faithfulness. One quotation will give an idea of their instructions. "Order your affairs by righteousness, order your heart by propriety, so shall you transmit a grand example to posterity. I have heard the saying, He who finds instructors for himself comes to the supreme dominion; he who says that others are not equal to himself comes to ruin. He who likes to ask becomes enlarged; he who uses *only* himself becomes small. Oh! he who would take care for his end must be attentive to his beginning. There is establishment for the observers of propriety, and overthrow for the blinded and wantonly indifferent. To revere and honor the way of Heaven is the way ever to preserve the favoring regard of Heaven."[1]

The chronicles of the Shang dynasty, as gathered from the *Bamboo Books* and other later records, resemble those of the Hia in being little more than a mere succession of the names of the sovereigns, interspersed here and there with notices of some remarkable events in the natural and political world. Luxurious and despised princes alternate with vigorous and warlike ones

[1] Part IV., Book II., Chap. IV., 8-9.

Digitized by Google

who commanded respect, and the condition of the State measurably corresponds with the character of the monarchs, the feudal barons sometimes increasing in power and territory by encroaching on their neighbors, and then suffering a reduction from some new State. The names of twenty-eight princes are given, the accounts of whose reigns are indeed fuller than those of the dukes of Edom in Genesis, but their slight notices would be more interesting if the same confidence could be reposed in them.

The bad sovereigns occupy more room in these *fasti* than the good ones, the palm of wickedness being given to Chau-sin, with whom the dynasty ended. The wars which broke out during this dynasty were numerous, but other events also find a place, though hardly anything which throws light on society or civilization. Droughts, famines, and other calamities were frequent and attended by dreadful omens and fearful sights; this fancied correlation between natural casualties and political convulsions is a feature running through Chinese history, and grows out of the peculiar position of the monarch as the vicegerent of heaven. The people seem to have looked for control and protection more to their local masters than to their lord paramount, ranging themselves under their separate banners as they were bidden. The *History Made Easy* speaks of the twenty-fifth monarch, Wu-yih (B.C. 1198), as the most wicked of them all. "Having made his images of clay in the shape of human beings, dignified them with the name of gods, overcome them at gambling, and set them aside in disgrace, he then, in order to complete his folly, made leathern bags and filled them with blood, and sent them up into the air, exclaiming, when his arrows hit them and the blood poured down, 'I have shot heaven,' meaning, I have killed the gods."

The names of Chau-sin and Tan-kí are coupled with those of Kieh and Mí-hí of the Hia dynasty, all of them synonymous in the Chinese annals for the acme of cruelty and licentiousness —as are those of Nero and Messalina in Roman history. Chau-sin is said one winter's morning to have seen a few women walking barelegged on the banks of a stream collecting shellfish, and ordered their legs to be cut off, that he might see the

Digitized by Google

marrow of persons who could resist cold so fearlessly. The heart of one of his reprovers was also brought him, in order to see wherein it differed from that of cowardly ministers. The last *Book of Shang* contains the vain remonstrance of another of them, who tells his sovereign that his dynasty is in the condition of one crossing a large stream who can find neither ford nor bank. Many acts of this nature alienated the hearts of the people, until Wăn wang, the leader of a State in the northwest of China, united the principal men against his misrule; but dying, bequeathed his crown and power to his son, Wu wang. He gradually gathered his forces and met Chau-sin at the head of a great army at Muh, near the junction of the rivers Kí and Wei, north of the Yellow River in Honan, where the defeat of the tyrant was complete. Feeling the contempt he was held in, and the hopeless struggle before him, he fled to his palace and burned himself with all his treasures, like another Sardanapalus, though his immolation (in B.C. 1122) preceded the Assyrian's by five centuries.

Wu wang, the martial king, the founder of the Chau dynasty, his father, Wăn wang, and his brother, Duke Chau, are among the most distinguished men of antiquity for their erudition, integrity, patriotism, and inventions. Wăn wang, Prince of Chau, was prime minister to Tai-ting, the grandfather of Chau-sin, but was imprisoned for his fidelity. His son obtained his liberation, and the sayings and acts of both occupy about twenty books in Part V. of the *Shu King*. Duke Chau survived his brother to become the director and support of his nephew; his counsels, occupying a large part of the history, are full of wisdom and equity. Book X. contains his warning advice about drunkenness, which has been remarkably influential among his countrymen ever since. No period of ancient Chinese history is more celebrated than that of the founding of this dynasty, chiefly because of the high character of its leading men, who were regarded by Confucius as the impersonations of everything wise and noble. Wu wang is represented as having invoked the assistance of Shangtí in his designs, and, when he was successful, returned thanks and offered prayers and sacrifices. He removed the capital from the province of Honan to the present

Digitized by Google

Sí-ngan, in Shensí, where it remained for a long period. This prince committed a great political blunder in dividing the Empire into petty states, thus destroying the ancient pure monarchy, and leaving himself only a small portion of territory and power, which were quite insufficient, in the hands of a weak prince, to maintain either the state or authority due the ruling sovereign. The number of States at one time was one hundred and twenty-five, at another forty-one, and, in the time of Confucius, about six hundred years after the establishment of the dynasty, fifty-two, some of them large kingdoms. From about B.C. 700 the imperial name and power lost the allegiance and respect of the feudal princes, and gradually became contemptible. Its nominal sway extended over the country lying north of the Yangtsz' kiang, the regions on the south being occupied by tribes of whom no intelligible record has been preserved.

The duration of the three dynasties, the Hia, Shang, and Chau, comprises a long and obscure period in the history of the world, extending from B.C. 2205 to 249, from the time when Terah dwelt in Charran, and the sixteenth dynasty of Theban kings ruled in Egypt, down to the reigns of Antiochus Soter and Ptolemy Philadelphus and the translation of the Septuagint.

I.—The HIA dynasty, founded by Yu the Great, existed four hundred and thirty-nine years, down to B.C. 1766, under seventeen monarchs, the records of whose reigns are very brief. Among contemporary events of importance are the call of Abraham, in the year B.C. 2093, Jacob's flight to Mesopotamia in 1916, Joseph's elevation in Egypt in 1885, and his father's arrival in 1863.

II.—The SHANG dynasty began with Tang the Successful, and continued six hundred and forty-four years, under twenty-eight sovereigns, down to B.C. 1122. This period was characterized by wars among rival princes, and the power of the sovereign depended chiefly upon his personal character. The principal contemporary events were the Exodus of the Israelites in 1648, their settlement in Palestine in 1608, judgeship of Othniel, 1564; of Deborah, 1406; of Gideon, 1359; of Samson, 1202; and death of Samuel in 1122.

III.—The CHAU dynasty began with Wu wang, and con-

Digitized by Google

tinued for eight hundred and seventy-three years, under thirty-five monarchs, down to B.C. 249, the longest of any recorded in history. The sway of many of these was little more than nominal, and the feudal States increased or diminished, according to the vigor of the monarch or the ambition of the princes. In B.C. 770 the capital was removed from Kao, near the River Wei in Shensí, to Lohyang, in the western part of Honan; this divides the house into the Western and Eastern Chau. The contemporary events of these eight centuries are too numerous to particularize. The accession of Saul in 1110; of David, 1070; of Rehoboam, 990; taking of Troy, 1084; of Samaria, 719; of Jerusalem, 586; death of Nebuchadnezzar, 561; accession of Cyrus and return of the Jews, 551; battle of Marathon, 490; accession of Alexander, 235; etc. The conquest of Egypt by Alexander in 322 brought the thirty-first and last dynasty of her native kings to an end, the first of which had begun under Menes about B.C. 2715, or twenty-two years after the supposed accession of Shinnung.

The absence of any great remains of human labor or art previous to the Great Wall, like the Pyramids, the Temple of Solomon, or the ruins and mounds in Syria, has led many to doubt the credibility of these early Chinese records. They ascribe them to the invention of the historians of the Han dynasty, working up the scattered relics of their ancient books into a readable narrative, and therefore try to bring every statement to a critical test for which there are few facts. The analogies between the records in the *Shu King* and the Aryan myths are skilfully explained by Mr. Kingsmill by reference to the meanings of the names of persons and places and titles, and a connection shown which has the merit at least of ingenuity and beauty. Almost the only actual known relic of these three dynasties is the series of ten stone drums (*shih ku*) now in the Confucian temple at Peking. They were discovered about A.D. 600, in the environs of the ancient capital of the Chau dynasty, and have been kept in Peking since the year 1126. They are irregularly shaped pillars, from eighteen to thirty-five inches high and about twenty-eight inches across; the inscriptions are much worn, but enough remains to show that they commemo-

Digitized by Google

rate a great hunt of Süen wang (B.C. 827) in the region where they were found.[1]

Among the feudal States under the house of Chau, that of Tsin, on the northwest, had long been the most powerful, occupying nearly a fifth of the country, and its inhabitants forming a tenth of the whole population. One of the princes, called Chausiang wang, carried his encroachments into the acknowledged imperial possessions, and compelled its master, Tungchau kiun, the last monarch, to humble himself at his feet. Although, in fact, master of the whole Empire, he did not take the title, but left it to his son, Chwangsiang wang, who exterminated the blood royal and ended the Chau dynasty, yet lived only three years in possession of the supreme power.

The son carried on his father's successes until he had reduced all the petty States to his sway. He then took the name of Chí Hwangtí ('Emperor First') of the Tsin dynasty, and set himself to regulate his conquests and establish his authority by securing to his subjects a better government than had been experienced during the feudal times. He divided the country into thirty-six provinces, over which he placed governors, and went throughout them all to see that no injustice was practised.

This monarch, who has been called the Napoleon of China, was one of those extraordinary men who turn the course of events and give an impress to subsequent ages; Klaproth gives him a high character as a prince of energy and skill, but native historians detest his name and acts. It is recorded that at his new capital, Hienyang, on the banks of the Hwai, he constructed a palace exactly like those of all the kings who had submitted to him, and ordered that all the precious furniture of each and those persons who had inhabited them should be transported to it, and everything rearranged. The whole occupied an immense space, and the various parts communicated with each other by a magnificent colonnade and gallery. He made progresses through his dominions with a splendor hitherto unknown, accompanied by officials and troops from all parts, thus making

[1] *Journal of the N. C. Branch of R. A. Society*, Vols. VII., p. 137; VIII., pp. 23, 133. In the last paper, by Dr. Bushell, translations and fac-similes of the inscriptions are given, with many historical notices.

Digitized by Google

the people interested in each other and consenting to his sway. He also built public edifices, opened roads and canals to facilitate intercourse and trade between the various provinces, and repressed the incursions of the Huns, driving them into the wilds of Mongolia. In order to keep them out effectually, he conceived the idea of extending and uniting the short walls which the princes of some of the Northern States had erected on their frontier into one grand wall, stretching across the Empire from the sea to the Desert. This gigantic undertaking was completed in ten years (B.C. 204), at a vast expense in men and material, and not until the family of its builder had been destroyed. This mode of protecting the country, when once well begun, probably commended itself to the nation. It is impossible, indeed, to imagine otherwise how it could have been done, for the people were required to supply a quota of men from each place, feed and clothe them while at work, and continue this expense until their portion was built. No monarch could have maintained an army which could force his subjects against their will to do such a work or carry it on to completion after his death. It is one of the incidental proofs of a great population that so many laborers were found. However ineffectual it was to preserve his frontiers, it has made his name celebrated throughout the world, and his dynasty *Tsin* has given its name to China for all ages and nations.[1]

The vanity of the new monarch led him to endeavor to destroy all records written anterior to his own reign, that he might be by posterity regarded as the first Emperor of the Chinese race. Orders were issued that every book should be burned, and especially the writings of Confucius and Mencius, explanatory of the *Shu King* upon the feudal States of Chau, whose remembrance he wished to blot out. This strange command was executed to such an extent that many of the Chinese literati believe that not a perfect copy of the classical works escaped destruction, and the texts were only recovered by rewriting them from the memories of old scholars, a mode of reproduction

[1] Pauthier, *La Chine*, pp. 30, 221; *Mém. conc. les Chinois*, Tome III., p. 183.

Digitized by Google

that does not appear so singular to a Chinese as it does to us. If the same literary tragedy should be re-enacted to-day, thousands of persons might easily be found in China who could rewrite from memory the text and commentary of their nine classical works. "Nevertheless," as Klaproth remarks, "they were not in fact all lost; for in a country where writing is so common it was almost impossible that all the copies of works universally respected should be destroyed, especially at a time when the material on which they were written was very durable, being engraved with a stylet on bamboo tablets, or traced upon them with dark-colored varnish." The destruction was no doubt as nearly complete as possible, and not only were many works entirely destroyed, but a shade of doubt thereby thrown over the accuracy of others, and the records of the ancient dynasties rendered suspicious as well as incomplete. Not only were books sought after to be destroyed, but nearly five hundred literati were buried alive, in order that no one might remain to reproach, in their writings, the Emperor First with having committed so barbarous and insane an act.

The dynasty of Tsin, set up in such cruelty and blood, did not long survive the death of its founder; his son was unable to maintain his rule over the half-subdued feudal chieftains, and after a nominal reign of seven years he was overcome by Liu Pang, a soldier of fortune, who, having been employed by one of the chiefs as commander of his forces, used them to support his own authority when he had taken possession of the capital. Under the name of Kautsu he became the founder of the Han dynasty, and his accession is regarded as the commencement of modern Chinese history. The number and character of its heroes and literati are superior to most other periods, and to this day the term *Han-tsz'*, or 'Sons of Han,' is one of the favorite names by which the Chinese call themselves.

The first fourteen princes of this dynasty reigned in Shensí, but Kwangwu removed the capital from Chang-an to Lohyang, as was done in the Chau dynasty seven centuries before, the old one being ruined. During the reign of Ping tí (or the 'Emperor Peace') the Prince of Peace, our Lord Jesus Christ, was born in Judea, a remarkable coincidence which has often

Digitized by Google

attracted notice. During the reign of Ming tí, A.D. 65, a deputation was sent to India to obtain the sacred books and authorized teachers of Buddhism, which the Emperor intended to publicly introduce into China. This faith had already widely spread among his subjects, but henceforth it became the popular belief of the Chinese and extended eastward into Japan. This monarch and his successor, Chang tí, penetrated with their armies as far westward as the Caspian Sea, dividing and overcoming the various tribes on the confines of the Desert and at the foot of the Tien shan, and extending the limits of the monarchy in that direction farther than they are at present. The Chinese sway was maintained with varied success until toward the third century, and seems to have had a mollifying effect upon the nomads of those regions. In these distant expeditions the Chinese heard of the Romans, of whom their authors speak in the highest terms: "Everything precious and admirable in all other countries," say they, "comes from this land. Gold and silver money is coined there; ten of silver are worth one of gold. Their merchants trade by sea with Persia and India, and gain ten for one in their traffic. They are simple and upright, and never have two prices for their goods; grain is sold among them very cheap, and large sums are embarked in trade. Whenever ambassadors come to the frontiers they are provided with carriages to travel to the capital, and after their arrival a certain number of pieces of gold are furnished them for their expenses." This description, so characteristic of the shop-keeping Chinese, may be compared to many accounts given of the Chinese themselves by western authors.

Continuing the *résumé* of dynasties in order—

IV.—The Tsin dynasty is computed to end with Chwangsiang by the authors of the *History Made Easy*, and to have existed only three years, from B.C. 249 to 246.

V.—The After Tsin dynasty is sometimes joined to the preceding, but Chí Hwangtí regarded himself as the first monarch, and began a new house, which, however, lasted only forty-four years, from B.C. 246 to 202. The commotions in the farthest East during this period were not less destructive of life than the wars in Europe between the Carthaginians and Romans, and the Syrians, Greeks, and Egyptians.

Digitized by Google

VI., VII. The HAN and EASTERN HAN dynasties.—Liu Pang took the title of Han for his dynasty, after the name of his principality, and his family swayed the Middle Kingdom from B.C. 202 to A.D. 221, under twenty-six monarchs. The Han dynasty was the formative period of Chinese polity and institutions, and an instructive parallel can be drawn between the character and acts of the Emperors who reigned four hundred years in China, and the numerous consuls, dictators, and emperors who governed the Roman Empire for the same period from the time of Scipio Africanus to Heliogabalus. The founder of the Han is honored for having begun the system of competitive examinations for office, and his successors, Wăn tí, Wu tí, and Kwang-wu, developed literature, commerce, arts, and good government to a degree unknown before anywhere in Asia. In the West the Romans became the great world power, and the advent of Christ and establishment of His church within its borders only, render this period the turning epoch of progress among mankind.

The period between the overthrow of the Han dynasty, A.D. 190, and the establishment of the Eastern Tsin, A.D. 317, is one of the most interesting in Chinese history, from the variety of characters which the troubles of the times developed. The distractions of this period are described in the *History of the Three States*, but this entertaining work cannot be regarded as much better than a historical novel. It has, however, like Scott's stories, impressed the events and actors of those days upon the popular mind more than any history in the language.

VIII.—The AFTER HAN dynasty began A.D. 211, and continued forty-four years, under two princes, to A.D. 265. The country was divided into three principalities, called Wei, Wu, and Shuh. The first, under the son of Tsao Tsao, ruled the whole northern country at Lohyang, and was the most powerful of them for about forty years. The second, under Siun Kien, occupied the eastern provinces, from Shantung and the Yellow River down to the mountains of Fuhkien, holding his court at Nanking. The third, under Liu Pí, is regarded as the legitimate dynasty from his affinity with the Han; he had his capital at Chingtu fu, in Sz'chuen.

Digitized by Google

IX.—The Tsin dynasty was founded by Sz'ma Chao, a general in the employ of Hau of the last house, who seated himself on the throne of his master A.D. 265, the year of the latter's death. His son, Sz'ma Yen, took his place and extended his power over the whole Empire by 280. The inroads of the Huns and internal commotions were fast reducing the people to barbarism. Four Emperors of this house held their sway at Lohyang during fifty-two years, till A.D. 317. The Huns maintained their sway in Shensí until A.D. 352, under the designations of the Han and Chau dynasties. It is related of Liu Tsung, one of this barbaric race, that he built a great palace at Chang-an, where he gathered a myriad of the first subjects of his kingdom and lived in luxury and magnificence quite unknown before in China. Among his attendants was a body-guard of elegantly dressed women, many of whom were good musicians, which accompanied him on his progresses.

X.—The Eastern Tsin is the same house as the last, but Yuen tí having moved his capital in 317 from Lohyang to Nanking, his successors are distinguished as the Eastern Tsin. Eleven princes reigned during a period of one hundred and three years, down to A.D. 420. Buddhism was the chief religion at this time, and the doctrines of Confucius were highly esteemed; "children of concubines, priests, old women, and nurses administered the government," says the indignant annalist. At this period twelve independent and opposing kings struggled for the ascendency in China, and held their ephemeral courts in the north and west. It was at this time that Constantine moved the capital of the Roman Empire in 328, and the nations of northern Europe under Attila invaded Italy in 410.

XI.—The Sung, or Northern Sung dynasty, as it is often called to distinguish it from the XXIId dynasty (A.D. 970), is the first of the four dynasties known as the *Nan-peh Chao*, or 'South-north dynasties,' which preceded the Sui. It was founded by Liu Yu, who commanded the armies of Tsin, and gradually subdued all the opposing States. Displeased at the weakness of his master, Ngan tí, he caused him to be strangled, and placed his brother, Kung tí, upon the throne, who, fearing a like fate, abdicated the empty crown, and Liu Yu became monarch

Digitized by Google

under the name of Kautsu, A.D. 420. Eight princes held the throne till A.D. 479, many of them monsters of cruelty, and soon cut off, when Siau Tau-ching, Duke of Tsí, the prime minister, recompensed them as their ancestor had those of Tsin.

XII. Tsí dynasty.—The new monarch took the name of Kau tí, or 'High Emperor,' but enjoyed his dignity only four years. Four princes succeeded him at Nanking, the last of whom, Ho tí, was besieged in his capital by a faithless minister, assisted by the prince of Liang, who overthrew the dynasty A.D. 502, after a duration of twenty-three years.

XIII. Liang dynasty.—The first Emperor, Wu tí, reigned forty-eight years, and reduced most of his opponents; his dominions are described as being mostly south of the Yangtsz' River, the Wei ruling the regions north of it. Wu tí did much to restore literature and the study of Confucius; envoys from India and Persia also came to his court, and his just sway allowed the land to recruit. In his latter days he was so great a devotee of Buddhism that he retired to a monastery, like Charles V., but being persuaded to resume his crown, employed his time in teaching those doctrines to his assembled courtiers. Three successors occupied the throne, the last of whom, King tí, was killed A.D. 557, after surrendering himself, by the general of the troops, who then seized the crown.

XIV. Chin dynasty.—Three brothers reigned most of the time this house held its sway. During this period and that of the three preceding families, the Hunnish kingdom of Wei ruled the northern parts of China from A.D. 386 to 534, under eleven monarchs, when it was violently separated into the Eastern and Western Wei, and a third one called Chau, which ere long destroyed the last Wei at Chang-an and occupied northwest China. It is probable that the intercourse between China and other parts of Asia was more extensive and complete during the Wei dynasty than at any other period. Its sovereigns had preserved peaceful relations with their ancestral seats, and with the tribes beyond Lake Baikal and the Obi River to the North Sea. Trade seems to have flourished throughout the regions lying between the Caspian Sea and Corea, and the records of this period present accounts of the State in this vast tract to be

Digitized by Google

found nowhere else. One of these works referred to by Rémusat is the report of officers sent by Tai-wu during his reign to travel through his dominions (424–451) and give full accounts of them.

One of the sovereigns of Chau, Wu tí (A.D. 561–572), had given his daughter in marriage to Yang Kien, the Prince of Sui, one of his ministers, who, gradually extending his influence, took possession of the throne of his master Tsing tí in 580. In a few years he restored order to a distracted land by bringing the several States under his sway and reuniting all China under his hand A.D. 589, after it had been divided nearly four centuries.

XV. Sui dynasty.—The founder of this house has left an enduring name in Chinese annals by a survey of his dominions and division of them into interdependent *chau*, *kiun*, and *hien*, with corresponding officers, an arrangement which has ever since existed. He patronized letters and commerce, and tried to introduce the system of caste from India. After a vigorous reign of twenty-four years he was killed by his son Yang tí, who carried on his father's plans, and during the fourteen years of his reign extended the frontiers through the Tarim Valley and down to the Southern Ocean. His murder by one of his generals was the signal for several ambitious men to rise, but the Prince of Tang aided the son to rule for a year or two till he was removed, thus bringing the Sui dynasty to an end after thirty-nine years, but not before its two sovereigns had taught their subjects the benefits of an undivided sway.

XVI. Tang dynasty.—This celebrated line of princes began its sway in peace, and during the two hundred and eighty-seven years (618 to 908) they held the throne China was probably the most civilized country on earth; the darkest days of the West, when Europe was wrapped in the ignorance and degradation of the Middle Ages, formed the brightest era of the East. They exercised a humanizing effect on all the surrounding countries, and led their inhabitants to see the benefits and understand the management of a government where the laws were above the officers. The people along the southern coast were completely civilized and incorporated into the Chinese race, and mark the

Digitized by Google

change by always calling themselves *Tang Jin*, or 'Men of Tang.' An interesting work on the trade and condition of China at this time is the *Akhbar-al-Syn oual-Hind*, or 'Observations on China and India,' by two Arab travellers to those lands in the years 851 and 878, compiled by Abu Zaid and translated by Reinaud in 1845.[1] Lí Shí-min, the son of Lí Yuen the founder of this dynasty, may be regarded as the most accomplished monarch in the Chinese annals—famed alike for his wisdom and nobleness, his conquests and good government, his temperance, cultivated tastes, and patronage of literary men. While still Prince of Tang he contributed greatly to his father's elevation and to the extension of his sway over the regions of Central Asia. When the house of Tang was fully acknowledged, and the eleven rival States which had started up on the close of the house of Sui had been overcome, the capital was removed from Lohyang back to Chang-an, and everything done to compose the disordered country and reunite the distracted State under a regular and vigorous administration. Feeling himself unequal to all the cares of his great office, Lí Yuen, known as Kau-tsu Shin Yao tí (lit. 'High Progenitor, the Divine Yao Emperor'), resigned the yellow in favor of his son, who took the style of *Ching kwan* ('Pure Observer') for his reign, though his posthumous title is Tai-tsung Wăn-wu tí ('Our Exalted Ancestor, the Literary-Martial Emperor'), A.D. 627, and still further extended his victorious arms. One of his first acts was to establish schools and institute a system of literary examinations; he ordered a complete and accurate edition of all the classics to be published under the supervision of the most learned men in the Empire, and honored the memory of Confucius with special ceremonies of respect. Extraordinary pains were taken to prepare and preserve the historical records of former days and draw up full annals of the recent dynasties; these still await the examination of western scholars.

He constructed a code of laws for the direction of his high officers in their judicial functions, and made progresses through

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. I., p. 6; Reinaud, *Relations des Voyages*, 2 Vols., Paris, 1845. Yule, *Cathay and the Way Thither*, Introd., p. cii.

Digitized by Google

his dominions to inspect the condition of the people. During his reign the limits of the Empire were extended over all the Turkish tribes lying west of Kansuh and south of the Tien shan as far as the Caspian Sea, which were placed under four satrapies or residences, those of Kuché, Pisha or Khoten, Harashar, and Kashgar, as their names are at present. West of the last many smaller tribes submitted and rendered a partial subjection to the Emperor, who arranged them into sixteen governments under the management of a governor-general over their own chieftains. His frontiers reached from the borders of Persia, the Caspian Sea, and the Altai of the Kirghís steppe, along those mountains to the north side of Gobi eastward to the Inner Hing-an. Sogdiana and part of Khorassan, and the regions around the Hindu-kush, also obeyed him. The rulers of Nipal and Magadha or Bahar in India sent their salutations by their ambassadors, and the Greek Emperor Theodosius sent an envoy to Sí-ngan in 643 carrying presents of rubies and emeralds, as did also the Persians. The Nestorian missionaries also presented themselves at court. Tai-tsung received them with respect, and heard them rehearse the leading tenets of their doctrine.; he ordered a temple to be erected at his capital, and had some of their sacred books translated for his examination, though there is no evidence now remaining that any portion of the Bible was done into Chinese at this time.

Near the close of his life Tai-tsung undertook an expedition against Corea, but the conquest of that country was completed by his son after his death. A sentiment has been preserved at this time of his life which he uttered to his sons while sailing on the River Wei: "See, my children, the waves which float our fragile bark are able to submerge it in an instant; know assuredly that the people are like the waves, and the Emperor like this fragile bark." During his reign his life was attempted several times, once by his own son, but he was preserved from these attacks, and died after a reign of twenty-three years, deeply lamented by a grateful people. The Chinese accounts state that the foreign envoys resident at his court cut off their hair, some of them disfigured their faces, bled themselves, and sprinkled the blood around the bier in testimony of their grief.

Digitized by Google

Whatever may have been the truth in this respect, many proofs exist of the distinguished character of this monarch, and that the high reputation he enjoyed during his lifetime was a just tribute to his excellences. He will favorably compare with Akbar, Marcus Aurelius, and Kanghí, or with Charlemagne and Harun Al Raschid, who came to their thrones in the next century.

Tai-tsung was succeeded by his son Kau-tsung, whose indolent imbecility appeared the more despicable after his father's vigor, but his reign fills a large place in Chinese history, from the extraordinary career of his Empress, Wu Tsih-tien, or Wu hao ('Empress Wu') as she is called, who by her blandishments obtained entire control over him. The character of this woman has, no doubt, suffered much from the bad reputation native historians have given her, but enough can be gathered from their accounts to show that with all her cruelty she understood how to maintain the authority of the crown, repress foreign invasions, quell domestic sedition, and provide for the wants of the people. Introduced to the harem of Tai-tsung at the age of fourteen, she was sent at his death to the retreat where all his women were condemned for the rest of their days to honorable imprisonment. While a member of the palace Kau-tsung had been charmed with her appearance, and, having seen her at one of the state ceremonies connected with the ancestral worship, brought her back to the palace. His queen, Wang-shí, also favored his attentions in order to draw them off from another rival, but Wu Tsih-tien soon obtaining entire sway over the monarch, united both women against her; she managed to fill the principal offices with her friends, and by a series of manœuvres supplanted each in turn and became Empress. One means she took to excite suspicion against Wang-shí was, on occasion of the birth of her first child, after the Empress had visited it and before Kau-tsung came in to see his offspring, to strangle it and charge the crime upon her Majesty, which led to her trial, degradation, and imprisonment, and ere long to her death.

As soon as she became Empress (in 655), Wu began gradually to assume more and more authority, until, long before the Em-

Digitized by Google

peror's death in 684, she engrossed the whole management of affairs, and at his demise openly assumed the reins of government, which she wielded for twenty-one years with no weak hand. Her generals extended the limits of the Empire, and her officers carried into effect her orders to alleviate the miseries of the people. Her cruelty vented itself in the murder of all who opposed her will, even to her own sons and relatives; and her pride was rather exhibited than gratified by her assuming the titles of Queen of Heaven, Holy and Divine Ruler, Holy Mother, and Divine Sovereign. When she was disabled by age her son, Chung-sung, supported by some of the first men of the land, asserted his claim to the throne, and by a palace conspiracy succeeded in removing her to her own apartments, where she died aged eighty-one years. Her character has been blackened in native histories and popular tales, and her conduct held up as an additional evidence of the evil of allowing women to meddle with governments.[1]

A race of twenty monarchs swayed the sceptre of the house of Tang, but after the demise of the Empress Wu Tsih-tien none of them equalled Tai-tsung, and the Tang dynasty at last succumbed to ambitious ministers lording over its imbecile sovereigns. In the reign of Hiuen-tsung, about the year 722, the population of the Fifteen Provinces is said to have been 52,884,818. The last three or four Emperors exhibited the usual marks of a declining house—eunuchs or favorites promoted by them swayed the realm and dissipated its resources. At last, Lí Tsüen-chung, a general of Chau-tsung, whom he had aided in quelling the eunuchs in 904, rose against his master, destroyed him, and compelled his son, Chau-siuen tí, to abdicate, A.D. 907.

XVII. After Liang dynasty.—The destruction of the famous dynasty loosened the bonds of all government, and nine separate kings struggled for its provinces, some of whom, as Apkí over the Kítan in the north-east, succeeded in founding kingdoms. The Prince of Liang, the new Emperor, was unable to extend his sway beyond the provinces of Honan and Shantung. After

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 543; *Canton Miscellany*, No. 4, 1831, pp. 246 ff.

Digitized by Google

a short reign of six years he was killed by his brother, Liang Chu-tien, who, on his part, fell under the attack of a Turkish general, and ended this dynasty, A.D. 923, after a duration of sixteen years.

XVIII. After Tang dynasty.—The conqueror called himself Chwang-tsung, and his dynasty Tang, as if in continuation of that line of princes, but this mode of securing popularity was unsuccessful. Like Pertinax, Aurelian, and others of the Roman emperors, he was killed by his troops, who chose a successor, and his grandson, unable to resist his enemies, burned himself in his palace, A.D. 936, thus ending the weak dynasty after thirteen years of struggle.

XIX. After Tsin dynasty.—The Kítan or Tartars of Liau-tung, who had assisted in the overthrow of the last dynasty, compelled the new monarch to subsidize them at his accession, A.D. 936, by ceding to them sixteen cities in Chihlí, and promising an annual tribute of three hundred thousand pieces of silk. This disgraceful submission has ever since stigmatized Tien-fuh ('Heavenly Happiness') in the eyes of native historians. His nephew who succeeded him is known as Chuh tí (the 'Carried-away Emperor'), and was removed in 947 by those who put him on the throne, thus ending the meanest house which ever swayed the black-haired people.

XX. After Han dynasty.—The Tartars now endeavored to subdue the whole country, but were repulsed by Liu Chí-yuen, a loyal general who assumed the yellow in 947, and called his dynasty after the renowned house of Han; he and his son held sway four years, till A.D. 951, and then were cut off.

XXI. After Chau dynasty.—Ko Wei, the successful aspirant to the throne, maintained his seat, but died in three years, leaving his power to an adopted son, Shí-tsung, whose vigorous rule consolidated his still unsettled sway. His early death and the youth of his son decided his generals to bestow the sceptre upon the lately appointed tutor to the monarch, which closed the After Chau dynasty A.D. 960, after a brief duration of nine years. He was honored with a title, and, like Richard Cromwell, allowed to live in quiet till his death in 973, a fact creditable to the new monarch. These short-lived houses between A.D. 907–

Digitized by Google

960 are known in Chinese history as the *Wu tai*, or 'Five Dynasties.' While they struggled for supremacy in the valley of the Yellow River, the regions south and west were portioned among seven houses, who ruled them in a good degree of security. Fuhkien was held by the King of Min, and Kiangnan by the King of Wu; the regions of Sz'chuen, Nganhwui, and Kansuh were held by generals of note in the service of Tang; another general held Kwangtung at Canton through two or three reigns; and another exercised sway at Kingchau on the Yangtsz' River. It is needless to mention them all. During this period Europe was distracted by the wars of the Normans and Saracens, and learning there was at a low ebb.

XXII.—SUNG dynasty began A.D. 970, and maintained its power over the whole Empire for one hundred and fifty-seven years, till A.D. 1127. The mode in which its founder, Chau Kwang-yun, was made head of the State, reminds one of the way in which the Prætorian guards sometimes elevated their chiefs to the throne of the Cæsars. After the military leaders had decided upon their future sovereign they sent messengers to announce to him his new honor, who found him drunk, and "before he had time to reply the yellow robe was already thrown over his person." At the close of his reign of seventeen years the provinces had mostly submitted to his power at Kaifung, but the two Tartar kingdoms of Liau and Hia remained independent. This return to a centralized government proves the unity of the Chinese people at this time in their own limits, as well as their inability to induce their neighbors to adopt the same system of government. The successors of Tai-tsu of Sung had a constant struggle for existence with their adversaries on the north and west, the Liau and Hia, whose recent taste of power under the last two dynasties had shown them their opportunity. On the return of prosperity under his brother's reign of twenty-two years, the former institutions and political divisions were restored throughout the southern half of the Empire; good government was secured, aided by able generals and loyal ministers, and the rebels everywhere quelled. Chin-tsung was the third sovereign, and his reign of forty-one years is the brightest portion of the house of Sung. The kings of Hia in Kansuh acknowledged themselves to be his tributaries,

Digitized by Google

but he bought a cowardly peace with the Liau on the north-east. During his reign and that of his son, Tin-tsung, a violent controversy arose among the literati and officials as to the best mode of conducting the government. Some of them, as Sz'ma Kwang the historian, contended for the maintenance of the old principles of the sages. Others, of whom Wang Ngan-shí was the distinguished leader, advocated reform and change to the entire overthrow of existing institutions. For the first time in the history of China, two political parties peacefully struggled for supremacy, each content to depend on argument and truth for the victory. The contest soon grew too bitter, however, and the accession of a new monarch, Shin-tsung, enabled Wang to dispossess his opponents and manage State affairs as he pleased. After a trial of eight or ten years the voice of the nation restored the conservatives to power, and the radicals were banished beyond the frontier. A discussion like this, involving all the cherished ideas of the Chinese, brought out deep and acute inquiry into the nature and uses of things generally, and the writers of this dynasty, at the head of whom was Chu Hí, made a lasting impression on the national mind.

The two sons of Shin-tsung were unable to oppose the northern hordes of Liau and Hia, except by setting a third aspirant against both. These were the Niu-chih or Kin,[1] the ancestors of the present Manchus, who carried away Hwui-tsung as a captive in 1125, and his son too the next year, pillaging Lohyang and possessing themselves of the region north of the Yellow River. This closed the Northern Sung. The Kin established themselves at Peking in 1118, whence they were driven in 1235 by Genghis Khan, and fled back to the ancestral haunts on the Songari and Liau Rivers.

XXIII.—Southern Sung dynasty forms part of the preceding, for Kao-tsung, the brother of the last and ninth monarch of the weakened house of Northern Sung, seeing his capital in ruins, fled to Nanking, and soon after to the beautiful city of Hangchau on the eastern coast at the mouth of the Tsientang River.

[1] Two graves of the Kin monarchs exist on a hill west of Fangshan hien, fifty miles south-west of Peking; they were repaired by Kanghí. Dr. Bushell visited them in 1870.

Digitized by Google

Nanking was pillaged by the Kin, but Hangchau was too far for them. It gradually grew in size and strength, and became a famous capital. Kao-tsung resigned in 1162, after a reign of thirty-six years, and survived his abdication twenty-four years. The next Emperor was Hiao-tsung, who also resigned the yellow to Kwang-tsung, his son, and he again yielded it to his son Ning-tsung. This last, in his distress, called the rising Mongols into his service in 1228 to help against the Kin. The distance from the northern frontier, where the Mongols were flushed with their successes over the Tangouth of Hia at Ninghia in 1226, was too far for them to aid Ning-tsung at this time. He was, however, relieved from danger to himself, and the Mongols deferred their intentions for a few years. From this date for about fifty years the Sung grew weaker and weaker under the next five sovereigns, until the last scion, Tí Ping, was drowned with some of his courtiers, one of whom, clasping him in his arms, jumped from the vessel, and ended their life, dignity, and dynasty together. It had lasted one hundred and fifty-two years under nine monarchs, who showed less ability than those of Northern Sung, and were all much inferior as a whole to the house of Tang. Their patronage of letters and the arts of peace was unaccompanied by the vigor of their predecessors, for they were unwilling to leave the capital and risk all at the head of their troops. It is the genius and philosophy of its scholars that has made the Sung one of the great dynasties of the Middle Kingdom.

XXIV.—The YUEN dynasty was the first foreign sway to which the Sons of Han had submitted; their resistance to the army, which gradually overran the country, was weakened, however, by treachery and desultory tactics until the national spirit was frittered away. During the interval between the capture of Peking by Genghis and the final extinction of the Sung dynasty, the whole population had become somewhat accustomed to Mongol rule. Having no organized government of their own, these khans were content to allow the Chinese the full exercise of their own laws, if peace and taxation were duly upheld. Kublai had had ample opportunity to learn the character of his new subjects, and after the death of Mangu khan in 1260 and his own establishment at Peking in 1264, he in fifteen years brought

Digitized by Google

his vast dominions under a methodical sway and developed their resources more than ever. Though failing in his attempt to conquer Japan, he enlarged elsewhere his vanishing frontiers during his life till they could neither be defined nor governed. His patronage of merit and scholarship proves the good results of his tutelage in China, while the short-lived glory of his administration in other hands chiefly proved what good material he had to work with in China in comparison with his own race.[1] He was a vigorous and magnificent prince, and had, moreover, the advantage of having his acts and splendor related by Marco Polo—a chronicler worthy of his subject. The Grand Canal, which was deepened and lengthened during his reign, is a lasting token of his sagacity and enlightened policy. An interesting monument of this dynasty, erected in 1345, is the gateway in the Kü-yung kwan (pass) of the Great Wall north of Peking. Upon the interior of this arch is cut a Buddhist charm in six different kinds of character—Mongolian, Chinese, Oigour, antique Devanagari, Niu-chih, and Tibetan.[2]

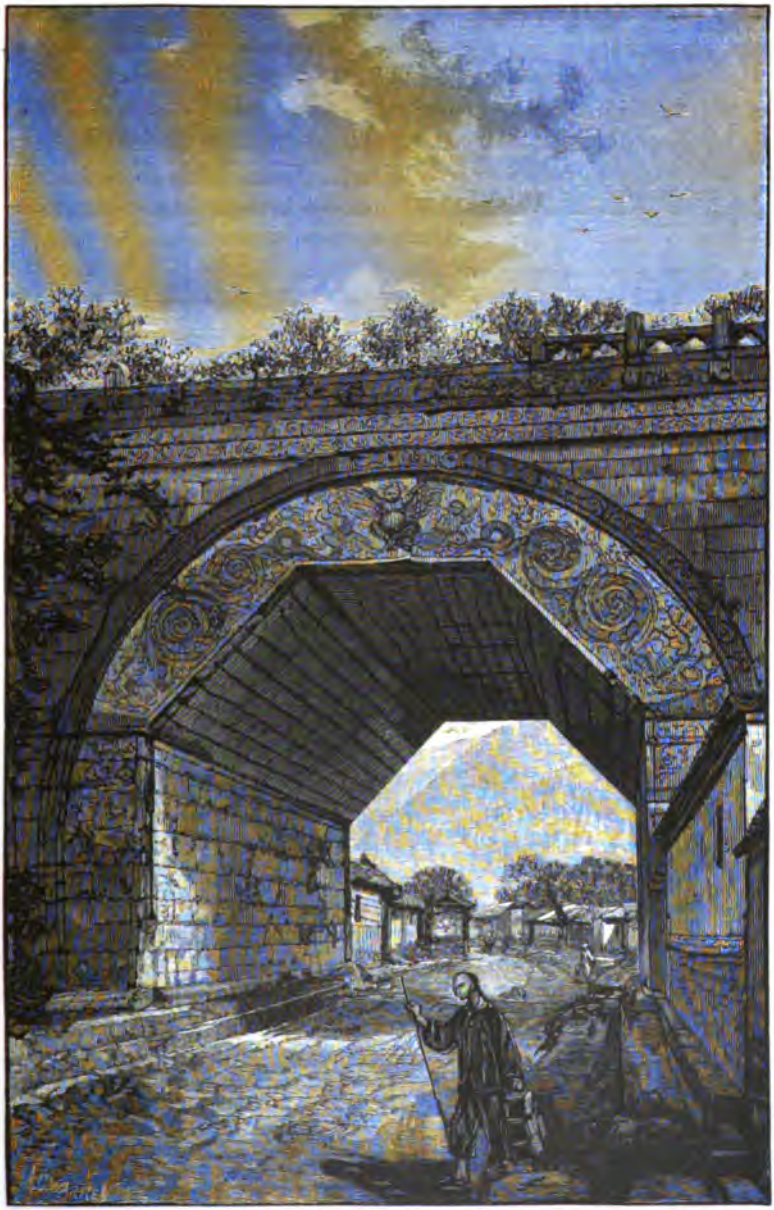
After the Grand Khan's death the Mongols retained their power under the reign of Ching-tsung, or Timur khan, a grandson of Kublai, and Wu-tsung, or Genesek khan,[3] a nephew of the former, but their successors met with opposition, or were destroyed by treachery. The offices were also filled with Mongols, without any regard to the former mode of conferring rank according to literary qualifications, and the native Chinese began to be thoroughly dissatisfied with a sway in which they had no part. The last and eleventh, named Ching-tsung, or Tohan-Timur, came to the throne at the age of thirteen, and gave himself up to pleasure, his eunuchs and ministers dividing the possessions and offices of the Chinese among themselves and their adherents. This conduct aroused his subjects, and Chu Yuen-chang, a plebeian by birth, and formerly a priest, raised the standard of

[1] See Rémusat, *Nouveaux Mélanges*, Tomes I., p. 427; II., pp. 64, 88, and 89–97, for a series of notices concerning the Mongol generals and history.

[2] Compare Wylie in the *R. A. Soc. Jour.*, Vol. V. (N.S.), p. 14; Fergusson, *Hist. Ind. and East. Architecture*, p. 708; Yule's *Polo*, I., pp. 28, 409.

[3] This should be Kaishan-kulluk khan, called *Kai-sang* in Chinese. Rémusat, *Nouveaux Mélanges*, Tome II., pp. 1–4.

Digitized by Google



GATEWAY OF THE YUEN DYNASTY, KŬ-YUNG KWAN, GREAT WALL.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

country. In his time, too, the Niu-chih, or Kin, whom Genghis had driven away in 1235, again became numerous and troublesome, and took possession of the northern frontiers. The first chieftain of the Manchus who attained celebrity was Tienming, who in 1618 published a manifesto of his designs against the house of Ming, in which he announced to Heaven the seven things he was bound to revenge. These consisted of petty oppressions upon persons passing the frontiers, assisting his enemies, violating the oath and treaty of peace entered into between the two rulers, and killing his envoys. The fierce nomad had already assumed the title of Emperor, and "vowed to celebrate the funeral of his father with the slaughter of two hundred thousand Chinese." Tienming overran the north-eastern parts of China, and committed unsparing cruelties upon the people of Liautung, but died in 1627, before he had satisfied his revenge, leaving it and his army to his son Tientsung.

The Chinese army fought bravely, though unsuccessfully, against the warlike Manchus, whose chief not only strove to subdue, but endeavored, by promises and largesses, to win the troops from their allegiance. The apparently audacious attempt of this small force to subdue the Chinese was assisted by numerous bodies of rebels, who, like wasps, sprung up in various parts of the country, the leaders of each asserting his claims to the throne, and all of them rendering their common country an easier prey to the invader. One of them, called Lí Tsz'-ching, attacked Peking, and the last Emperor Hwai-tsung, feeling that he had little to hope for after the loss of his capital, and had already estranged the affections of his subjects by his ill conduct, first stabbed his daughter and then hung himself, in 1643, and ended the house of Ming, after two hundred and seventy-six years. The usurper received the submission of most of the eastern provinces, but the Chinese general, Wu San-kwei, in command of the army on the north, refused to acknowledge him, and, making peace with the Manchus, invoked the aid of Tsung-teh in asserting the cause of the rightful claimant to the throne. This was willingly agreed to, and the united army marched to Peking and speedily entered the capital, which the rebel chief had left a heap of ruins when he took away his booty. The

Digitized by Google

Manchus now declared themselves the rulers of the Empire, but their chief dying, his son Shunchí, who at the age of six succeeded his father in 1644, is regarded as the first Emperor; his uncle, Aina-wang, ruled and reorganized the administration in his name.

XXVI. The Tsing,[1] *i.e.*, 'Pure dynasty.'—During the eighteen years he sat upon the throne Shunchí and his officers subdued most of the northern and central provinces, but the maritime regions of the south held out against the invaders, and one of the leaders, by means of his fleets, carried devastation along the whole coast. The spirit of resistance was in some parts crushed, and in others exasperated by an order for all Chinese to adopt as a sign of submission the Tartar mode of shaving the front of the head and braiding the hair in a long queue. Those who gave this order, as Davis remarks, must have felt themselves very strong before venturing so far upon the spirit of the conquered, and imposing an outward universal badge of surrender upon all classes of the people. "Many are the changes which may be made in despotic countries, without the notice or even the knowledge of the larger portion of the community; but an entire alteration in the national costume affects every individual equally, from the highest to the lowest, and is perhaps of all others the most open and degrading mark of conquest." ' This order was resisted by many, who chose to lose their heads rather than part with their hair, but the mandate was gradually enforced, and has now for about two centuries been one of the distinguishing marks of a Chinese, though to this day the natives of Fuhkien near the seaboard wear a kerchief around their head to conceal it. The inhabitants of this province and of Kwangtung held out the longest against the invaders, and a vivid account of their capture of Canton, November 26, 1650, where the adherents of the late dynasty had intrenched themselves, has been left us by Martini, an eye-witness. Some time after its subjugation a brave man, Ching Chí-lung, harassed them by his fleet; and his son, Ching

[1] For the origin of the Manchus see Klaproth, *Mémoires sur l'Asie*, Tome I., p. 441.

Digitized by Google

Ching-kung, or Koxinga, molested the coast to such a degree that the Emperor Kanghí, in 1665, ordered all the people to retire three leagues inland, in order to prevent this heroic man from reaching them. This command was generally obeyed, and affords an instance of the singular mixture of power and weakness seen in many parts of Chinese legislation; for it might be supposed that a government which could compel its maritime subjects to leave their houses and towns and go into the country at great loss, might have easily armed and equipped a fleet to have defended those towns and homes. Koxinga, finding himself unable to make any serious impression upon the stability of the new government, went to Formosa, drove the Dutch out of Zealandia, and made himself master of the island.[1]

Shunchí died in 1661 and was succeeded by his son Kanghí,[2] who was eight years old at his accession, and remained under guardians till he was fourteen, when he assumed the reins of government, and swayed the power vested in his hands with a prudence, vigor, and success that have rendered him more celebrated than almost any other Asiatic monarch. It was in 1661 that Louis XIV. had assumed the sovereignty of France at about the same age, and for fifty-four years the reigns of these two monarchs ran parallel. During Kanghí's unusually long reign of sixty-one years (the longest in Chinese annals, except Taimao of the Shang dynasty, B.C. 1637–1562), he extended his dominions to the borders of Kokand and Badakshan on the west, and to the confines of Tibet on the south-west, simplifying the administration and consolidating his power in every part of his vast dominions. To his regulations, perhaps, are mainly owing the unity and peace which the Empire has exhibited for more than a century, and which has produced the impression abroad of the unchangeableness of Chinese institutions and character. This may be ascribed, chiefly, to his indefatigable applica-

[1] Compare the interesting translation from a Chinese record of the capture of Fort Zealandia, by H. E. Hobson, *Journal of N. C. Br. R. A. Society*, No. XI., Art. I., 1876.

[2] Rémusat, *Nouveaux Mélanges*, Tome II., pp. 21–44; Bouvet, *Life of Kanghi*; Gutzlaff, *Life of Kanghi*.

Digitized by Google

tion to all affairs of State, to his judgment and penetration in the choice of officers, his economy in regard to himself and liberal magnificence in everything that tended to the good of his dominions, and his sincere desire to promote the happiness of his people by a steady and vigorous execution of the laws and a continual watchfulness over the conduct of his high officers. These qualities have perhaps been unduly extolled by his foreign friends and biographers, the Romish missionaries, and if their expressions are taken in their strictest sense, as we understand them, they do elevate him too high. He is to be compared not with Alfred or William III. of England, Louis IX. or Henry IV. of France, and other European kings, but with other Chinese and Asiatic princes, few of whom equal him. The principal events of his long reign are the conquest of the Eleuths, and subjugation of several tribes lying on the north and south of the Tien shan; an embassy across the Russian Possessions in 1713 to the khan of the Tourgouth Tartars, preparatory to their return to the Chinese territory; the settlement of the northern frontier between himself and the czar, of which Gerbillon has given a full account; the survey of the Empire by the Romish missionaries; and the publication of a great thesaurus of the language. In many things he showed himself liberal toward foreigners, and the country was thrown open to their commerce for many years.

His son Yungching succeeded in 1722, and is regarded by many natives as superior to his father. He endeavored to suppress Christianity and restore the ancient usages, which had somewhat fallen into desuetude during his father's sway, and generally seems to have held the sceptre to the benefit of his subjects. Yungching is regarded as an usurper, and is said to have changed the figure four to fourteen on the billet of nomination, himself being the fourteenth son, and the fourth being absent in Mongolia, where he was soon after arrested and imprisoned, and subsequently died in a palace near Peking; whether he was put to death or not is uncertain. Kienlung succeeded Yungching in 1736, and proved himself no unworthy descendant of his grandfather Kanghí; like him he had the singular fortune to reign sixty years, and for most of that

Digitized by Google

period in peace.[1] Some local insurrections disturbed the general tranquillity, principally among the aborigines in Formosa and Kweichau, and in an unprovoked attack upon Birmah his armies sustained a signal defeat and were obliged to retreat. The incursions of the Nipalese into Tibet induced the Dalai Lama to apply to him for assistance, and in doing so he contrived to establish a guardianship over the whole country, and place bodies of troops in all the important positions, so that in effect he annexed that vast region to his Empire, but continued the lamas in the internal administration.

During his long reign Kienlung exhausted the resources of his Empire by building useless edifices and keeping up large armies. He received embassies from the Russians, Dutch, and English, by which the character of the Chinese and the nature of their country became better known to western nations. These embassies greatly strengthened the impression on the side of the Chinese of their superiority to all other nations, for they looked upon them as acknowledgments on the part of the governments who sent them of their allegiance to the court of Peking. The presents were regarded as tribute, the ambassadors as deputies from their masters to acknowledge the supremacy of the Emperor, and the requests they made for trade as rather another form of receiving presents in return than a mutual arrangement for a trade equally beneficial to both. Kienlung abdicated the throne in favor of his fifth son and retired with the title of *Supreme Emperor*, while his son, Kiaking, had that of Emperor.

The character of this prince was dissolute and superstitious, and his reign of twenty-five years was much disturbed by secret combinations against the government and by insurrections[2] and

[1] His character and enthusiasm for literary pursuits merit, on the whole, the lines inscribed by the Roman Catholic missionaries beneath his portrait in the *Mémoires conc. les Chinois:*

Occupé sans relâche à touts les soins divers
D'un gouvernement qu'on admire,
Le plus grand potentat qui soit dans l'univers
Et le meilleur lettré qui soit dans son Empire.

[2] Among the most serious of these was the revolt of the Peh lien kiao. *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tome III., pp. 291–298, 353, 379, etc. In 1789 the ladrones infested the southern coasts. *Ib.*, Tome II., p. 492.

Digitized by Google

pirates in and about the Empire. A conspiracy against him broke out in the palace in 1813, where he was for a time in some danger, but was rescued by the courage of his guard and family; one of his sons, Mien-ning, was designated as his successor for his bravery on this occasion. A fleet of about six hundred piratical junks, under Ching Yih and Chang Pau, infested the coasts of Kwangtung for several years, and were at last put down in 1810 by the provincial government taking advantage of internal dissensions between the leaders. The principal scene of the exploits of this fleet was the estuary of the Pearl River, whose numerous harbors and channels afforded shelter and escape to their vessels when pursued by the imperialists, while the towns upon the islands were plundered and the inhabitants killed if they resisted. The internal government of this audacious band was ascertained by two Englishmen, Mr. Turner and Mr. Glasspoole, who at different times fell into their hands and were obliged to accompany them in their marauding expeditions. To so great a height did they proceed that the governor of Canton went to Macao to reside, and entered into some arrangements with the Portuguese for assistance in suppressing them. The piratical fleet was attacked and blockaded for ten days by the combined forces, but without much damage; there was little prospect of overcoming them had not rivalry between the two leaders gone so far as to result in a severe engagement and loss on both sides. The conquered pirate soon after made his peace with the government, and the victor shortly afterward followed the same course. The story of those disturbed times to this day affords a frequent subject for the tales of old people in that region, and the same waters are still infested by the "foam of the sea," as the Chinese term these freebooters.

The reign of Kiaking ended in 1820; by the Emperor's will his second son was appointed to succeed him, and took the style Taukwang. He exhibited more energy and justice than his father, and his efforts purified the administration by the personal supervision taken of their leading members. His reign was marked by many local insurrections and disasters in one quarter or another of his vast dominions. A rebellion in Tur-

Digitized by Google

kestan in 1828 was attended with great cruelty and treachery on the part of the Chinese, and its leader, Jehangír, was murdered, in violation of the most solemn promises. An insurrection in Formosa and a rising among the mountaineers of Kwangtung, in 1830–32, were put down more by money than by force, but as peace is both the end and evidence of good government in China, the authorities are not very particular how it is brought about.

The rapid increase of opium-smoking among his people led to many efforts to restrain this vice by prohibitions, penalties, executions, and other means, but all in vain. The Emperor's earnestness was stimulated by the death of his three eldest sons from its use, and the falling off of the revenue by smuggling the pernicious drug. In 1837–38 the collective opinion of the highest officials was taken after hearing their arguments for legalizing its importation; it was resolved to seize the dealers in it. The acts of Commissioner Lin resulted in the war with Great Britain and the opening of China to an extended intercourse with other nations. Defeated in his honest efforts to protect his people against their bane, the Emperor still fulfilled his treaty obligations, and died in 1850, just as the Tai-ping rebellion broke out.

His fourth son succeeded him under the style of Hienfung, but without his father's earnestness or vigor when the State required the highest qualities in its leader. The devastations of the rebels laid waste the southern half of the Empire, and their approach to Peking in 1853 was paralyzed by floods and want of supplies more than by the imperial troops. A second war with Great Britain, in 1858–60, completely broke down the seclusion of China, and at its conclusion an inglorious reign of eleven years ended at Jeh-ho in August, 1860. His only son succeeded to the throne at the age of five years, under the style of Tungchí; the government being under the control of two Empress-regents and Prince Kung, his uncle. During his reign of twelve years the vigor of the new authorities succeeded in completely quelling the Tai-ping rebellion, destroying the Mohammedan rising in Yunnan and Kansuh, and opening up diplomatic intercourse with the Treaty Powers. Just as the

Digitized by Google

Emperor began to exercise his authority, he died in January, 1875, without issue. The vacant "utensil" has been filled by the appointment of his cousin, a boy of four years, whose reign was styled Kwangsü. Affairs continue to be conducted by the same regency as before, now still more conversant with the new relations opening up with other lands. The real Empress-dowager, or *Tung Kung*, died April 18, 1881.

So far as can be judged from the imperfect data of native historians of former days, compared with the observations of foreigners at present, there is little doubt that this enormous population has been better governed by the Manchus than under the princes of the Ming dynasty; there has been more vigor in the administration of government and less palace favoritism and intrigue in the appointment of officers, more security of life and property from the exactions of local authorities, bands of robbers, or processes of law; in a word, the Manchu sway has well developed the industry and resources of the country, of which the population, loyalty, and content of the people are the best evidences.

The sovereigns of the Ming and Tsing dynasties, being more frequently mentioned in history than those of former princes, are here given, with the length of their reigns. For convenience of reference a table of the dynasties is appended, taken from the author's *Syllabic Dictionary of the Chinese Language*. In this list, compiled from a Chinese work (the *Digest of the Reigns of Emperors and Kings*), the Tsin and After Tsin dynasties are joined in one (No. 4), making a total of twenty-six dynasties.[1]

The whole number of acknowledged sovereigns in the twenty-six dynasties, according to the received Chinese chronology, from Yu the Great to Kwangsü, is 238, or 246 commencing with Fuh-hí; by including the names of some ursurpers and moribund claimants, the first number is increased to 250. From Yu the Great to the accession of Kwangsü (B.C. 2205 to A.D. 1875) is 4,080 years, which gives to each dynasty a duration of 157

[1] Compare the Chinese Chronological Tables by W. F. Mayers in *N. C. Br. R. A. S. Journal*, No. IV., Art. VIII., 1867.

Digitized by Google

Kwoh Hiao, or Reigning Title.	Miao Hiao, or Temple Title.	Began to Reign.	Length of Reign.	Contemporary Monarchs.
1. Hungwu....	Taitsu.....	1368	30	Tamerlane, Richard II., Robert II.
2. Kienwan....	Kienwan tí	1398	5	Manuel-Paleologus, Henry IV. of Eng.
3. Yungloh....	Taitsung.....	1403	22	James I., Henry V., Martin V.
4. Hunghi.....	Jintsung.....	1425	1	Amurath II., Henry VI., Charles VII.
5. Sinentih	Siuentsung.....	1426	10	Albert II., Cosmo de Medicis.
6. Chingtung ..	Yingtsung	1436	21	James II., Fred. III. of Aus., Nich. V.
7. Kingtai.....	Kingtí.....	1457	8	Mahomet II., Edward IV., Sixtus IV.
8. Chinghwa...	Hientsung	1465	23	James III., Ferd. and Isabella, Louis XI.
9. Hungchi....	Hiautsung	1488	18	Bajazet II., James IV., Henry VII.
10. Chingtih....	Wutsung.....	1506	16	James V., Henry VIII., Charles V.
11. Kiahtsing...	Shítsung.....	1522	45	Solyman II., Mary, Philip II., Henry II.
12. Lungking...	Muhtsung.....	1567	6	Selim II., Elizabeth, Gregory III.
13. Wanleih	Shintsung.....	1573	47	James I., Henry IV., Louis XIII.
14. Taichang ...	Kwangtsung ...	1620	1	Othman II., Philip IV., Gregory XV.
15. Tienkí.....	Hitsung	1621	7	Amurath IV., Charles I., Urban VIII.
16. Tsungching.	Hwaitsung.....	1628	16	Innocent X., Frederick the Great.
1. Shunchí [1] ...	Chang hwangti.	1644	18	Mahomet IV., Cromwell, Louis XIV.
2. Kanghi	Jin hwangtí ...	1662	61	Charles II., Clement IX., Sobiesky.
3. Yungching..	Hien hwangti..	1723	13	Mahomet V., George II., Louis XV.
4. Kienlung ...	Shun hwangtí..	1736	60	Osman III., George III., Clement XIV.
5. Kiaking	Jui hwangti....	1796	25	Selim III., Napoleon, Fred. Wm. II.
6. Taukwang ..	Ching hwangti .	1821	30	Mahmoud, George IV., Louis XVIII.
7. Hienfung ...	Hien hwangti ..	1851	11	Mahmoud, Victoria, Louis XVIII.
8. Tungchí	.....	1862	12	Napoleon III., Alexander II.
9. Kwangsû [2]..	.....	1875		

Dynasty.	Number of Sovereigns.	Began.	Ended.	Duration.
		B.C.	B.C.	
1. Hia	Seventeen, averaging 26 years to each monarch's reign	2205	1766	439
2. Shang	Twenty-eight, averaging 23 years.	1766	1122	644
3. Chau.....	Thirty-four, averaging 25½ years	1122	255	867
4. Tsin.....	Two, one reigning 37 years, the second 3 years.	255	206	40
5. Han.....	Fourteen, averaging 16½ years	206	A.D. 25	231
6. East Han...	Twelve, averaging 16½ years.	A.D. 25	221	196
7. After Han..	Two, one reigning 2, the other 41 years.....	221	264	43
8. Tsin.....	Four, averaging 14¼ years	265	322	57
9. East Tsin ..	Eleven, averaging about 9½ years	323	419	106
10. Sung	Eight, averaging 7⅞ years	420	478	58
11. Tsí.....	Five, averaging 4⅗ years	479	502	23
12. Liang.....	Four, one 48 years, and three together 7 years.	502	556	54
13. Chin	Five, averaging about 6⅕ years	557	589	32
14. Sui.....	Three, one reigning 16, another 12, and another 2 years.....	589	619	30
15. Tang	Twenty, averaging 14⅕ years	620	907	287
16. After Liang.	Two, one 8 and one 7 years	907	923	16
17. After Tang .	Four, averaging 3¼ years.....	923	936	13
18. After Tsin..	Two, one 7 and one 3 years	936	946	10
19. After Han..	Two, one 3 years, another 1 year	947	951	4
20. After Chau .	Three, averaging 3 years.....	951	960	9
21. Sung	Nine, averaging 18½ years.....	960	1127	167
22. South Sung.	Nine, averaging 17 years	1127	1280	153
23. Yuen.....	Nine, averaging 9⅞ years	1280	1368	88
24. Ming.....	Sixteen, averaging 17 years.....	1368	1644	276
25. Tsing	Eight up to 1875, averaging nearly 30 years ..	1644		

[1] Shunchí and the four following monarchs are named in Manchu, Chidzueldimbukhé, Elkhe taifin, Khowaligasoun tob, Abkai wekhiyekhe, and Saichunga fengchen, respectively.

[2] Kwangsû was born August 14, 1871.

Digitized by Google

years, and to each monarch an average of 17¼ years. From Wu wang's accession to Kwangsü is 2,997 years, giving an average of 125 years to a dynasty and 15½ to each sovereign. From the days of Menes in Egypt, B.C. 2719 to 331, Manetho reckons 31 dynasties and 378 kings, which is about 77 years to each family and 6⅓ to each reign. In England the 34 sovereigns from William I. to Victoria (A.D. 1066 to 1837) averaged 22⅔ years each; in Israel, the 23 kings from Saul to Zedekiah averaged 22 years during a monarchy of 507 years.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVIII.

RELIGION OF THE CHINESE.

As results must have their proportionate causes, one wishes to know what are the reasons for the remarkable duration of the Chinese people. Why have not their institutions fallen into decrepitude, and this race given place to others during the forty centuries it claims to have existed? Is it owing to the geographical isolation of the land, which has prevented other nations easily reaching it? Or have the language and literature unified and upheld the people whom they have taught? Or, lastly, is it a religious belief and the power of a ruling class working together which has brought about the security and freedom now seen in this thrifty, industrious, and practical people? Probably all these causes have conduced to this end, and our present object is to outline what seems to have been their mode of operation.

The position of their country has tended to separate them from other Asiatic races, even from very early times. It compelled them to work out their own institutions without any hints or modifying interference from abroad. They seem, in fact, to have had no neighbors of any importance until about the Christian era, up to which time they occupied chiefly the basin of the Yellow River, or the nine northern provinces as the Empire is now divided. Till about B.C. 220 feudal States covered this region, and their quarrels only ended by their subjection to Tsin Chí Hwangtí, or the 'Emperor First,' whose strong hand molded the people as he led them to value security and yield to just laws. He thus prepared the way for the Emperors Wăn tí (B.C. 179–156) and Wu tí (B.C. 140–86), of the Han dynasty, to consolidate, during their long reigns of twenty-nine and fifty-four years, their schemes of good government.

Digitized by Google

The four northern provinces all lie on the south-eastern slope of the vast plateau of Central Asia, the ascent to which is confined to a few passes, leading up five or six thousand feet through mountain defiles to the sterile, bleak plains of Gobi. This desolate region has always given subsistence to wandering nomads, and enough to enable traders to cross its grassy wastes. When their numbers increased they burst their borders in periodical raids, ravaging and weakening those whom they were too few to conquer and too ignorant to govern. The Chinese were too unwarlike to keep these tribes in subjection for long, and never themselves colonized the region, though the attempt to ward off its perpetual menace to their safety, by building the Great Wall to bar out their enemies, proves how they had learned to dread them. Yet this desert waste has proved a better defense for China against armies coming from the basin of the Tarim River than the lofty mountains on its west did to ancient Persia and modern Russia. It was easier and more inviting for the Scythians, Huns, Mongols, and Turks successively to push their arms westward, and China thereby remained intact, even when driven within her own borders.

The western frontiers, between the Kiayü Pass in Kansuh, at the extreme end of the Great Wall, leading across the country south to the island of Hainan, are too wild and rough to be densely inhabited or easily crossed, so that the Chinese have always been unmolested in that direction. To invade the eastern sides, now so exposed, the ancients had no fleets powerful enough to attack the Middle Kingdom; and it is only within the present century that armies carried by steam have threatened her seaboard.

The Chinese have, therefore, been shut out by their natural defenses from both the assaults and the trade of the dwellers in India, Tibet, and Central Asia, to that degree which would have materially modified their civilization. The external influences which have molded them have been wholly religious, acting through the persistent labors of Buddhist missionaries from India. These zealous men came and went in a ceaseless stream for ten centuries, joining the caravans entering the northwestern marts and ships trading at southern ports.

Digitized by Google

In addition to this geographical isolation, the language of the Chinese has tended still more to separate them intellectually from their fellow-men. It is not strange, indeed, that a symbolic form of writing should have arisen among them, for the Egyptians and Mexicans exhibit other fashions of ideographic writing, as well as its caprices and the difficulty of extending it. But its long-continued use by the Chinese is hardly less remarkable than the proof it gives of their independence of other people in mental and political relations. Outside nations did not care to study Chinese books through such a medium, and its possessors had, without intending it, shut themselves out of easy interchange of thought. This shows that they could not have had much acquaintance in early times with any alphabetic writing like Sanscrit or Assyrian, for it is almost certain that, in that case, they would soon have begun to alter their ideographs into syllables and letters as the Egyptians did; while the manifest advantages of the phonetic over the symbolic principle would have gradually insured its triumph. In that case, however, the rivalries of feudal States would have resulted, as in Europe, in the formation of different languages, and perhaps prevented the growth of a great Chinese race. In Japan and Corea the struggle between symbols and sounds has long existed, and two written languages, the Chinese and a derived demotic, are now used side by side in each of those kingdoms.

This isolation has had its disadvantageous effects on the people thus cut off from their fellows, but the results now seen could not otherwise have been attained. Their literary tendencies could never have attained the strength of an institution if they had been surrounded by more intelligent nations; nor would they have filled the land to such a degree if they had been forced to constantly defend themselves, or had imbibed the lust of conquest. Either of these conditions would probably have brought their own national life to a premature close.

Isolation, however, is merely a potential factor in this question. It does not by itself account for that life nor furnish the reasons for its uniformity and endurance. These must be sought for in the moral and social teachings of their sages and great rulers, who have been leaders and counsellors, and in the

Digitized by Google

character of the political institutions which have grown out of those teachings. A comparison of their national characteristics with those of other ancient and modern people shows four striking contrasts and deductions. The Chinese may be regarded as the only pagan nation which has maintained democratic habits under a purely despotic theory of government. This government has respected the rights of its subjects by placing them under the protection of law, with its sanctions and tribunals, and making the sovereign amenable in the popular mind for the continuance of his sway to the approval of a higher Power able to punish him. Lastly, it has prevented the domination of all feudal, hereditary, and priestly classes and interests by making the tenure of officers of government below the throne chiefly depend on their literary attainments. Not a trace of Judaistic, Assyrian, or Persian customs or dogmas appears in Chinese books in such definite form as to suggest a western origin. All is the indigenous outcome of native ideas and habits.

The real religious belief and practices of a heathen people are hard to describe intelligibly to those who have not lived among them. Men naturally exercise much freedom of thought in such matters, and feel the authority of their fellow-men over their minds irksome to bear; and though it is comparatively easy to depict their religious ceremonies and festivals, their real belief —that which constitutes their religion, their trust in danger and guide in doubt, their support in sorrow and hope for future reward—is not quickly examined nor easily described. The want of a well understood and acknowledged standard of doctrine, and the degree of latitude each one allows himself in his observance of rites or belief in dogmas, tends to confuse the inquirer; while his own diverse views, his imperfect knowledge, and misapprehension of the effect which this tenet or that ceremony has upon the heart of the worshipper, contribute still further to embarrass the subject. This, at least, is the case with the Chinese, and notwithstanding what has been written upon their religion, no one has very satisfactorily elucidated the true nature of their belief and the intent of their ritual. The reason is owing partly to the indefinite ideas of the people themselves upon the character of their ceremonies, and their consequent

Digitized by Google

inability to give a clear notion of them; partly also to the variety of observances found in distant parts of the country, and the discordant opinions entertained by those belonging to the same sect; so that what is seen in one district is sometimes utterly unknown in the next province, and the opinions of one man are laughed at by another.

Before proceeding with the present outline two negative features of Chinese religion deserve to be noticed, which distinguish it from the faith of most other heathen nations. These are the absence of human sacrifices and the non-deification of vice. The prevalence of human offerings in almost all ages of the world, and among nations of different degrees of civilization, not only widely separated in respect of situation and power, but flourishing in ages remote from each other, and having little or no mutual influence, has often been noticed. Human sacrifices are offered to this day in some parts of Asia, Africa, and Polynesia, which the extension of Christian instruction and power has, it is to be hoped, greatly reduced and almost accomplished the extinction of; but no clear record of the sacrificial immolation of man by his fellow, "offering the fruit of his body for the sin of his soul," has been found in Chinese annals in such a shape as to carry the conviction that it formed part of the belief or practice of the people—although the Scythian custom of burying the servants and horses of a deceased prince or chieftain with him was perhaps observed before the days of Confucius, and may have been occasionally done since his time. This feature, negative though it be, stands in strong contrast with the appalling destruction of human life for religious reasons, still existing among the tribes of Western and Central Africa, and recorded as having been sanctioned among Aztecs and Egyptians, Hindus and Carthaginians, and other ancient nations, not excepting Syrians and Jews, Greeks and Romans.

The other, and still more remarkable trait of Chinese idolatry, is that there is no deification of sensuality, which, in the name of religion, could shield and countenance those licentious rites and orgies that enervated the minds of worshippers and polluted their hearts in so many other pagan countries. No Aphrodite or Lakshmi occurs in the list of Chinese goddesses; no weeping

Digitized by Google

for Thammuz, no exposure in the temple of Mylitta or obscene rites of the Durga-puja, have ever been required or sanctioned by Chinese priests; no nautch girls as in Indian temples, or courtesans as at Corinth, are kept in their sacred buildings. Their speculations upon the dual powers of the *yin* and *yang* have never degenerated into the vile worship of the *linga* and *yoni* of the Hindus, or of Amun-kem, as pictured on the ruins of Thebes. Although they are a licentious people in word and deed, the Chinese have not endeavored to lead the votaries of pleasure, falsely so called, further down the road of ruin, by making its path lie through a temple and trying to sanctify its acts by putting them under the protection of a goddess. Nor does their mythology teem with disgusting relations of the amours of their deities; on the contrary, like the Romanists, they exalt and deify chastity and seclusion as a means of bringing the soul and body nearer to the highest excellence. Vice is, in a great degree, kept out of sight, as well as out of religion, and it may be safely said that no such significant sign as has been uncovered at Pompeii, with the inscription *Hic habitat felicitas*, was ever exhibited in a Chinese city.

To these traits of Chinese character may be added the preservative features of their regard for parents and superiors and their general peaceful industry. If there be any connection between the former of these virtues and the promise attached to the fifth commandment, "That thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee," then the long duration of the Chinese people and Empire is a stupendous monument of the good effects of even a partial obedience to the law of God, by those who only had it inscribed on their hearts and not written in their hands.

The last point in the Chinese polity which has had great influence in preserving it is the religious beliefs recognized by the people and rulers. There are three sects (*san kiao*), which are usually called Confucianism, Buddhism, and Taoism, or Rationalism; the first is a foreign term, and vaguely denotes the belief of the literati generally, including the State religion. These three sects do not interfere with each other, however, and a man may worship at a Buddhist shrine or join in a Taoist festival

Digitized by Google

while he accepts all the tenets of Confucius and worships him on State occasions; much as a lawyer in England may attend a Quaker meeting or the Governor of a State in America may be a Methodist minister. In China there is no generic term for religion in its usual sense. The word *kiao*, which means 'to teach,' or 'doctrines taught,' is applied to all sects and associations having a creed or ritual; the ancestral worship is never called a *kiao*, for everybody observes that at home just as much as he obeys his parents; it is a duty, not a sect.

No religious system has been found among the Chinese which taught the doctrine of atonement by the shedding of blood; an argument in favor of their antiquity. The State religion of China has had a remarkable history and antiquity, and, though modified somewhat during successive dynasties, has retained its main features during the past three thousand years. The simplicity and purity of this worship have attracted the notice of many foreigners, who have disagreed on various points as to its nature and origin. Their discussions have brought out sundry most interesting details respecting it; and whoever has visited the great Altar and Temple of Heaven at Peking, where the Emperor and his courtiers worship, must have been impressed with its simple grandeur. What was the precise idea connected with the words *tien*, 'heaven,' and *hwang tien*, 'imperial heaven,' as they were used in ancient times, is a very difficult point to determine; the worship rendered to them was probably of a mixed sort, the material heavens being taken as the most sublime manifestation of the power of their Maker, whose character was then less obscured and unknown than in after times, when it degenerated to Sabianism.

These discussions are not material to the present subject, and it is only needful to indicate the main results. The prime idea in this worship is that the Emperor is *Tien-tsz'*, or 'Son of Heaven,' the coördinate with Heaven and Earth, from whom he directly derives his right and power to rule on earth among mankind, the One Man who is their vicegerent and the third of the trinity (*san tsai*) of Heaven, Earth, and Man. With these ideas of his exalted position, he claims the homage of all his fellow-men. He cannot properly devolve on any other mortal

Digitized by Google

his functions of their high priest to offer the oblations on the altars of Heaven and Earth at Peking at the two solstices. He is not, therefore, a despot by mere power, as other rulers are, but is so in the ordinance of nature, and the basis of his authority is divine. He is accountable personally to his two superordinate powers for its record and result. If the people suffer from pestilence or famine he is at fault, and must atone by prayer, sacrifice, and reformation as a disobedient son. One defect in all human governments—a sense of responsibility on the part of rulers to the God who ordains the powers that be—has thus been partly met and supplied in China. It has really been a check, too, on their tyranny and extortion; for the very books which contain this State ritual intimate the amenability of the sovereign to the Powers who appointed him to rule, and hint that the people will rise to vindicate themselves. The officials, too, all springing from the people, and knowing their feelings, hesitate to provoke a wrath which has swept away thousands of their number.

The objects of State worship are chiefly things, although persons are also included. There are three grades of sacrifices, the *great*, *medium*, and *inferior*, the last collectively called *kiun sz'*, or 'the crowd of sacrifices.' The objects to which the great sacrifices are offered are only four, viz.: *tien*, the heavens or sky, called the imperial concave expanse; *ti*, the earth, likewise dignified with the appellation imperial; *tai miao*, or the great temple of ancestors, wherein the tablets of deceased monarchs of this dynasty are placed; and, lastly, the *shié tsih*, or gods of the land and grain, the special patrons of each dynasty. The tablets representing these four great objects are placed on an equality by the present monarchs, which is strong presumptive proof that by *tien* is now meant the material heavens.

The medium sacrifices are offered to nine objects: The sun, or "great light," the moon, or "night light," the manes of the emperors and kings of former dynasties, Confucius, the ancient patrons of agriculture and silk, the gods of heaven, earth, and the cyclic year. The first six have separate temples erected for their worship in Peking. The inferior herd of sacrifices are offered to the ancient patron of the healing art and the innu-

Digitized by Google

merable spirits of deceased philanthropists, eminent statesmen, martyrs to virtue, etc.; clouds, rain, wind, and thunder; the five celebrated mountains, four seas, and four rivers; famous hills, great watercourses, flags, triviæ, gods of cannon, gates, queen goddess of earth, the north pole, and many other things. The State religion has been so far corrupted from its ancient simplicity, as given in the *Shu King* and *Lí Kí*, as to include gods terrestrial and stellar, ghosts infernal, flags, and cannon, as well as idols and tablets, the effigies and mementoes of deified persons.

The personages who assist the Emperor in his worship of the four superior objects, and perform most of the ceremonies, belong to the Imperial Clan and the Board of Rites; but while they go through with the ceremony, he, as pontifex maximus, refuses to pay the same homage that he demands of all who approach him, and puts off these superior Powers with three kneelings and nine profound bows. When he is ill, or in his minority, these services are all forborne, for they cannot properly be done by a substitute. When he worships Heaven he wears robes of a blue color, in allusion to the sky; and when he worships earth he puts on yellow to represent the clay of this earthly clod; so, likewise, he wears red for the sun and pale white for the moon. The princes, nobles, and officers who assist are clad in their usual court dresses, but no priests or women are admitted. The worship of Yuenfí, the goddess of silk, is alone, as we have seen, conducted by the Empress and her court. The temple of the sun is east, and that of the moon west of the city, and at the equinoxes a regulus, or prince of the Imperial Clan, is commissioned to perform the requisite ceremonies and offer the appointed sacrifices.

The winter solstice is the great day of this State worship. The Emperor goes from his palace the evening before, drawn by an elephant in his state car and escorted by about two thousand grandees, princes, musicians, and attendants, down to the Temple of Heaven. The cortége passes out by the southern road, reaching the Ching Yang Gate, opened only for his Majesty's use, and through it goes on two miles to the *Tien Tan*. He first repairs to the *Chai Kung*, or 'Palace of Fasting,'

Digitized by Google

where he prepares himself by lonely meditation for his duty; "for the idea is that if there be not pious thoughts in his mind the spirits of the unseen will not come to the sacrifice." To assist him he looks at a copper statue, arrayed like a Taoist priest, whose mouth is covered by three fingers, denoting silence, while the other hand bears a tablet inscribed with 'Fast three days.' When the worship commences, and all the officiating attendants are in their places, the animals are killed, and as the odor of their burning flesh ascends to convey the sacrifice to the gods, the Emperor begins the rite, and is directed at every step by the masters of ceremonies. The worship to Heaven is at midnight, and the numerous poles around the great altar, and the fires in the furnaces shedding their glare over the marble terraces and richly dressed assembly, render this solemnity most striking.[1]

The hierophants in this worship of nature, so lauded by some infidels, are required to prepare themselves for the occasion by fasting, ablutions, change of garments, separation from their wives and pleasurable scenes, and from the dead; "for sickness and death defile, while banqueting dissipates the mind and unfits it for holding communion with the gods." The sacrifices consist of calves, hares, deer, sheep, or pigs, and the offerings of silks, grain, jade, etc. No garlands are placed on the victim when its life is taken, nor is the blood sprinkled on any particular spot or article. "The idea is that of a banquet; and when a sacrifice is performed to the supreme spirit of Heaven, the honor paid is believed by the Chinese to be increased by inviting other guests. The Emperors invite their ancestors to sit at the banquet with *Shangti*. A father is to be honored as heaven, and a mother as earth. In no way could more perfect reverence be shown than in placing a father's tablet on the altar with that of Shangtí." To these remarks of Dr. Edkins explanatory of this union of the objects worshipped, it may be added that the Emperors regard their predecessors of every dynasty as still invested with power in Hades, and therefore invoke their blessing and presence by sacrifice and prayers.

[1] Compare the frontispiece of Volume I.; also *ibid.*, p. 76.

Digitized by Google

The statutes annex penalties of fines or blows in various degrees of punishment in case of informality or neglect, but "in these penalties there is not the least allusion to any displeasure of the things or beings worshipped; there is nothing to be feared but man's wrath—nothing but a forfeiture or a fine." Heavier chastisement, however, awaits any of the common people or the unauthorized who should presume to state their wants to high Heaven or worship these objects of imperial adoration; strangulation or banishment, according to the demerits of the case, would be their retribution. The *ignobile vulgus* may worship stocks and stones in almost any form they please, but death awaits them if they attempt to join the Son of Heaven, the Vicegerent of Heaven and Earth, in his adorations to the supposed sources of his power.[1]

In his capacity of Vicegerent, High Priest, and Mediator between his subjects and the higher Powers, there are many points of similarity between the assumptions of the Emperor and of the Pope at Rome. The idea the Chinese have of heaven seems to be pantheistic, and in worshipping heaven, earth, and terrestrial gods they mean to include and propitiate all superior powers. If, as seems probable, the original idea of *Shangti*, as it can be imperfectly gleaned from early records, was that of a supreme Intelligence, it has since been lost. Of this worship, the effects in China upon the nation have been both positive and negative. One of the negative influences has been to dwarf the State hierarchy to a complete nullity—to prevent the growth of a class which could or did use the power of the monarchy to strengthen its own hold upon the people as their religious advisers, and on the government as a necessary aid to its efficiency.

The High Priests of China love power and adulation too well to share this worship with their subjects, and in engrossing it entirely they have escaped the political evils of a powerful hierarchy and the people the combined oppressions of a church

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., pp. 49–53. Dr. J. Edkins, *Religions of China*, Chap. II.; this chapter, on Imperial Worship, gives a good account of these ceremonies. Legge's *Notions of the Chinese concerning God and Spirits*, pp. 23–36, 41–43, for the forms of prayer used.

Digitized by Google

and State. We have seen that the popular rights which are so plainly taught in the classics have been inculcated and perpetuated by the common school education; we shall soon see, moreover, that the ancestral worship could not admit the interference of priest, altar, or sacrifice outside of the door-posts. Yet it is probable that all combined would have been too weak to resist the seductive influence of a hierarchy in some form, if it had not been that the Emperor himself would yield his own unapproachable grandeur to no man. Being everything in his own person, it is too much to expect that he is going to vacate or reduce his prerogative, surrender his right to make or degrade gods of every kind for his subjects to worship, weaken his own prestige, or mortify the pride of his fellow-worshippers, the high ministers of State. The chains of caste woven in India, the fetters of the Inquisition forged in Spain, the silly rites practised by the augurs in old Rome, or the horrid cruelties and vile worship once seen in Egypt and Syria—in each case done under the sanction of the State—have all been wanting along the Yellow River, and spread none of their evils to hamper the rule of law in China.

This State religion is, therefore, a splendid and wonderful pageant; but it can no more be called the religion of the Chinese than the teachings of Socrates could be termed the faith of the Greeks. It is, however, intimately connected with the *Ju kiao*, or 'Sect of the Learned,' commonly called Confucianists by foreigners, because all its members and priests are learned men who venerate the classical writings. It is somewhat inappropriate to designate the *Ju kiao* a religious sect, or regard it otherwise than as a comprehensive term for those who adopt the writings of Confucius and Chu Hí and their disciples. The word *ju* denotes one of the literati, and was first adopted A.D. 1150, as an appellation for those who followed the speculations of Chu Hí regarding the *tai kih*, or 'Great Extreme.' This author's comments on the classics and his metaphysical writings have had greater influence on his countrymen than those of any other person except Confucius and Mencius; whose works, indeed, are received according to his explanations.

The remarks of Confucius upon religious subjects were very

Digitized by Google

few; he never taught the duty of man to any higher power than the head of the State or family, though he supposed himself commissioned by heaven to restore the doctrine and usages of the ancient kings. He admitted that he did not understand much about the gods; that they were beyond and above the comprehension of man; and that the obligations of man lay rather in doing his duty to his relatives and society than in worshipping spirits unknown. "Not knowing even life," said he, "how can we know death?" and when his disciples asked him in his last illness whom he would sacrifice to, he said he had already worshipped. Chu Hí resolved the few and obscure references to Shangtí in the *Shu King* into pure materialism; making nature to begin with the *tai kih*, called *premier principe matériel* by the French, which operating upon itself resolved itself into the dual powers, the *yin* and *yang*.

Sir John Davis compares this production of the *yin* and *yang* to the masculo-feminine principle in the development of the mundane egg in the Egyptian cosmogony, and quotes an extract showing that the idea was entertained among the Hindus, and that the androgyn of Plato was only another form of this myth. The Chinese have also the notion of an egg, and that the *tai kih* was evolved from it, or acted like the process of hatching going on in it, though it may be that with them the introduction of the egg is more for the sake of illustration than as the form of the cause. Some of Chu Hí's philosophical notions have already been quoted in Volume I.[1] His system of materialism captivates his countrymen, for it is far more thoroughly worked out than any other, and allows scope for the vagaries of every individual who thinks he understands and can apply it to explain whatever phenomena come in his way. Heat and cold, light and darkness, fire and water, mind and matter, every agent, power, and substance, known or supposed, are regarded as endued with these principles, which thus form a simple solution for every question. The infinite changes in the universe, the multiform actions and reactions in nature, and all the varied consequences seen and

[1] Pp. 683 ff. Canon McClatchie has made a careful translation of Chapter XLIX. of his works, giving his views on cosmogony.

Digitized by Google

unseen are alike easily explained by this form of cause and effect, this ingenious theory of evolution. With regard to the existence of gods and spirits, Chu Hí affirmed that sufficient knowledge was not possessed to say positively that they existed, and he saw no difficulty in omitting the subject altogether—a species of agnosticism or indifferentism, therefore, which has become the creed of nearly the entire body of educated men in the Empire. His system is also silent respecting the immortality of the soul, as well as future rewards and punishments. Virtue is rewarded and vice is punished in the individual or in his posterity on earth; but of a separate state of existence he or his disciples do not speak.

In thus disposing of the existence of superior powers, the philosophers do not shut out all intelligent agencies, but have instituted a class of sages or pure-minded men of exalted intellects and simple hearts, who have been raised up from time to time by Heaven, Shangtí, or some other power, as instructors and examples to mankind, and who therefore deserve the reverence of their fellows. The office of these *shing jin*, 'perfect men' or saints, is to expound the will of heaven and earth; they did not so much speak their own thoughts as illustrate and settle the principles on which the world should be governed; they were men intuitively wise without instruction, while common people must learn to be wise. Of all the saints in the calendar of the *Ju kiao* Confucius is the chief; with him are reckoned the early kings, Yao and Shun, with King Wăn and his two sons King Wu and Duke Chau; but China has produced no one since the "most holy teacher of ancient times" whom his proud disciples are willing to regard his equal—Mencius being only a "number two saint." The deceased Emperors of the reigning dynasty are canonized as its efficient and divine patrons, but a new line of monarchs would serve them as they did their predecessors, by reducing them to mere spirits. The demonolatry of the learned has gradually become so incorporated with popular superstitions that there is now little practical distinction; every one is willing to worship whatever can promise relief or afford assistance. A student of the classical works naturally adopts their views on these points, without supposing that they militate

Digitized by Google

against worshipping his ancestors, joining the villagers in adoring the goddess of Mercy or any other Buddhistic idol, or calling in a Rationalist to write a charm. He also, on coming into office, expects to perform all the ex-officio religious ceremonies required of him, and add the worship of the Emperor to the rest.

Every magistrate is officially required to perform various idolatrous ceremonies at the temples. The objects of worship are numerous, including many others besides those forming the "herd of inferior sacrifices," and new deities are frequently made by the Emperor, on the same principle that new saints are canonized by the Pope. The worship of certain hills and rivers, and of spirits supposed to preside over particular cities and districts, has prevailed among the Chinese from ancient times, long before the rise of Rationalism or introduction of Buddhism, and is no doubt the origin of this official worship. In every city the *Ching-hwang miao*, *i.e.*, 'City and Moat Temple,' contains the tutelar divinity of the city called *Ching-hwang*, with other gods, and here on the solstices, equinoxes, new and full moons, etc., officers repair to sacrifice to it and to the gods of the land and grain. Over the door of the one in Canton is written, "Right and wrong, truth and falsehood are blended on earth, but all are most clearly distinguished in heaven." Capt. Loch thus describes the Ching-hwang miao at Shanghai, as it stood in 1842:

In the centre of a serpentine sheet of water there is a rocky island, and on it a large temple of two stories, fitted up for the accommodation of the wealthy public. Pillars of carved wood support the roof, fretted groups of uncouth figures fill up the narrow spaces, while movable lattices screen the occupants from the warmth of the noonday sun. Nothing can surpass the beauty and truth to nature of the most minutely carved flowers and insects prodigally scattered over every screen and cornice. This is the central and largest temple. A number of other light aerial-looking structures of the same form are perched upon the corners of artificial rocky precipices and upon odd little islands. Light and fanciful wooden bridges connect most of these islands, and are thrown across the arms of the serpentine water, so that each sequestered spot can be visited in turn. At a certain passage of the sun the main temple is shaded in front by a rocky eminence, the large masses of which are connected with great art and propriety of taste, but in shape and adjustment most studiously grotesque. Trees and flowers and tufts of grass are planted where art must have been taxed to the utmost to procure them a lodgment. In another part of the garden there is a miniature wood of dwarf trees, with a dell and waterfall; the leaves, fruit, and blossoms of the trees are proportionate to their size. Tortuous

Digitized by Google

pathways lead to the top of the artificial mountain, each turn formed with studied art to surprise and charm by offering at every point fresh views and objects. Flowers and creepers sprout out from crevices, trees hang over the jutting crags, small pavilions are seen from almost every vista, while grottoes and rocky recesses, shady bowers and labyrinths, are placed to entrap the unwary, each with an appropriate motto, one inviting the wanderer to repose, another offering a secluded retreat to the philosopher.[1]

Official Chinese records enumerate 1,560 temples dedicated to Confucius attached to the examination halls, the offerings presented in which are all eaten or used by the worshippers; there are, it is said, 62,606 pigs, rabbits, sheep, and deer, and 27,000 pieces of silk, annually offered upon their altars.[2] The municipal temple is not the only one where officers worship, but, like the common people, they bow before whatever they think can aid them in their business or estates. It has already been stated that the duty of Chinese officers extends to the securing of genial seasons by their good administration, and consequently if bad harvests ensue or epidemics rage the fault and removal of the calamity belong to them. The expedients they resort to are both ludicrous and melancholy. In 1835 the prefect of Canton, on occasion of a distressing drought of eight months, issued the following invitation, which would have better befitted a chieftain of the Sechuanas:

Pan, acting prefect of Kwangchau, issues this inviting summons. Since for a long time there has been no rain, and the prospects of drought continue, and supplications are unanswered, my heart is scorched with grief. In the whole province of Kwangtung, are there no extraordinary persons who can force the dragon to send rain? Be it known to you, all ye soldiers and people, that if there be any one, whether of this or any other province, priest or such like, who can by any craft or arts bring down abundance of rain, I respectfully request him to ascend the altar [of the dragon], and sincerely and reverently pray. And after the rain has fallen, I will liberally reward him with money and tablets to make known his merits.

This invitation called forth a Buddhist priest as a "rain maker," and the prefect erected an altar for him before his own office, upon which the man, armed with cymbal and wand, for three

[1] *Events in China*, p. 47. London, 1843.

[2] During the Han dynasty (A.D. 59) wine was drunk and sacrifices made to Confucius in the study halls. The victim offered was a dog. Biot, *Essai sur l'Instruction en Chine*, p. 168.

Digitized by Google

days vainly repeated his incantations from morning to night, exposed bareheaded to the hot sun, the butt of the jeering crowd. The prefect himself was lampooned by the people for his folly, the following quatrain being pasted under a copy of his invitation:

> Kwangchau's great protector, the magnate Pan,
> Always acting without regard to reason;
> Now prays for rain, and getting no reply,
> Forthwith seeks for aid to force the dragon.

The unsuccessful efforts of the priest did not render the calamity less grievous, and their urgent necessities led the people to resort to every expedient to force their gods to send rain. The authorities forbade the slaughter of animals, or in other words a fast was proclaimed, to keep the hot winds out of the city, the southern gate was shut, and all classes flocked to the temples. It was estimated that on one day twenty thousand persons went to a celebrated shrine of the goddess of Mercy, among whom were the Governor and Prefect and their suites, who all left their sedans and walked with the multitude. The Governor, as a last expedient, the day before rain came, intimated his intention of liberating all prisoners not charged with capital offences. As soon as the rain fell the people presented thank-offerings, and the southern gate of the city was opened, accompanied by an odd ceremony of burning off the tail of a live sow while the animal was held in a basket.

The officers and literati, though acknowledging the folly of these observances, and even ridiculing the worship of senseless blocks, still join in it. As an example of this: In 1867 a severe drought near Peking called forth a suggestion from a censor that if a white tiger were sacrificed by the Emperor to the dragon the rain would be liberated; for "it was his powerful enemies which kept the rain-god from acting." Wănsiang was deputed to perform the rite; rain came not many days later. The officer laughed, indeed, at the fancy, yet could not disenthrall himself from some degree of belief in its efficacy. Devotees sometimes become irritated against their gods, and resort to summary means to force them to hear their petitions.

Digitized by Google

It is said that the Governor in Canton, having repeatedly ascended in a time of drought to the temple of the god of Rain, dressed in his burdensome robes, through the heat of a tropical sun, on one of his visits said: "The god supposes I am lying when I beseech his aid; for how can he know, seated in his cool niche in the temple, that the ground is parched and the sky hot?" Whereupon he ordered his attendants to put a rope around his neck and haul his godship out of doors, that he might see and feel the state of the weather for himself. After his excellency had become cooled in the temple the idol was reinstated in its shrine, and the good effects of this treatment were deemed to be fully proved by the copious showers which soon after fell. The Emperor himself on such occasions resorts to unusual sacrifices, and sends his relatives and courtiers almost daily to various temples to pray and burn incense. Imperial patronage of the popular superstitions is sought after by the officers in one way and another to please the people, but it does not involve much outlay of funds.[1] One common mode is to solicit his Majesty for an inscription to be placed over the doorway of a temple, or memorialize him to confer a higher title upon the god. On occasion of a victory over the rebels in Kwangtung in 1822, the shrine of a neighboring deity, supposed to have assisted in obtaining it, received a new title commemorative of the event, and a temple was built for him at the expense of government.

The combined effect of the State religion and classical writings, notwithstanding their atheism and coldness, has had some effect in keeping the people out of the swinish ditch of pollution. It is one of their prime tenets that human nature is originally virtuous, and becomes corrupt entirely by bad precept and example. This is taught children from their earliest years, and officers refer repeatedly to it in their exhortations to obedience; its necessary results of happiness, if carried out, are illustrated by trite comparisons drawn from common life and general ex-

[1] Klaproth cites (among many) an instance of the manner in which favorable anguries are regarded and made use of by officials. *Mémoires sur l'Asie*, Tome I., p. 459.

Digitized by Google

perience. The Chinese seldom refer to the vengeance of the gods or future punishment as motives for reform, but to the well-being of individuals and good order of society in this world. Examples of this type of human perfection, fully developed, are constantly set before the people in Confucius and the ancient kings he delineates. The classical tenets require duties that carry their own arguments in their obedience, as well as afford matter of thought, while the standard books of Buddhists and Rationalists, where they do not reiterate the same obligations, are mostly filled with unprofitable speculations or solemn nonsense. Consequently the priests of those sects had only the superstitious fear of the people to work upon where reason was at fault, and so could not take the whole man captive; for his reason accorded with the teaching of the classics as far as they went, and only took up with divination and supplication of higher powers where their instructions ceased. The government, therefore, being composed chiefly of such people, educated to venerate pure reason, could not be induced to take the initiatory step of patronizing a religion of such an uncertain character, and confessedly inferior in its moral sanctions to what they already possessed. The current has, more or less, always set this way, and the two other sects have been tolerated when they did not interfere with government. It is too true that the instructions of Confucius and his school are imperfect and erroneous when measured by the standard of revelation. and the people can never emerge from selfish atheism and silly superstition as long as they have nothing better; but the vagaries of the Buddhists neither satisfy the reason nor reprove vice, nor does their celibate idleness benefit society. If the former be bad, the latter is worse.

The sect of the Rationalists, or *Tao kia*, is derived from Lau-tsz', or Lau-kiun. According to the legends he was born B.C. 604, in Ku, a hamlet in the kingdom of Tsu, supposed to lie in Luh-yeh hien, in the province of Honan. His birth was fifty-four years before Confucius. The story is that he had white hair and eyebrows at his birth, and was carried in the womb eighty years, whence he was called Lau-tsz', the 'old boy,' and Lau-kiun, the 'venerable prince.' Nothing reliable about his

Digitized by Google

early life has come down to us, but, as was the case with Hesiod, his disciples have enveloped his actions and character in a nimbus of wonders. M. Julien has given a translation of their history, dated about A.D. 350, in his version of the *Tao Teh King*. Pauthier says he was appointed librarian by the Emperor, and diligently applied himself to the study of the ancient books, becoming acquainted with all the rites and histories of former times. During his life he is reported to have journeyed westward, but the extent and duration of his travel are not recorded, and even its occurrence is reasonably doubted. De Guignes says he went to Ta Tsin, a country under the rule of the Romans, but he forgets that the Romans had not then even conquered Italy; some suppose Ta Tsin to be Judea. His only extant work, the *Tao Teh King*, or 'Canons of Reason and Virtue,'[1] was written in Ling-pao, in Honan, before his travels, but whether the teachings contained in it are entirely his own or were derived from hints imported from India or Persia cannot be decided. It contains only five thousand three hundred and twenty characters, divided into eighty-one short chapters; the text of one edition is said to have been found in a tomb A.D. 574. It has been translated by Julien, Chalmers, and von Strauss. A parallel has been suggested between the sects of the Rationalists of China, the Zoroastrians of Persia, Essenes of Judea, Gnostics of the primitive church, and the eremites of the Thebaid, but a common source for their similarity—the desire of their members, after the sect had become recognized, to live without labor on the credulity of their fellowmen—explains most of the likeness, without supposing that their tenets were derived from each other.

The teachings of Lau-tsz' are not unlike those of Zeno; both recommend retirement and contemplation as the most effectual means of purifying the spiritual part of our nature, annihilating the passions, and finally returning to the bosom of *Tao*. His teachings on the highest subjects of human thought have furnished his countrymen ample materials for the most diverse

[1] Perhaps this may be rendered as the *Logos* of Plato, as near as any dogma can be compared to it.

Digitized by Google

views on these same themes according to their various fancies. In his striving after the infinite he can only describe *Tao* by what it is not and delineate *Teh* as an ideal virtue which no man can attain to. In Chapter XXI. they are thus blended: "The visible forms of the highest *Teh* only proceed from *Tao;* and *Tao* is a thing impalpable, indefinite. How indefinite! How impalpable! And [yet] therein are forms indefinite, impalpable! and [yet] therein are things (or entities). Profound and indistinct too, and [yet] therein are essences. These essences are profoundly real, and therein faith is found. From of old till now its name has never passed away. It gives issue to all existences at their beginnings. How [then] can I know the manner of the beginning of all existences? I know it by this [*Tao*]."

Such teachings are susceptible of almost any explanation, and Julien's extracts from the commentaries give one some idea of their diversity, though probably much well worth reading still lies buried in their pages. The names of sixty-four commentators are known, of whom three were reigning emperors; and their explanations have given their countrymen very doubtful guidance through this mystic book. To those who can compare its aspirations and dogmas with the speculations of Greek and Roman writers, the teachings of the Zendavesta, and the declarations of the Bible, the work of Lau-tsz' becomes of immense interest. His countrymen, however, to whom these great writers were all unknown, have looked upon this system of philosophy rather as the reveries of a wise man than the instructions of a practical thinker.

In Chapter I. he tries to define *tao*. It is reaching after the unknown. "The *tao* which can be expressed is not the eternal *tao;* the name which can be named is not the eternal name. The Nameless [being] is before heaven and earth; when named it is the mother of all things. Therefore, to be constantly passionless is to be able to see its spiritual essence; and to be constantly passionate is to see the forms (or limits) [of *tao*]. These two conditions are alike but have different names; they can both be called a mystery. The more it is examined into the more mysterious it is seen to be. It is the gate of all spiritual

Digitized by Google

things." By the phrases "constantly passionless" and "constantly passionate" are denoted *non-existence* and *existence*, according to the commentators.

In Chapter LXV. there is a similar striving to describe *teh*. "In olden times those who practised *tao* did not do so to enlighten the people, but rather to render them simple-minded. When the people have too much worldly wisdom it makes them hard to govern. He who encourages this worldly wisdom in the government of a State is its misfortune; as he who governs without it is its blessing. To know aright these two things is to have a model State; and the constant exhibition of this ideal is what I call sublime *teh*. This sublime virtue [*teh*] is profound, is incommensurable, is opposed to time-serving plans. If followed it will bring about a state of general accord."

In Chapter XX. the lonely cynic seems to utter his sad cry at the little progress of his teachings. "All men are full of ambitious desires, like those greedy for the stalled ox, or the high delights of spring time. I alone am calm; my affections have not yet germinated; I am as a new-born babe which has not yet smiled on its mother. I am forlorn as one who has no home. All others have and to spare, I alone am like one who has lost all. In mind I am like a fool; I am all in a maze. Common people are bright enough; I am enveloped in darkness. Common people are sagacious enough; I am in gloom and confusion. I toss about as if on the sea; I float to and fro as if I was never to rest. Others have something they can do; I alone am good for nothing, and just like a lout. I am entirely solitary, differing from other men in that I glory in my Mother who nurses [all beings]."

The main object kept in view throughout this work is the inculcation of personal virtue, and Lau-tsz' founds his argument for its practice in the fitness of things, as he tries to prove by referring all the manifestations and laws of mind and matter to the unknown factor *tao*. In Chapter IV. he attempts to embody his struggling thoughts in these few words describing *tao*: "*Tao* is a void; still if one uses it, it seems to be inexhaustible. How profound it is! It seems like the patriarch of all things.

Digitized by Google

It softens sharp things, loosens tangled things, harmonizes brilliant things, and assimilates itself to worldly things of the dust. How tranquil it is! It seems to endure perpetually. I know not whose son it is. It seems so have existed before *Ti* [or Shangti]."

Such utterances as these carry neither comfort nor repentance to the sorrowing, sinful heart of man; he cannot go to such an abnegation for guidance or relief in his troubles, and therefore the maxims of Lau-tsz' have fallen on callous hearts. Another extract, Chapter XLIX., is, however, more practical; it is not the only one which furnishes instruction of the highest character. "The perfect man [*shing jin*] has no immutable sentiments of his own, [for] he makes the mind of mankind his own. He who is good, I would meet with goodness; and he who is not good, I would still also meet with goodness; [for] *teh* is goodness. He who is sincere I would meet with sincerity; and he who is insincere, I would still also meet with sincerity; [for] *teh* is sincerity. The perfect man dwells in the world calm and reserved, his soul preserving the same regard for all mankind. The people all turn their eyes and ears toward him, and he regards them alike as his children."

In order to better understand these aphorisms, they need to be read with the help of the various commentaries; these furnish us with a better estimate of their value than any other guides. Foreign writers necessarily judge such a work by their own higher standard; as does M. Pauthier when he remarks upon the last extract: "La sagesse humaine ne peut être jamais exprimé des paroles plus saintes et plus profondes." He compares Lau-tsz' to his own countryman Rousseau—and these two had a good deal in common in their sad reflections upon the evils of the times. In another place the French author goes even farther, and regards the vague expressions in Chapter XLII., which show their derivation from the *Yih King*—viz.: "Tao produced one, one produced two, two produced three, and three produced all things"—as the Asiatic form of the doctrine and procession of the Holy Trinity and the biblical idea of the reunion of good men with their Maker!

One more extract from the *Tao-teh King* will fill the space at

Digitized by Google

command; but sententious apothegms like these in Chapter XXXIII. are scattered throughout the book: "He who knows men is wise; [while] he who knows himself is perspicacious. He who conquers men is strong; [while] he who conquers himself is mighty. He who knows when he has enough is rich. He who acts energetically has a fixed purpose in view. He who does not miss his nature endures; [while] he who deceases and still is not extinct has immortality"—referring, as the commentators agree, to the life of the soul after it leaves the body.

Such a work can hardly be accurately translated into a European language; a perusal of all the translations enables one to appreciate this point. Some translators have missed the point of Lau-tsz's teachings by not attending to the parallelisms running through them, where one limb of the couplet illustrates and defines the other. In conclusion, it is still true that the absence of clear exposition on the duties of men in their marital, parental, and fraternal relations; the want of all instruction upon their obligations and rights as members of the family, the village, and the State; and lastly, his silence upon the voice of conscience and the effects of sin upon the soul of man, show that Lau-tsz' was more an ascetic than a philanthropist, more of a metaphysician than a humanitarian.

Mr. Samuel Johnson has indicated the high position this ancient relic holds in his examination of its tenets. "Nothing like this book exists in Chinese literature; nothing, so far as yet known, so lofty, so vital, so restful at the roots of strength; in structure as wonderful as in spirit; the fixed syllabic characters, formed for visible and definite meaning, here compacted into terse aphorisms of a mystical and universal wisdom, so subtly translated out of their ordinary spheres to meet a demand for spiritual expression that it is confessedly almost impossible to render them with certainty into another tongue. . . . It is a book of wonderful ethical and spiritual simplicity, and deals neither in speculative cosmogony nor in popular superstitions. It is not the speculations of an old philosopher, as Chalmers calls it. It is in practical earnest, and speaks from the heart and to the heart. Its religion resembles that of Fenelon or

Digitized by Google

Thomas à Kempis, combined with a perceptive rationalism of which they were not masters." [1]

The historian Sz'ma Tsien relates an interview which Confucius had with Lau-tsz' when, at the age of thirty-four (B.C. 517), he visited the capital to study the ritual of State worship, at which time the latter would be eighty-seven years old. Dr. Legge gives an account of this meeting, which it is to be wished could be better known, for the account is not very certain. The legendary history amplifies it largely, but in no extravagant style, and quite consonant to their different characters. Sz'ma Tsien makes the elder lecture the younger philosopher in the following style: "Those whom you talk about are dead, and their bones mouldered to dust; only their words remain. When the superior man gets his time, he mounts aloft; but when the time is against him, he moves as if his feet were entangled. I have heard that a good merchant, though he has rich treasures deeply stored, appears as if he were poor; and that the superior man whose virtue is complete is yet to outward seeming stupid. Put away your proud air and many desires, your insinuating habit and wild will. They are of no advantage to you. This is all which I have to tell you." To the reply of Confucius, that he had sought to get *tao* for twenty years, and had sought in vain, Lau-tsz' rejoined in a strain worthy of Diogenes, which Chwang-tsz' thus reports: "If tao could be offered to men, there is no one who would not willingly offer it to his prince; if it could be presented to men, everybody would like to present it to his parents; if it could be announced to men, each man would gladly announce it to his brothers; if it could be handed down to men, who would not wish to transmit it to his chil-

[1] Johnson, *Oriental Religions: China*, pp. 862–865. Pauthier, *La Chine*, pp. 110–120. Chalmers, *Speculations of the Old Philosopher*. Julien, *La Livre de la Voie et de la Vertu*, Paris, 1859; this last is the most scholarly work on this classic which has yet appeared. R. von Reinhold, *Der Weg zur Tugend*, Leipzig, 1870. Victor von Strauss, *Laò-Tsi's Taò Tè King, Aus dem Chinesischen ins Deutsche übersetzt*, Leipzig, 1870. See also Doolittle's *Vocabulary*, Vol. II., Part III. T. Watters, *Lao-Tzû, A Study in Chinese Philosophy*, Hongkong, 1870. Dr. Edkins in *Transactions of N. C. Br. R. A. S.* for 1855, Art. IV. F. H. Balfour, *Chuang Tzze's Divine Classic of Nan-hua*, Shanghai, 1881.

Digitized by Google

dren? Why then can you not obtain it? This is the reason. You are incapable of giving it an asylum in your heart."[1]

Such speculative teachings and waiting till the times were good were not adapted to entertain or benefit, and Confucius understood his countrymen and his own duty much better than Lau-tsz', in doing all he could by precept and practice to show them the excellence of what he believed to be right. The divergence of these two great men sprung from the differences in human minds in all climes and ages. The teachings of the *Tao-teh King*, however, are no more responsible for the subsequent organization and vagaries of the sect of Taoists down to the present time than the New Testament is for the legends of monkery or the absurdities of mystics. M. Bazin has endeavored to show that in China there has been, from early times, a progression from magic to mythology, from mythology to philosophy; and when philosophy began to crystallize into parties and take on an organized discipline of sects, during and after the Han dynasty down to the Tang, they took up the old native mythology against the newly arrived Buddhists, and imitated them by adopting Lau-tsz' as their god and his book as the foundation of their tenets. Previous to this period he was one among the philosophers of the Flowery Land; in time he has been taken as the founder of a system of religion. If the Gnostics had deified Lucretius and taken his poem as their text-book the cases would have been similar.

The earliest writers on Taoism are Chwang-tsz' and Lih-tsz' in the fourth century, who have been amplified by their followers. It is, as Wylie well observes, difficult to educe a well-ordered system out of the motley chaos of modern Taoism, where the pursuit of immortality, the conquest of the passions, a search after the philosopher's stone, the use of amulets, and the observance of fasts and sacrifices before gods, are mixed with the profound speculations of recluses upon abstruse questions of theology and philosophy. Some of the later writers of the Taoists discourse upon Reason in a way that would please Brownson and befit the pages of the *Dial*. The teachings of

[1] Legge, *Chinese Classics*, I. Proleg., p. 65. Julien, *Tao-te King*, Int., p. xxvii.

Digitized by Google

the ancient and modern transcendentalists are alike destitute of common sense and unproductive of good to their fellow-men. Dr. Medhurst quotes one of the Chinese Rationalists, who praises reason in a marvellous rhapsody:

> What is there superior to heaven, and from which heaven and earth sprang? Nay, what is there superior to space and which moves in space? The great Tao is the parent of space, and space is the parent of heaven and earth, and heaven and earth produced men and things. . . . The venerable prince (Reason) arose prior to the great original, standing at the commencement of the mighty wonderful, and floating in the ocean of deep obscurity. He is spontaneous and self-existing, produced before the beginning of emptiness, commencing prior to uncaused existences, pervading all heaven and earth, whose beginning and end no years can circumscribe.

The sectarians suppose their founder was merely an impersonation of this power, and that he whom they call "the venerable prince, the origin of primary matter, the root of heaven and earth, the occupier of infinite space, the commencement of all things, farther back than the utmost stretch of numbers can reach," created the universe. They notice three incarnations of him during the present epoch, one during the Shang dynasty, B.C. 1407, one at the time of Confucius, and a third about A.D. 623, when a man of Shansí reported having seen an old man who called himself Lau-kiun. Only the priests of this sect are regarded as its members; they live in temples and small communities with their families, cultivating the ground attached to the establishment, and thus perpetuate their body; many lead a wandering life, and derive a precarious livelihood from the sale of charms and medical nostrums. They shave the sides of the head and coil the rest of the hair in a tuft upon the crown, thrusting a pin through it, and are readily recognized by their slate-colored robes. They study astrology and profess to have dealings with spirits, their books containing a great variety of stories of priests who have done wonderful acts by their help. The *Pastimes of the Study*, already noticed, is one of these books, and Davis introduces a pleasant story of Chwang and his wife from another work.[1] They long endeavored to find a beverage

[1] *The Chinese*, Vol. II., pp. 113–128. Wylie, *Notes on Chinese Literature*, p. 173. Giles, *Strange Stories from a Chinese Studio*, 1880.

Digitized by Google

which would insure immortality, and during the Tang dynasty the Emperor and highest officers were carried away with their delusions. The title of 'Heavenly Doctors' was conferred on them, and a superb temple erected to Lau-tsz' in Chang-an, containing his statue; examinations were ordered in A.D. 674, to be held in the *Tao-teh King*, and some of the priests reached the highest honors in the State. Since that time they have degenerated, and are now looked upon as ignorant cheats and designing jugglers, who are quite as willing to use their magical powers to injure their enemies as to help those who seek their aid.

In some places the votaries of Tao, on the third day of the third month, go barefoot over ignited charcoal; and on the anniversary of the birthday of the High Emperor of the Sombre Heavens, "they assemble together before the temple of this imaginary being, and having made a great fire, about fifteen or twenty feet in diameter, go over it barefoot, preceded by the priests, and bearing the gods in their arms. The previous ceremonies consist in chanting prayers, ringing bells, sprinkling holy water, blowing horns, and brandishing swords in and over the flames in order to subdue the demon, after which they dart through the devouring element. They firmly assert that if they possess a sincere mind they will not be injured by the fire, but both priests and people get miserably burnt on these occasions.[1] Yet such is the delusion, and the idea the people entertain of the benefit of these services, that they willingly contribute large sums to provide the sacrifices and pay the performers."[2]

This ceremony is practised in Fuhkien and at Batavia, but is not very general, for the Chinese are the antipodes of the Hindus in their endurance and relish for sufferings and austerities in the hope of obtaining future happiness. The Rationalists worship a great variety of idols, among which *Yuh-hwang Shangtí* is one of the highest; their pantheon also includes genii, devils, inferior spirits, and numberless other objects of

[1] Compare Escayrac de Lauture, *Mémoire sur la Chine, Religion*, pp. 87, 102. Yule's *Marco Polo*, Vol. I., p. 286. Also Bode's *Bokhara*, p. 271, for a similar practice among the Moslems.

[2] Medhurst's *China, its State and Prospects*, p. 168.

Digitized by Google

worship. The *Siu Shin Kí*, or 'Records of Researches concerning the Gods,' contains an account of the birth of the deity whose anniversary is celebrated as above described.

There was once a childless emperor called Tsingtih ('Pure Virtue'), who summoned a large company of Tao priests to perform their rites in his behalf, and continued their worship half a year. The Empress Pao Yueh-kwang ('Gemmeous Moonlight') on a night dreamed that she saw the great and eminent Lau-kiun, together with a large number of superior deities, riding in parti-colored carriages with vast resplendent banners and shaded by bright variegated umbrellas. Here was the great founder Lau-kiun sitting in a dragon carriage, and holding in his arms a young infant, whose body was entirely covered with pores, from which unbounded splendors issued, illuminating the hall of the palace with every precious color. Banners and canopies preceded Lau-kiun as he came floating along. Then was the heart of the Empress elated with joy, and reverently kneeling before him, said: "At present our monarch has no male descendants, and I wishfully beseech you for this child that he may become the sovereign of our hearts and altars. Prostrate I look up to your merciful kindness, earnestly imploring thee to commiserate and grant my request." He at once answered, "It is my special desire to present the boy to you;" whereupon she thankfully received him, and immediately returned from the pursuit of the dream, and found herself advanced a year in pregnancy. When the birth took place a resplendent light poured forth from the child's body, which filled the whole country with brilliant glare. His entire countenance was super-eminently beautiful, so that none became weary in beholding him. When in childhood he possessed the clearest intelligence and compassion, and taking the possessions of the country and the funds of the treasury, he distributed them to the poor and afflicted, the widowers and widows, orphans and childless, the houseless and sick, halt, deaf, blind, and lame.

Not long after this the demise of his father took place, and he succeeded to the government; but reflecting on the instability of life, he resigned his throne and its cares to his ministers, and repaired to the hills of Puming, where he gave himself up to meditation, and being perfected in merit ascended to heaven to enjoy eternal life. He however descended to earth again eight hundred times, and became the companion of the common people to instruct them in his doctrines. After that he made eight hundred more journeys, engaging in medical practice and successfully curing the people; and then another similar series, in which he exercised universal benevolence in hades and earth, expounded all abstract doctrines, elucidated the spiritual literature, magnanimously promulged the renovating ethics, gave glory to the widely spread merits of the gods, assisted the nation, and saved the people. During another eight hundred descents he exhibited patient suffering; though men took his life, yet he parted with his flesh and blood. After this he became the first of the verified golden genii, and was denominated the pure and immaculate one, self-existing, of highest intelligence.[1]

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. X., p. 306.

Digitized by Google

These figments are evidently a reproduction of the vagaries of Hindu theosophists, and not the teachings of Lau-tsz', but they amuse his followers, to whom his own abstruse utterances are quite unintelligible. The learned Confucianists laugh at their fables, but are still so much the prey of fears as to be often duped by them, and follow even when sure of being deceived.

The organization of the Rationalists is a regular hierarchy. It is under the supervision of the government, which holds the chiefs responsible for the general conduct and teachings of the members. The head resides at Lung-hu Shan in Kiangsí, where is a large establishment, resorted to by many votaries, and gathering in a large revenue from their offerings. When he dies a piece of iron is cast into a well near by, and when it floats the name of his successor is found to be written on it. By their extravagant professions and pretences the priests of this sect maintain their influence over a laity as ignorant and credulous as themselves; their power to delude will only wane with the progress of truth and Christianity. The full history of the authors, divinities, vagaries, and varied fortunes of the Rationalists has yet to be written; when this is done it will illustrate the question King David asked six centuries before Lau-tsz' lived: Who will show us any good? And when his followers are able to say, Lord, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us, they will know why he failed to find *La Voie et la Vertu*.[1]

The most popular religious sect is that of the followers of Fuh, Fo, Făt, Hwut, or Fuh-tu, as it is called in different dialects in imitation of the Hindu word *Bodh*, or Truth;[2] this name is sometimes confounded with that of Fuh-hí, one of the early rulers in Chinese history. Their tenets had been promulged in Central Asia for centuries, and were known in Western China, but during the long period of disorders previous to the Han dy-

[1] Douglas, *Taouism*, London, 1879; this is by far the most readable account of it. Edkins, *Journal of Shanghai Scien. and Lit. Soc.*, No. III., 1859, pp. 309–314. Mayers, *No. Ch. Br. Roy. As. Soc.*, Vol. VI., 1870, pp. 31–44. Bazin, *Recherches sur l'origine, l'histoire, et la constitution des ordres religieux dans l'empire Chinois*, Paris, 1856, p. 70. Johnson, *Oriental Religions: China*, Part V., pp. 859–904. Nevius, *China and the Chinese*, Chap. IX., New York, 1869. Dr. W. A. P. Martin, *The Chinese*, p. 97, etc.

[2] Hardy enumerates fifty-six modes of writing the name. *Manual*, p. 354.

Digitized by Google

nasty they found little favor. In A.D. 65 the Emperor Ming tí sent an embassy to India, in consequence—as the Chinese historians say—of having dreamed that he saw the image of a foreign god. The embassy returned in A.D. 67, bringing with it some teachers of the faith to Lohyang. One cannot tell whether it was sent at first at the suggestion of the Rationalists, to seek for a wise man said to have appeared there, or whether, according to others, it arose from the remarkable expression of Confucius, already quoted, "The people of the west have sages [or a sage]." It may have been that this mission was excited by some indistinct tidings of the advent and death of Christ, though there is no trace of such a rumor having reached the land of Sinim. At that epoch they might have heard of or met the Apostles in their first tours through the Roman Empire and Syria.

The incidents in the life of Buddha have been enveloped in so much legendary narrative by his followers in India that the Chinese have placed his birth much too early—B.C. 1027—while the true date is B.C. 623 according to the best authorities; but when his actual mortal life is regarded as one in a series of incarnations, no surprise need be felt at these discrepancies. He was the son of Suddhodana, king of Kapilavastu, a city and country near Nipal, subject to the king of Magadha, now a part of Bahar. His mother, Maya, or Maha-maya déva, died ten days after his birth, which, according to the legends, was accomplished without pain and accompanied by amazing wonders. His name was Siddharta, or the 'Establisher,' until he became a Buddha, *i.e.*, him by whom truth is known. The name Gotama, or Samona-Godam, is a patronymic better known in Siam than China, where another family or clan name, Sakya-muni, is more common. At the age of fifteen he was made heir-apparent; at seventeen he was married to Yashodara, a Brahmin maiden of the Sakya clan, and his son Rahula was born the next year. At twenty-five he determined to become a recluse, and left his prospects and his father's court for an abode in the forest beyond Kapilavastu, in solitary spots "trying various methods to attain mental satisfaction, but in vain." After five years of this ascetic life "he came to the perception of the true condition and wants of man-

Digitized by Google

kind," and began his ministry of forty-nine years. He was now a *Buddha*, which is described as "entering into a state of reverie, emitting a bright light and reflecting on the four modes of truth."

He began his preaching at Benares by discourses on the four truths, which was termed the revolving of the wheel of the law. He formed his first disciples into a community, to whom he gave their rules, and when the number increased to fifty-six he sent them over the land to give instruction in the *four miseries*, and carry out the system by which all his disciples were taught they could attain final happiness in nirvana. This system, which exists in full strength to this day, is founded on monastic vows for the individual, living in spiritual communities for the disciples, voluntary poverty and universal preaching. Sakya-muni infused such energy into his followers that in a few years India was covered with their communities; and he developed rules for instruction, employment, punishment, and promotion, which have served ever since. His own life, after his visit to his father in the year 586, when thirty-seven years old, was passed mostly in delivering the *sutras*, or laws, thirty-five discourses in all; these are reverenced by all Buddhists, and copies are held to have moral and hygienic effects on those who do so, and bring good luck to the family and the State. As Sakya-muni lived long enough to see and correct the dangers of his system, at his death, in the year 543, he was able to confer much of his authority on his two chief disciples, Ananda and Kashiapa, and thus hand down the organization to posterity.

The few facts here stated respecting this remarkable man are selected from Hardy's *Manual of Buddhism*, where is given a good digest of the Hindu writers respecting their sage. One thing impresses the reader of this work as a peculiarity of Sakya-muni's teaching, and standing in strong contrast to the Brahminic system that followed it: it is the manner in which he has weakened and almost destroyed the power of the unseen world and of spiritual beings as agencies of restraint upon the heart of man, and of assistance in seeking after good. By his system of good works and self-denials, his followers are brought into such close relationship with the whole creation of invisible beings,

Digitized by Google

into whose presence and fellowship they can enter by their own efforts and mediation, that the moral sanctions of a Supreme Ruler and God over all are neutralized, and the sense of sin in the human conscience done away with. Its removal is put under the control of the soul, and the degree of happiness and power attained in the future world depends on the individual—so many prayers, alms, austerities, and obediences result in so much honor, power, and enjoyment in the coming infinite. The past infinite is also made part of the conscious present, and moral fate worked like physical attraction, innumerable causes producing retributive results for rewards or for punishments. In such a theology, salvation by faith is rendered impossible, and sacrifice for sin by way of atonement useless. In this feature the ancient worship of China and the teachings of Confucius rise superior to Buddhism, and leave the soul of man more open to moral law.

The personal life and character of Buddha presents a wonderful exhibition of virtues, and one is not disposed to weigh the testimony of their reality as drawn out in Hardy's *Manual* so carefully as to neutralize the effect; but the glowing picture of his good actions for his fellow-men given in the fervid lines of Arnold's *Light of Asia*, takes one quite into the realm of fable, engendering the wish that the Confucian Analects and their matter-of-fact details could have been imitated by the disciples of Siddharta. In regard to both these great teachers, Confucius and Buddha, however, one may gladly adopt Dean Stanley's remark, "that it is difficult for those who believe the permanent elements of the Jewish and Christian religion to be universal and divine, not to hail these corresponding forms of truth or goodness elsewhere, or to recognize that the mere appearance of such saintlike or godlike characters in other parts of the earth, if not preparing the way for a greater manifestation, illustrates that manifestation by showing how mighty has been the witness borne to it even under circumstances of such discouragement, and even with effects inadequate to their grandeur."

Buddhist priests are more numerous in China than the Tao sz', and they obtained influence more rapidly over the people. Their demonolatry allows the incorporation of the deities and spirits of

Digitized by Google

other religions, and goes even further, in permitting the priests to worship the gods of other pantheons, so that they could adapt themselves to the popular superstitions of the countries they went to, and ingraft all the foreign divinities into their calendar they saw fit. The Emperors at various times have, moreover, shown great devotion to their ceremonies and doctrines, and have built costly temples, and supported more priests than ever Jezebel did; but the teachings of Confucius and Mencius were too well understood among the people to be uprooted or overridden. The complete separation of the State religion from the worship of the common people accounts for the remarkable freedom of belief on religious topics. Mohammedanism and Buddhism, Taoist ceremonies and Lama temples, are all tolerated in a certain way, but none of them have in the least interfered with the State religion and the autocracy of the monarch as the Son of Heaven. They are, as every one knows, all essentially idolatrous, and the coming struggle between these various manifestations of error and the revealed truths and requirements of the Bible has only begun to cast its shadow over the land. The more subtile conflict, too, between the preaching of the Cross and faith alone in its sacrifice for salvation, and reliance on good works, and priestly interference in every form, has not yet begun at all.

The power of Buddhism in China has been owing chiefly to its ability and offer to supply the lack of certainty in the popular notions respecting a future state, and the nature of the gods who govern man and creation. Confucius uttered no speculations about those unseen things, and ancestral worship confined itself to a belief in the presence of the loved ones, who were ready to accept the homage of their children. That longing of the soul to know something of the life beyond the grave was measurably supplied by the teachings of Sakya-muni and his disciples, and, as was the case with Confucius, was illustrated and enforced by the earnest, virtuous life of their founder. Though the sect did not receive the imperial sanction till about A.D. 65, these teachings must have gradually grown familiar during the previous age. The conflict of opinions which ere long arose between the definite practical maxims of the Confucian moralists, and the vague speculations, well-defined good works

Digitized by Google

and hopeful though unproved promises of future well-being, set forth by the Hindu missionaries, has continued ever since. It is an instructive chapter in human experience, and affords another illustration of the impossibility of man's answering Job's great question, "But how shall man be just with God?" The early sages opened no outlook into the blank future, offered no hopes of life, love, happiness, or reunion of the friends gone before, and their disciples necessarily fell back into helpless fatalism. Buddhism said, Keep my ten commandments, live a life of celibacy and contemplation, pray, fast, and give alms, and according to your works you will become pure, and be rewarded in the serene nirvana to which all life tends. But the Buddhist priesthood had no system of schools to teach their peculiar tenets, and, as there is only one set of books taught in the common schools, the elevating precepts of the sages brought forth their proper fruit in the tender mind. Poverty, idleness, and vows made by parents in the day of adversity to dedicate a son or a daughter to the life-long service of Buddha, still supply that priesthood with most of its members. The majority are unable to understand their own theological literature, and far more is known about its peculiar tenets in Europe than among the mass of the Chinese. The Confucianist, in his pride of office and learning, may ridicule their mummeries, but in his hour of weakness, pain, and death he turns to them for help, for he has nowhere else to go. Both are ignorant of the life and light revealed in the gospels, and cry out, "Who will show us any good?"

If the mythology of Buddhism was trivial and jejune, as we judge it after comparing it with the beautiful imagery and art of Greece and Egypt, it brought in nothing that was licentious in its rites or cruel in its sacrifices. Coming from India, where worship of the gods involved the prostitution of women, the adoration of the lingam, and the sacrifice of human beings, Buddhism was remarkably free from all revolting features. If it had nothing to offer the Chinese higher in morals or more exalted or true in its conception of the universe or its Maker, it did not sanction impurity or murder, or elevate such atrocities above the reach of law by making them sacred to the gods.

Digitized by Google

This last outrage of the Prince of Darkness on the soul of man, so common in Western Asia, has never been known or accepted to any great extent in the Middle Kingdom.

But, while it is true that Buddhism gave them a system of precepts and observances that set before them just laws and high motives for right actions, and proportionate rewards for the good works it enjoined, it could not furnish the highest standards, sanctions, and inducements for holy living. On becoming a part of the people, the Buddhists soon entered into their religious life as acknowledged teachers. They adapted their own tenets to the national mythology, took its gods and gave it theirs, acted as mediators and interpreters between men and gods, the living and the dead, and shaped popular belief on all these mysteries. The well-organized hierarchy numbered its members by myriads, and yet history records no successful attempts on its part to usurp political power, or place the priest above the laws. This tendency was always checked by the literati, who really had in the classics a higher standard of ethical philosophy than the Buddhists, and would not be driven from their position by imperial orders, nor coaxed by specious arguments to yield their ground. Constant discussions on these points have served to keep alive a spirit of inquiry and rivalry, and preserve both from stagnation. Though Buddhism, in its vagaries and will-worship, gave them nothing better than husks, put hypocrisy in place of devotion, taught its own dogmas instead of truth, and left its devotees with no sense of sin against any law, yet its salutary influence on the national life of China cannot be denied.

The worship of ancestors and of good and bad spirits supposed to pervade and rule this world was perfectly compatible with the reception of Buddhism; thus its priests gradually became the high priests of the popular superstition, and have since remained so. They first ingratiated themselves by making their services useful in the indigenous ritual, and were afterwards looked upon as necessary for its execution. They propagated their doctrines principally by books and tracts, rather than by collecting schools or disciples in their temples; the quiet, indolent life they led, apparently absorbed in books and worship, and yet not altogether

Digitized by Google

estranged from the world, likewise held out charms to some people. China is full of temples, in most of which Buddhist priests are found, but it is not quite the true inference to suppose that all the buildings were erected or the priests hired, because the people wish to do reverence to Buddha. It is impossible to state the proportion in which Buddhist temples are found; there are one hundred and twenty-four in Canton alone, containing idols of every name and attribute, in most of which they live and act as the assistants of whoever comes to worship.

The tenets of Buddhism require a renunciation of the world and the observance of austerities to overcome evil passions and fit its disciples for future happiness.[1] A vow of celibacy is taken, the priests dwelling together for mutual assistance in attaining perfection by worship of Buddha and calling upon his name. They shave the entire head as a token of purity, but not the whole body, as the ancient Egyptian priests did; they profess to eat no animal food, wear no skin or woollen garments, and get their living by begging, by the alms of worshippers, and the cultivation of the grounds of the temple. Much of their support is derived from the sale of incense sticks, gilt paper, and candles, and from fees for services at funerals. In the great monasteries, like the Hai-chwang sz' at Canton, the priests perform the whole service; but in other temples they contrive to gain a livelihood, and many of those better situated derive a large portion of their income from entertaining strangers of wealth and distinction. The sale of charms, the profits of theatrical exhibitions, the fees paid by neighborhoods for feeding hungry ghosts on All-Souls' day, and other incidental services performed for the living or the dead, also furnish resources. Their largest monasteries contain extensive libraries, and a portion of the fraternity are well acquainted with letters, though most of them are ignorant even of their own books. Their moral character, as a class, is on a par with their countrymen, and many of them are respectable, intelligent, and sober-minded persons, who seem

[1] Rémusat terms these tenets not inaptly "a mixture of pantheism, rationalism, and idolatry." In Hardy (*Manual*, p. 212) we find that the *Wú-ling sz'* to five hundred Lo-hán is to honor five hundred rahats. In India this number seems to stand for *all*.

Digitized by Google

to be sincerely desirous of making themselves better, if possible, by their religious observances.

The liturgy is in Sanscrit transliterated in Chinese characters, with which priest and people are alike unacquainted, nor are there now any bilingual glossaries or dictionaries to explain the words. Dr. Milne, speaking of the use of unknown tongues in liturgies, remarks: "There is something to be said in favor of those Christians who believe in the magic powers of foreign words, and who think a prayer either more acceptable to the Deity, or more suited to common edification, because the people do not generally understand it. They are not singular in this belief. Some of the Jews had the same opinion; the followers of Buddha and Mohammed all cherish the same sentiment. From the chair of his holiness at Rome, and eastward through all Asia to the mountain retreats of the Yama-bus in Japan, this opinion is espoused. The bloody Druids of ancient Europe, the gymnosophists of India, the Mohammedan hatib, the Buddhists of China, the talapoins of Siam, and the bonzes of Japan, the Romish clergy, the vartabeds of the Armenian church, and the priests of the Abyssinian and Greek communions, all entertain the notion that the mysteries of religion will be the more revered the less they are understood, and the devotions of the people (performed by proxy) the more welcome in heaven for being dressed in the garb of a foreign tongue. Thus the synagogue and mosque, the pagan temple and Christian church, seem all to agree in ascribing marvellous efficacy to the sounds of an unknown language; and, as they have Jews and Mohammedans, Abyssinians and pagans, on their side, those Christians who plead for the use of an unknown tongue in the services of religion have certainly the majority. That Scripture, reason, and common sense should happen to be on the other side is indeed a misfortune for them, but there is no help for it."[1]

The following canon for exterminating misfortune is extracted from the Buddhist liturgy, but it is as unintelligible to the Chinese as it will be to the English reader. While repeating it

[1] *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Art. BUDDHISM. *Indochinese Gleaner*, Vol. III., p. 141. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. IX., p. 640. Yule's *Marco Polo*, Vol. II., p. 260, and passim.

Digitized by Google

the priest strikes upon a sounding board called *muh yü*, or 'wooden fish,' shaped somewhat like a skull, in order to mark the time of his monotonous chant:

Nan-mo O-mí-to po-yé, to-ta-kia to-yé, to-tí-yé-ta O-mí-lí-to po-kwän, O-mí-lí-to, sieh-tan-po-kwän, O-mí-lí-to, kwän-kia-lan-tí O-mí-lí-to, kwän-kia-lan-tí; kia-mí-ní kia-kia-na, chih-to-kia-lí po-po-ho.

Similar invocations, with the name *O-mí-to*[1] *Fuh* (Amida Buddha), are repeated thousands and myriads of times to attain perfection, affording a good illustration of the propriety of our Saviour's direction, "When ye pray, use not vain repetitions as the heathen do; for they think they shall be heard for their much speaking." A plate in one Buddhistic work contains five thousand and forty-eight open dots, arranged in the shape of a pear; each dot to be filled up when the name of Buddha has been repeated a hundred or a thousand times, and then the paper to be burned to pass into the other world to the credit of the devotee. The Buddhists have a system of merits and demerits, of which Sir John Davis remarks that "this method of *keeping a score* with heaven is as foolish and dangerous a system of morality as that of penances and indulgences in the Romish church." In this Buddhist scale of actions, to repair a road, make a bridge, or dig a well, ranks as ten; to cure a disease, or give enough ground for a grave, as thirty; to set on foot some useful scheme ranks still higher. On the other hand, to reprove another unjustly counts as three on the debtor side; to level a tomb, as fifty; to dig up a corpse, as one hundred; to cut off a man's male heirs, as two hundred, and so on. This notion of keeping accounts with heaven prevails among all classes of the Chinese, and the score is usually settled about the end of the year by fasting and doing charitable acts, such as making a piece of road, repairing a temple, or distributing food, to prove their repentance and benefit the world. Festival days are chosen by devout people to distribute alms to the poor, and on such occasions troops of beggars cluster about their doors, holding clap-dishes in their outstretched hands, while the donor stands

[1] *O-mi-to* is derived from *amirta*, or 'deathless.' Hardy, *Manual*, p. 355.

Digitized by Google

behind the half-opened door dealing out rice to the clamorous crowd which he dares not trust inside.

Considering how few restraints this religion imposes on the evil propensities of the human heart, and how easily it provides for the expiation of crimes, it is surprising that it has not had as great success among the Chinese as among the Tibetans, Birmese, and Siamese. The thorough education in the reasonable teachings of the classics, and the want of filial duty shown by celibates to their parents in leaving them to take care of themselves, have had their effects in maintaining the purer but heartless moralities of the Confucianists. The priests have always had the better judgment of the people against them, and being shut out by their profession from entering into society as companions or equals, and regarded as servants to be sent for when their services were wanted, they can neither get nor maintain that influence over their countrymen which would enable them to form a party or a powerful sect. One of the officers in the reign of Chingtih of the Ming dynasty, Wang Yang-ning, who addressed a remonstrance to his sovereign against sending an embassy to India to fetch thence Buddhist books and priests, relies for his chief argument on a comparison between the precepts and tendency of that faith and the higher doctrines of the classics, proving to his own satisfaction that the latter contained all the good there was in the former, without its nonsense and evil. The opposition to Buddhism on the part of the literati has been in fact a controversy between common sense (imperfectly enlightened indeed) and superstitious fear; the first inclines the person to look at the subject with reference to the principles and practical results of the system, as exhibited in the writings and lives of its followers, while, not having themselves anything to look forward to beyond the grave, they are still led to entertain some of its dogmas, because there may be something in them after all, and they have themselves nothing better. The result is, as Dr. Morrison has observed, "Buddhism in China is decried by the learned, laughed at by the profligate, yet followed by all."

The paraphrase and commentary on the seventh of Kanghi's maxims against strange religions present a singular anomaly;

Digitized by Google

for while the Emperor Yungching in the paraphrase decries Buddhism and Rationalism, and exalts the "orthodox doctrine," as he terms the teachings of the classics, he was himself a daily worshipper of Buddhist idols served by the lamas. He inveighs against selling poor children to the priests in no measured terms, and shows the inutility and folly of repeating the books or reciting the unintelligible charms written by the priests, where the person never thought of performing what was good. He speaks against the promiscuous assemblage of men and women at the temples, which leads to unseemly acts, and joins in with another of his own class, who remarked, in reference to a festival, that "most of the worshippers are women, who like these worshipping days, because it gives them an opportunity to see and be seen in their fine clothes; and most of the men who go there, go to amuse themselves and look at the women." "The sum of the whole is, these dissolute priests of Buddha are lazy; they will neither labor in the fields nor traffic in the markets, and being without food and clothing, they set to work and invent means of deceiving people." But though this upholder of the good old way well exhibits the follies of these idolatrous sects, he has nothing better to present his countrymen than "the two living divinities placed in the family," nothing to lead their thoughts beyond this world. His best advice and consolation for their troubled and wearied souls is, "Seek not for happiness beyond your own sphere; perform not an action beyond the bounds of reason; attend solely to your own duty; then you will receive the protection of the gods."[1]

The instructions of Sakya-muni himself have now become so interwoven in the additions, ritualism, and errors of his followers during the ages since he died, that he is charged with many things which he probably never taught. Unlike the founders of Islamism and Zoroastrianism, his personal influence and identity have been lost amid the fables which have enveloped his acts, and the diversities of worship and doctrine baffle all explanation. When the patriarchs and missionaries of the sect

[1] Milne's *Sacred Edict*, pp. 133–143. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. I., p. 207; Vol. II., p. 265.

Digitized by Google

began to increase in Central Asia and China after the embassy of Ming tí, they were obliged to defend, explain, and develop their tenets against the Chinese literati, and also commend them to the observance of the people. In the former region their conquests were complete, and the Mongols still hold to the Buddhist faith as completely as the European nations did to popery until the Reformation. The history of Chinese Buddhism down to the present day has not yet been fully examined, but much has been done within the past few years by Julien, Beal, Edkins, Watters, Neumann, Kœppen, and others to make it known. Translations from Chinese Buddhistic travellers and moralists have brought out many obscure opinions and unexpected events in this branch of religious thought and missionary work, during a period of the world's history hitherto quite unknown to Europeans.[1]

The mutual forbearance exhibited by the different sects in China is owing a good deal to apathy, for where there is nothing to reach there is little to stimulate to effort. The government tolerates no denomination suspected of interfering with its own influence, and as none of the sects have any State patronage, none of them hold any power to wield for persecution, and the people soon tire of petty annoyances and unavailing invectives. The Buddhist priesthood is perpetuated mostly by the children given by parents who have vowed to do so in their distress, and by others purchased for serving in large monasteries. Persons occasionally enter late in life, weary with the vexations of the world; Mr. Milne was acquainted with one who had two sons when he took the vows upon him, but gave himself no care as to what had become of them. The only education which most of the acolytes receive consists in memorizing the prayers in the liturgy and reading the canonical works. A few fraternities have tutors from whom they receive instruction.

Nunneries also exist, most of them under the patronage of

[1] See Alabaster's *Wheel of the Law*, pp. 228–241, for a well-digested Life of Buddha, from the Siamese. Beal's *Romantic History of Buddha*, and *Catena of Buddhist Scriptures*. Edkins, *Chinese Buddhism*, Chaps. I to VI., gives a good *résumé* of the early progress of the faith. G. Bühler, *Three New Edicts of Asoka*, London (Trübner).

Digitized by Google

the Holy Mother, Queen of Heaven. The priests advocate their establishment as a good means of working upon the feelings of the more susceptible part of society, to whom they themselves cannot get admittance. The succession among the "sisters" is kept up by purchase and by self-consecration; the feet of children bought young are not bandaged. The novice is not admitted to full orders till she is sixteen, though previous to this she adopts the garb of the sisterhood; the only difference consists in the front part of the head being shaved and the hair plaited in a queue, while nuns shave the whole. It is not easy to distinguish monks from nuns as they walk the streets, for both have natural feet, wear clumsy shoes, long stockings drawn over full trousers, short jackets, and bald pates. Like her sister in Romish countries, the Chinese nun, when her head has been shaved—the opposite of taking the veil, though the hair of both is sacrificed—is required to live a life of devotion and mortification, eat vegetables, care nothing for the world, and think only of her eternal canonization, keeping herself busy with the service of the temple. "Daily exercises are to be conducted by her; the furniture of the small sanctuary that forms a part of the convent must be looked after and kept clean and orderly; those women or men who come to worship at the altars, and seek guidance and comfort, must be cared for and assisted. When there is leisure the sick and the poor are to be visited; and all who have placed themselves under her special direction and spiritual instruction have a strong claim upon her regard. That she may live the life of seclusion and self-denial, she must vow perpetual virginity. The thought of marriage should never enter her head, and the society of men must be shunned. On her death she will be swallowed up in nihility!" In Fuhchau the nunneries were all summarily abolished nearly fifty years ago by an officer who learned the dissolute lives of their inmates. They have not since been reopened for their residence, though this official provided husbands for most of their nuns. Such a proceeding would have been impossible in almost any other country, and shows the functions of Chinese officials for the welfare of society.

Most of them are taught to read the classics as well as their

Digitized by Google

own liturgies, and a few of the sisterhood are said to be well read in the lore of the country. Each nun has her own disciples among the laity, and cultivates and extends her acquaintances as much as she can, inasmuch as upon them her support principally depends. Each of her patrons, whether male or female, receives a new name from her, as she herself also did when her head was shaven. Contributors' names are written or engraved in conspicuous places in the building; casual fees or donations go to the general expenses. Each nun also receives ten cents when public masses are recited for those who have engaged them. Their moral character is uniformly represented as dissolute, but while despised for their profligacy they are dreaded for the supposed power they can exert by means of their connection with spirits. The number of nunneries in the department of Ningpo is stated to be thirty, and the sisterhood in them all to amount to upward of three hundred persons.[1]

The numerous points of similarity between the rites of the Buddhists and those of the Romish church early attracted attention. Abbé Huc enumerates many of them: "The cross, the mitre, the dalmatica, the cope which the lamas wear on their journeys, or when performing some ceremony out of the temple; the service with double choirs, the psalmody, the exorcisms, the censer suspended from five chains, which you can open or close at pleasure; the benedictions given by extending the right hand over the heads of the faithful; the rosary, ecclesiastical celibacy, spiritual retirement, worship of the saints; the fasts, processions, litanies, and holy water—all these are analogies between ourselves and the Buddhists." In addition to these, the institution of nuns, worship of relics, masses for the dead, and burning of candles and incense, with ringing of bells during worship, are prominent usages common to both. Their priests alike teach a purgatory from which the soul can be released by their prayers; they also conduct service in a dead language, and pretend to miracles. Lastly, the doctrine of the perpetual virginity of Maya, the mother of Sakya-muni, is an article taught

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIII., pp. 93–98. Doolittle's *Social Life*, I., p. 253. Milne's *Life in China*, pp. 134–146. Gray's *China*, I., pp. 105, 131–135.

Digitized by Google

by the Mongol Buddhists, who also practise a form of infant baptism, in which the lama dips the child three times under the water as he pronounces its name and gives it a blessing.

These numerous and striking resemblances led the Roman Catholic missionaries to conclude that some of them had been derived from the papal or Syrian priests who entered China before Kublai khan. M. Huc brings forward his hypothesis that Tsong Kaba, the teacher of the Buddhist reformer in Mongolia about that time, had adopted them from some of the Europeans who taught him the Christian doctrines.[1] Others refer them to St. Thomas, but Prémare ascribes them to the devil, who had thus imitated holy mother church in order to scandalize and oppose its rites. But as Davis observes, "To those who admit that most of the Romish ceremonies are borrowed directly from paganism, there is less difficulty in accounting for the resemblance." On this point it will be impossible to reach certainty. There have probably been some things borrowed by each from the other at various ages, without either knowing from whence they came or what were their tendencies. Fergusson shows the great probability that the monastic system, celibacy, and ascetic good works were adopted in the Eastern church from India; but the want of reliable records on either side hitherto has left much to inference and conjecture.

The worship is similar and equally imposing. One eye-witness describes the scene he saw in a Buddhist temple: "There stood fourteen priests, seven on each side of the altar, erect, motionless, with clasped hands and downcast eyes, their shaven heads and flowing gray robes adding to their solemn appearance. The low and measured tones of the slowly moving chant they

[1] Huc's *Travels in Tartary*, II., p. 50. Hardy's *Manual*, p. 142. *Missionary Recorder*, III., pp. 142, 181. Eitel, *Lectures on Buddhism*, and *Handbook for the Student of Chinese Buddhism*, Hongkong, 1870. James Fergusson, *Hist. Indian and Eastern Architecture*, Introduction. Rémusat, *Mélanges Posthumes*, p. 44. Klaproth in *Journal Asiatique*, Tome VII. (1831), p. 190; also Tome XI. (IV^e Sér.), 1848, p. 535. Prof. E. E. Salisbury in *Journal Am. Or. Soc.*, Vol. I., No. II., 1844. *Jour. of the R. As. Soc.*, passim. Yule's *Marco Polo*, Vol. I., p. 406; also *Cathay and the Way Thither*, II., p. 551. W. Wordsworth, *The Church of Thibet and the Historical Analogies of Buddhism and Christianity*, London, 1877.

Digitized by Google

were singing might have awakened solemn emotions, too, and called away the thoughts from worldly objects. Three priests kept time with the music, one beating an immense drum, another a large iron vessel, and a third a wooden ball. After chanting, they kneeled upon low stools and bowed before the colossal image of Buddha, at the same time striking their heads upon the ground. Then rising and facing each other, they began slowly chanting some sentences, and rapidly increasing the music and their utterance until both were at the climax of rapidity, they diminished in the same way until they had returned to the original measure. In the meantime, some of the number could not restrain their curiosity, and, even while chanting and counting their beads, left their places to ask for books. The whole service forcibly reminded me of scenes in Romish chapels; the shaven heads of the priests, their long robes, mock solemnity, frequent prostrations, chantings, beads—yea, and their idol, too, all suggested their types, or their antitypes, in the apostate church."[1]

The expulsion of Buddhism from India, after its triumphs in the reign of Asoka, King of Majadha, was so complete that it henceforth divided into the northern and southern schools, the first taking Sanscrit and the other Pali as its sacred language. In the course of time the divergencies became fixed, and thus, without any actual schism, the Buddhists of Ceylon and Ultra Ganges have come to differ from those of Central Asia and China. The form of Buddhism prevailing among the Mongols and Tibetans differs more in its state and power than in its doctrines; it is called Shamanism, or *Hwang kiao* ('Yellow Sect') in Chinese, from the color of the priestly robes—a *Shaman* being one who has overcome all his passions; it is a Hindu word. The Dalai-Lama at H'lassa, in the great monastery of the Putala, is the pope of the religion, the abode of deity.[2] Mongolia swarms with lamas, and the government at Peking aids in sup-

[1] *Foreign Missionary Chronicle*, Vol. XIV., p. 300.

[2] For his origin see Klaproth, *Mémoires sur l'Asie*, Tome II., p. 90. Also Rémusat, *Mélanges Posthumes*, pp. 1–64, for some observations on this faith in a review of De Guignes' *Huns*. E. Schlagintweit, *Buddhism in Tibet*, with folio atlas of plates, Leipzig, 1863. J. Summers in *The Phœnix*, I., 1870, pp. 9–11.

Digitized by Google

porting them in order to maintain its sway more easily over the tribes, though the Manchus have endeavored to supplant the civil authority of the Dalai-Lama and banchin-erdeni, by partially aiding and gradually subdividing their power. The ritual of the Shamans, in which the leading tenets taught by the lamas are exhibited, contains their ten principal precepts, or decalogue, viz.: 1. Do not kill. 2. Do not steal. 3. Do not commit fornication. 4. Speak not falsely. 5. Drink no wine nor eat flesh. 6. Look not on gay silks or necklaces, use no perfumed ointment, and paint not the body. 7. Neither sing nor dance, and do no sleight of hand tricks or gymnastic acts, and go not to see or hear them. 8. Sit not on a high large couch. 9. Do not eat out of time. 10. Do not grasp hold of living images, gold, silver, money, or any valuable thing.[1] The book contains also twenty-four sections of directions as to the conduct to be observed in various places, and before different persons. When using the sacred books the devotee must consider himself to be in the presence of Buddha, and he is forbidden to study books of divination, physiognomy, medicine, drawing lots, astronomy, geography, alchemy, charms, magic, or poetry. No wonder the priests are ignorant when almost every source of instruction is thus debarred them. The number of temples scattered over Mongolia and Tibet and the proportion of priests are far greater than in China, and the literature is not less enormous for bulk than are the contents of the volumes tedious and uninstructive.[2] A good device for a religion of formality to economize time and accommodate ignorance is adopted by the lamas, which is to write the prayers on a piece of paper and fasten them to a wheel carried round by the wind or twirled by the hand; chests are also set up in temples having prayers engraved on the outside

[1] *Annales de la Foi*, Tome IX., p. 460.

[2] "The dreariest literature, perhaps," says Professor Whitney, "that was ever painfully scored down, and patiently studied, and religiously preserved" (*Oriental and Linguistic Studies*, Second Series, p. 98). For foreign bibliographies of Buddhism the reader may be referred to *L'Histoire de Çakya-Mouni*, par Foucaux (ad fin.), and Otto Kistner, *Buddha and his Doctrines: A Bibliographical Essay*, London, 1869. See also Trübner's *Record* for 1869, p. 513.

Digitized by Google

in large letters, and the prayer is repeated as often as the wind or the hand revolves the wheel or chest.

The Buddhist temples present much uniformity in their arrangement, and some of the monastic establishments are among the finest buildings in China. No cave temples are known, but caves have been turned into temples in many places, and miserable places they are for worship. On entering a Buddhist temple, one sees four colossal statues of the Four Great Kings who are supposed to govern the continents on each side of Mount Sumeru and guard or reward the devotees who honor their Lord; they have black, blue, red, and white faces, and usually hold a sword, guitar, umbrella, and snake in their hands. Opposite the door is a shrine containing an image of Maitreya Buddha, or the Merciful One, a very fat, jolly personage, who is to have an avatar three thousand years hence; images of Kwantí, the God of War, and of Wei-to, a general under the Four Kings, clad in armor, are often seen near the shrine. Going behind a screen, the next great hall contains a high gilded image of Sakya-muni sitting on a lotus flower, with smaller statues of Ananda and Kashiapa on his sides; their shrine often has standing images of attendants. In this hall are other images or pictures of the Eighteen Arhans, deified missionaries who propagated their faith early in China. In the rear of these is represented some form of Kwanyin, the Goddess of Mercy, the popular idol of the sects. In large temples the five hundred Arhans, placed on as many seats, each having some distinguishing attribute, fill a large hall. Besides these occur the disciples of Buddha listening to his teachings, the horrible punishments of hell, and various honored deities, sages, or local gods, so that few temples are alike in all respects. In all of them are guest-chambers of various sizes, refectories, study rooms, and cloisters, according to the wants and resources of the fraternity.

The hold of the Buddhist priesthood upon the mass of Chinese consists far more in the position they occupy in relation to the rites performed in honor of the dead than in their tenets. This brings us to the consideration of the real religion of the Chinese, that in which more than anything else they trust, and to which they look for consolation and reward—the worship of deceased

Digitized by Google

ancestors. The doctrines of Confucius and the ceremonial of the State religion, exhibit the speculative, intellectual dogmas of the educated literati and thinkers, who have early been taught the high ideal of the Princely Man set forth by their sages. The tenets of Lau-tsz' and the sorcery and incantations of his followers show the mystic and marvellous part of the popular belief. Buddhism takes hold of the common life of man, offers relief in times of distress, escape from a future hell at a cheap rate, and employment in a round of prayers, study, or work, ending in the nirvana. But the heart of the nation reposes more upon the rites offered at the family shrine to the two "living divinities" who preside in the hall of ancestors than to all the rest. This sort of family worship has been popular in other countries, but in no part of the world has it reached the consequence it has received in Eastern Asia; every natural feeling serves, indeed, to strengthen its simple cultus.

In the *Shi King*, whose existence, as we have already pointed out, is coeval with Samuel or earlier, are many references to this worship, and to certain rites connected with its royal observance. At some festivals the dead were personated by a younger relative, who was supposed to be taken possession of by their spirits, and thereby became their visible image. He was placed on high, and the sacrificer, on appearing in the temple, asked him to be seated at his ease, and urged him to eat, thereby to prepare himself to receive the homage given to the dead. When he had done so he gave the response in their name; the defied spirits returned to heaven, and their personator came down from his seat. In one ode the response of the ancestors through their personator is thus given:

What said the message from your sires?
"Vessels and gifts are clean;
And all your friends, assisting you,
Behave with reverent mien.

"Most reverently you did your part,
And reverent by your side
Your son appeared. On you henceforth
Shall ceaseless blessings bide.

Digitized by Google

"What shall the ceaseless blessings be?
That in your palace high,
For myriad years you dwell in peace,
Rich in posterity."[1]

The teachings of this ancient book intimate that the protecting favor of the departed could be lost by the vile, cruel, or unjust conduct of their descendants—thus connecting ancestral worship and reward with personal character. Another ode sums up this idea in the expression, "The mysterious empyrean is able to strengthen anything; do not disgrace your imperial ancestors, and it will save your posterity." Many stories occur in the native literature exemplifying this idea by actual experiences of blessing and cursing, all flowing from the observance or neglect of the required duties.

The great sages Confucius and Mencius, with the earlier rulers, King Wăn and Duke Chau, and their millions of followers, have all upheld these sentiments, and those teachings and examples are still as powerful as ever. In every household, a shrine, a tablet, an oratory, or a domestic temple, according to the position of the family, contains the simple legend of the two ancestral names written on a slip of paper or carved on a board. Incense is burned before it, daily or on the new and full moons; and in April the people everywhere gather at the family graves to sweep them, and worship the departed around a festive sacrifice. To the children it has all the pleasant associations of our Christmas or Thanksgiving; and all the elder members of the family who can do so come together around the tomb or in the ancestral hall at the annual rite. Parents and children meet and bow before the tablet, and in their simple cheer contract no associations with temples or idols, monasteries or priests, processions, or flags and music. It is the family, and a stranger intermeddleth not with it; he has his own tablet to look to, and can get no good by worshipping before that bearing the names of another family.

As the children grow up the worship of the ancestors, whom they never saw, is exchanged for that of nearer ones who bore and nurtured, clothed, taught, and cheered them in helpless

[1] Legge's *She King*, p. 309, London, 1876.

Digitized by Google

childhood and hopeful youth, and the whole is thus rendered more personal, vivid, and endearing. There is nothing revolting or cruel connected with it, but everything is orderly, kind, and simple, calculated to strengthen the family relationship, cement the affection between brothers and sisters, and uphold habits of filial reverence and obedience. Though the strongest motive for this worship arises out of the belief that success in worldly affairs depends on the support given to parental spirits in hades, who will resent continued neglect by withholding their blessing, yet, in the course of ages, it has influenced Chinese character, in promoting industry and cultivating habits of domestic care and thrift, beyond all estimation.

It has, moreover, done much to preserve that feature of the government which grows out of the oversight of heaven as manifested to the people through their Emperor, the Son of Heaven, whom they regard as its vicegerent. The parental authority is also itself honored by that peculiar position of the monarch, and the child grows up with the habit of yielding to its injunctions, for to him the family tablet is a reality, the abode of a personal Being who exerts an influence over him that cannot be evaded, and is far more to him as an individual than any of the popular gods. Those gods are to be feared and their wrath deprecated, but the "illustrious ones who have completed their probation" represent love, care, and interest to the worshippers if they do not fail in their duties.

Another indirect result has been to define and elevate the position of the wife and mother. All the laws which could be framed for the protection of women would lack their force if she were not honored in the household. As there can be only one "illustrious consort" (*hien pi*) named on the tablet, there is of course only one wife (*tsi*) acknowledged in the family. There are concubines (*tsieh*), whose legal rights are defined and secured, and who form an integral part of the family; but they are not admitted into the ancestral hall, and their children are reckoned with the others as Dan and Asher were in Jacob's household. Polygamous families in China form a small proportion of the whole; and this acknowledged parity of the mother with the father, in the most sacred position she can be placed, has

Digitized by Google

done much to maintain the purity and right influence of woman amid all the degradations, pollutions, and moral weakness of heathenism. It is one of the most powerful supports of good order. It may even be confidently stated that woman's legal, social, and domestic position is as high in China as it has ever been outside of Christian culture, and as safe as it can be without the restraints of Christianity. Another benefit to the people, that of early marriages, derives much of its prevalence and obligation from the fear that, if neglected, there may be no heirs left to carry on the worship at the family tomb.

The three leading results here noticed, viz., the prevention of a priestly caste, the confirmation of parental authority in its own sphere, and the elevation of the woman and wife to a parity with the man and husband, do much to explain the perpetuity of Chinese institutions. The fact that filial piety in this system has overpassed the limit set by God in his Word, and that deceased parents are worshipped as gods by their children, is both true and sad. That the worship rendered to their ancestors by the Chinese is idolatrous cannot be doubted; and it forms one of the subtlest phases of idolatry—essentially evil with the guise of goodness—ever established among men.

The prevalence of infanticide and the indifference with which the crime is regarded may seem to militate against this view of Chinese social character, and throw discredit on the degree of respect and reverence paid to parents; for how, some will ask, can a man thus worship and venerate parents who once imbrued their hands in his sister's blood? Such anomalies may be found in the distorted minds and depraved hearts educated under the superstitions of heathenism in every country, and the Chinese are no exception. It is exceedingly difficult, however, to ascertain the extent of infanticide in China, and all the reasons which prompt to the horrid act. Investigations have been made about Canton, and evidence obtained to show that it is comparatively rare, and strongly discountenanced by public opinion; though by no means unknown, nor punished by law when done. Similar investigations at Amoy have disclosed a fearful extent of murders of this nature; yet while the latter are believed, the assertions of the former are regarded as evasions of the truth from

Digitized by Google

the fear of being reproached for it or a sense of shame. The whole nation has been branded as systematic murderers of their children from the practice of the inhabitants of a portion of two provinces, who are generally regarded by their countrymen as among the most violent and poorest fraction of the whole. Sir John Barrow heard that the carts went about the streets of Peking daily to pick up dead and dying infants thrown out by their unnatural parents, but he does not mention ever having seen a single corpse in all his walks or rides about the capital. It has now been ascertained that this cart contains so many dead bodies of both sexes, that the inference by Dr. Dudgeon that not one in a hundred was killed seems to be sustained. The bodies of children are not as often seen in the lanes and creeks of Canton as those of adults, and the former are as likely to have died natural deaths as the latter.

In Fuhkien province, especially in the departments of Tsiuen-chau and Changchau, infanticide prevails to a greater extent than in any other part of the Empire yet examined. Mr. Abeel extended his inquiries to forty different towns and villages lying in the first, and found that the percentage was between seventy and eighty down to ten, giving an average of about forty per cent. of all girls born in those places as being murdered. In Changchau, out of seventeen towns, the proportion lies between one-fourth and three-tenths in some places, occasionally rising to one-third, and in others sinking to one-fifth, making an average of one-fourth put to death. In other departments of the province the practice is confessed, but the proportion thought by intelligent natives to be less, since there is less poverty and fewer people than formerly. The examination was conducted in as fair a manner as possible, and persons of all classes were questioned as to the number of children they had killed themselves, or knew had been killed by their relatives or neighbors. One of eight brothers told him that only three girls were left among all their children, sixteen having been killed. On one occasion he visited a small village on Amoy Island, called Bo-au, where the whole population turned out to see him and Dr. Cumming, the latter of whom had recently cut out a large tumor from a fellow villager. He says:

Digitized by Google

From the number of women in the crowd which turned out to greet us, we were pretty well persuaded that they were under as little restraint as the men from indulging their curiosity; and upon inquiry, found it to be so. We were conducted to a small temple, when I had the opportunity of conversing with many who came around us. On a second visit, while addressing them, one man held up a child, and publicly acknowledged that he had killed five of the helpless beings, having preserved but two. I thought he was jesting, but as no surprise or dissent was expressed by his neighbors, and as there was an air of simplicity and regret in the individual, there was no reason to doubt its truth. After repeating his confession he added with affecting simplicity, "It was before I heard you speak on this subject; I did not know it was wrong; I would not do so now." Wishing to obtain the testimony of the assembled villagers, I put the question publicly, "What number of female infants in this village are destroyed at birth?" The reply was, "More than one-half." As there was no discussion among them, which is not the case when they differ in opinion, and as we were fully convinced from our own observation of the numerical inequality of the sexes, the proportion of deaths they gave did not strike us as extravagant.

The reasons assigned for committing the unnatural deed are various. Poverty is the leading cause; the alternative being, as the parents think, a life of infamy or slavery, since if they cannot rear their offspring themselves they must sell them. The fact of the great numbers of men who emigrate to the Archipelago from the coast districts has no doubt also had its effect in inducing parents to destroy daughters for whom they had little expectation of finding husbands if they did rear them. Many who are able to support their daughters prefer to destroy them rather than incur the expenses of their marriage, but the investigation showed that the crime was rather less among the educated than the ignorant, and that they had done something to dissuade their poor neighbors from putting their girls to death. In the adjoining departments of Chauchau and Kiaying in Kwangtung, the people admit the practice, and, as their circumstances are similar, it is probable that it is not much less than around Amoy. Dr. Dudgeon, of Peking, has had very favorable opportunities for prosecuting inquiries in that region, and has shown that the stories formerly credited are wrong, and that most of the children thus disposed of are born of nuns. Inquiries instituted at Hankow by Dr. F. P. Smith, of the hospital, showed a wide prevalence of the crime among the poor and rural population,

Digitized by Google

for which he ascribes several reasons; the proportion of the sexes is ten men to seven women.

While one of the worst features of the crime is the little degree of detestation everywhere expressed at it, yet the actual proportion is an important inquiry, and this, taking the whole nation, has been much exaggerated, chiefly from applying such facts and estimates as the preceding to the whole country. The governor of Canton once issued a dissuasive exhortation on this subject to the people, telling them that if they destroyed all their daughters they would soon have no mothers. Until investigations have been made elsewhere, it is not fair to charge all the Chinese with the atrocities of a small portion, nor to disbelieve the affirmations of the inhabitants of Canton, Ningpo, and Shanghai, and elsewhere, that they do not usually put their daughters to death, until we have overwhelming testimony that they deny and conceal what they are ashamed to confess.[1]

Comparing their lamentable practice with those of other and European nations, we find, according to Hume, that "the exposure of new-born infants was an allowed practice in almost all the States of Greece and Rome; even among the polite and civilized Athenians, the abandoning of one's child to hunger or wild beasts was regarded without blame or censure. This practice was very common; and it is not spoken of by any author of those times with the horror it deserves, or scarcely even with disapprobation. Plutarch, the humane, good-natured Plutarch, mentions it as a merit in Attalus, king of Pergamus, that he murdered, or, if you will, exposed all his own children, in order to leave his crown to the son of his brother Eumenes. It was Solon, the most celebrated of the sages of Greece, that gave parents permission by law to kill their children." Aristotle

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XVII., p. 11, for a native essay against it; Vol. XVI., p. 513; Vol. XII., pp. 540–548; Vol. XI., p. 508; Vol. VII., p. 54. Bishop Smith's *China*, p. 443. *Report of Peking Hospital*, 1865. Dr. F. P. Smith's *Five Annual Reports of Hankow Hospital*, 1870, pp. 45–52. Doolittle, *Social Life*, II., pp. 208–209. *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. III., pp. 156, 172. *L'infanticide et l'Oeuvre de la Ste.-Enfance en Chine*, par Père G. Palatre, Changhai. *Autographie de la Mission Catholique à l'orphelinat de Tou-sè-wè*, 1878. M. E. Martin, *Étude Médico-Légale sur l'Infanticide et l'Avortement dans l'Empire Chinois*, Paris, 1872.

Digitized by Google

thought it should be encouraged by the magistrates, and Plato maintained the same inhuman doctrine. It was complained of as a great singularity that the laws of Thebes forbade the practice. In all the provinces, and especially in Italy, the crime was daily perpetrated.[1]

The ceremonies attendant upon the decease of a person vary in different parts of the country, though they are not necessarily elaborate or expensive anywhere, and all the important ones can be performed by the poorest mourner. The inhabitants of Fuhkien put a piece of silver in the mouth of the dying person, and carefully cover his nose and ears. Scarcely is he dead when they make a hole in the roof to facilitate the exit of the spirits proceeding from his body, of which they imagine each person possesses seven animal senses which die with him, and three souls, one of which enters elysium and receives judgment, another abides with the tablet, and a third dwells in the tomb. In some places, as a man approaches his last hour, the relatives come into the room to array him in his best garments and carry him into the main hall to breathe his life away while dressed in the costume with which he is to appear in Hades. The popular ideas regarding their fate vary so much that it is difficult to describe the national faith in this respect; transmigration is more or less believed in, but the detail of the changes the good or evil spirit undergoes before it is absorbed in Buddha varies almost according to the fancy of the worshipper. Those who are sent to hell pass through every form of suffering inflicted upon them by hideous monsters, and are at last released to wander about as houseless demons to torment mankind, or vex themselves in the bodies of animals and reptiles.

When the priests come the corpse is laid out upon the floor in the principal room, and a tablet set up by its side; a table is near, on which are placed meats, lamps, and incense. While the priests are reciting prayers to deliver the soul from purgatory and hell, they occasionally call on all present to weep and lament, and on these occasions the females of the household are particularly clamorous in their grief, alternately uttering the

[1] McIlvaine, *Evidences of Christianity*, p. 291.

Digitized by Google

most doleful accents, and then tittering with some of the newcomers. Papers having figures on them and Peter's pence in the form of paper money are burned; white lanterns, instead of the common red ones, and a slip of paper containing the name, titles, age, etc., of the dead are hung at the door; a mat porch is put up for the musicians and the priests.[1] The soul, having crossed the bridge leading out of hell with the aid of the priests, gets a letter of recommendation from them to be admitted into the western heavens.

Previous to burial a lucky place for interment, if the family have moved away from its paternal sepulchre, must be found. The body is coffined soon after death, arrayed in the most splendid habiliments the family can afford; a fan is put in one hand and a prayer on a piece of paper in the other. The form of a Chinese coffin resembles the trunk of a tree; the boards are three or four inches thick and rounded on top (from whence a coffin is called "longevity boards"), making a very substantial case. When the corpse is put in it is laid in a bed of lime or cotton, or covered with quicklime, and the edges of the lid are closed with mortar in the groove so that no smell escapes; the coffin is varnished if it is to remain in the house before burial. The Chinese often expend large sums in the purchase and preparation of a coffin during their lifetime; the cheapest are from five to ten dollars, and upward to five hundred and even two thousand dollars, according to the materials and ornamenting.

Bodies are sometimes kept in or about the house for many years and incense burned morning and evening. They are placed either on trestles near the doorway and protected by a covering in the principal hall, or in the ancestral chamber, where they remain until the fortunes of the family improve so as to enable them to bury the remains, or a lucky place is found, or until opportunity and means allow the survivors to lay them in their patrimonial sepulchre.

The lineal relatives of the deceased are informed of his death,

[1] Ball says that money is put into the mouth of the dead by rich people to buy favor and passage into heaven; others affirm that the money is to make the spirit ready of speech. The phrase "no silver to hit the mouth" has reference to this custom.

Digitized by Google

and as many as can do so repair to the house to condole with and assist the family. The eldest son or the nearest descendant repairs to an adjoining river or well with a bowl in his hand, and accompanied by two relatives, to "buy water" with money which he carries and throws into it. Upon the way to the well it is customary to carry lanterns—even at noon—and to make a great wailing: with the water thus obtained he washes the corpse before it is dressed. After the body is laid in the coffin and before interment the sons of the deceased among the poor are frequently sent around to the relatives and friends of the family to solicit subscriptions to buy a grave, hire mourners, or provide a suitable sacrifice, and it is considered a good act to assist in such cases; perhaps fear of the ill-will of the displeased spirit prompts to the charity. The coffin is sometimes seized or attached by creditors to compel the relatives to collect a sum to release it, and instances of filial sons are mentioned who have sold themselves into temporary or perpetual slavery in order to raise money to bury their parents. In other cases a defaulting tenant will retain a coffin in the house to forestall an ejectment for the back rent. On the day of burial an offering of cooked provisions is laid out near the coffin. The chief mourners, clothed in coarse white sackcloth, then approach and kneel before it, knocking their heads upon the ground and going through with the full kotow; two persons dressed in mourning hand them incense-sticks, which are placed in jars. After the male mourners have made their parting prostrations the females perform the same ceremonies, and then such friends and relations as are present; during these observances a band of music plays. The funeral procession is formed of all these persons—the band, the tablets, priests, etc. In Peking, where religious processions are prohibited, great display is made in funerals according to the means and rank of the deceased. The coffin is borne on an unwieldy bier carried by sixty-four men or more and covered by a richly embroidered catafalque, attended by musicians, mourners, priests, etc. Sometimes the carts are covered with white cloth and the mules wear white harness.

Burial-places are selected by geomancers, and their location has important results on the prosperity of the living. The sup-

Digitized by Google

posed connection between these two things has influenced the science, religion, and customs of the Chinese from very early days, and under the name of *fung-shui*, or 'wind and water' rules, still contains most of their science and explains most of their superstitions. As true science extends this travestie of natural philosophy will fade away and form a subject of fascination among the people as it now does a source of terror. Every strange event is interpreted by *fung-shui*, and its professors employ the doctrines of Buddhists and Taoists to enforce their dicta, as they do their little knowledge of astronomy, medicine, and natural science to explain them. The whole has gradually grown into a system of geomancy, involving, however, their cosmogony, natural philosophy, spiritualism, and biology so far as they have these sciences. It was in the twelfth century that it became systematized, and its influence has spread ever since. Were it only a picturesque kaleidoscope of facts and fancies it would be a harmless pastime; but it now enters into every act of life, since the human soul and body, whether in this world or the next, are regarded as constantly influenced by their actions, their relatives, and their locations. Thus the choice of a burial-place is supposed to affect the past, present, and future, and the *fung-shui siensăng*, or 'wind and water doctors,' know therein how to benefit their customers and themselves.

Regarding all nature as a living organism and each person surrounded by invisible beings, the Chinese try to propitiate these essences through their departed relatives. They consider them as restrained by their animal nature to the tomb where their bodies lie, while the spiritual nature seeks to hover about its old scenes and children. If a tomb is placed so that the spirit dwelling therein is comfortable, the inference is that the deceased will grant those who supply its wants all that the spirit world can grant. A tomb located where no star on high or dragon below, no breath of nature or malign configuration of hills, can disturb the repose of the dead, must therefore be lucky, and worth great effort to secure.

The principles of geomancy depend much on two supposed currents running through the earth, known as the dragon and the tiger; a propitious site has these on its left and right. A

Digitized by Google

skilful observer can detect and describe them, with the help of the compass, direction of the watercourses, shapes of the male and female ground, and their proportions, color of the soil, and the permutations of the elements. The common people know nothing of the basis on which this conclusion is founded, but give their money as their faith in the priest or charlatan increases.[1]

At the south, uncultivated hills are selected because they are dry and the white ants will not attack the coffin; and a hill-side in view of water, a copse, or a ravine near a hill-top, are all lucky spots. At the north, where ants are unknown, the dead are buried in fields; but nowhere collected in graveyards in cities or temples. The form of the grave is sometimes a simple tumulus with a tombstone at the head; in the southern provinces oftener in the shape of the Greek letter Ω, or that of a huge arm-chair. The back of the supposed chair is the place for the tombstone, while the body is interred in the seat, the sides of which are built around with masonry and approach each other in front. A tomb is occasionally built of stone in a substantial manner, and carved pillars are placed at the corners, the whole often costing thousands of dollars. The case of one necromancer is recorded, who, after having selected a grave for a family, was attacked with ophthalmia, and in revenge for their giving him poisonous food which he supposed had caused the malady, hired men to remove a large mass of rock near the grave, whereby its efficacy was completely spoiled. The position is thought to be the better if it command a good view. Some of the graves occupy many hundred square feet, the corners being defined by low stones bearing two characters, importing whose *chih*, or 'house,' it is. The shapes of graves vary more at the north; some are conical mounds planted with shrubs or flowers, others made of mason-work shaped like little houses, others mere square tombs or earthly tumuli; not a few coffins are simply left upon the ground. It is seldom the Chinese hew graves out of

[1] Compare Dr. Edkins in the *Chinese Recorder*, Vol. IV., 1871-72. *Feng-shui; or the Rudiments of Natural Science in China*, by Ernest J. Eitel, London, 1873. The *Cornhill Magazine* for March, 1874. *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. II., p. 69.

Digitized by Google

the rock or dig large vaults; their care is to make a showy grave, and at the same time a convenient one for performing the prescribed rites. The mausolea of emperors and grandees occupy vast enclosures laid out as parks and adorned with ornamental buildings to which lead avenues of stone guardians.[1] The tomb of Yungloh (A.D. 1403–1425) is reached through a *dromos* of gigantic statues nearly a mile long—two pairs each of lions, unicorns, elephants, camels, and horses, one erect, the other couchant, and six pairs of civil and military officers; each figure is a monolith. The origin of this custom can be traced back nearly to the tenth century, but was probably known in the Tang dynasty. Officials are allowed to erect a few statues to become their guardians.[2]

When the day of interment arrives, which is usually the nearest lucky day to the third seventh after death, the friends assemble at the house. A band of musicians accompanies the procession, in which is also carried the ancestral tablet of the deceased in a separate sedan, accompanied sometimes by a sacrifice and the red tablets of the offices held by the family. The mourners are dressed entirely in white, or wear a white fillet around the head; the sons of the deceased must put on the expression and habiliments of woe, and the eldest one is at times supported along the street to the grave in all the eloquence and attitude of grief, although it may have been years since his father went to "wander among the genii." The women and children of the family follow, and at intervals cry and wail. A man goes ahead and scatters paper money to purchase the goodwill of such stray spirits as are prowling about. Different figures and banners are carried according to the means and rank of the family, which, with the friends and crowd attracted by the show, sometimes swell the train to a great length. The grave is deep, and lime is freely mixed with the earth thrown

[1] In the Yih chin the custodian reported in the *Peking Gazette* of January 3, 1871, that there were 92,690 trees, mostly fir, pine, elm, etc. The people in charge of such grounds are used to girdling the timber, in order afterward to get the dead trees as firewood for themselves.

[2] Mayers in *North China Br. Royal Asiatic Society Journal*, No. XII., 1878. Doolittle, *Social Life*, II., p. 337.

Digitized by Google

in; a body is never put into an old grave while anything remains of the former occupant; crackers are fired, libations poured out, prayers recited, and finally paper models of houses, clothes, horses, money, and everything he can possibly want in the land of shadows (which Davis calls a *wise economy*) are burned. The tablet and sacrifice are then carried back; the family feast on the latter or distribute it among the poor around the door, while the former is placed in the ancestral hall. The married daughters of the dead are not considered part of the family, and wear no mourning; nor are they invited to their father's funeral.

The period of mourning for a father is nominally three years, but actually reduced to twenty-seven months; the persons required to observe this are enumerated in the Code, and Sections CLXXIX.–CLXXXI. contain the penalties for concealing the death of a parent, or misrepresenting it, and of omitting the proper formalities. Burning the corpse, or casting it into the water, unfeelingly exposing it in the house longer than a year, and making the funeral ceremony and feast an occasion of merrymaking and indecorous meeting of males and females, are also prohibited. For thirty days after the demise the nearest kindred must not shave their heads nor change their dress, but rather exhibit a slovenly, slipshod appearance, as if grief had taken away both appetite and decorum. In the southern districts half-mourning is blue, usually exhibited in a pair of blue shoes and a blue silken cord woven in the queue, instead of a red one; grass shoes neatly made are now and then worn. In the northern provinces white is the only mourning color seen. The visiting cards also indicate that the time of mourning has not passed. The expenses incurred by the rich are great, and the priests receive large sums for masses, ten thousand dollars being often spent. In the north still greater expenses are incurred in buying a piece of land for a burial plot and its glebe. Here they erect a lodge, where the keeper of the grave lives, cultivating the land and keeping the tomb in order.[1]

When the Empress dies officers put on mourning, take the

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. IV., p. 352; Vol. II., p. 499.

Digitized by Google

buttons and fringes from their caps, stamp their seals with blue ink, and go through a prescribed set of ceremonies; they must not shave their heads for a hundred days, nor the people for a month. Full details of the ceremonies ordered on the occasion of the decease of the Empress, or "interior assistant, who for thirteen years had held the situation of earth to heaven," were published in 1833, in both Manchu and Chinese. When the Emperor dies all his subjects let their hair grow for a hundred days, marriages are postponed, theatres and sports disallowed, and a ceremonial gloom and dishabille pervades the Empire. On the morning after the death of the Emperor Tungchí, January 12, 1875, the streets of Peking presented a surprising contrast to their usual gaiety in the removal of everything red. In early times human beings were immolated at the obsequies of rulers, and voluntary deaths of their attendants and women are occasionally mentioned. De Guignes says that the Emperor Shunchí ordered thirty persons to be immolated at the funeral of his consort; but Kanghí, his son, forbade four women from sacrificing themselves on the death of his Empress.[1]

The hall of ancestors is found in the house of almost every member of the family, but always in that of the eldest son. In rich families it is a separate building; in others a room set apart for the purpose, and in many a mere shelf or shrine. The tablet, or *shin chu*, is a board about twelve inches long and three wide, placed upright in a block. The inscriptions on two are like the following: "The tablet of Hwang Yung-fuh (late Ching-teh), the head of the family, who finished his probation with honor during the Imperial Tsing dynasty, reaching a sub-magistracy." His wife's reads: "The tablet of Madame, originally of the noble family Chin, who would have received the title of lady, and in the Imperial Tsing dynasty became his illustrious consort." A receptacle is often cut in the back, containing pieces of paper bearing the names of the higher ancestors, or other members of the family. Incense and papers are daily burned before them, accompanied by a bow or act of homage, forming

[1] *N. C. Br. R. As. Soc. Journal*, No. II., 1865, pp. 173 ff. De Guignes' *Voyages*, Tome II., p. 304. *Mémoires conc. les Chinois*, Tome VI., pp. 346 ff. *Chinese and Japanese Repository* for May, 1864.

Digitized by Google

in fact a sort of family prayer. The tablets are ranged in chronological order, those of the same generation being placed in a line. When the hall is large, and the family rich, no pains are spared to adorn it with banners and insignia of wealth and rank, and on festival days it serves as a convenient place for friends to meet, or for any extraordinary family occasion. A person residing near Macao spent about one thousand five hun-

Ancestral Hall and Mode of Worshipping the Tablets.

dred dollars in the erection of a hall, and on the dedication day the female members of his family assembled with his sons and descendants to assist in the ceremonies. The portraits of the deceased are also suspended in the hall, but effigies or images are not now made.

In the wood-cut adjoining, the tablets are arranged on the

Digitized by Google

same level, and the sacrifice laid on the altar before them; the character *shao*, 'longevity,' is drawn on the wall behind. During the ceremonies fire-crackers are let off and papers burned; after it the feast is spread.

In the first part of April, one hundred and six days after the winter solstice, during the term called *tsing-ming*, a general worship of ancestors is observed. In Kwangtung this is commonly called *pai shan*, or 'worshipping on the hills,' but the general term is *siu fǎn ti*, or 'sweeping the tombs.' The whole population, men, women, and children, repair to their family tombs, carrying a tray containing the sacrifice, libations for offering, and candles, paper, and incense for burning, and there go through a variety of ceremonies and prayers. The grave is at this season repaired and swept, and at the close of the service three pieces of turf are placed at the back and front of the grave to retain long strips of red and white paper; this indicates that the accustomed rites have been performed, and these fugitive testimonials remain fluttering in the wind long enough to announce it to all the friends as well as enemies of the family; for when a grave has been neglected three years it is sometimes dug over and the land resold. The enormous amount of litigation connected with sepulchral boundaries, transfer of grave glebes or sale of the ancient plats, injury, robbery, and repairs of tombs, all indicate the high importance of this kind of property.

"Such are the harmless, if not meritorious, forms of respect for the dead," says Davis, "which the Jesuits wisely tolerated in their converts, knowing the consequences of outraging their most cherished prejudices; but the crowds of ignorant monks who flocked to the breach which those scientific and able men had opened, jealous, perhaps, of their success, brought this as a charge against them until the point became one of serious controversy and reference to the Pope. His Holiness espoused the bigoted and unwiser part, which led to the expulsion of the monks of all varieties." And elsewhere he says the worship paid to ancestors is "not exactly idolatrous, for they sacrifice to the invisible spirit and not to any representation of it in the figure of an idol." This distinction is much the same as that

Digitized by Google

alleged by the Greek church, which disallows images but permits gold and silver pictures having the face and hands only painted, for Sir John Davis, himself being a Protestant, probably admits that worship paid to any other object besides the true God is idolatry; and that the Chinese do truly worship their ancestors is evident from a prayer, such as the following, offered at the tombs:

Taukwang, 12th year, 3d moon, 1st day. I, Lin Kwang, the second son of the third generation, presume to come before the grave of my ancestor, Lin Kung. Revolving years have brought again the season of spring. Cherishing sentiments of veneration, I look up and sweep your tomb. Prostrate I pray that you will come and be present, and that you will grant to your posterity that they may be prosperous and illustrious. At this season of genial showers and gentle breezes I desire to recompense the root of my existence and exert myself sincerely. Always grant your safe protection. My trust is in your divine spirit. Reverently I present the five-fold sacrifice of a pig, a fowl, a duck, a goose, and a fish; also an offering of five plates of fruit, with libations of spirituous liquors, earnestly entreating that you will come and view them. With the most attentive respect this annunciation is presented on high.

It is not easy to perceive, perhaps, why the Pope and the Dominicans were so much opposed to the worship of ancestral penates among the Chinese when they performed much the same services themselves before the images of Mary, Joseph, Cecilia, Ignatius, and hundreds of other deified mortals; but it is somewhat surprising that a Protestant should describe this worship as consisting of "harmless, if not meritorious, forms of respect for the dead." Mr. Fortune, too, thinks "a considerable portion of this worship springs from a higher and purer source than a mere matter of form, and that when the Chinese periodically visit the tombs of their fathers to worship and pay respect to their memory, they indulge in the pleasing reflection that when they themselves are no more their graves will not be neglected or forgotten." This feeling does actuate them, but there can be no dispute, one would think, about its idolatrous character. The Chinese who have embraced the doctrines of the New Testament, and who may be supposed qualified to judge of their own acts and feelings, regard the rites as superstitious and sinful. It is a form of worship, indeed, which presents fewer revolting features than most systems of false religion—consisting merely

Digitized by Google

of pouring out libations and burning paper and candles at the grave, and then a family meeting at a social feast, with a few simple prostrations and petitions. No bacchanalian companies of men and women run riot over the hills, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, nor are obscene rites practised in the house; all is pleasant, decorous, and harmonious. The junior members of the family come from a distance, sometimes two or three hundred miles, to observe it, and the family meeting on this occasion is looked forward to by all with much the same feelings that Christmas is in Old England or Thanksgiving in New England. Brothers and sisters, cousins and other relatives join in the worship and feast, and it is this pleasant reunion of dear ones, perhaps the most favorable to the cementing of family affection to be found in heathen society, which constitutes much of its power and will present such an obstacle to the reception of the Gospel and removal of the "two divinities" from the house.

The funeral ceremonies here described are performed by sons for their parents, especially for the father; but there are few or no ceremonies and little expense for infants, unmarried children, concubines, or slaves. These are coffined and buried without parade in the family sepulchre; the poor sometimes tie them up in mats and boards and lay them in the fields to shock the eyes and noses of all who pass. The municipal authorities of Canton issued orders to the people in 1832 to bring such bodies as had no place of burial to the potter's field, where they would be interred at public expense; societies, moreover, exist in all the large cities whose object is to bury poor people. In some parts the body is wrapped in cloth or coffined and laid in graveyards on the surface of the ground. When one dies far away from home the coffin is often lodged in *lararíums*, or public depositories maintained by societies, where they remain many years. Few acts during the war of 1841 irritated the people about Canton against the English more than forcing open the coffins found in these mausolea and mutilating the corpses. One building contained hundreds of coffins from which, when opened, a pungent aromatic smell was perceptible, while the features of the corpses presented a dried appearance. One traveller tells a story of his guide, when he was conducting him over the hills

Digitized by Google

in Hupeh, ordering him to conceal his blue eyes by putting on green spectacles as they were approaching some houses, and describes his surprise at finding them all filled with coffins arranged in an orderly manner. Graves are not enclosed; cattle pasture among them and paths lead over and through them.

Tombstones are usually made of granite and their inscriptions soon become defaced. Epitaphs are short, giving the name of the dynasty, his place of birth, number of his generation in the family, and his temple name. Laudatory expressions are rare, and quotations from the classics or stanzas of poetry to convey a sentiment entirely unknown. The corpses of officers who die at their stations are carried to their paternal tombs, sometimes at public expense. The Emperor, in some instances, orders the funeral rites of distinguished statesmen to be defrayed. This was done during the war with England in the cases of Commissioner Yukien and General Hailing, who burned himself at Chinkiang fu.[1]

Besides these funeral rites and religious ceremonies to their departed ancestors the Chinese have an almost infinite variety of superstitious practices, most of which are of a deprecatory character, growing out of their belief in demons and genii who trouble or help people. It may be said that most of their religious acts performed in temples are intended to avert misfortune rather than supplicate blessings. In order to ward off malignant influences amulets are worn and charms hung up, such as money-swords made of coins of different monarchs strung together in the form of a dagger; leaves of the sweet-flag (*Acorus*) and Artemisia tied in a bundle, or a sprig of peach-blossoms; the first is placed near beds, the latter over the lintel, to drive away demons. A man also collects a cash or two from each of his friends and gets a lock made which he hangs to his son's neck in order to lock him to life and make the subscribers surety for

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XVIII., pp. 363–384. Doolittle, *Social Life*, II., pp. 45–48. M. T. Yates, *Ancestral Worship*, *Missionary Conference* (of 1867), p. 367. Johnson, *Oriental Religions: China*, pp. 693–708. Gray's *China*, I., pp. 320–328. *China Review*, Vol. IV., p. 296. P. D. de Thiersant, *La Piété Filiale en Chine*, Paris, 1877. E. Faber in the *Chinese Recorder*, Vol. IX., pp. 329, 401.

Digitized by Google

his safety; adult females also wear a neck lock for the same purpose. Charms are common. One bears the inscription, "May you get the three *manys* and the nine *likes;*" another, "To obtain long eyebrowed longevity." The three *manys* are many years of happiness and life and many sons. Old brass mirrors to cure mad people are hung up by the rich in their halls, and figures or representations of the unicorn, of gourds,

Buddhist Priests.

tigers' claws, or the eight diagrams, are worn to insure good fortune or ward off sickness, fire, or fright. Stones or pieces of metal with short sentences cut upon them are almost always found suspended or tied about the persons of children and women, which are supposed to have great efficacy in preventing evil. The rich pay large sums for rare objects to promote this end.

Digitized by Google

In addition to their employment in the worship and burial of the dead and cultivation of glebe lands (some of which are very extensive[1]), priests resort to many expedients to increase their incomes, few of which have the improvement of their countrymen as a ruling motive. Some go around the streets collecting printed or written paper in baskets, to burn them lest the venerable names of Confucius or Buddha be defiled; others obtain a few pennies by writing inscriptions and charms on doors; and many in rural places get a good living off the lands owned by their temples. The priests of both sects are under the control of officials recognized by and amenable to the authorities, so that the vicious and unprincipled among them are soon restrained.

The Buddhists issue small books, called *Girdle Classics*, containing prayers addressed to the deity under whose protection the person has placed himself. Spells are made in great variety, some of them to be worn or pasted up in the house, while others are written on leaves, paper, or cloth, and burned, and their ashes thrown into a liquid for the patient or child to drink. These spells are sold by Rationalists, and consist of characters, like *fuh* ('happiness') or *shao* ('longevity'), fancifully combined. The god of doors, of the North Pole, Pwanku, the heavenly astronomer, the god of thunder and lightning, or typhoons, the god of medicine, demigods and genii of almost every name and power, are all invoked, and some of them by all persons. In shops the word *shin* is put up in a shrine and incense placed before it, all objects of fear and worship being included under this general term. The threshold is peculiarly sacred, and incense-sticks are lighted morning and evening at its side.[2]

The Chinese dread wandering and hungry ghosts of wicked men, and the priests are hired to celebrate a mass called *ta tsiao*, to appease these disturbers of human happiness, which, in its general purport, corresponds to All Souls' Day, and from its splendor and the general interest taken in its success is very popular. The streets at Canton are covered with awnings, and

[1] *Lettres Edifiantes*, Tome III., p. 33.

[2] *Lettres Edifiantes*, Tome IV., p. 310—where other ceremonies of the Taoists, to ward off pestilence, are described.

Digitized by Google

festoons of cheap silk, of brilliant colors, are hung across and along the streets. Chandeliers of glass are suspended at short intervals, alternating with small trays, on which paper figures in various attitudes, intended to illustrate some well-known scene in history, amuse the spectators. At night the glare of a thousand lamps shining through myriads of lustres lights up the whole scene in a gorgeous manner. The priests erect a staging somewhere in the vicinity, for the rehearsal of prayers to *Yen wang* (Yama or Pluto), and display tables covered with eatables for the hungry ghosts to feed on. Their acolytes mark the time when the half-starved ghosts, who have no children or friends to care for them, rush in and shoulder the viands, which they carry off for their year's supply. Bands of music chime in from time to time, to refresh these hungry spirits with the dulcet tones they once heard; for the Chinese, judging their gods by themselves, provide what is pleasing to those who pay for the entertainment, as well as to those who are supposed to be benefited by it. After the services are performed the crowd carry off what is left, but when this is permitted the priests sometimes cheat them with merely a cover of food on the tops of the baskets, the bottoms being filled with shavings.

Another festival in August is connected with this, called *shau i*, or 'burning clothes,' at which pieces of paper folded in the form of garments are burned for the use of the suffering ghosts, with a large quantity of what may be properly called *fiat money*, paper ingots which become valuable chiefly when they are burned. Paper houses with proper furniture, and puppets to represent household servants, are likewise made. Medhurst adds that "writings are drawn up and signed in the presence of witnesses to certify the conveyance of the property, stipulating that on its arrival in hades it shall be duly made over to the individuals specified in the bond; the houses, servants, clothes, money and all are then burned with the bond, the worshippers feeling confident that their friends obtain the benefit of what they have sent them." Thus "they make a covenant with the grave, and with hell they are at agreement." This festival, like all others, is attended with feasting and music. In order still further to provide for childless ghosts, their ancestral tablets are

Digitized by Google

collected in temples and placed together in a room set apart for the purpose, called *wu sz' tan*, or 'orbate temple,' and a man hired to attend and burn incense before them. The sensations which arise on going into a room of this sort, and seeing one or two hundred small wooden tablets standing in regular array, and knowing that each one, or each pair, is like the silent tombstone of an extinct family, are such as no hall full of staring idols can ever inspire. The tablets look old, discolored, and broken, covered with dust and black with smoke, so that the gilded characters are obscured, and one cannot behold them long in their silence and forgetfulness without almost feeling as if spirits still hovered around them. All these ghosts are supposed to be propitiated by the sacrifices on All Souls' Day.

The patronage given to idolatry and superstition is constant and general among all classes, and thousands of persons get their livelihood by shrewdly availing themselves of the fears of their countrymen. The peepul, *pu-tí* (*Ficus religiosa*) at the south and the Sophora at the north, with perhaps other aged trees, are worshipped for long life.[1] Special efforts are made from time to time to build or repair a temple or pagoda, in order to insure or recall prosperity to a place, and large sums are subscribed by the devout. A case occurred in 1843, which illustrates this spirit. One of the English officers brought an image of *Wa-kwang*, the god of fire, from Chinkiang fu, which he presented as a curiosity to a lady in Macao. It remained in her house several months, and on the breaking up of the establishment, previous to a return to India, it was exposed for sale at auction with the furniture. A large crowd collected, and the attention of the Chinese was attracted to this image, which they examined carefully to see if it had the genuine marks of its ordination upon it; for no image is supposed to be properly an object of worship until the spirit has been inaugurated into it by the prescribed ceremonies. Having satisfied themselves, the idol was purchased for thirty dollars by two or three zealous

[1] Compare C. F. Koeppen, *Die Religion des Buddha*, Berlin, 1857, who describes the peepul (Bôdhi) tree—the "symbol of the spread and growth of the Buddhist church"—in India. E. Bernouf, *Introduction à l'histoire du Buddhisme Indien*, Paris, 1844. *Notes and Queries on C. and J.*, Vol. III., p. 100.

Digitized by Google

persons, and carried off in triumph to a shop and respectfully installed in a room cleared for the purpose. A public meeting was shortly after called, and resolutions passed to improve the propitious opportunity to obtain and preserve the protecting power of so potent a deity, by erecting a pavilion where he would have a respectable lodgment and receive due worship. A subscription was thereupon started, some of its advocates putting down fifty and others thirty dollars, until about one thousand two hundred dollars were raised, with which a small lot was purchased on the island west of Macao, and a pavilion or temple erected where *Wa-kwang* was enshrined with pompous parade amid theatrical exhibitions, and a man hired to keep him and his domicile in good order.

No people are more enslaved by fear of the unknown than the Chinese, and none resort more frequently to sortilege to ascertain whether an enterprise will be successful or a proposed remedy avail to cure. This desire actuates all classes, and thousands and myriads of persons take advantage of it to their own profit. The tables of fortune-tellers and the shops of geomancers are met at street corners, and a strong inducement to repair to the temples is to cast lots as to the success of the prayers offered. One way of divining is to hold a bamboo root cut in halves, resembling in size and color a common potato, and let it drop as the petition is put up. Sometimes the worshipper drops it many times, in order to see if a majority of trials will not be favorable, and when disappointed the first time not unfrequently tries again, if mayhap he can force the gods to be more propitious. The devotee may determine himself what position of the blocks shall be deemed auspicious, but usually one face up and one down is regarded as promising. The countenances of worshippers as they leave the shrines, some beaming with hope and resolution to succeed, and others, notwithstanding their repeated knockings and divinings, going away with vexation and gloom written on their faces at the obduracy of the gods and sadness of their prospects, offer a study not less melancholy than instructive. "Such is the weakness of mortals: they dread, even after mature reflection, to undertake a project, and then enter blindly upon it at a chance after consulting chance itself as blind."

Digitized by Google

The fortune-tellers also consult fate by means of bamboo slips bearing certain characters, as the sixty-four diagrams, titles of poetical responses, or lists of names, etc. The applicant comes up to the table and states his desire; he wishes to know whether it will be fair weather, which of a dozen doctors shall be selected to cure his child, what sex an unborn infant will be, where his stolen property is, or any other matter. Selecting a slip, the diviner dissects the character into its component parts, or in some other way, and writes the parts upon a board lying before him, joining to them the time, the names of the person, five planets, colors, viscera, and other heterogeneous things, and from them all, putting on a most cabalistic, sapient look, educes a sentence which contains the required answer.

Consulting a Fortune-teller.

The man receives it as confidently as if he had entered the sybil's cave and heard her voice, pays his fee, and goes away. Others, less shrewd, refer to books in which the required answer is contained in a sort of equivocal delphian distich. The Chinese method of sortilege is not far different from that practised by the ancient Romans. "The lots preserved at Preneste were slips of oak with ancient characters engraved on them. They were shaken up together by a boy, and one of them was drawn for the person who consulted the oracle. They remind us of the Runic staves. Similar divining lots were found in other places."[1]

[1] Niebuhr, *History of Rome*, Vol. I., p. 246. See, further, Doolittle's *Social Life*, Vol. II., Chap. IV. Gray's *China*, Chap. XII. Prof. Douglas, *China*, Chap. XV.

Digitized by Google

The purchase of a building lot, and especially the selection of a grave, involve much expense, sortilege, and inquiry. When a succession of misfortunes comes upon a family, they will sometimes disinter all their relatives and bury them in a new place to remove the ill luck. Before a house is built a written prayer is tied to a pole stuck in the ground, petitioning for good luck, that no evil spirits may arise from beneath; when the ridge-pole is laid another prayer is pasted on and charms hung to it to insure the building against fire; and lastly, when the house is done it is dedicated to some patron, and petitions offered for its safety. Prayers are sometimes offered according to forms, at others the suppliant himself speaks. Two middle-aged women, attended by a maid-servant, were once found opposite Canton in the fields among the graves. They had placed a small paper shrine upon a tomb near the pathway, and one of them was kneeling before it, her lips moving in prayer; there was nothing in the shrine, but over it was written the most common petition known in China, "Ask and ye shall receive."

Answers are looked for in various ways. A man was once met at dusk repairing a lonely grave before which candles were burning and plates of rice and cups of spirits arranged. He knelt, and knocking his head began to repeat some words in a half audible manner, when he was asked if the spirits of his ancestors heard his supplications. At the instant a slight puff of air blew the candles, when he replied, "Yes; see, they have come; don't interrupt me." Contingent vows are often made, and useful acts performed in case the answer be favorable. A sick man in Macao once made a vow that if he recovered he would repave a bad piece of road—which he actually performed, aided a little by his neighbors; but it was deemed eminently unlucky that a toper who was somewhat flustered, passing soon after, should fall into the public well. Persons sometimes insult the gods, spit at them or whip them, or even break the ancestral tablets, in their vexation at having been deluded into foolish deeds or misled by divination. Legends are told of the vengeance which has followed such impiety, as well as the rewards attending a different course; and the *Kanying*

Digitized by Google

Pien, or 'Book of Rewards and Punishments,' has strengthened these sentiments by its stories of the results of human acts.

The worship of street divinities is not altogether municipal; some of the shrines in Canton are resorted to so much by women as to obstruct the path. The unsocial character of heathenism is observable at such places and in temples; however great the crowd may be, each one worships by himself as much as if no one else were present. Altars are erected in fields, on which a smooth stone is placed, where offerings are presented and libations poured out to secure a good crop. Few farmers omit all worship in the spring to the gods of the land and grain; and some go further and present a thanksgiving after harvest. Temples are open night and day, and in towns are the resort of crowds of idle fellows. Worshippers go on with their devotions amid all the hubbub, strike the drum and bell to arouse the god, burn paper prayers, and knock their heads upon the ground to implore his blessing, and then retire.

The Chinese collectively spend enormous sums in their idolatry, though they are more economical of time and money than the Hindus. Rich families give much for the services of priests, papers, candles, etc., at the interment of their friends, but when a large sacrifice is provided none goes to the priests, who are prohibited meat. The aggregate outlay to the whole people is very large, made up of repairs of temples, purchasing idols, petty costs, such as incense-sticks, candles, paper, etc., charms and larger sacrifices prepared from time to time. The sum cannot of course be ascertained, but if the daily expenditure of each person be estimated at one-third of a cent, or four cash, the total will exceed four hundred millions of dollars per annum, and this estimate is more likely to be under than over the mark, owing to the universality and constancy of the daily service.

This brief sketch of Chinese religious character will be incomplete without some notice of the benevolent institutions found among them. Good acts are required as proofs of sincerity; the classics teach benevolence, and the religious books

Digitized by Google

of the Buddhists inculcate compassion to the poor and relief of the sick. Private alms of rice or clothes are frequently given, and the modes of collecting the poor-tax are very direct and economical, bringing the householders into some intercourse with the beggars in their neighborhoods, but offering no rewards to tramps and idlers. A retreat for poor aged and infirm or blind people is situated near the east side of Canton, the expenses of which are stated at about seven thousand dollars, but the number of persons relieved is not mentioned. The peculation and bad faith of the managers vitiate many of these institutions, and indispose the charitable to patronize them. Lazarettos are established in all large towns in Southern China, where a large entrance fee will secure a comfortable living for these outcasts to the end of their days; the prevalence of the disease leads everybody to aid the measures taken to restrict its ravages. A full account of the report issued by the directors of a long-established foundling hospital in Shanghai is given in the *Chinese Repository* (Vol. XIV.), and shows the methodical character of the people, and that no priests are joined in its management. In the report full credit is given to the benefactors, and an appeal made for funds to carry it on, as it is nearly out of supplies. Various modes of raising money are proposed, and arguments are brought forward to induce people to give, all in the same manner as is common with charitable institutions in western lands, as its closing paragraph shows:

If, for the extension of kindness to our fellow creatures, and to those poor and destitute who have no father and mother, all the good and benevolent would daily give one cash ($\frac{1}{1100}$ of a dollar), it would be sufficient for the maintenance of the foundlings one day. Let no one consider a small good unmeritorious, nor a small subscription as of no avail. Either you may induce others to subscribe by the vernal breeze from your mouth, or you may nourish the blade of benevolence in the field of happiness, or cherish the already sprouting bud. Thus by taking advantage of opportunities as they present themselves, and using your endeavors to accomplish your object, you may immeasurably benefit and extend the institution.

The deaths are reported as being nearly one-half of the admissions, and the number of inmates about one hundred and thirty in all. The details of the receipts and expenditures are given

Digitized by Google

at the end of the report in a business-like manner. The annual disbursement was about one thousand five hundred and fifty dollars, and the receipts from all sources more than that, so that a balance of five thousand dollars is reported on hand, four-fifths of which was derived from interest on subscriptions invested and on wares from pawnbrokers.

Similar establishments are found in all large towns, some of them partly supported by the government. That in Canton was founded in 1698, and contains accommodations for three hundred children, whose annual support was reckoned at three thousand five hundred dollars in 1833, at which date the money was filched from foreigners by a tax on their ships. These hospitals seem to be of modern origin, less than two centuries old, and may have been imitated from or suggested by the Roman Catholics. Candida, a distinguished convert about 1710, did much to establish them and show the excellence of the religion she professed. Mr. Milne, who visited one at Ningpo, says, after entering the court: "A number of coarse-looking women were peeping through the lattice at us, with squallababies at their breasts and squalid boys and girls at their heels; these women are the nurses, and these children are the foundlings, each woman having two or three to look after. But I have rarely beheld such a collection of filthy, unwashen, ragged brats. There are at present between sixty and seventy children, the boys on one side, the girls on the other. Boys remain here till the age of fourteen, when they are hired out or adopted; girls stay till sixteen, when they are betrothed as wives or taken as concubines or servants. It is supported by the rental of lands and houses, and by an annual tax of thirty-six stone or *shih* (about five hundred pounds) of rice from each district in the department."

In large towns other voluntary societies are found, having for their object the relief of suffering, which ought to be mentioned, as the Chinese have not been fairly credited with what they do in this line. Humane societies for restoring life to persons rescued from the water, and providing coffins if they are dead, exist along the riverine towns. Associations to give decent interment to the poor in a public potter's field are found in

Digitized by Google

large cities, where gratuitous vaccination is often given to all who apply. Soup-kitchens are constantly opened as cold weather comes on, and houses prepared for vagrants and outcasts who have been suddenly reduced. Societies for the relief of indigent and virtuous widows are of long standing, and a kind of savings bank for the purpose of aiding a man to get married or to bury his parent exists among the people.[1]

Charity is a virtue which thrives poorly in the selfish soil of heathenism, but even badly managed establishments like these are praiseworthy, and promise something better when higher teachings shall have been engrafted into the public mind. The government is obliged to expend large sums almost every year for relieving the necessities of the starving and the distressed, and strong calls are made on the rich to give to these objects. During the great famine in 1877–78 in the north-eastern provinces, the common habits of industry, thrift, and order were united with these practices of voluntary benevolence among the people, and aided greatly in enabling those who distributed food and money to reach the greatest number possible with the means. The sufferers had already learned that violence and robbery would only increase their miseries and hasten their end.

The general condition of religion among the Chinese is effete; and the stately formalities of imperial worship, the doctrines of Confucius, the ceremonies of the Buddhists, the sorceries of the Rationalists, alike fail to comfort and instruct. But the fear of evil spirits and the worship of ancestors, the two beliefs which hold all ranks and abilities in their thrall, are still strong; and the principal sway the two sects exert is owing to the connection of their priests with the ceremonies of burial. Each has exerted its greatest possible power over the people, but all have failed to impart present happiness or assure future joy to their votaries. Confucianism is cold and unsatisfactory to the affectionate, the anguished, or the inquiring mind, and the transcendentalism of Rationalism or the vagaries of Bud-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIV., pp. 177–195. Lockhart, *Medical Missionary in China*, Chapter II., London, 1861.

Digitized by Google

dhism are a little worse. All classes are the prey of unfounded fears and superstitions, and dwell in a mist of ignorance and error which the light of true religion and knowledge alone can dissipate.

Besides the two leading idolatrous sects, there are also many combinations existing among the people, partly religious and partly political, one of which, the *Pih-lien kiao*, or the Triad Society, has already been mentioned in Chapter VIII. The *Wăn kiang*, or 'Incense-burning sect,' is also denounced in the *Sacred Commands*, but has not been mentioned in late times. The Triad Society is comparatively peaceful throughout China Proper in overt acts, the members of the auxiliary societies contenting themselves with keeping alive the spirit of resistance to the Manchus, getting new members, and countenancing one another in their opposition; but in Siam, Singapore, Malacca, and the Archipelago, it has become a powerful body, and great cruelties are committed on those who refuse to join. The members are admitted with formalities bearing strong resemblance to those of the Freemasons, and the professed objects of the society are the same. The novice swears before an idol to maintain inviolate secrecy, and stands under naked swords while taking the oath, which is then read to him; he afterward cuts off a cock's head, the usual form of swearing among all Chinese, intimating that a like fate awaits him if treacherous. There are countersigns known among the members, consisting of grips and motions of the fingers. Such is the secrecy of their operations in China, however, that very little is known of their numbers, internal organization, or character; the dislike of their machinations is the best security against their ultimate success. Local delusions, caused by some sharp-witted fellow, now and then arise in one part and another of the country, but they are speedily put down or dissipate of themselves. There has transpired not an item of news concerning any of these seditious organizations since the suppression of the Tai-ping rebellion in 1868. None of them are allowed to erect temples or make a public exhibition or procession, and exhortations are from time to time issued by the magistrates against them; while the penalties annexed to the statute against all illegal associations give

Digitized by Google

the rulers great power to crush whatever they may deem suspicious or treasonable.[1]

The introduction of Islamism into China was so gradual that it is not easy to state the date or manner. The trade between China and ports lying on the Arabian Sea early attracted its adherents (called *Hwui-hwui kiao*) to the Middle Kingdom, and as long ago as the Tang dynasty its missionaries came to the seaports, especially of Canton and Hangchau. They likewise formed a large portion of the caravans which went to and fro through Central Asia, and seem to have been received without resistance, if not with favor, until they grew by natural increase to be a large and an integral part of the population. Mosques were built, schools taught, pilgrimages made, books printed, and converts allowed to exercise their rites without serious hindrance almost from the first. The two great features of the faith—the existence of one only true God and the wickedness of idolatry—have not been kept hidden; but, though promulgated, they have not been accepted outside of the sect and have not made the least impression upon the State religion.

The reasons for this are not far to seek. The rigid rule that the Koran must not be translated has kept this book out of reach of the literati, and the faithful could not even appeal to it in support of their belief, for not one in thousands knew how to read it. The Chinese naturally neither could nor would learn Arabic, and there was no sword hanging over them, as was the case in Persia, to force them into Moslem ranks. The simplicity of the State religion and ancestral worship gave very little handle to iconoclasts to declaim against polytheism and idolatry. The prohibition of pork to all true believers seemed a senseless injunction among a frugal people which depended largely on swine for meat and had never felt any the worse, bodily or mentally, from its use. The inhibition of wine, moreover, was needless among so temperate a race as the Chinese. Those who liked to keep Fridays or other days as fasts, practise circumcision as a symbol of faith, and worship in a temple with-

[1] Compare the *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XVIII., p. 281.

Digitized by Google

out images, could do so if they chose; but they must obey the laws of the land and honor the Emperor as good subjects. They have done so, and, generally speaking, have never been molested on account of their beliefs. Their chief strength lies in the northern part. The recent struggle in the north-western provinces, which cost so many lives, began almost wholly at the instigation of Turk or Tartar sectaries, and was a simple trial of strength as to who should rule. While cities and towns in Kansuh occupied by them were destroyed (in 1860–73), the two hundred thousand Moslems in Peking remained perfectly quiet and were unmolested by the authorities.

Some hold office, and pass through the examinations to obtain it, most of them being military men. In their mosques they exhibit a tablet with the customary ascription of reverence to the Emperor, but place the Prophet's name behind. They have no images or other tablets in the mosques, but suspend scrolls referring to the tenets of the faith. The Plain Pagoda in Canton was built during the Tang dynasty and called 'Remember-the-Holy Temple;' it is one hundred and sixty-five cubits high; it was built by foreigners, who used to go to the top during the fifth and sixth moons at dawn and pray to a golden weathercock there, crying out in a loud voice. These notices are taken from the native *Topography*, where also is reference to the tomb of a maternal uncle of Mohammed buried north of the city. The mosques throughout China are similar in their arrangement and resemble temples in many respects, the large arches and inscriptions in Arabic on the walls forming the chief peculiarities. Arabic is studied under great difficulties by the mollahs, and few of the faithful can read or speak it, contenting themselves with observing its ritual relating to circumcision, abstinence from pork, and idolatry. So far as can be seen, their worship of the true God under the name of *Chu*, or Lord, has not had the least influence on the polytheism of the nation or in elevating the tone of morals. A well-digested summary of their tenets has been published at Canton by an unknown author under the title of *True Comments on the Correct Doctrine*, in two volumes, pp. 240, 1801. No restrictions have been laid on this sect by the government during the present dynasty; the

Digitized by Google

struggle which continued during the last twenty years between them was simply a question of dominion, not of religion.

Mr. Milne visited the mosque in Ningpo and made the acquaintance of the mollah. "He is a man about forty-five years of age, of a remarkably benign and intelligent countenance and gentlemanly bearing. His native place is Shantung, but his ancestors came from Medina. He readily reads the Arabic scriptures and talks that language fluently, but can neither read nor write Chinese, which is somewhat surprising considering he can talk it well, was born in China, and is a minister of religion among the Chinese. His supporters number between twenty and thirty families, and one or two of his adherents are officers. He took me into the place of worship which adjoins his apartments. A flight of steps leads into a room, covered with a plain roof, on either side of which lay a mass of dusty furniture and agricultural implements; the pillars are ornamented with sentences out of the Koran. Facing you is an ornamented pair of small doors hung upon the wall, within which the sacred seat is supposed to lie, and on one side is a convenient bookcase containing their scriptures. He showed me his usual officiating dress—a white robe with a painted turban—but he never wears this costume except at service, appearing in the Chinese habit at other times. They have a weekly day of rest, which falls on our Thursday. On asking if I might be permitted to attend any of their services, he replied that if their adherents had business on that day they did not trouble themselves to attend. The stronghold of his religion is in Hangchau fu, where are several mosques, but the low state of Mohammedanism seemed to dampen his spirits. Happening to see near the entrance a tablet similar to that found in every other temple, with the inscription, 'The Emperor, ever-living, may he live forever!' I asked him how he could allow such a blasphemous monument to stand in a spot which he regarded as consecrated to the worship of Aloha, as he styles the true God. He protested he did not and never could worship it, and pointed to the low place given it as evidence of this, and added that it was only for the sake of expediency it was allowed lodgment in the building, for if they were ever charged with disloyalty by the enemies of

Digitized by Google

their faith they could appeal to it! His reigning desire was to make a pilgrimage to Mecca, and he inquired particularly respecting the price of a passage."[1]

Since the introduction of steamers great numbers of pilgrims visit Mecca, who cannot fail to extend the knowledge of western lands as they return among their people. The Mohammedan inhabitants of Turkestan and Ílí are distinguished into three classes by the color and shape of their turbans; one has red and another white sugar-loaf, the third the common Arab turban. The number throughout the region north of the Yangtsz' River cannot be stated, but it probably exceeds ten millions. In some places they form a third of the population; a missionary in Sz'chuen reckons eighty thousand living in one of its cities.[2]

The existence of Jews in China has long been known, but the information possessed relative to their past number, condition, and residences is very imperfect. They were once numbered by thousands, and are supposed by Mr. Finn to have belonged to the restoration from Chaldea, as they had portions of Malachi and Zechariah, adopted the era of Seleucus, and had many rabbinical customs. They probably entered China through the north-western route, and there is no good reason for rejecting their own date, during the Han dynasty. Within the last three centuries all have lived in Kaifung, the capital of Honan, wherever they may have lived in earlier days. Marco Polo just mentions their existence at Cambaluc, as do John of Montecorvino and Marignolli about the same time, and Ibn Batuta at an earlier date. In the Chinese annals of the Mongol dynasty the Jews are first referred to in 1329, and again in 1354, when they were invited to Peking in the decline of its power to join the army of the Imperialists. They are styled *Shu-hwuh*, or Jehudi, and must have been numerous enough

---

[1] Compare Milne's *Life in China*, p. 96, London, 1857.

[2] *Chinese Repository*, Vols. XIII., p. 32; XX., pp. 77–84; II., p. 256. De Guignes, *Voyages à Peking*, Tome II., p. 68. Gray, *China*, I., pp. 137–142. Edkins, *Religions in China*, Chap. XV. *Annales de la Foi*, II., p. 245. Reinaud, *Relation des Voyages à la Chine.*

Digitized by Google

to make them worth noticing with Mohammedans, and their help in men and means implored; but no hint is given of their places of abode. Further research into Chinese histories may disclose other notices of their existence.

The Jews were early known by the term of *Tiao-kin kiao*, or the 'sect which pulls out the sinew.' De Guignes says they are also called *Lan-mao Hwui-tsz'*, or 'Mohammedans with Blue Caps,' because they wore a blue cap in the synagogue; but this latter must be a local name. The first description of this colony was written by the Jesuit Gozani, about the year 1700, and shows that the *Tsing-chin sz'*, or 'Pure and True Temple,' was then a large establishment consisting of four separate courts, various buildings enclosed for residence, worship, and work. The *Li-pai sz'*, or Synagogue, measured about sixty by forty feet, having a portico with a double row of four columns before it. In the centre of the room, between the rows of pillars, is the throne of Moses, a magnificent and elevated chair with an embroidered cushion, upon which they place the book of the law while it is read.

This account of Gozani remained as the latest information until Bishop Smith sent two native Christians from Shanghai to Kaifung to learn the present condition of the Jews. They were ignorant of Hebrew, but had been instructed how to copy the letters, and did their work very creditably, bringing away with them some portions of the Old Testament written on vellum-like paper of an old date. The synagogue had suffered during the great inundation of 1849, and the colony of two hundred individuals was found in abject poverty, ignorance, and dejection. Not one of them knew a word of Hebrew, and many of their buildings had been sold for the materials to support their lives.

In February, 1866, Rev. W. A. P. Martin, President of the Tung-wăn Kwan at Peking, visited Kaifung, and learned that during the interval of fifteen years they had become still more impoverished. Having learned from the mollah of a mosque where they lived, he "passed through streets crowded with curious spectators to an open square, in the centre of which there stood a solitary stone. On one side was an inscription commem-

Digitized by Google

orating the erection of the synagogue in A.D. 1183, and on the other of its rebuilding in 1488. . . . 'Are there among you any of the family of Israel?' I inquired. 'I am one,' responded a young man, whose face corroborated his assertion; and then another and another stepped forth, until I saw before me representatives of six of the seven families into which the colony is divided. There, on that melancholy spot where the very foundations of the synagogue had been torn from the ground, and there no longer remained one stone upon another, they confessed, with shame and grief, that their holy and beautiful house had been demolished by their own hands. It had long been, they said, in a ruinous condition; they had no money to make repairs. They had lost all knowledge of the sacred tongue; the traditions of the fathers were no longer handed down, and their ritual worship had ceased to be observed. They had at last yielded to the pressure of necessity, and disposed of the timbers and stones of the venerable edifice to obtain relief for their bodily wants."

They estimated their number at between three hundred and four hundred persons, all of them poor, and, now that the centre of attraction had disappeared, likely to become dispersed and lost. The entrance tablet in gilt characters, stating that the building was "Israel's Possession," had been placed in a mosque, and some of the colony had entered its worship.

Since that date one of their own race, now Bishop Schereschewsky, of Shanghai, has also visited them, but the literati of the city refused to allow him to remain among them. A company of the colony came up to Peking about twelve years ago, but, finding that no money was to be obtained for their support, ere long went back. It is probable that in a few years their unity will be so destroyed in the removal of their synagogue that they will be quite mingled with their countrymen. One or two are now Buddhist priests, others are literary graduates, and all of them are ignorant of their peculiar rites and festivals. Like the Mohammedans, they have never translated their sacred books into Chinese; but during their long existence in China they have remained in-

Digitized by Google

deed, as Dr. Martin says, like "a rock rent from the sides of Mount Zion by some great national catastrophe, and projected into the central Plain of China, which has stood there while the centuries rolled by, sublime in its antiquity and solitude."[1]

---

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XX., pp. 436–466. Yule's *Marco Polo*, 1871, Vol. I., p. 309. *Cathay*, pp. 225, 341, 497. James Finn, *Jews in China*, 1843. Bp. Smith, *Mission of Inquiry to Jews at Kai-fung*, 1851. Dr. Martin, *The Chinese*, N. Y., 1881. *Journal of Royal Geog. Soc.*, London, Vol. XXVII., p. 297. *Versuch einer Geschichte der Juden in Sina, nebst P. J. Kögler's Beschreibung ihrer heiligen Bücher*, herausg. von C. G. von Murr, Halle, 1806. Milne, *Life in China*, p. 408.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIX.

CHRISTIAN MISSIONS AMONG THE CHINESE.

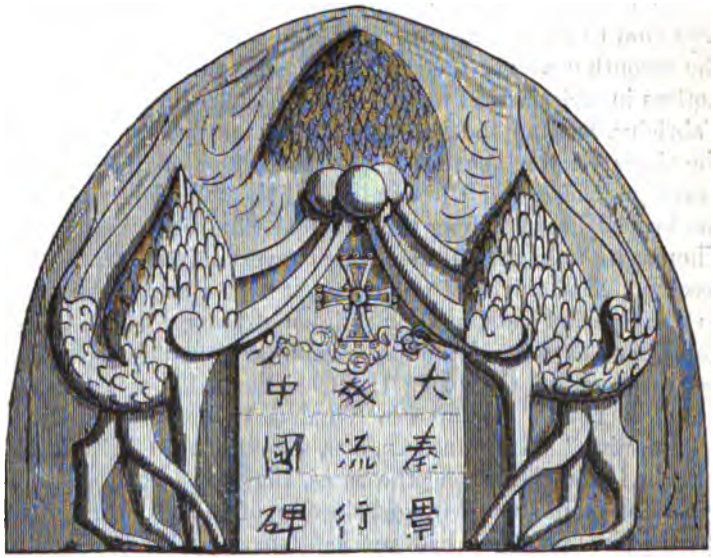
The earliest recorded attempt to impart the knowledge of the true God to the Chinese ascribes it to the Nestorian church in the seventh century; though the voice of tradition, and detached notices in ecclesiastical writers of the Eastern Empire collated by Fabricius, lead to the belief that not many years elapsed after the times of the apostles before the sound of the gospel was heard in China and Chin-India. If the tradition contained in the breviary used among the Malabar Christians, that by Saint Thomas himself the Chinese were converted to the truth, be not received, Mosheim well remarks that "we may believe that at an early period the Christian religion extended to the Chinese, Seres, and Tartars. There are various arguments collected from learned men to show that the Christian faith was carried to China, if not by the apostle Thomas, by the first teachers of Christianity." Arnobius, A.D. 300, speaks of the Christian deeds done in India, and among the Seres, Persians, and Medes. The Nestorian monks who brought the eggs of the silk-worm to Constantinople (A.D. 551) had resided long in China, where it is reasonable to suppose they were not the first nor the only ones who went thither to preach the gospel. The extent of their success must be left to conjecture, but "if such beams have travelled down to us through the darkness of so many ages, it is reasonable to believe they emanated from a brighter source."

The time of the arrival of the Nestorians in China cannot be specified certainly, but there are grounds for placing it as early as A.D. 505. Ebedjesus Sobiensis remarks that "the Catholicos Salibazacha created the metropolitan sees of Sina and Samarcand, though some say they were constituted by Achæus

Digitized by Google

and Silas." Silas was patriarch of the Nestorians from A.D. 505 to 520; and Achæus was archbishop at Seleucia in 415. The metropolitan bishop of Sina is also mentioned in a list of those subject to this patriarch, published by Amro, and it is placed in the list after that of India, according to the priority of foundation.

The only record yet found in China itself of the labors of the Nestorians is the celebrated monument which was discovered at Sí-ngan fu in Shensí, in 1625; and though the discussion re-



Head of Nestorian Tablet at Si-ngan.

garding its authenticity has been rather warm between the Jesuits and their opponents, the weight of evidence, both internal and external, leaves no doubt regarding its verity. It has been found quite recently to be in good preservation, and rubbings taken from it are nearly perfect. The Syriac characters composing the signatures of Olopun and his associates have made it an object of much interest to the natives; these, as well as the singular cross on its top (seen in the illustration), have doubtless contributed to its preservation. It was set up in 1859 by a

Digitized by Google

Chinese who had so much regard for it as to rebuild it in the brick wall where it had once stood outside of the city. The stone seems to be a coarse marble.

It has been often translated since the first attempt by Boime, published with the original by Kircher in Holland. In 1845 Dr. E. C. Bridgman published Kircher's Latin translation with the French version of Dalquié, and another of his own, which brought it more into notice. The style is very terse, and the exact meaning not easily perceived even by learned natives. As Dr. Bridgman says, "Were a hundred Chinese students employed on the document they would probably each give a different view of the meaning in some parts of the inscription." This is apparent when four or five of them are compared. The last one, by A. Wylie, of the London Mission at Shanghai, goes over the whole subject with a fullness and care which leaves little to be desired.[1]

TABLET EULOGIZING THE PROPAGATION OF THE ILLUSTRIOUS RELIGION IN CHINA, WITH A PREFACE; COMPOSED BY KING-TSING, A PRIEST OF THE SYRIAN CHURCH.

Behold the unchangeably true and invisible, who existed through all eternity without origin; the far-seeing perfect intelligence, whose mysterious existence is everlasting; operating on primordial substance he created the universe, being more excellent than all holy intelligences, inasmuch as he is the source of all that is honorable. This is our eternal true lord God, triune and mysterious in substance. He appointed the cross as the means for determining the four cardinal points, he moved the original spirit, and produced the two principles of nature; the sombre void was changed, and heaven and earth were opened out; the sun and moon revolved, and day and night commenced; having perfected all inferior objects, he then made the first man; upon him he bestowed an excellent disposition, giving him in charge the government of all created beings; man, acting out the original principles of his nature, was pure and unostentatious; his unsullied and expansive mind was free from the least inordinate desire; until Satan introduced the seeds of falsehood, to deteriorate his purity of principle; the opening thus commenced in his virtue

[1] Visdelou in *Bibliotheque Oriental*, Vol. IV. Kircher's *China Illustrata*, Part I., Antwerp, 1667. *Chinese Repository*, XIV., pp. 201–229. Huc, *Christianity in China*, I., pp. 49–58. Wylie, *North China Herald*, 1855, reprinted in *Journal of Am. Oriental Soc.*, Vol. V., p. 277. Archimandrite Palladius published a Russian version. Williamson, *Journeys in North China*, I., p. 382. *Le Catholicisme en Chine au VIII^e Siècle de notre ère avec une nouvelle traduction de l'inscription de Sy-nganfou*, par P. D. de Thiersant, Paris, 1877.

Digitized by Google

gradually enlarged, and by this crevice in his nature was obscured and rendered vicious; hence three hundred and sixty-five sects followed each other in continuous track, inventing every species of doctrinal complexity; while some pointed to material objects as the source of their faith, others reduced all to vacancy, even to the annihilation of the two primeval principles; some sought to call down blessings by prayers and supplications, while others by an assumption of excellence held themselves up as superior to their fellows; their intellects and thoughts continually wavering, their minds and affections incessantly on the move, they never obtained their vast desires, but being exhausted and distressed they revolved in their own heated atmosphere; till by an accumulation of obscurity they lost their path, and after long groping in darkness they were unable to return. Thereupon, our Trinity being divided in nature, the illustrious and honorable Messiah, veiling his true dignity, appeared in the world as a man; angelic powers promulgated the glad tidings, a virgin gave birth to the Holy One in Syria; a bright star announced the felicitous event, and Persians[1] observing the splendor came to present tribute; the ancient dispensation, as declared by the twenty-four holy men,[2] was then fulfilled, and he laid down great principles for the government of families and kingdoms; he established the new religion of the silent operation of the pure spirit of the Triune; he rendered virtue subservient to direct faith; he fixed the extent of the eight boundaries,[3] thus completing the truth and freeing it from dross; he opened the gate of the three constant principles,[4] introducing life and destroying death; he suspended the bright sun to invade the chambers of darkness, and the falsehoods of the devil were thereupon defeated; he set in motion the vessel of mercy by which to ascend to the bright mansions, whereupon rational beings were then released; having thus completed the manifestation of his power, in clear day he ascended to his true station. Twenty-seven sacred books[5] have been left, which disseminate intelligence by unfolding the original transforming principles. By the rule for admission, it is the custom to apply the water of baptism, to wash away all superficial show and to cleanse and purify the neophytes. As a seal, they hold the cross, whose influence is reflected in every direction, uniting all without distinction. As they strike the wood, the fame of their benevolence is diffused abroad; worshipping toward the east, they hasten on the way to life and glory; they pre-

[1] *Po-sz'*, 'Persians.' This name was well known to the Chinese at that time, being the designation of an extensive sect then located in the Empire, and the name of a nation with which they had held commercial and political intercourse for several centuries. The statement here is in admirable harmony with the general tradition of the early church, that the Magi or wise men mentioned in Matthew's gospel were no other than philosophers of the Parsee sect.

[2] The "holy men" denote the writers of the books of the Old Testament.

[3] The "eight boundaries" are inexplicable; some refer them to the beatitudes.

[4] The "three constant principles" may perhaps mean faith, hope, and charity.

[5] Exactly the number we have in the New Testament.

Digitized by Google

serve the beard to symbolize their outward actions, they shave the crown to indicate the absence of inward affections; they do not keep slaves, but put noble and mean all on an equality; they do not amass wealth, but cast all their property into the common stock; they fast, in order to perfect themselves by self-inspection; they submit to restraints, in order to strengthen themselves by silent watchfulness; seven times a day they have worship and praise, for the benefit of the living and the dead; once in seven days they sacrifice, to cleanse the heart and return to purity.

It is difficult to find a name to express the excellence of the true and unchangeable doctrine; but as its meritorious operations are manifestly displayed, by accommodation it is named the Illustrious Religion. Now without holy men, principles cannot become expanded; without principles, holy men cannot become magnified; but with holy men and right principles, united as the two parts of a signet, the world becomes civilized and enlightened.

In the time of the accomplished Emperor Taitsung, the illustrious and magnificent founder of the dynasty, among the enlightened and holy men who arrived was the Most-virtuous Olopun, from the country of Syria. Observing the azure clouds, he bore the true sacred books; beholding the direction of the winds, he braved difficulties and dangers. In the year A.D. 635 he arrived at Chang-an; the Emperor sent his Prime Minister, Duke Fang Hiuenling; who, carrying the official staff to the west border, conducted his guest into the interior; the sacred books were translated in the imperial library, the sovereign investigated the subject in his private apartments; when becoming deeply impressed with the rectitude and truth of the religion, he gave special orders for its dissemination. In the seventh month of the year A.D. 638 the following imperial proclamation was issued:

"Right principles have no invariable name, holy men have no invariable station; instruction is established in accordance with the locality, with the object of benefiting the people at large. The Greatly-virtuous Olopun, of the kingdom of Syria, has brought his sacred books and images from that distant part, and has presented them at our chief capital. Having examined the principles of this religion, we find them to be purely excellent and natural; investigating its originating source, we find it has taken its rise from the establishment of important truths; its ritual is free from perplexing expressions, its principles will survive when the framework is forgot; it is beneficial to all creatures; it is advantageous to mankind. Let it be published throughout the Empire, and let the proper authority build a Syrian church in the capital in the Í-ning Way, which shall be governed by twenty-one priests. When the virtue of the Chau dynasty declined, the rider on the azure ox ascended to the west; the principles of the great Tang becoming resplendent, the Illustrious breezes have come to fan the East."

Orders were then issued to the authorities to have a true portrait of the Emperor taken; when it was transferred to the wall of the church, the dazzling splendor of the celestial visage irradiated the Illustrious portals. The sacred traces emitted a felicitous influence, and shed a perpetual splendor over the holy precincts. According to the Illustrated Memoir of the Western Regions, and the historical books of the Han and Wei dynasties, the kingdom of Syria reaches south to the Coral Sea; on the north it joins the Gem Moun-

Digitized by Google

tains; on the west it extends toward the borders of the immortals and the flowery forests; on the east it lies open to the violent winds and tideless waters. The country produces fire-proof cloth, life-restoring incense, bright moon-pearls, and night-lustre gems. Brigands and robbers are unknown, but the people enjoy happiness and peace. None but Illustrious laws prevail; none but the virtuous are raised to sovereign power. The land is broad and ample, and its literary productions are perspicuous and clear.

The Emperor Kautsung respectfully succeeded his ancestor, and was still more beneficent toward the institution of truth. In every province he caused Illustrious churches to be erected, and ratified the honor conferred upon Olopun, making him the great conservator of doctrine for the preservation of the State. While this doctrine pervaded every channel, the State became enriched and tranquillity abounded. Every city was full of churches, and the royal family enjoyed lustre and happiness. In the year A.D. 699 the Buddhists, gaining power, raised their voices in the eastern metropolis;[1] in the year A.D. 718, some low fellows excited ridicule and spread slanders in the western capital. At that time there was the chief priest Lo-han, the Greatly-virtuous Kie-leih, and others of noble estate from the golden regions, lofty-minded priests, having abandoned all worldly interests; who unitedly maintained the grand principles and preserved them entire to the end.

The high-principled Emperor Hiuentsung caused the Prince of Ning and others, five princes in all, personally to visit the felicitous edifice; he established the place of worship; he restored the consecrated timbers which had been temporarily thrown down; and re-erected the sacred stones which for a time had been desecrated.

In 742 orders were given to the great general Kau Lih-sz', to send the five sacred portraits and have them placed in the church, and a gift of a hundred pieces of silk accompanied these pictures of intelligence. Although the dragon's beard was then remote, their bows and swords were still within reach; while the solar horns sent forth their rays, and celestial visages seemed close at hand.[2]

In 744 the priest Kih-ho, in the kingdom of Syria, looking toward the star (of China), was attracted by its transforming influence, and observing the sun (*i.e.*, Emperor), came to pay court to the most honorable. The Emperor commanded the priest Lo-han, the priest Pu-lun, and others, seven in all, together with the Greatly-virtuous Kih-ho, to perform a service of merit in the Hing-king palace. Thereupon the Emperor composed mottoes for the sides of the church, and the tablets were graced with the royal inscriptions; the accumulated gems emitted their effulgence, while their sparkling brightness vied with the ruby clouds; the transcripts of intelligence suspended in the

[1] "Eastern metropolis" is *Tung Chau*, literally 'Eastern Chau.' The Empire was at this time under the government of the Empress Wu Tsih-tien, who had removed her residence from Chang-an to Lohyang in Honan.

[2] These personages are the first five Emperors of the Tang dynasty, Hiuentsung's predecessors. Their portraits were so admirably painted that they seemed to be present, their arms could almost be handled, and their foreheads, or "horns of the sun," radiated their intelligence.

Digitized by Google

void shot forth their rays as reflected by the sun; the bountiful gifts exceeded the height of the southern hills; the bedewing favors were deep as the eastern sea. Nothing is beyond the range of right principle, and what is permissible may be identified; nothing is beyond the power of the holy man, and that which is practicable may be related.

The accomplished and enlightened Emperor Suhtsung rebuilt the Illustrious churches in Ling-wu and four other places; great benefits were conferred, and felicity began to increase; great munificence was displayed, and the imperial State became established.

The accomplished and military Emperor Taitsung magnified the sacred succession, and honored the latent principle of nature; always, on the incarnation-day, he bestowed celestial incense, and ordered the performance of a service of merit; he distributed of the imperial viands, in order to shed a glory on the Illustrious Congregation. Heaven is munificent in the dissemination of blessings, whereby the benefits of life are extended; the holy man embodies the original principle of virtue, whence he is able to counteract noxious influences.

Our sacred and sage-like, accomplished and military Emperor Kienchung appointed the eight branches of government, according to which he advanced or degraded the intelligent and dull; he opened up the nine categories, by means of which he renovated the illustrious decrees; his transforming influence pervaded the most abstruse principles, while openness of heart distinguished his devotions. Thus, by correct and enlarged purity of principle, and undeviating consistency in sympathy with others; by extended commiseration rescuing multitudes from misery, while disseminating blessings on all around, the cultivation of our doctrine gained a grand basis, and by gradual advances its influence was diffused. If the winds and rains are seasonable, the world will be at rest; men will be guided by principle, inferior objects will be pure; the living will be at ease, and the dead will rejoice; the thoughts will produce their appropriate response, the affections will be free, and the eyes will be sincere; such is the laudable condition which we of the Illustrious Religion are laboring to attain.

Our great benefactor, the Imperially-conferred-purple-gown priest,[1] Í-sz', titular Great Statesman of the Banqueting-house, Associated Secondary Military Commissioner for the Northern Region, and Examination-palace Overseer, was naturally mild and graciously disposed; his mind susceptible of sound doctrine, he was diligent in the performance; from the distant city of Râjagriha,[2] he came to visit China; his principles more lofty than those of the

[1] It was no rare occurrence for priests to occupy civil and military offices in the State during the Tang and preceding dynasties. Of the three titles here given, the first is merely an indication of rank, by which the bearer is entitled to a certain emolument from the State; the second is his title as an officer actively engaged in the imperial service; and the third is an honorary title, which gives to the possessor a certain status in the capital, without any duties or emolument connected therewith.

[2] *Wang-shih*, literally 'Royal residence,' which is also the translation of the Sanskrit word Râjagriha, is the name of a city on the banks of the Gangès,

Digitized by Google

three dynasties, his practice was perfect in every department; at first he applied himself to duties pertaining to the palace, eventually his name was inscribed on the military roll. When the Duke Koh Tsz'-í, Secondary Minister of State and Prince of Fán-yang, at first conducted the military in the northern region, the Emperor Suhtsung made him (Í-sz') his attendant on his travels; although he was a private chamberlain, he assumed no distinction on the march; he was as claws and teeth to the duke, and in rousing the military he was as ears and eyes; he distributed the wealth conferred upon him, not accumulating treasure for his private use; he made offerings of the jewelry which had been given by imperial favor, he spread out a golden carpet for devotion; now he repaired the old churches, anon he increased the number of religious establishments; he honored and decorated the various edifices, till they resembled the plumage of the pheasant in its flight; moreover, practising the discipline of the Illustrious Religion, he distributed his riches in deeds of benevolence; every year he assembled those in the sacred office from four churches, and respectfully engaged them for fifty days in purification and preparation; the naked came and were clothed; the sick were attended to and restored; the dead were buried in repose; even among the most pure and self-denying of the Buddhists, such excellence was never heard of; the white-clad members of the Illustrious Congregation, now considering these men, have desired to engrave a broad tablet, in order to set forth a eulogy of their magnanimous deeds.

ODE.

The true Lord is without origin,
Profound, invisible, and unchangeable;
With power and capacity to perfect and transform,
He raised up the earth and established the heavens.

Divided in nature, he entered the world,
To save and to help without bounds;
The sun arose, and darkness was dispelled,
All bearing witness to his true original.

The glorious and resplendent, accomplished Emperor,
Whose principles embraced those of preceding monarchs,
Taking advantage of the occasion, suppressed turbulence;
Heaven was spread out and the earth was enlarged.

When the pure, bright Illustrious Religion
Was introduced to our Tang dynasty,
The Scriptures were translated, and churches built,
And the vessel set in motion for the living and the dead;
Every kind of blessing was then obtained,
And all the kingdoms enjoyed a state of peace.

---

which occurs in several Buddhist works. As this was one of the most important of the Buddhist cities in India, it is natural to suppose that Í-sz' was a Buddhist priest.

Digitized by Google

When Kautsung succeeded to his ancestral estate,
He rebuilt the edifices of purity;
Palaces of concord, large and light,
Covered the length and breadth of the land.

The true doctrine was clearly announced,
Overseers of the church were appointed in due form;
The people enjoyed happiness and peace,
While all creatures were exempt from calamity and distress.

When Hiuentsung commenced his sacred career,
He applied himself to the cultivation of truth and rectitude;
His imperial tablets shot forth their effulgence,
And the celestial writings mutually reflected their splendors.

The imperial domain was rich and luxuriant,
While the whole land rendered exalted homage;
Every business was flourishing throughout,
And the people all enjoyed prosperity.

Then came Suhtsung, who commenced anew,
And celestial dignity marked the imperial movements:
Sacred as the moon's unsullied expanse,
While felicity was wafted like nocturnal gales.

Happiness reverted to the imperial household,
The autumnal influences were long removed;
Ebullitions were allayed, and risings suppressed,
And thus our dynasty was firmly built up.

Taitsung the filial and just
Combined in virtue with heaven and earth;
By his liberal bequests the living were satisfied,
And property formed the channel of imparting succor.

By fragrant mementoes he rewarded the meritorious,
With benevolence he dispensed his donations;
The solar concave appeared in dignity,
And the lunar retreat was decorated to extreme.

When Kienchung succeeded to the throne,
He began by the cultivation of intelligent virtue;
His military vigilance extended to the four seas,
And his accomplished purity influenced all lands.

His light penetrated the secresies of men,
And to him the diversities of objects were seen as in a mirror;
He shed a vivifying influence through the whole realm of nature,
And all outer nations took him for example.

Digitized by Google

The true doctrine how expansive!
Its responses are minute;
How difficult to name it!
To elucidate the three in one.

The sovereign has the power to act!
While the ministers record;
We raise this noble monument!
To the praise of great felicity.

This was erected in the 2d year of Kienchung, of the Tang dynasty (A.D. 781), on the 7th day of 1st month, being Sunday.

Written by Lu Sin-yen, Secretary to Council, formerly Military Superintendent for Taichau; while the Bishop Ning-shu had the charge of the congregations of the Illustrious in the East.

The two lines of Syriac, of which the following is a transcript, are in the Estrangelo character, and run down the right and left sides of the Chinese respectively:

Adam Kasiso Vicur-apiskupo va Papasi de Zinstan.
Beyumi aba dabahotha Mar Hana Jesua katholika patriarchis.

Kircher translates this as follows:

"Adam, Deacon, Vicar-episcopal and Pope of China.
In the time of the Father of Fathers, the Lord John Joshua, the Universal Patriarch."

The transcript of the Syriac at the foot of the stone is given here on the authority of Kircher:

Besanath alf utiscaain vtarten diavanoiè. Mor Jibuead Kasiso Vcurapiskupo de Cumdan medinah malcutho bar nihh napso Milis Kasiso dnen Balehh medintho Tahhurstan Akim Lucho hono Papa dictabon beh medabarnutho dpharu kan Vcaruzuthon dabhain daluat malche dizinio.

"In the year of the Greeks one thousand and ninety-two, the Lord Jazedbuzid, Priest and Vicar-episcopal of Cumdan the royal city, son of the enlightened Mailas, Priest of Balach a city of Turkestan, set up this tablet, whereon is inscribed the Dispensation of our Redeemer, and the preaching of the apostolic missionaries to the King of China."

After this, in Chinese characters, is "The Priest Lingpau." Then follows:

Digitized by Google

Adam meschamschòno Bar Jidbuzid Curapiskuvo.
Mar Sargis Kasiso, Vcurapiskupo.
Sabar Jesua Kasiso.
Gabriel Kasiso Varcodiakun, Vrisch medintho de Cumdan vdasrag.

"Adam the Deacon, son of Jazedbuzid, Vicar-episcopal.
The Lord Sergius, Priest and Vicar-episcopal.
Sabar Jesus, Priest.
Gabriel, Priest, Archdeacon, and Ecclesiarch of Cumdan and Sarag."

The following subscription is appended in Chinese:

"Assistant Examiner: the High Statesman of the Sacred rites, the Imperially-conferred-purple-gown Chief Presbyter and Priest Yí-lí."

On the left hand edge are the Syriac names of sixty-seven priests, and sixty-one are given in Chinese.

This truly oriental writing is the most ancient Christian inscription yet found in Asia, and shows plainly that Christianity had made great progress among the Chinese. Kircher and Le Comte claimed it as a record of the success of the Romish church in China, but no one now doubts that it commemorates the exertions of the Nestorians.

Timothy, a patriarch, sent Subchal-Jesus in 780, who labored in Tartary and China for many years, and lost his life on his return, when his place was supplied by Davidis, who was consecrated metropolitan. In the year 845 an edict of Wu-tsung commanded the priests that belonged to the sect that came from Ta Tsin, amounting to no less than three thousand persons, to retire to private life. The two Arabian travellers in the ninth century report that many Christians perished in the siege of Canfu. Marco Polo's frequent allusions lead us to conclude that the Nestorians were both numerous and respected.

He mentions the existence of a church at Hangchau, and two at Chinkiang, built by the prefect Marsarchis, who was himself a member of that church, and alludes to their residence in most of the towns and countries of Central Asia.

The existence of a Christian prince called Prester John, in Central Asia, is spoken of by Marco Polo and Montecorvino. The exact position of his dominions, and the extent of his influence in favor of that faith, have been examined by Col. Yule and

Digitized by Google

M. Pauthier in their editions of the Venetian, and the glamour which once surrounded him has been found to have arisen mostly from hearsay reports, and from confounding different persons under one name. When the conquests of Genghis khan and his descendants threw all Asia into commotion, this Prester John, ruler of the Kara Kitai Tartars in northern China, fell before him, A.D. 1203. The Nestorians suffered much, but maintained a precarious footing in China during the time of the Yuen dynasty, having been cut off from all help and intercourse with the mother church since the rise of the Moslems. They had ceased long before this period to maintain the purity of the faith, however, and had apparently done nothing to teach and diffuse the Bible, which the tablet intimates was in part or in whole translated by Olopun, under the Emperor's auspices.

At the present time no works composed by their priests, or remains of any churches belonging to them or buildings erected by them, are known to exist in the Empire, though perhaps some books may yet be found. The buildings erected by the Nestorians for churches and dwellings were, of course, no better built than other Chinese edifices, and would not long remain when deserted; while, to account still further for the absence of books, the Buddhists and other opposers may have sought out and destroyed such as existed, which even if carefully kept would not last many generations. The notices of the tablet in Chinese authors, which Mr. Wylie has brought together, prove that those writers had confounded the *King kiao* with Zoroastrianism and Manicheism, and such a confusion is not surprising. The records of futurity alone will disclose to us the names and labors of the devoted disciples and teachers of true Christianity in the Nestorian church, who lived and died for the gospel among the Chinese.[1]

The efforts of the Roman Catholics in China have been great, but not greater than the importance of the field demanded.

[1] Yule's *Marco Polo*, Vol. I., p. 275, passim. *N. C. As. Soc. Journal*, Arch. Palladius' notes on it, Vol. X., pp. 20–23. Huc, *Christianity in China*, Chap. II. Pauthier's *Marco Polo*, Chaps. XLVIII.-L. Yule, *Cathay and the Way Thither*, Vol. I., pp. 174–183.

Digitized by Google

They have met with varied success, and their prudence in the choice of measures and zeal in the work of evangelizing have reflected the highest credit upon them, and would probably, if their object had simply been that of preaching the gospel, have gradually made the entire mass of the population acquainted with the leading doctrines of Christianity. The history of their missions is voluminous, and the principles on which they have been conducted can be learned from their own writings, especially the *Lettres Édifiantes*, the *Annales de la Foi*, and in the elaborate works of Huc and Marshall in later times. The present sketch need embrace only the principal points, for which we shall depend chiefly upon those writers who have already examined these sources.

The first epoch of their missions in China is the thirteenth century. Subsequent to the mission of John of Plano Carpini to Kuyuk khan in 1246–47, there were several envoys sent by one party to the other whose intercourse resulted in nothing permanent. The first attempt which can be called a settled mission was that of John of Montecorvino, from Nicholas IV., in 1288. Corvino arrived in India in 1291, and after preaching there a twelvemonth, during which time he baptized a hundred persons, he joined a caravan going to Cathay and was kindly received by Kublai khan. The Nestorians opposed his progress, and for eleven years he carried on the work alone, but not till the latter part of this period with much success. He built a church at Cambaluc, "which had a steeple and belfry with three bells that were rung every hour to summon the new converts to prayer." He baptized nearly six thousand persons during that time, "and bought one hundred and fifty children, whom he instructed in Greek and Latin and composed for them several devotional books."[1]

Clement V., hearing of Corvino's success, appointed him archbishop in 1307 and sent him seven suffragan bishops as assistants. Two letters of his are extant in which he gives a pleasing account of his efforts to preach the gospel, but of the

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 112; Vol. XIII., passim. Lowrie, *Land of Sinim.*

Digitized by Google

subsequent success of the endeavors made by him and his coadjutors to propagate the faith there are only imperfect records. Corvino was ordered to have the mysteries of the Bible represented by pictures in all his churches, for the purpose of captivating the eyes of the barbarians. He died in 1328, when about eighty years of age, "after having converted more than thirty thousand infidels." One of the accounts relates that at his funeral "all the inhabitants of Cambaluc, without distinction, mourned for the man of God, and both Christians and pagans were present at the funeral ceremony, the latter rending their garments in token of grief, . . . and the place of his burial became a pilgrimage to which the inhabitants of Cambaluc resorted with pious eagerness." It is not easy to estimate the real value of the labors of this priest and his successors, nor to decide how much better they were than those of the Nestorians in making known the Cross of Christ among the Mongols. The short record preserved of Corvino speaks well of his character and favorably of the toleration granted by the Mongols to his efforts to instruct them. It is affecting to hear him say, "It is now twelve years since I have heard any news from the West. I am become old and grayheaded, but it is rather through labors and tribulations than through age, for I am only fifty-eight years old. I have learned the Tartar language and literature, into which I have translated the whole New Testament and the Psalms of David, and have caused them to be transcribed with the utmost care. I write and read and preach openly and freely the testimony of the law of Christ."

The Pope sent Nicholas to succeed Montecorvino at Peking, and a company of twenty-six Franciscans with him, but no authentic record of their arrival there has been preserved. In 1336 the last Mongol Emperor, Shuntí, whose reign was then called Chíyuen, sent André, a Frank, as his ambassador to the Pope, to whom was also addressed a letter from the Alain Christians asking for a bishop to take Corvino's place, Nicholas not having then reached his see. Benedict XII. sent four nuncios, one of whom, John of Florence, returned to Europe in 1353, after residing and travelling in China twelve years, bringing friendly letters from the Emperor Shuntí. At this period there was

Digitized by Google

another bishopric among the Mongols at Ílí, or Kuldja, and a letter from Pascal, a Spanish friar, dated from that city in 1338, has been preserved. It would seem that during the sway of the Mongol princes these missionaries carried on their work chiefly among their tribes. It is, if such was the case, less surprising, therefore, that we hear nothing of them and their converts after the Chinese troops had expelled Kublai's weak descendants from the country in 1368, since they would naturally follow them into Central Asia. After the final establishment of the Ming dynasty almost nothing is known concerning either them or the Nestorians, and it is probable that during the wanderings of the defeated Mongols the adherents of both sects gradually lapsed into ignorance and thence easily into Mohammedanism and Buddhism. There is no reasonable doubt, however, that during the three centuries ending with the accession of Hungwu, the greater part of Central Asia and Northern China was the scene of many flourishing Christian communities.

The second period in the history of Romish missions in China includes a space of one hundred and fifty years, extending from the time when Matteo Ricci first established himself at Shauking in 1582 to the death of the Emperor Yungching in 1736. Before Ricci entered the country there had been some efforts made to revive the long-deferred work among the Chinese, but the Portuguese and Spanish merchants were opposed to the extension of a faith which their flagitious conduct so outrageously belied. The Chinese government was still more strongly opposed to the residence of the foreign missionaries. Francis Xavier started from Goa in 1552 in company with an ambassador to China, but the embassy was hindered by the Governor of Malacca, who detained Pereyra and his ship, and Xavier was obliged to go alone. He died, however, at Shangchuen, Sançian, or St. John's, an island about thirty miles south-west of Macao, disappointed in his expectations and thwarted in his plans by the untoward opposition of his countrymen. Other attempts were made to accomplish this design, but it was reserved for the Jesuits to carry it into effect. Valignani, the Superior of their missions in the East, selected Michael Ruggiero, or Roger, for this enterprise. He arrived at Macao in 1580 and com-

Digitized by Google

menced the study of the language. Soon after he was joined by Matthew Ricci, and after a series of efforts and disappointments they succeeded, in 1582, in obtaining lodgment at Shauking, then the residence of the Governor of Kwangtung. He granted them permission to build a house there, as they had told him that "they had at last ascertained with their own eyes that the Celestial Empire was even superior to its brilliant renown. They therefore desired to end their days in it, and wished to obtain a little land to construct a house and a church where they might pass their time in prayer and study, in solitude and meditation, which they could not do at Macao on account of the tumult and bustle which the perpetual activity of commerce occasioned." A beginning like this indicated the policy which has marked the progress of their work during the three centuries now passed. Nothing is said of making known Christ and him crucified as the great theme of their preaching. Huc tells us, too, that they took down the picture of the Virgin, because "the report had been spread that the strangers worshipped a woman," and replaced it by an image of the Saviour; and in this also they set the example, which successive ages have strengthened, of upholding the native idolatry. In their intercourse with the people of all classes they won good opinions by their courtesy, presents, and scientific attainments, and Huc sums up their principles in his approving remark, "they thought justly that the philosopher would make more impression than the priest upon minds so sceptic and so imbued with literary conceit." The appointed means given by the Founder of Christianity for its propagation are never mentioned as their guide and authority, and the building corresponds to the foundations laid.

In 1594 Valignani advised Ricci and his associates to exchange their garb of Buddhist priests for the more respected dress of the literati; and soon after he set out from Shauchau, in the north of Kwangtung, for Nanchang, the capital of Kiangsí, and thence made his way to Nanking, still a place of great importance, although not the capital of the Empire. He was directed to depart, and returned to Nanchang, where he was permitted to lay the foundation of a religious institution and

Digitized by Google

establish his associates. He then left again for Nanking, but finding many obstacles proceeded to Suchau, the capital of Kiangnan, and there, too, established a school. The times becoming favorable, he appeared a third time at Nanking, in 1598, where he was received with amity, frankness, and good breeding, and his lectures on the exact sciences listened to with rapture. The progress of the mission had been so considerable that Valignani had appointed Ricci its Superior-General, which gave him power to regulate its internal concerns, for which he was well fitted.

An officer whom he had known in Shauchau, and who had been appointed President of the Board of Civil Office, was induced to take him to Peking on his return there from a mission to Hainan; but opposition arising this friend, Kwang, advised him to return with him to Nanking, as the officials at the capital were much disappointed to find that he knew nothing about making silver and gold, which was wanted to pay for the expedition to Japan. After Kwang's departure he and his colleague, Cataneo, found themselves nearly penniless, and he decided to return south, although it was winter. He reached Suchau in a very weak condition, but, having recovered, went to Nanking in 1599, where the high provincial authorities visited and aided him, heard his discourses on astronomy, and enabled him to get a house.

Everything progressed favorably, and Cataneo had returned from Macao with funds and presents. Ricci availed himself of a timely proposal from a eunuch to go with him to Peking, and started in a junk with his presents. The eunuch, however, wished to keep the latter, and by misrepresentations contrived to detain Ricci and his companion, Pantoja, at Tientsin for six months, at the end of which the villany was exposed, and the foreigners invited to court by imperial orders. They reached Peking January 4, 1601, twenty-one years after Ricci landed in Macao. The pleasing manners and extensive acquirements of Ricci, joined to a distribution of presents, gained him the favor of men in authority. He soon numbered some of them among his adherents, among whom Sü, baptized Paul, was one of his earliest and most efficient co-operators, and assisted him in translating Euclid.

Digitized by Google

The Emperor Wanleih received him with kindness, and allowed him and Pantoja to be accommodated at the place where foreign envoys usually remained; he subsequently permitted them to hire a house, and assigned them a stipend. In the meantime other Jesuits joined him at Peking, and were also settled in all the intermediate stations, where they carried on the work of their missions under his direction with success and favor. Paul Sü and his widowed daughter, who took the baptismal name of Candida, proved efficient supporters of the new faith. The new religion encountered many obstacles, and the officers who saw its progress felt the necessity of checking its growth before it got strength to set at naught the commands of government. Much excitement arose in 1605 between the Portuguese and the officials at Canton in consequence of a rumor of the former going to attack the city; and it was carried to such a height that the latter seized a convert named Martinez and punished him so severely that he died. A decree in 1617 ordered the missionaries to depart from court to Canton, there to embark for Europe, but, like many others of the same import subsequently issued, it received just as much obedience as they thought expedient to give it—and properly too; for if they were not disturbers of the peace or seditious, they ought not to be sent out of the country. This edict hindered their work only partially, and such was their diligence that by the year 1636 they had published no fewer than three hundred and forty treatises, some of them religious, but mostly on natural philosophy and mathematics. Ricci formulated a set of rules for their guidance, in which he allowed the converts to practise the rites of ancestral worship, because he considered them purely civil in their nature. The matter subsequently became a bone of contention between the Jesuits and Franciscans.

The talented founder of these missions died in 1610, at the age of fifty-eight, and for skill, perseverance, learning, and tact, his name deservedly stands highest among their missionaries. His withholding the Bible from the Chinese, and substitution of image worship, ritualism, and priestly ordinances for the pure truths of the gospel, have been maintained by his

Digitized by Google

successors, for they are essential features of the church which sent them forth. He has been extolled by the Jesuits as a man possessed of every virtue. Another writer of the same church gives him the following character: "Ricci was active, skilful, full of schemes, and endowed with all the talents necessary to render him agreeable to the great or to gain the favor of princes; but at the same time so little versed in matters of faith that, as the Bishop of Conòn said, it was sufficient to read his work on the true religion to be satisfied that he was ignorant of the first principles of theology. Being more a politician than a theologian, he discovered the secret of remaining peacefully in China. The kings found in him a man full of complaisance; the pagans a minister who accommodated himself to their superstitions; the mandarins a polite courtier skilled in all the trickery of courts; and the devil a faithful servant, who, far from destroying, established his reign among the heathen, and even extended it to the Christians. He preached in China the religion of Christ according to his own fancy; that is to say, he disfigured it by a faithful mixture of pagan superstitions, adopting the sacrifices offered to Confucius and ancestors, and teaching the Christians to assist and cooperate at the worship of idols, provided they only addressed their devotions to a cross covered with flowers, or secretly attached to one of the candles which were lighted in the temples of the false gods."[1] His work was described by Trigault in 1616, when full materials were accessible, so that his actions and motives are known more fully than many who have come after him.

After his death his place was filled by Longobardi, whose experience, learning, and judgment well fitted him for the post. The efforts of many enemies caused a reaction in 1616, and an edict was issued ordering all missionaries to leave the country; but they were sheltered by their converts, especially through the exertions of Sü, who in 1622 obtained the reversal of the edict of expulsion, and thereby caused the persecution

[1] *Anecdotes de la Chine*, Tome I., Pref. vi, vii. Huc, *Christianity in China*, Vol. II., Chaps. II. to V. Rémusat, *Nouveaux Mélanges*, Tome II., p. 207.

Digitized by Google

to cease.[1] The talents and learning of Schaal, a German Jesuit, who was recommended by Sü to the Emperor's regard in 1628, soon placed him at the head of all his brethren and ranked him among the most distinguished men in the Empire. The Dominicans and Franciscans also flocked to the land which had thus been opened by the Jesuits, but they were not welcomed by those who wished to build up their own power. After the death of Wanleih, in 1620, and those converts within the palace who had favored the cause, new influences against it arose, and during the short reign of his young grandson, Tienhí, troubles increased. Amid the breaking up of the Ming dynasty and the establishment of the present family on the throne (1630–1660), the missions suffered much, their spiritual guides retired to places of safety from the molestations of soldiers and banditti, and converts were necessarily left without instruction. The missionaries in the north sided with the Manchus, and Schaal became a favorite with the new monarch and his advisers, by whom he was appointed to reform the calendar. He succeeded in showing the incompetency of the persons who had the supervision of it, and after its revision was appointed president of the *Kin Tien Kien*, an astronomical board established for this object, and invested with the insignia and emoluments of a grandee of the first class. He employed his influence and means in securing the admission of other missionaries, and to build two churches in the capital and repair many of those which had fallen to decay in the provinces.

The exertions of the native converts did much to advance the cause of religion, and the baptismal names of Leon, Michel, etc., have been preserved among these early confessors; but none are more famous than Sü and his daughter, Candida. He gave his influence in its favor and his property to assist in building churches, while his revision of their writings made them acceptable to fastidious scholars. His daughter also spent her life in good works. According to Du Halde, she exhibited the sincerity of her profession by building thirty-nine churches

[1] Sü's *Apology* is given in full in the *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIX., p. 118.

Digitized by Google

in different provinces, and printing one hundred and thirty Christian books for the instruction of her countrymen. Having heard that the pagans in several of the provinces were accustomed to abandon their children as soon as born, she established a foundling hospital; and seeing many blind people telling idle stories in the streets for the sake of gain, she got them instructed and sent forth to relate the different events of the gospel history. A few years before her death, the Emperor conferred on her the title of *sho jin*, or 'virtuous woman,' and sent her a magnificent habit and head-dress adorned with pearls, which it is said she gradually sold, expending the proceeds in benevolent works. She received the last sacrament with a lively faith of being united to that God whom she had so zealously loved and served. She and her father have since been deified by the people, and are worshipped now at Shanghai for their good deeds. The large mission establishment at Sikawé (properly *Sü Kia-wei*, or the 'Sü Family Hamlet'), situated near that city, under the care of the Roman Catholics, now covers the same ground once owned by this eminent man. Candida's example was emulated by another lady of high connections, named Agatha, who was zealous in carrying on the same works. We can but hope that although the worship of these converts was mixed with much error, and Mary, Ignatius, and others received their homage as well as Christ, their faith was genuine and their works done by an actuating spirit of humble love.[1]

The Romish missionaries had friends among the high families in the land during the first hundred years of their labors, besides converts of both sexes. Few missions in pagan countries have been more favored with zealous converts, or their missionaries more aided and countenanced by rich and noble supporters, than the early papal missions to China. Le Comte speaks of the high favor enjoyed by all the laborers in this work through the reputation and influence of Schaal at court. One of those who obtained celebrity was Faber, whose efforts in Shensí were attended with great success, and who wrought many

[1] Medhurst's *China*, p. 188. Du Halde's *China*, Vol. II., p. 8.

Digitized by Google

miracles during his ministry in that province. Among others he mentions that "the town of Hang ching was at a certain time overrun with a prodigious multitude of locusts, which ate up all the leaves of the trees and gnawed the grass to the very roots. The inhabitants, after exhausting all the resources of their own superstitions and charms, applied to Faber, who promised to deliver them from the plague provided they would become Christians. When they consented he marched in ceremony into the highways in his stole and surplice, and sprinkled up and down the holy water, accompanying this action with the prayers of the church, but especially with a lively faith. God heard the voice of his servant, and the next day all the insects disappeared. But the people refused to perform their promise, and the plague grew worse than before. With much contrition they came to the father, confessing their fault and entreating his renewed interposition; again he sprinkled the holy water, and the insects a second time disappeared. Then the whole borough was converted, and many years afterward was reckoned one of the devoutest missions in China. His biographer mentions that Faber was carried over rivers through the air; he foretold his own death, and did several other such wonders; but the greatest miracle of all was his life, which he spent in the continual exercise of all the apostolical virtues and a tender devotion to the mother of God."

The increase of churches and converts in the northern provinces was rapid during the reign of Shunchí, but the southern parts of the Empire not being completely subdued, the claimant to the throne of Ming was favored by the missionaries there, and his troops led on by two Christian Chinese officers, called Thomas Kiu and Luke Chin. His mother, wife, and son were baptized with the names of Helena, Maria, and Constantine, and the former wrote a letter to Pope Alexander VII., expressing her attachment to the cause of Christianity, and wishing to put the country through him under the protection of God. He kindly answered her, but the expectations of the Romanists were disappointed by the death of Tunglieh, the Emperor.

During the reign of Shunchí Schaal and his coadjutors stood high at Peking, and missions prospered in the provinces; but

Digitized by Google

on the Emperor's death the administration fell into the hands of four regents, and as they were known to be opposed to the new sect, a memorial was sent to court setting forth the evils likely to arise if it was not repressed. It should be mentioned that several monks of the Dominican and Franciscan orders, especially of Fuhkien province, where Capellas, a Spaniard, had been martyred in 1648, had resumed the labors of Archbishop John of Montecorvino at Peking, more than thirty years before this date. "Their presence had been resisted by the Jesuits [so ran the memorial], and the strifes between these orders about the meaning and worship of *tien* and *shangti* (words used for the Supreme Being) revealed the important secret that the principles of the new doctrine were made to subserve the purposes of those who were aspiring to influence. It was remembered also that while the Catholics continued in Japan, nothing but intrigue, schism, and civil war was heard of, calamities that might sooner or later befal China if the criminal eagerness of the missionaries in enlisting people of all classes was not checked. The members of the different orders wore distinctive badges of medals, rosaries, crosses, etc., and were always ready to obey the calls of their chiefs, who could have no scruple to lead them on to action the moment a probability of success in subverting the existing political order and the ancient worship of China should offer." The regents took the memorial into consideration, and in 1665 the tribunals under their direction decreed that "Schaal and his associates merited the punishment of seducers, who announce to the people a false and pernicious doctrine."

Notwithstanding the honorable position Schaal held as tutor of the young Emperor Kanghí, he was proscribed and degraded with several high officers who had been baptized. Some of them perished, Schaal himself dying of grief and suffering August 16th of the same year, at the age of seventy-eight, having been thirty-seven years in imperial employ, under five monarchs. Verbiest and others were imprisoned, one of whom died; and twenty-one Jesuits, with some of other sects, were sent out of the country. Magaillans says he himself was "loaden for four whole months together with nine chains, three about his neck, his arms, and his legs; he was also condemned to have forty lashes, and

Digitized by Google

to be banished out of Tartary as long as he lived. But a great earthquake that happened at that time at Peking delivered both him and the rest of his companions."[1] Their relief, however, was probably owing more to the favor of Kanghí on taking the reins of government in 1671 than to the earthquake; he soon released Verbiest to appoint him astronomer, and allowed the missionaries to return to their stations, though he forbade his subjects embracing Christianity. This favorable change is partly ascribed, too, to the errors Verbiest pointed out in the calendar, which showed an utter ignorance of the commonest principles of astronomy on the part of those who prepared it. An intercalary month had been erroneously introduced, and the unfortunate astronomers were made to exchange places with the imprisoned missionaries, while their intercalary month was discarded and the year shortened, to the astonishment of the common people. It may reasonably be doubted whether the priest acted with sagacity and prudence in thus exasperating those in high places by this public ridicule of their incompetency. Verbiest also prepared an astronomical work entitled "The Perpetual Astronomy of the Emperor Kanghí," which he graciously received and conferred the title of *tajin*, or 'magnate,' on him, and ennobled all his kindred. "He had no relatives in China, but as the Jesuits called each other brother, they did not hesitate to use the same title. The greatest part of the religious caused it to be inscribed on the doors of their houses."

The favor of the Emperor continued, and the missionaries requited his kindness with many signal services, besides those of a literary and astronomical nature, among which was casting cannon for his army. In 1636 Schaal had made a number for Tsungching, and Verbiest, his successor, cast several hundreds in all for the Emperor Kanghí. On one occasion, in 1680, the pieces, three hundred and twenty of all sizes, were to be tested in the presence of the court; but before doing so Verbiest "had an altar prepared on which he placed a cross. Then, clothed in his surplice and stole, he worshipped the true God, prostrating himself nine times, and striking the earth nine times with his forehead, in

[1] Magaillans' *China*, p. 147. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. I., p. 434.

Digitized by Google

the Chinese manner of expressing adoration; and after that he read the prayers of the church and sprinkled the cannon with holy water, having bestowed on each of them the name of a female saint, which he had himself drawn on the breech."[1] Some of the high officers were still opposed to the toleration of foreign priests, and the Governor of Chehkiang undertook to carry into effect the laws against their admission into the country and their proselyting labors; but Verbiest, on informing the Emperor of their character as excellent mathematicians and scholars, obtained their liberation. No foreigner has ever enjoyed so great favor and confidence from the rulers of China as this able priest. He seems indeed to have deserved this for his diligence, knowledge, and purity of conduct in devoting all his energies and opportunities to their good. His residence of thirty years at Peking (1658–1688) was passed under the eyes of suspicious observers; but his modesty in the end won their confidence as his writings and devotions called forth their approval.

During all this time—or at least since the other sects came to assist in the work—there had been constant disputes, as has already been intimated, between the disciples of Loyola, Dominic, and Francis, excited probably by rivalry, but ostensibly relating to the rites paid to deceased ancestors and to Confucius. Ricci had drawn up rules for the regulation of the Jesuits, in which he considered these customs to be merely civil and secular, and such as might be tolerated in their converts. Morales, a Spanish Dominican, however, opposed this view, declaring them to be idolatrous and sinful, and they were condemned as such by the Propaganda, which sentence was confirmed by Innocent X. in 1645. This decree of the see at Rome gave the Jesuits some annoyance, and they set themselves at work to procure its revision. Martinez was sent to Rome as their principal agent in this, and by many explanations and testimonials proved to the satisfaction of the tribunal of inquisitors their civil nature, and Alexander VII., in 1656, approved this opinion. There were thus two infallible decrees nearly opposed to each other, for Alexander took care not to directly contradict the bull of Inno-

[1] Huc, *Christianity in China*, Vol. III., p. 81.

Digitized by Google

cent, and worded his decision so that both claimed it. When all the missionaries were imprisoned or sent to Canton, a good opportunity offered for mutual consultation and decision upon these and other points. Twenty-three priests met in the Jesuit seminary at Canton in 1665, and drew up forty-two articles to serve hereafter for rules of conduct, all of which were unanimously adopted. The one relating to the ceremonies was as follows:

In respect to the customs by which the Chinese worship Confucius and the deceased, the answer of the congregation of the universal Inquisition, sanctioned in 1656 by his Holiness Alexander VII., shall be invariably followed; for it is founded upon the most probable opinion, without any evident proof to the contrary; and this probability being admitted, the door of salvation must not be shut against innumerable Chinese, who would abandon our Christian religion were they forbidden to attend to those things that they may lawfully and without injury to their faith attend to, and forced to give up what cannot be abandoned without serious consequences.

One member of this meeting, the Dominican Navarette, soon expressed his dissent, and the dispute was renewed as virulently as ever. The opponents of the Jesuits complained that they taught their converts that there was but little difference generally between Christianity and their own belief, and allowed them to retain their old superstitions; they were charged, moreover, with luxury and ambition, and neglecting the duties of their ministry that they might meddle in the affairs of State. These allegations were rebutted by the Jesuits, though it appears from Mosheim that some of them partially acknowledged their truth. In 1693 Maigrot, a bishop and apostolic vicar living in China, issued a mandate on his own authority diametrically opposed to the decision of the Inquisition and the Pope, in which he declared that *tien* signified nothing more than the material heavens, and that the Chinese customs and rites were idolatrous. In 1699 the Jesuits brought the matter before the Emperor in the following memorial:

We, your faithful subjects, although originally from distant countries, respectfully supplicate your Majesty to give us clear instructions on the following points. The scholars of Europe have understood that the Chinese practise certain ceremonies in honor of Confucius, that they offer sacrifices to heaven, and that they observe peculiar rites toward their ancestors; but persuaded

Digitized by Google

that these ceremonies, sacrifices, and rites are founded in reason, though ignorant of their true intention, earnestly desire us to inform them. We have always supposed that Confucius was honored in China as a legislator, and that it was in this character alone, and with this view solely, that the ceremonies established in his honor were practised. We believe that the ancestral rites are only observed in order to exhibit the love felt for them, and to hallow the remembrance of the good received from them during their life. We believe that the sacrifices offered to heaven are not tendered to the visible heavens which are seen above us, but to the Supreme Master, Author, and Preserver of heaven and earth, and of all they contain. Such are the interpretation and the sense which we have always given to these Chinese ceremonies; but as strangers cannot be considered competent to pronounce on these important points with the same certainty as the Chinese themselves, we presume to request your Majesty not to refuse to give us the explanations which we desire concerning them. We wait for them with respect and submission.[1]

The Emperor's reply in 1700 to this petition, and another one presented to him, was sent to the Pope; in it he declared that "*tien* means the true God, and that the customs of China are political." The enemies of the Jesuits say that they "confirmed the sentiments expressed in the imperial rescript by the oaths which they exacted from a multitude of Chinese, among whom were many from the lowest classes, not only entirely ignorant of the meaning of many characters in their own language, but even of Christian doctrine." The strongest efforts were made by both parties to influence the decision of the Pope, but the Jesuits failed. In 1704 a decree of Clement XI. confirmed the decision of Bishop Maigrot. It had been reached after careful and candid examination, and was substantially as follows: "As the true God cannot conveniently be named in the Chinese language with European words, we must employ the words *Tien Chu*, *i.e.*, 'Lord of Heaven,' in use for a long time in China, and approved by both missionaries and their converts. We must, on the contrary, absolutely reject the appellation of *Tien* (Heaven) and *Shangti* (August Emperor); and for this reason it must on no account be permitted that tablets shall be suspended in churches with the inscription *King Tien* (Adore Heaven)." The court of the Vatican had already dispatched a legate *à latere* and apostolic visitor to China in the person of

[1] *Life of Saint-Martin*, p. 292.

Digitized by Google

Tournon, who was consecrated Patriarch of Antioch in order to give him a title of sufficient dignity in the distant regions to which he was bound.

The legate landed at Macao in April, 1705, and was received with a show of honor by the governor and bishop. He arrived at Peking in December, but the Jesuits had already prejudiced the Emperor against him, and at an audience accorded to him in June, 1706, the former brought forward the subject to learn the legate's views. After some delay, however, the patriarch issued the Pope's mandate, which was contrary to the monarch's decision. Kanghí was not the man who would transfer to a pope the right of legislating over his own subjects, and in December, 1706, he decreed that he would countenance those missionaries who preached the doctrines of Ricci, but persecute those who followed the opinion of Maigrot. Examiners were appointed for ascertaining their sentiments, but Tournon, who had been banished to Macao, forbade the missionaries, under pain of excommunication, holding any discussion on these points with the examiners. The Bishop of Macao confined the legate in a private house, and when he used his ecclesiastical authority and powers against his enemies, stuck up a monitory on the very door of his residence, exhorting him to revoke his censures within three days under pain of excommunication, and exhibit proofs of his legation to his diocesan. This was re-echoed from Tournon by a still severer sentence against the bishop. Three new missionaries reached Macao at this juncture in January, 1710, and one of them, Père Ripa, gives an account of a nocturnal visit they paid the legate in his prison after eluding the vigilance of his guards. Ripa remarks that about forty missionaries of different religious orders were confined with Tournon, who had lately been made a cardinal, but he himself and his companions were left at liberty. His eminence sent a remonstrance to the Governor of Canton against his imprisonment, and also a memorial to the Emperor stating that six missionaries had arrived from Europe, three of whom were acquainted with mathematics, music, and painting. Ripa, who was to be the painter, says that he knew only the rudiments of the art, and records his dissatisfaction at this change in his vo-

Digitized by Google

cation, but soon resigned himself to obedience. Tournon died in his confinement in July of the same year.

The proceedings of Tournon were mainly confirmed by the Pope, and in 1715 he dispatched Mezzabarba, another legate, by way of Lisbon, who was favorably received at Peking. He "was instructed to express the Pope's sincere gratitude to Kanghí for his magnanimous kindness toward the missionaries, to beg leave to remain in China as their head or as superior of the whole mission, and to obtain from Kanghí his consent that the Christians in China might submit to the decision of his Holiness concerning the rites." The Emperor evaded all reference to the rites, and the legate, soon perceiving that his Majesty would not surrender any part of his inherent authority, solicited and obtained permission at his last audience to return to Europe, which he did March 3, 1721. The first fifteen years of the eighteenth century was the period of the greatest prosperity to the Romish missions in China. It is stated that in the governor-generalship of Kiangnan and Kiangsí alone there were one hundred churches and a hundred thousand converts. The survey of the Empire was carried on by the Emperor's command from 1708 to 1718, under the direction of ten Jesuits, of whom Regis, Bouvet, and Jartoux were the most prominent.[1] It was a great work for that day, and considering the instruments they had, the vast area they traversed, and the imperfect education of their assistants, its accuracy and completeness form the best index of the ability of the surveyors.

The disputes between the various orders of missionaries and the resistance of some converts to the Emperor's commands respecting the ancestral rites, together with the representations of his own officers upon the tendency of the new religion to undermine his own authority, gradually opened his eyes to the true character of the propagandists. In 1718 he forbade any missionary remaining in the country without permission from himself, given only after their promise to follow the rules of Ricci. Yet no European missionary could repair to China

[1] An additional re-survey was made and presented to the Emperor Kienlung in 1761 by Benoit and Allerstein.

Digitized by Google

without subscribing a formula in which he promised fully and entirely to obey the orders of Clement XI. upon these ceremonies, and observe those injunctions without any tergiversation. Kanghí was made acquainted with all these matters and took his measures, gradually restraining the missionaries in their work and keeping them about him at court, while he allowed persecuting measures to be carried on in the provinces. The work of Ripa affords evidence of this plan, and it was characteristic of Chinese policy.

After the death of Kanghí in 1723 the designs of the government under his son Yungching were still more evident. In 1724 an order was promulgated in which every effort to propagate the *Tien Chu kiao*, or 'Religion of the Lord of Heaven,' as it was then and has ever since been called, was strictly prohibited. All missionaries not required at Peking for scientific purposes were ordered to leave the country, by which more than three hundred thousand converts were deprived of teachers. Many of the missionaries secreted themselves, and the converts exhibited the greatest fidelity in adhering to them even at the risk of death. When the missionaries reached Canton, where they were allowed to remain, they devised measures to return to their flocks, and frequently succeeded. The influence of those remaining at Peking was exerted to regain their former toleration, but with partial success. Their enemies in the provinces harassed the converts in order to extort money, and found plenty of assistants who knew the names and condition of all the leading adherents of the proscribed faith, and aided in compelling them to violate their consciences or lose their property.

The edict of Yungching forms an epoch in the Romish missions in China. Since that time they have experienced various degrees of quiet and storm, but on the whole decreasing in number and influence until the new era inaugurated by the treaties of 1858. The troubles in France and Europe toward the latter part of the eighteenth century withdrew the attention of the supporters of missions from those in China, while in the country itself the maintenance of the laws against the propagation of Christianity, and an occasional seizure of priests and

Digitized by Google

converts by a zealous officer, caused a still further diminution. The edicts of Kienlung, soon after his accession in 1736, showed that no countenance was to be expected from court; the rulers were thoroughly dissatisfied with the foreigners, and ready to take almost any measures to relieve the country of them. Perhaps their personal conduct had something to do with this course of procedure, for Ripa, who cannot be accused of partiality, says, when speaking of the number of converts, that "if our European missionaries in China would conduct themselves with less ostentation, and accommodate their manners to persons of all ranks and conditions, the number of converts would be immensely increased. Their garments are made of the richest materials; they go nowhere on foot, but always in sedans, on horseback, or in boats, and with numerous attendants following them. With a few honorable exceptions, all the missionaries live in this manner; and thus, as they never mix with the people, they make but few converts. The diffusion of our holy religion in these parts has been almost entirely owing to the catechists who are in their service, to other Christians, or to the distribution of Christian books in the Chinese language. Thus there is scarcely a single missionary who can boast of having made a convert by his own preaching, for they merely baptize those who have been already converted by others."[1] But this missionary himself afterward assigns a much better reason for their not preaching, when he adds that, up to his time in 1714, "none of the missionaries had been able to surmount the language so as to make himself understood by the people at large." This remark must, however, be taken with some explanations. There had been about five hundred missionaries sent from Europe between 1580 and 1724, which was less than an annual average of four individuals during a century and a half.

When the intentions of the new Emperor were known, there would not long be wanting occasions to harass the Christians. In 1747 a persecution extended over all the provinces, and Bishop Sanz and five Dominican priests in Fuhkien lost their lives. All the foreign priests who could be found elsewhere were

[1] *Residence at Peking*, p. 43.

Digitized by Google

sent away—a mark of leniency the more striking when it was supposed by the Chinese that some of them had already once returned from banishment. The missions in Sz'chuen and Shansi suffered most, but through the zeal of their pastors maintained themselves better than elsewhere; their bishops, Mullener, and after him Pottier, contrived to remain in the country most of the time between 1712 and 1792. The missions in Yunnan and Kweichau were not so flourishing as that in Sz'chuen. In this province M. Gleyo was apprehended in 1767, and endured much suffering for the faith he came to preach; he remained in prison ten years, when he was liberated through the efforts of a Jesuit in the employ of government. For several years after this the order enjoyed comparative quiet, but in 1784 greater efforts than ever were made to discover and apprehend all foreign priests and their abettors, owing to the detection of four Europeans in Hukwang while they were going to their mission. M. de la Tour, the procureur of the mission at Canton, through whose instrumentality they were sent through the country, was apprehended and carried to Peking; and the hong merchant who had been his security was glad to purchase his own safety by the sacrifice of one hundred and twenty thousand taels of silver.

Didier Saint-Martin, who was then in Sz'chuen, gives a long account of his own capture, trial, and imprisonment, and many particulars of the sufferings of his fellow missionaries. Eighteen Europeans were taken away from the missions by it, but none of them were actually executed; twelve were sentenced to perpetual imprisonment, six having died, but for some reason the Emperor revoked the decree soon after it was made, and gave them all the choice to enter his service or leave the country; nine of the twelve preferred to depart, the other three joining the priests at the capital. This search was so close that few of the foreigners escaped. Pottier was not taken, though he was obliged at one time to conceal himself for a month in a small house, and in so confined a place that he hardly dared either to cough or to spit for fear of being discovered. Saint-Martin and Dufresse retired to Manila, where they were received with great honors, and were enabled to return after a

Digitized by Google

time to Sz'chuen. The former died in 1801 in peace, but Dufresse was beheaded in 1814;[1] in 1816 M. Triora was strangled in Hupeh, and M. Clet three years after; in the interval, Schoeffler, Bounard, and Diaz perished, and Chapdelaine in 1856. But no data are available to show the number of native priests and converts who suffered death, torture, imprisonment, and banishment in these storms. The records of constancy and cheerful fortitude exhibited under tortures and cruel mockings, given in the writings of the time, show their faith in Christ. The details are summarized in Marshall's work, and probably the number may reasonably be estimated by hundreds.

The period which elapsed after the promulgation of the edicts of 1767 up to 1820 contains less to interest the reader than since the last date. At that time restored quiet in Europe urged a resumption of the work; and the *Annales de la Foi* henceforth continue the narratives of the missions, formerly recorded in the *Lettres Édifiantes*, with the approval of the directors and bishops. It is not easy at any period to learn their condition and number, for only vague estimates of hundreds of churches, hundreds of thousands of converts, scores of missionaries, schools, catechists, priests, and stations, comprise the data given in the flourishing days of Verbiest and Parennin. Perhaps many of the early statistics have perished, yet it has never been easy to obtain accurate data, and often they have been withheld from public knowledge. There is no responsibility or reckoning required from the managers of the missions by the body of the church as to what is done with the funds, as among Protestant missions. In 1820 an estimate gives 6 bishops, 2 coadjutors, 23 foreign missionaries, 80 native priests, and 215,000 converts. In 1839 a table in the *Annales* gives for that year, 8 bishops, 57 foreigners, 114 native priests, and 303,000 converts. In 1846 the record shows 12 bishops, 7 or 8 coadjutors, 80 foreign missionaries, 90 natives, and 400,000 converts; 54 boys' and 114 girls' schools are put down for Sz'chuen. In 1866 they report 20 bishops,

[1] *Annales de la Foi*, Tome I., pp. 25, 53, 68. Dufresse was afterward canonized.

Digitized by Google

233 foreign missionaries, 237 native priests, 12 colleges, 331 students in seven of them, and 363,000 converts; these figures include only those in the Eighteen Provinces. In 1870 the tables show 254 foreigners, bishops and missionaries, 138 native priests in nine provinces, and 404,530 converts.

Lastly, from the Hong Kong *Catholic Register* we learn that the statistics in 1881 were: Bishops, 41; European priests, 664; native priests, 559; converts *in toto*, 1,092,818; colleges, 34; convents, 34. The paper which publishes this summary, "from a most reliable source," gives no information as to where the missions or colleges are located, or what numbers are found in the different provinces. It is, moreover, somewhat difficult to learn what constitutes a college, or whether the grade in these institutions is uniform throughout the land. In addition to the education imparted at home, a number of Chinese are yearly sent to Rome to be educated at the College of the Propaganda. The total number of converts includes all the members of the various families who give an outward adherence to the rites of the church. In the persecutions which these adherents have endured at various times, some have left the faith, but a large number of the descendants of these early converts have remained faithful, generation after generation, to the religion which their ancestors had embraced under more favorable auspices. Hence this estimate represents the number now adhering to them, many of them being the descendants of early converts; and this number of followers has become so numerous largely by natural increase. We have no information as to the number of converts year by year. In one village of South China, where there are some Roman Catholics resident, it has been noted that the increase is almost entirely by natural generation. The girls of Catholic families are only permitted co-religionists. The men marry heathen wives on the promise that they will become Romanists. One man and his wife of this village first became converts. The number of adherents now here is over one hundred, all descendants of this first pair; and this increase is entirely by natural descent and by marriage.

With the increased openings since the treaties of 1858 the regulation of the missions has devolved on different societies,

Digitized by Google

which have apportioned their laborers in the provinces. The Lazarists have Chihlí, Kiangsí, and Chehkiang; the Franciscans, Shantung, Shansí, Shensí, and Hukwang; the Jesuits, Kiangnan and eastern Chihlí; the Dominicans, Fuhkien; the Gallic church, all the western and south-western regions, with Manchuria; one society in Milan has charge of Honan, and another in Belgium labors in Mongolia. The successful efforts of M. Lagrené, the French envoy to China in 1844, to obtain formal recognition of the Christian religion and protection to its professors from their own rulers, entitle him to the thanks of every well-wisher of missions. The intention of the Chinese authorities in tolerating such efforts was to limit them to the newly opened ports, where alone churches could be erected, for the missionaries are disallowed free entrance into the country. This partial permission of 1844 prepared the way for the toleration articles in the treaties of 1858, when the four Powers present at Tientsin obtained a more explicit acknowledgment from the Emperor of the rights of Christian laborers and professors among the Chinese. Those articles have been in force during the past twenty years, and have proved a safeguard and a warrant for the faith of Christ and its adherents even beyond the hopes of those who first proposed them.

The exclusive labors of the Roman Catholics among the Chinese comprise a period of about two hundred and fifty years from the date of Ricci's reception at Peking. The various works written by them during this period contained not only the details of their labors, but nearly everything that was then known relating to the Chinese. The essays, translations, histories, travels, etc., of Visdelou, Mailla, Trigault, Semido, Amiot, Le Comte, and scores of others, still remain to inform those who seek to learn their acts.[1] Every reader must honor the men who thus suffered and labored, prospered and died, in the prosecution of their work. It is worthy of consideration, as to the self-supporting character of this work, that their constant experience has shown that, however numerous and zealous the converts, the presence of European pastors and overseers is

[1] Rémusat, *Nouveaux Mélanges*, pp. 207 ff.

Digitized by Google

indispensable to their spiritual prosperity.[1] Whether this is owing to the character of the Chinese mind, or to the little Christian instruction and principle these converts really have, cannot in most cases be easily decided. It can hardly be expected that pagans should perceive much difference immediately between their old worship and the ceremonies of the new faith in the presence of pictures, images, and crosses, before which they were taught to prostrate themselves. The native priests and catechists were not instructed to maintain the authority of the law and word of God above all human teachings in this respect, for the second commandment had been early expunged from the Decalogue, and thus the command of God made void, which prohibits man to make, to serve, or to bow down to such things. It may be this defect in their religious training which keeps these native priests in tutelage under the foreigners, and prevents the maintenance of self-supporting, indigenous churches under their oversight.

In former days the entrance of missionaries into the interior of China was attended with considerable hazard, delay, and uncertainty, arising from the weakness or ignorance of those guides to whose care they were entrusted, and the risks they ran if detected. This has now all passed away, and access to all parts of the Empire is even more free than it was in the days of the Emperor Kanghí. In those early times the development of missionary work was not as well understood as it is now after long experience, and less attention was paid to education and self-support. Those points were not appreciated even in Europe, and we should not look for stronger growth in the branches of the tree than in its trunk. Within the last twenty years, not only have the theological schools of the Romish missions increased so that eighteen were open in 1859, but with the introduction of the Sisters of Charity many thousands of young children are taught needlework, reading, and various handicrafts to prepare them for useful lives. These schools and orphanages exert a widespread and lasting influence.

The baptism of children and adults has ever been a very

[1] *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tome IV., p. 77.

Digitized by Google

important work with the Roman Catholic missionaries, and especially (if its frequent mention is an evidence) the baptism of *moribunds*, or dying children of heathens. The agents in this work are usually elderly women, says Verolles, "who have experience in the treatment of infantile diseases. Furnished with innocent pills and a bottle of holy water whose virtues they extol, they introduce themselves into the houses where there are sick infants, and discover whether they are in danger of death; in this case they inform the parents, and tell them that before administering other remedies they must wash their hands with the purifying waters of their bottle. The parents, not suspecting this *pieuse ruse*, readily consent, and by these innocent frauds we procure in our mission the baptism of seven or eight thousand infants every year." Another missionary, Dufresse, one of the most distinguished of late years, says: "The women who baptize the infants of heathen parents announce themselves as consecrated to the healing of infants, and to give remedies gratis, that they may satisfy the vow of their father who has commanded this as an act of charity." The number of baptized children thus saved from perdition is carefully detailed in the annual reports, and calculations are made by the missionaries for the consideration of their patrons in France and elsewhere as to the expense incurred for this branch of labor, and the cost of each soul thus saved; and appeals for aid in sending out these female baptists are based upon the tabular reports. It may, however, be a question, even with a candid Romanist who believes that unbaptized infants perish eternally, whether baptism performed by women and unconsecrated laymen is valid; and still more so, whether it is ritual when done by stealth and under false pretences. The number thus annually baptized in all the missions cannot be placed much under fifty thousand, and some years it exceeds a hundred thousand. No attention seems to be given to the child in ordinary cases if it happen to live after this surreptitious baptism.

The degree of instruction given to the converts is trifling, partly owing to the great extent of a single diocese and partly to imperfect knowledge of the language on the part of missionaries. The vexations constantly experienced urge them to be

Digitized by Google

cautious; and truly if a missionary believes that baptism, confirmation, confession, and absolution, are all the evidences of faith that are required in a convert to entitle him to salvation, it cannot be supposed he will deem it necessary to give them long-continued instruction. The causes which usually bring the converts into trouble with their countrymen or the officials were thus described many years ago by the Bishop of Caradre in Sz'chuen; they are still partly applicable.

First. Christians are frequently confounded with the members of the Triad Society, or of the White Lily sect, both by their enemies and by persons belonging to those associations.

Second. The Christians refuse to contribute to the erection or repair of temples, or subscribe to idolatrous feasts and superstitious rites; though, according to the *Annales*, they sometimes defray the charges of the theatrical exhibitions which follow, in order to avoid the malice of their adversaries.

Third. "Espousals are almost indissoluble in China, and whenever the Christians refuse to ratify them by proceeding to a marriage already commenced, they are regarded as law-breakers and treated as such."[1] This is the most common source of trouble, especially when the parents of the girl have become converts since the betrothment, and the other party is anxious to fulfil the contract. These engagements are sometimes broken in a sufficiently unscrupulous manner, and nothing draws so much odium upon Christians as their refusal to adhere to these contracts. On one occasion this bishop assisted in breaking up such an engagment, when the parents, on the death of a sister of the girl, asserted that the deceased was the one who had been betrothed. He adds: "I think the faith of the parents and the purity of their motives will readily excuse them before God for the sin of lying." On other occasions the missionaries endeavor to dissolve these engagements by exhorting the believing party to take vows of celibacy.

Fourth. All communication with Europeans being interdicted, the magistrates seek diligently for every evidence of their exist-

[1] *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tome III., p. 37, where there appear two or three cases of this and Saint-Martin's reasoning on the point.

Digitized by Google

ence in the country, by searching for the objects used in worship, as crosses, breviaries, etc.

Fifth. The little respect the converts have for their ancestors is always an offence in the eyes of the pagans, and leads to recrimination and vexatious annoyances.

Sixth. As the converts are obliged to take down the ancestral tablets in order to put up those of their own religion, they are seldom forgiven in this change, and occasion is taken therefrom to persecute.

Seventh. The indiscreet zeal of the neophytes leading them to break the idols or insult the objects of public worship is one of the most common causes of persecution.

Eighth. The disputes between the missionaries themselves, regarding the ceremonies, have frequently excited troubles.

In addition to these causes, some of which are now removed, there are others which have grown up since the toleration granted to Christianity by the treaties, and which may develop still more. They are discussed in the minute drawn up by the Chinese government in 1871, after the Tientsin riot, in which eight rules for their regulation are proposed. The grievances refer to the seclusion of children in orphanages; to the presence of women in religious assemblies; to missionaries interfering in legal cases so as to screen criminals, and their interchanging passports; to the neophytes rescuing criminals from justice; to the missionaries affecting the style of native officials; and, lastly, to their demand for land alleged to have once belonged to them, whatever may have been its ownership meanwhile. This has since ceased, and the others have been somewhat restrained.

Christians sometimes refuse to have their deceased friends buried with the idolatrous ceremonies required by their relatives, upon which the latter occasionally carry the matter before the officers, or resort to petty annoyances. In order to keep up the spirit of devotion among the neophytes, crucifixes, reliquaries, and other articles were given them, and "God wrought several miracles among them to authorize the practice." These articles, in the estimation of both priest and people, probably have no little influence over the demons which vex and

Digitized by Google

harass the pagans, but which never trouble Christians. Saint-Martin, writing to his father from the capital of Sz'chuen in 1774, says: "The most sensible proof for the pagans, and one always in force, is the power the Christians have over demons.[1] It is astonishing how these poor infidels are tormented, and they can find remedy only in the prayers of Christians, by whose help they are delivered and then converted. Seven or eight leagues from this spot is a house which has been infested with demons for a month; they maltreat all who come near them, and have set the dwelling on fire at different times. They have had recourse to all kinds of superstitious ceremonies, calling in the native priests, but all to no effect; and the master of the family where I am staying has now gone to assist them. He is a man of lively faith, and has already performed many miraculous cures."[2]

It is interesting to compare with this the account of Friar Odoric, "How the friars deal with devils in Tartary." In his *Travels* we read that "God Almighty hath bestowed such grace upon the Minor friars that in Great Tartary they think it a mere nothing to expel devils from the possessed, no more, indeed, than to drive a dog out of the house. For there be many in those parts possessed of the devil, both men and women, and these they bind and bring to our friars from as far as ten days' journey off. The friars bid the demons depart forth instantly from the bodies of the possessed, in the name of Jesus Christ, and they do depart immediately in obedience to this command. Then those who have been delivered from the demon straightway cause themselves to be baptized; and the friars take their idols, which are made of felt, and carry them to the fire, while all the people of the country round assemble to see their neighbor's gods burnt. The friars accordingly cast the idols into the fire, but they leap out again. And so the friars take holy water and sprinkle it upon the fire, and that straightway drives away the demon from the fire; so the friars again casting the idols into the fire, they are consumed.

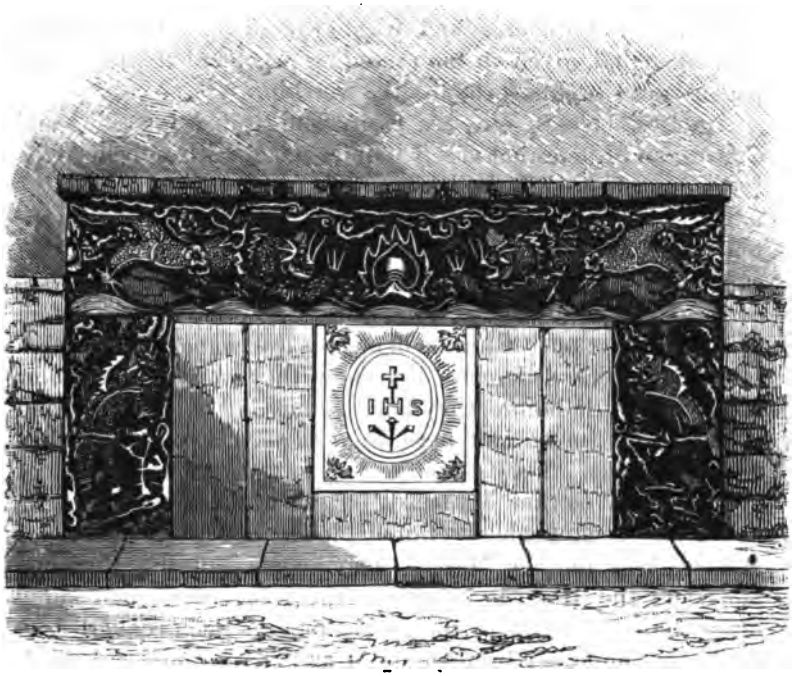
---

[1] *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tomes I., pp. 39 and 151, passim, and IV., p. 27.
[2] *Life of Didier Saint-Martin*, p. 35.

Digitized by Google

And then the devil in the air raises a shout, saying: 'See then! see then! how I am expelled from my dwelling place!' And in this way our friars baptize great numbers in that country."[1]

When persons educated in a country like France allow their converts to entertain such ideas, even if they do not favor them



Roman Catholic Altar near Shanghai.

themselves, and countenance their endeavors to exorcise the possessed, we cannot look for a very high degree of knowledge or piety. If they are brought out of pagan darkness, it is but little if any better than into light hardly bright enough to enable them even to distinguish trees from men.

The points of similarity between Buddhism and Romanism have already been noticed, and the converts from one to the

[1] Yule, *Cathay and the Way Thither*, Vol. I., p. 155.

Digitized by Google

other see but little more change than they do when going from Buddhism to the metaphysical speculations of the learned *ju kiao*. If Romish priests have allowed their converts to worship before pagan images, provided a cross is put into the candles, it would not be difficult for the latter to put the names of their departed parents behind the "tablets of religion," and worship them together. Similar to such a permission is the combination of the cross and dragon carved on a Romish altar near Shanghai, given on the preceding page, and at which both pagans and Christians could alike worship.

Agnuses, crosses, etc., are easily substituted for coins and charms, and it does not surely require much faith to believe the former as effectual as the latter. The neophyte takes away the tablet in his house or shop having *shin*, 'æon' or 'spirit,' written on it,[1] and puts up another, on which is written *shin, chin chu, tsao tien ti jin-wuh*, or 'God, true Lord, Creator of heaven, earth, man, and all things,' and burns the same incense before this as before that. Chinese demigods are changed for foreign saints, with this difference, that now they worship they know not what, while before they knew something of the name and character of the ancient hero from popular accounts and historical legends. They cease, indeed, to venerate the queen of Heaven, holy mother Ma tsupu, but what advance in true religion has been made by falling down before the Queen of Heaven, holy mother Mary? The people call the Buddhist idols and the Romish images by the same name, and apply much the same terms to their ceremonies. Such converts can easily be numbered by thousands; and it is a wonder, indeed, when one considers the nature of the case, that the whole population of China have not long since become "devout confessors" of this faith. Conversions depend, in such cases, on almost every other kind of influence than that of the Holy Spirit blessing his own word in an intelligent mind and a quickened conscience. The missionaries write that "being forced in three or four months after their arrival to preach

[1] Converts in Sz'chuen sometimes steal the idols from the roadside. *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tome I., p. 219.

Digitized by Google

when they do not know the language sufficiently either to be understood or to understand themselves, they have seen their auditors immediately embrace Christianity."

We pass no decision upon these converts, except what is given or drawn from the writings of their teachers. Human nature is everywhere the same in its great lineaments, and the effect of living godly lives in Christ Jesus will everywhere excite opposition, calumny, persecution, and death, according to the liberty granted the enemies of the truth. There may have been true converts among the adherents to Romanism; but what salutary effects has this large body of Christians wrought in the vast population of China during the three hundred years since Ricci established himself at Nanking? None, absolutely none, that attract attention. The letters of some of the missionaries written to their friends breathe a spirit of pious ardor and true Christian principle worthy of all imitation. Among the best letters contained in the *Annales* is one from Dufresse to his pupils then at Penang. It is a long epistle, and contains nothing (with one exception) which the most scrupulous Protestant would not approve. The same may be said of most of the letters contained in the same collection written in prison by Gagelin, a missionary who was strangled in Annam in 1833. It is hardly possible to doubt, when reading the letters of these two men, both of whom were martyred for the faith they preached, that they sincerely loved and trusted in the Saviour they proclaimed. Many of their converts also exhibit the greatest constancy in their profession, preferring to suffer persecution, torture, imprisonment, banishment, and death rather than to deny their faith, though every inducement of prevarication and mental reservation was held out to them by the magistrates in order to avoid the necessity of proceeding to extreme measures. If undergoing the loss of all things is an evidence of piety, many of them have abundantly proved their title to this virtue. But until there shall be a complete separation from idolatry and superstition; until the confessional shall be abolished, and the worship of the Virgin, wearing crosses and rosaries, and reliance on ceremonies and penances be stopped; until the entire Scriptures and Decalogue

Digitized by Google

be taught to the converts; until, in short, the essential doctrine of justification by faith alone be substituted for the many forms of justification by works, the mass of converts to Romanism in China can hardly be considered as much better than baptized pagans.[1]

Turn we now to a brief survey of the efforts of Protestants among the Chinese, and the results which have attended their labors. Hardly forty years have passed since the treaty of Nanking opened the five ports to their direct work in the Empire, and the results thus far necessarily partake of the incompleteness of new enterprises. The radical distinction between their modes of operation and those of their predecessors is indicated in the names 'Religion of Heaven's Lord' and 'Religion of Jesus;' the Romanists depend much on their teachings and ceremonies to convert men, the Protestants on the preaching of the word of God and a blessing on its vital truths.

The first Protestant missionary to China was Rev. Robert Morrison, of Morpeth, England, who was sent out by the London Missionary Society. He arrived at Canton, by way of New York, in September, 1807, and lived there for a year, in a quiet manner, in the factory of Messrs. Milner and Bull, of New York. He early made the acquaintance of Sir George T. Staunton, one of his firmest friends, and already well versed in Chinese studies; Mr. Robarts, the chief of the British factory, advised him to avow his intention to the Chinese of translating the Scriptures into their language, on the ground that it was a divine book which Christians highly esteemed and which the Chinese should have the opportunity of examining. In consequence of difficulties connected with the trade, he was obliged to leave Canton in 1808 with all British subjects and repair to Macao, where he deemed it prudent to maintain a careful retirement in

[1] An exhaustive collection of the titles of every work of importance upon Catholic missions in China, as well as a *résumé* of their periodical publications, may be found in M. Cordier's *Dictionnaire bibliographique des ouvrages Chinois*, Tome I., pp. 330–578, and following these pages are the works concerning Protestant missions, pp. 578–633. Compare also Thos. Marshall, *Christian Missions: their Agents and their Results*, London, 1863, and Chr. H. Kalkar, *Geschichte der christlichen Mission unter den Heiden*, Gütersloh, 1879–80.

Digitized by Google

order not to attract undue notice from the Portuguese priests. His associate, Dr. Milne, observed, with reference to these traits in his character, that "the patience that refuses to be conquered, the diligence that never tires, the caution that always trembles, and the studious habit that spontaneously seeks retirement were best adapted for the first Protestant missionary to China."

He married Miss Mary Morton in 1809, and accepted the appointment of translator under the East India Company, in whose service he continued until 1834. His position was now a well-understood one, and his official connexion obtained for him all necessary security so that he could prosecute his work with diligence and confidence. He no doubt did wisely in the circumstances in which he was placed, for his dictionary could hardly have been printed, or his translation of the Scriptures and other works been so successfully carried on, without the countenance and assistance of that powerful body. The entire New Testament was published in 1814, about half of it having been translated by Morrison and the remainder revised from a manuscript which had been deposited in 1739 in the British Museum.

Rev. W. Milne arrived in July, 1813, as his associate, and resided in Canton, leaving his wife at Macao. In 1814 he sailed for the Indian Archipelago, provided with about seventeen thousand copies of Testaments and tracts for distribution among the Chinese there. He stopped at Banca on his route, and then proceeded to Java, where he was received by Sir Stamford Raffles, a man far in advance of the times in his support and patronage of missions. Milne was enabled to travel over the island and distribute such books as he had. From Java he went to Malacca, then a Dutch settlement, afterward returning to Canton, where he remained undisturbed, though a severe persecution, in which Dufresse lost his life, was waging against the Christians throughout the Empire. Milne, finding it difficult to prosecute his labors in China (for the East India Company would not countenance him), embarked for Malacca in 1815, accompanied by a teacher and workmen for printing Chinese books; here he resided till his death in 1822.

The leading objects in sending Morrison to Canton, namely, the translation of the Bible and preparation of a dictionary,

Digitized by Google

occupied the greater portion of his time. He soon commenced a Sabbath service with his domestics and acquaintances in his own apartments, which he never relinquished, though it did not expand into a regular public congregation during his lifetime. He considered this as one of the most important parts of his work, and was much encouraged when in 1814 one of his audience, Tsai A-ko, made a profession of his faith and was baptized. He was the first convert, and it is reasonably to be hoped, judging from his after-life, that he sincerely believed to salvation.

The compilation of the dictionary progressed so well that in 1814 a few members of the Company's establishment, among whom Mr. Elphinstone and Sir George Staunton were prominent, interested themselves in getting it printed. The Court of Directors responded to the application on the most liberal scale, sending out as printer P. P. Thoms, together with a printing office. The first volume was issued in 1817, and the whole was completed in six quarto volumes, containing four thousand five hundred and ninety-five pages, in 1823, at an expense of about twelve thousand pounds sterling. It consisted of three parts, viz., characters arranged according to their radicals, according to their pronunciation, and an English and Chinese part. This work contributed much to the advancement of a knowledge of Chinese literature, and its aid in missions has been manifold greater. The plan was rather too comprehensive for one man to fill up, and also involved much repetition; a reprint of the second part was issued in a smaller volume, in 1854, without material addition.

While the dictionary was going through the press, the translation of the Old Testament was progressing by the joint labors of Morrison and Milne, and in November, 1818, the entire Bible was published. Another version, by Dr. Marshman at Serampore, was completed and printed with movable types in 1822. A second edition of the Baptist version was never struck off, and comparatively few copies have ever been circulated among the Chinese. Both these versions are such that a sincere inquirer after the truth cannot fail to comprehend the meaning, though both are open to criticisms and contain mistakes

Digitized by Google

incident to first translations. They are now numbered among superseded versions like those of Wiclif and Tyndal, the Italic and Ulfilas in other languages, but will ever be regarded with gratitude.[1]

During the years he was thus engaged Morrison published a tract on Redemption, a translation of the Assembly's Catechism, church of England liturgy, a synopsis of Old Testament history, a hymn book, and a Tour of the World; altogether, nearly thirty thousand copies were printed and distributed. He prepared a Chinese grammar on the model of a common English grammar, which was printed at Serampore in 1815; also a volume of miscellaneous information on the chronology, festivals, geography, and other subjects relating to China, under the title of *View of China for Philological Purposes*. The list of his writings comprises thirty-one titles, of which nineteen are in English; each work bears witness to his learning and piety.

In 1821 Mrs. Morrison died, and about eight months after he visited Malacca and Singapore, where he was much delighted by what he saw. The Anglo-Chinese College was then under the care of Collie, and this visit from its founder encouraged both principal and students. In 1824 he returned to England and was honorably received by his Majesty George IV., and obtained the approbation of all who took an interest in the promotion of religion and learning. He published a volume of sermons and a miscellany called *Horæ Sinicæ* while in England; and having formed a second matrimonial connection, left his native land again in May, 1826, under different circumstances from the first time. During his absence the mission at Canton was left in charge of the first native preacher, Liang Kung-fah, or Liang A-fah, whom Morrison had ordained as an evangelist. This worthy man carried on his useful labors in preaching and writing until his death in 1855 at that city, from whence, in 1834, he had been forced to flee for his life. He takes a deservedly high position at the head of the native Protestant Christian min-

[1] Medhurst's *China*, p. 217. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. IV., p. 249. *Life of Morrison*, by his widow, passim, 2 Vols., London, 1839. Wylie in *Chinese Recorder*, Vol. I., pp. 121, 145. *Lives of the Leaders of our Church Universal*, p. 819, Phila., 1879.

Digitized by Google

istry among the Chinese in respect to time, and his writings have been highly successful and beneficial.

During the years which elapsed between the return and death of Morrison, he was principally occupied by his duties as translator to the Company and in literary labors. His *Memoirs* furnish all the particulars of their contents, as well as the details of his useful and uneventful life. His last years were cheered by the arrival of five fellow-laborers from the United States, the first who had come to his assistance since Milne left him in 1814. On the dissolution of the East India Company's establishment, in April, 1834, he was appointed interpreter to the King's Commission, but his death took place August 1, 1834, at the age of fifty-two, even then much worn out with his unaided labors of twenty-seven years.

Perhaps no two persons were ever less alike than the founders of the Romish and Protestant missions to China, but no plans of operations could be more dissimilar than those adopted by Ricci and Morrison. We have already sketched the life-work of the former, obtained from friendly sources. When Morrison was sent out the directors of the London Missionary Society thus expressed their views of his labors: "We trust that no objection will be made to your continuing in Canton till you have accomplished your great object of acquiring the language; when this is done, you may probably soon afterward begin to turn this attainment into a direction which may be of extensive use to the world; perhaps you may have the honor of forming a Chinese dictionary, more comprehensive and correct than any preceding one, or the still greater honor of translating the sacred Scriptures into a language spoken by a third part of the human race." The enterprise thus committed to the hands of a single individual was only part of a system which neither the projectors nor their collaborator supposed would end there. They knew that the great work of evangelizing and elevating a mass of mind like that using the Chinese language required large preparatory labors, of which those here mentioned were among the most important. China was a sealed country when Morrison landed on its shores, and he could not have forced his way into it if he had tried, with any prospect of ultimate suc-

Digitized by Google

cess, even by adopting the same plans which Ricci did. It is doubtful if he could have lived there at all had it not been for the protection of the East India Company. After all his toil, and faith, and prayer, he only saw three or four converts, no churches, schools, or congregations publicly assembled; but his last letter breathes the same desires as when he first went out: "I wait patiently the events to be developed in the course of Divine Providence. The Lord reigneth. If the kingdom of God our Saviour prosper in China, all will be well; other matters are comparatively of small importance." He died just as the day of change and progress was dawning in Eastern Asia, but his life was very far from being a failure in its results or influence. The principles of these two missionaries have been followed out by their successors, and we are quite willing to let their results be the test of their foundation upon the Chief Corner Stone.

Protestant missions among the Chinese emigrants in Malacca, Penang, Singapore, Rhio, Borneo, and Batavia have never taken much hold upon them, and they are at present all suspended or abandoned. The first named was established in 1815 by Milne, and was conducted longest and with the most efficiency, though the labors at the other points have been carried on with zeal and a degree of success. The comparatively small results which have attended all these missions may be ascribed to two or three reasons, besides the fewness of the laborers. The Chinese residing in these settlements consist chiefly of emigrants who have fled or left their native countries, in all cases without their families, some to avoid the injustice or oppression of their rulers, but more to gain a livelihood they cannot find so well at home. Consequently they lead a roving life; few of them marry or settle down to become valuable citizens, and fewer still are sufficiently educated to relish or care for instruction or books. These communities are much troubled by branches of the Triad Society, and the restless habits of the Malays are congenial to most of the emigrants who enter among them. The Chinese, coming as they do from different parts of their own land, speak different dialects, and soon learn the Malay language as a lingua franca; their children also learn it still more thoroughly from their

Digitized by Google

mothers, notwithstanding the education their fathers give them in Chinese. The want of fixedness in the Chinese population therefore partly accounts for the little permanent impression made on it in these settlements by missionary efforts.

It was at Malacca that the Anglo-Chinese College was established in 1818 by Dr. Morrison, assisted by other friends of religion. Its objects were to afford Europeans the means of acquiring the Chinese language and enable Chinese to become acquainted with the religion and science of the West. It was productive of good up to the time of its removal to Hongkong in 1844. About seventy persons were baptized while the mission remained at Malacca, and about fifty students finished their education, part of whom were sincere Christians and all of them respectable members of society. Three or four of the converts have become preachers. There is little hesitation, however, in saying that the name and array of a college were too far in advance of the people among whom it was situated. The efforts made in it would probably have been more profitably expended in establishing common schools among the people, in which Christianity and knowledge went hand in hand. It is far better among an ignorant pagan people that a hundred persons should know one thing than that one man should know a hundred; the widest diffusion of the first elements of religion and science is most desirable. The mission was not, however, large enough at any one time for its members to superintend many common schools. Among the books issued besides Bibles and tracts were a periodical called the *Indo-Chinese Gleaner*, edited by Dr. Milne; a translation of the Four Books, by Mr. Collie; an edition of Prémare's *Notitia Linguæ Sinicæ;* a life of Milne, and a volume of sermons by Morrison. The number of volumes printed in Chinese was about half a million.

The mission at Georgetown, in the island of Penang, like that at Malacca, was established in 1819 by the London Missionary Society, and continued till 1843, at which time it was suspended. The mission at Singapore was commenced in 1819 by Mr. Milton; the colonial government granted a lot, and a chapel and other buildings were erected in the course of a few years. Messrs. Smith and Tomlin came to the settlement in 1827, but

Digitized by Google

did not remain long. Gutzlaff came over from the Dutch settlement at Rhio, but did not remain long enough to effect anything; nor did Abeel, who came from China in 1831 and left soon after for Siam. The German missionary at this station, Thomsen, when about to leave in 1834, sold his printing apparatus to the mission newly established there under the American Board by Tracy. The prospects in China appearing unpromising at this time, it was designed by the directors of the American society to establish a well-regulated school for both Chinese and Malays, which was by degrees to become a seminary, and as many primary schools as there were means to support; besides the usual labors in preaching and visiting, a type foundry and printing office for manufacturing books in Chinese, Malay, Bugís, and Siamese were also contemplated. In December, 1834, Tracy was joined by the Rev. P. Parker, M.D., who opened a hospital in the Chinese part of the town for the gratuitous relief of the sick; in 1835 Wolfe arrived from England, and two years afterward Rev. Messrs. Dickinson, Hope, and Travelli, and North from the United States, to take charge of the schools and printing office. The school established by the American mission was carried on until 1844, when the mission was removed to China and the Malay portion of it given up.

The English mission, after the death of Wolfe in 1837, was under the care of Messrs. Dyer and Stronach, the former of whom had removed there from Penang and Malacca. Dyer had been for many years engaged in preparing steel punches for a font of movable Chinese type, and his patient labors had already overcome the principal difficulties in the way when the work was arrested by his death in 1843. He had, however, finished matrices for so many characters of two fonts that the enterprise needed only to be carried on by a practised mechanic to assure its success. This was afterward done by Messrs. Cole and Gamble of the American Presbyterian Board. In their superior styles and the different sizes now in use we must not forget Dyer's initiatory steps. This gentleman labored nearly seventeen years with a consecration of energy and singleness of purpose seldom exceeded, and won the affectionate re-

Digitized by Google

spect of the natives wherever he lived. The mission was continued until 1845, when the printing office was removed to Hongkong, and nearly all proselyting efforts in the colony by British Christians suspended. This point of influence has peculiar claims on them as a radiating centre for the various nations and tribes which trade in Singapore.

The mission to the Chinese in Java was commenced by Slater in 1819 and reinforced in 1822 by Medhurst, who continued in charge of it, with some interruptions, until 1843, when he removed to Shanghai. The Dutch churches have carried on evangelizing work in all their colonies, aided and guided somewhat by the government officials, but have done almost nothing for the Chinese, except as they have been addressed in Malay. Such labors in the Dutch colonies have been left to them, and foreign societies have now withdrawn from the Archipelago in a great measure. The efforts of the American missionaries were confined to Borneo and Singapore up to 1844, when they all removed to China. The suspicious and restrictive bearing of the Dutch authorities toward such efforts had its influence in making this change.

A summary of labors at the stations was given by Medhurst in 1837, who refers in it almost exclusively to the English missionaries, as the Americans had at that time only recently commenced operations. "Protestant missionaries, considering themselves excluded from the interior of the Empire of China, and finding a host of emigrants in the various countries in the Malayan Archipelago, aimed first to enlighten these, with the hope that if properly instructed and influenced they would, on their return to their native land, carry with them the gospel they had learned and spread it among their countrymen. With this view they established themselves in the various colonies around China, studied the language, set up schools and seminaries, wrote and printed books, conversed extensively with the people, and tried to collect congregations to whom they might preach the word of life. Since the commencement of their missions they have translated the Holy Scriptures and printed two thousand complete Bibles in two sizes, ten thousand Testaments and thirty thousand separate books, and upward of half

Digitized by Google

a million of tracts in Chinese; besides four thousand Testaments and one hundred and fifty thousand tracts in the languages of the archipelago, making about twenty millions of printed pages. About ten thousand children have passed through the mission schools, nearly one hundred persons have been baptized, and several native preachers raised up, one of whom has proclaimed the gospel to his countrymen and endured persecution for Jesus' sake."

Since this was written the number of pages printed and circulated has more than doubled, the number of scholars taught has increased many thousands, and preaching proportionably extended; while a few more have professed the gospel by baptism and a generally consistent life. All these missions, so far as the Chinese are concerned, are now suspended, and, unless the Dutch resume them, are not likely to be soon revived. The greater openings in China itself, and the small number of qualified men ready to enter them, invited all the laborers away from the outskirts and colonies to the borders, and into the mother country itself. The idea entertained, that the colonists would react upon their countrymen at home, proved illusive; for the converts, when they returned to dwell among their heathen countrymen, were lost in the crowd, and though they may not have adopted or sanctioned their old heathen customs, were too few to work in concert and too ignorant and unskilled to carry on such labors.[1]

When Robert Morrison died at Canton in 1834, the prospect of the extension of evangelistic work among the people was nearly as dark as when he landed; in China itself during that time only three assistants had come to his help, for there were few encouragements for them to stay. Bridgman, the first missionary from the American churches to China, in company with D. Abeel, seaman's chaplain at Whampoa, arrived in February, 1830. Abeel remained nearly a year, when he went to Singapore, and subseqnently to Siam. They were received in Canton

[1] Besides the regular publications of the societies engaged in this branch of missions which give authentic details, see the memoirs of Abeel, Dyer, Milne, and Morrison, Tomlin's *Missionary Letters*, and Abeel's *Residence in China* and the neighboring countries.

Digitized by Google

by the house of Olyphant & Co., in whose establishment one or both were maintained during the first three years, and whose partners remained the friends and supporters of all efforts for the evangelization of the Chinese till its close, fifty years afterward. Bridgman took four or five boys as scholars, but his limited accommodations prevented the enlargement of the school, and in 1834 it was disbanded by the departure of its pupils, whose friends feared to be involved in trouble.

During the summer of 1833 Liang A-fah distributed a large number of books in and about Canton, a work which well suited his inclinations. Many copies of the Scriptures and his own tracts had reached the students assembled at the literary examinations, when the officers interfered to prevent him. In 1834 the authorities ordered a search for those natives who had "traitorously" assisted Lord Napier in publishing an appeal to the Chinese, and Liang A-fah and his assistants were immediately suspected. Two of the latter were seized, one of whom was beaten with forty blows upon his face for refusing to divulge; the other made a full disclosure, and the police next day repaired to his shop and seized three printers, with four hundred volumes and blocks; the men were subsequently released by paying about eight hundred dollars. Liang A-fah fled, and a body of police arrived at his native village to arrest him, but not finding him or his family they seized three of his kindred and sealed up his house. He finally made his way to Macao and sailed to Singapore.

Few books were distributed after this at Canton until ten years later, but numerous copies were circulated along the coast as far north as Tientsin, accompanied with such explanations as could be given. The first and most interesting of these voyages was made by Gutzlaff, on board a junk proceeding from Bangkok to Tientsin, June 9, 1831, in which the sociable character of the Chinese and their readiness to receive and entertain foreigners when they could do so without fear of their rulers was plainly seen.[1] After his arrival at Macao, December 13th,

[1] For an account of a trip much like it, see *Annales de la Foi*, Tome VII., p. 356.

Digitized by Google

he was engaged by the enlightened chief of the English factory, Charles Marjoribanks, as interpreter to accompany Lindsay in the ship Lord Amherst, on an experimental commercial voyage which occupied about seven months (February 26 to September 5, 1832), and presented further opportunities for learning the feelings of the Chinese officers regarding foreign intercourse. Many religious and scientific books were distributed, among which was one giving a general account of the English nation that was eagerly received by all classes. Within a few weeks after his return Gutzlaff started a third time, October 20th, in the Sylph, an opium vessel in the employ of a leading English firm at Canton, and went as far as Manchuria while the winds were favorable. She returned to Macao April 29, 1833, visiting many places on the downward trip. The interest aroused in England and America among political, commercial, and religious people, fifty years ago, by the reports of these three voyages can now hardly be appreciated. They opened the prospect of new relations with one-half of mankind, and the other half who had long felt debarred from entering upon their rightful fields in all these diversified interests prepared for great efforts.

Great Britain took the lead in breaking down the barriers, and the religious world urged on the work of missions. Contributions were sent to Gutzlaff from England and America, encouraging him to proceed, and grants were made to aid in printing Bibles and tracts. In 1835 he gave up his connection with the opium trade and took the office of interpreter to the English consular authorities on a salary of eight hundred pounds sterling, which he retained till his death, August 9, 1851, aged forty-eight. He was a man of great industry and knowledge of Chinese, and carried on a missionary organization at Hongkong by means of native Christians for several years. His publications in the Chinese, Japanese, Dutch, German, English, Siamese, Cochinchinese, and Latin languages number eighty-five in all; they are now seldom seen.

In 1835 Medhurst visited China, and, assisted by the house of Olyphant & Co., embarked in the brig Huron, accompanied by the American missionary Stevens and furnished with a supply

Digitized by Google

of books. During the three months of the voyage, they "went through various parts of four provinces and many villages, giving away about eighteen thousand volumes, of which six thousand were portions of the Scriptures, among a cheerful and willing people, without meeting with the least aggression or injury; having been always received by the people with a cheerful smile, and most generally by the officers with politeness and respect." Medhurst's ability to speak the Amoy dialect introduced him to the people in the junks at all the ports on the coast. Years after this voyage the Methodist missionaries at Fuhchau found that some of the books given away on Haitan Island had been read and remembered, and thus prepared the people there for listening to further preaching.

The most expensive enterprise for this object was set on foot in 1836, and few efforts to advance the cause of religion among the Chinese have been planned on a scale of greater liberality. The brig Himmaleh was purchased in New York by the firm of Talbot, Olyphant & Co., principally for the purpose of aiding missionaries in circulating religious books on the coasts of China and the neighboring countries, and arrived in August, 1836. Gutzlaff, who was then engaged as interpreter to the English authorities, declined going in her, because in that case he must resign his commission, and there was no other missionary in China acquainted with the dialects spoken on the coast. The brig remained unemployed, therefore, until December, when she was dispatched on a cruise among the islands of the archipelago under the direction of Mr. Stevens, accompanied by G. T. Lay, agent of the British and Foreign Bible Society, recently arrived. This decision of Gutzlaff, who had again and again urged such a measure, and had himself ceased his voyages on the coast because of his implied connection thereby with the opium trade, was quite unexpected. The death of Mr. Stevens at Singapore, in January, threw the chief responsibility and direction of the undertaking upon Capt. Frazer, who seems to have been poorly qualified for any other than the maritime part. Rev. Messrs. Dickinson and Wolfe went in Stevens' place, but as none of these gentlemen understood the Malayan language, less direct intercourse was had with the people at the

Digitized by Google

places where they stopped than was anticipated. The Himmaleh reached China in July, 1837, and as there was no one qualified to go in her, she returned to the United States. An account of the voyage was written by Lay and published in New York, in connection with that of the ship Morrison to Japan in August, 1837, by C. W. King, of the firm of Olyphant & Co., under whose direction the trip of the latter was taken for the purpose of restoring seven shipwrecked Japanese to their native land. Gutzlaff accompanied this vessel as interpreter, for three of the men were under the orders of the English superintendent; the expedition failed in its object, and all the men were brought back. Probably fifty thousand books in all were scattered on the coast in these and other voyages, and more than double that number about Canton, Macao, and their vicinity.

This promiscuous distribution of books has been criticised by some as injudicious and little calculated to advance the objects of a Christian mission. The funds expended in printing and circulating books, it was said by these critics, who have never undertaken aught themselves, could have been much better employed in establishing schools. To scatter books broadcast among a people whose ability to read them was not ascertained, and under circumstances which prevented any explanation of the design in giving them or inquiries as to the effects produced, was not, at first view, a very wise or promising course. But it must be remembered that prior to the treaty of Nanking this was the only means of approaching the people of the country. The Emperor forbade foreigners residing in his borders except at Canton, and Protestant missionaries did not believe that it was the best means of recommending their teachings to come before his subjects as persistent violators of his laws; God's providence would open the way when the laborers were ready. No one supposed that the desire to receive books was an index of the ability of the people to understand them or love of the doctrines contained in them. If the plan offered a reasonable probability of effecting some good, it certainly could do almost no harm, for the respect for printed books assured us that they would not be wantonly destroyed, but rather, in

Digitized by Google

most cases, carefully preserved. The business of tract distribution and colportage may, however, be carried too far in advance of other parts of missionary work. It is much easier to write, print, and give away religious treatises, than it is to sit down with the people and explain the leading truths of the Bible; but the two go well together among those who can read, and in no nation is it more desirable that they should be combined. If the books be given away without explanation, the people do not understand the object and feel too little interest in them to take the trouble to find out; if the preacher deliver an intelligible discourse, his audience will probably remember its general purport, but they will be likely to read the book with more attention and understand the sermon better when the two are combined; the voice explains the book and the book recalls the ideas and teachings of the preacher.

It is not surprising that the fate of these books cannot be traced, for that is true of such labors in other lands. On the one hand, they have been seen on the counters of shops cut in two for wrapping up medicines and fruit—which the shopman would not do with the worst of his own books; on the other, a copy of a gospel containing remarks was found on board the admiral's junk at Tinghai, when that town was taken by the English in 1840. They certainly have not all been lost or contemptuously destroyed, though perhaps most have been like seed sown by the wayside. In missions, as in other things, it is impossible to predict the result of several courses of action before trying them; and if it was believed that many of those who receive books can read them, there was a strong inducement to press this branch of labor, when, too, it was the only one which could be brought to bear upon large portions of the people.

In 1832 the *Chinese Repository* was commenced by Bridgman and encouraged by Morrison, who, with his son, continued to furnish valuable papers and translations as long as they lived. Its object was to diffuse correct information concerning China, while it formed a convenient repertory of the essays, travels, translations, and papers of contributors. It was issued monthly

Digitized by Google

for twenty years under the editorship of Messrs. Bridgman and Williams, and contains a history of foreign intercourse and missions during its existence. The *Chinese Recorder* has since chronicled the latter cause and the *China Review* taken the literary branch.

In 1834 Dr. Parker joined the mission at Canton, and opened a hospital, in October, 1835, for the gratuitous relief of such diseases among the Chinese as his time and means would allow, devoting his attention chiefly to ophthalmic cases and surgical operations. This branch of Christian benevolence was already not unknown in China. Morrison in 1820 had, in connection with Dr. Livingstone, commenced dispensing medicines at Macao, while T. R. Colledge, also of the East India Company, opened a dispensary at his own expense, in 1827, and finding the number of patients rapidly increasing, he rented two small houses at Macao, where in four years more than four thousand patients were cured or relieved. The benevolent design was encouraged by the foreign community, and about six thousand five hundred dollars were contributed, so that it was, after the first year, no other expense to the founder than giving his time and strength. It was unavoidably closed in 1832, and a philanthropic Swede, Sir Andrew Ljungstedt, prepared a short account of its operations, and inserted several letters written to Dr. Colledge, one of which is here quoted:

To knock head and thank the great English doctor. Venerable gentleman: May your groves of almond trees be abundant, and the orange trees make the water of your well fragrant. As heretofore, may you be made known to the world as illustrious and brilliant, and as a most profound and skilful doctor. I last year arrived in Macao blind in both eyes; I have to thank you, venerable sir, for having by your excellent methods cured me perfectly. Your goodness is as lofty as a hill, your virtue deep as the sea; therefore all my family will express their gratitude for your new-creating goodness. Now I am desirous of returning home. Your profound kindness it is impossible for me to requite; I feel extremely ashamed of myself for it. I am grateful for your favors, and shall think of them without ceasing. Moreover, I am certain that since you have been a benefactor to the world and your good government is spread abroad, heaven must surely grant you a long life, and you will enjoy every happiness. I return to my mean province. Your illustrious name, venerable sir, will extend to all time; during a thousand ages it will not decay. I return thanks for your great kindness. Impotent are my words to sound your fame and to express my thanks. I wish you everlasting tranquillity.

Digitized by Google

Presented to the great English doctor and noble gentleman in the 11th year of Taukwang, by Ho Shuh, of the district of Chau-ngan, in the department of Changchau in Fuhkien, who knocks head and presents thanks.

Another patient, in true Chinese style, returned thanks for the aid he had received in a poetical effusion:

This I address to the English physician: condescend, sir, to look upon it. Diseased in my eyes, I had almost lost my sight, when happily, sir, I met with you. You gave me medicine; you applied the knife; and, as when the clouds are swept away, now again I behold the azure heavens. My joys know no bounds. As a faint token of my feelings, I have composed a stanza in heptameter, which, with a few trifling presents, I beg you will be pleased to accept. Then happy, happy shall I be!

He lavishes his blessings, but seeks for no return;
Such medicine, such physician, since Tsin were never known:
The medicine—how many kinds most excellent has he!
The surgeon's knife—it pierced the eye, and spring once more I see.
If Tung has not been born again to bless the present age,
Then sure 'tis Sü reanimate again upon the stage.
Whenever called away from far, to see your native land,
A living monument I'll wait upon the ocean's strand.

When Dr. Parker's scheme was made known to Howqua, the hong merchant, he readily fell in with it and let his building for the purpose, and after the first year gave it rent free till its destruction in 1856. It was opened for the admission of patients November 4, 1835. The peculiar circumstances under which this enterprise was started imposed some caution on its superintendent, and the hong merchants themselves seem to have had a lurking suspicion that so purely a benevolent object, involving so much expense of time, labor, and money, must have some latent object which it behooved them to watch. A linguist's clerk was often in attendance, partly for this purpose, for three or four years, and made himself very useful. The patients, who numbered about a hundred daily, were often restless, and hindered their own relief by not patiently awaiting their turn; but the habits of order in which they are trained made even such a company amenable to rules. The surgical operations attracted much notice, and successful cures were spoken of abroad and served to advertise and recommend the institution to the higher ranks of native society. It is difficult

Digitized by Google

at this date to fully appreciate the extraordinary ignorance and prejudice respecting foreigners which the Chinese then entertained, and which could be best removed by some such form of benevolence. On the other hand, the repeated instances of kind feeling between friends and relatives exhibited among the patients, tender solicitude of parents for the relief of children, and the fortitude shown in bearing the severest operations, or faith in taking unknown medicines from the foreigners' hands, all tended to elevate the character of the Chinese in the opinion of every beholder, as their unfeigned gratitude for restored health increased his esteem.

The reports of this hospital in Sin-tau-lan Street gave the requisite information as to its operations, and means were taken to place the whole system upon a surer footing by forming a society in China. Suggestions for this object were circulated in October, 1836, signed by Messrs. Colledge, Parker, and Bridgman, in which the motives for such a step and the good effects likely to result from it were thus explained:

We cannot close these suggestions without adverting to one idea, though this is not the place to enlarge upon it. It is affecting to contemplate this Empire, embracing three hundred and sixty millions of souls, where almost all the light of true science is unknown, where Christianity has *scarcely* shed one genial ray, and where the theories concerning matter and mind, creation and providence, are wofully destitute of truth; it is deeply affecting to see the multitudes who are here suffering under maladies from which the hand of charity is able to relieve them. Now we know, indeed, that it is the glorious gospel of the blessed God only that can set free the human mind, and that it is only when enlightened in the true knowledge of God that man is rendered capable of rising to his true intellectual elevation; but while we take care to give this truth the high place which it ought ever to hold, we should beware of depreciating other truth. In the vast conflict which is to revolutionize the intellectual and moral world, we may not underrate the value of any weapon. As a means, then, to waken the dormant mind of China, may we not place a high value upon medical truth, and seek its introduction with good hope of its becoming the handmaid of religious truth? If an inquiry after truth upon any subject is elicited, is there not a great point gained? And that inquiry after medical truth may be provoked, there is good reason to expect; for, exclusive as China is in all her systems, she cannot exclude disease nor shut her people up from the desire of relief. Does not, then, the finger of Providence point clearly to one way that we should take with the people of China, directing us to seek the introduction of the remedies for sin itself by the same door through which we convey those which are designed to mitigate or remove its

Digitized by Google

evils? Although medical truths cannot restore the sick and afflicted to the favor of God, yet perchance the spirit of inquiry about it once awakened will not sleep till it inquires about the source of truth; and he who comes with the blessings of health may prove an angel of mercy to point to the Lamb of God. At any rate, this seems the only open door; let us enter it. A faith that worketh not may wait for other doors. None can deny that *this* is a way of charity that worketh no ill, and our duty to walk in it seems plain and imperative.[1]

This paper was favorably received, and in February, 1838, a public meeting was convened at Canton for the purpose of forming a society, "the object of which shall be to encourage gentlemen of the medical profession to come and practise gratuitously among the Chinese by affording the usual aid of hospitals, medicines, and attendants; but that the support or remuneration of such medical gentlemen be not at present within its contemplation." Some other rules were laid down, but the principle here stated has been since adhered to in all the similar establishments opened in other places. It has served, moreover, to retain them under the oversight and their resident physicians in the employ of missionary societies. No directions were given by the framers of the first society concerning the mode of imparting religious instruction, distributing tracts, or doing missionary work as they had opportunity. The signers of the original paper of suggestions also issued an address, further setting forth their views and expectations:

To restore health, to ease pain, or in any way to diminish the sum of human misery, forms an object worthy of the philanthropist. But in the prosecution of our views we look forward to far higher results than the mere relief of human suffering. We hope that our endeavors will tend to break down the walls of prejudice and long-cherished nationality of feeling, and to teach the Chinese that those whom they affect to despise are both able and willing to become their benefactors. They shut the door against the teachers of the gospel; they find our books often written in idioms which they cannot readily understand; and they have laid such restrictions upon commerce that it does not awaken among them that love of science, that spirit of invention, and that love of thought which it uniformly excites and fosters whenever it is allowed to take its own course without limit or interference. In the way of doing them good our opportunities are few; but among these that of practis-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. V., p. 372; Vol. VII., pp. 33–40. Lockhart's *Medical Missionary in China*, 1861, p. 134.

Digitized by Google

ing medicine and surgery stands pre-eminent. Favorable results have hitherto followed it, and will still continue to do so. It is a department of benevolence peculiarly adapted to China. . . .

In the department of benevolence to which our attention is now turned, purity and disinterestedness of motive are more clearly evinced than in any other. They appear unmasked; they attract the gaze and excite the admiration and gratitude of thousands. *Heal the sick* is our motto, constituting alike the injunction under which we act and the object at which we aim; and which, with the blessing of God, we hope to accomplish by means of scientific practice in the exercise of an unbought and untiring kindness. We have called ours a missionary society because we trust it will advance the cause of missions, and because we want men to fill our institutions who to requisite skill and experience add the self-denial and high moral qualities which are looked for in a missionary.

The undertaking so auspiciously begun at Canton, in 1835, has been carried on ever since, and was the pattern of many similar hospitals at the stations afterward occupied. The greatest part of the funds needed for carrying them on has been contributed in China itself by foreigners, who certainly would not have done so had they not felt that it was a wise and useful charity, and known something of the way their funds were employed. The hospital at Canton has exceeded even the hopes of its founders, and its many buildings and wards attest the liberality of the community which presented them to the society. The native rulers, gentry, and merchants are now well acquainted with the institution, and contribute to carry it on. During the forty-five years of its existence it has been conducted by Drs. Parker and Kerr nearly all the time, who have relieved about seven hundred and fifty thousand patients entered on the books; the outlay has been over one hundred and twenty-five thousand dollars. Several dispensaries in the country have also been carried on with the society's grants in aid. A separate hospital was conducted in Canton from 1846 to 1856 by B. Hobson, F.R.C.S., who has left an enduring record of his labors in eighteen medical works in Chinese, many of them illustrated. J. G. Kerr, M.D., has also issued several small treatises, and the publications of this kind in Chinese suitable for the people, issued by them and other missionary physicians, already number nearly fifty.

In these details of the inception of the plan of combining

Digitized by Google

medical labors with the work of Christian missions in China, it will be seen how the confined position of foreigners at Canton proved to be an incentive and an aid to its prosecution for some years—long enough to show its place and fitness. On the cessation of hostilities between China and Great Britain in 1842, other fields were opened, where its benefits were even more strongly shown. The war had left the people amazed and irritated at what they deemed to be a causeless and unjust attack by superior power. This was the case at Amoy, where no foreigners had lived until the British army took possession in August, 1841. In February, 1842, Revs. D. Abeel and W. J. Boone went there and made the acquaintance of the people on Kulang su, who were much pleased to meet with those who could converse with them and answer their inquiries. Dr. Cumming was able, by their assistance, as soon as he opened his dispensary, to inform the people of his designs; and the missionaries, on their part, preached the gospel to the patients, distributing in addition suitable books. The people were so ready to accept the proffered relief that it was soon impossible for one man to do more than wait upon the blind, lame, diseased, and injured who thronged his doors. A few months more equally proved that while the physician was attending to the patients in one room, the preacher could not ask for a better audience than those who were waiting in the adjoining one. An invitation to attend more formal services on the Sabbath was soon accepted by a few, whose curiosity led them to come and hear more of foreigners and their teachings. The reputation of the hospital was seen when taking short excursions in the vicinity, for persons who had been relieved constantly came forward to express their heartfelt thanks. Thus suspicion gave way to gratitude, enemies were converted to friends, and those who had enjoyed no opportunity of learning the character of foreigners, and had been taught to regard them as barbarians and demons, were disabused of their error. The favorable impression thus made at Amoy, forty years ago, has never been suspended, and numerous native churches have been gathered in all that region. Just the same union of preaching and practice was begun at Shanghai by Dr. W.

Digitized by Google

Lockhart after the capture of that city in 1844, and has been continued to this time. Ningpo and Fuhchau received similar benefits soon after; these and many others have received aid from foreigners residing in the Empire. Several thousand dollars were sent from Great Britain and the United States to further the object, and one society was formed in Edinburgh in 1856 to develop this branch of missionary work.

The proposition in the original scheme of educating Chinese youth as physicians and surgeons has not been carried out to a great extent. The practising missionary has hardly the time to do his students justice, and unless they show great aptitude for operations, the assistants get weary of the routine of attending to the patients and go away. Dr. Lockhart speaks of his own disappointments in this respect. Dr. Parker had only one pupil, Kwan A-to, who took up the profession among his countrymen. Dr. Wong A-fun received a complete medical education in Edinburgh, and rendered efficient help for many years in the hospital at Canton till his death. The college at Peking has now a chair of anatomy and physiology, which will aid in introducing better practice. Dr. Kerr gives some other reasons for the small number of skilled physicians educated in the missionary hospitals, yet some of his pupils had obtained lucrative practice. Others had imposed themselves in remote places on the people as such, who had only been employed as students a few months—a gratifying index of progress. It is not likely, however, that the Chinese generally will immediately discard their own mode of practice and adopt another from their countrymen so far as to support them in their new system. They have not enough knowledge of medicine to appreciate the difference between science and charlatanism; and a native physician himself might reasonably have fears of the legal or personal results of an unsuccessful or doubtful surgical case among his ignorant patients, so far as often to prevent him trying it.

The successive annual reports issued from the various missionary hospitals in China furnish the amplest information concerning their management, and numerous particulars respecting the people who resort to them. At the Missionary Con-

Digitized by Google

ference in Shanghai (1877) Drs. Kerr and Gould presented papers relating to this branch of labor in all its various aspects. The latter discussed the advantages of hospital versus itinerary practice; the modes of bringing the patients under religious instruction; how to limit their number so as to not wear out the physician; oversight of assistants and education of pupils; how far this gratuitous relief should be extended; what was the best mode of getting a fee from those natives who were able to pay something; and, finally, the reasons for not uniting the ministerial functions with the medical. These various points show clearly how the experience of past years had manifested the wisdom and foresight of those who originated the work, and the manner it has developed in connection with other branches. If kept as an auxiliary agency, there seems to be no reason for reducing the efforts now made by foreign societies until native physicians and surgeons are able to take up this work, just as native preachers are to oversee their own churches.

Another benevolent society, whose name and object was the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge in China, was established in December, 1834. The designs of the association were "by all means in its power to prepare and publish, in a cheap form, plain and easy treatises in the Chinese language, on such branches of useful knowledge as are suited to the existing state and condition of the Chinese Empire." It published six or eight works and a magazine during the few years of its existence, and their number would have been larger if there had been more persons capable of writing treatises. Since then this kind of mission work has been taken up by various agencies better fitted to develop its several departments, and, excepting newspapers, the preparation of suitable histories, geographies, and scientific books has been done by Protestant missionaries. The Chinese government has directed its employés in the arsenal schools to translate such works as will furnish the scholars with good elementary books.

Their usefulness as aids and precursors of the introduction of the gospel is very great. Among a less intelligent population they are not so important until the people get a taste for knowledge in schools; but where the conceit of false learning

Digitized by Google

and pride of literary attainments cause such a contempt for all other than their own books, as is the case in Chinese society, entertaining narratives and notices of other people and lands, got up in an attractive form, tend to disabuse them of these ideas (the offspring of arrogant ignorance rather than deliberate rejection) and incite them to learn and read more. The influence of newspapers and other periodical literature will be very great among the Chinese when they begin to think for themselves on the great truths and principles which are now being introduced among them. They have already begun to discuss political topics, and the great advantage of movable types over the old blocks tends to hasten the adoption of foreign modes of printing. It may, by some, be considered as not the business of a missionary to edit a newspaper; but those who are acquainted with the debased inertness of heathen minds know that any means which will convey truth and arouse the people tends to advance religion. The influence of the *Dnyanodya* in Bombay, and other kindred publications in various places in India, is great and good; hundreds of the people read them and then talk about the subjects treated in them, who would neither attend religious meetings, look at the Scriptures, nor have a tract in their possession. The same will be the case in China, and it is not irrelevant to the work of a missionary to adopt such a mode of imparting truths, if it be the most likely way of reaching the prejudiced, proud, and ignorant people around him. When the native religious community has begun to take form, this mode of instruction and disputation will be left to its most intelligent members.

In January, 1835, the foreign community in China established a third association, which originated entirely with a few of its leading members. Soon after the death of Dr. Morrison, a paper was circulated containing suggestions for the formation of an association to be called the Morrison Education Society, intended both as a testimonial of the worth and labors of that excellent man, more enduring than marble or brass, and a means of continuing his efforts for the good of China. A provisional committee was formed from among the subscribers to this paper, consisting of Sir G. B. Robinson, Bart., Messrs. W. Jardine, D.

Digitized by Google

W. C. Olyphant, Lancelot Dent, J. R. Morrison, and Rev. E. C. Bridgman; five thousand nine hundred and seventy-seven dollars were immediately subscribed, and about one thousand five hundred volumes of books presented to its library. This liberal spirit for the welfare of the people among whom they sojourned reflected the highest credit on the gentlemen interested in it, as well as upon the whole foreign community, inasmuch as, with only four or five exceptions, none of them were united to the country by other than temporary business relations.

The main objects of the Morrison Education Society were "the establishment and improvement of schools in which Chinese youth shall be taught to read and write the English language in connection with their own, by which means shall be brought within their reach all the instruction requisite for their becoming wise, industrious, sober, and virtuous members of society, fitted in their respective stations of life to discharge well the duties which they owe to themselves, their kindred, their country, and their God." The means of accomplishing this end by gathering a library, employing competent teachers, and encouraging native schools were all pointed out in this programme of labors, whose comprehensiveness was equalled only by its philanthropy. Applications were made for teachers both in England and America; from the former, an answer was received that there was no likelihood of obtaining one; a person was selected in the latter, the Rev. S. R. Brown, who with his wife arrived at Macao in February, 1839. In the interval between the formation of the Society and the time when its operations assumed a definite shape in its own schools, something was done in collecting information concerning native education and in supporting a few boys, or assisting Mrs. Gutzlaff's school at Macao. The Society's school was opened at Macao in November, 1839, with six scholars; four years afterward it removed to Morrison Hill in Hongkong, into the commodious quarters erected by its president, Lancelot Dent, on a site granted by the colonial government for the purpose. In 1845 Brown had thirty pupils, who filled all the room there was in the house. He stated in his report of that year, as a gratifying evidence of confidence on their part, that no parent had asked to have his child leave

Digitized by Google

during the year. "When the school was commenced," observes Mr. Brown, "few offered their sons as pupils, and even they, as some of them have since told me, did it with a good deal of apprehension as to the consequences. 'We could not understand,' says one who first brought a boy to the school, 'why a foreigner should wish to feed and instruct our children for nothing. We thought there must be some sinister motive at the bottom of it. Perhaps it was to entice them away from their parents and country, and transport them by and by to some foreign land.' At all events, it was a mystery. 'But now,' said the same father to me a few weeks ago, 'I understand it. I have had my three sons in your school steadily since they entered it, and no harm has happened to them. The eldest has been qualified for service as an interpreter. The other two have learned nothing bad. The religion you have taught them, and of which I was so much afraid, has made them better. I myself believe its truth, though the customs of my country forbid my embracing it. I have no longer any fear; you labor for others' good, not your own. I understand it now.'"

This suspicion was not surprising, considering the common estimate of foreigners among the people, and indicates that it was high time to attempt something worthy of the Christianity which they professed. The school was conducted as it would have been if removed to a town in New England; and when its pupils left they were fitted for taking a high rank in their own country. Their attachment to their teacher was great. One instance is taken from the fourth report: "Last spring the father of one in the older class came to the house and told his son that he could not let him remain here any longer but that he must put him out to service and make him earn something. His father is a poor miserable man, besotted by the use of opium, and has sold his two daughter into slavery to raise money. The boy ran away to his instructor and told him what his father had said, adding, 'I cannot go.' Willing to ascertain the sincerity of the boy and the strength of his attachment to his friends, his teacher coolly replied, 'Perhaps it will be well for you to go, for probably you could be a table-boy in some gentleman's house and so get two dollars a month, which is two more

Digitized by Google

than you get here, where only your food is given you.' The little fellow looked at him steadily while he made these remarks, as if amazed at the strange language he used, and when he had done, turned hastily about and burst into tears, exclaiming, 'I cannot go; if I go away from this school I shall be lost.' He did not leave, for his father did not wish to force him away."

Another case shows the confidence of a parent on the occasion of the death of one of the pupils, his only child: "He heard of his son's illness too late to arrive before he died, and when he came it was to bury his remains. He was naturally overwhelmed with grief at the affliction that had come upon him, and his apprehensions of the effect of the tidings upon the boy's mother were gloomy enough. After the funeral was over, I conversed with him. To my surprise he made not the least complaint as to what had been done for the sick lad, either in the way of medical treatment or otherwise, but expressed many thanks for the kind and assiduous attentions that had been bestowed upon him. He said he had entertained great hope of his son's future usefulness, and in order to promote it had placed him here at school. But now his family would end in himself. I showed him some specimens of his son's drawing, an amusement of which he was particularly fond. The tears gushed faster as his eyes rested on these evidences of his son's skill. 'Do not show them to me,' said he; 'it is too much. I cannot speak now. I know you have done well to my son. I pity *you*, for all your labor is lost.' I assured him I did not think so. He had been a very diligent and obedient learner, and had won the esteem of his teachers and companions. He had been taught concerning the true God and the way of salvation, and it might have done him everlasting good. As the old man was leaving me, he turned and asked if, in case he should adopt another boy, I would receive him as a pupil, to which I replied in the affirmative."

An assistant teacher, Wm. A. Macy, joined Mr. Brown in 1846; the latter returned to America in 1847, and the school was closed in 1849, owing chiefly to the departure of its early patrons from China and the opening of new ports of trade, scattering the foreign community so that funds could not be

Digitized by Google

obtained. Mission societies began to enlarge their work at these ports and occupy the same department of education as the Morrison School. It, however, did a good work in its education of half a score of men who now fill high places in their country's service, or occupy posts of usefulness most honorably to themselves. The boy mentioned in a previous paragraph afterward went through a medical course at Edinburgh, became a practising surgeon and physician at Canton, and died there in 1878, honored by foreigners and natives during a life of usefulness and benevolence. In that year Mr. Brown visited China for his health, and was received by this Dr. Wong and others of his old pupils with marks of regard honorable and gratifying to both; they fitted up a house there for him, presented him with a beautiful piece of silver plate, and paid his passage up to Peking and back to Shanghai.

The efforts of Protestants for the evangelization of China were largely of a preparatory nature until the year 1842. Most of the laborers were stationed out of China, and those in the Empire itself were unable to pursue their designs without many embarrassments. Mrs. Gutzlaff experienced many obstacles in her endeavors to collect a school at Macao, partly from the fears of the parents and the harassing inquiries of the police, the latter of which naturally increased the former; partly again from the short period the parents were willing to allow their children to remain. The Portuguese clergy and government of Macao have done nothing themselves to impede Protestant missionaries in their labors in the colony since 1833, when the governor ordered the Albion press, belonging to Dr. Morrison's son, to be stopped, on account of his publishing a religious newspaper called the *Miscellanea Sinicæ;* and this he was encouraged to do from knowing that the East India Company was opposed to its continuance. The governor intimated to one of the American missionaries in 1839 that no tracts must be distributed or public congregations gathered in the colony, but no objection would be made to audiences collected in his own house for instruction. No obstacle was put in the way of printing, and the press that was interdicted in 1833 was carried back to Macao in 1835, after the dissolution of the East

Digitized by Google

India Company, under the direction of the American mission. Several aids in the study of the Chinese language were issued from it during the nine years it was there under the author's charge.

The city of Canton was long in China one of the most unpromising fields for missionary labors, not alone when it was the only one in the Empire, but until recently. This was owing to several causes. The pursuits of foreigners were limited to trade. Their residence was confined to an area of a few acres held by the guild of hong merchants allowed to trade with them, and all intercourse was carried on in the jargon known as *Pigeon-English*. They were systematically degraded by the native rulers in the eyes of the people, who knew no other appellation for the strangers than *fan-kwei*, or 'foreign devil.' The opium war of 1839–42 had aroused the worst passions of the Cantonese, and their conceit had been increased by the unsuccessful attempts to take the city in 1841 and 1847 by the English forces. Since 1858 the citizens have been accessible to other influences, and learned that their isolation and ignorance brought calamity on themselves.

When Morrison died, Dr. Bridgman and the writer of these pages were the only fellow-laborers belonging to any missionary society then in China; the Christian church formed in 1835 contained only three members. It was indeed a day of small things, but from henceforth grew more and more bright. The contrast even in twelve years is thus described in Dr. Hobson's report of his hospital; the extract shows the little freedom then enjoyed in comparison with what it now is, nearly forty years after:

> The average attendance of Chinese has been over a hundred, and none have been more respectful and cordial in their attention than those in whom aneurism has been cured or sight restored, from whom the tumor has been extirpated or the stone extracted. These services must be witnessed to understand fully their interest. Deep emotions have been awakened when contrasting the restrictions of the first years of Protestant missions in China with the present freedom. Then, not permitted to avow our missionary character and object lest it might eject us from the country; nor could a Chinese receive a Christian book but at the peril of his safety, or embrace that religion without hazarding his life. Now he may receive and practise the doctrines of Christ,

Digitized by Google

and transgress no law of the Empire. Our interest may be more easily conceived than expressed as we have declared the truths of the gospel, or when looking upon the evangelist Liang A-fah, and thought of him fleeing for his life and long banished from his native land, and now returned to declare boldly the truths of the gospel in the city from which he had fled. Well did he call upon his audience to worship and give thanks to the God of heaven and earth for what he had done for them. With happy effect he dwelt upon the Saviour's life and example, and pointing to the paintings suspended on the walls of the room, informed his auditors that these were performed by his blessing and in conformity to his precepts and example. Portions of the Scriptures and religious tracts are given to all the hearers on the Sabbath, and likewise to all the patients during the week, so that thousands of volumes have been sent forth from the hospital to scores of villages and to distant provinces.

Before the capture of the city the people had become quite friendly to all missionary labors, through the ameliorating influences of the hospitals. While the city was beleaguered by the insurgents in 1855, the wounded soldiers were attended to by Dr. Hobson, who sometimes had his house full. After Canton was occupied by the allies in 1858 there was an enlargement of mission work in the city and environs, which has been growing in depth and extent till the changes draw the attention of the most casual observer. Foreigners are now seldom addressed as *fan-kwei*, and their excursions into the country and along the streams are made in safety. The Germans have established stations in many places between Canton and Hongkong, and easterly along the river up to Kia-ying, where the people are more turbulent than around the city or toward the west.

The occupation of Hongkong in 1841 induced the American Baptists to make it a station immediately, and Messrs. Roberts and Shuck began the mission work, followed by the London Mission two years after, when Dr. Legge removed there from Malacca. The Roman Catholic missionaries also moved over from Macao at the earliest date. The colonial authorities in time began a system of common schools for all their subjects, so that mission schools have been less necessary since that date, but are still opened to some extent. The benevolent labors by German, British, and American missionaries in Hongkong and its vicinity have been zealously carried on in harmony, and

Digitized by Google

there are fully fifty separate stations on the mainland northerly from the island which are worked from this colony. The number in the whole province of Kwangtung amounts to more than seventy-five, all of them efficiently established since 1858.

The mission at Amoy was commenced in 1842 by Messrs. Abeel and Boone under the most favorable auspices. The English expedition took that city in August, 1841, and on leaving it stationed a small naval and military force on the island of Kulang su. The people of Amoy and its environs cared perhaps little for the merits of the war then raging, but they knew that they had suffered much from it, and no interpreters were available to carry on communication between the two parties. Both these gentlemen could converse in the local dialect, and were soon applied to by many desirous of learning something of the foreigners or who had business with them. The Chinese authorities were also pleased to obtain the aid of competent interpreters, and the good opinion of these dignitaries exercised considerable influence in inducing the people to attend upon the ministrations of the missionaries. Both officers and private gentlemen invited them to their residences, where they had opportunity to answer their reasonable inquiries concerning foreign lands and customs, and convey an outline of the Christian faith. One of these officers was Seu Ki-yu, afterward governor of the province and author of the *Ying Hwan Chí Lioh*, in which he mentions Abeel's name and speaks of his indebtedness to him in preparing that work. The number of books given away was not great, but part of every day was spent in talking with the people; when the hospital was opened by Dr. Cumming, greater facilities were afforded for intercourse. The irritation caused by what the people naturally looked upon as an unprovoked outrage was gradually allayed. There had been no long education of intercommunication between natives and foreigners in Amoy as at Canton. The work so pleasantly begun in 1842 in Kulang su has extended over most parts of the province of Fuhkien, and westward into the prefecture of Chauchau in Kwangtung. There are more converts, native pastors, and schools in this province than any other in China.

Its capital was never visited by a foreign enemy, nor did it

Digitized by Google

suffer from the Tai-ping rebels, so that the gentry of Fuhchau have never been scattered nor their influence broken, like those of many other provincial centres. The mission work was commenced there in 1847 by Rev. Stephen Johnson, from Bangkok, who was soon joined by other American and English colleagues. He speaks of the great prejudices against all foreigners among the citizens in consequence of the evil effects of opium-smoking, which destroyed the people who would not cease to buy it. An experience of thirty years has not altogether removed this dislike, which even lately found an opportunity to exhibit itself in removing the Church Missionary Society's mission from the Wu-shih Hill, where it had rented buildings for that period and "injured the good luck of the city." These prejudices will gradually give way with a new generation of scholars and merchants, and we can afford to be patient with them when we reflect on their slow progress in other things.

The American Board, American Methodist, and Church Missionary Societies have each extended their stations beyond the city into the country almost to the borders of Chehkiang and Kiangsí, occupying in all nearly two hundred localities with their assistants. Besides these agencies, the China Inland mission has occupied three cities on the eastern coast and about sixteen other stations. The whole number of places in the province of Fuhkien where Protestants have opened their work in one form and another is now over two hundred and fifty, under seven separate societies. In most of these towns the good will of the people has remained with them when their objects have been fully understood; and the contrasts of destroying their chapels or book-shops, as at Kien-ning, have been found to be mixed up with other causes. Since the year 1863 the island of Formosa has been occupied by two or three British societies, and the work of their missionaries in the chief towns has been greatly prospered. Dr. Maxwell has carried on his hospital at Taiwan with eminent success as a means of winning the good opinion of suspicious natives and aborigines and inclining them to listen to the gospel. Native churches have been gathered in various parts remote from the coast, and thirty-five stations are now worked by the two British societies which have taken up

Digitized by Google

this field. This progress has not been without opposition, for two of the converts were martyred a few years ago by their countrymen.

The first missionary efforts north of Canton of a permanent nature were made in 1840 by Dr. Lockhart, in the establishment of a hospital at Tinghai in Chusan. They were resumed by Milne in 1842, and while the island was under the control of British troops. Gutzlaff occupied the office of Chinese magistrate of Tinghai in 1842, and endeavored to hold meetings. Milne left Ningpo in June, 1843, and came to Hongkong overland dressed in a native costume. After his departure, some time elapsed before his place was supplied. The journal of his residence in that city indicated a great willingness on the part of people of all ranks to cultivate intercourse with such foreigners as could converse with them. Drs. Macgowan and McCarty went there in 1843 and 1844 to open a hospital, and were followed by Messrs. Lowrie, Culbertson, Loomis, and Cole, the latter in charge of a printing office of English and Chinese type and a type foundry. Religious services are held at the hospitals in that city, and Dr. Macgowan says: "Each patient is exhorted to renounce all idolatry and wickedness and to embrace the religion of the Saviour. They are admitted by tens into the prescribing room, and before being dismissed are addressed by the physician and the native Christian assistant on the subject of religion. Tracts are given to all who are able to read." The more such labors are carried on the better will the prospect of peace and a profitable intercourse between China and western nations become; the more the people learn of the science and resources, the character and designs, and partake of the religion and benevolence of western nations, the less chance will there be of collisions, and the more each party will respect the other. The fear is, however, that the disruptive and disorganizing influences will preponderate over the peaceful, and precipitate new outbreaks before these influences obtain much hold upon the Chinese.

The occupation of Ningpo in 1841 by the British troops, and their excursions into the country, had the effect of preparing the people of Chehkiang province to listen to foreigners. The mis-

Digitized by Google

sion work begun at Ningpo by three or four societies in 1842–48 has been carried on with marked success and completeness in its agencies. The various missions have taken different parts of the province for their particular fields, and by means of chapels, hospitals, schools, printing offices, itinerating and preaching excursions, and the sale of religious books, have made known the truth. A large part of the province was ravaged by the Tai-ping rebels, and after their dispersion in 1867 Hangchau and Shauking were occupied. These two cities were well nigh destroyed, but their inhabitants are learning that no force or governmental influence accompanies the preaching of the doctrines of Jesus. This idea has considerable strength among all the Chinese, and no disclaimer or explanations have much effect at first. The people of Chehkiang province have less energy and individuality than their countrymen in the southern provinces, but they have received the faith in simplicity, maintaining its ordinances and bearing its expenses in many cases without foreign aid. In the seventy stations now occupied by six societies from England and America, the advance is seen to be great since the capture of Ningpo and Tinghai forty years ago, even by the confession of those who still hold aloof. The good reputation of the missionaries was shown in the amicable settlement of an irritating question in Hangchau city in 1874. It arose from the occupation of the hillside by the Americans, who had bought the spot when it was bare of houses and erected their own dwellings. These were deemed to be detrimental to its prosperity, and a riot arose which was quelled by the authorities. A proposal was then made by the gentry to remove them by getting another site in the lower city, and this harmonized all parties while establishing a good precedent for future observance.

The great city of Shanghai was almost unknown to foreign nations until the treaty of Nanking opened it to their trade in 1842. Its inhabitants suffered greatly at its capture, but the growing commerce ere long brought prosperity. As soon as arrangements could be made the London Mission moved its hospital from Chusan Island to Shanghai (in 1844), and Dr. Lockhart immediately commenced his work. His rooms were thronged, and it is stated that ten thousand nine hundred and seventy-

Digitized by Google

eight patients were attended to between May, 1844, and June, 1845. The knowledge of this charity spread over the province of Kiangsu, and removed much of the ill-will and ignorance of the people toward foreigners. One effect in the city was to incite the inhabitants to open a dispensary during four summer months, for the gratuitous relief of the sick. It was called *Shí Í Kung-kiuh*, or 'Public Establishment for Dispensing Healing.' "It was attended by eight or nine native practitioners, who saw the patients once in five days; this attendance was gratuitous on the part of some of them, and was paid for in the case of others. The medicines are supplied from the different apothecary shops, one furnishing all that is wanted during one day, which is paid for by subscriptions to the dispensary. The patients vary from three hundred to five hundred. The reason given for the recent establishment of this dispensary for relieving the sick is that it has been done by a foreigner who came to reside at the place, and therefore some of the wealthy natives wished to show their benevolence in the same way." Such a spirit speaks well for the inhabitants of Shanghai, for nothing like competition in doing good has ever been started elsewhere, nor even a public acknowledgment made of the benefits conferred by the hospitals.

During the voyage along the coast of China made by Messrs. Medhurst and Stevens, in 1835, they visited Shanghai; and an abstract of Medhurst's interview with the officers on that occasion is taken from his journal. He had already been invited by them to enter a temple hard by the landing-place, to the end that they might learn the object of the visit, and was conversing with them.

The party was now joined by another officer named Chin, a hearty, rough-looking man, with a keen eye and a voluble tongue. He immediately took the lead in the conversation, and asked whether we had not been in Shantung and had communication with some great officers there? He inquired after Messrs. Lindsay and Gutzlaff, and wished to know whither we intended to proceed. I told him these gentlemen were well; but we could hardly tell where we should go, quoting a Chinese proverb, "We know not to day what will take place to-morrow." But, I continued, as your native conjurors are reckoned very clever, they may perhaps be able to tell you. "I am conjuror enough for that," said Chin; "but what is your profession?" I told him that I

Digitized by Google

was a teacher of religion. . . . After a little time a great noise was heard outside, and the arrival of the chief magistrate of the city was announced, when several officers came in and requested me to go and see his worship. He appeared to be a middle-aged man, but assumed a stern aspect as I entered, though I paid him the usual compliments and took my seat in a chair placed opposite. This disconcerted him much, and as soon as he could recover himself from the surprise at seeing a barbarian seated in his presence, he ordered me to come near and stand before him, while all the officers called out, "Rise! Rise!" I arose accordingly, and asked whether I could not be allowed to sit at the conference, and as he refused, I bowed and left the room. I was soon followed by Chin and Wang, who tried every effort to persuade me to return; this, however, I steadfastly refused to do unless I could be allowed to sit, as others of my countrymen had done in like circumstances. . . .

Having been joined by Mr. Stevens (who had been distributing books among the crowd without), we proceeded to converse more familiarly and to deliver out books to the officers and their attendants, as well as to some strangers that were present, till they were all gone. A list of such provisions as were wanted had been given to Wang, whom we requested to purchase them for us, and we would pay for them. By this time the articles were brought in, which they offered to give us as a present, and seeing that there was no other way of settling the question, we resolved to accept of the articles and send them something in return. The rain having moderated, we arose to take a walk and proceeded toward the boat, where the sailors were busy eating their dinner. Wishing to enter the city we turned off in that direction, but were stopped by the officers and their attendants, and reluctantly returned to the temple. After another hour's conversation, and partaking of refreshments with the officers, they departed. On the steps near the boat we observed a basket nearly full of straw, and on the top about half a dozen books torn in pieces and about to be burnt. On inquiry, they told us that these were a few that had been torn in the scuffle, and in order to prevent their being trodden under foot they were about to burn them. Recollecting, however, that Chin had told his servant to do something with the books he had received, it now occurred to us that he had directed them to be burned in our presence. On the torch being applied, therefore, we took the presents which were lying by and threw them on the fire, which put it out. The policeman, taking off the articles, applied the torch again, while we repeated the former operation; to show them that if they despised our presents, we also disregarded theirs. Finally the basket was thrown into the river and we left, much displeased at this insulting conduct.[1]

This extract might be thought to refer to an event which took place in the days of Ricci instead of one within the memory of the living. The progress and changes since it occurred in that city typify what has been going on throughout the

[1] *China: Its State and Prospects*, pp. 371–377. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. IV., pp. 330, 331.

Digitized by Google

whole land. Medhurst came back to Shanghai to live, within nine years after this incident, and when his failing health compelled his retirement in 1856, he closed an honorable service of thirty-nine years in the mission field. His dictionaries, translations, and writings in Chinese and English (ninety-three in all) indicate his industry; and through them he, being dead, yet speaketh to the Chinese upon his favorite themes of redemption. The work which he began was reinforced by colleagues from Great Britain and America until the whole population was reached, and towns lying south of the Yangtsz' River were all visited. After the rebellion was quelled in 1867 other cities were occupied, until about forty-five localities in all parts of Kiangsu are now he d as preaching stations. People are returning to their deser l homes, and lands that lay fallow for years are retilled; thither foreign and native preachers and colportors bring the living word without hindrance.[1]

The consequences of the introduction of the gospel into China are likely to be the same that they have been elsewhere, in stirring up private and public antagonism to what is so opposed to the depravity of the human heart. There are some grounds for hoping that there will not be much systematic opposition from the imperial government when once the chiefs of the nation learn the popular sentiments and will. The principal reasons for this are found in the character of the people, who are not cruel or disposed to take life for opinions when those opinions are held by numbers of respectable and intelligent men. The fact that the officers of government all spring from the body of the people, and that these dignitaries are neither governed nor influenced by any State hierarchy—by any body of priestly men, who, feeling that the progress of the new faith will cause the loss of their influence and position, are determined to use the power of the State to put it down—leads us to hope that such officers as may adopt the new faith will not, on account of their profession, be banished or disgraced. Such was the case with Sü, who assisted and countenanced Ricci.

[1] In this connection the work of Dr. Lockhart (*Medical Missionary in China*, London, 1861) may profitably be read for the details and results of mission labors in Shanghai.

Digitized by Google

The general character of the Chinese is irreligious, and they care much more for money and power than they do for religious ceremonies of any kind; they would never lose a battle as the Egyptians did because the Persians placed cats between the armies. There are no ceremonies which they consider so binding as to be willing to fight for them, and persecute others for omitting, except those pertaining to ancestral worship;—these are of so domestic a nature that thousands of converts might discard them before much would be known or done by the people in relation to the matter. The conscientious Christian magistrate would be somewhat obnoxious to his master, and liable to be removed for refusing to perform his functions at the *ching-hwang miao* before the tutelar gods of the Empire. These and other reasons, growing out of the character of the people and the nature of their political and religious institutions, lead to the hope that the leaven of truth will permeate the mass of society and renovate, purify, and strengthen it without weakening, disorganizing, or destroying the government. There are, also, some causes to fear that such will not be the case, arising from the ignorance of the people of the proper results of Christian doctrines; from a dread of the government respecting its own stability from foreign aggression; from the evil consequences of the use of opium, and the drainage of the precious metals; and from the disturbing effects of the intercourse with unscrupulous foreigners and irritated natives often leading to riots and the interference of government authorities.

The toleration of the Christian religion had been allowed throughout the Empire by imperial edicts issued in the reign of Shunchí and his son; ~~and often~~ and often discountenanced and persecuted after those dates. The governmental policy had been long settled to disallow its profession by its subjects or the residence of the Roman Catholic missionaries in its borders. In 1844 the French envoy, M. de Lagrené, brought their disabilities to the notice of Kíying, who memorialized the throne and received the following rescript, which reversed the bloody decrees of 1722 and later years. For his efforts in this matter he deserves the thanks and remembrance of every friend of Christianity and the Chinese.

Digitized by Google

Kíying, imperial commissioner of Kwangtung and Kwangsí, respectfully memorializes, as well as in reading aloud the

On examination it appears that these are customs of the said religion professed by all the nations of the West, practices not in accordance with these the good and suppress the wicked. religion of the Lord of Heaven." the Ming dynasty it has never been Chinese, practising this religion, of sects found throughout China are to the seducing of wives and daughters, the name of *kiao*, or 'doctrine;' they pupils from the eyes of the sick,[1] government and well disposed people, punishment, as is on record; and 'have been first laid down for the punishment of crimes committed against in this proclamation. fore, was directed against evil-doing at Canton, February 20, 1846, against the religion professed by the whole houses belonging to Roman-

Now the request of the French and other governments respecting the foreigners, who, doing well, practise this religion, is feasible. It is right therefore to make it known. celestial favor to grant that, henceforth, all foreigners, without distinction, who learn and practise the religion of the Lord of Heaven, and not excite trouble by improper conduct, be exempted from criminality. If there be any who seduce wives and daughters, or deceitfully take the pupils from the eyes of the sick, walking in their former paths, or are otherwise guilty of criminal acts, let them be dealt with according to the old laws. As to those of the French and other foreign nations who practise the religion, let them only be permitted to build churches at the five ports opened for commercial intercourse. They must not presume to enter the country to propagate religion. Should any act in opposition, turn their backs upon the treaties, and rashly overstep the boundaries, the local officers will at once seize and deliver them to their respective consuls for restraint and correction. Capital punishment is not to be rashly inflicted, in order that the exercise of gentleness may be displayed. Thus, peradventure, the good and the profligate will not be blended, while the equity of mild laws will be exhibited.

This request, that well-doers practising the religion may be exempt from criminality, I (the commissioner), in accordance with reason and bounden duty, respectfully lay before the throne, earnestly praying the august Emperor graciously to grant that it may be carried into effect. A respectful memorial.

Taukwang, 24th year, 11th month, 19th day (December 28, 1844), was received the vermilion reply: "Let it be according to the counsel [of Kíying]." This is from the Emperor.[2]

---

[1] This is thus explained by a Chinese: "It is a custom with the priests who teach this religion, when a man is about to die, to take a handful of cotton, having concealed within it a sharp needle, and then, while rubbing the individual's eyes with the cotton, to introduce the needle into the eye and puncture the pupil with it; the humors of the pupil saturate the cotton and are afterward used as a medicine." This foolish idea has its origin in the extreme unction administered by Catholic priests to the dying. See, moreover, the *Lettres Édifiantes*, Tome IV., p. 44.

[2] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIV., p. 195.

Digitized by Google

The directors of Protestant missio the Christians already in to violate the last paragraph in this n *Tien Chu kiao*, or 'Reli- efforts to the open ports, where thei referring only to those per- inary work to do. This went on bsequently the French min- peaceably, as the inhabitants found in making this request of their friends. Chapels, schools, h to include Christians of all dwellings were erected at all the p bts on that point. He there- about one hundred Protestants b fore Kíying, who issued an number of converts was few, a aking a second appeal to his to show in tabular lists. It was to quote the entire reply, which

In 1849 the adherents of H to all Christian sects as its writer trouble in the west of Kwangt wledge of their differences. The *hwui*; and *kiao*, eking ad ed for Protestants, was not then th ft. After quoting the purport of M. de Lagrené's communication, Kíying thus sums up his conclusions:

> Now I find that, in the first place, when the regulations for free trade were agreed upon, there was an article allowing the erection of churches at the five ports. This same privilege was to extend to all nations; there were to be no distinctions. Subsequently the commissioner Lagrené requested that the Chinese who, acting well, practised this religion, should equally be held blameless. Accordingly, I made a representation of the case to the throne, by memorial, and received the imperial consent thereto. After this, however, local magistrates having made improper seizures, taking and destroying crosses, pictures, and images, further deliberations were held, and it was agreed that these [crosses, etc.] might be reverenced. Originally I did not know that there were, among the nations, these differences in their religious practices. Now with regard to the religion of the Lord of Heaven—no matter whether the crosses, pictures, and images be reverenced or be not reverenced—all who, acting well, practise it, ought to be held blameless. All the great western nations being placed on an equal footing, only let them by acting well practise their religion, and China will in no way prohibit or impede their so doing. Whether their customs be alike or unlike, certainly it is right that there should be no distinction and no obstruction.—December 22, 1845.

The sentence in this document which speaks of local magistrates making improper seizures probably refers to something which had occurred in the country. At Shanghai the intendant of circuit issued a proclamation in November, 1845, based upon the Emperor's rescript, in which he defines the *Tien Chu kiao* "to consist in periodically assembling for unitedly worshipping the Lord of Heaven, in respecting and venerating the

Digitized by Google

cross, with pictures and images, as well as in reading aloud the works of the said religion; these are customs of the said religion in question, and practices not in accordance with these cannot be considered as the religion of the Lord of Heaven." The various associations and sects found throughout China are all included under the vague name of *kiao*, or 'doctrine;' they are an annoyance to the government and well disposed people, and are referred to and excepted against in this proclamation. In a decree received by Kíying at Canton, February 20, 1846, relating to the restoration of the houses belonging to Romanists, the views of the Chinese government respecting the foreign missionaries were further made known.

On a former occasion Kíying and others laid before Us a memorial, requesting immunity from punishment for those who doing well profess the religion of Heaven's Lord; and that those who erect churches, assemble together for worship, venerate the cross and pictures and images, read and explain sacred books, be not prohibited from so doing. This was granted. The religion of the Lord of Heaven, instructing and guiding men in well-doing, differs widely from the heterodox and illicit sects; and the toleration thereof has already been allowed. That which has been requested on a subsequent occasion, it is right in like manner to grant.

Let all the ancient houses throughout the provinces, which were built in the reign of Kanghí, and have been preserved to the present time, and which, on personal examination by proper authorities, are clearly found to be their *bona fide* possessions, be restored to the professors of this religion in their respective places, excepting only those churches which have been converted into temples and dwelling-houses for the people.

If, after the promulgation of this decree throughout the provinces, the local officers irregularly prosecute and seize any of the professors of the religion of the Lord of Heaven, who are not bandits, upon all such the just penalties of the law shall be meted out.

If any, under a profession of this religion, do evil, or congregate people from distant towns, seducing and binding them together; or if any other sect or bandits, borrowing the name of the religion of the Lord of Heaven, create disturbances, transgress the laws, or excite rebellion, they shall be punished according to their respective crimes, each being dealt with as the existing statutes of the Empire direct.

Also, in order to make apparent the proper distinctions, foreigners of every nation are, in accordance with existing regulations, prohibited from going into the country to propagate religion.

For these purposes this decree is given. Cause it to be made known. From the Emperor.[1]

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XV., p. 155, where the original is given.

Digitized by Google

The directors of Protestant missions did not think it right to violate the last paragraph in this rescript, and confined their efforts to the open ports, where their agents had much preliminary work to do. This went on quietly, and on the whole peaceably, as the inhabitants found that the missionaries were their friends. Chapels, schools, hospitals, printing offices, and dwellings were erected at all the ports, so that by the year 1858 about one hundred Protestants were carrying them on. The number of converts was few, and there was not much result to show in tabular lists. It was a time of seed-sowing.

In 1849 the adherents of Hung Siu-tsuen began to make trouble in the west of Kwangtung, and to be called the *Shangti hwui;* and the Peking authorities were unable to distinguish them from Protestants, who had thus rendered the name for God in the version of the Bible used by these misguided men. Their rapid successes against the imperial troops soon roused the utmost energies of the government to suppress them and retake Nanking. In 1856 a more dangerous struggle was precipitated by the impolitic action of Yeh Ming-chin, the governor-general at Canton, in respect to the Arrow, a smuggling lorcha carrying the British flag, which ended in a declaration of war against China. When hostilities ceased in 1858 by signing treaties of peace at Tientsin with envoys of the four nations there assembled, it was deemed to be a favorable time to introduce some definite stipulations respecting the toleration of Christianity in China. The rescripts of the Emperor Taukwang in 1844 had never carried any real weight among rulers or people, nor had the Romanists ever been able to re-possess their old churches and other real estate taken from them. The largest part had long been occupied or destroyed.

Any opposition to such a proposal was not likely to be very persistent on the part of the Chinese plenipotentiaries in face of the force at the call of those who had just captured the forts at Taku and held the city of Tientsin under their guns. The four nations, Great Britain, France, the United States, and Russia, were, as representatives of Christendom, in the providence of God brought face to face with China, the representative of paganism. They came to demand an arrangement of

Digitized by Google

commercial, diplomatic, civil, and ex-territorial rights, and the introduction of religious privileges did not enter into their plans. The war on the part of the two first-named powers had no reference to religion, and their two colleagues would doubtless have omitted the articles on toleration if the Chinese had held out on those alone. At this singular and most unexpected correlation of moral and physical forces among the nations of the world, involving the greater part of its inhabitants, the freedom of the rising church of Christ in China was quietly secured by the four following articles of toleration inserted in the treaties signed in June, 1858. They are here given in the order of their dates:

Russian. ART. VIII.—The Chinese government having recognized the fact that the Christian doctrine promotes the establishment of order and peace among men, promises not to persecute its Christian subjects for the exercise of the duties of their religion; they shall enjoy the protection of all those who profess other creeds tolerated in the Empire. The Chinese government, considering the Christian missionaries as worthy men who do not seek worldly advantages, will permit them to propagate Christianity among its subjects, and will not hinder them from moving about in the interior of the Empire. A certain number of missionaries setting out from the open ports, or cities, shall be provided with passports signed by Russian authorities.

American. ART. XXIX.—The principles of the Christian religion, as professed by the Protestant and Roman Catholic churches, are recognized as teaching men to do good, and to do to others as they would have others do to them. Hereafter, those who quietly profess and teach these doctrines shall not be harassed or persecuted on account of their faith. Any person, whether citizen of the United States or Chinese convert, who according to these tenets peaceably teaches and practises the principles of Christianity, shall in no case be interfered with or molested.

British. ART. VIII.—The Christian religion, as professed by Protestants or Roman Catholics, inculcates the practice of virtue, and teaches man to do as he would be done by. Persons teaching it or professing it, therefore, shall alike be entitled to

Digitized by Google

the protection of the Chinese authorities; nor shall any such, peaceably pursuing their calling, and not offending against the laws, be persecuted or interfered with.

French. ART. XIII.—La religion Chrétienne, ayant pour objet essentiel, de porter les hommes à la vertu, les membres de toutes communions Chrétiennes jouiront d'une entière sécurité pour leurs personnes, leurs propriétés, et le libre exercice de leurs pratiques religieuses; et une protection efficace sera donnée aux missionnaires qui se rendront pacifiquement dans l'intérieur du pays, munis des passeports réguliers dont il est parlé dans l'Article VIII. Aucune entrave ne sera apportée par les autorités de l'Empire Chinois au droit qui est reconnu à tout individu en Chine d'embrasser, s'il le veut, le Christianisme et d'en suivre les pratiques, sans être passible d'aucune peine infligée pour ce fait. Tout ce qui a été précédemment écrit, proclamé, ou publié en Chine par ordre du gouvernement contre le culte Chrétien, est complètement abrogé, et reste sans valeur dans toutes les provinces de l'Empire.

An article similar to these in its general import has been inserted in nearly all the treaties subsequently signed with the Chinese. They contain as much freedom of faith and practice by converts as could be desired by any reasonable man; but many missionaries were disappointed that their provisions were violated or disregarded by native officials. These sanguine persons often forgot that forbearance and time were both needed to bring the people and their rulers up to an appreciation of the new liberties and obligations contained in the treaties, and that their ignorance would be best and thoroughly removed by the living evidences of the purity and power of Christianity among its converts. These have already begun to show their faith by their works.

The only additional action of the Chinese government in this direction that needs to be noticed is Article VI., agreed upon with the French envoy and contained in the convention signed at Peking in October, 1860, in relation to the restoration of property once owned by the Romanists. The translation is as follows:

ART. VI.—It shall be promulgated throughout the length

Digitized by Google

and breadth of the land, in the terms of the imperial edict of February 20, 1846, that it is permitted to all people in all parts of China to propagate and practise the teachings of the Lord of Heaven, to meet together for preaching the doctrines, to build churches and to worship; further, all such as indiscriminately arrest [Christians] shall be duly punished, and such churches, schools, cemeteries, lands, and buildings as were owned on former occasions by persecuted Christians shall be paid for, and the money handed to the French representative at Peking for transmission to the Christians in the locality concerned. *It is in addition permitted to French missionaries to rent and purchase land in all the provinces, and to erect buildings thereon at pleasure.*[1]

In carrying out the details of this article, so much injustice and violence were exhibited by native Romanists, supported by the missionaries in claiming lands alleged to have belonged to them as far back as the days of Ricci and in the Ming dynasty, and forcing their owners and occupants to yield them without any or sufficient compensation, that riots and hatreds arose in many parts of China. Temples, houses, and shops which had been in the legal possession of natives for one or two centuries were claimed under this stipulation, and they forcibly resisted the surrender. The discontent became so great that the French minister at last issued a notice, about 1872, that no more claims of this kind would be received from the missionaries, and further complaints ceased. The imbroglio was heightened by the murder of two or three missionaries in Kweichau and Sz'chuen during the previous years, and the escape of the guilty parties into other provinces.

The feelings of all the Romish missionaries at the removal of the many disabilities under which they had long lived and bravely suffered were expressed by the Bishop of Shantung in

[1] This sentence in italics is not contained in the French text of the convention; but as that language is made, in Art. III of the Treaty of Tientsin, the *only* authoritative text, the surreptitious insertion of this important stipulation in the Chinese text makes it void. The procedure was unworthy of a great nation like France, whose army environed Peking when the convention was signed.

Digitized by Google

an encyclical letter to his people, in which he exhorts them to "maintain and diligently learn the holy religion. . . . Let them also pray that the holy religion may be greatly promoted, remembering that the kind consideration of the Emperor toward our holy religion springs entirely from the favor of the Lord of Heaven. After the reception of this order, let thanks be offered up to God for his mercies in the churches, for three Lord's days in succession. While the faithful rejoice in this extraordinary favor, let Ave Marias be recited to display grateful feelings."

The subject of the thorough revision of the Chinese Bible had long occupied the thoughts of those best acquainted with the need of such a work; and when the English missionaries met at Hongkong in 1843, a general conference of all Protestant missionaries was called to take measures for the preparation of so desirable a work. The version of Morrison and Milne was acknowledged by themselves to be imperfect, and the former had begun some corrections in it before his death. Messrs. Medhurst, Gutzlaff, Bridgman, and J. R. Morrison had united their labors in revising the New Testament, and published it in 1836.

The greatest harmony existed at this meeting, and the books of the New Testament were distributed among the missionaries at the several stations without regard to denomination. Some discussion arose as to the best word for *baptism*, for all agreed that it could not well be transliterated. The question was referred to a committee, which, finding itself unable to agree upon a term, recommended that in the proposed version this word should be left for each party to adopt which it liked. The term *sí lí*, which had been in use to denote this rite since the days of Ricci, by Romanists of all opinions, had been taken by Morrison and Medhurst, and by those associated with them. Marshman preferred another word, *tsan*, which was so unusual that it would almost always require explanation; and in fact could only be fully explained by the ceremony itself. Some of the American Baptist missionaries have taken Marshman's term, and others have proposed a third one, *yuh*. Their joint action with their brethren in regard to a common version was after-

Digitized by Google

ward repudiated by the societies in the United States, which directed them to prepare separate translations.

The question of the proper word for God in Chinese was also referred to a committee at this meeting in Hongkong, which reported its inability to agree; and this point, like the word for baptism, was therefore left to the decisions of the respective missions, after the version itself was finished. The delegates on the projected translation were chosen by the body of missionaries at each station, and met at Shanghai in June, 1847. They consisted of Rev. Messrs. Medhurst, J. Stronach, and Milne from the London Missionary Society, and Rev. Messrs. Bridgman, Boone, Shuck, Lowrie, and Culbertson from American societies; of the last five, Culbertson took Lowrie's place after his death, and Bp. Boone was never able to take an active share in the work. The New Testament was finished July 25, 1850, and was published soon after with different terms for God and Spirit.

The Old Testament was translated by the three first named in 1853; while another, more adapted to common readers, was completed in 1862 by Messrs. Bridgman and Culbertson. Gutzlaff also issued two or three revisions by himself. In 1865 a committee was formed in Peking for the purpose of making a version of the SS. in the Mandarin dialect, especially that prevalent in the northern provinces. It was done by Rev. Messrs. Blodget, Edkins, Burdon, and Schereschewsky; the New Testament was completed by them jointly in 1872, and the Old Testament in 1874 by the last named alone. It made the sixth complete translation of the Bible into Chinese during this century. Other translations have been made into the five southern patois of several books of the Bible—and at Ningpo and Amoy they are issued in the Romanized letters, and not in the Chinese character. These last, of course, are unintelligible to all natives not taught in mission schools.

The influence and labors of female missionaries in China is, from the constitution of society in that country, likely to be the only, or principal means of reaching their sex for a long time to come, and it is desirable, therefore, that they should engage in the work by learning the language and making the acquaint-

Digitized by Google

ance of the families around them. No nation can be elevated, or Christian institutions placed upon a permanent basis, until females are taught their rightful place as the companions of men, and can teach their children the duties they owe to their God, themselves, and their country. Female schools are the necessary complement of boys', and a heathen wife soon carries a man back to idolatry if he is only intellectually convinced of the truths of Christianity. The comparatively high estimation the Chinese place upon female education is an encouragement to multiply girls' schools. The formation of mission boards in western lands, conducted entirely by women, has made these schools and medical work among women in China both practical and necessary. No large mission is now regarded as complete without one or more women to carry on such parts of the work as belong to them; and this is true of the Romish missions as well as Protestants.

The advance in the work of evangelization since the opening of the Empire in 1842 by the Treaty of Nanking has been in the highest degree encouraging. It was soon ascertained that the hatred and contempt of foreigners which were supposed to dwell in the minds of all Chinese, needed only to be met with kindness and patient teachings to give place to respect and confidence. The sufferings from the war with England, and the evils resulting from the smuggling and use of opium among the people, had embittered the minds of dwellers along the coast; but as most of this was local, the enlargement of mission work did much to remove the ignorance which nursed the dislike. The free relief of disease and pain in the hospitals aided greatly to improve intercourse, so that at this day the natives in and around the open ports have become entirely changed in their feelings.

This outline of Protestant mission work in China may be closed by a notice of the conference held at Shanghai in May, 1877, at which one hundred and twenty-six men and women, connected with twenty different bodies, assembled to discuss their common work in its various departments. The report of their proceedings gives fuller statistics of the work then going on than is to be found elsewhere, and the twenty-seven papers

Digitized by Google

read and discussed in the three-days' sessions contain the ripened views of competent thinkers upon the most serious questions connected with the welfare of China. The following table has been taken from this report, and exhibits a remarkable development in education and preaching, considering that most of the stations have been opened since 1860.

STATISTICS OF PROTESTANT MISSIONS TO CHINA FOR THE YEAR 1877.

Branches of Mission Work.	American Missions.	British Missions.	Continental Missions.	Total.
Stations where missionaries reside	41	43	8	92
Out-stations	215	290	27	532
Organized churches	150	156	12	318
(*a*) Wholly self-supporting	11	7	....	18
(*b*) Partially self-supporting	115	149	....	264
Communicants, { males	3,117	4,504	687	8,308
Communicants, { females	2,183	2,440	584	5,207
Pupils in 31 boys' boarding-schools	347	154	146	647
" 177 boys' day-schools	1,255	1,470	265	2,991
" 39 girls' boarding-schools	464	206	124	794
" 82 girls' day-schools	957	335	15	1,307
" 21 theological schools	94	120	22	236
" 115 Sunday-schools	2,110	495	....	2,605
Pastors and preachers ordained	42	28	3	73
Assistant preachers	212	273	34	519
Colportors	28	46	3	77
Bible women	62	28	2	92
Church buildings for worship	113	118	15	246
Chapels and preaching places	183	249	25	457
In-patients, { in 18 hospitals, 1876	1,390	3,905	....	5,295
Out-patients, { in 18 hospitals, 1876	47,635	41,170	....	88,805
Patients treated in 24 dispensaries, 1876	25,107	16,174	....	41,281
Medical students	19	13	1	33
Contributions of native Christians, 1876	$4,482	$5,089	....	$9,571

The total number of men who have joined the Protestant missions to the Chinese up to 1876, as nearly as can be ascertained, has been 484. Of these 41 were laymen, chiefly physicians, and no women or natives are included. Twelve American societies had sent out 212 ordained missionaries, and the same number of British societies had sent 196; all the agents of the 8 or 10 continental societies amounted to 35. The number in 1847 was 112 of all nations; in 1858, this figure had increased to 214; and a table made out in 1877 by the Shang-

Digitized by Google

hai Conference gives 473 as the total number of persons then engaged in active missionary work in China, including 15 not employed by any of the 25 societies enumerated. Of these 210 belonged to 10 American, 242 to 13 British, and 26 to 2 German societies; 172 of the whole number being wives of missionaries, and 63 unmarried females.

No one acquainted with the practical evangelical work in China needs to be told that these statistics give no idea of the character and attainments of the fourteen thousand converts which have joined native churches, or the extent and thoroughness of the education given the five thousand seven hundred children counted in. Those who look for more than the merest beginnings of faith and culture in the minds of natives just brought out of the ignorance, sottishness, and impurity of heathenism into the brightness of Christianity, or those who harshly criticise these results of mission work, will do well to examine for themselves more fully the limitations and nature of all its branches.

No mention is made in these items of the amount of printing done at mission presses, for those particulars are scattered over hundreds of reports issued during the last score or two years. The presses formerly conducted by Williams, Wylie, and Cole at Canton, Shanghai, and Hongkong during an aggregate of nearly forty years, have been superseded by more and larger establishments; moreover, the facilities for transporting books render their issues more available at the remotest parts of the country. The manufacture of Chinese and Japanese types by the Presbyterian Mission press and foundry furnishes native workmen with the means of printing newspapers and books, which otherwise could never have been done (so as to become self-supporting) by means of blocks. At this establishment over thirty millions of pages are annually sent forth, and this amount is more than doubled by all the other mission presses. The effects of this literature upon the native mind, which these agencies are scattering wider every year, will be apparent in the near future.

The worth and labors of many men comprised in this number of missionaries have long been known to the Christian pub-

Digitized by Google

lic. Milne and Collie ardently longed and labored diligently for the coming and extension of the kingdom of Christ in China, though not allowed to live in its borders. Few men in the missionary corps have exceeded Edwin Stevens in sound judgment and steady pursuit of a well-formed purpose, which in his case was to aid in perfecting the version of the Bible. He was employed nearly three years as seamen's chaplain at Whampoa before entering the service among the Chinese, and his labors in that department were highly acceptable to those who frequented the port.

The warm-hearted, humble piety and singleness of purpose of Samuel Dyer were also well known to every one engaged with him. His long and assiduous labors to complete a fount of Chinese metallic type, amid many obstacles and hindrances, were prompted by the hope that, when once finished, books could be printed with more elegance, cheapness, and rapidity than in any other way. He lived to see it brought into partial use, and to satisfy himself concerning the feasibility of this plan. If the impulses of private friendship and the esteem generally entertained for David Abeel should prompt a notice of his character and labors, it would soon extend to many pages; they have been well worthy the fuller notice which is given in his memoir. Among other biographies may be mentioned those of Walter M. Lowrie, William C. Burns, D. Sandeman, J. Henderson, Samuel Dyer, E. C. Bridgman, and W. Aitcheson, which will furnish information upon the details of their labors. Female missionaries have also done much, and will do more, in this work, which requires minds and labors in large variety. Mrs. Mary Morrison, Mrs. Sarah Boone, Mrs. Theodosia Dean, Mrs. Lucy Ball, Mrs. Henrietta Shuck, Mrs. Doty, and Mrs. Pohlman, all died in China before 1846—the first of scores of honorable women who have since thus ended their lives.

Before closing this brief sketch of Christian missions among the Chinese, it may be well to mention some of the peculiar facilities and difficulties which attend the work. The business of transforming heathen society and reconstructing it on Christian principles is a great and protracted undertaking, and is to

Digitized by Google

be commenced in all communities by working on individuals. The opposition of the unregenerate heart can be overcome only by the transforming influences of the Spirit, but the intellect must be enlightened, and the moral sense instructed by a system of means, before the truths of the Bible can be intelligently received or rejected. This opposition is not peculiar to China, but it will probably assume a more polemic and argumentative cast there than in some other countries. The proud literati are not disposed to abase Confucius below the Saviour, but rather inclined to despise the reiteration of his name and atonement as a seesaw about "one Jesus who was dead, whom we affirm to be alive." Medhurst notices a tract written against him by a Chinese, in which it is argued that "it was monstrous in barbarians to attempt to improve the inhabitants of the Celestial Empire when they were so miserably deficient themselves. Thus, introducing among the Chinese a poisonous drug, for their own benefit to the injury of others, they were deficient in benevolence; sending their fleets and armies to rob other nations of their possessions, they could make no pretentions to rectitude; allowing men and women to mix in society and walk arm in arm through the streets, they showed that they had not the least sense of propriety; and in rejecting the doctrines of the ancient kings they were far from displaying wisdom; indeed, truth was the only good quality to which they could lay the least claim. Deficient, therefore, in four out of the five cardinal virtues, how could they expect to renovate others? Then, while foreigners lavished money in circulating books for the renovation of the age, they made no scruple of trampling printed paper under foot, by which they showed their disrespect for the inventors of letters. Further, these would-be exhorters of the world were themselves deficient in filial piety, forgetting their parents as soon as dead, putting them off with deal coffins only an inch thick, and never so much as once sacrificing to their manes, or burning the smallest trifle of gilt paper for their support in the future world. Lastly, they allowed the rich and noble to enter office without passing through any literary examinations, and did not throw open the road to advancement to the poorest and meanest in the land. From all these, it ap-

Digitized by Google

peared that foreigners were inferior to Chinese, and therefore most unfit to instruct them."

To these arguments, which commend themselves to a Chinese with a force that can hardly be understood by a foreigner, they often add the intemperate, immoral lives and reckless cupidity of professed Christians who visit their shores, and ask what good it will do them to change their long-tried precepts for the new-fangled teachings of the Bible? The pride of learning is a great obstacle to the reception of the humiliating truths of the Gospel everywhere, but perhaps especially in China, where letters are so highly honored and patronized. The language is another difficulty in the way of the diffusion of the Gospel, both on the part of the native and the missionary. The mode of education among the Chinese is admirably fitted for the ends they propose, viz., of forming the mind to implicit belief and reverence for the precepts of Confucius, and obedience to the government which makes those precepts the outlines of its actions, but it rather weakens the intellect for independent thought on other subjects. The language itself, as we have had opportunity to observe, is an unwieldy vehicle for imparting new truths, either by writing or speaking, chiefly because of the additional burden every new character or term imposes upon the memory. The immense number, who read and speak this language, reconciles one, however, to extra labor and patience to become familiar with its forms of speech, and ascertain the best modes of conveying truth.

When the five ports were opened in 1845 to practical missionary work among the two or three millions of people living in and around them, it was soon found that they were tolerably well-disposed to foreigners when they understood what was said to them. Fifteen years of constant labor changed the ignorance and suspicion with which they regarded the first missionaries, into respectful regard if not acceptance of their message. At the end of this period, the capture of Peking and the ratification of the treaties of Tientsin completed the opening of China to such labors as far as diplomatic agency could go. Congregations are now collected, and truth explained to them with a good degree of acceptance every Sabbath, and all that is wanted

Digitized by Google

to get more congregations is more preachers; long before missionary labors are accomplished in all the ports, the whole land will afford every choice of climate and position. Facilities for learning the language are constantly increasing. Dictionaries, vocabularies, phrase books, grammars, and chrestomathies in all the dialects will soon be prepared; and the list now is not small. They have all, with few exceptions, been made and printed by Protestant missionaries.

Churches have increased since the first one was formed in Canton in 1835, and some of them are served by native evangelists, two of whom, Liang A-fah and Tsin Shen, of the London Mission, deserve mention as among the first of their countrymen who became educated, earnest preachers of the gospel. The future is full of promise, and the efforts of the church with regard to China will not cease until every son and daughter of the race of Han has been taught the truths of the Bible, and has had them fairly propounded for reception or rejection. They will progress until all the cities, towns, villages, and hamlets of that vast Empire have the teacher and professor of religion living in them; until their children are educated, their civil liberties understood, and political rights guaranteed; their poor cared for, their literature purified, their condition bettered in this world by the full revelation of another made known to them. The work of missions will go on until the government is modified, and religious and civil liberty granted to all, and China takes her rank among the Christian nations of the earth, reciprocating all the courtesies due from people professing the same faith.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XX.

COMMERCE OF THE CHINESE.

It is probable that the applications made in remote times to the rulers of China for liberty to trade with their subjects, partook in their opinion very much of the nature of an acknowledgment of their power; the presents accompanying the request were termed *kung*, and regarded as tribute, while the traders themselves also looked upon the intercourse in somewhat the same light. The chapter of the *Book of Records*, called the "Tribute of Yu," is one of the most ancient documents in existence relating to the products of a country, and indicates a trade in them of no small extent. Silk, lacquer, furs, grass-cloth, salt, gems, gold, silver, and other metals, ivory and manufactured goods are enumerated; they are mostly identified with articles still produced, as Legge has shown in his translation. The records of the origin and early course of this trade are lost to a great extent, but the Chinese annals furnish proof of similar traffic for two thousand years after the days of Yu. It had the effect of extending the influence of Chinese institutions among less civilized neighbors, and of making foreign commerce a means of benefit to all parties. The restrictions and charges upon all trade were of small amount at this early period; as it extended, the cupidity of local officers led them to burden it with numerous illegal fees, which gradually reduced its value, and finally, in some instances, drove it away altogether.

The materials in Chinese literature for investigating this subject after the period of the Han dynasty are abundant, and they will reward the careful analysis of foreign scholars. Marco Polo, the two Arab travellers in A.D. 850 and 878, and Ibn Ba-

Digitized by Google

tuta, in 1330, have each contributed their narratives, hinting therein more than they could carefully investigate of the wide range and value of the Chinese foreign commerce. During the Ming dynasty this trade fell off, owing to the impoverishment of the land by the Mongols; but when (about 1600) the stimulus of European ships along the coast began to develop and reward native manufactures, foreign nations and merchants appreciated the fact that it was more profitable to trade with China than attack her.

The principal items of export and import have not materially changed during the last century; the splendid fabrics of Chinese looms, their tea, lacquered ware, and products of their kilns, being still bartered for the cottons, metals, furs, and woollens of the west. Such articles as possess peculiar interest, and have not been already described, together with a few notices respecting the present extent and mode of conducting the trade, will suffice to explain its general features.[1] The history of the culture and trade in tea by Samuel Ball of Canton in 1835, may yet be considered as an authority upon the subject. The growth in the use of tea is instructive, too, rising from an importation of about eighty pounds into England in 1670, till it had so well vindicated its virtues and enlarged its use among that people, that in 1880 one hundred and eighty million pounds were required to supply them; and more than that was exported elsewhere from China.

The first item which attracts attention in the table of trade with China is opium, whose growth and momentous consequences require a detailed account. The use of opium as a medicine has not long been known to Chinese doctors, though, from the way the poppy is mentioned in the *Herbal*, there is reason to suppose it to be indigenous. The drug is called *apien*, in imitation of the word *opium*, while the plant is called *afuyung*, a transliteration of the Arabic name *Afyun*, from which country it was brought about the ninth century. It has many

[1] Ample materials are now provided in the full reports of the Custom's service and the Exhibition Catalogues of Vienna, Paris, Philadelphia, etc.; the reports of Rondot, Hedde, and other members of the French Legation in 1844 are still valuable.

Digitized by Google

names, as *great smoke, black commodity, black earth, foreign medicine;* the last is the term used in the tariff. The compiler of the *Herbal*, who wrote two centuries ago, speaks of the plant and its inspissated juice, saying that both were formerly but little known; he then concisely describes the mode of collecting it, which leads to the inference that it was then used in medicine. None was imported coastwise for scores of years after that date, but the poppy is now grown in every province and in Manchuria, and no real restraint is anywhere put on its cultivation. The juice is collected and prepared by the people for their own consumption in much the same manner as in India; as long ago as 1830 we find one official observing in respect to the cultivation, which was extending, that it was "not only bringing injury on the good, but greatly retarding the work of the husbandmen."

The mode of raising the poppy in the Patna district in India is thus described: The ryot or cultivator having selected a piece of ground, always preferring (*cæteris paribus*) that which is nearest his house, fences it in. He then, by repeated ploughings and manuring, makes it rich and fine, and removes all the weeds and grass. Next, he divides the field into two or more beds by small dikes of mould, running lengthwise and crosswise according to the slope and nature of the ground, and again into smaller squares by other dikes leading from the principal ones. A tank is dug about ten feet deep at one end of the field, from which by a leathern bucket, water is raised into one of the principal dikes and carried to every part as required; this irrigation is necessary because the cultivation is carried on in the dry weather. The seed is sown in November, and the juice collected in February and March, during a period, usually, of about six weeks; weeding and watering commence as soon as the plants spring up, and are continued till the poppies come to maturity. Cuts are then made in the capsule with a *nusktur* or notched iron instrument made of three or four sharp lancet-like plates; this is done at sunrise, and the exudation is scraped off next morning by a scoop or *sittuha*, and deposited in the dish hanging at the ryot's side. He takes it home and after draining it dry in a large shallow dish, turns

Digitized by Google

it over and over in the air for a month till the mass is equally dried, and it is fit to carry to the godown. Here it is thrown into a great tank, and kneaded to a uniform consistence; when ready it is rolled into balls according to the size of a brass bowl; these balls are covered with a coating of poppy petals, and stored in a drying-house till ready for packing. The quality of the article depends very much upon the care taken in the drying and covering with *liwa* or opium paste when the ball is prepared.

The cultivator must deliver a certain quantity at the stipulated price to the collector, the amount being fixed by a survey of the field when in bloom; he receives about one dollar and sixty-five cents for a seer (one pound thirteen ounces) of the poppy juice, which must be of a certain consistence. The ryot has, in most cases, already received the advance money, and if he sell this crude opium to any other than the collector, or if he fail to deliver the estimated quantity, and there is reason for supposing he has embezzled it, he is liable to punishment. In all parts of India, the cultivation of the poppy, the preparation of the drug, and the traffic in it until it is sold at auction for exportation, are under a strict monopoly. Should an individual undertake the cultivation without having entered into engagements with the government to deliver the produce at the fixed rate, his property would be immediately attached, and he compelled either to destroy the poppies, or give security for the faithful delivery of the product. The cultivation of the plant is compulsory, for if the ryot refuse the advance for the year's crop, the simple plan of throwing the rupees into his house is adopted; should he attempt to abscond, the agents seize him, tie the advance up in his clothes, and push him into his house. There being then no remedy, he applies himself as he may to the fulfilment of his contract. The chief opium district is on the Ganges valley, occupying the best land in Benares and Behar, to the extent of about a thousand square miles. The northern and central parts of India are now covered with poppies, while other plants used for food or clothing have nearly been driven out. In Turkey, Persia, India, and China many myriads of acres and millions of people are

Digitized by Google

employed in the cultivation of poppies.[1] The growth has extended so much in Persia that opium has lately come from thence to China.

The preparation of the opium is superintended by official examiners, and is a business of some difficulty, from the many substances put into the juice to adulterate or increase its weight. Wetting it so that the mass shall be more fluid than it naturally is, mixing sand, soft clayey mud, sugar, coarse molasses, cow-dung, pounded poppy-seeds, and the juice of stramony, quinces, and other plants, are all resorted to, though with the almost certain result of detection and loss. When the juice has been dried properly, to about seventy per cent. spissitude, it appears coppery brown in the mass, and when spread thin on a white plate, shows considerable translucency, with a gallstone yellow color and a slightly granular texture. When cut with a knife it exhibits sharp edges without drawing out into threads; and is tremulous like strawberry-jam, to which it has been aptly compared. It has considerable adhesiveness, a handful of it not dropping from the inverted hand for some seconds.

All the opium grown is brought to Calcutta and stored in government warehouses, until it is exposed for sale at auction, at an upset price, graduated according to the market price in China. It is supposed not to cost much more than seven hundred rupees a chest, and is sold at as high an advance as it will bear. Great care is taken to suit the taste of the Chinese; on one occasion, the East India Company refunded part of the price on a lot which had been differently prepared, to try whether that people would prefer it. There are several sorts of opium: Turkey and Persian, which sell cheapest, and reach China from Aden; Patna and Benares which are sold at Calcutta; and Malwa, which is cultivated out of British jurisdiction. In order to equalize its competition, an export duty was until 1842 put on each chest of one hundred and twenty-five rupees, which has been increased to six hundred rupees. The drug is rolled in balls, and then packed in strong boxes, weighing from one hundred and sixteen pounds for

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol V., p. 472.

Digitized by Google

Patna, to one hundred and thirty-four pounds or one hundred and forty pounds for Malwa. Malwa opium is grown and prepared by natives, and is often extensively adulterated; between four hundred and five hundred cakes are in a chest, and the cultivator there receives double the wages of the ryot in Bengal.

Opium chests are made of mango wood in Patna and Benares and consist of two parts, in each of which there are twenty partitions; the balls are carefully rolled in dry poppy leaves. The chest is covered with hides or gunny bags, and the seams closed so as to render it as impervious to the air as possible. After the drug is sold at auction, there is no further tax on it. The revenue from this monopoly has become so great and important, that its continuance is described by a leading editor in India as a matter of life and death to the Government. In 1840, the income was somewhat over two millions sterling; it has since steadily increased, till in 1872 it amounted to £7,657,000; the average annual sum between the years 1869 to 1876 was £6,524,000, and it has been over five millions ever since the peace of Tientsin. The purity and flavor of the drug has been carefully maintained by competent scientists, and by this date the prejudice in its favor has become so strong among the Chinese, as to induce them to pay an enormous premium for the Indian article over any native product.

The use of opium among the Chinese two centuries ago must have been very little, or the writings of Romish missionaries, from 1580 down to the beginning of the nineteenth century, would certainly have contained some account of it. It was not till the year 1767 that the importation reached a thousand chests, and continued at that rate for some years, most of the trade being in the hands of the Portuguese. The East India Company made a small adventure in 1773; and seven years after, a dépôt of two small vessels was established by the English in Lark's Bay, south of Macao; the price was then about $550 a chest. In 1781 the company freighted a vessel to Canton, but were obliged to sell the lot of 1,600 chests at $200 a chest, to Sinqua, one of the hong-merchants, who, not being able to dispose of it to advantage, reshipped it to the Archipelago. The price in

Digitized by Google

1791 was about $370 a chest, and was imported under the head of medicine at a duty of about seven dollars a hundredweight, including charges. The authorities at Canton began to complain of the two ships in Lark's Bay in 1793, and their owners being much annoyed by the pirates and revenue boats, and inconvenienced by the distance from Canton, loaded the opium on board a single vessel, and brought her to Whampoa, where she lay unmolested for more than a year. She was then loaded and sent out of the river, and the drug introduced in another ship; this practice continued until 1820, when the governor-general and collector of customs issued an edict, forbidding any vessel to enter the port in which opium was stored, and making the pilots and hong-merchants responsible for its being on board. The Portuguese were also forbidden to introduce it into Macao, and every officer in the Chinese custom-house there was likewise made responsible for preventing it, under the heaviest penalties. "Be careful," says his excellency in conclusion, "and do not view this document as mere matter of form, and so tread within the net of the law, for you will find your escape as impracticable as it is for a man to bite his own navel."

The importation had been prohibited by the Emperor Kia-king in 1800, under heavy penalties, on account of its use wasting the time and destroying the property of the people of the Inner Land, and exchanging their silver and commodities for the "vile dirt" of foreign countries. The supercargoes of the Company therefore recommended the Directors to prohibit its shipment to China from England and India, but this could not be done; and they contented themselves by forbidding their own ships bringing it to China. The hong-merchants were required to give bonds, in 1809, that no ship which discharged her cargo at Whampoa had opium on board; but they contrived to evade the restriction. The traffic was carried on at Whampoa and Macao by the connivance of local officers, some of whom watched the delivery of every chest and received a fee; while their superiors, remote from the scene of smuggling, pocketed an annual bribe for overlooking the violation of the imperial orders.

The system of bribery and condoning malpractices, so common

Digitized by Google

in China, is well illustrated by a case which occurred in connection with this business. In September, 1821, a Chinese inhabitant of Macao, who had been the medium of receiving from the Portuguese, and paying to the Chinese officers the several bribes annually given for the introduction of opium, was arrested by government for hiring banditti to assault one of his personal opponents. Having got the man in their power, quicksilver was poured into his ears, to injure his head without killing him; they also forced him to drink a horrible potion of scalding tea mixed with the short hairs shaved from his head. The vile wretch who originated this cruel idea and paid the perpetrators of it, was a pettifogging notary, who brought gain to the officials by intimidating the people, until he was the pest and terror of the neighborhood. An official enemy at last laid his character and doings before the governor, who had him seized and thrown into prison, when he turned his wrath on his former employers, and confessed that he held the place of bribe-collector, and that all the authorities received so much per chest, even up to the admiral of the station. The governor, though doubtless aware of these practices, was now obliged to notice them; but instead of punishing those who were directly guilty, he accused the senior hong-merchant, a rich man, nicknamed the "timid young lady," and charged him with neglecting his suretyship in not pointing out every foreign ship which contained opium. It was in vain for him to plead that he had never dealt in opium, nor had any connection with those who did deal in it; nor could he search the ships to ascertain what was in them, or control the authorities who encouraged and protected the smuggling of opium: notwithstanding all his pleas, the governor was determined to hold him responsible. He was accordingly disgraced, and a paper, combining admonition, with exhortation and entreaty, was addressed by his excellency to the foreigners, Portuguese, English, and Americans. The gods, he said, would conduct the fair dealers in safety over the ocean, but over the contraband smugglers of a pernicious poison, the terrors of the royal law on earth, and the wrath of the infernal gods in hades were suspended. The Americans brought opium, he observed, "because they had no king to rule them." The opium ships

Digitized by Google

thus being driven from Whampoa, and the Portuguese unwilling or afraid to admit it into Macao unless at a high duty, the merchants established a floating dépôt of receiving-ships at Lintin, an island between Macao and the Bogue. In summer, the ships moved to Kumsing moon, Kapshui moon, Hongkong, and other anchorages off the river, to be more secure against the tyfoons; remaining near Lintin during the north-east monsoon, until 1839.[1]

The mode of introducing opium into the country, when the prohibitions against its use were upheld by the moral approval of the best portion of the native society, has hardly any interest now, except as a matter of history. It is a sad exhibition of power, habit, skill, and money all combining to weaken and overpower the feeble, desultory resistance of a pagan and ignorant people against the progress of what they knew was destroying them. The finality of such a struggle could hardly be doubted, and when the tariff of 1858 allowed opium to enter by the payment of a duty, the already enfeebled moral resistance seemed to die out with the extinction of the smuggling trade in opium, now raised to a licensed commerce. The rise and course of the trade up to that year can be learned from the volumes of the *Chinese Repository* and newspapers issued in China.

The utensils used in preparing the opium for smoking, consist chiefly of three hemispherical brass pans, two bamboo filters, two portable furnaces, earthen pots, ladles, straining-cloths, and sprinklers. The ball being cut in two, the interior is taken out, and the opium adhering to or contained in the leafy covering is previously simmered three several times, each time using a pint of spring water, and straining it into an earthen pot; some cold water is poured over the dregs after the third boiling, and from half a cake (weighing at first about twenty-eight pounds, and with which this process is supposed to be conducted), there will be about five pints of liquid. The interior of the cake is then boiled with this liquid for about an hour, until the whole is reduced to a paste, which is spread out with a spatula in two pans, and exposed to the fire for two or three minutes at

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. V., pp. 546–558.

Digitized by Google

a time, till the water is driven off; during this operation it is often broken up and re-spread, and at the last drying cut across with a knife. It is all then spread out in one cake, and covered with six pints of water, being allowed to remain several hours or over night for digestion. When sufficiently soaked, a rag filter is placed on the edge of the pan, and the whole of the valuable part drips slowly through the rag into a basket lined with coarse bamboo paper, from which it falls into the other brass pan, about as much liquid going through as there was water poured over the cake. The dregs are again soaked and immediately filtered till found to be nearly tasteless; this weaker part usually makes about six pints of liquid.

The first six pints are then briskly boiled, being sprinkled with cold water to allay the heat so as not to boil over, and removing the scum by a feather into a separate vessel. After boiling twenty minutes, five pints of the weak liquid are poured in and boiled with it, until the whole is evaporated to about three pints, when it is strained through paper into another pan, and the remaining pint thrown into the pan just emptied, to wash away any portion that may remain in it, and also boiled a little while, when it is also strained into the three pints. The whole is then placed over a slow fire in the small furnace, and boiled down to a proper consistency for smoking; while it is evaporating a ring forms around the edge, and the pan is taken off the fire at intervals to prolong the process, the mass being the while rapidly stirred with sticks, and fanned until it becomes like thick treacle, when it is taken out and put into small pots for smoking. The boxes in which it is retailed are made of buffalo's horn, of such a size as easily to be carried about the person. The dregs containing the vegetable residuum, together with the scum and washings of the pans, are lastly strained and boiled with water, producing about six pints of thin, brownish liquid, which is evaporated to a proper consistence for selling to the poor. The process of seething the crude opium is exceedingly unpleasant to those unaccustomed to it, from the overpowering narcotic fumes which arise, and this odor marks every shop where it is prepared and every person who smokes it. The loss in weight by this mode of preparation is about one-

Digitized by Google

half. The Malays prepare it in much the same manner. The custom in Penang is to reduce the dry cake made on the first evaporation to a powder, and when it is digested and again strained and evaporated, reducing it to a consistence resembling shoemaker's wax.

The opium pipe consists of a tube of heavy wood furnished at the head with a cup which serves to collect the residuum or ashes left after combustion; this cup is usually a small cavity in the end of the pipe, and serves to elevate the bowl to a level with the lamp. The bowl of the pipe is made of earthenware, of an ellipsoid shape, and sets down upon the hole, itself having a small rimmed orifice on the flat side. The opium-smoker always lies down, and the impossible picture given by Davis of a "Mandarin smoking an opium-pipe," dressed in his official robes and sitting up at a table, becomes still more singular if the author ever saw a smoker at his pipe. Lying along the couch, he holds the pipe, aptly called *yen tsiang*, *i.e.*, 'smoking-pistol,' so near the lamp that the bowl can be brought close up to the flame. A pellet of the size of a pea being taken on the end of a spoon-headed needle, is put upon the hole of the bowl and set on fire at the lamp, and inhaled at one whiff so that none of the smoke shall be lost. Old smokers will retain the breath a long time, filling the lungs and exhaling the fumes through the nose. The taste of the half-fluid extract is sweetish and oily, somewhat like rich cream, but the smell of the burning drug is rather sickening. When the pipe has burned out, the smoker lies listless for a moment while the fumes are dissipating, and then repeats the process until he has spent all his purchase, or taken his prescribed dose. When the smoking commences, the man becomes loquacious, and breaks out into boisterous, silly merriment, which gradually changes to a vacant paleness and shrinking of the features, as the quantity increases and the narcotic acts. A deep sleep supervenes from half an hour to three or four hours' duration, during which the pulse becomes slower, softer, and smaller than before the debauch. No refreshment is felt from this sleep, when the person has become a victim to the habit, but a universal sinking of the powers of the body and mind is experienced, and complete reckless-

Digitized by Google

ness of all consequences, if only the craving for more can be appeased.

A novice is content with one or two whiffs, which produce vertigo, nausea, and headache, though practice enables him to gradually increase the quantity; "temperate smokers," warned by the sad example of the numerous victims around them, endeavor to keep within bounds, and walk as near the precipice as they can without falling over into hopeless ruin. In order to do this, they limit themselves to a certain quantity daily, and take it at, or soon after meals, so that the stomach may not be so much weakened. A "temperate smoker" (though this term is like that of a *temperate* robber, who only takes shillings from his employer's till, or a *temperate* bloodletter, who only takes a spoonful daily from his veins) can seldom exceed a mace weight, or about as much of prepared opium as will balance a pistareen or a franc piece; this quantity will fill twelve pipes. Two mace weight taken daily is considered an immoderate dose, which few can bear for any length of time; and those who are afraid of the effects of the drug upon themselves endeavor not to exceed a mace. Some persons, who have strong constitutions and stronger resolution, continue the use of the drug within these limits for many years without disastrous effects upon their health and spirits though most of even these moderate smokers are so much the slaves to the habit that they feel too wretched, nerveless, and imbecile to go on with their business without the stimulus.

The testimony regarding the evil effects of the use of this pernicious drug, which deserves better to be called an "article of destruction" than an "article of luxury," are so unanimous that few can be found to stand up strongly in its favor. Dr. Smith, a physician in charge of the hospital at Penang, says: "The baneful effects of this habit on the human constitution are particularly displayed by stupor, forgetfulness, general deterioration of all the mental faculties, emaciation, debility, sallow complexion, lividness of lips and eyelids, languor and lacklustre of eye, and appetite either destroyed or depraved, sweetmeats or sugar being the articles that are most relished." These symptoms appear when the habit has weakened the

Digitized by Google

physical powers, but the unhappy man soon begins to feel the power of the drug in a general languor and sinking, which disables him, mentally more than bodily, from carrying on his ordinary pursuits. A dose of opium does not produce the intoxication of ardent spirits, and so far as the peace of the community and his family are concerned, the smoker is less troublesome than the drunkard; the former never throws the chairs and tables about the room, or drives his wife out of doors in his furious rage; he never goes reeling through the streets or takes lodgings in the gutter; but contrariwise, he is quiet or pleasant, and fretful only when the effects of the pipe are gone. It is in the insupportable languor throughout the whole frame, the gnawing at the stomach, pulling at the shoulders, and failing of the spirits that the tremendous power of this vice lies, compelling the "victimized" slave "to seek it yet again." There has not yet been opportunity to make those minute investigations respecting the extent opium is used among the Chinese, what classes of people use it, their daily dose, the proportion of reprobate smokers, and many other points which have been narrowly examined into in regard to the use of alcohol; so that it is impossible to decide the question as to which of the two is the more dreadful habit. These statistics have, heretofore, been impossible to obtain in China, and it will be very difficult to obtain them, even when a person who may have the leisure and abilities shall undertake the task.

Various means have been tried by benevolent natives to dissuade their countrymen from using it, such as distributing tracts showing its ruinous effects, compounding medicines for the smoker to take to aid him in breaking off the habit, and denouncing the smoking-shops to government. A painter at Canton made a series of admonitory pictures, showing the several steps in the downward course of the opium-smoker, until beggary and death ended the scene; one of them, showing the young debauchee at his revels, is here introduced.

A Chinese scholar thus sums up the bad effects of opium, which, he says, is taken at first to raise the animal spirits and prevent lassitude: "It exhausts the animal spirits, impedes

Digitized by Google

the regular performance of business, wastes the flesh and blood, dissipates every kind of property, renders the person ill-favored, promotes obscenity, discloses secrets, violates the laws, attacks the vitals, and destroys life." Under each of these heads he lucidly shows the mode of the process, or gives examples to uphold his assertions: "In comparison with arsenic, I pronounce it tenfold the greater poison; one swallows arsenic because he has lost his reputation, and is so involved that he cannot extricate himself. Thus driven to desperation, he takes

Manner of Smoking Opium.

the dose and is destroyed at once; but those who smoke the drug are injured in many ways. It may be compared to raising the wick of a lamp, which, while it increases the blaze, hastens the exhaustion of the oil and the extinction of the light. Hence, the youth who smoke will shorten their own days and cut off all hopes of posterity, leaving their parents and wives without any one on whom to depend. From the robust who smoke the flesh is gradually consumed and worn away, and the skin hangs like a bag. Their faces become cadaverous and black, and their bones naked as billets of wood. The habitual

Digitized by Google

smokers doze for days over their pipes, without appetite; when the desire for opium comes on, they cannot resist its impulse. Mucus flows from their nostrils and tears from their eyes; their very bodies are rotten and putrid. From careless observers the sight of such objects is enough to excite loud peals of laughter. The poor smoker, who has pawned every article in his possession, still remains idle; and when the periodical thirst comes on, will even pawn his wives and sell his daughters. In the province of Nganhwui I once saw a man named Chin, who, being childless, purchased a concubine and got her with child; afterward, when his money was expended and other means all failed him, being unable to resist the desire for the pipe, he sold her in her pregnancy for several tens of dollars. This money being expended, he went and hung himself. Alas, how painful was his end!"[1]

The thirst and burning sensation in the throat which the wretched sufferer feels, only to be removed by a repetition of the dose, proves one of the strongest links in the chain which drags him to his ruin. At this stage of the habit his case is almost hopeless; if the pipe be delayed too long, vertigo, complete prostration, and discharge of water from the eyes ensue; if entirely withheld, coldness and aching pains are felt over the body, an obstinate diarrhœa supervenes, and death closes the scene. The disastrous effects of the drug are somewhat delayed or modified by the quantity of nourishing food the person can procure, and consequently it is among the poor who can least afford the pipe, and still less the injury done to their energies, that the destruction of life is the greatest. The evils suffered and crimes committed by the desperate victims of the opium pipe are dreadful and multiplied. Theft, arson, murder, and suicide are perpetrated in order to obtain it or escape its effects. Some try to break off the fatal habit by taking a tincture of the opium dirt in spirits, gradually diminishing its strength until it is left off entirely; others mix opium with tobacco and smoke the compound in a less and less proportion, until tobacco alone remains. The general belief is that the vice can be overcome without

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VII., p. 108.

Digitized by Google

fatal results, if the person firmly resolve to forsake it and keep away from sight and smell of the pipe, laboring as much as his strength will allow in the open air until he recovers his spirits and no longer feels a longing for it. Few, very few, however, emancipate themselves from the tyrannous habit which enslaves them; they are able to resist its insidious effects until the habit has become strong, and the resolution to break it off is generally delayed until their chains are forged and deliverance felt to be hopeless.

Swallowing opium is commonly resorted to as a means of suicide; the papers published in China constantly report cases where physicians have tried to save the patient by injections of atrophine before life is gone, and the number of these applications painfully show how lightly the Chinese esteem life. A comparison is sometimes drawn between the opium-smoker and drunkard, and the former averred to be less injured by the habit; but the balance is struck between two terrible evils, both of which end in the loss of health, property, mind, influence, and life. Opium imparts no benefit to the smoker, impairs his bodily vigor, beclouds his mind, and unfits him for his station in society; he is miserable without it, and at last dies by what he lives upon.

The import having been legalized in 1858, under the pressure of war, it was useless for the imperial government longer to prevent the cultivation of the poppy, and the growth has rapidly extended throughout the provinces. Since all the opium brought to China reaches it through Hongkong, and the consumption upon that island must be comparatively insignificant, the table on the following page, taken from the Chinese Customs Reports, will convey a very fair idea of the amount and value of the import during the past six years.

Although it is difficult to make a general statement regarding an import of such varying quantity and value, the average total may be safely enough put at between twelve and thirteen million pounds, the approximate value of which is something over sixty million dollars, per annum. The prices range from $540 to $580 per pecul for Benares, $740 for Malwa, $560 for Patna, $540 for Persian, and nearly $1,500 for the prepared drug. The

Digitized by Google

imports of Persian and Turkish, though steadily increasing, amount as yet to hardly one-fiftieth of the total. But the merest guesses can be made at the production of native opium.

TOTAL IMPORT OF OPIUM AT HONGKONG.

Year.	Quantity.	Value.
	Peculs.	*Hk. Tls.*[1]
1876	96,985	36,491,288
1877.....	94,200	32,303,963
1878.....	94,899	37,470,465
1879.....	107,970	41,479,892
1880.....	96,839	42,823,721
1881.....	89,688	38,115,154

The British consul at Canton reported in 1877 "on good authority" that the out-turn came to 32,000 peculs, while in the Customs Special Report on Opium of 1881 the estimates of the several commissioners vary from 12,000 (Mr. McKean, of Canton) to 265,000 peculs (Mr. Drew, of Ningpo). In this report only seven out of the nineteen trade ports present any figures upon this head.[2]

This *résumé* of facts connected with the growth and condition of this trade are enough, probably, for the present purpose. "Opium is the only article of all her imports that China cannot

[1] The *Haikwan tael* is equivalent to $1.36⅔ in American gold. The *pecul* weighs 133⅓ pounds avoirdupois.

[2] Compare *Returns of Trade at the Treaty Ports* for 1881, and *Opium* (Special, Series II., No. 4), published by the Im. Mar. Customs at Shanghai. *Portfolio Chinensis*, by J. Lewis Shuck, Macao, 1840. Rev. A. S. Thelwall, *The Iniquities of the Opium Trade with China*, London, 1839. *L'Opium en Chine, Étude statistique et morale*, par le Dr. E. Martin, Paris, 1871. Alonzo Calkins, *Opium and the Opium Appetite*, Philadelphia, 1871. F. S. Turner, *British Opium Policy and its Results to India and China*, London, 1876. Dr. D. J. Macgowan in *Transactions of the N. C. Br. R. A. S.*, Part IV., Art. II. Fernand Papillon, *Revue des Deux Mondes*, 1er Mai, 1873. Dr. H. H. Kane, *Opium Smoking*, New York, 1882. *The Friend of China*, published at London bi-monthly; and publications of the Anglo-Oriental Society for the Suppression of the Opium Trade.

Digitized by Google

do without now," said a British minister once in a sorrowing mood, as he acknowledged its evils; but there are many other commodities, and a survey of the native and foreign commerce will exhibit the extent and variety of the resources of the Empire. The Chinese trade with foreign ports in native vessels is at present nearly extinct, in consequence of the increase of foreign shipping and advantages of insurance enabling the native trader to send and receive commodities with less risk and more speed than by junks. The facilities and security of commerce in a country are among the best indices of its government being administered, on the whole, in a tolerably just manner, and on those principles which give the mechanic, farmer, and merchant a good prospect of reaping the fruits of their industry. This security is afforded in China to a considerable degree—far more than in Western Asia—and is one of the most satisfactory proofs, amid all the extortions and depravity seen in their courts and in society at large, that the people, generally speaking, enjoy the rewards of industry. Tranquillity may often be owing to the strong arm of power, but trade, manufactures, voyages, and large commercial enterprises must remunerate those who undertake them, or they cease. The Chinese are eminently a trading people; their merchants are acute, methodical, sagacious, and enterprising, not over-scrupulous as to their mercantile honesty in small transactions, but in large dealings exhibiting that regard for character in the fulfilment of their obligations which extensive commercial engagements usually produce. The roguery and injustice which an officer of government may commit without disgrace would blast a merchant's reputation, and he undertakes the largest transactions with confidence, being guaranteed in his engagements by a combination of mercantile security and responsibility, which is more effectual than legal sanctions. These are like the rings and guilds, the corporations, patents, co-operative societies, etc., which are found in Europe and America, and enter into all branches of industry.

The coasting trade is disproportionately small compared with the inland commerce; large junks cross the seas, but smaller ones proceed cautiously along the coast from one headland to another, and sail chiefly by day. Their cargoes consist of rice,

Digitized by Google

stockfish, vegetables, timber, poles, coal, stones, and other bulky articles. Between the unopened ports the native trade still employs thousands of small craft, whose crews know no other homes; but the progress of steam and sailing ships has gradually turned the coasting trade into foreign bottoms.

The foreign ports now visited by Chinese junks are Singapore, Labuan, Borneo, Bangkok and elsewhere in Siam, Manila, Corea, and Japan. The cargoes carried to these places comprise coarse crockery, fruits, cottons, cheap silks, and metallic articles of great variety. European goods are not brought to any great amount by junks, but the variety of articles of food or domestic use and raw materials for manufactures, known under the general denomination of *Straits produce*, is large. Rice is the chief import from Bangkok and Manila; rattans, pepper, and betel-nut from Singapore and Borneo; biche-de-mer from the Sulu Sea. Of the amount of capital embarked in this commerce, the number of vessels, the mode in which it is carried on, and the degree of risk attending it, little is known. It is gradually decreasing, and all the valuable portions are already transferred to foreign bottoms.

The natural facilities for inland navigation in China are, as the first chapters of this work have pointed out, unusually great, and have been, moreover, improved by art for travel and transportation. It will be a hazardous experiment for the peace of the country to hastily supplant the swarms of boats on its rivers and canals by shallow-draught steamers and launches, and throw most of their poor and ignorant crews out of employment. The sugar, oil, and rice of the southern provinces, the tea, silk, cotton, and crockery of the eastern, the furs, grain, and medicines of the northern, and the metals and minerals of the western, are constantly going to and fro and demand myriads of boats; add thereto the immense number of governmental boats required for the transportation of salt and the taxes paid in kind, the passage-boats plying in great numbers between contiguous towns, the pleasure and official barges and revenue cutters, and lastly, the far greater number used for family residences, and the total of the inland shipping, it will be seen, must be enormous. It is, however, impossible to state the amount in any satisfactory

Digitized by Google

manner, or give an idea of the proportion between the different kinds of boats. The transit duties levied on the produce carried in these vessels partake of the nature of an excise duty, and afford a very considerable revenue to the government, the greatest so, probably, next to the land tax. It was estimated that the additional charges for transit duty and transportation on only those teas brought to Canton overland for exportation amounted to about a million of dollars. Whenever a boat loaded with produce passes the custom-house, the supercargo presents his manifest, stating his name and residence, the name of the boat and its crew, and the description of the cargo, and when the charges are paid proceeds on his voyage. The tariff on goods at these places is light, but their number in a journey of any length, and the liability to unforeseen detention and exaction by the tidewaiters, greatly increase the expense and delay.

Since the treaties of 1842 and 1858, the Chinese and British authorities have been in constant dispute about the right and mode of levying transit dues on foreign and native produce going through the country—a dispute which involves and disturbs the whole revenue system of the country.

The mode of conducting the foreign trade with China now presents few of those peculiarities which formerly distinguished it, for the monopoly of the hong merchants and of the East India Company both being abolished, native and foreign traders are free to choose with whom they will deal. The introduction of regular printed permits, clearances, and other customs blanks to facilitate trade, followed the treaty of 1842, and their acceptance has now extended to every port. The employment of foreigners to conduct the details of the trade in connection with native officers and clerks has worked easily, and its extension to all commerce is gradually perfecting.

The articles of trade are likely to increase in variety and amount, and a brief account of the principal ones, taken from the *Chinese Commercial Guide*, may be interesting to those unacquainted with the character of this commerce. The foreign export and import trade divides itself into two branches, that between India and the Archipelago and China, and that beyond the Isthmus of Suez; the former comprises the greatest variety,

Digitized by Google

but its total value is much less. *Alum* of an inferior quality is sent to India to use in dyeing, making glass, and purifying water. *Aniseed stars*, seeds of many sorts of *amomum*, *cubebs*, and *turmeric* are all sought after for their aromatic properties. The first is the small five-rayed pod of the *Illicium anisatum*; the pods and seeds are both prized for their aromatic qualities, and a volatile oil, used in perfumery and medicine in Europe, is obtained from them; the Asiatics employ them in cooking. *Cubebs*, the produce of a vine (*Cubeba officinalis*), are externally distinguished from black pepper chiefly by their lighter color, and a short process where the seed is attached to the stalk. The taste is warm or pungent and slightly bitter, with a pleasant aromatic smell; the Chinese article goes to India, the consumption of Europe being supplied from Java. Turmeric is the root of the *Curcuma longa*, and is used over the Archipelago and India for its coloring and aromatic properties, and for food. The roots are uneven and knotty, of a yellowish-saffron color; the smell resembles ginger, with a bitterish taste; and the two are usually combined in the composition of curry-powders. Its color is too fugacious for a dye, no mordant having yet been found to set it.

Cassia and *cassia oil* are sent abroad in amounts far exceeding the whole of the preceding; *cassia buds* also form an article of commerce. Cassia oil is used for confectionery and perfumery, and the demand is usually much greater than the supply. *Arsenic* is exported to India for medicinal purposes, and the native sulphuret or orpiment is sometimes shipped under the Hindustani name of *hartall*, as a yellow coloring drug. Wrist and ankle rings, known by the Hindu name of *bangles*, are exported largely, with false pearls, coral, and beads; the Chinese imitate jade and chalcedony in their manufacture, in which the Hindus do not succeed so well. The universal use and brittle nature of these ornaments render their consumption enormous in Eastern Asia. *Brass foil*, or *tinsel*, is made into the *kin hwa*, or 'golden flowers,' which are placed before shrines and adorn the rooms of houses, imitating bouquets and tableaux with cunning art; it is also used for coatings of toys. *Bones* and *horns* are manufactured into buttons, opium-boxes,

Digitized by Google

hair-pins, etc., some of which go abroad. Many kinds of useful and fancy articles are made from bamboo and rattan, and their export forms an item of some importance. Chairs, baskets, canes and umbrella handles, fishing-rods, furniture, and similar articles are still made in vast variety. The same may be said of the great assortment of articles comprised under the head of *curiosities*, as vases, pots, jars, cups, images, boxes, plates, screens, statuettes, etc., made of copper, iron, bronze, porcelain, stone, wood, clay, or lacquered-ware. During the last twenty years the native shops have been nearly cleared of the choicer specimens of Chinese art and skill in these various departments.

Capoor cutchery, corrupted from the Hindu name *kafúr-kuchri*, or camphor root, is the aromatic root of the *Hedychium*, and also of the *Kæmpferia;* it goes to Bombay for perfumery, plasters, and other medicinal ends, as well as preserving clothes from insects. It is about half an inch in diameter, and cut up when brought to market; it has a pungent, bitterish taste. *Galangal* is another aromatic root exported for perfumery and medicine. The name is probably a corruption of *Kao-liang*, or *Ko-long*, meaning 'mild ginger,' from Kauchau, in the south-west of Kwangtung, where the best is found. It is the dried root of the *Alpinia officinarum* (Hance) and other species, and thousands of peculs reach Europe and America, where it is used as a cordial and tonic. There are two or three sorts; the smaller is a reddish-colored root, light and firm in texture, with an acrid, peppery taste.

The larger is from a different plant (*Kæmpferia galanga*), and inferior in every respect. Both are used as spicery, and the powder is mixed in tea among the Tartars, and to flavor a liquor called *nastoika* drank in Russia. All the plants whose roots have the aromatic sharp taste of ginger are prized by the Chinese. *China-root* is a commercial name applied to two different products, for which the native name *fuh-ling* rather misleads. One is the root of *Smilax China*, a vine-like dodder in appearance; it is a knotty and jointed brown tuber, white and starchy when cut, and sweetish. The other is a curious fungus (*Pachyma*) produced by fir roots apparently as it is found under that tree. The article is whitish and reddish when cut, bitter-

Digitized by Google

ish and sharp to the taste, and eaten hot as a stomachic in rice-cakes where it is cheap. It is similar to the Indian bread, or *tuck-ahoo*, of the Carolinas.

The exportation of *porcelain* and *chinaware*, which was so great last century, diminished as European skill produced finer sorts at cheaper rates, and ceased altogether about twenty-five years ago, when the Tai-ping rebellion dispersed the workmen in Kingteh chin. Since the peace, those kilns have resumed work, and the demand for their finest pieces has arisen once more from western lands, so that China bids fair to regain her original reputation. She still supplies most parts of Asia with coarse stoneware and crockery for domestic use. *Glue* of a tolerably good quality, made from ox-hides, supplies the Chinese and furnishes an article for export to India. *Isinglass*, or fish-glue, is made from the sounds and noses of sturgeons and other sorts of fish, as the bynni carp, or *Polynemus;* it is used in sizing silk and in cookery, as well as in manufacturing of india-ink, water-colors, and false pearls.

A kind of parasol, made of oiled paper, or silk called *kittysol* (*i.e.*, *quitté sol*), is exported to India; the article is durable, considering its material, and its cheapness induces a large consumption. *Tobacco*, one of the most widely cultivated plants in China (for men, women, and children smoke), is also sent to the Indian Islands in considerable quantity, for use among the natives. Ware made from ivory, tortoise-shell, mother-o'-pearl, and gold and silver constitutes altogether a considerable item in the trade, for the beautiful carving of the Chinese always commands a market. The workmen easily imitate new patterns for boxes, combs, and buttons of mother-o'-pearl or tortoise-shell, while the cheapness and beauty with which silver table furniture is made cause a large demand. *Lacquered-ware* is not so much sent abroad now as formerly, the foreign imitations of the trays and tables having nearly superseded the demand for the Chinese ware. *Marble slabs* of a clouded blue limestone are wrought out in Kwangtung province for floors, and some go abroad; square tiles are used everywhere for pavements, roofing, brick stoves, and drains. In the southern provinces they are well burned and make serviceable floors.

Digitized by Google

Mats of rattan for table furniture, and of grass for floors, are all made by hand. The latter is manufactured of two or three sorts of grass in different widths and patterns, and though the amount annually sent to the United States and elsewhere exceeds five million yards, it forms a very small proportion to the home consumption. Floor matting is put up in rolls containing twenty mats, or forty yards. *Musk*, though still in demand, is often and much adulterated, or its quality impaired by disease. It comes in bags about as large as a walnut; when good, it is of a dark purplish color, dry and light, and generally in concrete, smooth, and unctuous grains; its taste is bitter and smell strong; when rubbed on paper the trace is of a bright yellow color, and the feel free from grittiness. A brown unctuous earth is sometimes mixed with it, and the bags are frequently artificial; the price is about forty-five dollars a pound for the best quality.

Nankeen is a foreign name given to a kind of reddish cotton cloth manufactured near Nanking and Tsungming Island; it was once largely exported, but the product has now nearly ceased. It is the most durable kind of cotton cloth known, and its excellence always repays the cultivator. The opening of the country to foreigners, and the disorders ensuent on the Tai-ping rebellion, altered the character of the *silk* trade. The loss of capital and dispersion of workmen in the vicinity of Canton nearly destroyed the export of raw silk and piece-goods formerly made at Fatshan, and the pongees once woven there are seldom seen. The elegant crape shawls and scarfs, gauzes and checked lustrings, satins and lining silks, which were sent abroad from Canton, have all dwindled away. Raw silk makes the bulk of the export, amounting to over a hundred thousand bales, of which nearly two-thirds goes to Great Britain. The annual average for the six years ending 1860 was seventy-eight thousand five hundred bales; in 1836 it was twenty-one thousand; the price of the best sorts was about five hundred and fifty dollars a pecul. Silk goods are exported to the annual value of about two million taels; they consist chiefly of gauzes, pongees, handkerchiefs, scarfs, sarsnet, senshaws, levantines, and satins; ribbons, sewing-thread, and organzine, or thrown silk, are not much shipped. The silk trade is more likely to increase than

Digitized by Google

any other branch of the commerce, after tea, and the Chinese can furnish almost any amount of raw and manufactured silks, according to the demand for them. *Soy* is a name derived from the Japanese *sho-ya;* it is made by boiling the beans of the *Dolichos soja*, adding an equal quantity of wheat or barley, and leaving the mass to ferment; a layer of salt and three times as much water as beans are afterward put in, and the whole compound stirred daily for two months, when the liquid is pressed and strained. Another method of making the condiment has already been mentioned in Volume I., p. 365.

Besides the articles above-mentioned, there are many others which singly form very trifling items in the trade, but their total exportation annually amounts to many lacs of dollars. Among them fire-crackers, and straw braid woven in Shantung from a variety of wheat, are both sent to the United States. Among other sundries, vermilion, gold leaf, amber, sea-shells, preserved insects, fans, ginger, sweetmeats and jellies, rhubarb, gamboge, camphor, grass-cloth, artificial flowers, insect wax, fishing-lines, joss-sticks, spangles, window-blinds, vegetable tallow, and pictures are the most deserving of mention. Some of them may perhaps become important articles of commerce, and all of them, except vermilion, gamboge, and rattans, are the produce of the country.

The imports make a much longer list than the exports, for almost everything that should or might sell there is from time to time offered in the market; and if the Chinese at Canton had had any inclination or curiosity to obtain the productions or manufactures of other lands, they have had no want of specimens. It will only be necessary to mention articles of import whose names are not of themselves a sufficient description. Opium, rice, raw cotton, longcloths, domestics and sheetings among manufactured cottons, ginseng, tin, lead, bar, rod, and hoop iron, and woollen goods, constitute the great bulk of the import trade. Rice is brought from southern islands, and a bounty used to be paid on its importation into Canton by taking off the tonnage dues on ships laden with this alone—a bonus of about three thousand dollars on a large vessel.

The importations from the Indian Archipelago comprise a

Digitized by Google

large variety of articles, though their total amount and value are not very great. *Agar-agar*, or *agal-agal*, is the Malay name for the *Plocaria tenax*, *Gracillaria*, and other sorts of seaweed; it is boiled and clarified to make a vegetable glue which is largely employed in lantern and silk manufacture instead of isinglass; it is also made into a jelly, but the *seaweed* (*Laiminaria*) from Japan has supplanted it. *Betel-nut* is the fruit of the areca palm, and is called *betel-nut* because it is chewed with the leaf of the betel pepper (*Chavica*) as a masticatory. The nut is the only part brought to China, the leaf being raised along the southern coast; it resembles a nutmeg in shape and color, is a little larger, and the whole of the nut is chewed. They are boiled or eaten raw, the former being cut into slices and boiled with a small quantity of cutch and then dried. Those brought to China are simply deprived of the husk and dried. When chewed, a slice of the nut is wrapped in the fresh leaf smeared with a mixture of gambier or shell-lime colored red, and the whole masticated to a pulp before spitting it out. The teeth become dark red from using it, but the Chinese are careful to remove this stain. The taste of the fresh pepper leaf is herbaceous and aromatic with a little pungency, and those who chew have it seldom out of their mouths; the habit is not general where the fresh leaf cannot be obtained.

Biche-de-mer, *i.e.*, slug of the sea, or tripang, is a marine gasteropod (*Holothuria*) resembling, when alive, a crawling sausage more than anything else; it is sometimes over a foot long and two or three inches through; it inhabits the shallow waters around the islands of the Pacific and Indian Archipelago, and is obtained by diving or spearing, and prepared by cleansing and smoking it. In the market it appears hard and rigid, of a dirty brown color; when soaked in water it resembles pork-rind, and when stewed is not unlike it in taste. The Chinese distinguish nearly thirty sorts of *hai sǎng*—'sea ginseng;' in commerce, however, all are known as white or black, the prices ranging from two dollars up to eighty dollars a pecul.

Birds' nests, *sharks' fins*, and *fish-maws* are three other articles of food prized by Chinese epicures for their supposed stimulating quality, and they readily fetch high prices. The

Digitized by Google

first is the nest of a species of swallow (*Collocalia*), which makes the gelatinous fibres from its own crop out of the seaweed (*Gelidium*) it feeds on. These nests resemble those of the chimney swallow in shape, and are collected in most dangerous places along the cliffs and caves in the Indian Islands. The article varies from thirty dollars to three dollars a pound, and its total import is hardly five hundred peculs a year. The taste of the Chinese for the gelatinous fins and stomachs of the shark aids in clearing the seas of that ferocious fish even as far as the Persian Gulf. The soup made from the fins resembles that from isinglass, and is worthy of acceptance on other tables.

Amber is found on various eastern shores, along the Mozambique coast, in the Indian Islands, and localities in Annam and Yunnan. The consumption for court beads and other ornaments is great, and shows that the supply is permanent, for none is brought from Prussia. The Chinese use the powder of amber in their high-priced medicines. Their artists have also learned to imitate it admirably in a variety of articles made of copal, shell-lac, and colophony.

The *bezoars*, or biliary calculi from ruminating and other animals, always find a ready market in China for drugs; that from the cow is most prized, and is often imitated with pipe-clay and ox-gall mixed with hair, or adulterated by the camel bezoar. The Mongols prize these substances very highly; the pure goat and cow bezoars are ground for paints by the Cantonese.

Cutch, or terra japonica, is a gummy resin, obtained from a species of areca palm and the *Acacia catechu*, and was for a long time supposed to be a sort of earth found in Japan; it is called *cutch* from the Runn of Cutch, near which the tree grows. The best is friable between the fingers, is of a reddish-brown color, and used in China as a dye. There are two kinds, *black* and *pale*; the former is made by boiling the heart-wood of the acacia and putting the resin into small cakes; it is now brought in small quantities, as gambier has supplanted it.

Rose-maloes, corrupted from *rasamala*, the Javanese name of the *Altingia excelsa*, is a liquid storax obtained from the *Styrax*; it is a scented gummous oil of the consistency of tar,

Digitized by Google

and is brought from Bombay to China for medicine. *Gum benzoin*, or *benjamin*, is one of the gum-resins brought from abroad, and highly prized by Chinese doctors; its Chinese name indicates that it came from Parthia; but it is collected from the *Styrax benzoin* in Sumatra and Borneo by making incisions in the bark in much the same manner as opium, until the plant withers and dies. It comes to market in cakes, which in some parts of those islands formerly served as standards of value. Good benzoin is full of clear light-colored spots, marbled on the broken surface, and giving off an agreeable odor when heated or rubbed; it is the frankincense of the far East, and has been employed by many nations in their religious ceremonies; for what was so acceptable to the worshippers was soon inferred to be equally grateful to the gods, and sought after by all devotees as a delightful perfume. The quantity of benzoin imported is, however, small, and the Arabian frankincense, or *olibanum*, is more commonly seen in the market, and is employed for the same purposes. This gum-resin exudes from the *Boswellia thurifera* cultivated in Coromandel; the drops have a pale reddish color, a strong and somewhat unpleasant smell, a pungent and bitterish taste, and when chewed give the saliva a milky color; it burns with a pleasant fragrance and slight residuum. *Dragon's blood* is probably an equivalent of the Chinese name *lung-yen hiang*, given to this resin from its coming to market in lumps formed from the agglutinated tears. It is the gummy covering of the seeds of a rattan palm (*Dæmonorops draco*) common in Sumatra, which is separated by shaking them in a basket or bag; an inferior sort is made by boiling the nuts. It is used in varnishing, painting, and medical preparations.

Cloves are consumed but little by the Chinese, and mostly in expressing an oil which forms an ingredient in condiments and medicines, like the oil of peppermint made by themselves. *Pepper* is much more used than cloves, the tea being considered beneficial in fevers; the good effects as a febrifuge seem to be doubted lately, for the importation is only twenty thousand peculs, not one-half what it was fifty years ago. *Baroos camphor* is still imported from Borneo, the people

Digitized by Google

supposing that the drops and lumps found in the fissures of the tree (*Dryobalanops*) in that island are more powerful than their own gum; the proportion between the two, both in price and quantity, is about eighteen to one.

Gambier is obtained from the gambier vine (*Uncaria*) by boiling the leaves and inspissating the decoction; a soapy substance of a brownish-yellow color remains, which is both chewed with betel-nut and forms a good and cheap material for tanning and dyeing. *Putchuck* is the root of a kind of thistle (*Auklandia*) cultivated in Cashmere; it comes in dry, brown, broken pieces, resembling rhubarb in color and smell, and affording an agreeable perfume when burned; the powder is employed in making incense-sticks and the thin shavings mixed in medicines.

Cornelians, agates, and other stones of greater or less value are purchased by the Chinese for manufacturing into official insignia, rings, beads, and other articles of ornament; they are brought chiefly from India or Central Asia. *Seed pearls*, to the amount of three hundred thousand dollars, are annually brought from Bombay to Canton, where they are run on strings to be worn in ladies' head-dresses; *coral* is also a part of cargoes from the Archipelago. *Mother-o'-pearl* shells and *tortoise-shell* are brought from the same region and the Pacific islands, Muscat, and Bombay, a large part of which is re-exported in the shape of buttons, combs, and other productions of Chinese skill.

Ivory still comes from Africa *via* Bombay, and Malaysia, mostly from Bangkok; the fossil ivory of Siberia has furnished the material for the inlaid tables of Ningpo; but the cost of fine ivory has prevented the manufacture of many articles once common at Canton. *Rhinoceros' horns* are all brought to China to be carved into ornaments, or served in remedies and tonics.[1] But the principal use of these horns is in medicine and for amulets, for only one good cup can be carved from the end of each horn; the parings and fragments are carefully preserved to serve for the other purposes. The teeth of the sperm whale, walrus, lamantine, and other phocine animals, form an article of import in limited quantities under the designation

[1] The elegant plumage of the turquois kingfisher and some other birds is also worked into ornaments and head-dresses.

Digitized by Google

of "sea-horse teeth;" these tusks weigh from sixteen to forty ounces, their ivory being nearly as compact though not so white as that of the elephant.

Several kinds of *wood* are brought for cabinet and inlaid work, medical preparations, and dyeing. Among these are *ebony* and *camagon* (*mao tsz'*), both obtained from species of *Diospyros* growing in India and Luzon; they are often very cleverly imitated by covering teak and other hard woods with a black stain. *Gahru wood*—also called eagle or agila wood (*Aquilaria*)—furnishes the calambak timber, highly prized for its perfume; the diseased heart-wood of this tree is the precious aloes wood, the lign aloes of the Bible.[1] Among dye-stuffs the *laka* wood (*Tanarius*) from Sumatra, mangrove bark, sapan wood (*Cæsalpinia*), and red wood are important articles; the imports of sandal wood for incense, rosewood, satin wood, amboyna or knot wood, camphor and *kranjee* are employed in various ways for junks, buildings, and furniture.

The greater facilities of trade with foreign countries since 1860 have vastly enlarged the list of imports and exports, and brought many new and useful articles within reach of the natives living far from the ports. In their fear and ignorance the Chinese associated everything dreadful with the name and coming of those whom they called devils and barbarians, and knew chiefly in connection with war and opium. By degrees, however, they are learning the benefits of a wider commercial as well as intellectual intercourse. One of the most notable among the imports, which carries with it something of this broadening influence, is kerosene; the traveller in China, as well as in Algeria, Greece, and Egypt, can hardly fail to note with interest the multitude of benefits arising from the introduction of a cheap and brilliant lamp into a house whose only light before has been a water-lamp or tallow candle. Electric lighting is now employed in certain of the foreign settlements, and will doubtless become as popular in the far East as among Western nations. It is needless, however, to enumerate the novelties in which the Chinese are constantly urged and tempted to invest.

The mode of conducting the trade is described in the author's

[1] *Chinese Commercial Guide*, Fifth Edition, p. 106.

Digitized by Google

Chinese Commercial Guide (fifth edition, Hongkong, 1863), which contains the treaties, tariffs, regulations, etc., of other nations as well as of China. A peculiar feature of this trade is the fact that the natives have always conducted it in English,—that is, they do business in the jargon called *pigeon-English*, whose curious formation has already received some attention in a previous chapter. The Chinaman using it deems no sentence complete until it contains the same number of words and in the same idiom as its equivalent phrase in his own language. A sample of this hybrid lingo, with its *mélange* of Chinese, Portuguese, and Malay words and grammatical constructions, may not be out of place here. We will suppose a shopkeeper is soliciting custom from a foreigner: "My chin-chin you," he says, "one good fleen [friend], take care for my [patronize me]; 'spose you wanchee any first chop ting, my can catchee for you [obtain]. I secure sell 'em plum cash [prime cost], alla same cumsha [present]; can do?" The foreigner, with great gravity, replies: "Just now my no wanchee anyting; any teem [time] 'spose you got vely number one good ting, p'rhaps I come you shop look see." After hearing for a few days such sentences, the foreigner begins to imitate them, soon learning to adapt his speech to his interlocutor's, and thus perpetuating the jargon. Other nationalities are also obliged to learn it, and the whole trade is conducted in this meagre gibberish, which the natives suppose, however, to be correct English, but which hardly enables the two parties to exchange ideas upon even household subjects. Much of the misunderstanding and trouble experienced in daily intercourse with the Chinese is doubtless owing to this imperfect medium.[1]

The trade at the five ports opened by the treaty of Nanking in 1842 was conducted by native custom-house officers, as it had been previously at Canton, but under regulations which insured more honesty and efficiency. In 1853, however, the capture of Shanghai by insurgents threw the whole trade into such confusion that the collector, who had been formerly

[1] Mr. Schuyler mentions hearing some Chinese residents at Vierny speaking a mongrel with the Russian officers of the post, which might be called "pigeon-Russian." *Turkistan*, Vol. II., p. 147.

Digitized by Google

a hong merchant at Canton, called in the aid of foreigners to carry on his duties. A trio of inspectors was nominated for this purpose by the British, American, and French ministers from their nationalities; and so well did it work in honestly collecting the revenue for the imperial coffers, that when the city was recaptured the system was made permanent for that port. In the negotiations growing out of the treaties of Tientsin in 1858, the Chinese government felt so much confidence in the feasibility of the plan, that it was extended to all the ports and placed under the entire control of an inspector-general. By thus utilizing the experience and integrity of foreign employés in carrying on this important branch of its administration, the rulers broke through their long seclusion and isolation, and opened the way for removing the impediments to their own progress in every branch of polity.

The following tables, compiled or abridged from the so-called "Yellow Books," or Trade Reports, issued by the Imperial Maritime Customs, will furnish a general idea of the foreign trade with China and some statistics concerning its domestic commerce. It is hardly necessary to add, however, that concerning the latter when unconnected with foreigners, there are almost no figures of value attainable. The *Haikwan tael*, it may be well to repeat, is valued at $1.36\frac{1}{2}$, or 5*s.* 6$\frac{1}{2}$*d.* The *pecul* weighs 133$\frac{1}{3}$ pounds.

ANNUAL VALUE OF THE FOREIGN TRADE OF CHINA, 1871 TO 1881.

Year.	Net Imports.[1]	Exports.	Total.
	Hk. Tls.	*Hk. Tls.*	*Hk. Tls.*
1871	70,103,077	66,853,161	136,956,238
1872	67,317,049	75,288,125	142,605,174
1873	66,637,209	69,451,277	136,088,486
1874	64,360,864	66,712,868	137,073,732
1875	67,803,247	68,912,929	136,716,176
1876	70,269,574	80,850,512	151,120,086
1877	73,233,896	67,445,022	140,678,918
1878	70,804,027	67,172,179	137,976,206
1879	82,227,424	72,281,262	154,508,686
1880	79,293,452	77,883,587	157,177,039
1881	91,910,877	71,452,974	163,363,851

[1] Meaning the value of foreign goods imported direct from foreign countries, less the value of the foreign goods re-exported to foreign countries during the year.

Digitized by Google

CUSTOMS REVENUE, 1871 TO 1881.

Year.	Duties on Native Produce Exported to—		Total Revenue from—		
	Foreign Countries.	Chinese Ports.	Foreign Trade.	Home Trade.	Total.
	Hk. Tls.	*Hk. Tls.*	*Hk. Tls.*	*Hk. Tls.*	*Hk. Tls.*
1871.....	5,246,467	1,138,116	9,508,972	1,707,174	11,216,146
1872.....	5,840,261	1,099,724	10,029,050	1,649,586	11,678,636
1873.....	4,978,179	1,158,938	9,238,675	1,738,407	10,977,082
1874.....	5,535,041	1,147,686	9,775,743	1,721,529	11,497,272
1875.....	5,640,062	1,291,923	10,080,226	1,937,883	11,968,109
1876.....	5,772,709	1,222,860	10,318,631	1,834,290	12,152,921
1877.....	5,703,321	1,140,442	10,356,415	1,710,663	12,067,078
1878.....	5,803,485	1,306,118	10,524,811	1,956,177	12,483,988
1879.....	5,958,176	1,426,894	11,391,329	2,140,341	13,531,670
1880.....	6,696,290	1,572,392	11,899,995	2,358,588	14,258,583
1881.....	6,869,486	1,460,182	12,494,889	2,190,273	14,685,162

EXPORT OF TEA FROM CHINA DURING TEN YEARS.

Year.	Black.	Green.	Leaf.	Dust.	Brick.	Total.
	Peculs.	*Peculs.*	*Peculs.*	*Peculs.*	*Peculs.*	*Peculs.*
1872.....	1,420,170	256,464	85	950	96,994	1,774,663
1873.....	1,274,232	235,413	372	416	107,330	1,617,763
1874.....	1,444,249	212,834	....	3,504	74,792	1,735,379
1875.....	1,438,611	210,282	....	2,594	166,900	1,818,387
1876.....	1,415,349	189,714	74	3,799	153,951	1,762,887
1877.....	1,552,174	197,522	36	12,158	147,810	1,909,700
1878.....	1,517,617	172,826	....	14,286	194,277	1,898,956
1879.....	1,523,419	183,234	....	5,270	275,540	1,987,463
1880.....	1,661,325	188,623	....	14,201	232,969	2,097,118
1881.....	1,636,724	238,064	....	15,186	247,498	2,137,472

Digitized by Google

EXPORT OF NATIVE CHINESE GOODS TO FOREIGN COUNTRIES, 1880 AND 1881.

Description of Goods.	Classifier of Quantity.	1880.		1881.	
		Quantity	Value.	Quantity.	Value.
			Hk. Tls.		*Hk. Tls.*
Silk, all kinds	Peculs.	114,821	29,831,444	106,632	26,868,200
Tea, all kinds	"	2,097,119	35,728,169	2,137,473	32,890,268
Bags, all kinds	Pieces.	749,383	20,555	860,558	31,002
Bamboo, all kinds	Value.	.....	74,597	.....	86,167
Beans and beancake	Peculs.	154,645	159,996	112,628	139,066
Cassia lignea	"	38,785	225,692	57,456	300,303
Camphor	"	12,327	100,679	9,317	79,625
Chinaware and pottery	"	75,142	379,574	78,503	387,006
Coal	"	161	34	1,478	308
Clothing, boots, and shoes	Value.	.....	327,548	.....	358,301
Cotton, raw and waste	Peculs.	20,315	182,918	23,189	228,391
Curios	Value.	.....	44,948	.....	43,364
Dyes, colors, and paints	Peculs.	676	3,196	20	183
Fans, all kinds	Pieces.	6,287,989	38,881	2,017,157	27,710
Fish, provisions, and vegetables	Peculs.	68,940	165,922	66,008	146,262
Fire-crackers	"	27,051	260,010	34,380	322,522
Flour, grain, and pulse	"	149,394	139,653	39,911	49,361
Fruits, all kinds	"	73,720	92,913	87,140	106,756
Grasscloth	"	1,185	104,719	1,589	148,985
Hemp	"	19,548	160,602	20,771	158,143
Hides and hoops	"	20,786	258,548	38,526	473,555
Indigo	"	2,847	13,768	1,764	7,168
Lung-ngans	"	8,080	34,669	7,592	30,758
Mats and matting	Pieces.	384,680	533,027	360,827	358,587
Medicines	Peculs.	28,676	194,451	31,916	194,090
Metals, manufactured	"	14,284	147,405	14,804	135,778
Metals, unmanufactured	"	217	875	2	4
Nankeens and wool	"	6,511	122,815	8,750	172,205
Nutgalls and preserves	"	47,690	432,774	44,260	402,017
Oil, all kinds	"	8,692	70,295	9,442	159,516
Paper, books, tin, and brass foil	"	43,581	512,720	53,438	597,496
Rattans and rattanware	"	2,085	8,975	2,757	11,901
Rhubarb	"	6,153	212,527	6,814	245,957
Skins, all kinds	Pieces.	244,193	152,486	330,922	262,780
Straw braid	Peculs.	48,970	1,227,670	50,502	1,363,984
Sugar, white, brown, candy	"	1,138,196	3,263,889	957,564	2,584,000
Tobacco	"	19,077	167,931	7,250	73,386
Vermicelli and macaroni	"	26,991	125,422	40,122	154,159
Sundries, unenumerated	Value.	.....	2,366,290	.....	1,853,865
Total value	.....	.....	77,883,587	.....	71,452,974

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXI.

FOREIGN INTERCOURSE WITH CHINA.

THE most important notices which the research of authors had collected respecting the intercourse between China and the West, and the principal facts of interest of a political and commercial nature down to the year 1834, are carefully arranged in the first three chapters of Sir John Davis' work.[1] In truth, the terms *intercourse* and *ambassies*, so often used with reference to the nations of Eastern Asia, indicate a peculiar state of relations with them; for while other courts send and receive resident ministers, those of China, Japan, Corea, and Cochinchina have until very recently kept themselves aloof from this national interchange of civilities, neither understanding its principles nor appreciating its advantages. Embassies have been sent by most European nations to the two first, which have tended rather to strengthen their assumptions of supremacy than to enlighten them as to the real objects and wishes of the courts proposing such courtesies. The commercial intercourse has, like the political, either been forced upon or begged of these governments, constantly subject to those vexatious restrictions and interruptions which might be expected from such ill-defined arrangements; and though mutually advantageous, has never been conducted on those principles of reciprocity and equality which characterize commerce at the West. As yet, the rulers and merchants of oriental nations are hardly well enough acquainted with their own and others' rights to be able or willing

[1] *The Chinese*, 2 Vols., Harper's Family Library, 1837. See also Murray's *China*, Vol. I., 1843. Montgomery Martin's *China*, passim, 1847. *Mémoires conc. les Chinois*, Tome V., pp. 1–23. T. W. Kingsmill in *N. C. Br. R. A. Soc. Journal*, N. S., No. XIV., 1879.

Digitized by Google

to enter into close relations with European powers. Both magistrates and people are ignorant and afraid of the resources, power, and designs of Christian nations, and consequently disinclined to admit them or their subjects to unrestrained intercourse. When western adventurers, as Pinto, Andrade, Weddell, and others came to the shores of China and Japan in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, they found the governments disposed to traffic, but the conquests subsequently made by Europeans in the neighboring regions of Luçonia, Java, and India, and their cruel treatment of the natives, led these two powers to apprehend like results for themselves if they did not soon take precautionary measures of exclusion and restriction. Nor can there be much doubt that this policy was the safest measure, in order to preserve their independence and maintain their authority over even their own subjects. Might made right more generally among nations then than it does now, and the belief entertained by most Europeans at that period, that all pagan lands belonged justly to the Pope, only wanted men and means to be everywhere carried into effect. Had the Chinese and Japanese governments allowed Portuguese, Spanish, French, and English colonists to settle and increase within their borders, they would, probably, long since have crumbled to pieces and their territories have been possessed by others.

The data brought together by Davis in 1838 on this subject has since been enlarged and illustrated by Col. Yule in his admirable "Preliminary Essay" of 1866, prefixed to *Cathay and the Way Thither*, and by Richthofen, the latter half of whose first volume on China is devoted to an exhaustive treatise upon the "Development of the Knowledge of China."[1] A digest of these elaborate works would be too long for our purpose here,

[1] *China, Ergebnisse eigener Reisen und darauf gegründeter Studien*, Berlin, 1877. This author's arrangement of the subject into "Periods" is as follows: I.—Legendary notices of intercourse before the year 1122 B.C. II.—From the accession of the Chaus to the building of the Great Wall (1122–212 B.C.). III.—From the building of the Great Wall to the accession of the Tangs (212 B.C.–619 A.D.). IV.—From the Tangs to the Mongols (619–1205). V.—From the rise of the Mongol power to the arrival of the Portuguese in China (1205–1517). VI.—From the arrival of the Portuguese to the present time.

Digitized by Google

where only the most interesting points can be noticed. The first recorded knowledge of China among the nations of the West does not date further back than the geographer Ptolemy, A.D. 150, who seems himself to have been indebted to the Tyrian author Marinus. The Periplus of the Erythræan Sea, however, refers to the same land under the name Θῖν, or *Thin*, at perhaps an earlier date. Previous to this time, moreover, accounts of the existence of the land of Confucius, and an appreciation and demand for the splendid silks made there, had reached Persia, judging from the legends found in its writers alluding to ancient wars and embassies with China, in which the country, the government, people, and fabrics are invested with a halo of power and wealth which has not yet entirely vanished. These legends strengthen the conclusion that the Prophet Isaiah has the first mention now extant of the Flowery Land under the name *Sinim*. The interchange of the initial in *China*, *Thina* or *Tina*, and *Sina* ought to give no trouble in identifying the land, for such changes in pronunciation are still common in it; *e.g.*, *Chau-chau fu* into *Tiè-chiu hu*.

The Periplus of Arrian places the city of Thina perhaps as far east as Sí-ngan, but too vaguely to be relied on; that great city must certainly have then been known, however, among the traders of Central Asia, who probably were better acquainted with its geography than the authors who have survived them. Under the term *Seres* the Chinese are more clearly referred to at even an earlier date than *Sina*, and among the Latin writers it was about the only term used, its association with the silks brought thence keeping it before them. The two names were used for different regions,[1] the Seres being understood as lying to the north. Mela places them between the Indians and Scythians; Ptolemy calls the country *Serice* and the capital *Sera*, but regarded them as distinct from the *Sinæ*, precisely as a Chinese geographer might confuse Britain and England. He says there

[1] The different appellations seem to have been employed according as it was regarded as the terminus of a southern sea route or a journey across the continent. In the former aspect the name has nearly always been some form of *Sin*, *Chin*, Sinæ, China; in the latter, to the ancients as the land of the *Seres*, to the middle ages as the Empire of *Cathay*.—Yule.

Digitized by Google

was a long and dangerous land route leading to Sera through Persia to Bactria, over mountain defiles and perilous paths, which occupied the largest part of a year. Besides Ptolemy, there are notices by Pliny of the Seres, and these two authors furnished their successors with most of their knowledge down to the reign of Justinian. Col. Yule concisely summarizes the knowledge of China down to that date among the Romans: "The region of the Seres is a vast and populous country, touching on the east the ocean and the limits of the habitable world; and extending west nearly to Imaus and the confines of Bactria. The people are civilized men, of mild, just, and frugal temper; eschewing collisions with their neighbors, and even shy of close intercourse, but not averse to dispose of their own products, of which raw silk is the staple, but which include also silk stuffs, furs, and iron of remarkable quality." He further explains how authors writing at Rome and Constantinople were quite unable to traverse and rectify what was said of the marts and nations spoken of in the farthest East, and place them with any precision. They were, in truth, in the same difficulty in coming to an accurate conclusion that the Chinese geographer Seu Kí-yu was when writing at Fuhchau in 1847; he could not explain the discrepancies he found between Rhodes and its colossus and Rhode Island in the United States.

Among the marts mentioned in the various authors, Greek, Roman, and Persian, only a few can be identified with even fair probability. The "Stone Tower" of Ptolemy seems to have denoted *Tashkend*, a name of the same meaning, and a town still resorted to for trade. His port of Cattigara may have been a mart at the mouth of the Meinam, the Meikon, the Chu Kiang, or some other large stream in that region, where seafaring people could exchange their wares with the natives, then quite independent of the Chinese in Shensí, who were known to him as Seres. Cattigara is more probably to be looked for near Canton, for its annals state that in the reign of Hwan tí (A.D. 147–168) "Tienchuh (India), Ta-tsin (Rome, Egypt or Arabia), and other nations came by the southern sea with tribute, and from this time trade was carried on at Canton with foreigners." During the same dynasty (the Eastern Han),

Digitized by Google

foreigners came from Cantoo, Lu-hwang-chí, and other nations in the south. The nearest was about ten days' journey, and the farthest about five months'.[1]

On the land frontier, the Chinese annals of the Han dynasty record the efforts of Wu tí (B.C. 140–86) to open a communication with the Yuehchí, or Getæ, who had driven out the Greek rulers in Bactria and settled themselves north of the River Oxus, in order to get their help against his enemies the Huns. He sent an envoy, Chang Kiang, in 135, who was captured by the Huns and kept prisoner for ten years, when he escaped with some of his attendants and got to *Ta-wan*, or Ferghana, and thence reached the Yuehchí further south. He was unsuccessful in his mission, and attempted to return home through Tibet, but was re-taken by the Huns, and did not succeed in reporting himself at Chang-an till thirteen years had elapsed. The introduction of the vine into China is rather doubtfully ascribed to this brave envoy.

De Guignes concludes that this notice about trade at Canton refers to the embassy sent in A.D. 166 by the Emperor Marcus Aurelius (whom the Chinese call *An-tun*), which entered China by the south at Tongking, or Canton. The Latin author Florus, who lived in Trajan's reign, about fifty years before, has a passage showing, as proof of the universal awe and veneration in which the power of Rome was held under Augustus, that ambassadors from the remotest nations, the Seres and the Indians, came with presents of elephants, gems, and pearls—a rhetorical exaggeration quite on a par with the Chinese account of the tribute sent from An-tun, and not so well authenticated. Whether, indeed, the *Ta-tsin kwoh* mentioned by Chinese writers meant Judea, Rome, or Persia, cannot now be exactly ascertained, though Yule concludes that this name almost certainly means the Roman Empire, otherwise called the Kingdom of the Western Sea. The title was given to these regions because of the analogy of its people to those of the Middle King-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, I., p. 365. Heeren, *Asiatic Researches*, II., pp. 285–295. Murray's *China*, I., p. 141. Yule's *Cathay*, Vol. I., pp. xli–xlv. Smith, *Classical Dictionary*, Art. SERES.

Digitized by Google

dom.[1] The envoys sent to that country reported that "beyond the territory of the Tau-shí (perhaps the Persians) there was a great sea, by which, sailing due west, one might arrive at the country where the sun sets." Like most attempts of the kind in subsequent days, the mission of Antoninus appears to have been a failure, and to have returned without accomplishing any practical benefit to intercourse or trade between the two greatest empires in the world. It was received, no doubt, at Lohyang, then the capital, with ostentatious show and patronizing kindness, and its occurrence inscribed in the national records as another evidence of the glory and fame of the Son of Heaven. That a direct trade between Rome and China did not result at this period may have been largely due to the jealousy of the Parthian merchants, who reaped great profits as middle-men in the traffic, and disposed of their own woven and colored stuffs to the Romans, all of which gain they knew would have passed over their heads had the extreme East and West come into more intimate relations.

It is worthy of observation how, even from the earliest times, the traffic in the rich natural and artificial productions of India and China has been the great stimulus to urge adventurers to come from Europe, who on their part offered little in exchange besides precious metals. The *Serica vestis*, whether it was a silken or cotton fabric, and other rarities found in those regions, bore such a high price at Rome as to tempt the merchants to undertake the longest journeys and undergo the greatest hardships to procure them; and such was the case likewise during the long period before the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope. The existence of this trade early enabled the Nestorian missionaries to penetrate into those remote regions, and keep up a communication with their patrons at home; the more extended

[1] *Cathay and the Way Thither*, p. lvi. Klaproth, *Tableaux Historiques de l'Asie* (Paris, 1826), p. 68. So Richthofen (*China*, Bd. I., p. 470), who adds: "It is accepted now, by almost all those who have written on the subject, that the Chinese by *Ta-tsin* meant to denote 'Great-China,' and through this, on the other hand, we have a proof that the Chinese called their own country *Tsin*. It will hardly do, however, to suppose that so prejudiced a people as they would recognize another folk as greater. The appellation *Ta* (great) is given to every nation whose power the Chinese feel to be considerable."

Digitized by Google

voyages of modern commerce likewise assist benevolent persons in reaching the remotest tribes and carrying on their labors, through their patrons on the other side of the world, probably with less danger and delay than a mission at Cadiz could have been directed from Jerusalem in the days of the apostles.

The notices in Cosmas (a Greek monk who had been a merchant, and wrote his "Universal Christian Topography" between 530 and 550 A.D.) of China and its products refer to the maritime trade under the Byzantine emperors. This country he locates very correctly as occupying the extreme east of Asia, and calls *Tzinista*, a name probably picked up from the Persians or old Hindus, and nearly similar to the *Tzinisthan* of the tablet at Sí-ngan. Another Greek, Theophylact, in the next century describes the internal intercourse in Central Asia, and a great Turkish people, the *Taugas*, whom he was unaware were the Chinese. It may be that he miswrote *Tang* in a grecized form for the dynasty just about that time settling its power. The indirect commerce between China and the Greek Empire increased by sea and land until the rise of the Moslem power. The same indifference on the part of the Chinese respecting the power, resources, and position of other lands is seen through all their notices of those western kingdoms. The products carried west were silk in various forms, but the demand for this article diminished after the worms had been successfully taken to Greece about A.D. 550. Cotton fabrics, medicines, and spices went westward as well as silk, but it is impossible to distinguish the trade with China from that with India. The leaf called *malabathrum* in the Periplus was not a Chinese plant, but the *tamalapatra*, a kind of cassia (*Cinnamomum nitidum*, whose leaves were purchased in Rome for three hundred denarii per pound), and now called Malabar leaf; it was probably mixed or confounded with the Indian *nard* and with camphor. The people called *Sesatæ* in the Periplus are probably to be looked for in Assam or Sikkim, where wild cassia grows, and where the real tea plant is native; but neither tea nor betel-leaf can be regarded as the ancient malabathrum.[1]

[1] Heeren's *Asiatic Researches*, II., p. 294; Yule's *Cathay*, pp. xlvi, cxliv.

Digitized by Google

Within the last few years the translations of the travels of Buddhist pilgrims between China and India have furnished more satisfactory details of the peoples inhabiting the central and western parts of Asia than all the Greek and Latin authors. Those of Fahian (399–414), of Hiuen-tsang (628–645), and of Hwui-sing (518), are the most extensive. Further researches into conventual libraries in China and Tibet are encouraged by what has been found on their shelves, and from them enough has already been gained to reward the labor. Of greater worth than these, perhaps, are the official histories of the Han, Tsin, and Tang dynasties, reaching from B.C. 200 to A.D. 900, only portions of which have yet been made accessible in full. Their trivialties are so numerous that their entire translation into English would hardly repay the printing, as the experiment by Mailla, in 1785, of the *Tang Kien Kang-muh*, in thirteen volumes quarto, shows. These histories, on the whole, supply more accurate information about Syria, Persia, Greece, and Parthia, than the writers of those countries give about China;—for example, the notices of *Fulin*, or Constantinople, are more minute than any account of Chang-an in western writers. But as Yule well remarks, there is much analogy between the fragmentary views each party had, the same uncertainty as to exact position, and the same application of facts belonging to the nearer skirts of a half-seen empire to the whole land. It can well be paralleled by reading some of our own travellers who applied all that they saw and heard at Canton to the Eighteen Provinces. Only a few embassies from *Ta-tsin* and *Fulin* are enumerated by Pauthier in his *Chine* as coming down to the year 1091; but the tractate by Dr. E. Bretschneider, of the Russian Legation at Peking,[1] shows how constant were the visits of the Arabs down to the Sung (A.D. 1086), and especially during the Tang dynasty. During the Tsin and Wei dynasties the visits of envoys from Ceylon were frequent, all of them an outgrowth of Buddhism, but repaid in more ways than one by the trade and its results—as shown by Sir E. Tennent in his *History of Ceylon*. In 1266 the King of Ceylon had Chinese soldiers in

[1] *On the Knowledge of the Arabs and Arabian Colonies possessed by the Ancient Chinese*, London, 1871.

Digitized by Google

his service, and envoys came to him to buy Buddha's sacred alms-dish. In 1405 the Emperor Yungloh of the Ming dynasty, taking umbrage at the indignities offered to his representative by Wijayabahu IV., despatched Ching Ho with a fleet of sixty-two ships and a land force to cruise along the coasts of Cambodia, Siam, and other places, demanding tribute and conferring gifts as the successor of the throne held by the great Kublai. Going again the next year as far as Ceylon, Ching Ho evaded a snare set by the king, and captured him and his whole family and officials, carrying them all to Peking. In 1411 the latter were set free, but a new king was appointed to the vacant throne, who reigned fifty years and sent tribute till 1459; this was only thirty-eight years before Gama arrived at Calicut. It was the last attempt of the Chinese to assert their sway beyond the limits of the Middle Kingdom seaward.[1]

One intimation of a continuance of the intercourse with China from the time of Justinian to that of the Arab travellers Wahab and Abu Zaid, is the Nestorian inscription (page 277). The narratives of the Arabs (A.D. 850 and 877) are trustworthy in their general statements as to the course pursued in the voyage, the port to which they sailed in China, the customs of the people there, and the nature and mode of conducting the trade; they form, in fact, the first authentic accounts we have of the Chinese from western writers, and make us doubt a little whether others like them have not been lost, rather than suppose that such were never written. These interesting relics were translated by Reinaud in 1845, with the text and notes.[2] The second traveller speaks of the sack of the city of Canfu, then the port of all the Arabian merchants, in which one hundred and twenty thousand Mohammedans, Jews, Christians, and Magians, or Parsees, engaged in traffic, were destroyed. This shows the extent and value of the trade. Canfu was Kanpu, a fine port near the modern town of the same name, twenty-five miles from Hangchau, and near Chapu on the Bay of Hangchau; the

[1] Tennent's *Ceylon*, I., pp. 607–626. Yule's *Cathay*, pp. lxvi–lxxvi.

[2] *Relation des Voyages faits par les Arabes et les Persans dans l'Inde et à la Chine dans le IX^me^ Siècle de l'ère Chrètienne*, 2 Vols., Paris, 1845.

Digitized by Google

Gates of China were probably in the Chusan Archipelago and its numerous channels. Much of the statement made by Abu Zaid respecting the wealth, extent, and splendor of Canfu really refers to the city of Hangchau. The bore in the Tsientang River makes it impossible for ships to lie off that place, and this had its effect in developing Kanpu. The destruction of the capital in 877 contributed to direct part of the trade to Canton, which even then and long after was comparatively a small place, and the people of that part of the country but little removed from gross barbarism. In Marco Polo's time Ganpu was frequented by all the ships that bring merchandise from India.[1]

Prior to the date when he reached the confines of the Pacific, the ravages of the Mongols, under Genghis and his successors, in the regions between the Mediterranean and Caspian, and their great victory near Lignitz, April 12, 1241, had aroused the fears of the Pope and other potentates for their own safety. After the sudden recall of the hosts of Okkodai, in the same year, at his death, and their retreat from Bohemia and Poland to the Dneiper, the Pope determined to send two missions to the Tartars to urge them to greater humanity. One was a Franciscan monk, John of Plano Carpini, who carried the following letter to Batu khan on the Wolga:

INNOCENT, BISHOP, SERVANT OF THE SERVANTS OF GOD, TO THE KING AND PEOPLE OF THE TARTARS.

Since not only men, but also irrational animals, and even the mechanical mundane elements, are united by some kind of alliance, after the example of superior spirits, whose hosts the Author of the universe has established in a perpetual and peaceful order, we are compelled to wonder, not without reason, how you, as we have heard, having entered many lands of Christians and others, have wasted them with horrible desolation, and still, with continued fury, not ceasing to extend further your destroying hands, dissolving every natural tie, neither sparing sex nor age, direct indifferently against all the fury of the sword. We therefore, after the example of the Prince of Peace, desiring to unite all mankind in unity and the fear of God, warn, beseech, and exhort you henceforth to desist wholly from such outrages, and especially from

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. I., pp. 6, 42, 252; Vol. III., p. 115. Yule's *Marco Polo*, Vol. II., pp. 149, 156. *Cathay*, p. cxciii.

Digitized by Google

the persecution of Christians; and since, by so many and so great offences, you have doubtless grievously provoked the wrath of the Divine majesty, that you make satisfaction to him by suitable penitence; and that you be not so daring as to carry your rage further, because the omnipotent God has hitherto permitted the nations to be laid prostrate before your face. He sometimes thus passes by the proud men of the age; but if they do not humble themselves, he will not fail to inflict the severest temporal punishment on their guilt. And now, behold, we send our beloved brother John, and his companions, bearers of these presents, men conspicuous for religion and honesty, and endued with a knowledge of sacred Scripture, whom we hope you will kindly receive and honorably treat as if they were ourselves, placing confidence in what they may say from us, and specially treat with them on what relates to peace, and fully intimate what has moved you to this extermination of other nations, and what you further intend, providing them in going and returning with a safe conductor, and other things needful for returning to our presence. We have chosen to send to you the said friars, on account of their exemplary conduct and knowledge of the sacred Scriptures, and because they would be more useful to you as imitating the humility of our Saviour, and if we had thought they would be more grateful and useful to you, we would have sent other prelates or powerful men.[1]

M. D'Avezac's essay contains a full account of the travels and proceedings of Carpini and his companion, Benedict, in their hazardous journey of a hundred days from Kiev, across the plains of Russia and Bokhara, to the court of Kuyuk, who had succeeded Okkodai. They were first sent forward by the commanding officers of the several posts to Bâtu's camp, where the Pope's letter was translated; from hence they were again despatched at the most rapid rate, on horseback, to Kara-korum, where they arrived July 22, 1246, almost exhausted. After they had been there a few days the election was decided, and all ambassadors were introduced to an audience to the khan, when the Pope's envoys alone were without a present. The letter was read, and an answer returned in a few weeks in the same style. These two potentates, so singularly introduced to each other in their mutual ignorance by the letters carried by John, had much more in common in their pretensions to universal dominion by the command of God than they suspected. The khan's letter was as follows:

[1] Murray's *Marco Polo*, p. 49. Yule's *Cathay*, p. cxxiii ff. D'Avezac's essay in the *Recueil de Voyages*, IV., p. 399.

Digitized by Google

LETTER OF THE KING OF THE TARTARS TO THE LORD POPE.

The strength of God, Kuyuk khan, the ruler of all men, to the great Pope. You and all the Christian people who dwell in the West have sent by your messengers sure and certain letters for the purpose of making peace with us. This we have heard from them, and it is contained in your letter. Therefore, if you desire to have peace with us, you Pope, emperors, all kings, all men powerful in cities, by no means delay to come to us for the purpose of concluding peace, and you will hear our answer and our will. The series of your letters contained that we ought to be baptized and to become Christians; we briefly reply, that we do not understand why we ought to do so. As to what is mentioned in your letters, that you wonder at the slaughter of men, and chiefly of Christians, especially Hungarians, Poles, and Moravians, we shortly answer, that this too we do not understand. Nevertheless, lest we should seem to pass it over in silence, we think proper to reply as follows: It is because they have not obeyed the precept of God and of Genghis khan, and, holding bad counsel, have slain our messengers;[1] wherefore God has ordered them to be destroyed, and delivered them into our hands. But if God had not done it, what could man have done to man? But you, inhabitants of the West, believe that you only are Christians, and despise others; but how do you know on whom he may choose to bestow his favor? We adore God, and, in his strength, will overwhelm the whole earth from the east to the west. But if we men were not strengthened by God, what could we do?[2]

The khan took the precaution, which the Pope did not, of putting his reply into an intelligible language, and when it was written in Tartar he had it carefully explained to the friars, who translated it into Latin, and were soon after dismissed. They left the court on November 13, 1246, and "travelled all winter through a wide open country, being commonly obliged to sleep on the ground after clearing away the snow, with which in the morning they often found themselves covered." They reached Kiev the next June, and Carpini was rewarded for his hardships by being appointed Archbishop of Antivari in Dalmatia. As Yule remarks, "they were the first to bring to western Europe the revived knowledge of a great and civilized nation lying in the extreme East upon the shores of the ocean."

Louis XI. of France having heard that Sartach, the son of Batu, then commanding on the western frontier, was a Chris-

[1] Allusion is here made to Tartar ambassadors, whom the Russians murdered before the battle of Kalka.

[2] Murray's *Marco Polo*, p. 59.

Digitized by Google

tian, sent a mission to him, consisting of the friar William Rubruquis[1] and three companions. They left Constantinople May 7, 1253, and proceeded to the Crimea, from whence they set out with a present of wines, fruits, and biscuits intended for the khan. In three days they met the Tartars, who conducted them first to Scacatai, a chieftain by whom, after considerable delay and vexation, they were furnished with everything necessary for a journey across the plains of southern Russia to the Wolga and the camp of Sartach. The monks attempted to convert the rude nomads, but ignorance of the language and suspicions of their intentions interposed great obstacles on both sides. On arriving at the end of their journey, they were disappointed at finding the ruler of these warriors a besotted infidel, who expected all persons admitted into his presence to bring him costly presents. A Nestorian named Cojat, whom Rubruquis regarded as no better than a heretic, was high in authority, and the only medium of communication with the khan. He told the friar to bring his books and vestments and make himself ready to appear before the khan on the morrow; their elegance was such that at the close of the audience Cojat seized most of them under an idle pretext that it was improper to appear in them a second time before Batu khan, to whom Rubruquis and his companions were to be sent.

Their journey was soon after prosecuted by following up the Wolga some distance, and when they arrived at the encampment of Batu khan, he made many inquiries about the resources and power of the French king and the war he was waging with the Saracens. On his introduction, "the friar bent one knee, but finding this unsatisfactory did not choose to contend, and dropped on both. Misled by his position, instead of answering questions he began a prayer for the conversion of the khan, with warning of the dreadful consequences of unbelief. The prince merely smiled; but the derision which was loudly expressed by the surrounding chiefs threw him into a good deal of confusion." The interview was followed by an order to proceed to the court

[1] Or, more correctly, Rubruk, as D'Avezac has pointed out (*Bull. de la Soc. de Géogr.*, 1868), and in whose conclusions Yule joins (*Marco Polo*, second edition, p. 536).

Digitized by Google

of Mangu, who had succeeded Kuyuk as Grand khan. This long journey occupied four months, through the high land of Central Asia (farther eastward than where Carpini found Kuyuk's court), and subjected them to severe hardships. Mangu received the mission hardly with civility, but having been examined by some Nestorian priests, they were admitted to an audience. The same ceremonies were required as at Batu's court, and inquiries made as to the possessions of the French king, especially the number of rams, horses, and oxen he owned, which, the friar was amazed to learn, were soon to be attacked by the Tartars. No permission to remain could be obtained, but he was furnished with a house and allowed to tarry till the cold mitigated. In this remote region he found a European architect, William Bourchier, and his wife, from Mentz, besides many Armenians, Saracens, and Nestorians, all of whom the khan received. He accompanied the court to Kara-korum, where he nearly became involved in dangerous religious disputes, and on the approach of milder weather was compelled to return to Batu khan, by whom he was sent on, in a south-westerly direction, until he entered Armenia, and thence found his way to Iconium, having been absent nearly two years.

These ambassadors had not the aid of printing to diffuse their narratives, and it was perhaps chiefly owing to the high standing of those who sent them that their relations have been preserved. In the case of many travellers of humbler origin or pretensions, there was no inducement to write what they had seen; these therefore only told their stories, which were lost with the narrators. Even the travels of Marco Polo would perhaps never have been given to the world if the leisure of captivity had not induced him to adopt this method of relieving its tedium. Every examination of his record has added to its reputation for accuracy, both in the position of the cities he mentions or visited and in the events he details; and when it is considered that he dictated it several years after his return to a fellow-prisoner, Rusticiano of Pisa, who wrote it in French, his accuracy is wonderful. The edition by Marsden in 1818 remained for fifty years the chief authority, but the recent editions by Pauthier and Yule, with their full notes, have made the traveller's record vastly

Digitized by Google

better understood, while adding much to our knowledge of mediæval Asia.

Ser Marco Polo, the Venetian, was the son of Nicolo Polo, who with his brother Matteo, nobles and merchants of Venice, first left that city about 1254, and Constantinople in 1260, on a mercantile voyage to the Crimea, from which point a series of events led them eastward as far as China, then lately conquered by Kublai, the Grand Khan and successor of Mangu khan, whom Rubruquis visited. They were favorably received, and when they left Kublai it was under a promise to return, which they did about December, 1274, bearing letters from Gregory X., and accompanied by young Marco, then about sixteen years old. He soon became a favorite with the Emperor, and was able to travel to many parts of the country, spending in all about twenty-one years in the East; the three Polos reached Venice again in 1295. Marco was prefect at Yangchau on the Grand Canal for three years, and this involves a knowledge of Mongolian and Chinese speech and writing, without which he could hardly have administered its official duties. His possession of these accomplishments was nearly indispensable to the post, though Col. Yule infers, from an easily explained mistake in Chapter LXXV., that he did not have them. On reaching Venice, by way of India and Persia, the long-lost travellers appeared so completely altered that their friends and countrymen did not recognize them. Their wealth and entertaining recitals, however, soon restored them to the highest ranks of society. The industry of recent editors has probably brought together all that can be learned of their subsequent history, which is now so well known as to require no further words here.

In the year 1254, Hethum, or Hayton, king of Little Armenia, undertook a journey to Mangu khan, to petition for an abatement of the tribute which he had been obliged to pay the Mongols. Having first sent forth his brother, Sempad, or Sinibald (in 1246), to Kuyuk khan, Hayton himself set out upon the accession to the throne of his successor. Passing through Kars and Armenia Proper to the Wolga, he was there received by Batu and forwarded by a route to the north of that traversed by Carpini to Kara-korum and the Grand khan. At the end

Digitized by Google

of a six weeks' sojourn with the court, during which time he appears to have been kindly received, Hayton commenced his homeward journey via Bishbalig and Songaria to Samarkand, Bokhara, Khorasan, and thence to Tabriz. The accounts of these two embassies, wherein are described many wonderful things concerning the heathens of the East and barbarians upon the route, made up, doubtless, a large part of the "History" (written in 1307) by the king's relative, Hayton of Gorigos.[1] The different positions held by these men and the Polos naturally led each of them to look upon the same people and events with vastly different feelings. The efforts of John of Montecorvino to propagate Christianity in China were undertaken just as the Polos returned, but no detailed accounts of his labors (beyond what Col. Yule has gathered in his *Cathay*) have been preserved.

Among the most important mediæval travellers in Asia was the Moor, Ibn Batuta, who at the age of twenty-one set out (in 1325) upon his journeys, from which he did not return until thirty years later.[2] Abu-Abdullah Mahomed (nicknamed Ibn Batuta, "The Traveller") commenced his wanderings, which were contemporaneous with those of the more doubtful Englishman, Sir John Mandeville, by a series of pilgrimages to the sacred places of his religion; among other excursions, he found time at one period to continue three years in Mecca. Going from one city to another, along the shores of the Mediterranean, and in the countries between it and the Caspian, he at length reached Delhi, where he resided eight years, enjoying—until the latter end of his stay—high favor from the Sultan Mahomed. The versatile Moor occupied the position of judge, though there is good reason to doubt his serious attention to any business while at this magnificent court, other than that of spending his master's money. In the spring of 1342, having recovered

[1] The chapter concerning Cathay appears in Yule's *Cathay*, p. cxcv. A translation of the elder Hayton's narrative is given by Klaproth in the *Journal Asiatique*, II^e^ Séries, Tome XII., pp. 278 ff.

[2] His work has been very ably edited and translated into French by M. Defrémery and Dr. Sanguinetti (four volumes, Paris, 1858–59), under the patronage of the Asiatic Society of Paris. Several partial translations of the journal have appeared from time to time within the present century.

Digitized by Google

from a temporary disgrace, he was despatched on an ambassy to China by the Sultan. It seems that a Chinese envoy had arrived at Delhi to request permission for the natives to rebuild a temple in Butan, as they were poor and dependent upon the inhabitants of the plain, and had besought the Chinese government to intercede for them. Ibn Batuta was sent with lavish presents to the Emperor, but a refusal to assist in the building project unless that sovereign would go through the form of paying a poll-tax to the Sultan. This embassy was attacked by a body of Hindus when scarcely out of Delhi, and obliged to return. Again it was sent out, going to Calicut on the Malabar coast, where were found fifteen Chinese vessels or galleys at anchor, whose crews and guard amounted to a thousand men each. The envoy embarked his attendants on one of these ships, but while he remained on shore to pray for a prosperous voyage, a storm sunk the vessel and all on board. After this second mishap the luckless Moor was afraid to return to his master, and went to Sumatra, from whence he found his way to China, landing at Zayton, the present Chinchew, in Fuhkien.

Though it is doubtful if Ibn Batuta, notwithstanding his description of the place, ever reached Peking, his spirited accounts of Zayton, Sinkalan (Canton), Khansa (Hangchau), Kanjanfu, and other centres of trade in the south, are both entertaining and important. Spite of exaggerations, confusion of names and dates, and certain cases of positive fiction, one can hardly fail to put faith in the generality of his statements and conclude in favor of his veracity and genuine character. He mentions that the circulation of paper money, which Marco Polo thought so excellent a device for a king to raise funds, had entirely driven out the use of metallic currency. In every large town he found Mohammedans, ruled by officers of their own persuasion.

The journal of Friar Odoric (1286–1331) contains much of interest in connection with China of the middle ages. This worthy priest landed at "Censcalan" (Canton), after a long and tedious trip from Bagdad round by Sumatra and thence northeast by land to Zayton. Here, says he, "we friars minor have two houses, and there I deposited the bones of our friars who

Digitized by Google

suffered martyrdom for the faith of Jesus Christ." He had brought these relics from Tana, near Bombay. Thence he journeyed to Fuhchau, Hangchau, and Nanking, going on northward to Peking, where the aged archbishop, Corvino, was still living, and remained there three years. His return journey as far as H'lassa was not very different from that of Huc and Gabet in 1843; from the Tibetan capital he probably continued on a westerly course to Cabul and Tabriz, reaching Venice in 1330, after an absence of thirteen years. His itinerary was taken down the following year by William of Solagna, a brother of the order, at Padua.

In this narrative there is mention of a number of characteristics of the Chinese, well known to all the world of to-day, but left wholly unnoticed by other travellers of his age. "His notices of the custom of fishing with cormorants, of the habits of letting the finger-nails grow long, and of compressing the women's feet, as well as of the divisions of the khan's Empire into twelve provinces, with four chief vizirs, are peculiar to him, I believe, among all the European travellers of the age. Polo mentions none of them. The names which he assigns to the Chinese post-stations, and to the provincial Boards of Administration, the technical Turki term which he uses for a sack of rice, etc., are all tokens of the reality of his experience."[1] On the other hand, the influence of superstition upon their own minds rendered most of the religious travellers into Central Asia—Odoric as well as the others—less trustworthy and observant than they would perhaps have been either centuries before or after that period. Everything of a religious sort they regarded as done under the direct agency of the powers of darkness, into whose dominions they were venturing. Too fearful, moreover, to examine candidly or record accurately what they beheld, these pious adventurers were constantly misled by endeavors to explain any uncommon experience by referring the same to their own imperfect or erroneous conceptions. This is true as well of the Romish priests connected with the Peking mission, a few of whose letters have been preserved and re-

[1] Yule, *Cathay and the Way Thither*, p. 21.

Digitized by Google

cently made known to the public by Col. Yule; among these are Friar Jordanus, Bishop Andrew of Zayton, Pascal of Vittoria, together with the Archbishop of Soltania, author of the "Book of the Estate and Governance of the Great Caan of Cathay."[1]

But much fairer than these missionaries, in his reputation for veracity, was the Jesuit Benedict Goës, who in the century preceding what may be termed the modern period of our knowledge of China, undertook a journey across the desert, to die on the threshold of the Empire. Born in one of the islands of the Azore group, Goës spent his youth in the profession of a soldier on board of the Portuguese fleet. Becoming suddenly converted, he entered the service of the Jesuits as a lay brother—which humble rank he resolutely held during the rest of his career—and was sent to the court of Akbar. His residence in India gained him a high reputation for courage, judgment, and skill in the Persian tongue, the *lingua franca* of Asia at that date. He was selected, therefore, to undertake a journey to the Cathay of Marco Polo, in the capital of which Jerome Xavier thought he had hopes of finding the Christian ruler and descendant of Prester John. Goës set out from Agra in 1602, joined a company of merchants, and with them took a route passing through Cabul, the Hindu kush, along the River Oxus to its head-waters on the Pamir table-land, and so to Yangi Hissar, Yarkand, Aksu, and Suh-chau, where he was detained seventeen months, and finally died, shortly after assistance had been sent him from the mission at Peking.

His journey was full of terrible hardships, and it was to these as well as to the careless treatment he suffered in Suh-chau that he owed his untimely end. Could we have Goës' own narrative of his experience, the information concerning the unknown regions of Central Asia over which he toiled would be of priceless worth. His journals, however, were either lost or destroyed during his miserable detention at the frontier town, and nothing remained save a few meagre notes

[1] About 1330. See ibid., pp. 238–250.

Digitized by Google

and his faithful Armenian servant Isaac, whose language no one at Peking could understand. Such as it was, an account was compiled from these sources by Ricci himself, and published soon after that missionary's death in the work of Trigautius, *De Christiana Expeditione apud Sinas.*[1] To Benedict Goës we may give the credit of the discovery that *Cathay* and *China* (*Sina*) were in reality one and the same land. It is a curious illustration of the condition of intercommunication between distant parts of the world in those days, that this fact must have been known to the earliest Jesuit missionaries in Peking, though the friars of the same order stationed in India held to a belief in Cambaluc and its Christian prince until far into the seventeenth century.

In many particulars the practical descriptions of Abu Zaid, Masudi,[2] Ibn Wahab, and Marco Polo stand in decided contrast to the details noted down by such as Rubruquis and Odoric. The accounts of all these writers convey the impression that China was in their time free to all travellers. Ibn Wahab, speaking of the regulations practised under the Tang dynasty, observes:

> If a man would travel from one province to another, he must take two passes with him, one from the governor, the other from the eunuch [or lieutenant]. The governor's pass permits him to set out on his journey and contains the names of the traveller and those also of his company, also the ages of the one and the other and the clan to which he belongs. For every traveller in China, whether a native or an Arab, or other foreigner, cannot avoid carrying a paper with him containing everything by which he can be verified. The eunuch's pass specifies the quantities of money or goods which the traveller and those with him take along; this is done for the information of officers at the frontier places where these two passes are examined. Whenever a traveller arrives at any of them, it is registered that "Such a one, son of such a one, of such a calling, passed here on such a day, month, and year, having

[1] A translation of this notice appears in Col. Yule's oft-quoted *Cathay and the Way Thither*, pp. 529–591. Trigautius' work appeared in 1615, and was subsequently translated into all the continental languages. Compare Purchas, *His Pilgrimes*, Vol. III., pp. 880, ff.—*A Discourse of the Kingdome of China, taken out of Riccius and Trigavtius, contayning the Countrey, People, Gouernment*, etc., etc.

[2] Reinaud, *Relation des Voyages*, etc. MM. Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de Courteille, *Les Prairies d'Or*, Paris, 1861–66.

Digitized by Google

such things with him." The government resorts to this means to prevent danger to travellers in their money or goods; for should one suffer loss or die, everything about him is immediately known and he himself or his heirs after his death receive whatever is his.[1]

The same writer speaks of the Mabed, a nation dwelling in Yunnan, on the south-west, who sent ambassadors every year with presents to the Emperor; and in return he sent presents annually to them. These embassies, indeed, were simply trading companies in disguise, who came from the Persians, Arabs, and other nations, with every protestation of respect and humility, bearing presents to the Son of Heaven. The dignity of the Emperor demanded that these should be returned with gifts three or four times the value of this "tribute," and that the ambassadors should be royally entertained during their sojourn at the capital. It is needless to add that such missions were repeated by the merchants as often as circumstances would permit. Entrance into the country overland otherwise than by some such ruse seems to have been withheld after the fall of the Mongol dynasty.

It was, however, not until the subjugation of the Empire by the Manchus that foreign trade was limited to Canton, the jealous conduct of the present rulers being to a certain extent actuated by a fear of similar reprisals from some quarter, which the Mongols experienced. The outrageous behavior of foreign traders themselves must, moreover, be regarded as a chief cause of the watchful seclusion with which they were treated. "Their early conduct," says Sir John Davis, referring to the Portuguese, "was not calculated to impress the Chinese with any favorable idea of Europeans; and when in course of time they came to be competitors with the Dutch and the English, the contests of mercantile avarice tended to place them all in a still worse point of view. To this day the character of the Europeans is represented as that of a race of men intent alone on the gains of commercial traffic, and regardless altogether of the means of attainment. Struck by the perpetual hostilities which existed among these foreign adventurers, as-

[1] Reinaud, *Relation*, Tome I., p. 41.

Digitized by Google

similated in other respects by a close resemblance in their costumes and manners, the government of the country became disposed to treat them with a degree of jealousy and exclusion which it had not deemed necessary to be exercised toward the more peaceable and well ordered Arabs, their predecessors."[1]

These characteristics of avarice, lawlessness, and power have been the leading traits in the Chinese estimate of foreigners from their first acquaintance with them, and the latter have done little to effectually disabuse orientals upon these points. The following record of their first arrival, taken from a Chinese work, is still good authority in the general opinion of the natives:

During the reign of Chingtih [1506], foreigners from the West, called Fah-lan-kí [Franks], who said that they had tribute, abruptly entered the Bogue, and by their tremendously loud guns, shook the place far and near. This was reported at court, and an order returned to drive them away immediately and stop their trade. At about this time also the Hollanders, who in ancient times inhabited a wild territory and had no intercourse with China, came to Macao in two or three large ships. Their clothes and their hair were red; their bodies tall; they had blue eyes, sunk deep in their heads. Their feet were one cubit and two-tenths long; and they frightened the people by their strange appearance.[2]

The Portuguese Rafael Perestrello sailed in a junk for China in 1516, five years after the conquest of Malacca, and was the first person who ever conducted a vessel to China under a European flag. Ferdinand Andrade came in the next year, in four Portuguese and four Malay ships, and gave great satisfaction to the authorities at Canton by his fair dealings; his galleons were allowed to anchor at Shangchuen, or St. John's Island. His brother Simon came the following year, and by his atrocious conduct entirely reversed the good opinion formed of his countrymen; the Chinese besieged him in port and drove him away in 1521. Others of his countrymen followed him, and one of the earliest ships accompanied some Chinese junks along the coast, and succeeded in establishing a factory

[1] *The Chinese*, Vol. I., p. 20.

[2] The term *Hung-mao*, or 'red-haired,' then applied to the Dutch, has since been transferred to the English.

Digitized by Google

at Ningpo; trade was also conducted at Amoy. In 1537 there were three Portuguese settlements near Canton, one at St. John's, one at a smaller island called Lampaçao (Lang-peh-kau), lying north-west of the Grand Ladrones, and the third just begun on Macao.[1] In 1542 traders had left St. John's for Lampaçao, and ten years afterward, at the time of Xavier's death, trade was concentrated at the latter, where five or six hundred Portuguese constantly resided in 1560. Macao was commenced under the pretext of erecting sheds for drying goods introduced under the appellation of tribute, and alleged to have been damaged in a storm. In 1573 the Chinese government erected a barrier wall across the isthmus joining Macao to the island of Hiangshan, and in 1587 established a civil magistracy to rule the Chinese. By their ill conduct at Ningpo the Portuguese drew upon them the vengeance of the people, who rose upon them and "destroyed twelve thousand Christians, including eight hundred Portuguese, and burned thirty-five ships and two junks." One of their provocative acts is stated to have been going out in large parties into the neighboring villages and seizing the women and virgins, by which they justly lost their privileges in one of the provinces and ports best adapted to European trade. Four years later, in 1549, they were also driven from their newly formed settlement at Chinchew.

The Portuguese have sent four embassies to the Emperor of China. The first envoy, Thomé Pires, was appointed by the Governor at Goa, and accompanied Ferdinand Andrade to Canton, in 1517, where he was received and treated in the usual style of foreign ambassadors. When his mission was reported at Peking the Emperor Chingtih was influenced against it by a subject of the Sultan of Malacca, and detained Pires at Canton three years; the flagitious conduct of Andrade's brother

[1] There stood originally on the site of this town an idol known as *Ama*. *Amau-gau*, or *Ama-kau*, then, meant the 'Harbor of Ama,' which in Portuguese was written *Amacao*, and afterward shortened to *Macao*. Comp. Trigautius, *De Christiana Expeditione apud Sinas*, 1615. Nieuwhof, *Nauwkeurige Beschryvinge van't Gesandschap*, etc., Amsterdam, 1664. Sir A. Ljungstedt, *Historical Sketch of the Portuguese Settlements in China*, Boston, 1836. *Chinese Commercial Guide*, fifth edition, p. 229.

Digitized by Google

and the character of the Portuguese induced the Emperor to appoint a court to examine whether the embassy was legitimate or spurious, and Pires and his companions were adjudged to be spies and sent back to Canton to be detained till Malacca was restored. This not being done, he and others suffered death in September, 1523; other accounts lead to the inference that he died in prison. Thus the innocent were made to suffer for the guilty. The next embassy was undertaken in 1552, at the suggestion of Xavier, by the Viceroy of Goa, but the mission proceeded no farther than Malacca, the governor of that town refusing to allow it to leave the place—a significant intimation of the degree of subordination and order maintained by the Portuguese in the administration of their new colonies. The third was also sent from Goa in 1667, in the name of Alfonso VI., on occasion of the suspension of the trade of Macao by Kanghí; the expense was defrayed by that colony (about forty thousand dollars), and "the result of it so little answered their expectations that the Senate solicited his Majesty not to intercede in behalf of his vassals at Macao with the government of China, were it not in an imperious and cogent case."

A good opportunity and necessity for this, it was thought, presented itself in 1723, when Magaillans returned to China carrying the answer of the Pope to Kanghí, to send an envoy, Alexander Metello, along with him to Peking. He arrived at court in May, 1727, and had his audience of leave in July, receiving in exchange for the thirty chests of presents which he offered, and which Yungching received with pleasure "as evidences of the affection of the King of Portugal," as many for his master, besides a cup of wine and some porcelain dishes, sent from the Emperor's table, and other presents for himself and his retinue, which were "valuable solely because they were the gifts of a monarch." No more advantage resulted from this than the embassy sent a century previous, though it cost the inhabitants of Macao a like heavy sum. Another and last Portuguese embassy reached Peking in 1753, conducted and ending in much the same manner as its predecessors; all of them exhibiting, in a greater or less degree, the spectacle of humiliating submission of independent nations through their envoys to a

Digitized by Google

court which took pleasure in arrogantly exalting itself on the homage it received, and studiously avoided all reference to the real business of the embassy, that it might neither give nor deny anything. But in estimating its conduct in these respects, it must not be overlooked that the imperial court never associated commercial equality and regulations with embassies and tribute.

The influence and wealth of the Portuguese in China for the last century and a half have gradual decreased. A Swedish knight, Sir Andrew Ljungstedt, published a historical sketch of their doings down to 1833, including an account of the colony, which is still the fullest book on the subject. In 1820 the opium trade was removed to Lintin, and that being the principal source of income, the commerce of the place for many years was at a low ebb. The imperial commissioner Kíying granted some additional privileges to the settlement in 1844, among others, permitting the inhabitants to build and repair new houses, churches, and ships without a license, and to trade at the five ports open to foreign commerce on the same terms as other nations; it was just three centuries before this that the Portuguese were driven away from Ningpo. The anchorage of the Typa was included in the jurisdiction of Macao, but the application of the Portuguese commissioner to surcease payment of the annual ground-rent of five hundred taels to the Chinese met with a decided refusal. Its advantages as a summer resort and its accessibility to a densely peopled region west invite visitors and traders to some extent, but the proximity and wealth of Hongkong make it secondary to that. Its short-lived prosperity in 1839–50, during the opium war and early days of Hongkong, was followed by the enlargement of the coolie trade, which for twenty-five years was the only real business. The Chinese have never ceded the peninsula to the Portuguese crown, although they were powerless to prevent the export of coolies; the relations now between the two countries are not distinctly defined. In 1862 a treaty was negotiated at Peking by Governor Guimaraēs, in which the supremacy of the Portuguese authority over the territory within the Barrier was implied rather than declared in Article IX., wherein the equal ap-

Digitized by Google

pointment of consular officers was mutually agreed to. The Chinese found out, however, that this virtually acknowledged the independence of the colony, and refused to ratify the treaty without an express stipulation asserting their right of domain to the peninsula. It has never been ratified, therefore, but trade is unfettered, and the Chinese inhabitants continue to increase; no rental has been paid for the ground-tax since 1849. The cessation of the coolie trade in 1873 has reduced Macao lower than ever, and it now hardly pays its own officials; all the thrifty or wealthy foreign citizens have removed elsewhere.

The trade between the Spaniards and Chinese has been smaller, and their relations less important than most other European nations. The Spanish admiral Legaspi conquered the Philippines in 1543, and Chinese merchants soon began to trade with Manila; but the first attempt of the Spaniards to enter China was not made until 1575, when two Augustine friars accompanied a Chinese naval officer on his return home from the pursuit of a famous pirate named Li-ma-hon, whom the Spaniards had driven away from their new colony. The missionaries landed at Tansuso, a place on the coast of Kwang-tung, and went up to Canton, where they were courteously received. The prefect sent them to the governor at Shauking, by whom they were examined; they stated that their chief object was to form a close alliance between the two nations for their mutual benefit, adding at the same time what their countrymen had done against Li-ma-hon; a second object was their wish to learn the language of China and teach its inhabitants their religion. The governor kept them in a sort of honorable bondage several weeks, and at last sent them back to Manila, doubtless by orders from court, though he alleged as a reason that the pirate Li-ma-hon was still at large. After the return of this mission the governor of the Philippines deemed it advisable to let the trade take its own course, and therefore refused the proposal of a body of Franciscans to enter the country. They, however, made the attempt in a small native vessel, and passed up the river to Tsiuenchau, where they were seized and examined as to their designs. Not being acquainted with the language, they were both themselves deluded and mis-

Digitized by Google

represented to the prefect by a professed native friend who understood Portuguese; after many months' delay they were mortified to learn that no permission to remain would be given, and in 1580 they returned to Manila, not at all disposed to renew the enterprise.

Philip II., however, having received the suggestion made by the Chinese admiral that he should send an embassy to Peking, had already ordered the governor to undertake such an enterprise. He fitted out a mission, therefore, in 1580, at the head of which was Martin Ignatius. It gives one a low idea of the skill of navigators at that day to learn that in this short trip, the vessel being carried up the coast northward of Canton, the party thought it better to land than to try to beat back to their destination. The envoy and all with him were brought before the Chinese officers, who, probably entirely misunderstanding their object, imprisoned them; after considerable delay they were brought before a higher officer and sent on to Canton, where they were again imprisoned; the Portuguese governor of Macao subsequently obtained their liberation. This unlucky attempt, if Mendoza is right in calling it an embassy, was the only one ever made by the Spanish government to communicate with the court of Peking until the mission of Don Sinibaldo de Mas in 1847 and his treaty of 1864. The pecular feature of that treaty was the privilege, first granted to Spanish merchants, of engaging coolies as contract laborers for Cuba. The harsh treatment they received there led the Chinese to send a commission of inquiry in 1873, and to suspend the validity of this article until the truth could be ascertained. This procedure has resulted in a cessation of imported Chinese laborers at Havana.

The Chinese have carried on a valuable trade at Manila, but the Spaniards have treated them with peculiar severity. They are burdened with special taxes, and their immigration is rather restrained than encouraged. The harsh treatment of Chinese settlers there excited the attention and indignation of one of their countrymen many years ago, and on his return to Canton he exercised all his influence with officers of his own government, making what he had seen the model and the mo-

Digitized by Google

tive to induce them to treat all foreigners at Canton in the same way. It ended in perfecting the principal features of the system of espionage and restriction of the co-hong which existed for nearly a century, until the treaty of 1842;—another instance of the treatment requited upon foreigners for their own acts.

The Dutch commerce with the East commenced after their successful struggle against the Spanish yoke, and soon after completing their independence they turned their arms against the oriental possessions of their enemies, capturing Malacca, the Spice Islands, and other places. They appeared before Macao in 1622 with a squadron of seventeen vessels, but being repulsed with the loss of their admiral and about three hundred men, they retired and established themselves on the Pescadores in 1624. Their occupation of this position was a source of great annoyance both to the Spaniards and to the Chinese authorities in Fuhkien. According to the custom of those days, they began to build a fort, and forced the native Chinese to do their work, treating them with great severity. Many of the laborers were prisoners, whom the Dutch had taken in their attacks. Alternate hostilities and parleys succeeded, the Chinese declaring that the Dutch must send an envoy to the authorities on the mainland; they accordingly despatched Von Mildert to Amoy, and the sub-prefect forwarded him to Fuhchau to the governor. He decided to send a messenger to the Dutch to state to them that trade would be allowed if they would remove to Formosa, but this proposition was refused. However, after a series of attacks and negotiations, the Chinese constantly increasing their forces and the Dutch diminishing in their supplies, the latter acceded to the proposition, and removed to Formosa, where they erected Fort Zealandia in 1624. It is recorded that the Chinese landed five thousand troops on one of the Pescadore Islands; and their determined efforts in repelling the aggressions or occupation of their soil by the Dutch probably raised their reputation for courage, and prevented the repetition of similar acts by others. It was doubtless a good stroke of policy on their part to propose the occupation of Formosa to the Dutch in exchange for the Pescadores, for they had not the

Digitized by Google

least title to it themselves, and hardly knew its exact size or the character of the inhabitants. The Dutch endeavored to extend their power over it, but with only partial success; in the villages around Fort Zealandia they introduced new laws among the inhabitants, and instead of their councils of elders, constituted one of their chief men supervisor in every village, to administer justice and report his acts to the governor of the island.

The moral interests of the natives were not neglected, and in 1626 George Candidius, a Protestant minister, was appointed to labor among them, and took great pains to introduce Christianity. The natives were ignorant of letters, their superstitions resting only on traditions or customs which were of recent origin; the prospects, therefore, of teaching them a better religion were favorable. In sixteen months he had instructed over a hundred in the leading truths of Christianity. The work was progressing favorably, churches and schools were multiplying, the intermarriages of the colonists and natives were bringing them into closer relationship with each other, and many thousands of the islanders had been baptized, when the Dutch governors in India, fearful of offending the Japanese, who were then persecuting the Christians in Japan—in which the Dutch helped them, to their lasting disgrace—restricted these benevolent labors, and discouraged the further conversion of the islanders. Thus, as often elsewhere in Asia, the interests of true religion were sacrificed upon the altar of mammon, and the trade thus bought died from inanition.

During the struggles ensuent upon the overthrow of the Ming dynasty, many thousands of families emigrated to Formosa, some of whom settled under the Dutch, while others planted separate colonies; their industry soon changed the desolate island into a cultivated country, and increased the produce of rice and sugar for exportation. The immigration went on so rapidly as to alarm the Dutch, who, instead of taking wise measures to conciliate and instruct the colonists, tried to prevent their landing, and thereby did much to irritate them and lead them to join in any likely attempt to expel the foreigners.

Digitized by Google

Meanwhile, their trade with China itself was trifling compared with that of their rivals, the Portuguese, and when the undoubted ascendancy of the Manchus was evident, the government of Batavia resolved to despatch a deputation to Canton to petition for trade. In January, 1653, Schedel was sent in a richly freighted ship, but the Portuguese succeeded in preventing any further traffic, even after the envoy had spent considerable sums in presents to the authorities, and obtained the governor's promise to allow his countrymen to build a factory. Schedel was informed, however, that his masters would do well to send an embassy to Peking, a suggestion favorably entertained by the Company, which, in 1655, appointed Goyer and Keyzer as its envoys. The narrative of this embassy by Nieuwhof, the steward of the mission, made Europeans better acquainted with the country than they had before been—almost the only practical benefit it produced, for as a mercantile speculation it proved nearly a total loss. Their presents were received and others given in return; they prostrated themselves not only before the Emperor in person, but made the *kotow* to his name, his letters, and his throne, doing everything in the way of humiliation and homage likely to please the new rulers. The only privilege their subserviency obtained was permission to send an embassy once in eight years, at which time they might come in four ships to trade.

This mission left China in 1657, and very soon after, the Chinese chieftain, Ching Ching-kung (Koshinga, or Koxinga as his name is written by the Portuguese), began to prepare an attack upon Formosa. The Dutch had foreseen the probability of this onset, and had been strengthening the garrison of Zealandia since 1650 while they were negotiating for trade; Koxinga, too, had confined himself to sending emissaries among his countrymen in Formosa, to inform them of his designs. He set about preparing an armament at Amoy, ostensibly to strengthen himself against the Manchus, meanwhile carrying on his ordinary traffic with the colony to lull all apprehensions until the council had sent away the admiral and force despatched from Java to protect them, when in June, 1661, he landed a force of twenty-five thousand troops, and took up a

Digitized by Google

strong position. The communication between the forts being cut off, the governor sent two hundred and forty men to dislodge the enemy, only half of whom returned alive; one of the four ships in the harbor was burned by the Chinese, and another hastened to Batavia for reinforcements. Koxinga followed up these successes by cutting off all communication between the garrison and the surrounding country, and compelling the surrender of the garrison and cannon in the small fort. Fort Zealandia was now closely invested, but finding himself severely galled, he turned the siege into a blockade, and vented his rage against the Dutch living in the surrounding country, and such Chinese as abetted them. Some of the ministers and schoolmasters were seized and crucified, under the pretext that they encouraged their parishioners to resist; others were used as agents to treat concerning the surrender of the fort. Valentyn has given a clear history of the occupation of Formosa by his countrymen in his great work, and especially of their defeat at Zealandia. He narrates an incident of Rev. A. Hambroek, as does also Nieuwhof, from whose travels it is quoted.

Among the Dutch prisoners taken in the country, was one Mr. Hambroek, a minister. This man was sent by Koxinga to the governor, to propose terms for surrendering the fort; and that in case of refusal, vengeance would be taken on the Dutch prisoners. Mr. Hambroek came into the castle, being forced to leave his wife and children behind him as hostages, which sufficiently proved that if he failed in his negotiation, they had nothing but death to expect from the chieftain. Yet was he so far from persuading the garrison to surrender, that he encouraged them to a brave defence by hopes of relief, assuring them that Koxinga had lost many of his best ships and soldiers, and began to be weary of the siege. When he had ended, the council of war left it to his choice to stay with them or return to the camp, where he could expect nothing but present death; every one entreated him to stay. He had two daughters within the castle, who hung upon his neck, overwhelmed with grief and tears to see their father ready to go where they knew he must be sacrificed by the merciless enemy. But he represented to them that having left his wife and two other children as hostages, nothing but death could attend them if he returned not: so unlocking himself from his daughters' arms, and exhorting everybody to a resolute defence, he returned to the camp, telling them at parting that he hoped he might prove serviceable to his poor fellow-prisoners. Koxinga received his answer sternly; then causing it to be rumored that the prisoners excited the Formosans to rebel, he ordered all the Dutch male prisoners to be slain; some being beheaded, others killed in a more barbarous manner, to the number of five hundred, their bodies stripped quite naked

Digitized by Google

and buried; nor were the women and children spared, many of them likewise being slain, though some of the best were preserved for the use of the commanders, and the rest sold to the common soldiers. Among the slain were Messrs. Hambroek, Mus, Winsam, Ampzingius, and Campius, clergymen, and many schoolmasters.

A force of ten ships and seven hundred men arriving from Batavia, the besieged began to act on the offensive, but were unable to drive Koxinga from the town, though they checked his operations and brought down the garrisons from Kilung and Tamsui to their aid. A letter from the governor of Fuhkien to Coyet, the Dutch governor, came soon after, suggesting a junction of their forces to drive Koxinga away from the coast, after which both could easily conquer him in Formosa. This proposal was followed, but no sooner had the five vessels gone than Koxinga made his advances so vigorously that the garrison was forced to surrender, after a siege of nine months and the loss of one thousand six hundred men. Thus ended the Dutch rule in Formosa, after twenty-eight years' duration.[1]

This loss induced the council at Batavia to prosecute their former enterprise against Amoy, where Koxinga still had a garrison. Twelve vessels were fitted out under Bort, who arrived, in 1662, at the mouth of the River Min, where he was visited by deputies from the governor, and induced to send two of his officers to arrange with him concerning operations. The governor was in the country, and the two officers, on reaching his camp, soon saw that there could be no cordiality between their leaders; this proposal of a foreign power to assist them against the Chinese was too much like that of Wu San-kwei to their chieftains in 1644 for the Manchus to entertain it. Bort, desirous of doing something, commenced a series of attacks on the fleet and garrisons of Koxinga, burning and destroying them

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vols. I., p. 414, and XX., p. 543. *Journal N. C. Br. R. As. Soc.*, Vol. XI. (1876), Art. I. Moreau de St.-Méry, *Voyage de l'Ambassade de la Compagnie des Indes orientales Hollandaises vers l'Empereur de la Chine, tiré du journal d'André Everard van Braam Houckgeest*, translated and published in London, 2 Vols., 1798. J. Nieuwhof, *Nauwkeurige Beschryvinge van't Gesandschap der Nederlandtsche Oost-Indische Compagnie van Batavia nar Peking in Sina, door de Heeren Pieter de Goyer en Jacob de Keyser*, Amsterdam, 1664.

Digitized by Google

in a piratical manner, that was not less ineffectual toward regaining Formosa and obtaining privilege of trade at Canton than harassing to the Chinese on the coast. He returned to Batavia in 1663, and was despatched to Fuhkien in a few months with a stronger force, and ordered to make reprisals on both Manchus and Chinese, if necessary, in order to get satisfaction for the loss of Formosa. The governor received him favorably, and after a number of skirmishes against the rebellious Chinese, Amoy was taken and its troops destroyed, which completed the subjugation of the province to the Manchus. As a reward for this assistance, the real value of which cannot, however, be easily ascertained, the governor lent *two junks* to the Dutch to retake Formosa, but Koxinga laughed at the pitiful force sent against him, and Bort sailed for Batavia.

These results so chagrined the council that they fitted out no more expeditions, preferring to despatch an embassy, under Van Hoorn, to Peking, to petition for trade and permission to erect factories. He landed at Fuhchau in 1664, where he was received in a polite manner. The imperial sanction had been already received, but he unwisely delayed his journey to the capital until his cargo was sold. While discussing this matter the Dutch seized a Chinese vessel bringing bullion from Java contrary to their colonial regulations, and the governor very properly intimated that until restitution was made no amicable arrangement could be completed; consequently Van Hoorn, in order to save his dignity and not contravene the orders of his own government, was obliged to allow the bullion to be carried off, as if by force, by a police officer.

These preliminary disputes were not settled till nearly a year had elapsed, when Van Hoorn and his suite left Fuhchau, and after a tedious journey up the River Min and across the mountains to Hangchau, they reached the canal and Peking, having been six months on the way, "during which they saw thirty-seven cities and three hundred and thirty-five villages." The same succession of prostrations before an empty throne, followed by state banquets, and accompanied by the presentation and conferring of presents, characterized the reception of this embassy as it had all its predecessors. It ended with a similar farce, alike

Digitized by Google

pleasing to the haughty court which received it, and unworthy the Christian nation which gave it; and the "only result of this grand expedition was a sealed letter, of the contents of which they were wholly ignorant, but which did not, in fact, grant any of the privileges they so anxiously solicited." They had, by their performance of the act of prostration, caused their nation to be enrolled among the tributaries of the Grand khan, and then were dismissed as loyal subjects should be, at the will of their liege lord, with what he chose to give them. It was a fitting end to a career begun in rapine and aggression toward the Chinese, who had never provoked them.

The Dutch sent no more embassies to Peking for one hundred and thirty years, but carried on trade at Canton on the same footing as other nations. The ill success of Macartney's embassy in 1793 induced Van Braam, the consular agent at Canton, to propose a mission of salutation and respect from the government of Batavia, on the occasion of Kienlung reaching the sixtieth year of his reign. He hoped, by conforming to Chinese ceremonies, to obtain some privileges which would place Dutch trade on a better footing, but one would have supposed that the miscarriage of former attempts might have convinced him that nothing was to be gained by new humiliations before a court which had just dismissed a well-appointed embassy. The Company appointed Isaac Titsingh, late from Japan, as chief commissioner, giving Van Braam the second place, and making up their cortege with a number of clerks and interpreters, one of whom, De Guignes, wrote the results of his researches during a long residence in Canton, and his travels with the embassy to Peking, under the title of *Voyages à Peking*. It is needless to detail the annoyances, humiliations, and contemptuous treatment experienced by the embassy on its overland journey in midwinter, and the degrading manner in which the Emperor received the envoys: his hauteur was a befitting foil to their servility, at once exhibiting both his pride and their ignorance of their true position and rights. They were brought to the capital like malefactors, treated when there like beggars, and then sent back to Canton like mountebanks to perform the three-times-three prostration at all times

Digitized by Google

and before everything their conductors saw fit; who on their part stood by and laughed at their embarrassment in making these evolutions in their tight clothes. They were not allowed a single opportunity to speak about business, which the Chinese never associate with an embassy, but were entertained with banquets and theatrical shows, and performed many skilful evolutions themselves upon their skates, greatly to the Emperor's gratification, and received, moreover, a present of broken victuals from him, which had not only been honored by coming from his Majesty's own table, but bore marks of his teeth and good appetite; "they were upon a dirty plate, and appeared rather destined to feed a dog than form the repast of a human creature." Van Braam's account of this embassy is one of the most humiliating records of ill-requited obsequiousness before insolent government lackeys which any European was ever called upon to pen. The mission returned to Canton in April, 1796, having attained no more noble end than that of saluting the Emperor, and this, indeed, was all the Chinese meant should be done when themselves suggesting the entire performance; for in order to understand much of their conduct toward their guests, the feelings they entertained toward them must not be lost sight of.

In 1843 the governor-general at Batavia sent T. Modderman to Canton to make inquiries respecting trade at the newly opened ports and establish consulates. The council there had, in 1839, forbidden Chinese to settle in any of their Indian colonies, owing to their skill in engrossing the native trade; but when this prohibition was removed about 1875, the Chinese showed no disposition to emigrate to Java. In 1863 a treaty was negotiated by M. Van der Hoeven at Tientsin, which placed the trade on the same footing as other nations.

The French Government has never sent a formal mission to the capital to petition for trade and make obeisance, though through their missionaries that nation has made Europeans better acquainted with China and given the Chinese more knowledge of western countries than all other Christian nations together. In the year 1289 Philip the Fair received a letter from Argun khan in Persia, and in 1305 another from Oljaitu,

Digitized by Google

both of them proposing joint action against their enemies the Saracens. The originals are still to be seen in Paris. In 1688 Louis XIV. addressed a letter to Kanghí, whom he called "Most high, most excellent, most puissant, and most magnanimous prince, dearly beloved good friend;" and signed himself "Your most dear and good friend, Louis." In 1844 diplomatic relations were resumed by the appointment of a large mission, at the head of which was M. Lagrené, by whom a treaty was formed between France and China.[1]

The Russians have sent several embassies to Peking, and compelled the Chinese to treat them as equals. The first recorded visit of Russian agents at Peking is that of two Cossacks, Petroff and Yallysheff, in 1567, who, however, did not see the Emperor Lungking, who succeeded to the throne that year, because they had brought no presents. In 1619 Evashko Pettlin reached that city, having come across the desert from Tomsk; but he and his companion, having no presents, could not see the "dragon's face," and were dismissed with a letter, which all the learning at Tobolsk and Moscow could not decipher. Thirty-four years after, the Czar Alexis (1653) sent his envoy Baikoff, who refused to prostrate himself before the Emperor Shunchí, and was promptly dismissed. This repulse did not interfere with trade, for in the years 1658, 1672, and 1677 three several trading embassies reached Peking. During all this time Russian and Chinese subjects and soldiers frequently quarrelled, especially along the banks of the Amur, and the necessity of settling these disturbances and pretexts for trouble by fixing the boundary line being evident to both nations, commissioners were appointed and met at Nipchu, where, on August 27, 1689, they signed the first treaty ever agreed upon by the court of Peking. The principal points in it were the retirement of the Russians from Albazin and Manchuria, where they had held their own for thirty-eight years, the freedom of trade, and defining the frontier along the Daourian Mountains. The missionary Gerbillon was mainly instrumental

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIX., pp. 526–585. Yule's *Cathay*, p. cxxx. Rémusat in *Mém. de l'Acad. Ins.*, Vol. VII., pp. 367, 391 ff.

Digitized by Google

in settling these disputes, and neither party would probably have lowered its arrogant claims if it had not been through his influence; the Chinese were far the most difficult to please.[1]

Peter sent Ysbrandt Ides in 1692 as his envoy to Peking to exchange the ratifications. His journey across the wilds and wastes of Central Asia took up more time than a voyage by sea, for it was not till a year and eight months that "he could return thanks to the great God, who had conducted them all safe and well to their desired place." Ides' own account of his mission contains very slight notices regarding its object or how he was received; but it is now credibly believed that he performed the *kotow* before the Emperor. About twenty years after his departure, Kanghí sent a Manchu envoy, Tulishen, through Russia to confer with the khan of the Tourgouth Tartars about their return to China, which a portion of them accomplished some years after. Tulishen executed his mission so well that he was sent again as envoy to the Czar about 1730, and reached Petersburg in the reign of Peter II. In 1719 Peter the Great despatched another embassy, under Ismailoff, to arrange the trade then conducted on a precarious footing—an account of which was drawn up by John Bell in 1763. Ismailoff refused to prostrate himself until it was agreed that a Chinese minister, whenever sent to Petersburg, should conform to the usages of the Russians; a safe stipulation, certainly, to a court which never demeans itself to send missions. The evident desirableness of keeping on good terms with the Russians led the Chinese to treat their envoys with unusual respect and attend to the business they came to settle. One of the most instructive books on the kind of intercourse carried on during this period is the *Journal* of Lange, who went first in 1716, and thrice afterward, and has left an account of his residence at Kanghí's capital.[2]

---

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VIII., pp. 417, 506. Du Halde, *Description géographique, historique, chronologique, politique et physique de l'Empire de la Chine et de la Tartarie chinoise*, 4 vols., Paris, 1735. G. Timkowski, *Travels of the Russian Mission through Mongolia to China*, etc., 2 vols., London, 1827. Klaproth, *Mémoires sur l'Asie*, Tome I., pp. 1–81.

[2] Published in one volume with Bell: *Journey from St. Petersburgh in Russia to Ispahan in Persia*, etc., London, 1715.

Digitized by Google

In 1727 a fifth mission was sent by the Empress Catherine under Count Vladislavitch, which succeeded in establishing the intercourse on a still better basis, viz., that a mission, consisting of six ecclesiastical and four lay members, should remain at Peking to study the Chinese and Manchu languages, so that interpreters could be prepared and communications carried on satisfactorily; the members were to be changed decennially. The caravans, which had been the vehicles of trade, were regulated about 1730 by the establishment, at Kiakhta and Maimaichin, of two marts on the frontier, where it could be brought under regulations; the last reached Peking in 1755. This embassy was the most successful of all, and partly owing to the Emperor Yungching's desire to counterbalance Jesuit intrigues by raising up other interpreters. This treaty, signed August 27, 1727, remained in force till June, 1858—the longest lived treaty on record. The narrative of George Timkowski, who conducted the relief sent in 1821, gives an account of his trip from Kiakhta across the desert, together with considerable information relating to the Kalkas and other Mongol tribes subject to China. The archimandrite, Hyacinth Batchourin, has given a description of Peking, but such works as the members of the Russian college have written are for the most part still in that language. Up to the present date there have been sixteen archimandrites (1736 to 1880) and many monks attached to the ecclesiastical mission in Peking.[1]

The intercourse of the English with China, though it commenced later than other maritime nations of Europe, has been far more important in its consequences, and their trade greater in amount than all other foreign nations combined. This intercourse has not been such as was calculated to impress the Chinese with a just idea of the character of the British nation as a leading Christian people; for the East India Company, which had the monopoly of the trade between the two countries for nearly two centuries, systematically opposed every effort to diffuse Christian doctrine and general knowledge among them down to the end of their control in 1834.

[1] Dudgeon's monograph on *Russian Intercourse with China* contains notices of all events of any importance between the two nations, digested with great care, pp. 80, Peking, 1872. Also, Martin's *China*, Vol. I., p. 386.

Digitized by Google

The first English vessels anchored off Macao in July, 1635, under the command of Weddell, who was sent to China in accordance with a "truce and free trade" which had been entered into between the English merchants and the viceroy of Goa, who gave letters to the governor of Macao. The fleet was coldly received and Weddell deluded with vain promises until the Portuguese fleet had sailed for Japan, when he was denied permission to trade. Two or three of his officers having visited Canton, he was very desirous to participate in the traffic, and proceeded with his whole fleet up to the Bogue forts, where this desire was made known to the commanders of the forts, who promised to return an answer in a week. Meanwhile the Portuguese so misrepresented them to the Chinese that the commander of the forts concluded to end the matter by driving them away. Having made every preparation during the period the fleet was waiting, an attack was first made upon a watering-boat by firing shot at it when passing near the forts.

"Herewith the whole fleet, being instantly incensed, did, on the sudden, display their bloody ensigns; and, weighing their anchors, fell up with the flood, and berthed themselves before the castle, from whence came many shot, yet not any that touched so much as hull or rope; whereupon, not being able to endure their bravadoes any longer, each ship began to play furiously upon them with their broadsides; and after two or three hours, perceiving their cowardly fainting, the boats were landed with about one hundred men: which sight occasioned them, with great distractions, instantly to abandon the castle and fly; the boats' crews, in the meantime, without let, entering the same and displaying his Majesty's colors of Great Britain upon the walls, having the same night put aboard all their ordnance, fired the council-house and demolished what they could. The boats of the fleet also seized a junk laden with boards and timber, and another with salt. Another vessel of small moment was surprised, by whose boat a letter was sent to the chief mandarins at Canton, expostulating their breach of truce, excusing the assailing of the castle, and withal in fair terms requiring the liberty of trade."[1] This letter was shortly answered,

[1] Staunton's *Embassy*, Vol. I., pp. 5–12.

Digitized by Google

and after a little explanatory negotiation, hastened to a favorable conclusion on the part of the Chinese by what they had seen, trade was allowed after the captured guns and vessels were restored and the ships supplied with cargoes.

No other attempt to open a trade was made till 1664, and during the change of dynasty which took place in the interim, the trade of all nations with China suffered. The East India Company had a factory at Bantam in Java, and one at Madras, but their trade with the East was seriously incommoded by the war with the Dutch; when it was renewed in 1664, only one ship was sent to Macao, but such were the exactions imposed upon the trade by the Chinese, and the effect of the misrepresentations of the Portuguese, that the ship returned without effecting sale. This did not discourage the Company, however, who ordered their agents at Bantam to make inquiries respecting the most favorable port and what commodities were most in demand. They mentioned "Fuhchau as a place of great resort, affording all China commodities, as raw and wrought silk, tutenague, gold, china-root, tea, etc." A trade had been opened with Koxinga's son in Formosa and at Amoy, but this rude chieftain had little other idea of traffic than a means of helping himself to every curious commodity the ships brought, and levying heavy imposts upon their cargoes. A treaty was indeed entered into with him, in which the supercargoes, as was the case subsequently in 1842, stipulated for far greater privileges and lighter duties than Chinese goods and vessels would have had in English ports. Besides freedom to go where they pleased without any one attending them, access at all times to the king, liberty to choose their own clerks and trade with whom they pleased, it was also agreed "that what goods the king buys shall pay no custom; that rice imported pay no custom; that all goods imported pay three per cent. *after sale*, and all goods exported be custom free." The trade at Amoy was more successful than at Zealandia, and a small vessel was sent there in 1677, which brought back a favorable report. In 1678 the investments for these two places were $30,000 in bullion and $20,000 in goods; the returns were chiefly in silk goods, tutenague, rhubarb, etc.;

Digitized by Google

the trade was continued for several years, apparently with considerable profit, though the Manchus continually increased the restrictions under which it labored. In 1681 the Company ordered their factories at Amoy and Formosa to be withdrawn, and one established at Canton or Fuhchau, but in 1685 the trade was renewed at Amoy.

The Portuguese managed to prevent the English obtaining a footing at Canton until about 1684; and, as Davis remarks, the stupid pertinacity with which they endeavored to exclude them from this port and trade is one of the most striking circumstances connected with these trials and rivalries. It is the more inexplicable in the case of the Portuguese, for they could carry nothing to England, nor could they force the English to trade with them at second hand; theirs was truly the "dog in the manger" policy, and they have subsequently starved upon it. In 1689 a duty of five shillings per pound was laid upon tea imported into England; and the principal articles of export are stated to have been wrought silks of every kind, porcelain, lacquered-ware, a good quantity of fine tea, some fans and screens. Ten years after, the court of directors sent out a consul's commission to the chief supercargo, Mr. Catchpoole, which constituted him king's minister or consul for the whole Empire of China and the adjacent islands. In 1701 an attempt was made by him to open a trade, and he obtained permission to send ships to Chusan or Ningpo; an investment in three vessels, worth £101,300, was accordingly made, but he found the exactions of the government so grievous, and the monopoly of the merchants so oppressive, that the adventure proved a great loss, and the traders were compelled to withdraw. The Company's hopes of trade at that port must, however, have been great, for their investment to Amoy that year was only £34,400, and to Canton £40,800. In 1702 Catchpoole also established a factory at Pulo Condore, an island near the coast of Cochinchina which had been taken by the English. The whole concern, however, experienced a tragical end in 1705, when the Malays rose upon the English, murdered them all, and burned the factory. The Cochinchinese are said to have instigated this treacherous attack to regain the island, which was claimed by them.

Digitized by Google

The extortions and grievances suffered by the traders at Canton were increased in 1702 by the appointment of an individual who alone had the right of trading with them and of farming it out to those who had the means of doing so. The trade seems hardly, even at this time, to have taken a regular form, but by 1720 the number and value of the annual commodities had so much increased that the Chinese established a uniform duty of four per cent. on all goods, and appointed a body of native merchants, who, for the privilege of trading with foreigners, became security for their payment of duties and good behavior. The duty on imports was also increased to about sixteen per cent. and an enormous fee demanded of purveyors before they could supply ships with provisions, besides a heavy measurement duty and cumshaw to the collector of customs. These exactions seemed likely to increase unless a stand was taken against them. This was done by a united appeal to the governor in person in 1728; yet the relief was only temporary, for the plan was so effectual and convenient for the government that the co-hong was ere long re-established as the only medium through which the foreign trade could be conducted. An additional duty of ten per cent. was laid upon all exports, which no efforts were effectual in removing until the accession of Kienlung in 1736. This apparently suicidal practice of levying export duties is, in China, really a continuation of the internal excise or transit duties paid upon goods exported in native vessels as well as foreign.

The Emperor, in taking off the newly imposed duty of ten per cent., required that the merchants should hear the act of grace read upon their knees; but the foreigners all met in a body, and each one agreed on his honor not to submit to this slavish posture, nor make any concession or proposal of accommodation without acquainting the rest. The Emperor also required the delivery of all the arms on board ship, a demand afterward waived on the payment of about ten thousand dollars. The hong merchants shortly became the only medium of communication with the government, themselves being the exactors of the duties and contrivers of the grievances, and when complaints were made, the judges of the equity of their own acts.

Digitized by Google

In 1734 only one English ship came to Canton, and one was sent to Amoy, but the extortions there were greater than at the other port, whereupon the latter vessel withdrew. In 1736 the number of ships at Canton was four English, two French, two Dutch, one Danish, and one Swedish vessel; the Portuguese ships had been restricted to Macao before this date.

Commodore Anson arrived at Macao in 1742, and as the Centurion was the first British man-of-war which had visited China, his decided conduct in refusing to leave the river until provisions were furnished, and his determination in seeking an interview with the governor, no doubt had a good effect. A mixture of decision and kindness, such as that exhibited by Anson when demanding only what was in itself right, and backed by an array of force not lightly to be trifled with or incensed, has always proved the most successful way of dealing with the Chinese, who on their part need instruction as well as intimidation. The constant presence of a ship of war on the coast of China would perhaps have saved foreigners much of the personal vexations, and prevented many of the imposts upon trade which the history of foreign intercourse exhibits, making it in fact little better than a recital of annoyances on the part of a government too ignorant and proud to understand its own true interests, and recriminations on the part of traders unable to do more than protest against them.

In consequence of the exactions of the government and the success of the co-hong in preventing all direct intercourse with the local authorities, the attempt was again made to trade at Amoy and Ningpo. The Hardwicke was sent to Amoy in 1744, and obliged to return without a cargo. Messrs. Flint and Harrison were despatched to Ningpo in 1755, and were well received; but when the Holderness subsequently came to trade, it was with difficulty that she procured a cargo, and an imperial edict was promulgated soon after restricting all foreign ships to Canton. In 1759 the factory at Ningpo was demolished, so that Mr. Flint, who repaired there that year, was unable to do anything toward restoring the trade. This gentleman was a person of uncommon perseverance and talents, and had mastered the difficulties of the Chinese language so as to act as

Digitized by Google

interpreter at Canton twelve years before he was sent on his mission. "The ungrateful return which his energy and exertions in their service met with from his employers," justly observes Sir John Davis, "was such as tended in all probability, more than any other cause, to discourage his successors from undertaking so laborious, unprofitable, and even hazardous a work of supererogation."

On his arrival at Ningpo, Mr. Flint, finding it useless to attempt anything there, proceeded in a native vessel to Tientsin, from whence he succeeded in making his case known to the Emperor Kienlung. A commissioner was deputed to accompany him overland to Canton; Mr. Flint proceeded to the English factory soon after his arrival, and the foreigners of all nations assembled before the commissioner, who informed them that the hoppo had been superseded, and all duties remitted over six per cent. on goods and the cumshaw and tonnage dues on ships. The sequel of Mr. Flint's enterprise was unfortunate, and the mode the Chinese took to bring it about thoroughly characteristic.

It proved, however, that these fair appearances were destined only to be the prelude to a storm. Some days afterward the governor desired to see Mr. Flint for the purpose of communicating the Emperor's orders, and was accompanied by the council of his countrymen. When the party had reached the palace, the hong merchants proposed their going in one at a time, but they insisted on proceeding together; and on Mr. Flint being called for, they were received at the first gate and ushered through two courts with seeming complaisance by the officers in waiting; but on arriving at the gate of the inner court they were hurried, and even forced into the governor's presence, where a struggle ensued with their brutal conductors to force them to do homage after the Chinese fashion until they were overpowered and thrown down. Seeing their determination not to submit to these base humiliations, the governor ordered the people to desist; and then telling Mr. Flint to advance, he pointed to an order, which he called the Emperor's edict, for his banishment to Macao, and subsequent departure for England, on account of his endeavoring to open a trade at Ningpo contrary to orders from Peking. He added that the native who had written the petition in Chinese was to be beheaded that day for traitorously encouraging foreigners, which was performed on a man quite innocent of what these officers were pleased to call a crime. Mr. Flint was soon after conveyed to Tsienshan, a place near Macao, called Casa Branca by the Portuguese, where he was imprisoned two years and a half and then sent to England.[1]

[1] Davis, *Chinese*, Vol. I., p. 58.

Digitized by Google

Mr. Flint stated to the Company that a fee of one thousand two hundred and fifty dollars to the governor would set him at liberty, but they contented themselves with a petition. The punishment he received from the Chinese for this attempt to break their laws would not have been considered as unmerited or unjust in any other country, but the neglect of the Company to procure the liberation of one who had suffered so much to serve them reflects the greatest reproach upon that body.

The whole history of the foreign trade, as related by Auber in his chronological narrative, during the one hundred and fifty years up to 1842 is a melancholy and curious chapter in national intercourse. The grievances complained of were delay in loading ships and plunder of goods on their transit to Canton; the injurious proclamations annually put up by the government accusing foreigners of horrible crimes; the extortions of the underlings of office; and the difficulty of access to the high authorities. The hong merchants, from their position as traders and interpreters between the two parties, were able to delude both to a considerable extent, though their responsibility for the acts and payments of foreigners, over whom they could exercise no real restraint, rendered their situation by no means pleasant. The rule on which the Chinese government proceeded in its dealings with foreigners was this: "The barbarians are like beasts, and not to be ruled on the same principles as citizens. Were any one to attempt controlling them by the great maxims of reason, it would tend to nothing but confusion. The ancient kings well understood this, and accordingly ruled barbarians by misrule; therefore, to rule barbarians by misrule is the true and best way of ruling them." The same rule in regard to foreign traders was virtually acted on in England during the reign of Henry VII., and the ideas among the Chinese of their power over those who visit their shores are not unlike those which prevailed in Europe before the Reformation.

The entire ignorance of foreign traders of the spoken and written language of China brought them into contempt with all classes, and where all intercourse was carried on in a jargon which each party despised, the results were often misunder-

Digitized by Google

standing, dislike, and hatred. Another fruitful source of difficulty was the turbulent conduct of sailors. The French and English seamen at Whampoa, in 1754, carried their national hatred to such a degree that they could not pursue their trade without quarrelling; and a Frenchman having killed an English sailor, the Chinese stopped the trade of the former nation until the guilty person was given up, though he was subsequently liberated. The Chinese allotted two different islands in the river at Whampoa for the recreation of the seamen of each nation, in order that such troubles might be avoided in future. A similar case occurred at Canton in 1780, when a Frenchman killed a Portuguese sailor at night in one of the merchants' houses and fled to the consul's for refuge. The Chinese demanded the criminal, and after some days he was given up to them and publicly strangled; this punishment he no doubt merited, although it was the first case in which they had interfered where the matter was altogether among foreigners. In 1784 a native was killed by a ball left in a gun when firing a salute, and the Chinese, on the principle of requiring life for life, demanded the man who had fired the gun. Knowing that the English were not likely to give him up, the police seized Mr. Smith, the supercargo of the vessel, and carried him a prisoner into the city. On the seizure of this gentleman the ships' boats were ordered up from Whampoa with armed crews to defend the factories. A messenger from the Chinese, however, declared that their purpose in seizing Smith was simply to examine him on the affair, to which statement the captive himself added a request that the gunner should be sent up to the authorities and submit to their questions. Trusting too much to their promises, the man was allowed to go alone before the officials within the city walls, when Mr. Smith was immediately liberated and the unhappy gunner strangled, after some six weeks' confinement, by direct orders of the Emperor. The man, probably, underwent no form of trial intelligible to himself, and his condemnation was the more unjust, as by Section CCXCII. of the Chinese code he was allowed to ransom himself by a fine of about twenty dollars. As a counterpart of this tragedy, the Chinese stated (and there was reason for believing

Digitized by Google

them) that a native who had accidentally killed a British seaman about the same time was executed for the casualty.

The Chinese mode of operations, when it was impracticable to get possession of the guilty or accused party, was well exhibited in the case of a homicide occurring in 1807. A party of sailors had been drinking at Canton, when a scuffle ensued, and the sailors put the populace to flight, killing one of the natives in the onset. The trade was promptly stopped, and the hong merchant who had *secured* the ship held responsible for the delivery of the offender. Eleven men were arrested and a court instituted in the Company's hall before Chinese judges, Captain Rolles, of H. B. M. ship Lion, being present with the committee. The actual homicide could not be found, but one Edward Sheen was detained in custody, which satisfied the Chinese while he remained in Canton; but when the committee wished to take him to Macao with them they resisted, until Captain Rolles declared that otherwise he should take the prisoner on board his own ship, which he did. Being now beyond their reach, the authorities were fain to account for the affair to the supreme tribunal at the capital by inventing a tale, stating that the prisoner had caused the death of a native by raising an upper window and accidentally dropping a stick upon his head as he was passing in the street below. This statement was reported to his Majesty as having been concurred in by the English after a full examination of witnesses who attested to the circumstances; the imperial rescript affirmed the sentence of the Board of Punishments, which ordered that the prisoner should be set at liberty after paying the usual fine of twenty dollars provided by law to defray the funeral expenses. The trade was thereupon resumed.[1]

Another case of homicide occurred at Whampoa in 1820, when the authorities reported that the butcher of another ship, who had committed suicide the day of the inquest, was the guilty person. The court of directors very properly blamed their agents at Canton for their complicity in this subterfuge, and spoke of "the paramount advantages which must invari-

[1] Sir G. T. Staunton, *Penal Code of China*, p. 516.

Digitized by Google

ably be derived from a strict and inflexible adherence to truth as the foundation of all moral obligations." [1]

Other cases of murder and homicide have since occurred between foreigners and natives. In the instance of the British frigate Topaze at Lintin Island in 1822, whose crew had been attacked on shore, her captain successfully resisted the surrender of a British subject for the death of two natives in the affray. The dignified and united action of the British authorities on this occasion was a striking contrast to the weakness of the Americans the year before in the case of Terranova. It proved the beneficial results of a stand for the right, for no foreigner has since been executed by the Chinese. It also proved the necessity and advantages of competent interpreters and translators, inasmuch as the case owed much of its success to Dr. Morrison's aid, which had been rejected by the hong merchants the previous year.[2]

These cases are brought together to illustrate the anomalous position which foreigners once held in China. They constituted a community by themselves, subject chiefly to their own sense of honor in their mutual dealings, but their relations with the Chinese were like what lawyers call a "state of nature." The change of a governor-general, of a collector of customs, or senior hong merchant, involved a new course of policy according to the personal character of these functionaries. The committee of the East India Company had considerable power over British subjects, especially those living in Canton, and could deport them if they pleased; but the consuls of other nations had little or no authority over their countrymen. Trade was left at the same loose ends that politics were, and the want of an acknowledged tariff encouraged smuggling and kept up a constant spirit of resistance and dissatisfaction between the native and foreign merchants, each party endeavoring to get along as advantageously to itself as practicable. Nor was there any acknowledged medium of communication between them, for the

[1] Auber, *China: An Outline of its Government, Laws, Policy*, etc., p. 286, London, 1834.

[2] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. II., pp. 513–515. Morrison's *Memoirs*, Vol. II., App., p. 10. Auber, *China, its Government*, etc., pp. 288–309.

Digitized by Google

consuls, not being credited by the Chinese Government, came and went, hoisted or lowered their flags, without the slightest notice from the authorities. Trade could proceed, perhaps, without involving the nations in war, since if it was unprofitable it would cease; but while it continued on such a precarious footing national character suffered, and the misrepresentations produced thereby rendered explanations difficult, inasmuch as neither party understood or believed the other.

The death of the unfortunate gunner in 1784, and the large debts owed to the English by the hong merchants, which there seemed no probability of recovering, induced the British Government to turn its attention to the situation of the king's subjects in China with the purpose of placing their relations on a better footing. The flagitious conduct of a Captain M'Clary, who seized a Dutch vessel at Whampoa in 1781, which Davis narrates,[1] and the inability of the Company to restrain such proceedings, also had its weight in deciding the crown to send an embassy to Peking. Colonel Cathcart was appointed envoy in 1788, but his death in the Straits of Sunda temporarily deferred the mission, which was resumed on a larger scale in 1792, when the Earl of Macartney was sent as ambassador, with a large suite of able men, to place the relations between the two nations, if possible, on a well-understood and secure footing. Two ships were appointed as tenders to accompany his Majesty's ship Lion (64), and nothing was omitted, either in the composition of the mission or the presents to the Emperor, to insure its success. Little is known regarding its real impression upon the Chinese; they treated it with great consideration while it remained in the country, although at an estimated cost of $850,000, and probably dismissed it with the feeling that it was one of the most splendid testimonials of respect that a tributary nation had ever paid their court. The English were henceforth registered among the nations who had sent tribute-bearers, and were consequently only the more bound to obey the injunctions of their master.[2]

[1] *The Chinese*, Vol. I., p. 63.

[2] Sir G. L. Staunton, *Authentic Account of an Embassy from the King of Great Britain to the Emperor of China*, 3 vols., London, 1798.

Digitized by Google

To the European world, as well as to the British nation, however, this expedition may be said to have opened China, so great was the interest taken in it and so well calculated were the narratives of Staunton and Barrow to convey better ideas of that remote country. "Much of the lasting impression which the relations of Lord Macartney's embassy leave on the mind of his reader," to quote from a review of it, "must be ascribed, exclusive of the natural effect of clear, elegant, and able composition, to the number of persons engaged in that business, the variety of their characters, the reputation they already enjoyed or afterward acquired; the bustle and stir of a sea voyage; the placidity and success which finally characterized the intercourse of the English with the Chinese; the splendor of the reception the latter gave to their European guests; the walks in the magnificent gardens of the 'Son of Heaven;' the picturesque and almost romantic navigation upon the imperial canal; and perhaps, not less for the interest we feel for every grand enterprise, skilfully prepared, and which proves successful, partly in consequence of the happy choice of the persons and the means by which it was to be carried into effect." This impression of the grandeur and extent of the Chinese Empire has ever since more or less remained upon the minds of all readers of Staunton's narrative; but truer views were imparted than had before been entertained concerning its real civilization and its low rank among the nations.

That the embassy produced some good effect is undeniable, though it failed in most of the principal points. It also afforded the Chinese an opportunity of making arrangements concerning that future intercourse which they could not avoid, even if they would not negotiate, and of acquiring information concerning foreign nations which would have proved of great advantage to them. Their contemptuous rejection, ignorant though they decided to remain of the real character of these courtesies, of peaceful missions like those of Macartney, Titsingh, and others, takes away much of our sympathy for the calamities which subsequently came upon them. With characteristic shortsightedness they looked upon the very means taken to arrange existing ill-understood relations as a reason for consid-

Digitized by Google

ering those relations as settled to their liking, and a motive to still further exactions.

For many years subsequent to this embassy the trade went on without interruption, though the demands and duties were rather increased than diminished, and the personal liberty of foreigners more and more restricted. The government generally, down to the lowest underling, systematically endeavored to degrade and insult foreigners in the eyes of the populace and citizens of Canton, in order, in case of any disturbance, to have their co-operation and sympathy against the "barbarian devils." The dissolute and violent conduct of many foreigners toward the Chinese gave them, alas, too many arguments for their aspersions and exactions, and both parties too frequently considered the other fair subjects for imposition.

In 1802 the English troops occupied Macao by order of the governor-general of India, lest it should be attacked by the French, but the news of the treaty of peace arriving soon after, they re-embarked almost as soon as the Chinese remonstrated. The discussion was revived, however, in 1808, when the French again threatened the settlement; and the English, under Admiral Drury, landed a detachment to assist the Portuguese in defending it. The Chinese, who had previously asserted their complete jurisdiction over this territory, and which a little examination would have plainly shown, now protested against the armed occupation of their soil, and immediately stopped the trade and denied provisions to the ships. The English traders were ordered by the Committee to go aboard ship, and the governor refused to have the least communication with the admiral until the troops were withdrawn. He attempted to proceed to Canton in armed boats, but was repulsed, and finally, in order not to implicate the trade any further (a step not at all apprehended in protecting the Portuguese), he wisely withdrew his troops and sailed for India. The success of the native authorities greatly rejoiced them; a temple was built on the river's bank to commemorate their victory, and a fort, called "Howqua's Folly" by foreigners (since washed away), erected to guard the river at that point.

The Chinese, ignorant of the principles on which international intercourse is regulated among western powers, regarded every

Digitized by Google

hostile demonstration between them in their waters as directed toward themselves, and demanding their interference. Though often powerless to defend themselves against their own piratical subjects, as has been manifested again and again—for example, in 1810, and also in 1660, when Koxinga ravaged the coast—they still assume that they are able to protect all foreigners who "range themselves under their sway." This was exhibited in 1814, when the British frigate Doris, against all the acknowledged rights of a nation over its own waters, and simply because it could be done with impunity, cruised off the port of Canton to seize American vessels. The provincial authorities ordered the Committee to send her away, saying that if the English and Americans had any petty squabbles they must settle them between themselves and not bring them to China. The Committee stated their inability to control the proceedings of men-of-war, whereupon the Chinese began a series of annoyances against the merchants and shipping, prohibiting the employment of native servants, entering their houses to seize natives, molesting and stopping ships' boats proceeding up and down the river on business, hindering the loading of the ships, and other like harassing acts so characteristic of Asiatic governments when they feel themselves powerless to cope with the real object of their fear or anger. These measures proceeded at last to such a length that the Committee determined to stop the British trade until the governor would allow it to go on, as before, without molestation, and they had actually left Canton for Whampoa, and proceeded down the river some distance, before he showed a sincere wish to arrange matters amicably. A deputation from each party accordingly met in Canton, and the principal points in dispute were at last gained. In this affair the Chinese would be adjudged to have been altogether in the right according to international law. At this time the governor-general conceded three important points to the Committee, viz., the right of corresponding with the government, under seal, in the Chinese language, the unmolested employment of native servants, and the assurance that the houses of foreigners should not be entered without permission; nor were these stipulations ever retracted or violated.

Digitized by Google

The proceedings in this affair were conducted with no little apprehension on both sides, for the value of the traffic was of such importance that neither party could really think of stopping it. Besides the revenue accruing to government from duties and presents, the preparation and shipment of the articles in demand for foreign countries give employment to millions of natives in different parts of the Empire, and had caused Canton to become one of the greatest marts in the world. The governor and his colleagues were responsible for the revenue and peaceful continuance of the trade; but through their ignorance of the true principles of a prosperous commerce, their fear of the consequences resulting from any innovation or change, or the least extension of privileges to the few half-imprisoned foreigners, they thought their security lay rather in restriction than in freedom, in a haughty bearing to intimidate, and not in conciliation to please their customers. On the other hand, the existence of the East India Company's charter depended in a good degree upon keeping a regular supply of tea in England, and therefore the success of the Committee's bold measure of stopping the trade depended not a little upon the ignorance of the Chinese of the great power a passive course of action would give them.

The government at home, on learning these proceedings, resolved to despatch another ambassy to Peking in order to state the facts of the case at court, and if possible agree upon some understood mode of conducting trade and communicating with the heads of government. Lord Amherst, who like Lord Macartney had been governor-general of India, was appointed ambassador to Peking, and Henry Ellis and Sir George T. Staunton associated with him as second and third commissioners. A large suite of able men, with Dr. Morrison as principal interpreter, accompanied the ambassy, and the usual quantity and variety of presents.[1] The mission reached the capital August 28, 1816, but was summarily dismissed without an audience, because the ambassador would not perform the kotow

[1] Ellis, *Embassy to China*, London, 1840. Sir J. F. Davis, *Sketches of China*, 2 Vols., London, 1841. Clarke Abel, *Narrative of a Journey in the Interior of China and a Voyage to and from that Country in* 1816 *and* 1817, London, 1818. R. Morrison, *A View of China*, etc., Macao, 1817.

Digitized by Google

or appear before his Majesty as soon as he arrived; the intrigues of the authorities at Canton with the high officers about the Emperor to defeat the ambassy by deceiving their master have also been adduced as reasons for its failure. Its real failure, as we can now see, was owing to the utter misconception of their true position by the Emperor and his officials, arising from their ignorance, pride, isolation, and mendacity, all combining to keep them so until resistless force should open them to meliorating influences. It was the last attempt of the kind, and three alternatives only remained: the resort to force to compel them to enter into some equitable arrangement, entire submission to whatever they ordered, or the withdrawal of all trade until they proposed its resumption. The course of events continued the second until the first was resorted to, and eventuated in laying open the whole coast to the enterprise of western nations.

At the close of the East India Company's exclusive rights in China, the prospect for the continuance of a peaceful trade was rather dubious. The enterprising Mr. Marjoribanks despatched a vessel to ascertain how far trade could be carried on along the coast, which resulted in satisfactorily proving that the authorities were able and determined to stop all traffic, however desirous the people might be for it. The contraband trade in opium was conducted in a manner that threatened ere long to involve the two nations, but the Company nominally kept itself aloof from it by bringing none in its ships: the same Company, however, did everything in India to encourage the growth and sale of the drug, and received from it at the time of its dissolution an annual revenue of nearly two millions sterling. During its whole existence in China the East India Company stood forward as the defenders of the rights of foreigners and humanity, in a manner which no community of isolated merchants could have done, and to some extent compelled the Chinese to treat all more civilly. As a body it did little for the encouragement of Chinese literature or the diffusion of Christian truth or of science among the Chinese, except the printing of Morrison's Dictionary and an annual grant to the Anglo-Chinese College; and although Dr. Morrison was their

Digitized by Google

official translator for twenty-five years, the directors never gave him the empty compliment of enrolling him in the list of their servants, nor contributed one penny for carrying on his great work of translating and printing the Bible in Chinese. They set themselves against all such efforts, and during a long existence the natives of that country had no means put into their hands, by their agency, of learning that there was any great difference in the religion, science, or civilization of European nations and their own.

The trade of the Americans to China commenced in 1784, the first vessel having left New York February 22d of that year, and returned May 11, 1785; it was commanded by Captain Green, and the supercargo, Samuel Shaw, on his return, gave a lucid narrative of his voyage to Chief Justice Jay. His journal, published in 1847, contains the only record of this voyage, and furnishes many curious facts about the political and social relations existing between foreigners then in China. Our trade with China steadily increased after this date, and has been the second in amount for many years. The only political event in the American intercourse up to 1842 was the suspension of trade in October, 1821, in consequence of the homicide of a Chinese by a sailor at Whampoa. The American merchants were really helpless to carry the trial of Terranova to a just conclusion against the Chinese law, which peremptorily required life for life wherever foreigners were concerned, and gave him up on the assurance that his life was in no danger. They are stated, in a narrative published in the *North American Review*, to have told Howqua at the trial on board the Emily at Whampoa, "We are bound to submit to your laws while we are in your waters; be they ever so unjust, we will not resist them." The poor man was taken out of the ship by force, while all the Americans present protested against the unfair trial he had had; he was then promptly carried to Canton and strangled at the public execution ground (October 25); his body was given up next day, and the trade reopened.[1]

[1] Shaw's *Journal*, Boston, 1847. *North American Review*, January, 1835. *Chinese Repository*, September, 1836. Sir Geo. T. Staunton's *Notices of China*, second edition, pp. 409–432, 1850.

Digitized by Google

The American Government neither took notice of this affair nor made remonstrance against its injustice, but still left the commerce, lives, and property of its citizens wholly unprotected, and at the mercy of Chinese laws and rulers. The consuls at Canton were merely merchants, having no salary from their government, no funds to employ interpreters when necessary, or any power over their countrymen, and came and went without the least notice or acknowledgment from the Chinese.

The trade and intercourse of the Swedes, Danes, Prussians, Italians, Austrians, Peruvians, Mexicans, or Chilians, at Canton, have been attended with no peculiarities or events of any moment. None of these nations ever sent "tribute" to the court of the Son of Heaven, and their ships traded at Canton on the same footing with the English. The voyage of Peter Osbeck, chaplain to a Swedish East Indiaman, in 1753, contains considerable information relating to the mode of conducting the trade and the position of foreigners, who then enjoyed more liberty and suffered fewer extortions than in later years.[1]

The term *fan-kwei*, by which they were all alike called by the Cantonese, indicated the popular estimation, and this epithet of '*foreign devil*' did much, in the course of years, to increase the contempt and ill will which it expressed, not only there but throughout the Empire, for they were thereby maligned before they were known. Another term, *i*, has been raised into notice by its condemnation in the British Treaty as an epithet for British subjects or countries. This word, there rendered '*barbarian*,' conveys to a native but little more than the idea that the people thus called do not understand the Chinese language and usages, and are consequently less civilized. This epithet *barbarian* meant to the Greeks those who could not speak Greek, as it did to Shakspeare those who were not English; likewise among the Chinese, under *i* were included great masses of their own subjects. By translating *wai i* as '*outside barbarians*,' foreigners have been misrepresented in the status they

[1] *A Voyage to China and the East Indies, translated from the German by* John R. Forster, 2 vols., London, 1771.

Digitized by Google

held among educated natives, which was not that of savages but of the illiteracy growing out of their ignorance of the language and writings of Confucius.

The ancient Chinese books speak of four wild nations on the four sides of the country, viz., the *fan*, *i*, *tih*, *man*; the first two seem to have been applied to traders from the south and west, and grew into more distinct expressions because these traders often acted so outrageously. Other terms, as "western ocean men," "far-travelled strangers," and "men from afar," have occasionally been substituted when *i* was objected to. When used as a general term, without an opprobrious addition, *i* is as well adapted as any to denote all foreigners; but the most recent usage gives prominence to the terms *wai kwoh* and *yang jän* ('outside country' and 'ocean man'). Among educated natives the national names are becoming more and more common, as *Ying kwoh*, *Fah kwoh*, *Mei kwoh*, *Teh kwoh*, for England, France, America, Germany, etc.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXII.

ORIGIN OF THE FIRST WAR WITH ENGLAND.

The East India Company's commercial privileges ceased in 1834, and it is worthy of note that an association should have been continued in the providence of God as the principal representative of Christendom among the Chinese, which by its character, its pecuniary interests, and general inclination was bound in a manner to maintain peaceful relations with them, while every other important Asiatic kingdom and island, from Arabia to Japan, was at one time or another during that period the scene of collision, war, or conquest between the nations and their visitors. Its monopoly ceased when western nations no longer looked upon these regions as objects of desire, nor went to Rome to get a privilege to seize or claim such pagan lands as they might discover, and when, too, Christians began to learn and act upon their duty to evangelize these ignorant races. China and Japan were once open to such agencies as well as trade, but no effective measures were taken to translate or distribute the pure word of God in them.

Believing that the affairs of the kingdoms of this world are ordered by their Almighty Governor with regard to the fulfilment of his promises and the promulgation of his truth, the first war between England and China is not only one of great historical interest, but one whose future consequences cannot fail to exercise increasing influence upon many millions of mankind. This war was extraordinary in its origin as growing chiefly out of a commercial misunderstanding; remarkable in its course as being waged between strength and weakness, conscious superiority and ignorant pride; melancholy in its end as forcing the weaker to pay for the opium within its borders

Digitized by Google

against all its laws, thus paralyzing the little moral power its feeble government could exert to protect its subjects; and momentous in its results as introducing, on a basis of acknowledged obligations, one-half of the world to the other, without any arrogant demands from the victors or humiliating concessions from the vanquished. It was a turning-point in the national life of the Chinese race; but the compulsory payment of six million dollars for the opium destroyed has left a stigma upon the English name.

In 1834 the select Committee of the East India Company repeated its notice given in 1831 to the authorities at Canton, that its ships would no longer come to China, and that a king's officer would be sent out as chief to manage the affairs of the British trade. The only "chief" whom the Chinese expected to receive was a commercial headman, qualified to communicate with their officers by petition, through the usual and legal medium of the hong merchants. The English Government justly deemed the change one of considerable importance, and concluded that the oversight of their subjects and the great trade they conducted required a commission of experienced men. The Rt. Hon. Lord Napier was consequently appointed as chief superintendent of British trade, and arrived at Macao July 15, 1834, where were associated with him in the commission John F. Davis and Sir G. B. Robinson, formerly servants of the Company, and a number of secretaries, surgeons, chaplains, interpreters, etc., whose united salaries amounted to $91,000. On arriving at Canton the tide-waiters officially reported that three "foreign devils" had landed. As soon as Governor Lu had learned that Lord Napier had reached Macao, he ordered the hong merchants to go down and intimate to him that he must remain there until he obtained legal permission to come to Canton; for, having received no orders from court as to the manner in which he should treat the English superintendent, he thought it the safest plan to adhere to the old regulations.

Lord Napier had been ordered to report himself to the governor at Canton *by letter*. A short extract from his instructions will show the intentions of the English Government in constituting the commission, and the entirely wrong views it had of

Digitized by Google

the notions of the Chinese respecting foreign intercourse, and the character they gave to the English authorities. Lord Palmerston says:

In addition to the duty of protecting and fostering the trade of his Majesty's subjects with the port of Canton, it will be one of your principal objects to ascertain whether it may not be practicable to extend that trade to other parts of the Chinese dominions. . . . It is obvious that, with a view to the attainment of this object, the establishment of direct communications with the port of Peking would be desirable; and you will accordingly direct your attention to discover the best means of preparing the way for such communications, bearing constantly in mind, however, that peculiar caution and circumspection will be indispensable on this point, lest you should awaken the fears or offend the prejudices of the Chinese Government, and thus put to hazard even the existing opportunities of intercourse by a precipitate attempt to extend them. In conformity with this caution you will abstain from entering into any new relations or negotiations with the Chinese authorities, except under very urgent and unforeseen circumstances. But if any opportunity for such negotiations should appear to you to present itself, you will lose no time in reporting the circumstance to his Majesty's government, and in asking for instructions; but previously to the receipt of such instructions you will adopt no proceedings but such as may have a general tendency to convince the Chinese authorities of the sincere desire of the king to cultivate the most friendly relations with the Emperor of China, and to join with him in any measures likely to promote the happiness and prosperity of their respective subjects.

Governor Lu's messengers arrived too late to detain the British superintendent at Macao, and a military officer despatched to intercept him passed him on the way; so that the first intimation the latter received of the governor's disposition was in an edict addressed to the hong merchants, from which two paragraphs are extracted:

On this occasion the barbarian *eye*, Lord Napier, has come to Canton without having at all resided at Macao to wait for orders; nor has he requested or received a permit from the superintendent of customs, but has hastily come up to Canton—a great infringement of the established laws! The custom-house waiters and others who presumed to admit him to enter are sent with a communication requiring their trial. But in tender consideration for the said barbarian *eye* being a new-comer, and unacquainted with the statutes and laws of the Celestial Empire, I will not strictly investigate. . . . As to his object in coming to Canton, it is for commercial business. The Celestial Empire appoints officers, civil ones to rule the people, military ones to intimidate the wicked. The petty affairs of commerce are to be directed by the merchants themselves: the officers have nothing to hear on the subject. . . . If any affair is to be newly commenced, it is necessary to wait till a respectful me-

Digitized by Google

morial be made, clearly reporting it to the great Emperor, and his mandate be received; the great ministers of the Celestial Empire are not permitted to have intercourse by letters with outside barbarians. If the said barbarian eye *throws in* private letters, I, the governor, will not at all receive or look at them. With regard to the foreign factory of the Company without the walls of the city, it is a place of temporary residence for foreigners coming to Canton to trade; they are permitted only to eat, sleep, buy and sell in the factories; they are not allowed to go out to ramble about.[1]

How unlike were these two documents and the expectations of their writers! The governor felt that it was safest to wait for an imperial mandate before commencing a new affair, and refused to receive *a letter* from a foreign officer. Had he done so he would have laid himself open to reprimand and perhaps punishment from his superiors; and in saying that the superintendent should report himself and apply for a permit before coming to Canton, he only required what the members of the Company had always done when they returned from their summer vacation at Macao. Lord Napier thought he had the same liberty to come to Canton without announcing himself that other and private foreigners exercised; but an officer of his rank would have pleased the Chinese authorities better by observing their regulations. He had thought of this contingency before leaving England, and had requested "that in case of necessity he might have authority to treat with the government at Peking;" this request being denied, he desired that his appointment to Canton might be announced at the capital; this not being granted, he wished that a communication from the home authorities might be addressed to the governor of Canton; but this was deemed inexpedient, and he was directed to "go to Canton and report himself by letter." These reasonable requests involved no loss of dignity, but the court of St. James chose to send out a superintendent of trade, an officer partaking of both ministerial and consular powers, and ordered him to act in a certain manner, involving a violation of the regulations of the country where he was going, without providing for the alternative of his rejection.

---

[1] *Correspondence relating to China* (Blue Book), p. 4. *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 188; Vol. XI., p. 188.

Digitized by Google

To Canton, therefore, he came, and the next day reported himself by letter to the governor, sending it to the city gates. His lordship was directed to have nothing to do with the hong merchants; and therefore when they waited upon him the morning of his arrival, with the edict they had been sent down to Macao to "enjoin upon him," he courteously dismissed them, with an intimation that "he would communicate immediately with the viceroy in the manner befitting his Majesty's commission and the honor of the British nation." The account of the reception of his communication is taken from his correspondence:

On the arrival of the party at the city gates, the soldier on guard was despatched to report the circumstance to his superior. In less than a quarter of an hour an officer of inferior rank appeared, whereupon Mr. Astell offered my letter for transmission to the viceroy, which duty this officer declined, adding that his superior was on his way to the spot. In the course of an hour several officers of nearly equal rank arrived in succession, each refusing to deliver the letter on the plea that higher officers would shortly attend. After an hour's delay, during which time the party were treated with much indignity, not unusual on such occasions, the linguists and hong merchants arrived, who entreated to become the bearers of the letter to the viceroy. About this time an officer of rank higher than any of those who had preceded him joined the party, to whom the letter was in due form offered, and as formally refused. The officer having seen the superscription on the letter, argued, that "as it came from the superintendent of trade, the hong merchants were the proper channels of communication:" but this obstacle appeared of minor importance in their eyes, upon ascertaining that the document was styled a *letter*, and not a *petition*. The linguists requested to be allowed a copy of the address, which was of course refused.

About this time the *kwang-hieh*, a military officer of the rank of colonel, accompanied by an officer a little inferior to himself, arrived on the spot, to whom the letter was offered three several times and as often refused. The senior hong merchant, Howqua, after a private conversation with the colonel, requested to be allowed to carry the letter in company with him and ascertain whether it would be received. This being considered as an insidious attempt to circumvent the directions of the superintendents, a negative was made to this and other overtures of a similar tendency. Suddenly all the officers took their departure for the purpose, as it was afterward ascertained, of consulting with the viceroy. Nearly three hours having been thus lost within the city, Mr. Astell determined to wait a reasonable time for the return of the officers, who shortly afterward reassembled; whereupon Mr. Astell respectfully offered the letter in question three separate times to the colonel and afterward to the other officers, all of whom distinctly refused even to touch it; upon which the party returned to the factory.[1]

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XI., p. 27.

Digitized by Google

The governor reported this occurrence at court in a memorial, in which, after stating that his predecessor had instructed the Company's supercargoes to make arrangements that "a *taipan* [or supercargo, the word being applied to all foreign consuls] acquainted with affairs should still be appointed to come to Canton to control and direct the trade," he states what had occurred, and adds:

The said barbarian eye would not receive the hong merchants, but afterward repaired to the outside of the city to present a letter to me, your Majesty's minister, Lu. On the face of the envelope the forms and style of equality were used, and there were absurdly written the characters *Ta Ying kwoh* ['Great English nation']. Now it is plain on the least reflection, that in keeping the central and outside [people] apart, it is of the highest importance to maintain dignity and sovereignty. Whether the said barbarian eye has or has not official rank there are no means of thoroughly ascertaining. But though he be really an officer of the said nation, he yet cannot write letters on equality with the frontier officers of the Celestial Empire. As the thing concerned the national dignity, it was inexpedient in the least to allow a tendency to any approach or advance by which lightness of esteem might be occasioned. Accordingly orders were given to Han Shau-king, the colonel in command of the military forces of this department, to tell him authoritatively that, by the statutes and enactments of the Celestial Empire, there has never been intercourse by letters with outside barbarians; that, respecting commercial matters, petitions must be made through the medium of the hong merchants, and that it is not permitted to offer or present letters. . . . On humble examination it appears that the commerce of the English barbarians has hitherto been managed by the hong merchants and *taipans;* there has never been a barbarian eye to form a precedent. Now it is suddenly desired to appoint an officer, a superintendent, which is not in accordance with old regulations. Besides, if the said nation has formed this decision, it still should have stated in a petition the affairs which, and the way how, such superintendent is to manage, so that a memorial might be presented requesting your Majesty's mandate and pleasure as to what should be refused, in order that obedience might be paid to it and the same be acted on accordingly. But the said barbarian eye, Lord Napier, without having made any plain report, suddenly came to the barbarian factories outside the city to reside, and presumed to desire intercourse to and fro by official documents and letters with the officers of the Central Flowery Land; this was, indeed, far out of the bounds of reason.[1]

The governor here intimates that the intention of his government in requesting a *taipan* to come to Canton was only to have a responsible officer with whom to communicate. In refusing

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 327.

Digitized by Google

to receive an 'eye,' or superintendent, therefore, he did not, in his own view of the case, suppose that he was refusing, nor did he or the court of Peking intend to refuse, the residence of a supercargo, for they were desirous to have responsible heads appointed over the commerce and subjects of every nation trading at Canton. These occurrences were discussed by the Hon. John Quincy Adams in his lecture upon the war with China, delivered in 1841, in which he alleged that the rejection of Lord Napier's letter and mission was a sufficient reason for the subsequent contest. He showed the impolicy of allowing the Chinese ideas of supremacy over other nations, and exhibited their natural results in the degraded position of foreigners. He had, however, only an imperfect conception of the strength of this assumption, but it was not debated in this contest between Governor Lu and Lord Napier. The former was not blameworthy for endeavoring to carry the laws of his own country into execution, while the latter was doing his best to obey the instructions of his own sovereign. The question of the propriety of those laws, involving as they did the supremacy of the Emperor over the English, or the feasibility of those instructions, could only be discussed and settled by their principals. Whether this assumption was a proper ground of hostilities is altogether another question. When Lord Napier's letter was rejected he would probably have referred home to his government for further instructions if it had intended to settle the question of supremacy, but he did not do so, nor did the ministry refer to it or remonstrate against the unhandsome treatment their representative received.

The refusal of Lord Napier to confer with the hong merchants, and of the governor to receive any communication except a petition, placed the two parties in an awkward position. In his letter the former stated the object of his coming to Canton, and requested that his excellency would accord him an interview in order that their future intercourse might be arranged; and considering the desirableness of giving him accurate views, the party at the gate would have acted wisely in permitting the hong merchants to take it to him. The governor was irritated and alarmed, and vented his anger upon the unfortunate hong merchants. These had two or three interviews with Lord Na-

Digitized by Google

pier after the rejection of the letter, but as they now said it would not be received unless superscribed *pin*, or 'petition,' they were dismissed. Having heard that there was a party among the British residents in Canton who disapproved of the proceedings of the superintendent, they vainly endeavored to call a meeting of the disaffected on the 10th of August, while his lordship assembled all of his countrymen next day, and found that they generally approved of his conduct. On the 14th he reviews his position in consequence of the rejection of his letter and the subsequent conduct of the governor. After recommending the renewal of the effort to open better understood relations with the court of Peking by a demand upon the Emperor to allow the same privileges to all foreigners residing in China which Chinese received in foreign countries, he goes on to say:

My present position is, in one point of view, a delicate one, because the trade is put in jeopardy on account of the difference existing between the viceroy and myself. I am ordered by his Majesty to "go to Canton and there report myself by letter to the viceroy." I use my best endeavors to do so; but the viceroy is a presumptuous savage, and will not grant the same privileges to me that have been exercised constantly by the chiefs of the committee. He rakes up obsolete orders, or perhaps makes them for the occasion; but the fact is, the chiefs used formerly to wait on the viceroy on their return from Macao, and continued to do it until the viceroy gave them an order to wait upon him, whereupon they gave the practice up. Had I even degraded the king's commission so far as to petition through the hong merchants for an interview, it is quite clear by the tenor of the edicts that it would have been refused. Were he to send an armed force and order me to the boat, I could then retreat with honor, and he would implicate himself; but they are afraid to attempt such a measure. What then remains but the stoppage of the trade or my retirement? If the trade is stopped for any length of time the consequences to the merchants are most serious, as they are also to the unoffending Chinese. But the viceroy cares no more for commerce, or for the comfort and happiness of the people as long as he receives his pay and plunder, than if he did not live among them. My situation is different; I cannot hazard millions of property for any length of time on the mere score of etiquette. If the trade shall be stopped, which is probable enough in the absence of the frigate, it is possible I may be obliged to retire to Macao to let it loose again. Then has the viceroy gained his point and the commission is degraded. Now, my lord, I argue that whether the commission retires by force of arms or by the injustice practised on the merchants, the viceroy has committed an outrage on the British crown which should be equally chastised. The whole system of government here is that of subterfuge and shifting the blame from the

Digitized by Google

shoulders of the one to the other. . . . I shall not go, however, without publishing in Chinese and disseminating far and wide the base conduct of the viceroy in oppressing the merchants, native as well as foreign, and of my having taken the step out of pure compassion to them. I can only once more implore your lordship to force them to acknowledge my authority and the king's commission, and if you can do that you will have no difficulty in opening the ports at the same time.[1]

Such were the sentiments and desires which filled the mind of the English superintendent. He is in error in saying that the governor would not grant him the same privileges as had been accorded to the chiefs of the Company. The present question was not about having an interview, but regarding the superscription of his letter; for the chiefs of the Company sent their sealed communications through the hong merchants as petitions. The governor stopped the English trade on the 16th, and two days after issued an explanatory paper in reply to the report that his orders on that subject had been carried into effect. This document sets forth his determination to uphold the old regulations, and a few sentences from it are here introduced as a contrast with the preceding despatch. The conviction of the governor in the supremacy of his Emperor over all foreign nations which had sent embassies to his court, and his own official position making him responsible for successfully maintaining the laws over foreigners, must be borne in mind:

To refer to England: should an official personage from a foreign country proceed to the said nation for the arrangement of any business, how could he neglect to have the object of his coming announced in a memorial to the said nation's king, or how could he act contrary to the requirements of the said nation's dignity, doing his own will and pleasure? Since the said barbarian eye states that he is an official personage, he ought to be more thoroughly acquainted with these principles. Before, when he offered a letter, I, the governor, saw it inexpedient to receive it, because the established laws of the Celestial Empire do not permit ministers and those under authority to have private intercourse by letter with outside barbarians, but have, hitherto, in commercial affairs, held the merchants responsible; and if perchance any barbarian merchant should have any petition to make requesting the investigation of any affair, [the laws require] that by the said *taipan* a duly prepared petition should be in form presented, and an answer by proclamation awaited. There has never been such a thing as outside barbarians sending in a letter.

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XV., p. 68.

Digitized by Google

He then says that there had never been any official correspondence to and fro between the native officers and the barbarian merchants; by this he means a correspondence of equality, which the Chinese Government had indeed never yielded. The idea of supremacy never leaves him—witness, for example, the following strain, peculiarly Chinese:

The hong merchants, because the said barbarian eye will not adhere to the old regulations, have requested that a stop should be put to the said nation's commerce. This manifests a profound knowledge of the great principles of dignity. It is most highly praiseworthy. Lord Napier's perverse opposition necessarily demands such a mode of procedure, and it would be most right immediately to put a stop to buying and selling. But considering that the said nation's king has hitherto been in the highest degree reverently obedient, he cannot in sending Lord Napier at this time have desired him thus obstinately to resist. The some hundreds of thousands of commercial duties yearly coming from the said country concern not the Celestial Empire the extent of a hair or a feather's down. The possession or absence of them is utterly unworthy of one careful thought. Their broadcloths and camlets are still more unimportant, and of no regard. But the tea, the rhubarb, the raw silk of the Inner Land, are the sources by which the said nation's people live and maintain life. For the fault of one man, Lord Napier, must the livelihood of the whole nation be precipitately cut off? I, the governor, looking up and embodying the great Emperor's most sacred, most divine wish, to nurse and tenderly cherish as one all that are without, feel that I cannot bring my mind to bear it! Besides, all the merchants of the said nation dare dangers, crossing the seas myriads of miles to come from far. Their hopes rest wholly in the attainment of gain by buying and selling. That they did not attend when summoned by the hong merchants to a meeting for consultation, was because they were under the direction of Lord Napier; it assuredly did not proceed from the several merchants' own free will. Should the trade be wholly cut off in one morning, it would cause great distress to many persons, who, having travelled hither by land and sea, would by one man, Lord Napier, be ruined. They cannot in such case but be utterly depressed with grief. . . . I hear the said eye is a man of very solid and expansive mind and placid speech. If he consider, he can himself doubtless distinguish right and wrong: let him on no account permit himself to be deluded by men around him. . . . Hereafter, when the said nation's king hears respecting these repeated orders and official replies, [he will know] that the whole wrong lies on the barbarian eye; it is in nowise owing to any want on the part of the Celestial Empire of extreme consideration for the virtue of reverential obedience exercised by the said nation's king.[1]

He consequently sent a deputation of officials to Lord Napier to inquire why he had come to Canton, what business he

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. III., p. 235.

Digitized by Google

was appointed to perform, and when he would retire to Macao. The letter was again handed them, but the superscription still remained, and they refused to touch it. They, however, learned enough to be able to inform their master what he wished to know: the real point of dispute between the two could only be settled between their sovereigns. The governor by this deputation showed a desire to make some arrangement, and the trade would probably have been shortly reopened had not Lord Napier carried out his idea, two days after, of appealing to the people in order to explain the reasons why the governor had stopped the trade and brought distress on them. The paper simply detailed the principal events which had occurred since his arrival, laying the blame upon the "ignorance and obstinacy" of the governor in refusing to receive his letter, and closing with—"The merchants of Great Britain wish to trade with all China on principles of mutual benefit; they will never relax in their exertions till they gain a point of equal importance to both countries; and the viceroy will find it as easy to stop the current of the Canton River as to carry into effect the insane determination of the hong."

In many of the former proceedings between the Chinese and foreigners, based as they were upon incorrect ideas, the rules of diplomacy elsewhere observed formed no guide; but the publication of this statement was unwise and dangerous. Not only did it jeopardize the lives and property of British subjects, but of all other foreigners residing at Canton, to whose safety and interests, as involved with his own dispute, Lord Napier makes no reference in his despatches. Happily, Governor Lu did not appease his irritation by letting loose the populace of Canton, which was highly excited, but by imprisoning members of the co-hong for allowing the superintendent to come to the city.

The governor and his colleagues stopped the English trade on September 2d, in a proclamation containing many inaccurate statements and absurd reasonings, in which he forbade either natives or foreigners to give aid or comfort to Lord Napier. Communication with the shipping at Whampoa was also interdicted, so that, in reality, the entire foreign trade was

Digitized by Google

interrupted. A guard of Chinese troops was placed near the Company's factory, but no personal distress was felt on account of the interdict. H. B. M. frigates Andromache and Imogene were ordered up to protect the shipping and persons of British subjects, and the two vessels anchored at Whampoa on the 11th. In their passage through the Bogue they returned the fire from the forts, with little damage to either; and on anchoring, a lieutenant and boat's crew were despatched to Canton to protect the English factory. These decisive proceedings troubled the native authorities not a little, who, on their part, prepared for stronger measures by blocking up the river and stationing troops about Whampoa, but were relieved when they found that the ships remained at their anchorage.

Lord Napier sent a protest against the proceedings of the governor in stopping the trade, through the Chamber of Commerce and hong merchants; but at this juncture his health gave way so rapidly that three days after the frigates had anchored he decided to return to Macao and wait for instructions. The Chinese detained him on his passage down until the ships were out of the river; but he sank and died October 11th, a fortnight after reaching that city. As soon as he left Canton the trade was reopened. On hearing that the ships had reached Whampoa, the Emperor degraded or suspended all the officials who had been in any way responsible; but when he learned that "Lord Napier had been driven out, and the two ships of war dragged over the shallows and expelled," he restored most of those whom he had thus punished. The governor also vented his indignation upon ten of his subordinates, by subjecting them to torture in order to "ascertain if they were guilty of illicit connection with foreigners." The drama was closed on the part of the Chinese by an imperial mandate: "The English barbarians have an open market in the Inner Land, but there has hitherto been no interchange of official communications. Yet it is absolutely requisite that there should be a person possessing general control, to have the special direction of affairs; wherefore let the governor immediately order the hong merchants to command the said separate merchants, that they send a letter back to their country calling for the appoint-

Digitized by Google

ment of another person as *taipan*, to come for the control and direction of commercial affairs, in accordance with the old regulations."

The principles on which the Chinese acted in this affair are plainly seen. To have granted official intercourse by letter would have been to give up the whole question, to consider the king of England as no longer a tributary, and so release him and his subjects from their allegiance. To do so would not only permit them to come into their borders as equals, subject to no laws or customs, but would further open the door for resistance to their authority, armed opposition to their control, and ultimate in possession of their territory. The governor hints at this when speaking of the necessity of restraining the barbarian eye: "With regard to territory, it would also have its consequences." These would be the probable results of allowing such a mode of address from the Kalkas, or Tibetans, and the Emperor felt the importance of its concession in a way that Lord Napier himself could not appreciate. Nevertheless, with the inconsistency of children, the Son of Heaven and his courtiers, in the mandate just quoted, yield their obligations to justly govern the far-travelled strangers, by requiring them to get a countryman "to exercise general control" and live among them —thus establishing the principle of ex-territoriality within their borders which they now find so irksome.

It is pitiable, and natural too, that the Chinese should have had notions so incorrect and dangerous, for it led them to misinterpret every act of foreigners. Their entire intercourse with Europeans, since the Portuguese first came to their shores, had conspired to strengthen the opinion that all traders were crafty, domineering, avaricious, and contumacious, and must be kept down in every possible way to insure safety to the Chinese natives. The indignation of the Emperor on hearing of the entrance of the ships of war was mixed with great apprehension, "lest there were yet other ships staying at a distance ready to bring in aid to him" [Lord Napier]. Ignorant as he was of the true character of the embassies which had been received at Peking, he was still more likely to take alarm at any attempt to open an equal intercourse, and disposed to resist it as

Digitized by Google

he would a forcible occupation of his territory, of which it was, in his view, only the precursor.

That these were the feelings of the rulers at Peking cannot be doubted; and we must know what views and fears actuated them in order to understand their proceedings. If the position of England in the eyes of the Chinese had been fully known in London, the unequal contest imposed upon Lord Napier would either have been avoided or directed against the imperial government. The offer of an amicable intercourse was given to the Chinese, but through the inapplicable instructions which his lordship received this offer was not made to the weaker and ignorant party in such a way as not to excite its fears, while it fully explained the real position and intentions of England, and through her all Christendom, in seeking intercourse with China. Yet so long as the court of Peking, in virtue of the Emperor's vicegerency over mankind, claimed supremacy over other nations, the struggle to maintain that assumption was sure to come. This false notion did, however, really continue among them for about forty years, till five foreign ministers had their first audience with the Emperor Tungchí, June, 1873, and stood before his throne as they presented their credentials.

The British residents at Canton saw the point of difficulty clearly, and in a petition to the king in council, dated December 4, 1834, recommended that a commissioner be sent to one of the northern ports with a small fleet to arrange the matter of future intercourse. In this petition they "trace the disabilities and restrictions under which British commerce now labors to a long acquiescence in the arrogant assumption of supremacy over the monarchs and people of other countries claimed by the Emperor of China for himself and his subjects," and conclude that "no essentially beneficial result can be expected to arise out of negotiations in which such pretensions are not decidedly repelled." The recommendations of the petitioners were disregarded in England. The cabinet disapproved of the spirit of Lord Napier's despatches, and intimated to him that it was "not by force and violence that his Majesty intended to establish a commercial intercourse between his subjects and China, but by conciliatory measures." After the events of 1834 if a commissioner, backed

Digitized by Google

by a small fleet, had been immediately appointed to Peking to arrange the terms of future intercourse, the subsequent war might have been averted, though it is more likely that the imperial court would have rejected all overtures until compelled to treat by force.

As things were situated at Canton, it was really impossible for the Chinese Government to carry on a line of policy with respect to foreign intercourse which would at once maintain its assumptions, avoid the risk of a rupture, squeeze all the money possible out of the trade, and repress the complaints of the British merchants. The cessation of the Company's monopoly, as well as its control over all British subjects, had weakened the leverage of the local authorities to manage them, to a greater degree than they were aware.

The trade was conducted during the next season to the satisfaction of all parties. That of other nations had been practically stopped with that of the English, but the suspension was at a dull season of the year. Their consuls took no official part in the dispute, though they had some ground for complaint in the suspension of their trade and the imprisonment of their countrymen. The Chinese shopkeepers known as "outside merchants" having been interdicted trading at all with foreigners, went to the governor's palace in a large body and soon obtained a removal of the restriction. The hong merchants themselves instigated this decree, for these shopkeepers, while deriving large profits from their business, were almost free from the extortions which the monopolists suffered. All the extraordinary expenses incurred by the provincial exchequer in the late affair were required of these unfortunate men; and they *must* get it out of the trade in the best way they could. Amelioration could not be expected from such a system; for as soon as the foreigners began to complain, the hong merchants were impelled by every motive to misrepresent their complaints to the governor and quash every effort to obtain redress. The situation of foreigners there was aptly likened by a writer on the subject to the inmates of the Zoölogical Garden in Regent's Park: "They [the animals] have been free to play what pranks they pleased, so that they made no uproar nor escaped from confinement. The keep-

Digitized by Google

ers looked sharply after them and tried to keep them quiet, because annoyed by the noise they made and responsible for the mischief they might commit if they got at liberty. They might do what was right in their own eyes with each other. The authorities of China do not expect from wild and restless barbarians the decorum and conduct exemplified in their own great family."

The peculiar position of the relations with the Chinese and the value of the trade, present and prospective, was so great that these events called out many pamphleteers both in England and the East. The servants of the Company naturally recommended a continuance of the peaceable system, urging that foreigners should obey the laws of the Empire where they lived and not interfere with the restrictions put upon them. Others counselled the occupation of an island on the coast, to which Chinese traders would immediately resort, and which was to be held only so long as the Emperor refused to open his ports and allow a fair traffic with his people. Others deprecated resort to force until a commissioner to Peking had explained the designs and wishes of his government, demanded the same privileges for foreigners in China that the Chinese enjoyed abroad, and then, in the event of a refusal, compel acquiescence. Some advised letting things take their own course and conducting trade as it could be at Canton until circumstances compelled the Chinese to act. "That which we now require is not to lose the enjoyment of what we have got," said the Duke of Wellington, and his advice was followed in most respects. A few thought it would be the wiser way to disseminate juster ideas of the position, power, and wishes of England and all foreign nations among the Chinese in their own language. They argued very properly that ignorance on these points would neutralize every attempt to bring about a better state of things; that although the Chinese were to blame for their uncompromising arrogance, it was also their great misfortune that they really had had little opportunity to learn the truth respecting their visitors. All these suggestions looked forward to no long continuance of the present undefined, anomalous relations, and all of them contained much pertinent advice and many valuable items of information; but it

Digitized by Google

was a question not more difficult than important what course of procedure was the best. While the point of supremacy seemed to be settled in favor of the Son of Heaven, the virus of the contraband opium trade was working out its evil effects among his subjects and hastening on a new era.

The British superintendents now lived in Macao pending the action of their government, merely keeping a clerk at Canton to sign manifests. The foreign residents established the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge, and other benevolent projects mentioned in a previous chapter; they also sent two or three vessels along the coast to see what openings existed for entering the country, preaching the gospel, or living on shore. The results of the voyages fully proved the impossibility of entering the country in an open manner without the permission of the rulers, and the limited intercourse with the people also showed that the character of foreigners was generally associated with the opium trade. The dwellers immediately on the coast were eager for an extension of the traffic, because it brought them large gains, and the officers at the principal ports were desirous of participating in the emoluments of their fellows at Canton; but those who had the good of the country at heart (and there are many such in China) thought that the extension of foreign trade would bring with it unmitigated evil from the increased use of opium.

Sir G. B. Robinson, the superintendent, remained at Lintin on board a cutter among opium ships anchored there during the season of 1835–36, and was so well satisfied with his position that he recommended his government to purchase a small ship for the permanent accommodation of the commission there beyond the reach of the Chinese officers, and to vest its powers in a single individual. He also expressed his conviction that there was little hope of establishing a proper understanding with the Chinese Government, except by a resort to force and the occupation of an island off the mouth of the river:

I see no grounds to apprehend the occurrence of any fearful events on the north-east coast, nor can I learn what new danger exists. I am assured from the best authority that the scuffles between different parties of smugglers and mandarins, alike engaged and competing in the traffic, are not more seri-

Digitized by Google

ous or frequent than in this province. In no case have Europeans been engaged in any kind of conflict or affray: and while this increasing and lucrative trade is in the hands of the parties whose vital interests are so totally dependent on its safety and continuance, and by whose prudence and integrity it has been brought into its present increasing and flourishing condition, I think little apprehension may be entertained of dangers emanating from imprudence on their part. Should any unfortunate catastrophe take place, what would our position at Canton entail upon us but responsibility and jeopardy, from which we are now free? On the question of smuggling opium I will not enter in this place, though, indeed, smuggling carried on actively in the government boats can hardly be termed such. Whenever his Majesty's government directs us to prevent British vessels engaging in the traffic, we can enforce any order to that effect, but a more certain method would be to prohibit the growth of the poppy and the manufacture of opium in British India; and if British ships are in the habit of committing irregularities and crimes, it seems doubly necessary to exercise a salutary control over them by the presence of an authority at Lintin.

Taking all things into consideration, this is a remarkable despatch to be sent by the representative of a Christian government writing from the midst of a fleet of smugglers on the shores of a pagan country. "The scuffles caused by the introduction of opium are," he remarks, "*not more* serious or frequent on the coast than about Canton;" though even there, probably, not one-half which did occur were known; but Europeans never personally engaged in any of them. They only brought the cause and object of these collisions where the people could get it, and then quietly looked on to see them fight about it. The "prudence and integrity" of the merchants were engaged in cherishing it to a high degree of prosperity, and they were not likely to act imprudently. The orders of the supreme government for its officers on the coast to stop the traffic were utterly powerless, through the cupidity and venality of those officers and their underlings; yet their almost complete failure to execute them does not impugn the sincerity of the court in issuing them. There is not the least evidence to show that the court of Peking was not sincere in its desire to suppress the trade, from the first edict in 1800 till the war broke out in 1840. The excuse that the government smuggled because its revenue cruisers engaged in it and the helpless provincial authorities winked at it, is no more satisfactory than to

Digitized by Google

make the successful bribery of custom-house officers in England or elsewhere a proof of the corruption of the treasury department. The temptation of an "increasing and lucrative" trade was as strong to the unenlightened pagan Chinese smuggler as it was to the Christian merchants and monopolists who placed the poisonous drug constantly within his reach. It would have been far more frank on the part of the British superintendent to have openly defended a traffic affording a revenue of more than two millions sterling to his own government, and suggested that such an "increasing and lucrative" business should not be impeded, than to say that he could stop British ships engaging in it as soon as he received orders to that effect.

The existence of the commission at the outer anchorages was fully known to the authorities at Canton, but no movement toward reopening the intercourse was made by either party. Lord Palmerston instructed the superintendent not to communicate with the governor-general through the hong merchants, nor to give his written communications the name of petitions. Captain Elliot succeeded Sir George in 1836, and immediately set about reopening the communication with the Chinese officers in the same way that the supercargoes of the Company had conducted it. He defended this course upon the grounds that he had no right to direct official communication with the governor, and that the remarkable movements of the Chinese and the state of uncertainty in respect to the whole foreign trade rendered it desirable to be at Canton. The successor of Lu, Tăng Ting-ching, willingly responded to this proposition by sending a deputation of three officers to Macao with the hong merchants to make some inquiries before memorializing the Emperor. In his report the governor avoided all reference to Lord Napier, and requested his Majesty's sanction to the present request as being in accordance with the orders that the English merchants should send home to have a supercargo come out to manage them. It was of course granted; and the British commission, having received a "red permit" from the collector of customs, returned to Canton April 12, 1837, after an absence of about thirty months. In his note to the governor upon receiving the imperial sanction, Captain El-

Digitized by Google

liot says: "The undersigned respectfully assures his excellency that it is at once his duty and his anxious desire to conform in all things to the imperial pleasure; and he will therefore heedfully attend to the points adverted to in the papers now before him." This language was decided, and his excellency afterward called upon the superintendent to do as he had promised.

The remarkable movements of the supreme government here referred to grew out of a memorial from Hü Nai-tsí, formerly salt commissioner and judge at Canton, proposing the legalization of the opium trade. In this paper he acknowledges that it is impossible to stop the traffic or use of the drug; if the foreign vessels be driven from the coast, they will go to some island near by, where the native craft will go off to them; and if the laws be made too severe upon those who smoke the drug they will be disregarded. By legalizing it, he says, the drain of specie will be stopped, the regular trade rendered more profitable and manageable, and the consumption of the drug regulated. He proposes instant dismissal from office as the penalty for all functionaries convicted of smoking, while their present ineffectual attempts to suppress the trade, which resulted in general contempt for all law, would cease, and consequently the dignity of government be better maintained. The trade on the coast would be concentrated at Canton, and the fleet at Lintin broken up, thereby bringing all foreigners more completely under control.

This unexpected movement at the capital caused no little stir at Canton, and the hong merchants presently advertised the foreigners that soon there would no longer be any use for the receiving-ships at Lintin. Captain Elliot wrote that he thought legalization had come too late to stop the trade on the coast, and, with a prescient eye, adds that the "feeling of independence created among British subjects from the peculiar mode of conducting this branch of the trade," would ere long lead to graver difficulties and acts of violence requiring the armed interference of his government. The impression was general at Canton that the trade would be legalized, and increased preparations were accordingly made in India to extend the cultivation. The governor and his colleagues recommended its legalization on the

Digitized by Google

grounds that "the tens of millions of precious money which now annually ooze out of the Empire will be saved," the duties be increased, the evil practices of transporting contraband goods by deceit and violence suppressed, numberless quarrels and litigations arising therefrom and the crimes of worthless vagrants diminished. They also deluded themselves with the idea that if the officers were dismissed as soon as convicted, the intelligent part of society would not indulge their depraved appetites, but let the "victims of their own self-sacrificing folly," the poor opium-smokers, be found only among the lower classes. In connection with this report, the hong merchants replied to various inquiries respecting the best mode of carrying on the opium trade in case it should be legalized, and their mode of conducting commerce generally; adding that it was beyond their power to control the smuggling traffic or restrain the exportation of sycee, and showed that the balance of trade would naturally leave the country in bullion. These papers are fairly drawn up, and their perusal cannot fail to elevate the character of the Chinese for consideration, carefulness, and business-like procedure.[1]

There were other statesmen, however, who regarded Hü Nai-tsí's memorial as a dangerous step in the downward path, and sounded the alarm. Among these the foremost was Chu Tsun, a cabinet minister, who sent in a counter-memorial couched in the strongest terms. He advised that the laws be more strictly maintained, and cited instances to show that when the provincial authorities earnestly set about it they could put the trade down; that the people would soon learn to despise all laws if those against opium-smoking were suspended; and that recreant officers should be superseded and punished. His indignation warms as he goes on: "It has been represented that advantage is taken of the laws against opium by extortionate underlings and worthless vagrants, to benefit themselves. Is it not known, then, that when government enacts a law, there is necessarily an infraction of that law? And though the law should sometimes be relaxed and become ineffectual, yet surely it should not on that account be abolished; any more than we

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. V., pp. 139, 259, 385 ff.

Digitized by Google

should altogether cease to eat because of stoppage of the throat. The laws which forbid the people to do wrong may be likened to the dikes which prevent the overflowing of water. If any one urging, then, that the dikes are very old and therefore useless, we should have them thrown down, what words could express the consequences of the impetuous rush and all-destroying overflow! Yet the provincials, when discussing the subject of opium, being perplexed and bewildered by it, think that a prohibition which does not *utterly* prohibit is better than one which does not effectually prevent the importation of the drug. . . . If we can but prevent the importation of opium, the exportation of dollars will then cease of itself, and the two offences will both at once be stopped. Moreover, is it not better, by continuing the old enactments, to find even a partial remedy for the evil, than by a change of the laws to increase the importation still further?"

He then proceeds to show that the native article could not compete with the foreign, for it would not be as well manufactured, and moreover "all men prize what is strange and undervalue whatever is in ordinary use." Its cultivation would occupy rich and fertile land now used for nutritive grains: "To draw off in this way the waters of the great fountain requisite for the production of food and raiment, and to lavish them upon the root whence calamity and disaster spring forth, is an error like that of the physician who, when treating a mere external disease, drives it inward to the heart and centre of the body. Shall the fine fields of Kwangtung, which produce their three crops every year, be given up for the cultivation of this noxious weed?" He says the question does not concern property and duties, but the welfare and vigor of the people; and quotes from the *History of Formosa* a passage showing the way in which the natives there were enervated by using it, and adds that the purpose of the English in introducing opium into the country has been to weaken and enfeeble it. Kanghi long ago (1717) remarked, he observes, "There is cause for apprehension, lest in the centuries or millenniums to come China may be endangered by collisions with the various nations of the West who come hither from beyond the seas." And now, in less than two centuries, "we see the commencement of that danger which he apprehended."

Digitized by Google

The suggestion of Hü Nai-tsí, to allow it to the people and interdict the officers, is called bad casuistry, "like shutting a woman's ears before you steal her earrings." He shows that this distinction will be vain, for it will be impossible to say who is of the people and who are officers, for all the latter are taken from the body of the former. The permission will induce people to use it who now refrain from fear of the laws; for even the proposal has caused "thieves and villains on all hands to raise their heads and open their eyes, gazing about and pointing the finger under the notion that when once these prohibitions are repealed, thenceforth and forever they may regard themselves far from every restraint and cause of fear." He asserts that nothing but strong laws rigidly carried into effect will restrain them from their evil ways, and concludes by recommending increased stringency in their execution as the only hope of reformation.

This spirited paper was supported by another from a sub-censor, Hü Kiu, on the necessity of checking the exportation of silver, and recommending that a determined officer be sent to punish severely the native traitors, which would add dignity to the laws; and then the barbarians would be awed and consequently reform and be entirely defeated in their designs of conquering the country. He cites several instances of their outrageous violation of the laws, such as levelling graves in Macao for the purpose of making a road over them, landing goods there for entering them at Canton in order to evade the duties and port charges, and even riding in sedans with four bearers, like Chinese officers. Force needed only to be put forth a little and they would again be humbled to subjection; but if they still brought the pernicious drug, then inflict capital punishment upon them as well as upon natives. The sub-censor agrees with Chu Tsun regarding the designs of foreigners in doing so, that they wished first to debilitate and impoverish the land as a preparatory measure, for they never smoked the drug in their own country, but brought it all to China. This prevailing impression was derived mainly from the abstinence of foreign merchants and seamen.

Both these papers were transmitted to Canton for deliberation,

Digitized by Google

although the local officers had already sent a memorial to the cabinet approving the suggestions of Hü Nai-tsí. At this time, however, it was properly remarked that "there had been a diversity of opinion in regard to it, some requesting a change in the policy hitherto adopted, and others recommending the continuance of the severe prohibitions. It is highly important to consider the subject carefully in all its bearings, surveying at once the whole field of action so that such measures may be adopted as shall continue forever in force, free from all failure." This subject, the most important, it cannot be doubted, which had ever been deliberated upon by the Emperor of China and his council, was now fairly brought before the whole nation; and if all the circumstances be taken into consideration, it was one of the most remarkable consultations of any age or country. A long experience of the baneful effects of opium-smoking upon the health, minds, and property of those who used it, had produced a deep conviction in the minds of well-wishers of their country of the necessity of some legal restraint over the people; while the annual drainage of specie at the rate of three or four million sterling for what brought misery and poverty in its train, alarmed those who cared only for the stability and prosperity of the country. The settlement or management of the question was one of equal difficulty and importance, and the result proved that it was quite beyond the reach of both their power and wisdom. Fully conscious of the weak moral principle in themselves and in their countrymen, they considered it right to restrain and deter the people by legislative enactments and severe penalties. Ignorant of the nature of commercial dealings, they thought it both practicable and necessary to limit the exportation of specie; for not having any substitute for coin or any system of national credit, there was serious hazard, otherwise, that the government would ultimately be bankrupted. It is unjust to the Chinese to say, as was argued by those who had never felt these sufferings, that all parties were insincere in their efforts to put down this trade, that it was a mere affectation of morality, and that no one would be more chagrined to see it stop than those apparently so strenuous against it. This assertion was made by Lord Palmerston in Parliament and re-echoed

Digitized by Google

by the Indian officials; but those who have candidly examined the proceedings of the Chinese, or have lived among the people in a way to learn their real feelings, need not be told how incorrect is the remark. The highest statesman and the debilitated, victimized smoker alike agreed in their opinion of its bad effects, and both were pretty much in the position of a miserable lamb in the coil of a hungry anaconda.

The debate among the Chinese excited a discussion among foreigners, most of whom were engaged in the traffic. Here the gist of the question turned upon the points whether opium was really a noxious stimulant *per se*, and whether the Chinese government was sincere in its prohibitions in the face of the notorious connivance of the officers along the coast from Hainan to Tientsin. One writer conclusively proved its baneful effects upon the system when taken constantly, and that its habitual use in the smallest degree almost certainly led to intemperate or uncontrollable use; he then charges the crime of murder upon those who traffic in it, and asserts that "the perpetuating and encouraging and engaging in a trade which promotes disease, misery, crime, madness, despair, and death, is to be an accomplice with the guilty principals in that tremendous pursuit." He exposes the fallacy, hypocrisy, and guilt of the question whether it be less criminal for a man to engage in a pursuit which he knows to be injurious to his fellow-men, because if he does not do so some one else will. The Court of Directors, even, whom all the world knows to be chief managers of the cultivation, manufacture, and sale of the drug, says in one of its despatches that "so repugnant are their feelings to the opium trade, they would gladly, in compassion to mankind, put a total end to the consumption of opium if they could. But they cannot do this, and as opium will be grown somewhere or other, and will be largely consumed in spite of all their benevolent wishes, they can only do as they do"!

Another Englishman engaged in the traffic defended it on the ground that what is bad now was always bad; and the Emperor and his ministers had doubtless other grounds for their sudden opposition. He asserts that opium is "a useful soother, a harmless luxury, and a precious medicine, except to those who

Digitized by Google

abuse it," and that while a few destroy themselves, the prudent many enjoy a pleasing solace, to get which tends to produce the persevering economy and the never-ceasing industry of the Chinese. He estimates that at a daily allowance of one and one-third ounce not more than one person in three hundred and twenty-six touches the pipe, and that there were not *more* than nine hundred and twelve thousand victimized smokers in the Empire. He also remarked that the present mode of conducting the trade by large capitalists kept it respectable, and that if their characters were held up to odium and infamy it would get into the hands of desperadoes, pirates, and marauders. He looked upon the efforts to put it down as utterly futile as the proclamations of Elizabeth were to put down hops, or the Counterblaste of James to stop tobacco.

This rejoinder was responded to by two writers, who clearly exhibited its unsoundness and ridiculed the plea that the trade should be kept in the hands of gentlemen and under the direction of a monopoly. The smuggler brought his vessel on the coast, and there waited till the people came off for his merchandise, disposing of it without the least risk to himself, "coolly commenting on the injustice of the Chinese government in refusing the practice of international law and reciprocity to countries whose subjects it only knows as engaged in constant and gross infraction of laws, the breaking of which affects the basis of all good government, the morals of the country." The true character of the smuggling trade is well set forth:

> Reverse the picture. Suppose, by any chance, that Chinese junks were to import into England, as a foreign and fashionable luxury, so harmless a thing as arsenic or corrosive sublimate; that after a few years it became a rage; that thousands, yea, hundreds of thousands used it, and that its use was, in consequence of its bad effects, prohibited. Suppose that, in opposition to the prohibition, junks were stationed in St. George's Channel with a constant supply, taking occasional trips to the Isle of Wight and the mouth of the Thames when the officers were sufficiently attentive to their duty at the former station to prevent its introduction there. Suppose the consumption to increase annually, and to arouse the attention of the government and of those sound-thinking men who foresaw misery and destruction from the rapid spread of an insidious, unprofitable, and dangerous habit. Suppose, in fact, that, *mutato nomine*, all which has been achieved here had been practised there. Suppose some conservators of the public morals to be aroused at last, and to remonstrate against

Digitized by Google

its use and increase; and that among the nation sending forth this destroyer to prey on private happiness and public virtue, one or two pious and well-meaning *bonzes* were to remonstrate with their countrymen on the enormity of their conduct:—how wonderfully consolatory to one party, and unanswerable to the other, must be the remark of the well-dressed and well-educated Chinese merchant: "Hai ya! my friend, do not you see my silk dress and the crystal knob on my cap; don't you know that I have read and can quote Confucius, Mencius, and all the Five Books; do you not see that the barbarians are passionately fond of arsenic, that they will have it, and even go so far as to pay for it; and can you, for one moment, doubt that it would not be much worse for them if, instead of my bringing it, it were left to the chance, needy, and uncertain supply which low men of no capital could afford to bring?"[1]

The writer shows that instead of only one person in every three hundred and twenty-six using the pipe, it was far more probable that at least one out of every one hundred and fifty (or about two million five hundred thousand in all) of the population was a victimized smoker. The assertion of its being a harmless luxury to the many, like wine or beer, is disputed, and the sophisticated argument of its use as a means of hospitality exploded. "What would a benevolent and sober-minded Chinese think," he asks, "were the sophistry of the defenders of this trade translated for him? Where would he find the high-principled and high-minded inhabitants of the far-off country? How could he be made to comprehend that the believers in and practisers of Christian morality advocated a trade so ruinous to his country? That the government of India compelled the growth of it by unwilling ryots; and that, instead of its being brought to China by 'desperadoes, pirates, and marauders,' it was purveyed by a body of capitalists, not participating certainly in what they carry, but supplying the Indian revenue safely and peaceably; that the British government and others encouraged it; and that the agents in the traffic were constantly residing at Canton, protected by the government whose laws they outraged, but monstrously indignant, and appealing to their governments, if No. 2 longcloths are classed as No. 1 through the desperate villany of some paltry custom-house servant?"

The other writer exposes the sinful fallacy of the argument

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol V., p. 409.

Digitized by Google

of expediency, and then proceeds to show how great an obstacle it is in the way of diffusing the gospel among the Chinese. We must refer to their own remarks[1] for the fuller development of the arguments, but this one showed the earnestness of his convictions by offering a premium of £100 for the best essay "showing the effects of the opium trade on the commercial, political, and moral interests of the nations and individuals connected therewith, and pointing out the course they ought to pursue in regard to it." There was, however, so little interest in the subject that this premium was never awarded, though the proposal was extensively advertised both in China and England.

The governor of Canton and his colleagues soon learned that the feeling at court was rather against legalizing the drug, though they were directed to report concerning the amount of duty proper to be levied on it; and to show their zeal, arrested several brokers and dealers. A-ming, one of the linguists, was severely tortured and exposed in the cangue for exporting sycee; others escaped similar treatment by absconding. The chief superintendent naïvely expressed his opinion that "the legalization of the trade in opium would afford his Majesty's government great satisfaction," but suggested that the gradual diversion of British capital into other channels would be attended with advantageous consequences. To one situated between his own government, which promoted the preparation and importation of opium, and the Chinese government, which was now making extraordinary efforts to regulate it, and deeply sensible of the injury resulting from its use to the people around him, and to the reputation of his own and all foreign nations from the constant infraction of the laws, the proposed step of legalization offered a timely relief. No one was more desirous of putting a stop to this destructive traffic than Captain Elliot, but knowing the impossibility of checking it by laws, he naturally wished to see the multitude of political and commercial evils growing out of smuggling done away with. There were, indeed, many things to urge in favor of this

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. V., pp. 407, 413, and passim.

Digitized by Google

course; but the fact ought never to be lost sight of, and be mentioned to the lasting credit of the Emperor Taukwang and his advisers, in the midst of their perplexity and weakness, that he would not admit opium because it was detrimental to his people.

The conflict was now fairly begun; its issue between the parties, so unequally matched—one having almost nothing but the right on its side, the other assisted by every material and physical advantage—could easily be foreseen. Captain Elliot, as the recognized head of the British trade, received an order through the hong merchants from the provincial authorities to drive away the receiving-ships from Lintin, and send the Emperor's commands to his king, that henceforth they be prohibited coming. He replied that he could not transmit any orders to his own sovereign which did not come to him direct from the government, and quoted the recent instance of the governor-general of Fuhkien communicating directly with the captain of a British ship of war. The governor was therefore forced to send his orders to the prefect and colonel of the department to be enjoined on Captain Elliot. He replied by promising to send it to his country, and adds, in true diplomatic style, unworthy of himself and his nation: "He has already signified to your excellency, with truth and plainness, that his commission extends only to the regular trade with this Empire; and further, that the existence of any other than this trade has never yet been submitted to the knowledge of his own gracious sovereign." Captain Elliot transmitted with these "orders" a minute account of the condition of the opium trade, and a memorandum respecting the desirableness of opening communication with the court. Lord Palmerston, in reply, intimates that "her Majesty's government do not see their way in such a measure with sufficient clearness to justify them in adopting it at the present moment." He adds that no protection can be afforded to "enable British subjects to violate the laws of the country to which they trade. Any loss, therefore, which such persons may suffer in consequence of the more effectual execution of the Chinese laws on this subject, must be borne by the parties who have brought that loss on themselves by

Digitized by Google

their own acts." A most paradoxical but convenient position for this "honorable" officer of the English government to assume, and worthy to be recorded in contrast to the utterances from Peking.

Near the close of 1837 the British flag was again hauled down at Canton, and the superintendent returned to Macao because he refused to superscribe the word *pin*, or 'petition,' upon his communications, according to his instructions, and the governor declined to receive them without it. In July, 1838, Sir Frederick Maitland arrived in the Wellesley (74), and was brought into correspondence with the Chinese Admiral Kwan, in consequence of the forts firing upon an English schooner passing the Bogue and stopping her to inquire whether he or any of his crew or women were on board. The Wellesley and her two consorts were anchored near the forts, and the Chinese admiral made a full apology for the mistake; his conduct in the affair was very creditable both to his judgment and temper. As soon as Sir Frederick arrived, Captain Elliot vainly endeavored to reopen correspondence with the governor by sending an open letter to the city gates, which was received and taken to him, but returned in the evening because it had not the required superscription.

Having now fully taken the sense of the Empire in the replies received from all its highest officials, the Emperor Taukwang increased his efforts to suppress the trade. In April, 1838, a native named Kwoh Sí-ping was publicly strangled at Macao by express command of the Emperor, as a warning to others not to engage in exporting sycee or introducing opium. The execution was conducted by the district magistrate and subprefect with dignity and order in the presence of a crowd of natives and foreigners. More than fifty small craft under the English or American flag were constantly plying off the port of Canton, most of them engaged in smuggling. Sometimes the government exerted its power; boats were destroyed, smugglers seized and tortured, and the sales checked; then it went on again as briskly as ever. These boats were easily caught, for the government could exercise entire control over its own subjects; but when the foreign schooners, heavily armed and manned,

Digitized by Google

sailed up and down the river delivering the drug, the revenue cruisers were afraid to attack them. The hong merchants addressed a note to all foreign residents concerning them, the close of which vividly exhibits their unlucky position as the "responsible advisers" of the barbarians: "Lately we have repeatedly received edicts from the governor and hoppo severely reprimanding us; and we have also written to you, gentlemen of the different nations, several times, giving you full information of the orders and regulations, that you might perfectly obey them and manage accordingly; but you, gentlemen, continue wholly regardless."

Collisions became more and more frequent between the Chinese and their rulers, in consequence of the increased stringency of the orders from court. In September, in an affray near Whampoa between the military and villagers, several persons were killed and scores arrested. The retailers at Canton were imprisoned, and those found in other places brought there in chains. In Hupeh it was reported that the officers had punished arrested smokers by cutting out a portion of the upper lip to incapacitate them from using the pipe. Still, such was the venality of the officers that even at this time the son of Governor Tăng himself was engaged in the traffic, and many of the underlings only seized the drug from the smuggling-boats to retail it themselves. The memorial of Hwang Tsioh-tsz', advising the penalty of death, was promulgated in Canton; and the Emperor's rescript urged to stronger measures. In a rapid survey of the ill effects from the use of the drug, Hwang acknowledges that it had extended to Manchuria, and pervaded all ranks of official and humble life. The efflux of silver "into the insatiate depths of transmarine regions" had caused the rate of exchange for cash to rise until it was difficult to carry on the business of government. He then reviews the different plans proposed for checking the cause of all this evil, such as guarding the ports, stopping the entire foreign trade, arresting the smugglers, shutting up the shops, and, lastly, encouraging the home growth. He confesses that the bribes paid the coast-guard service and the maritime officers are so great as entirely to prevent their vigilance; and that the home-prepared drug does not yield

Digitized by Google

the same stimulus as the foreign article. As a last resort, he proposes to increase the penalties upon the consumers, laying all the blame upon them, and advises death to be awarded all who smoke opium after a year's warning has been given them. The well-known subdivision of responsibility was to be made doubly strong by requiring bonds of every tithing and hundred that there were no smokers within their limits. Officers found guilty were not only to be executed, but their children deprived of the privilege of competing at the public examination. One cannot withhold a degree of sympathy for the helpless condition of the officers and statesmen of a great Empire sincerely desirous of doing their country service, and yet so sadly ignorant of their false position by their assumption of supremacy over the very nation whom they could not restrain, and whose officials they rejected for a formality. They might as well have tried to concert a measure to stop the Yangtsz' River in its impetuous flow, as to check the opium trade by laws and penalties.

On December 3, 1838, about two peculs of opium were seized while landing at the factories, and the coolies carried into the city. They declared that they had been sent to Whampoa by Mr. Innes, a British merchant, to obtain the opium from an American ship consigned to Mr. Talbot. The governor ordered the hong merchants to expel these two gentlemen and the ship within three days, on the garbled testimony of the two coolies. Mr. Talbot sent in a communication, stating that neither the ship nor himself had anything to do with the opium, and obtained a reversal of the order to leave. The hong merchants were justly irritated, and informed the Chamber of Commerce that they would not rent their houses to any who would not give a bond to abstain from such proceedings, and refusing to open the trade until such bonds were given; they furthermore declared their intention to pull Mr. Innes' house down if he refused to depart. The Chamber protested that "the inviolability of their personal dwellings was a point imperatively necessary" for their security; the hong merchants then resorted to entreaty, stating their difficult position between their own rulers on one side, who held them responsible for executing their orders, and the foreigners on the other, over

Digitized by Google

whom they had little or no power. The Chamber could only express its regret at the unjust punishment inflicted on a hong merchant, Punhoyqua, for this, and reassert its inability to control the acts of any foreigner.

The governor had put himself in this helpless condition by refusing Captain Elliot's letters; and it is remarkable that he hesitated to arrest Mr. Innes, when one word would have set the populace on the factories and their tenants, and destroyed them all. As an alternative, he now resolved to show foreigners what consequences befel natives who dealt in opium; and while Mr. Innes still remained in Canton, he sent an officer with fifteen soldiers to execute Ho Lau-kin, a convicted dealer, in front of the factories. The officer was proceeding to carry his orders into effect near the American flag-staff, when the foreigners sallied out, pushed down the tent he was raising, and told him in loud tones not to execute the man there. Quite unprepared for this opposition, he hastily gathered up his implements and went into a neighboring street, where the man was strangled. Meanwhile a crowd collected to see these extraordinary proceedings, whom the foreigners endeavored to drive away, supposing that a little determination would soon scatter them. Blows, however, were returned, the foreigners driven into their factories, and the gates shut; the crowd had now become a mob, and under the impression that two natives had been seized, they began to batter the fronts and break the windows with stones and brickbats. They had had possession of the square about three hours, and the danger was becoming imminent, when the Pwanyu hien, or 'district magistrate,' came up, with three or four other officers, attended by a small body of police. Stepping out of his sedan he waved his hand over the crowd, the lictors pouncing upon three or four of the most active, whom they began to chastise upon the spot, and the storm was quelled. About twenty soldiers, armed with swords and spears, took their stand in a conspicuous quarter; the magistrate and his retinue seated themselves, leaving the hong merchants and the police to disperse the crowd. The foreigners were also assured that all should be kept quiet during the night, but not a word was said to them regarding their conduct

Digitized by Google

in interfering with the execution or their folly in bringing this danger upon themselves. This occurrence tended to impress both the government and people with contempt and hatred for foreigners and their characters, fear of their designs, and the necessity of restraining them. The majority of them were engaged in the opium trade, and all stood before the Empire as violators of the laws, while the people themselves suffered the dreadful penalty.

There is no room for the details and correspondence connected with this remarkable incident.[1] Captain Elliot now reappeared in Canton, and at a general meeting expressed his conviction of the cause of these untoward events in the smuggling traffic on the river, declaring his intention of ordering all the British-owned vessels to leave it within three days; he moreover expressed the hope that the further step of opening communication with the provincial authorities to obtain their co-operation to drive them out would be prevented by their speedy departure. Injunctions and entreaties to his countrymen were, however, alike unavailing, and he accordingly addressed the governor, stating his wish to co-operate in driving them out. In a public notice he remarked that "this course of traffic was rapidly staining the British character with deep disgrace" and exposing the regular commerce to imminent jeopardy, and that he meant to shrink from no responsibility in drawing it to a conclusion. The governor, as was expected, praised the superintendent for his offer, but left him to do the whole work; remarking, in that peculiar strain of Chinese conceit which so effectually forestalls our sympathy for their difficulties, that "it may well be conceived that these boats trouble me not one iota:"—as if all he had to do was to arise in his majesty, and they were gone. The boats, however, gradually left the river. Mr. Innes retired, and the regular trade was resumed in January.

No British consular officer has been placed in a more difficult and humiliating dilemma, and Captain Elliot did himself honor in his efforts. The English newspapers ridiculed him as a tide-waiter of the Chinese custom-house, a man who aided the

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VII., pp. 437–456.

Digitized by Google

cowardly authorities to carry their orders into effect, thereby staining the honor of her Majesty's commission. Although he did not intend to draw a line between the heinousness of the opium trade inside of the Bogue and its harmlessness beyond that limit, still there were good reasons, under his peculiar position, for some action to show the Chinese government that British power would not protect British subjects in violating the laws of China.

At this period the Peking government had taken its course of action. Reports had been received from the provincial authorities almost unanimously recommending increased stringency to abolish the traffic. History, so far as we know, does not record a similar example of an arbitrary, despotic, pagan government taking the public sentiment of its own people before adopting a doubtful line of conduct. It was a far more momentous and difficult question than even the cabinet deemed it to be, while their conceit and ignorance incapacitated them from dealing with it prudently or successfully. There can be no reasonable doubt that the best part of his people and the moral power of the nation were with their sovereign in this attempt. Hü Nai-tsí was dismissed for proposing legalization, and three princes of the blood degraded for smoking opium; arrests, fines, tortures, imprisonments, and executions were frequent in the provinces on the same grounds, all showing the determination to eradicate it. The governor of Hukwang, Lin Tseh-sü, was ordered to proceed to Canton, with unlimited powers to stop the traffic. The trade there was at this time almost suspended, the deliveries being small and at losing prices. Many underlings were convicted and summarily punished, and on February 26th Fung A-ngan was strangled in front of the factories for his connection with opium and participation in the affray at Whampoa. The foreign flags, English, American, Dutch, and French, were all hauled down in consequence. The entire stoppage of all trade was threatened, and the governor urged foreigners to send all opium ships from Chinese waters.

Commissioner Lin arrived in Canton March 10th. The Emperor sent him to inquire and act so as thoroughly to remove the source of the evil, for, says he, "if the source of the evil

Digitized by Google

be not clearly ascertained, how can we hope that the stream of pernicious consequences shall be stayed? It is our full hope that the long-indulged habit will be forever laid aside, and every root and germ of it entirely eradicated; we would fain think that our ministers will be enabled to substantiate our wishes, and so remove from China the dire calamity." It was reported in Canton that the monarch, when recounting the evils which had long afflicted his people by means of opium, paused and wept, and turning to Lin, said: "How, alas! can I die and go to the shades of my imperial father and ancestors, until these direful evils are removed!" Such was the chief purpose of this movement on the part of the Chinese government, and Lin was invested with the fullest powers ever conferred on a subject. Although long experience of the ineffectiveness of Chinese edicts generally lead those residing in the country to regard them as mere verbiage, still, to say that they are all insincere and formal because they are ineffectual, is to misjudge and pervert the emotions of common humanity. Lin appears to have been well fitted for the mission; and if he had been half as enlightened as he was sincere, he would perhaps have averted the war which followed, and been convinced that legalization was the most judicious step he could recommend.

The commissioner spent a week making inquiries, during which time nothing was publicly heard from him; while natives and foreigners alike anxiously speculated as to his plans. It was not until March 18th that his first proclamations were issued to the hong merchants and foreigners; that to the latter required them to deliver up all the opium in the storeships, and to give bonds that they would bring no more, on penalty of death. The poor hong merchants were, as usual, instructed regarding their responsibility to admonish the foreigners, and strictly charged to procure these bonds, or they would be made examples of. Three days were allowed for compliance with these demands. The hoppo had already issued orders detaining all foreigners in Canton—in fact, making them prisoners in their own houses; communication with the shipping was suspended, troops were assembled about the factories, and armed cruisers stationed on the river. The Chamber of Commerce wrote to the hong

Digitized by Google

merchants on the 20th, through their chairman, W. S. Wetmore, an American, stating that they would send a definite reply in four days, and adding that "there is an almost unanimous feeling in the community of the absolute necessity of the foreign residents of Canton having no connection with the opium traffic."

This paper was taken to the commissioner, and about ten o'clock P.M. the hong merchants again met the Chamber, and told them that if *some* opium was not given up two of their number would be beheaded in the morning. The merchants present, including British, Parsees, Americans, and others, acting as individuals, then subscribed one thousand and thirty-seven chests, to be tendered to the commissioner; but the hong merchants reported next morning that this amount was insufficient. In the afternoon Lin sent an invitation to Mr. Dent, a leading English merchant, to meet him at the city gates, who expressed his willingness to go if the commissioner would give him a safe-warrant guaranteeing his return within a day. The hong merchants returned without him; and the next morning two of them, Howqua and Mowqua, came again to his house with chains upon their necks, having been sent with an express order for him to appear. They repaired to the Chamber of Commerce then assembled, but all soon returned to Mr. Dent's house, where an animated debate took place, which resulted in the unanimous decision on the part of the foreign residents that he should not go into the city without the safe-warrant. This unexpected demand caused much discussion among foreigners, as it was doubtless a contrivance to secure a hostage; and the refusal of the former to give a written safe-warrant would probably have ended in seizing Mr. Dent and imprisoning him, if Howqua, the senior hong merchant, had not allowed everything to wait over one day till Monday. Mr. Dent's partner had that day seen the *an-chah sz'*, or 'provincial judge,' in the city to explain why he hesitated to go to Lin.

On the 22d Captain Elliot sent a note to the governor expressing his readiness to meet the Chinese officers, and use "his sincere efforts to fulfil the pleasure of the great Emperor as soon as it was made known to him." The Chinese could hardly draw any other conclusion from this admission than that he

Digitized by Google

had the power, as well as the inclination to put down the opium trade, which he certainly could not do; it tended therefore to deceive them. This note was followed by a letter to Captain Blake, of the Larne, requesting his assistance in defending British property and life, and by a circular ordering all British ships, opium and others, to proceed to Hongkong and prepare themselves to resist every act of aggression. A second circular to British subjects detailed the reasons which compelled him to withdraw all confidence in the "justice and moderation of the provincial government," and demand passports for all his countrymen who wished to leave Canton, while counselling every one to make preparations to remove on board ship. Elliot now proceeded to Canton, which he safely reached about sunset Sunday evening, dressed in naval uniform and closely attended by cruisers watching his movements. The British flag was then hoisted, and Captain Elliot, conducting Mr. Dent to the consulate in the most conspicuous manner, summoned a public meeting, read his notice of the previous day, and told the hong merchants to inform the commissioner that he was willing to let Mr. Dent go into the city if he could accompany him.

His coming up the river had excited the apprehensions of the Chinese that he meant to force his way out again, and orders were issued to close every pass around the factories. By nine o'clock that evening the foreigners, about two hundred and seventy-five in number, were the only inmates of their houses. Patrols, sentinels, and officers, hastening hither and thither, with the blowing of trumpets and beating of gongs, added confusion to the darkness of the night.

On the 25th most of the foreign merchants of all nations signed a paper pledging themselves "not to deal in opium, nor to attempt to introduce it into the Chinese Empire:" how many of the individuals subsequently broke this pledge on the ground that it was forced from them cannot be stated, but part of the firms which signed it afterward actively engaged in the trade. Captain Elliot applied for passports for himself and countrymen, and requested the return of the servants, avoiding all reference to his promise of three days before, or mention of the cause of these stringent proceedings. His requests were

Digitized by Google

refused; no native was allowed to bring food or water to the factories; letters could not be sent to Whampoa or Macao, except at imminent risk; the confinement was complete, and had been effected without the least personal harm. The heavy punishment which had fallen on Kwoh Sí-ping, Ho Lau-kin, and Fung A-ngan had now come near to the foreign agents of the traffic; but not an individual had been touched.

The commissioner next issued an exhortation to all foreigners, urging them to deliver the drug on four grounds, viz., because they were men and had reason; because the laws forbade its use, under severe penalties; because they should have feelings for those who suffered from using it; and because of their present duress, from which they would then be released. This paper, as were all those issued by Lin, was characterized by an unusual vigor of expression and cogency of reasoning, but betrayed the same arrogance and ignorance which had misled his predecessors. One extract will suffice. Under the first reason why the opium should be delivered up, he says that otherwise the retribution of heaven will follow them, and cites some cases to prove this:

> Now, our great Emperor, being actuated by the exalted virtue of heaven itself, wishes to cut off this deluge of opium, which is the plainest proof that such is the intention of high heaven! It is then a traffic on which heaven looks with disgust, and who is he that may oppose its will? Thus in the instance of the English chief Robarts, who violated our laws; he endeavored to get possession of Macao by force, and at Macao he died! Again, in 1834, Lord Napier bolted through the Bocca Tigris, but being overwhelmed with grief and fear he almost immediately died; and Morrison, who had been darkly deceiving him, died that very year also! Besides these, every one of those who have not observed our laws have either been overtaken with the judgments of heaven on returning to their country, or silently cut off ere they could return thither. Thus then it is manifest that the heavenly dynasty may not be opposed!

Two communications to Captain Elliot, from Lin through the prefect and district magistrates, accompanied this exhortation, stating his view of the superintendent's conduct in contumaciously resisting his commands and requiring him to give up the opium. For once in the history of foreign intercourse with China, these commands were obeyed, and after intimating his

Digitized by Google

readiness to comply, Captain Elliot issued a circular on March 27th, which from its important results is quoted entire:

I, Charles Elliot, chief superintendent of the trade of British subjects in China, presently forcibly detained by the provincial government, together with all the merchants of my own and the other foreign nations settled here, without supplies of food, deprived of our servants, and cut off from all intercourse with our respective countries (notwithstanding my own official demand to be set at liberty that I might act without restraint), have now received the commands of the high commissioner, issued directly to me under the seals of the honorable officers, to deliver into his hand all the opium held by the people of my own country. Now I, the said chief superintendent, thus constrained by paramount motives affecting the safety of the lives and liberty of all the foreigners here present in Canton, and by other very weighty causes, do hereby, in the name and on the behalf of her Britannic Majesty's government, enjoin and require all her Majesty's subjects now present in Canton, forthwith to make a surrender to me for the service of her said Majesty's government, to be delivered over to the government of China, of all the opium under their respective control: and to hold the British ships and vessels engaged in the opium trade subject to my immediate direction: and to forward me without delay a sealed list of all the British-owned opium in their respective possession. And I, the said chief superintendent, do now, in the most full and unreserved manner, hold myself responsible for, and on the behalf of her Britannic Majesty's government, to all and each of her Majesty's subjects surrendering the said British-owned opium into my hands, to be delivered over to the Chinese government. And I, the said chief superintendent, do further especially caution all her Majesty's subjects here present in Canton, owners of or charged with the management of opium the property of British subjects, that failing the surrender of the said opium into my hands at or before six o'clock this day, I, the said superintendent, hereby declare her Majesty's government wholly free of all manner of responsibility in respect of the said British-owned opium. And it is specially to be understood that proof of British property and value of all British-owned opium surrendered to me agreeable to this notice, shall be determined upon principles, and in a manner hereafter to be defined by her Majesty's government.[1]

The guarantee offered in this notice was deemed sufficient by the merchants, though Captain Elliot had no authority to take such a responsibility, and exceeded his powers in giving it; being the authorized agent of the crown, however, his government was responsible for his acts, though the notice did not, nor could it, set any price upon the surrendered property.

At the time it was given it could not be honestly said that

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VII., p. 633.

Digitized by Google

the lives of foreigners were in jeopardy, and Lin had promised to reopen the trade as soon as the opium was delivered and the bonds given. What the other "very weighty causes" were must be guessed; but the requisition was promptly answered, and before night twenty thousand two hundred and eighty-three chests of opium had been surrendered, which Captain Elliot the next day tendered to the commissioner. Their market value at the time was not far from nine millions of dollars, and the cost price nearly eleven millions. Directions were sent to twenty-two vessels to anchor near the Bogue, to await orders for its delivery, the commissioner and the governor themselves going down forty miles to superintend the transfer. On April 2d the arrangements for delivering the opium were completed, and on May 21st it was all housed near the Bogue.

When the guard was placed about the factories, no native came near them for three days, but on the 29th a supply of sheep, pigs, poultry, and other provisions was "graciously bestowed" upon their inmates, most of whom refused them as gifts, which impressed Lin with the belief that they were not actually suffering for food. On May 5th the guards and boats were removed, and communication resumed with the shipping. Sixteen persons, English, Americans, and Parsees, named as principal agents in the opium trade, were ordered to leave the country and never return. On the 24th Captain Elliot left Canton, accompanied by the ten British subjects mentioned among the sixteen outlawed persons. In order still further to involve her Majesty's ministers in his acts, he forbade British ships entering the port, or any British subject living in Canton, on the ground that both life and property were insecure; there were, however, no serious apprehensions felt by other foreigners remaining there; and the propriety of the order was questioned by those who were serious sufferers from its action.

This success in getting the opium encouraged Lin to demand the bond, but although the captains of most of the ships signed it when the port was first opened, it was not required long after. The British merchants at Canton prepared a memorial to the foreign secretary of their government, recapitulating the aggressive acts of the Chinese government in stopping the legal trade,

Digitized by Google

detaining all foreigners in Canton until the opium was surrendered, and requiring them to sign a bond not to bring it again, which involved their responsibility over those whom they could not control; but nothing was said in it of their own unlawful acts, no reference to their promises of a few months before, no allusion to the causes of these acts of aggression. Its burden was, however, to urge the government to issue a notice of its intentions respecting the pledge given them by the superintendent in his demand for the opium.

Lin referred to Peking for orders concerning the disposal of the opium, and his Majesty commanded the whole to be destroyed by him and his colleagues in the presence of the civil and military officers, the inhabitants of the coast, and the foreigners, "that they may know and tremble thereat." Captain Elliot, on the other hand, before it had all been delivered, wrote to his government, April 22d, his belief that the Chinese intended to sell it at a high price, remunerating the owners and pocketing the difference, preparatory to legalizing the traffic, and making some arrangements to limit the annual importation to a certain number of chests; consequently he recommended an "immediate and strong declaration to exact complete indemnity for all manner of loss" from the Chinese. He calls Lin "false and perfidious," though it is difficult to see why he applies these epithets to one who seems to have sincerely endeavored to carry out instructions, while his own communications certainly tended to mislead him. The sense of the responsibility he had assumed, and the irritating confinement under which it was written, account, in a measure, for this despatch, so different in its tenor from his previous declarations.

The opium was destroyed in the most thorough manner, by mixing it in parcels of two hundred chests, in trenches, with lime and salt water, and then drawing off the contents into the adjacent creek at low tide. Overseers were stationed to prevent the workmen or villagers from purloining the opium, and one man was summarily executed for attempting to carry away a small quantity. No doubt remained in the minds of persons who visited the place and examined the operation, that the

Digitized by Google

entire quantity of twenty thousand two hundred and ninety-one chests received from the English (eight more having been sent from Macao) was completely destroyed:—a solitary instance in the history of the world of a pagan monarch preferring to destroy what would injure his subjects, rather than to fill his own pockets with its sale. The whole transaction will ever remain one of the most remarkable incidents in human history for its contrasts, and the great changes it introduced into China.[1]

The course of events during the remainder of the year 1839 presents a strange mixture of traffic and hostility. The British merchants were obliged to send their goods to Canton in ships sailing under other flags, which led the commissioner to issue placards exhorting British captains to bring their ships into port. This procedure brought out a rejoinder from Captain Elliot, giving the reasons why he had forbidden them to do so, and complaining of his own unjust imprisonment as unbecoming treatment to the "officer of a friendly nation, recognized by the Emperor, who had always performed his duty peacefully and irreproachably." Captain Elliot's own correspondence shows, however, that this is an unfair statement of the political relations between them.

While this matter of trade was pending, a drunken affray occurred at Hongkong with some English sailors, in which an inoffensive native named Lin Wei-hí lost his life. The commissioner ordered an inquest to be held, and demanded the murderer, according to Chinese law. The superintendent empanelled a regular court of criminal and admiralty jurisdiction at Hongkong, to try the seamen who had been arrested. He also offered

[1] Sir Robert Peel declared that this property was obtained by her Majesty's agent without any authority; but when the six millions of dollars were received from the Chinese as indemnity, the British government made its subjects receive their money in London, charged them with all expenses instead of paying it in China, and priced the opium at scarcely half what the East India Company had received from it, by taking the market rates when the trade at Canton was nominal. The merchants lost, with accruing interest, about two millions sterling, and "Sir R. Peel transferred a million sterling from their pockets to the public treasury."—*Chinese Repository*, Vol. XIII., p. 54 (from London paper).

Digitized by Google

a reward of $200 for such evidence as would lead to the conviction of the offenders; and advanced in all $2,000 to the friends of the deceased as some compensation for their heavy loss, and to the villagers for injuries done to them in the riot. Having formed the court, he politely invited the provincial officers to attend the trial; and when it was over, informed them that he had been unable to ascertain the perpetrator of the deed. Five sailors were convicted and punished for riotous conduct by fine and imprisonment, and sent to England under arrest, but to everybody's surprise were all liberated on their arrival. The proceedings in this matter were perfectly fair, and the commissioner should have been satisfied; but his subsequent violent conduct really placed the dispute on an entirely new ground, though he regarded his action as simply exercising the same prerogative of control over foreigners in both cases. Finding his demand for the murderer disregarded, he took measures against the English then in Macao which were calculated to bring serious loss upon the Portuguese population. His course was prompted by anger at losing the trade, and only injured his own cause. In order to relieve the unoffending and helpless people in Macao, Captain Elliot and all British subjects who could do so left the settlement August 26th, and went on board ship for a time. During this interval Lin and Governor Tăng visited Macao under an escort of Portuguese troops, but retired the same day. This move placed the English beyond his reach, but did not advance his efforts to drive the opium ships from the coast, or induce the regular traders to enter the port. The sales of opium had begun again even before the destruction of the drug, and rapidly increased when it was known that that immense quantity had really been destroyed. Lin now began to see that his plan of proceedings might not ultimately prove so successful as he had anticipated, for he was bound to remain at Canton until he could report the complete suppression of the contraband and safe continuance of the legal trade.

Finding that the British fleet at Hongkong was too strong to drive away, he forbade the inhabitants supplying the ships with provisions. This led to a collision between the British and three junks near Kowlung, which resulted, however, in no serious

Digitized by Google

damage. On September 11th, Captain Elliot, having ordered all British vessels engaged in the opium trade to leave the harbor and coast, they mostly proceeded to Namoh. The Chinese burned the next day a Spanish vessel, the Bilbaino, in Macao waters, under the impression that she was English.

In unison with all the strange features of this struggle, while hostilities were going on, negotiations for continuing trade were entered into in October, when the commissioner signed the agreement, and Captain Elliot furnished security for its being conducted fairly. But the unauthorized entrance of the English ship Thomas Coutts, whose captain signed the bond, led to a rupture and the renewed demand for the murderer of Lin Wei-hí. Captain Elliot ordered all British ships to reassemble at Tungku under the protection of the ships of war Volage and Hyacinth. He also proceeded to the Bogue to request a withdrawal of the threats against the British until the two governments could arrange the difficulties, when an engagement ensued between Admiral Kwan, with a fleet of sixteen junks, and the two ships of war; three junks were sunk, one blown up, and the rest scattered. The commissioner had been foiled in all his efforts to destroy the opium trade and continue the legal commerce. As a last effort against the British, he declared their trade at an end after December 6, 1839, and issued an edict like that of Napoleon at Berlin, November 19, 1806, forbidding their goods to be imported in any vessels. An enormous amount of property now lay at Canton and on board ship waiting to be exchanged in the course of regular trade, but only the opium traffic flourished.

The close of the year 1839 saw the two nations involved in serious difficulties, and as the events here briefly recounted were the cause of the war, it will be proper to compare the opinions of the two parties, in order to arrive at a better judgment upon the character of that contest. The degree of authority to be exercised over persons who visit their shores is acknowledged by Christian nations among themselves to be nearly the same as that over their own subjects; but none of these nations have conceded this authority to unchristian powers, as Turkey, Persia, or China, mainly because of the

Digitized by Google

little security and justice to be expected. The Chinese have looked upon foreigners resorting to their ports as doing so by sufferance; they entered into no treaty to settle the conditions of authority on either side, for the latter considered themselves as sojourners and aliens, and the natives were unaware of their rights in the matter. Their right to prohibit the introduction of any particular articles was acknowledged, and the propriety of making regulations as to duties allowed. But traders from western nations often set light by the fiscal regulations of such countries as China, Siam, etc., if they can do so without personal detriment or loss of character; and where there is a want of power in the government, joined to a lack of moral sense in the people, all laws are imperfectly executed. No one acquainted with these countries is surprised at frequent and flagrant violations of law, order, justice or courtesy, both among rulers and ruled; yet the obligation of foreigners to obey just laws made known to them surely is not to be measured solely by the degree of obedience paid by a portion of the people themselves.

The Chinese government discussed the measure of legalizing a trade it could not suppress, but before constructing a law to that effect, it determined to make a final and more vigorous effort to stamp it out. Might makes right, or at least enforces it; had the Chinese possessed the power to destroy every ship found violating their laws, although the loss of life would have been dreadful, no voice would have been raised against the proceeding. "Her Majesty's government," said Lord Palmerston, "cannot interfere for the purpose of enabling British subjects to violate the laws of the country to which they trade." But in that case this power would not have been dared; the known weakness of the government emboldened both sellers and buyers, until Captain Elliot told the Foreign Secretary that "it was a confusion of terms to call the opium trade a smuggling trade."

Lin probably wished to get Mr. Dent as a hostage for the delivery of the opium in the hands of his countrymen, not to punish him for disobedience to previous orders; expecting no opposition to this demand, he seems to have been unwilling to

Digitized by Google

seize him immediately, preferring to try persuasion and command longer, and detain him and other foreigners until he was obeyed; Captain Elliot he viewed as a mere head merchant. When, therefore, the attempt was made, as he supposed, to take Mr. Dent out of his hands, he was apprehensive of a struggle, and instantly took the strongest precautionary measures to prevent the prey escaping. Considerate allowance should be granted for the serious mistake he made of imprisoning the innocent with the guilty; but when Captain Elliot took Mr. Dent thus under his protection, the commissioner felt that his purpose would be defeated, and no opium obtained, if he began to draw a distinction. Besides, conscious that he possessed unlimited power over a few defenceless foreigners, nearly all of whom were in his eyes guilty, he cared very little where his acts fell. There is no good evidence to show that *he* seriously meditated anything which would hazard their lives. When he had received this vast amount of property, success evidently made him careless as to his conduct, and judging the probity and good faith of foreigners by his own standard, he deemed it safest to detain them until the opium was actually in his possession. Concluding that Captain Elliot did attempt to abscond with Mr. Dent, it is less surprising, therefore, that he should have looked upon his offers to "carry out the will of the great Emperor," when set at liberty, as a lure rather than a sincere proposition. In imprisoning him he had no more idea he was imprisoning, insulting, threatening, and coercing the representative of a power like Great Britain, or violating rules western powers call *jus gentium*, than if he had been the envoy from Siam or Lewchew. Whether he should not have known this is another question, and had he candidly set himself, on his arrival at Canton, to ascertain the power, position, and commerce of western countries, he would have found Captain Elliot sincerely desirous of meeting him in his endeavors to fulfil his high commission. Let us deal fairly by the Chinese rulers in their desire to restrain a traffic of which they knew and felt vastly more of its evil than we have ever done, and give Lin his due, though his endeavors failed so signally.

The opium was now obtained; no lives had been lost, nor any

Digitized by Google

one endangered; but the British government felt bound to pay its own subjects for their chests. The only source Captain Elliot suggested was to make the Chinese refund. The Emperor ordered it to be destroyed, and the commissioner, after executing that order, next endeavored to separate the legal from the contraband trade by demanding bonds; they had been taken in vain from the hong merchants, but there was more hope if taken directly from foreigners. The bonds were not made a pretext for war by the English ministry; that, on the part of England, according to Lord John Russell, was "set afoot to obtain reparation for insults and injuries offered her Majesty's superintendent and subjects; to obtain indemnification for the losses the merchants had sustained under threats of violence; and, lastly, to get security that persons and property trading with China should in future be protected from insult and injury, and trade maintained upon a proper footing." Looking at the war, therefore, as growing out of this trade, and waged to recover the losses sustained by the surrendry to the British superintendent, it was an *unjust* one. It was, moreover, an *immoral* contest, when the standing of the two nations was examined, and the fact could not be concealed that Great Britain, the first Christian power, really waged this war against the pagan monarch who had vainly endeavored to put down a vice hurtful to his people. The war was looked upon in this light by the Chinese; it will always be so looked upon by the candid historian, and known as the Opium War.

On the other hand, the war was felt by every well-wisher to China to involve far higher principles than the mere recovery of the opium; and had it been really held to be so by the English ministry, they would have done well to have alluded to them. Lin's reiterated demands for the murderer of Lin Wei-hí, though told that he could not be found, was only one form of the supremacy the Chinese arrogantly assumed over other nations. In all their intercourse with their fellow-men they maintained a patronizing, unfair, and contemptuous position, which left no alternative but withdrawal from their shores or a humiliating submission that no one feeling the least independence could endure. Not unjustly proud of their country in compari-

Digitized by Google

son with those near it, her Emperor, her rulers, and her people all believed her to be impregnably strong, portentously awful, and immensely rich in learning, power, wealth, and territory. None of them imagined that aught could be learned or gained from other nations; for the "outside barbarians" were dependent for their health and food upon the rhubarb, tea, and silks of the Inner Land. They had seen, indeed, bad specimens of western power and people, but there were equal opportunities for them to have learned the truth on these points. The reception of the religion of the Bible, the varied useful branches of science, and the many mechanical arts known in western lands, with the free passage of their own people abroad, were all forbidden to the millions of China by their supercilious rulers; they thereby preferred to remain the slaves of debasing superstitions, ignorant of common science, and deprived of everything which Christian benevolence, philanthropy, and knowledge could and wished to impart to them. This assumption of supremacy, and a real impression of its propriety, was a higher wall around them than the long pile of stones north of Peking. Force seemed to be the only effectual destroyer of such a barrier, and in this view the war may be said to have been necessary to compel the Chinese government to receive western powers as its equals, or at least make it treat their subjects as well as it did its own people. There was little hope of an adjustment of difficulties until the Chinese were compelled to abandon this erroneous assumption; the conviction that it was unjust, unfounded, and foolish in itself could safely be left to the gradual influences of true religion, profitable commerce, and sound knowledge.

The report of the debate in the British Parliament on this momentous question hardly contains a single reference to this feature of the Chinese government. It turned almost wholly upon the opium trade, and whether the hostilities had not proceeded from the want of foresight and precaution on the part of her Majesty's ministers. The speeches all showed ignorance of both principles and facts: Sir James Graham asserted that the governors of Canton had sanctioned the trade; Sir George Staunton that it would not be safe for British power in India

Digitized by Google

if these insults were not checked, and that the Chinese had far exceeded in their recent efforts the previous acknowledged laws of the land! Dr. Lushington maintained that the connivance of the local rulers acquitted the smugglers; Sir John Hobhouse truly stated that the reason why the government had done nothing to stop the opium trade was that it was profitable; and Lord Melbourne, with still more fairness, said: "We possess immense territories peculiarly fitted for raising opium, and though I would wish that the government were not so directly concerned in the traffic, I am not prepared to pledge myself to relinquish it." The Duke of Wellington thought the Chinese government was insincere in its efforts, and therefore deserved little sympathy; while Lord Ellenborough spoke of the million and a half sterling revenue "derived from foreigners," which, if the opium monopoly was given up and its cultivation abandoned, they must seek elsewhere. No one advocated war on the ground that the opium had been seized, but the majority were in favor of letting it go on because it was begun. This debate was, in fact, a remarkable instance of the way in which a moral question is blinked even by conscientious persons whenever politics or interest come athwart its course. No declaration of war was ever published by Queen Victoria, further than an order in council to the admiralty, in which it was recited that "satisfaction and reparation for the late injurious proceedings of certain officers of the Emperor of China against certain of our officers and subjects shall be demanded from the Chinese government;" the object of this order was, chiefly, to direct concerning the disposal of such ships, vessels, and cargoes belonging to the Chinese as might be seized. Perhaps the formality of a declaration of war against a nation which knew nothing of the law of nations was not necessary, but if a minister plenipotentiary from Peking had been present at the debate in Parliament in April, 1840, he would have declared the motives and proceedings of his government strangely misrepresented. It was time that better ideas of one another should find place in their councils, and that means should be afforded the rulers of each nation to learn the truth.

The Chinese apparently foresaw the coming struggle, and

Digitized by Google

began to collect troops and repair their forts; Lin, now governor-general of Kwangtung, purchased the Chesapeake, a large ship, and appointed an intendant of circuit near Macao, to guard the coasts. The English carried on their trade under neutral flags, and Lin made no further efforts to annoy them. He, however, wrote two official letters to Queen Victoria, desiring her assistance in putting down the opium trade, in which the peculiar ideas of his countrymen respecting their own importance and their position among the nations of the earth were singularly exhibited.[1] Notwithstanding the causes of complaint he had against the English, he behaved kindly to the surviving crew of the Sunda, an English vessel wrecked on Hainan, and sent them, on their arrival at Canton, to their countrymen.

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. VIII., pp. 9–12, 497–503; Vol. IX., pp. 241–257.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIII.

PROGRESS AND RESULTS OF THE FIRST WAR BETWEEN ENGLAND AND CHINA.

On June 22, 1841, before the advance part of the British force reached China, Sir Gordon Bremer published a notice of the blockade of the port of Canton. The Americans living there had requested Lin to let all their ships arriving before it was laid on come directly up the river. He granted the application, but declared it "to be an egregious mistake, analogous to an audacious falsehood, that the English contemplated putting on a blockade." Captain Elliot also issued a manifesto to the people, which was widely dispersed, setting forth the grievances which had been suffered by the English at the hands of Lin, and assuring them that no harm would come while they pursued their peaceful occupations—for the quarrel was entirely between the two governments, and the Queen had deputed high officers to make known the truth to the Emperor.

Sir Gordon Bremer's force of five ships of war, three steamers, and twenty-one transports reached Tinghai harbor July 4th. In reply to a summons to surrender, the Chinese officers declared their determination to resist as far as their means allowed; but complained of the hardship of being made answerable for wrongs done at Canton, upon which place the blow should properly fall. The attack was made on Sunday, July 5th, when the Wellesley (74) opened her guns on the town, which were answered by the junks and batteries. A few minutes sufficed to silence the latter, and three thousand men landed and menaced Tinghai, whose walls were lined with soldiers. The town was evacuated during the night, most of the respectable inhabitants going to Ningpo; many of the Chinese high

Digitized by Google

officials were killed, which, with the experience of the terrible foreign force brought against them, disheartened their troops beyond measure.

Two days after this attack the joint plenipotentiaries, Admiral G. Elliot and Captain Elliot, arrived in the Melville (74) at Chusan. To the authorities at Amoy and Ningpo they sent copies of Lord Palmerston's letter to the Emperor, with a request to forward them to Peking; the officials declined, however, undertaking any such responsibility.

The prefect of Ningpo took measures to prevent the people of Chusan from "aiding and comforting" their conquerors by sending police-runners to mark those who supplied them; a purveyor from Canton was seized and brought back. An idea that the Chinese people wished to throw off the Manchu yoke, and a desire to conciliate the islanders, led the British to take less decided measures for supplying themselves with provisions than they otherwise would. A small party was sent to recapture the purveyor, but its unsuccessful trip over the island showed the unwillingness of the people to have anything to do with their invaders, while their dread was increased by the arrest of several village elders. Mr. Gutzlaff was stationed at Chusan, doing his best to reassure the people; and as he went around exhorting them to act peaceably, some of them asked him, "If you are so desirous of peace, why did you come here at all?"

After arranging the government of the island, the stations of the troops, and blockading of Amoy, Ningpo, and the mouths of the Min and Yangtsz' Rivers, the two plenipotentiaries left Tinghai and anchored off the Pei ho August 11th. Captain Elliot went ashore, and finding that Kíshen, the governor-general of Chihlí, was at Taku, delivered the letter to his messenger, who returned with a request for ten days' delay in which to lay it before the Emperor. During this interval the ships visited the coast of Liautung to procure provisions, which they obtained with some difficulty. No message coming off, a strong boat-force was sent ashore on the 28th, with a menacing letter to Kíshen, when it was ascertained that the reply had in reality been awaiting the return of the ships during several days. Arrangements were now made for a personal interview at Taku

Digitized by Google

between Kíshen and Captain Elliot, on Sunday, August 30th, in a large tent. Kíshen argued his side of the question with great tact and ability, sincerely urging the argument that his master had the most unquestionable right to treat the English as he had done, for they were and had enrolled themselves his tributary subjects. He could not treat definitely on all the points in dispute, and obtained a further delay of six days in order to refer again to Peking. The conclusion was the reasonable arrangement that Kíshen should meet the English plenipotentiaries at Canton, where the truth could be better ascertained; and on September 15th the squadron returned to Chusan.

While these things were taking place at Taku, there had occurred a few skirmishes elsewhere. A shipwrecked crew had fallen into Chinese hands and been carried to Ningpo, and some foraging parties were roughly handled. Lin tried to inspirit his troops by offering large rewards for British ships and subjects, and a force of about one thousand two hundred men was stationed in and around the Barrier at Macao. Captain Smith, however, moved two sloops and a steamer near their position, and soon drove the soldiers away, destroying their guns and barracks.

Lin was busy enlisting volunteers and preparing the defences of Canton, but in the summer he was ordered to return "with the speed of flames" to Peking. His Majesty was unnecessarily severe upon his servant: "You have not only proved yourself unable to cut off their trade," he says, "but you have also proved yourself unable to seize perverse natives. You have but dissembled with empty words, and so far from having been any help in the affair, you have caused the waves of confusion to arise, and a thousand interminable disorders are sprouting; in fact, you have been as if your arms were tied, without knowing what to do: it appears, then, you are no better than a wooden image. When I meditate on all these things, I am filled with anger and melancholy." Trade was carried on notwithstanding the blockade, by sending tea and goods through Macao; and many ships loaded for England and the United States.

Digitized by Google

Admiral Elliot entered into a truce with Ílípu, governor-general of Chehkiang, by which each party agreed to observe certain boundaries. Sickness and death had made sad inroads into the health and numbers of the troops at Tinghai, owing to their bad location, malaria, and improper food; more than four hundred out of the four thousand landed in July having died, and three times that number being in the hospitals. The people dared not reopen their shops until after the truce; the visits paid to various parts of the island better informed the inhabitants of the personal character of their temporary rulers, and a profitable trade in provisions encouraged them to farther acquaintance.

The two plenipotentiaries returned November 20th, and immediately sent a steamer bearing a despatch from Ílípu to Kíshen; the vessel was fired upon by an officer unacquainted with the meaning of a white flag—the intent and privileges of which were after this understood; Kíshen made an ample apology for this mishap. Negotiations were resumed during the month of December, but the determination of the Chinese to resist rather than grant full indemnity for the opium was more and more apparent. Kíshen probably found more zeal among the people for a fight than he had supposed, but his own desires were to settle the matter "more soon, more better." What demands were made as a last alternative are not known, but one of them, the cession of the island of Hongkong, he refused to grant, and broke off the discussion. Commodore Bremer thereupon attacked and took the forts at Chuenpí and Taikok-tau on January 7th, when the further progress of his forces was stayed by Kíshen, who was present and saw enough to convince him of the folly of resistance.

On January 20th the suspended negotiations had proceeded so far that Captain Elliot announced the conclusion of preliminary arrangements upon four points, viz., the cession of the island and harbor of Hongkong to the British crown, an indemnity of six millions of dollars in annual instalments, direct official intercourse upon an equal footing, and the immediate resumption of English trade at Canton. By these arrangements Chusan and Chuenpí were to be immediately restored to

Digitized by Google

the Chinese, the prisoners at Ningpo released, and the English allowed to occupy Hongkong. One evidence of Kíshen's "scrupulous good faith," mentioned in Captain Elliot's notice, is the edict he put up on Hongkong, telling the inhabitants they were now under English authority. Two interviews took place after this, at the last of which it was plain that two of the four stipulations, viz., the first instalment of a million of dollars, and opening of trade by February 1st, would not be fulfilled. The intimations of the designs of the court were so evident that the treaty was probably never even presented to the Emperor for ratification.

Kíshen carried his negotiations thus far, with the hope perhaps that an adjustment of the difficulties on such terms would be accepted by his imperial master. On the other hand, Lin and his colleagues memorialized him as soon as Kíshen came to Canton against peaceful measures, and their recommendations as to the necessity of resistance were strongly backed by the mortifying loss of Chusan. The approach of a large force to the Pei ho alarmed his Majesty, and conciliatory measures were taken, and a reference to Canton proposed before settling the dispute; when the men-of-war left, he was inclined for peace, and issued orders not to attack the ships while the discussions were going on. But the memorials had already changed his mind, and war was determined on at the date of signing the treaty. It is probable if, instead of seizing Chusan, which had given no cause of provocation, the English had gone up the Yangtsz' kiang and Pei ho, and stationed themselves there until their demands were granted, peace would have been soon made. But, in that case, would the vain notion of their supremacy have left the Chinese?

Looking back forty years, one can recognize the benefit to both parties which resulted from the failure of this treaty. The great desire of Christian people, who believed that China was finally to receive the gospel, was that it might be opened to their benevolent efforts, but this treaty left the country as closed as ever to all good influences, commercial, political, social, and religious, while the evils of smuggling, law-breaking, and opium-smoking remained unmolested. The crisis which had brought

Digitized by Google

out this expedition was not likely soon to recur, and if this failed to break down its seclusiveness, no other nation would attempt the task. Every well-wisher of China cherished the hope that, since this unfortunate conflict must needs be, its outcome would leave the entire land fully accessible to the regenerating, as well as shielded from the evil influences of Christian nations.

Captain Elliot appreciated the dilemma into which the Emperor had been brought by the acts of Lin, and knew that ignorance was much more the misfortune than the fault of both; he acted humanely, therefore, in pursuing a mild course at first, until the points at issue had been fairly brought before the people as well as the cabinet. However justly some parts of his conduct may have merited criticism, this praiseworthy feature of his policy by no means earned the torrent of abuse he received for consistently pursuing such a course. His countrymen would have had him burn, kill, and destroy, as soon as the expedition reached the coast, before even stating his demands at court; and during his negotiations with Kíshen, and when Chusan was restored, a smile of contempt at his supposed gullibility was everywhere seen. The treaty of the Bogue, though formed in good faith by both commissioners, was rejected by both sovereigns, though for opposite reasons; by Victoria, because it did not grant enough, by Taukwang, because it granted too much.

The Emperor issued orders to resume the war, collect troops from the provinces upon Canton and Tinghai, in order to "destroy and wipe clean away, to exterminate and root out the rebellious barbarians," and urged the people to regard them with the same bitterness they did their personal enemies. His mandate is couched in strong terms, saying that his enemies have been rebellious against heaven, opposing reason, one in spirit with the brute beasts, "beings that the overshadowing vault and all-containing earth can hardly suffer to live," obnoxious to angels and men, and that he must discharge his heaven-conferred trust by sweeping them from the face of the earth. This decree exhibited the true principles of action of this proud government, which deliberately rejected the offer of

Digitized by Google

peace, and determined to uphold its fancied supremacy to the utmost. China must now win or break.

Hostile intentions had become so evident that Captain Elliot announced that Commodore Bremer would return to the Bogue with the force; the boats of the Nemesis were fired upon while sounding, and the battery near Anunghoy was attacked the same day that Chusan was evacuated. Rewards of $50,000 were offered for Elliot, Bremer, Morrison, and other ringleaders, and all the defences put in the best condition. On February 26th the Bogue forts were all taken, Admiral Kwan falling at his post. The British had nine ships, assisted by less than five hundred troops, and two steamers. The Chinese force was probably over three thousand, but it made no resistance after the batteries were taken; the total loss was supposed to be not far from a thousand. The forts were built so solidly that few were killed by the broadsides of the ships, and their magazines so well protected that no explosions took place; the powder found in them was used to demolish the walls. There were in all eight large forts on the sides of the river and Wangtong Island, forming altogether a line of batteries which would have been impregnable in the hands of European troops, and was not without reason deemed to be so by the Chinese themselves.

The next day the small ships moved up to the First Bar, where a long fortification on the river bank, and an intrenched camp of two thousand troops, defended by upward of a hundred cannon, with a strong raft thrown across the river, showed a resolution to make a stand. The ships and steamers opened a hot fire upon the batteries and camp, which returned it as well as they could, but the loss of life was greatest when the English landed. Many instances of personal bravery showed that the Chinese were not all destitute of courage, but without discipline and better weapons it was of no avail. Nearly one-fourth were killed, their camp burned, the Chesapeake and all her stores blown up, and most of the crew killed. The raft was easily removed by the steamers, to the mortification of the Chinese, who had trusted that this might prove a permanent barrier to the approach of ships to the city. From this point the way was open to within five miles of Canton, and when the

Digitized by Google

forts at that place were taken, the prefect met Captain Elliot on March 3d with a flag of truce proposing a suspension of hostilities for three days.

Kíshen had already been ordered to return to Peking to await his trial; his memorial[1] on hearing of his degradation does him credit. Íliang was left in command of the province until four general officers, leading large bodies of troops, should arrive. The highest of these was Yihshan, a nephew of the Emperor, assisted by Yang Fang, Lungwăn, and Tsíshin. On the part of the English, Major-General Sir Hugh Gough arrived from India to take command of the land forces, and Sir Gordon Bremer sailed for Calcutta to procure recruits. Bodies of troops were gathering in and around Canton to the amount of five or six thousand, most of whom had come from the North-West Provinces, and were not less strange and formidable to the citizens than were their foreign enemies.

After the truce had expired the English moved toward Canton by both the channels leading to the city, the iron steamer Nemesis proceeding up the Inner Passage, subduing all obstacles in her way until every fort, raft, battery, camp, and stockade between the ocean and Canton had been taken or destroyed, and the city lay at their mercy. The factories had been kept safely, and were occupied by British troops just two years after Lin had imprisoned the foreigners there. A second truce was agreed upon March 20th, by which trade was allowed to proceed on the old mode; merchant ships accordingly advanced up the river, and for about six weeks trade went on uninterruptedly—one party getting their tea and the other their duties. The new governor, Kí Kung, together with the "rebel-quelling general" Yihshan, then arrived, and the people, thinking that a slight cause would disturb the truce, took advantage of it to remove their effects, well aware how much they would suffer from their own army in case of trouble.

Toward the middle of May the hostile intentions of the Chinese were manifest, though cloaked under professions of amity; and on the 21st Captain Elliot notified all foreigners to go

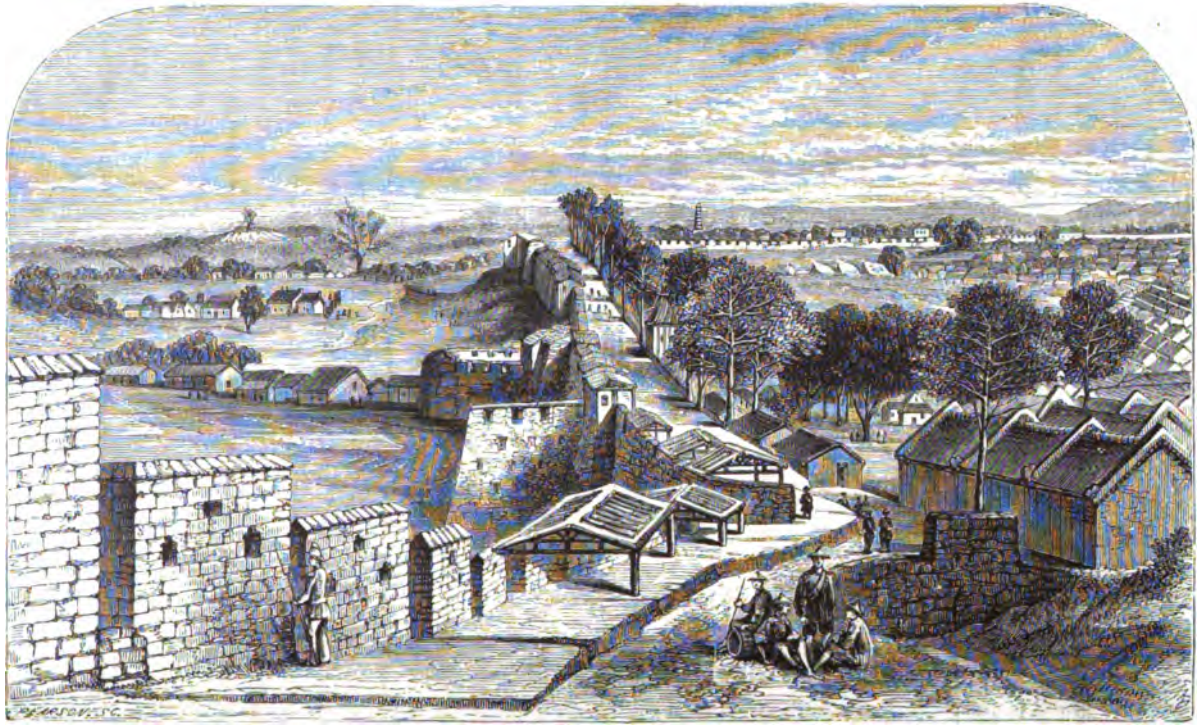
[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. X., p. 285.

Digitized by Google

aboard ship. The secret preparations for attack were very extensive. Large fire-boats and rafts were prepared, masked batteries erected along the river, troops quartered in the temples, and large cannon placed in the streets. The day before the notice of Captain Elliot was issued, the prefect had the impudence to publish a proclamation assuring all classes of the peaceful intentions of the commissioners. Finding their prey gone, a night attack was made by land and water on the ships, but none were seriously injured. As daylight advanced the Nemesis went in pursuit of the fire-boats and junks, and burned upward of sixty, while three men-of-war silenced the batteries along shore. Meantime the Chinese troops searched the factory buildings for arms and pillaged three of the hongs, to the consternation of the prefect, who told the commissioner that he would be forced to pay for losses thus sustained. On the 24th the land and naval forces under Sir Hugh Gough and Sir Fleming Senhouse arrived from Hongkong and prepared to invest the city. Most of the troops debarked above it, at Neishing, under the personal directions of Sir Fleming, who had provided many boats in which the force of two thousand six hundred men, besides followers, guns, and stores, were towed about twelve miles. A detachment landed and took possession of the factories. Sir Hugh Gough remained near the place of debarkation till the next morning, when the whole body moved onward to attack the forts and camps behind the city. As the English advanced the Chinese found that their shot did not reach them, so that after an hour's firing they began to collect outside of the forts, preparatory to retiring. The advance pushed on, and sent them scampering down the hills toward the city; the intrenched camp was carried with considerable loss to its defenders, who everywhere ran as soon as the fight came to close quarters; but in the forts there were many furious struggles.

On the 26th a driving rain stopped all operations; and a parley was also requested from the now deserted city walls by two officers, who agreed to send a deputation to make arrangements for surrender. Night came on before any heralds appeared, so that it was not till morning that the troops were in

Digitized by Google



WALL OF CANTON CITY. (FROM FISHER.)

Digitized by Google

position, the guns loaded and primed, port-fires lighted, and everything in readiness to open fire, when a messenger arrived from Captain Elliot, desiring further operations to be delayed until he had concluded his negotiations. The terms were: that the forces should remain in position until a ransom of $6,000,000 was paid; that the three imperial commissioners and all their troops should march sixty miles from the city; that compensation for the loss of property in the factories and burning the Spanish brig Bilbaino should be at once handed over or secured; and that the Chinese troops, nearly fifty thousand in number, should evacuate the city. Captain Elliot ought indeed to have demanded a personal apology from Yihshan and his colleagues for their infamous treachery before letting them go. His acceptance of this ransom and sparing the city from capture were sharply criticised at the time, and the contemptuous bearing of the citizens during the sixteen ensuing years of their possession proved that it was an ill-timed mercy. How much influence the orders from home to be careful of the tea-trade had in this course cannot be learned.

While the English forces were occupying the heights the lawless soldiers from Kweichau and Kwangsí began to plunder the citizens, who retaliated till blood was shed and more than a thousand persons were killed in the streets; a patriot mob of villagers, numbering about fifteen thousand, attacked the few British troops left on the hills north of the city, but a prompt advance on the part of Sir Hugh drove this rabble a rout of some three miles. Upon their reappearance next day, the prefect was told that if they were not instantly dispersed the city would be bombarded; the threats and persuasions of the commissioners, aided by a British officer, finally induced the mob to retire. The superiority of discipline over mere numbers was probably never more remarkably exhibited; though the Chinese outnumbered the English more than forty to one, not a single foreigner was killed.

On the 31st the prefect furnished five hundred coolies to assist in transporting the guns and stores to the river side, and ten days after Captain Elliot's first notice everything was restored to the Chinese. The casualties among the British forces

Digitized by Google

were fourteen killed and one hundred and twelve wounded, but about three hundred died from sickness. The losses of the Chinese from first to last could hardly have been much under five thousand men, besides thousands of cannon, ginjals, and matchlocks. In posting their forces, placing their masked batteries, and equipping their troops and forts, the Chinese showed considerable strategy and skill, but lack of discipline and confidence rendered every defence unavailing. Yihshan and his associates memorialized the Emperor, detailing their reasons for ransoming the city and requesting an inquiry into their conduct.[1]

The sickness of the troops compelled the British force to remain at Hongkong to recruit and wait for reinforcements. Commodore Bremer returned as joint plenipotentiary, bringing additional forces from Calcutta, and the expedition was on the point of sailing northward when both he and Captain Elliot were wrecked in a tyfoon, and this detained the ships a few days longer. Before they sailed Sir Henry Pottinger and Admiral Sir William Parker arrived direct from England to supersede them both. Sir Henry announced his appointment and duties, and also sent a communication to the governor of Canton, assuring him that the existing truce would be observed as long as the Chinese did not arm their forts, impede the regular trade, which had been lately reopened to British ships by imperial command, or trouble the merchants residing in the factories. The trade went on at Canton, after this, without any serious interruption during the war, the usual duties and charges being paid as if no hostilities existed.

The expedition moved northward, August 21st, under the joint command of Sir Hugh Gough and Admiral Parker, consisting of two seventy-fours and seven other ships of war, four steamers, twenty-three transports, and a surveying vessel, carrying in all about three thousand five hundred troops. Six ships and four or five hundred Indian troops remained off Canton and at Hongkong, to compel the observance of the truce. The force reached Amoy, and after a hasty reconnoissance attacked

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. X. (p. 402), in which, and in Vols. VIII., IX., and XI., most of the official papers issued from the Chinese and English authorities during the war are contained.

Digitized by Google

all its defences, which were carried without much loss of life on either side. The city was taken on the 27th, and all the arms and public stores, wall-pieces, ginjals, matchlocks, shields, uniforms, bows, arrows, spears, and quantities of powder were destroyed; five hundred cannon were found in the forts. When H. M. S. Blonde came into this harbor, fourteen months previous, to deliver the letter for Peking, the fortifications consisted only of two or three forts near the city, but every island and protecting headland overlooking the harbor had since been occupied and armed, while a line of stone wall more than a mile long, with embrasures roofed by large slabs covered with earth to protect the guns, had been built, and batteries and bastions erected at well-chosen points. The broadsides of the ships had little effect here, and it was not until the troops landed and drove out the garrisons, who "stood right manfully to their guns," that the fire slackened, and the Chinese retreated. The city was completely pillaged by native robbers, who ran riot during several weeks until the craven authorities came back and resumed their functions. The island of Kulang su was garrisoned by a detachment of five hundred and fifty troops, and three ships left to protect them. The British found one two-decker among the war junks, built on a foreign model, launched and ready for sea, carrying twenty guns; all were burned.

The English fleet again entered the harbor of Tinghai, September 29th, and found the beach much altered since February. Stone walls and fortifications extended two miles in front of the suburbs, besides sand-bags and redoubts thrown up on well-selected positions. They were taken after a defence marked with unusual courage; the general commanding the battery and all his suite were killed at their posts, and many hand-to-hand conflicts took place. But bravery and numbers were alike unavailing, and in two hours their defences were cleared, the walls of the town escaladed, the whole force scattered, and the island subdued, with the estimated loss to the Chinese of a thousand men. Great quantities of ordnance, among which were forty brass guns made in imitation of foreign howitzers, with military stores and provisions in abundance, were seized. A detachment was sent throughout the island to drive off the enemy's troops,

Digitized by Google

and announce to the inhabitants that they were now under English authority. They evinced none of the alarm they had done the year before; provisions came in, shops were opened, and confidence in these proclamations generally exhibited. A military government was appointed, and a garrison of four hundred men left to protect the island.

The military operations in Chehkiang were conducted by Yukien and Yu Pu-yun; both these men had urged war, and had done all they could to fortify Tinghai and Chinhai, whose batteries and magazines showed the vigor of their operations. The English fleet proceeded to Chinhai October 9th, and a force of about two thousand two hundred men, with twelve field pieces and mortars, landed next morning to attack the citadel and intrenched camp. There were nearly five thousand men in this position, who formed in good order as the English advanced, opening a well-directed fire upon the front column, but quite neglecting two detachments on their flanks; as the three opened upon them nearly simultaneously, their force was completely bewildered, and all soon broke and fled. Knowing nothing of the mode of asking for quarter, while some fled into the country, the greater part retreated toward the water, pursued by the three columns, hundreds being shot and hundreds drowned. Sir Hugh Gough sent out a flag with Chinese written upon it, to inform them that their lives would be spared if they yielded, but not more than five hundred either could or would throw down their arms. The water was soon covered with bodies, and fully fifteen hundred soldiers lost their lives. The town and its defences were bombarded, and the troops driven out. Yukien endeavored to drown himself on seeing the day was lost, but being prevented he retreated to Yüyau, where he committed suicide, as was said, by swallowing gold leaf. He was a Manchu, and could not brook his master's displeasure; but his atrocious cruelty to two Englishmen who fell into his hands, one of whom was flayed and then burnt to death, had aroused general detestation against him. About one hundred and fifty pieces of brass ordnance, with great quantities of gunpowder and other military stores, were destroyed. The guns and carriages in the fort and batteries were so well made and placed

Digitized by Google

that in some cases the victors on entering turned them against the flying Chinese. The frame of a wheel vessel, intended to be moved by human power, was found near Chinhai, showing, as did the brass guns, traversing carriages, and frigate at Amoy, that the Chinese were already imitating the machinery of war from their foes.

Ningpo was taken without resistance on the 13th. Many of the people left the city, and those who remained shut themselves in their houses, writing *shun min*, 'submissive people,' on the doors. Captain Anstruther took possession of his old prison—where he found the identical cage he had been carried in—and released all the inmates to make way for his detachment of artillery. About $100,000 in sycee were found in this building, upward of $70,000 in the treasury, many tons of copper cash in the mint, and rice, silk, and porcelain in the public stores, forming altogether the most valuable prizes yet secured. Sir Henry Pottinger intended at first to burn the city, but, happily for his reputation, he decided to occupy it as winter quarters. Leaving a garrison at Chinhai, he returned to Hongkong in February, 1842, Sir Hugh and the admiral remaining at the north.

The fall of Amoy, Tinghai, Chinhai, and Ningpo, instead of disheartening the Emperor, served rather to inspirit him. His commissioners, generals, and high officers generally did the best their knowledge and means enabled them to do, and when defeated, endeavored to palliate the discomfiture they could not entirely conceal by misrepresenting the force brought against them, and laying the blame upon the common people, the elements, the native traitors who aided the British, or the inefficiency of the naval armaments. The troops sent home with tokens of victory from Canton stimulated the war spirit in the western provinces. After they had gone Yihshan concocted measures of defence, one of which was to enlist two or three thousand volunteers, or "village braves," near the city, and place them under their own officers. The people having been taught to despise foreigners were easily incensed against them, and several cases of insult and wantonness were repeated and magnified in order to stir up a spirit of revenge. These

Digitized by Google

patriots supposed, moreover, that if the great Emperor had called on *them*, instead of entrusting the conduct of the quarrel to truckling traitorous poltroons like Kíshen and the prefect, they could have avenged him of his enemies.

Consequently the truce was soon broken in an underhand manner by sinking hundreds of tons of stones in the river. H. M. S. Royalist levelled the fortifications at the Bogue, and Captain Nias destroyed a number of boats at Whampoa. After the destruction of these forts and his retirement from the river, Yihshan directed his attention to erecting forts near the city, casting guns, and drilling the volunteers, who numbered nearly thirty thousand at the new year. He also gave a public dinner to the rich men of the city, in order to learn their willingness to contribute to the expenses of these measures. However, since no serious obstacles were placed in the way of shipping teas by the provincial officers, from the duties on which they chiefly derived the funds for these undertakings, the British officers deemed it advisable to let them alone.

The case was different at other points. The imperial government had supposed that Amoy would be attacked, because the visit of the Blonde showed that the barbarians, "sneaking in and out like rats," knew of its existence; but the people of that province, except near Amoy, took no particular interest in the dispute, and probably knew far less of it than was known in most parts of England and the United States; no newspapers, with "own correspondents" to write the "latest accounts from the seat of war," narrated the progress of this struggle, which to them was like the silent reflection of distant lightning in their own quiet firmament. The sack of Amoy was a heavy blow to its citizens, but the plunderers were mostly their countrymen; and when Captain Smith of the Druid had been there a short time in command, and his character became known, they returned to their houses and shops, supplied the garrison with provisions, and even brought back a deserter, and assisted in chasing some pirates. Rumors of attack were always brought to him, and his declarations allayed their fears, so that after the sub-prefect resumed his authority no disturbance occurred. The explanations of the missionaries on Kulang su, in diffusing a

Digitized by Google

better understanding of the object in occupying that island, also contributed to this result.

The loss of Chinhai and Ningpo threw the eastern parts of Chehkiang open to the invaders, and alarmed the court far more than the destruction of Canton would have done. The Emperor appointed his nephew, Yihking, to be "majesty-bearing generalissimo," and with him Tih-í-shun and Wănwei, all Manchus, to command the grand army and arouse the dwellers on the sea-coast to arm and defend themselves. "Ministers and people! Inhabitants of our dominions! Ye are all the children of our dynasty! For two centuries ye have trod our earth and eaten our food. Whoever among you has heavenly goodness must needs detest these rebellious and disorderly barbarians even as ye do your personal foes. On no account allow yourselves to be deceived by their wiles, and act or live abroad with them." Such was the closing exhortation of an imperial proclamation issued to encourage them. In order to raise funds for its operations, the government resorted to the sale of office and titles of nobility, and levied benevolences from rich individuals and contributions from the people; which, when large in amount, were noticed and rewarded. Kíshen, who had been tried at Peking and sentenced to lose his life, was for some reason reprieved to be associated with Yihking as an adviser, but never proceeded beyond Chihlí. Lin was also recalled from Ílí, if indeed he ever went beyond the Great Wall, and Ílípu, whose treatment and release of the prisoners at Ningpo had gained him the good-will of the English, was also sentenced to banishment, but neither did he go beyond the Desert.

Defences were thrown up at Tientsin and Taku to guard the passage to the capital, but the bar at the mouth of the Pei ho was its sufficient protection. Fearing that the English would advance upon the city of Hangchau, the troops of the province and all its available means were put into requisition. Sir Hugh Gough could only approach it by a land march from Ningpo, and deemed it advisable to wait for reinforcements, his available force being reduced to six hundred men on entering that city. The rewards given to the families of those who had fallen in battle, and the posthumous honors conferred by the Emperor,

Digitized by Google

stimulated others to deeds of valor and a determination to accomplish their master's vengeance. Yukien, "who gave his life for his country, casting himself into the water," received high titular honors in the hall of worthies, and his brother was permitted to bring his corpse within the city of Peking. The names of humbler servants were not forgotten in the imperial rescripts, and a place was granted them among those whom the "king delighteth to honor." Thus did the Chinese endeavor to reassert their supremacy, though their counsels and efforts to chastise the rebellious barbarians were not unlike the deliberations of the rats upon "how to bell the cat."

The occupation of Ningpo was an eyesore to the Chinese generals, but the citizens had learned their best interests and generally kept quiet. They showed their genius in various contrivances to carry off plunder, such as putting valuable articles in coffins and ash-baskets, wrapping them around corpses, packing them under vegetables or rubbish. One party overtook two persons near Ningpo running off with a basket between them; on overtaking and recovering it, a well-dressed lady was found coiled up, who, however, did not scream when detected. Another was found in a locker on board a junk, and as the captain was desirous of examining the mode of bandaging her feet, he told his men to lift the body out of the closet, when a scream explained the trick; she was dismissed, and the money she had endeavored to hide put into her hands. Opium was found in most of the official residences; its sale received no serious check from the war, and no reference was made to it by either party.

Toward the end of the year 1841, information was received of the collection of a large force at Yüyau. Two iron steamers soon landed seven hundred men, who took up a position for the night, intending to escalade the walls in the morning; but their defenders evacuated the place. The marines and seamen took the circuit of the walls, and found the troops, about a thousand strong, drawn up in array; and the two, after exchanging their fire, started on the run. The public stores were destroyed, and the town left to the care of its citizens, without much loss of life on either side. On his return the general visited Tsz'kí, but the troops and the authorities had decamped. The rice found in

Digitized by Google

the granaries was distributed to the townsmen, and the detachment returned to Ningpo December 31st. On a similar visit to Funghwa it was found that the authorities and troops had fled, so that to destroy the government stores and distribute the rice to the people was all that remained to be done. These two expeditions so terrified the "majesty-bearing generalissimo," Yihking, and his colleagues, that they fled to Suchau, in Kiangsu. With such leaders it is not strange that the villagers near Ningpo wished to enrol themselves under British rule; and the effect of the moderation of the English troops was seen in the people giving them little or no molestation after the first alarm was over, and supplying their wants as far as possible.

The force had fairly settled in its quarters at Ningpo, when the Chinese opened the campaign, March 10th, by a well-concerted night attack on the city. During the preceding day, many troops entered the city in citizen's clothes, and stationed themselves near the gates; and about three o'clock in the morning the western and southern gates were attacked and driven in. Colonel Morris ordered a party to retake the south gate, which was done, with considerable loss to the enemy; as usually happened, the moment the Chinese were opposed their main object was forgotten, and every man sought his own safety, thereby exposing himself more fully to destruction. On the approach of daylight the garrison assembled at the western gate, and dragging two or three howitzers through it, came upon the main force of the enemy drawn up in compact form, headed by an officer on horseback. The volleys poured into this dense mass mowed them down so that the street was choked with dead bodies, and the horse of the leader actually covered with corpses, from which he was seen vainly endeavoring to release himself. Those who escaped the fire in front were attacked in rear; at last about six hundred were killed, and the whole force of five thousand scattered by less than two hundred Europeans, with the loss of one man killed and six wounded.

The British then prepared to attack an intrenched camp of eight thousand troops near Tsz'kí, and about twelve hundred were embarked in the steamers. The Chinese had chosen their ground well, on the acclivity of two hills behind the town, and

Digitized by Google

in order to confound and disperse their enemy completely, the attacking force was divided so as to fall upon them on three sides simultaneously, which was done with great slaughter. The Chinese did not run until they began to close in with their opponents, when they soon found that their intimidating gesticulations and cheers, their tiger-faced shields and two-edged swords, were of no avail in terrifying the barbarians or resisting their pistols, bayonets, and furious onset. In these cases, emulation among the different parties of English troops to distinguish themselves occasionally degenerated into unmanly slaughter of their flying enemy, who were looked upon rather as good game than fellow-men, and pursued in some instances several miles. Most of the Chinese troops in this engagement and in the attack on Ningpo were from the western provinces, and superior in size and bodily strength to those hitherto met. They had been encouraged to attack Ningpo by a bounty to each man of four or five dollars, and pieces of sycee were found on their bodies. The Chinese lost a thousand slain on the field, many by their own act; the English casualties were six killed and thirty-seven wounded.

The conquerors set fire to the Chinese camp in the morning, consuming all the houses used as arsenals, with arms and ammunition of every kind. The force then proceeded to the Changkí pass, a defile in the mountains, but the imperialists had abandoned their camp, leaving only "a considerable quantity of good bread." In his despatch Sir Hugh speaks of the forbearance shown by his men toward the inhabitants; and efforts were taken by the English, throughout the war, to spare the people and respect their property. The English thus dispersed that part of the Grand Army which had been called out by the Emperor and his "majesty-bearing generalissimo" to annihilate the rebels. The fugitives spread such dismay among their comrades near Hangchau that the troops began to desert and exhibit symptoms of disbanding altogether; the spirit of dissatisfaction was, moreover, increased by the people, who very naturally grumbled at being obliged to support their unsuccessful defenders, as well as submit to their tyrannous exactions.

The Chinese near Ningpo and Chinhai had so much confi-

Digitized by Google

dence in the English, and were so greatly profited by their presence, that no disturbances took place. The rewards offered by the Chinese generals for prisoners induced the people to lay in wait for stragglers. One, Sergeant Campbell, was seized near Tinghai, put into a bag to be carried to the coast, where he was shipped in a junk and landed at Chapu, before being relieved of his hood. One of his ears was cut off with a pair of scissors, but after reaching Hangchau he was well treated. During his captivity there he was often questioned by the Chinese officers as to the movements, forces, and arms of his countrymen, and received a high idea of their intelligence from the character of their inquiries.

The entire strength with Sir Hugh Gough, in May, consisted of parts of four English regiments, a naval brigade of two hundred and fifty, and a few Indian troops, in all about two thousand five hundred men; the fleet comprised seven ships of war and four steamers. On the 17th the whole anchored in the harbor of Chapu, about forty miles above Chinhai. About six thousand three hundred Chinese troops and one thousand seven hundred Manchus were posted here in forts and intrenched camps. The English landed in three columns, as usual without opposition, and promptly turned the orderly arranged army and garrisons of their opponents into a mass of fugitives, each man throwing away his arms and uniform and flying *à pas de géant*. A body of three hundred Manchus, seeing their retreat cut off, retired into an enclosed temple, whose entrance was both narrow and dark. Every one who attempted to enter it was either killed or wounded, one of whom was Lieutenant-Colonel Tomlinson. At length a part of the wall was blown in, which exposed the inmates to the rifles of their foes, and a rocket or two set the building on fire, by which the inmates were driven from their position to the rooms below; when resistance ceased only fifty were taken prisoners, the others having been burned to death or suffocated. The total loss of the invaders was thirteen killed and fifty-two wounded.

The defences of Chapu being carried, with a loss to the enemy of about one thousand five hundred, the English moved on the city. This was the first time the Manchus had really

Digitized by Google

come in contact with the English; and either fearing that indiscriminate slaughter would ensue on defeat, as it would have done had *they* been the victors, or else unable to brook their disgrace, they destroyed themselves in great numbers, first immolating their wives and children, and then cutting their own throats. Scores of bodies were found in their quarters, some not entirely dead; others were prevented from self-destruction, and in many instances, young children were found attending upon their aged or infirm parents, awaiting in dread suspense the visit of the conquerors, from whom they expected little less than instant destruction. The English surgeons endeavored to bind up the wounds of such Chinese as fell in their way, and these attentions had a good effect upon the high Chinese officers, Ílípu himself sending a letter in which he thanked the general and admiral for their kindness in giving the hungry rice to eat and caring for the wounded. The old man endeavored to requite it by making the condition of his prisoners as easy as he could, and paid them money on their release. When the English generals, having destroyed all the government stores, re-embarked, the prisoners were released with a small present, and on their return to Hangchau loudly proclaimed their praises of the foreigners.

The expedition proceeded northward to the mouth of the Yangtsz' kiang, and reached the embouchure of the Wusung, where the ships took their allotted positions, June 16th, before the well-built stone batteries, extending full three miles along the western banks of the river. One of these works enclosed the town of Paushan and mounted one hundred and thirty-four guns; the others counted altogether one hundred and seventy-five guns, forty-two of which were brass. These defences were manned by a well-selected force, under the command of Chin Hwa-ching. The ships had scarcely taken their stations when the batteries opened, and both sides kept up a cannonading for about two hours, the Chinese working their guns with much skill and effect. When the marines landed and entered, they bravely measured weapons with them, and died at their posts. Among the war-junks were several new wheel-boats, having two wooden paddle-wheels turned by a capstan, which interlocked

Digitized by Google

its cogs into those upon the shaft, and was worked by men on the gun-deck. These were paddling out of danger, when the steamers overtook and silenced them. The number of Chinese killed was about one hundred, out of not less than five thousand men composing the garrison and army. The governor-general, Niu Kien, who was present, in reporting the loss of the forts and dispersion of the troops, says he braved the hottest of the fight, "where cannon-balls innumerable, flying in awful confusion through the expanse of heaven, fell before, behind, and on either side of him; while in the distance he saw the ships of the rebels standing erect, lofty as the mountains. The fierce daring of the rebels was inconceivable; officers and men fell at their posts. Every effort to resist and check the onset was in vain, and a retreat became inevitable."

Among the killed was General Chin, who had taken unwearied pains to drill his troops, appoint them to their places, and inspirit them with his own courageous self-devotion. In a memoir of him, it is said that on the morning of the attack "he arrayed himself in his robes of state, and having prayed to heaven and earth, ordered all his officers and soldiers to get their arms and ammunition ready." Niu Kien's conduct was not such as to cheer them on, and most of the officers "came forward and begged to retire" when they saw the dilapidated state of the batteries. Chin's second suggested a retreat when the marines entered the battery, but he drew his sword upon him, saying, "My confidence in you has been misplaced." He again inspirited his men, himself loading and firing the ginjals, and fell pierced with wounds on the walls of the fort, bowing his head as he died in the direction of the Emperor's palace. His Majesty paid him high honors, by erecting shrines to him in his native village and at the place where he fell; in the *Ching-hwang miao* at Shanghai there is a sitting image of him in his robes of state, before which incense is burned. A reward of a thousand taels was given his family, and his son was made a *kü-jin* by special patent. In this notice it is stated as a current rumor in Shanghai, that about a fortnight after his death Chin sent down the news through the divining altar at Sung-kiang, that he had been promoted by the Supreme Ruler of

Digitized by Google

Heaven to the rank of second general-in-chief of the Board of Thunder, so that although he could not, while alive, repay the imperial favor by exterminating the rebels, he could still afford some aid to his country.

The stores of every kind were destroyed, except the brass pieces, among which were one Spanish gun of old date, and a Chinese piece more than three centuries old, both of them of singular shape, the latter being like a small-mouthed jar. The British landed on the 19th, two thousand in all, and proceeded to Shanghai by land. After the capture of Wusung, Mr. Gutzlaff, who accompanied the admiral as interpreter, succeeded in reassuring the people and inducing them to stay in their dwellings; he was also employed in procuring provisions. The ships silenced two small batteries near the city with a single broadside, and the troops entered it without resistance. The good effects of previous kindness shown the people in respecting their property were here seen. Captain Loch says that on the march along the banks he passed through two villages where the shops were open, with their owners in them, and that groups of people were assembled on the right and left to see them pass. The troops occupied the arsenals, the pawnbrokers' shops, and the temples, destroying all the government stores and distributing the rice in the granaries among the people. The total number of cannon taken was three hundred and eighty-eight, of which seventy-six were of brass; some of the latter were named "tamer and subduer of the barbarians;" others, "the robbers' judgment," and one piece twelve feet long was called the "Barbarian." The citizens voluntarily came forward to supply provisions, and stated that there had been a serious affray in the city a few days before between them and their officers, who wished to levy a subsidy for the defence of the city, which even then they were on the point of abandoning. The boats before the walls were crowded with inhabitants flying with their property, many of whom returned in a few days.

The troops retired from Shanghai June 23d, leaving it less injured than any city yet taken, owing chiefly to the efforts made by the people themselves to protect their property. The eight hundred junks and upward lying off the town were un-

Digitized by Google

harmed, but their owners no doubt were made to contribute toward the $300,000 exacted as a ransom. Sir Henry Pottinger now rejoined the expedition, accompanied by Lord Saltoun, with large reinforcements for both arms, and immediate preparations were made for proceeding up the Yangtsz', to interrupt the communication by the Grand Canal across that river. The Chinese officers, unable to read any European language, learned the designs of their enemy chiefly by rumors, which natives in the employ of the English brought them, and consequently not unfrequently misled his Majesty—unwittingly, in mentioning the wrong places likely to be attacked, but wilfully as to their numbers and conduct in the hour of victory. The fall of Shanghai and the probable march upon Sungkiang and Suchau greatly alarmed him, and he now began to think that the rebels really intended to proceed up to Nanking and the Grand Canal, which he had been assured was not their purpose.

He accordingly concentrated his troops at Chinkiang, Nanking, Suchau, and Tientsin, four places which he feared were in danger, and associated Kíying and Ílípu as commissioners with the governor-general, Niu Kien, to superintend civil affairs; military matters were still left under the management of the imbecile Yihking. Only a few places on the Yangtsz' kiang offered eligible positions for forts, and Niu Kien wisely declined to stake the Great River at Chinkiang, lest it should alarm the inhabitants. Fire-rafts and boats were, however, ordered for the defence of that city, and reinforcements of troops collected there and at Nanking, some of whom were encamped without the city, and part incorporated with the garrison. The tone of the documents which fell into the hands of the English showed the anxiety felt at court regarding the result of this movement up the river.

The British plenipotentiary published and circulated a manifesto at this date for "the information of the people of the country." In this paper he enumerated, in much the same manner as Captain Elliot had done, the grievances the English had suffered at Canton from the spoliations, insults, and imprisonment inflicted upon them by Lin in order to extort opium, which was given up by the English superintendent to rescue

Digitized by Google

himself and his countrymen from death. The duplicity of the Chinese government in sending down Kíshen as a commissioner to Canton to arrange matters, and then, while he was negotiating, to break off the treaty and treacherously resort to war, was another "grand instance of offence against England." The bad treatment of kidnapped prisoners, the mendacious reports of victories gained over the English, which misled the Emperor and retarded the settlement of the war, was another cause of offence. The restriction of the trade to Canton, establishment of the monopoly of the hong merchants, the oppressive and unjust exactions imposed upon it through their scheming, and many other minor grievances which need not be enumerated, formed the last count in this indictment. Three things must be granted before peace could be made, viz., the cession of an island for commerce and the residence of merchants; compensation for losses and expenses; and allowing a friendly and becoming intercourse between the officers of the two countries on terms of equality. This proclamation, however, made no mention of the real cause of the war, the opium trade, and in that respect was far from being an ingenuous, fair statement of the question. It was much more like one of Napoleon's bulletins in the *Moniteur*, and considering the moral and intellectual condition of Great Britain and China, failed to uphold the high standing of the former.

While Sir Henry Pottinger knew that the use of this drug was one of the greatest evils which afflicted the people, he should have, in a document of this nature, left no room for the supposition, on the part of either ruler or subject, that the war was undertaken to uphold and countenance the opium trade. He could not have been ignorant that the Emperor and his ministers supposed the unequal contest they were waging was caused by their unsuccessful efforts to suppress the traffic; and that if they were defeated the opium trade must go on unchecked. The question of supremacy was set at rest in this proclamation; it must be given up; but no encouragement was held out to reassure the Chinese government in their lawful desire to restrain the tremendous scourge. Why should he? If he encouraged any action against the trade, he could expect little promotion or

Digitized by Google

reward from his superiors in India or England, who looked to it for all the revenue it could be made to bring; or consideration from the merchants, who would not thank him for telling the Chinese they might attack the opium clippers wherever they found them, and seize all the opium they could, and English power would not interfere.

The Emperor issued a proclamation about the same time, recapitulating his conduct and efforts to put a stop to the war, stating what he had done to ward off calamity and repress the rebels. The opium trade, and his efforts for a long time to repress it, and especially the measures of Lin, are in this paper regarded as the causes of the war, which concludes by expressing his regrets for the sufferings and losses occasioned his subjects by the attacks of the English at Amoy, Chusan, Ningpo, and elsewhere, and exhorting them to renewed efforts. It is a matter of lasting regret that the impression has been left upon the minds of the Chinese people that the war was an opium war, and waged chiefly to uphold it. But nations, like individuals, must usually trust to might more than right to maintain their standing; and when conscious weakness leads them to adopt underhand measures to regain their rights, the temptation which led to these acts is rarely thought of in the day of retribution. The money demands of England were not deemed at the time to be exacting, but she should, and could at this time in an effectual manner, through her plenipotentiary, have cleared herself from all sanction of this traffic. If Lord Melbourne could wish it were a less objectionable traffic, Sir Henry Pottinger might surely have intimated, in as public a manner, his regret at its existence. He probably did not deem the use of opium very deleterious.

The number of ships, steamers, transports, and all in the expedition, when it left Wusung, July 6th, was seventy-two, most of them large vessels. They were arranged in five divisions, with an advance squadron of five small steamers and tenders to survey the river, each division having a frigate or seventy-four at its head. The world has seldom seen a more conspicuous instance of the superiority of a small body possessing science, skill, and discipline, over immense multitudes of undisciplined,

Digitized by Google

ignorant, and distrustful soldiers, than was exhibited in this bold manœuvre. Not to speak alone of the great disparity in numbers, the distant quarters of the globe whence the ships were collected, the many languages and tribes found in the invading force, the magnitude of their ships, abundance of their supplies, and superiority of their weapons of war, the moral energy and confidence of power in this small troop over its ineffective adversary was not less conspicuous. The sight of such a fleet sailing up their Great River struck the inhabitants with mingled astonishment and dread.

Chinkiang lies half a mile from the southern bank of the Yangtsz', surrounded by a high wall four miles in circuit, and having hills of considerable elevation in its rear. The canal comes in from the south, close to the walls on its western side, and along the shores of both river and canal are extensive suburbs—at this time completely under the command of the guns of the ships, which could also bombard the city itself from some positions. A bluff hill on the north partly concealed the town from the ships, and it was not till this hill-top had been gained that the three Chinese encampments behind the city could be seen. The general divided his small force of seven thousand men into three brigades, under the command of Major-Generals Lord Saltoun, Schoedde, and Bartley, besides an artillery brigade of five hundred and seventy rank and file, under Lieutenant-Colonel Montgomerie. The Chinese encampments contained more than three thousand men, most of them soldiers from Hupeh and Chehkiang provinces. The Manchu garrison within the city consisted of one thousand two hundred regular troops and eight hundred Mongols from Koko-nor, together with eight hundred and thirty-five Chinese troops, making altogether from two thousand six hundred to two thousand eight hundred fighting men; the entire force was under the command of Hailing, who had made such a disposition of his troops and strengthened his means of defence as well as the time allowed. He closes his last communication to the Emperor with the assurance that "he cannot do otherwise than exert his whole heart and strength in endeavors to repay a small fraction of the favors he has enjoyed from his government."

Digitized by Google

The right brigade, under Lord Saltoun, soon drove the imperialists out of their camp, who did not wait for his near approach, but broke and dispersed after firing three or four distant volleys. Captain Loch says that while the party of volunteers were approaching the camp, they passed through a small hamlet on the hills; "the village had not been deserted; some of the houses were closed, while the inhabitants of others were standing in the streets staring at us in stupid wonder; and although they were viewing a contest between foreigners and their fellow-countrymen, and in danger themselves of being shot, were coolly eating their meals."

The centre brigade, under Major-General Schoedde, landed on the northern corner of the city, to escalade the walls on that side and prevent the troops from the camp entering the gates. He was received by a well-sustained fire, his men placing their ladders and mounting in the face of a determined resistance; as soon as they gained the parapet they drove the Tartars before them, though their passage was bravely disputed. While they were mounting the walls a fire was kept up on the city on the northern and eastern sides, under cover of which, after clearing the ramparts, they proceeded to the western gate, conquering all opposition in the northern part of the city, and driving the Tartars to the southern quarter.

The left brigade, under Major-General Bartley, did not reach the western side as soon as was expected, being delayed by the canal, here between seventy and eighty feet broad, which formed a deep ditch on this side. The western gate was blown in, the blast carrying before it a high pile of sand-bags heaped against the inside to strengthen the bars. While this work was going on, seven boats carrying artillerymen entered the canal to proceed up to the gate; but when nearly opposite they were repulsed by a severe fire from the walls, and the men compelled to abandon the three leading boats and take refuge in the houses along the banks; the others halted under cover of some houses until their comrades rejoined them, when all returned to the ships. Two hundred marines now landed, and with three hundred sepoys soon recovered the boats and carried back the wounded men. The party then planted their ladders in the face of a

Digitized by Google

spirited fire from the walls, and succeeded in carrying them against all opposition.

All resistance at the three gateways having been overcome, it was supposed that the city was nearly subdued. Sir Hugh consequently ordered a halt for his men on account of the heat, and despatched a small force to proceed along the western ramparts to occupy the southern gate. This squad had proceeded about half a mile when it met a body of eight hundred or one thousand Tartars regularly drawn up in an open space. They fired with steadiness and regularity, but their bravery was of no avail, for the party, giving them one volley, charged down the bank and scattered them immediately, though not without some resistance. The dispersed Tartars, however, kept up a scattering fire along the streets and from the houses, which served chiefly to irritate their enemies and increase their own loss.

The heat of the day having passed, the commander-in-chief, guided by Mr. Gutzlaff and some Chinese, marched with two regiments into the southern quarter of the city. The scenes of desolation and woe which he met seem to have sickened the gray-haired warrior, for he says in his despatches, "finding dead bodies of Tartars in every house we entered, principally women and children, thrown into wells or otherwise murdered by their own people, I was glad to withdraw the troops from this frightful scene of destruction, and place them in the northern quarter." It was indeed a terrific scene. Captain Loch, who accompanied Sir Hugh, says they went to a large building thought to be the prefect's house, which was forced open and found entirely deserted, though completely furnished and of great extent; "we set fire to it and marched on." What the object or advantage of this barbarous act was he does not say. Leaving the general, he turned down a street and burst open the door of a large mansion; the objects which met his view were shocking.

After we had forced our way over piles of furniture placed to barricade the door, we entered an open court strewed with rich stuffs and covered with clotted blood; and upon the steps leading to the hall of ancestors there were two bodies of youthful Tartars, cold and stiff, who seemed to be brothers. Having gained the threshold of their abode, they had died where they had fallen from loss of blood. Stepping over these bodies we entered the hall, and

Digitized by Google

met face to face three women seated, a mother and two daughters, and at their feet lay two bodies of elderly men, with their throats cut from ear to ear, their senseless heads resting upon the feet of their relations. To the right were two young girls, beautiful and delicate, crouching over and endeavoring to conceal a living soldier. In the heat of action, when the blood is up and the struggle is for life between man and man, the anguish of the wounded and the sight of misery and pain is unheeded; humanity is partially obscured by danger; but when excitement subsides with victory, a heart would be hardly human that could feel unaffected by the retrospection. And the hardest heart of the oldest man who ever lived a life of rapine and slaughter could not have gazed on this scene of woe unmoved. I stopped, horror-stricken at what I saw. The expression of cold, unutterable despair depicted on the mother's face changed to the violent workings of scorn and hate, which at last burst forth in a paroxysm of invective, afterward in floods of tears, which apparently, if anything could, relieved her. She came close to me and seized me by the arm, and with clenched teeth and deadly frown pointed to the bodies, to her daughters, to her yet splendid house, and to herself; then stepped back a pace, and with firmly closed hands and in a husky voice, I could see by her gestures, spoke of her misery, her hate, and, I doubt not, her revenge. I attempted by signs to explain, offered her my services, but was spurned. I endeavored to make her comprehend that, however great her present misery, it might be in her unprotected state a hundredfold increased; that if she would place herself under my guidance, I would pass her through the city gates in safety into the open country; but the poor woman would not listen to me, and the whole family was by this time in loud lamentation. All that remained for me to do was to prevent the soldiers bayoneting the man, who, since our entrance, had attempted to escape.[1]

The destruction of life was appalling. Some of the Manchus shut the doors of their houses, while through the crevices persons could be seen deliberately cutting the throats of their women, and destroying their children by throwing them into wells. In one house a man was shot while sawing his wife's throat as he held her over a well into which he had already thrown his children; her wound was sewed up and the lives of the children saved. In another house no less than fourteen dead bodies, principally women, were discovered; while such was their terror and hatred of the invaders, that every Manchu preferred resistance, death, suicide, or flight, to surrender. Out of a Manchu population of four thousand, it was estimated that not more than five hundred survived, the greater part having perished by their own hands.

[1] Capt. G. G. Loch, *Narrative of Events in China*, p. 109.

Digitized by Google

The public offices were ransacked and all arms and stores destroyed; only $60,000 in sycee were found in the treasury. The populace began to pillage, and in one instance, fearing a stop might be put to their rapacity, they set fire to the buildings at each end of a street in order to plunder a pawnbroker's shop without interference. The streets and lanes were strewed with silken, fur, and other rich dresses which the robbers had thrown away when they saw something more valuable, and the sepoys and camp-followers took what they could find. Parties were accordingly stationed at the gates to take everything from the natives as they went out, or which they threw over the walls, and in this way the thieves were in their turn stripped. Within twenty-four hours after the troops landed, the city and suburbs of Chinkiang were a mass of ruin and destruction; part of the eastern wall was subsequently blown in and all the gates dismantled to prevent any treachery. The total loss of the English was thirty-seven killed and one hundred and thirty-one wounded.

A curious contrast to the terrible scenes going on at Chinkiang was seen at Ícheng hien, on the northern side of the river. Four days before, the approach of the steamer Nemesis had caused no little consternation, and in the evening a Chinese gentleman came off to her with a few presents to learn if there was any intention of attacking the town. He was told that if he would send supplies of meat and provisions no harm would be done, and all he brought should be paid for. In the morning provisions were furnished, and he remained on board to see the steamer chase and bring junks to; being much amazed at these novel operations, which gave him a new idea of the energy of the invaders. In the evening commands were given him to bring provisions in larger quantities, and three boats went up to the town to procure them. The people showed no hostility, and through his assistance the English opened a market in the courtyard of a temple, at which supplies were purchased, put aboard small junks, and conveyed to the fleet. On the 21st the same person came, according to agreement, to accompany a large party of English from the ships to his house, where he had prepared an entertainment for them. Through the medium of

Digitized by Google

a Chinese boy communication was easily carried on, and the alarms of the townspeople quieted; a proclamation was also issued stating that every peaceable person would be unharmed. This gentleman had invited a large company of his relatives and friends, and served up a collation for his guests; all this time the firing was heard from Chinkiang, where the countrymen of those so agreeably occupied were engaged in hostile encounter. On returning to their boats an additional mark of respect was shown by placing a well-dressed man each side of every officer to fan him as he walked. At the market-temple another entertainment was also served up. No injury was done by either side, and the forbearance of the English was not without good effect. Such queer contrasts as this have frequently characterized the contests between the Chinese and British.

Some of the large ships were towed up to Nanking, and the whole fleet reached it August 9th, at which time preparation had been made for the assault; but desirous of avoiding a repetition of the sad scenes of Chinkiang, the British leaders had also sent a communication to Niu Kien, offering to ransom the city for $3,000,000.

This celebrated city lies about three miles south of the river, but the north-east corner of an outer wall reaches within seven hundred paces of the water; the western face runs along the base of wooded hills for part of its distance, and is then continued through flat grounds around the southern side, both being defended by a deep ditch. The suburbs are on this low ground, where Sir Hugh Gough intended to bombard the place and make an entrance on the eastern side, while diversions at other points perplexed the garrison. His force consisted of only four thousand five hundred effective men; there were, as nearly as could be learned, six thousand Manchu and nine thousand Chinese troops within the city. On the 11th Lord Saltoun's brigade landed at a village from whence a paved road led to one of the eastern gates, and other detachments were stationed in the neighborhood. Everything was in readiness for the assault by daylight of August 15th, and the governor-general was told that it would assuredly be made unless the commissioners produced their authority for treating.

Digitized by Google

In the interval between the downfall of Chinkiang and investment of Nanking, several communications were received from the Chinese officers, and one from Kíying, couched in conciliatory language, and evincing a desire for peace. Sir Henry Pottinger replied in the same strain, deploring the war and calamities caused by its continuance, but stating that he could have no interview with any individual, however exalted, who was not properly commissioned to treat for peace. It is probable that the Emperor did not receive any suggestion from his ministers in regard to making peace until after the fall of Chinkiang, and it was a matter of some importance, therefore, for Ílípu and his colleague to delay the attack on Nanking until an answer could be received from the capital. The usual doubts in the minds of the English as to their sincerity led them to look upon the whole as a scheme to perfect the defences, and gain time for the people to retire; consequently the preparations for taking the city went on, in order to deepen the conviction that if one party was practising any deception, the other certainly was in earnest.

On the night of the 14th, scarcely three hours before the artillery was to open, Ílípu, Kíying, and Niu Kien addressed a joint letter to Sir Henry Pottinger requesting an interview in the morning, when they would produce their credentials and arrange for further proceedings. This request was granted with some reluctance, for the day before the *puching sz'* and Tartar commandant had behaved very unsatisfactorily, refusing to exhibit the credentials or discuss the terms of peace or ransom. The distress ensuent upon the blockade was becoming greater and greater; more than seven hundred vessels coming from the south had been stopped at Chinkiang, and a large fleet lay in the northern branch of the canal, so that some possibility existed of the whole province falling into anarchy if the pressure were not removed. The authorities of the city of Yangchau, on the canal, had already sent half a million dollars as the ransom of that place, while Niu Kien would only offer a third of a million to ransom the capital.

The Emperor's authority to treat with the English was, however, exhibited at this meeting, and in return Sir Henry's was

Digitized by Google

fully explained to them. The delegates on the part of the commissioners were Hwang Ngăn-tung, secretary to Kíying, and Chin, the Manchu commandant, while Major Malcom, secretary of legation, and Mr. J. R. Morrison acted on the part of the plenipotentiary. Captain Loch, who was present, humorously describes the solemn manner in which the Emperor's commission was brought out from the box in which it was deposited, and the dismay of the lower attendants at seeing the foreigners irreverently handle it and examine its authenticity with so little awe. The skeleton of the treaty was immediately drafted for Hwang to take to his superiors. General Chin laughingly remarked that though the conditions were hard, they were no more so than the Chinese would have demanded if they had been the victors. The bearing of these officers was courteous, and Hwang especially found favor with all who were thrown into his company.

The utmost care being requisite in drawing up the articles, most of the work falling upon Mr. Morrison, it was not till late at night on the 17th that the final draft was sent to the Chinese. The plenipotentiary, on the 18th, desired the general and admiral to suspend hostilities, at which time arrangements were also made for an interview the next day between the representatives on both sides. The English officers meantime explored the vicinity of the city, and the demand for provisions to supply the force caused a brisk trade highly beneficial to the Chinese, and well calculated to please them.

On the 19th Kíying, Ílípu, and Niu Kien, accompanied by a large suite, paid their first visit to the English. The steamer Medusa brought them alongside the Cornwallis, and Sir Henry Pottinger, supported by the admiral and general, received them on the quarter-deck. The ship was decked with flags, and the crowd of gayly dressed officers in blue and scarlet contrasted well with the bright crapes and robes of the Chinese. This visit was one of ceremony, and after partaking of refreshments and examining the ship the commissioners retired, expressing their gratification at what they saw. They conducted themselves with decorum in their novel position, and Kíying and Ílípu, though both brought up in the full persuasion of the

Digitized by Google

supremacy of their sovereign over the rulers of all other nations, and particularly over the English, manifested no ill-concealed chagrin. They had previously sent up a report of the progress of the expedition after the capture of Chinkiang, requesting in it that the demands of the invaders might be conceded; the inefficiency of their troops is acknowledged, and a candid statement of the impossibility of effectual resistance laid before his Majesty, with cogent reasons for acceding to the demands of the English as the wisest course of procedure. The further disasters which will ensue if the war is not brought to a close are hinted at, and the concession of the points at issue considered in a manner least humbling to imperial vanity. The sum of $21,000,000 to be paid is regarded by them as a present to the soldiers and sailors before sending them home; partly as the liquidation of just debts due from the hong merchants, whose insolvency made them chargeable to the government, and partly as indemnification for the opium. Trade at the five ports was to be allowed, because four of them had already been seized, and this was the only way to induce the invaders to withdraw, while Hongkong could be ceded inasmuch as they had already built houses there. The memorial is a curious effort to render the bitter pill somewhat palatable to themselves and their master.

The English plenipotentiary, accompanied by a large concourse of officers, returned the visit on shore in a few days, and were met at the entrance of a temple by the commissioners, who led them through a guard of newly uniformed and unarmed soldiers into the building, the bands of both nations striking up their music at the same time. This visit continued the good understanding which prevailed; the room had been carpeted and ornamented with lanterns and scrolls for the occasion, while the adjacent grounds accommodated a crowd of natives. On the 26th Sir Henry Pottinger and his suite, consisting of his secretary, Major Malcom, Messrs. Morrison, Thom, and Gutzlaff, the three interpreters, and three other gentlemen, proceeded about four miles to the landing-place on the canal, where they were met by a brigadier and two colonels; the banks of the canal were lined with troops. The party then took their horses, and, preceded

Digitized by Google

by a mounted escort, were received at the city gate by the secretaries of Ílípu; the procession advanced to the place of meeting, guarded by a detachment of Manchu cavalry, whose shaggy ponies and flowing dresses presented a singular contrast to the envoy's escort and their beautiful Arabs. He himself was conducted through the outer gate, up the court and through the second gateway, ascending the steps into the third entrance, where he dismounted and entered the building with the commissioners and governor-general. The room had been elegantly fitted up, and a crowd of official attendants dressed in their ceremonial robes stood around. Sir Henry occupied the chief seat between Kiying and Ílípu, their respective attendants being seated in proper order, with small tables between every two persons, while dinner was served up in usual Chinese style.

These formalities being over, the thirteen articles of this most important treaty were discussed:

I.—Lasting peace between the two nations.

II.—The ports of Canton, Amoy, Fuhchau, Ningpo, and Shanghai to be opened to British trade and residence, and trade conducted according to a well-understood tariff.

III.—"It being obviously necessary and desirable that British subjects should have some port whereat they may careen and refit their ships when required," the island of Hongkong to be ceded to her Majesty.

IV.—Six millions of dollars to be paid as the value of the opium which was delivered up "as a ransom for the lives of H. B. M. Superintendent and subjects," in March, 1839.

V.—Three millions of dollars to be paid for the debts due to British merchants.

VI.—Twelve millions to be paid for the expenses incurred in the expedition sent out "to obtain redress for the violent and unjust proceedings of the Chinese high authorities."

VII.—The entire amount of $21,000,000 to be paid before December 31, 1845.

VIII.—All prisoners of war to be immediately released by the Chinese.

IX.—The Emperor to grant full and entire amnesty to those of his subjects who had aided the British.

Digitized by Google

X.—A regular and fair tariff of export and import customs and other dues to be established at the open ports, and a transit duty to be levied in addition which will give goods a free conveyance to all places in China.

XI.—Official correspondence to be hereafter conducted on terms of equality according to the standing of the parties.

XII.—Conditions for restoring the places held by British troops to be according to the payments of money.

XIII.—Time of exchanging ratifications and carrying the treaty into effect.

The official English and Chinese texts of this compact and a literal translation of the Chinese text are given in the *Chinese Repository*, Vols. XIII. and XIV.; in that serial is also to be found a full account of the struggle which was thus brought to a close. Looked at in any point of view, political, commercial, moral, or intellectual, it will always be considered as one of the turning points in the history of mankind, involving the welfare of all nations in its wide-reaching consequences.

When matters connected with the treaty had been arranged, Sir Henry proposed to say a few words upon "the great cause that produced the disturbances which led to the war, viz., the trade in opium." But upon hearing this (Captain Loch says) they unanimously declined entering upon the subject, until they were assured that he had introduced it merely as a topic for private conversation.

They then evinced much interest, and eagerly requested to know why we would not act fairly toward them by prohibiting the growth of the poppy in our dominions, and thus effectually stop a traffic so pernicious to the human race. This, he said, in consistency with our constitutional laws could not be done; and he added that even if England chose to exercise so arbitrary a power over her tillers of the soil, it would not check the evil, so far as the Chinese were concerned, while the cancer remained uneradicated among themselves, but that it would merely throw the market into other hands. It, in fact, he said, rests entirely with yourselves. If your people are virtuous, they will desist from the evil practice; and if your officers are incorruptible and obey your orders, no opium can enter your country. The discouragement of the growth of the poppy in our territories rests principally with you, for nearly the entire produce cultivated in India travels east to China; if, however, the habit has become a confirmed vice, and you feel that your power is at present inadequate to stay its indulgence, you may rest assured your people will pro-

Digitized by Google

cure the drug in spite of every enactment. Would it not, therefore, be better at once to legalize its importation, and by thus securing the co-operation of the rich and of your authorities, from whom it would thus be no longer debarred, thereby greatly limit the facilities which now exist for smuggling? They owned the plausibility of the argument, but expressed themselves persuaded that their imperial master would never listen to a word upon the subject.

To convince them that what he said was not introduced from any sinister wish to gain an end more advantageous for ourselves, he drew a rapid sketch of England's rise and progress from a barbarous state to a degree of wealth and civilization unparalleled in the history of the world; which rapid rise was principally attributable to benign and liberal laws, aided by commerce, which conferred power and consequence. He then casually mentioned instances of governments having failed to attain their ends by endeavoring to exclude any particular objects of popular desire; tobacco was one of those he alluded to, and now that it was legalized, not only did it produce a large revenue to the crown, but it was more moderately indulged in in Britain than elsewhere.[1]

To the well-wisher of his fellow-men this narrative suggests many melancholy reflections. On the one hand were four or five high Chinese officers, who, although pagans and unacquainted with the principles of true virtue, had evidently sympathized with and upheld their sovereign in his fruitless, misdirected endeavors to save his people from a vicious habit. "Why will you not act fairly toward us by prohibiting the growth of the poppy?" is their anxious inquiry; for they knew that there was no moral principle among themselves strong enough to resist the opium pipe. "Your people must become virtuous and your officers incorruptible, and then you can stop the opium coming into your borders," is the reply; precisely the words that the callous rumseller gives the broken-hearted wife of the besotted drunkard when she beseeches him not to sell liquor to her enslaved husband. "Other people will bring it to you if we should stop the cultivation of the poppy; if England chose to exercise so arbitrary a power over her tillers of the soil, it would not check the evil," adds the envoy; "you cannot do better than legalize it." Although nations are somewhat different from individuals in respect to their power of resisting and suppressing a vice,

[1] Loch's *Events in China*, p. 178, London, 1843. This same point is slightly referred to by Lieutenant Ouchterlony, on page 448 of his *Chinese War*, where he states that Sir Henry had prepared a paper for the information of the Chinese officials, proposing to them to permit the traffic in opium to be by barter.

Digitized by Google

and Sir Henry did right to speak of the legal difficulty in the way of restraining labor, yet how heartless was the excuse, "if we do not bring it to you others will." No suggestion was made to them as to the most judicious mode of restraining what they were told they could not prohibit; no hint of the farming system, which would have held out to them a medium path between absolute freedom and prohibition, and probably been seriously considered by the court; no frank explanation as to the real position the English government itself held in respect to the forced growth of this pernicious article in its Indian territories. How much nobler would that government have stood in the eyes of mankind if its head and ministers had instructed their plenipotentiary, that when their other demands were all paid and conceded no indemnity should have been asked for smuggled opium entirely destroyed by those who had seized it within their borders under threats of worse consequences. That government and ministry which had paid a hundred millions for the emancipation of slaves could surely afford to release a pagan nation from such an imposed obligation, instead of sending their armies to exact a few millions which the revenue of one year, derived from this very article alone, would amply discharge to their own subjects. For this pitiful sum must the great moral lesson to the Emperor of China and his subjects, which could have been taught them at this time, be lost.

Sir Henry inquired if an envoy would be received at Peking, should one be sent from England, which Kíying assured him would no doubt be a gratification to his master, though what ideas the latter connected with such a suggestion can only be inferred. The conference lasted three or four hours, and when the procession returned to the barges, through an immense crowd of people, nothing was heard from them to indicate dislike or dread; all other thoughts were merged in overpowering curiosity. It was remarkable that this was the anniversary of the day when English subjects, among whom were the three interpreters here present, left Macao in 1839, by order of Lin; on August 26, 1840, the plenipotentiaries entered the Pei ho to seek an interview with Kíshen; that day, the next year, Amoy and its extensive batteries fell; and now the three years' game

Digitized by Google

is won and China is obliged to bend, her magnates come down from their eminences, and her wall of supremacy, isolation, and conceit is shattered beyond the possibility of restoration. Her rulers apparently submitted with good grace to the hard lesson, which seemed to be the only effectual means of compelling them to abandon their ridiculous pretensions; though it cannot be too often repeated that the effect of kindness, honorable dealing, and peaceful missions had not been fairly tried.

Arrangements were made on the 29th to sign the treaty on board the Cornwallis. After it was signed all sat down to table, and the admiral, as the host in his flagship, gave the healths of their Majesties, the Queen of England and the Emperor of China, which was announced to the fleet and army by a salute of twenty-one guns and hoisting the Union Jack and a yellow flag at the main and mizzen. The treaty was forwarded to Peking that evening. The embargo on the rivers and ports was at once taken off, the troops re-embarked, and preparations made to return to Wusung. The six millions were paid without much delay, and on September 15th the Emperor's ratification was received. The secretary of legation, Major Malcom, immediately left to obtain the Queen's ratification, going by steam the entire distance (except eighty miles in Egypt) from Nanking to London—an extraordinary feat in those days.

The imperial assent was also published in a rescript addressed to Kíying, in reply to his account of the settlement of affairs, in which he gives directions for disbanding the troops, rebuilding such forts as had been destroyed, and cultivating peace as well as providing for the fulfilment of the articles. It is, on the whole, a dignified approval of the treaty, and breathes nothing of a spirit of revenge or intention to prepare for future resistance.

The fleet of ships and transports returned down the river and reassembled at Tinghai, at the end of October, not a vessel having been lost. Even before leaving Nanking, and in the passage down the river, the troops and sailors, especially the Indian regiments, were reduced by cholera, fever, and other diseases, some of the transports being nearly disabled; the deaths amounted to more than a thousand before reaching Hongkong.

Digitized by Google

On arriving at Amoy the plenipotentiary was highly incensed on hearing of the melancholy fate of the captive crews of the Nerbudda and Ann, wrecked on Formosa. The first, a transport, contained two hundred and seventy-four souls, and when she went ashore all the Europeans abandoned two hundred and forty Hindus to their fate, most of whom fell into the hands of the Chinese. The Ann was an opium vessel, and her crew of fifty-seven souls were taken prisoners and carried to Taiwan fu. The prisoners were divided into small parties and had little communication with each other during their captivity, which was aggravated by want of food and clothing, filthy lodgings, and other hardships of a Chinese jail, so that many of the Indians died. The survivors, on August 13th, with the exception of ten persons, were carried out to a plain near the city, one of whom, Mr. Newman, a seacunnie on board the Ann and the last in the procession, gave the following account:

On being taken out of his sedan, to have his hands shackled behind his back, he saw two of the prisoners with their irons off and refusing to have them put on. They had both been drinking and were making a great noise, crying out to him that they were all to have their heads cut off. He advised them to submit quietly, but they still refusing, he first wrenched off his own and then put them into theirs, to the great pleasure of the soldiers, but when the soldiers wished to replace his he declined. As they were on the point of securing him he accidentally saw the chief officer seated close to him. Going before him he threw himself on his head and commenced singing a few Chinese words which he had frequently heard repeated in a temple. The officer was so pleased with this procedure that he turned round to the soldiers and ordered them to carry him back to the city. All the rest, one hundred and ninety-seven in number, were placed at small distances from each other on their knees, their feet in irons and hands manacled behind their backs, thus waiting for the executioners, who went round and with a kind of two-handed sword cut off their heads without being laid on a block. Afterward their bodies were thrown into one grave and their heads stuck up in cages on the seashore.[1]

A journal was kept by Mr. Gully to within three days of his death, and another by Captain Denham of the Ann, one of the prisoners saved to send to Peking.[2] Both contain full accounts

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XII., p. 248.

[2] *Journals of Mr. Gully and Captain Denham during a Captivity in China in* 1842. London: Chapman & Hall, 1844.

Digitized by Google

of the treatment of the unhappy captives, and diminish the sympathy felt for the defeat of the government which allowed such slaughter. It was said to have been done by orders from court, grounded on a lying report sent up by the Manchu commandant, Tahungah. When their sad fate was learned Sir Henry Pottinger published two proclamations in Chinese, in which the principal facts were detailed, so that all might know the truth of the matter; a demand made for the degradation and punishment of the lying officers who had superintended it, and the confiscation of their property for the use of the families of the sufferers. Iliang, the governor-general, expressed his sincere regret to the English envoy at what had taken place, and examined into the facts himself, which led to the degradation and banishment of the commandant and intendant. While the prisoners were still at Taiwan fu, H. M. S. Serpent was sent over from Amoy to reclaim them, by which expedition the truth of the barbarous execution was first learned; this vessel afterward went there to receive the shipwrecked crew of the Herculaneum transport.

The citizens of Amoy, Ningpo, and Shanghai hailed the cessation of the war and the opening of their ports to foreign trade; but not so at Canton. The discharged volunteers still remained about the city, notwithstanding orders to return home and resume their usual employments, most of whom probably had neither. Scheming demagogues took advantage of a rumor that the English army intended to form a settlement opposite the city, and issued a paper in the name of the gentry, calling upon all to combine and resist the aggression. The enthusiasm it caused was worked up to a higher pitch by an inflammatory manifesto,[1] in which desperate measures were plainly intimated; but the district magistrates took no steps against them. An invitation was circulated for the citizens and gentlemen from other provinces to meet at the public assembly hall to consult upon public affairs. A counter but less spirited manifesto was pasted up in the hall, which had the effect of inducing about half the people to disperse. The writers of this paper dissuaded their countrymen from hasty measures, by telling them that no

[1] See Volume I., pp. 488–492.

Digitized by Google

land could be taken or dwellings occupied without permission from the provincial authorities, and urged upon them to live at peace with the English, in accordance with the injunctions of their wise sovereign.

A brawl occurred in Hog Lane on December 6th, between some hucksters and lascars, who were pursued into the Square, where the mob rapidly increased, and about two o'clock began pulling down a brick wall around the Company's garden and forcing open one of the factories, which was speedily pillaged, the inmates escaping through the back doors. The British flagstaff was fired by a party which kept guard around it, and the flames communicating to the verandah, other parts soon caught, and by midnight the three hongs east of Hog Lane were burning furiously. The ringleaders, satisfied with firing the British consulate, endeavored to prevent thieves carrying away the plunder; but they were forced to escape about midnight. These wretches soon began to quarrel among themselves for the dollars found in the ruins, and it was not till noon that the police and soldiers ventured to attack the knotted groups of struggling desperadoes and arrest the most conspicuous, and with the aid of boats' crews from the shipping recapture some of the specie. Full compensation was subsequently made to the foreigners for the losses sustained, amounting to $67,397, and some of the ringleaders were executed.

A large part of the officers in the army and navy engaged in the war received promotion or honorary titles. Sir Hugh was made a baronet, and, after more service in India, elevated to the peerage, with the title of Lord Gough, Baron of Chinkiang fu; the plenipotentiary and the admiral obtained Grand Crosses of the Bath. The three interpreters, Messrs. Morrison, Thom, and Gutzlaff, whose services had been arduous and important, received no distinctive reward from their government. The amount of prize money distributed among the soldiers and sailors was small. The losses of the English from shipwreck, sickness, and casualties during the war amounted to more than three thousand; the mortality was greatest among the Indian regiments and the European recruits, especially after the operations behind Canton and the capture of Chinkiang.

Digitized by Google

While the English government rewarded its officers, the Emperor expressed his displeasure at the conduct of the major part of his surviving generals, but distributed posthumous honors to those who had died at their posts. Hailing, with his wife and grandson, were honored with a fane, and his sons promoted. Kíying was appointed governor-general at Nanking. Though many civil and military officers were condemned to death, none actually lost their lives, except Yu Pu-yun, the governor of Chehkiang, who fled from Ningpo in October, 1841.

The settlement of the duties and regulations for carrying on foreign commerce immediately engaged the attention of the plenipotentiary. He called on the British merchants for information, but so utterly desultory was the manner in which the duties had been formerly levied, that they could give him little or no reliable information as to what was really done with the money. The whole matter was placed by both parties in the hands of Mr. Thom, who had been engaged in business at Canton, and Hwang Ngăn-tung, secretary to Kíying. To settle these multifarious affairs and restore quiet, Ílípu was sent to Canton as commissioner. On his arrival, he set about allaying the popular discontent at the treaty, and his edict[1] is a good instance of the mixture of flattery and instruction, coaxing and commanding, which Chinese officers frequently adopt when they are not sure of gaining their end by power alone, and do not wish to irritate. In this instance it did much to remove misapprehension and allay excitement, but its author had not long been engaged in these arduous duties before he "made a vacancy," aged seventy-two, having been more than half his life engaged in high employments in his country's service; his conduct and foresight in the last two years did credit to himself and elevated his nation. His associate, Kíying, took his place and exchanged the ratifications of the treaty of Nanking at Hongkong with Sir Henry Pottinger, ten months after it had been signed by the same persons. The island was then taken possession of on behalf of the Queen by proclamation, and the warrant read ap-

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XII., p. 106.

Digitized by Google

pointing Sir Henry governor of the colony. Its influence on the well-being of China since that period has been less than was anticipated by those who looked to the higher welfare and progress of a British colony so near to it as likely to be an example for good. A free port has encouraged smuggling to a degree that constantly irritates and baffles the native authorities on the mainland, and leads to armed resistance to their efforts toward collecting lawful revenue, especially on opium; while the influx of Chinese traders, attracted by its greater security, is gradually converting the island into a Chinese settlement protected by British rule. The peninsula of Kowlung, on the north side of the harbor, was added in 1860, to furnish ground for the commissary departments of the forces. The influence of a well-ordered Christian government exercising a beneficent rule over a less civilized race under its sway, is soon neutralized by licensing the opium farms and gambling saloons and lending its moral sanction to smuggling.

The tariff and commercial regulations were published July 22d. In this tariff, all emoluments and illegal exactions superimposed upon the imperial duties were prohibited, and a fixed duty put on each article, which seldom exceeded five per cent. on the cost; all kinds of breadstuffs were free. Commercial dealings were placed on a well-understood basis, instead of the former loose way of conducting business; the monopoly of the hong merchants was ended, the fees exacted on ships were abolished, and a tonnage duty of five mace per ton substituted; the charge for pilotage was reduced so much that the pilots were nearly stripped of all they received after paying the usual fees to the tidewaiters along the river. Disputes between English and Chinese were to be settled by the consuls, and in serious cases by a mixed court, when, upon conviction, each party was to punish its own criminals.

The proclamation giving effect to these regulations was one of the most important documents ever issued by the Chinese government; as an initiation of the new order of things, it was creditable to the people whose rulers were of themselves and could utter such words to them. After referring to the war and treaty of peace, Kiying goes on to say, respecting the tariff,

Digitized by Google

that as soon as replies shall be received from the Board of Revenue, "it will then take effect with reference to the commerce with China of all countries, as well as of England. Henceforth, then, the weapons of war shall forever be laid aside, and joy and profit shall be the perpetual lot of all; neither slight nor few will be the advantages reaped by the merchants alike of China and of foreign countries. From this time forward, all must free themselves from prejudice and suspicions, pursuing each his proper avocation, and careful always to retain no inimical feelings from the recollection of the hostilities that have before taken place. For such feelings and recollections can have no other effect than to hinder the growth of a good understanding between the two peoples." It should be moreover added, as due praise to the imperial government, that none of the many hundreds who served the English on ship and shore against their country were afterward molested in any way for so doing. Many were apprehended, but the commissioner says he "has obtained from the good favor of his august sovereign, vast and boundless as that of heaven itself, the remission of their punishment for all past deeds; . . . they need entertain no apprehension of being hereafter dragged forward, nor yield in consequence to any fears or suspicions."[1]

These new arrangements pleased the leading Chinese merchants better than they did the hoppo and others who had lined their pockets and fed their friends with illegal exactions. The never-failing sponge of the co-hong could no longer be sucked, but for a last squeeze the authorities called upon the merchants for five millions of dollars, which they refused to pay, and withdrew from business with so much determination and union that the hoppo and his friends were foiled; they finally contributed among themselves about one million seven hundred thousand dollars, which was nearly or quite their last benevolence to their rulers. Howqua, the leading member of the body during thirty years, died about this time, aged seventy-five; he was, altogether, the most remarkable native known to foreigners, and while he filled the difficult station of senior merchant, exhibited

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XII., p. 448.

Digitized by Google

great shrewdness and ability in managing the delicate and difficult affairs constantly thrown upon him. He came from Amoy when a young man, and his property, probably over-estimated at four millions sterling, passed quietly into the hands of his children.[1]

The foreign community also suffered a great loss at this time in the death of John Robert Morrison, at the age of twenty-nine. He was born in China, and had identified himself with the best interests of her people and their advancement in knowledge and Christianity. At the age of twenty, on his father's decease, he was appointed Chinese secretary to the British superintendents, and filled that responsible situation with credit and efficiency during all the disputes with the provincial authorities and commissioner Lin, and of the war, until peace was declared. His intimate acquaintance with the policy of the Chinese government and the habits of thought of its officers eminently fitted him for successfully treating with them, and enlightening them upon the intentions and wishes of foreign powers; while his unaffected kindness to all natives assured them of the sincerity of his professions. The successful conduct of the negotiations at Nanking depended very much upon him, and the manner in which he performed the many translations to and from Chinese, connected with that event, was such as to secure the confidence of the imperial commissioners, in their ignorance of all foreign languages, that they were fairly dealt with.

He was eminently a Christian man, and whenever opportunity allowed, failed not to speak of the doctrines of the Bible to his native friends. The projected revision of the Chinese version of the Scriptures by the Protestant missionaries engaged his attention, and it was expected would receive his assistance. With his influence, his pen, his property, and his prayers, he contributed to the welfare of the people, and the confidence felt in him by natives who knew him was often strikingly exhibited

[1] Compare *The Fan Kwae at Canton before Treaty Days, by an Old Resident* (Mr. W. C. Hunter), London, 1882; a little volume which, besides many personal reminiscences of the characters mentioned in this narrative, furnishes an interesting picture of life in Canton a half century ago.

Digitized by Google

at Canton during the commotions of 1841 and the negotiations of 1843. He died at Macao August 29th, a year after the treaty of Nanking was signed, and was buried by the side of his parents in the Protestant burying-ground. Sir Henry Pottinger announced his death as a "positive national calamity," and it was so received by the government at home. He also justly added that "Mr. Morrison was so well known to every one, and so beloved, respected, and esteemed by all who had the pleasure and happiness of his acquaintance or friendship, that to attempt to pass any panegyric upon his private character would be a mere waste of words;" while his own sorrow was but a type of the universal feeling in which his memory and merit are embalmed. As a testimony of their sense of his worth, the foreign community, learning that he had died poor, leaving a maiden sister who had been dependent upon him, and that his official accounts were in some confusion, immediately came forward and contributed nearly fourteen thousand dollars to relieve his estate and relatives from all embarrassment.

The negotiations were concluded by the English and Chinese plenipotentiaries signing a supplementary treaty on October 8th (the day was a lucky one in the Chinese calendar), at the Bogue. This treaty provided, among other things, for the admission of all foreigners to the five open ports on the same terms as English subjects; it was inserted at the request of Kíying, that all might appreciate the intentions of his government; for neither he nor his master knew anything of that favorite phrase, "the most favored nation," and expected and wished to avoid all controversy by putting every ship and flag on the same footing.

It might have been expected that the Chinese government would have now taken some action upon the opium trade, which was still going on unchecked and unlicensed. Opium schooners were passing in and out of Hongkong harbor, though the drug sold by the Indian government at Calcutta was not allowed by the colonial British government at Hongkong to be stored on shore. Yet no edicts were issued, few or no seizures made, no notice taken of it; no proposition to repress, legalize, or manage it came from the imperial commissioner. The old laws denouncing its use, purchase, or sale under the penalty of death

Digitized by Google

still remained on the statute book, but no one feared or cared for them. This conduct is fully explained by the supposition that, having undergone so much, the Emperor and his ministers thought safety from future trouble with the British lay in enduring what was past curing; they had already suffered greatly in attempting to suppress it, and another war might be caused by meddling with the dangerous subject, since too it was now guarded by well-armed British vessels. Public opinion was still too strong against it, or else consistency obliged the monarch to forbid legalization.[1]

Sir Henry Pottinger, hearing that persons were about sending opium to Canton under the pretense that unenumerated articles were admissible by the new tariff at a duty of five per cent., issued a proclamation in English and Chinese, to the intent that such proceedings were illegal. He also forbade British vessels going beyond lat. 32° N., and intimated to the Chinese that they might seize all persons and confiscate all vessels found above that line, or anywhere else on the coast besides the five ports; and, moreover, published an order in council which restricted, under penalty of $500 for each offence, all British vessels violating the stipulations of the treaty in this respect. All this was done chiefly to throw dust in their eyes, and put the onus of the contraband traffic on the Chinese government and the violation of law on those who came off to the smuggling vessels, and these proclamations and orders, like their edicts, were to be put "on record." This was shown when Captain Hope, of H.M.S. Thalia, for stopping two or three of the opium vessels proceeding above Shanghai, was recalled from his station and ordered to India, where he could not "interfere in such a manner with the undertakings of British subjects"—to quote Lord Palmerston's despatch to Captain Elliot. This effectually deterred other British officers from meddling with it.

Yet the commercial bearings of this trade were clearly seen in England, and a memorial to Sir Robert Peel, signed by two hundred and thirty-five merchants and manufacturers, was drawn

[1] Montgomery Martin, *China; Political, Commercial, and Social*, Vol. II., Chap. IV. (London, 1847)—a chapter containing some most suggestive reflections on this subject by a member of her Majesty's government at Hongkong.

Digitized by Google

up, in which they proved that the "commerce with China cannot be conducted on a permanently safe and satisfactory basis so long as the contraband trade in opium is permitted. Even if legalized, the trade would inevitably undermine the commerce of Great Britain with China, and prevent its being, as it otherwise might be, an advantageous market for our manufactures. It would operate for evil in a double way: first, by enervating and impoverishing the consumers of the drug, it would disable them from becoming purchasers of our productions; and second, as the Chinese would then be paid for their produce chiefly as now in opium, the quantity of that article imported by them having of late years exceeded in value the tea and silk we receive from them, our own manufactures would consequently be to a great extent precluded." The memorial shows that between 1803–08 the annual demand for woollens alone was nearly $750,000 more than it was for *all* products of British industry between 1834–39; while in that interval the opium trade had risen from three thousand to thirty thousand chests annually. Nothing in the annals of commerce ever showed more conclusively how heartless a thing trade is when it comes in contact with morality or humanity, than the discussions respecting the opium traffic. These memorialists plead for their manufactures, but the East India Company would have been sorry to have had their market spoiled: what could Sir Robert Peel, or even Wilberforce, if he had been premier, do against them in this matter? The question was which party of manufacturers should be patronized. But none of these "merchants and manufacturers of the highest standing and respectability" refer to the destruction of life, distress of families, waste of mind, body, and property, and the many other evils connected with the growth and use of opium, except as connected with the sale of their goods. One paper, in order to compound the matter, recommended the manufacture of morphine to tempt the Chinese, in order that, if they would smoke it, they might have a delicate preparation for fashionable smokers.

The conduct of the ministry in remunerating the merchants who had surrendered their property to Captain Elliot was appropriate to the character of the trade. The $6,000,000, instead

Digitized by Google

of being divided in China among those who were to receive it —as could have been done without expense—was carried to England to be coined, which, with the freight, reduced it considerably. Then by the manner of ascertaining the market value at the time it was given up, and the holders of the opium script got their pay, they received scarcely one-half of what was originally paid to the East India Company, either directly or indirectly, thereby reducing it nearly a million sterling. Furthermore, by the form of payment they lost nearly one-fifth even of the promised sum, or about one million two hundred thousand dollars. Then they lost four years' interest on their whole capital, or about four million dollars more. What the merchants lost, the government profited. The Company gained during these four years at least a million sterling by the increased price of the drug, while Sir Robert Peel also transferred that amount from the pockets of the merchants to the public treasury. It was an undignified and pitiful haggling with the merchants and owners of the opium, whom that ministry had encouraged for many years in their trade along the Chinese coast, and then forced to take what was doled out.

Public opinion will ever characterize the contest thus brought to an end as an *opium war*, entered into and carried on to obtain indemnity for opium seized, and—setting aside the niceties of western international law, which the Chinese government knew nothing of—most justly seized. The British and American merchants who voluntarily subscribed one thousand and thirty-seven chests to Commissioner Lin, acknowledged themselves to be transgressors by this very act. Yet war seemed to be the only way to break down the intolerable assumptions of the court of Peking; that a war would do it was quite plain to every one acquainted with the character of that court and the genius of the people, and the result has shown the expectation to have been well based. Members of Parliament expressed their gratification at being at last out of a bad business; their desire, frequently uttered, that the light of the gospel and the blessings of Christian civilization might now be introduced among the millions of China, was a cheap peace-offering of good wishes, somewhat in the manner of the old Hebrews sacrificing

Digitized by Google

a kid when they had committed a trespass. The short but pithy digest of the whole war by Justin McCarthy, in Chapter X. of the *History of Our Own Times*, brings out its leading features in a fairly candid manner.

The announcement of the treaty of Nanking caused considerable sensation in Europe and America, chiefly in commercial circles. M. Auguste Moxhet, the Belgian consul at Singapore, was sent on to China to make such inquiries for transmission to his government as would direct it in its efforts to open a trade. The Netherlands government sent orders to the authorities at Batavia, who despatched M. Tonco Modderman for the same purpose. The king of Prussia appointed M. Grube to proceed to China to prosecute researches as to the prospect of finding a market for German manufactures. The Spanish ministry, through the authorities at Manila, designated Don Sinibaldo de Mas in this new sphere. The governor of Macao, M. Pinto, before returning home, was appointed commissioner on behalf of H. M. F. Majesty, to treat respecting the rights and privileges of Macao under the new order of things, and succeeded in obtaining some stipulations favorable to the trade of the place, but could not get the Chinese to cede it to Portugal. These gentlemen arrived in China during the latter part of 1843, and most of them had interviews or communication with Kiying before he returned to court in December.

The governments of the United States and France early appointed ministers extraordinary to the court of Peking. Caleb Cushing, commissioner on behalf of the United States, brought a letter from the President to the Emperor, which is inserted in full as an instance of the singular mixture of patronizing and deprecatory address then deemed suitable for the Grand Khan by western nations:

LETTER TO THE EMPEROR OF CHINA FROM THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

I, John Tyler, President of the United States of America—which States are: Maine, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Vermont, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Kentucky, Tennessee, Ohio, Louisiana, Indiana, Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, Missouri, Arkansas, and

Digitized by Google

Michigan—send you this letter of peace and friendship, signed by my own hand.

I hope your health is good. China is a great Empire, extending over a great part of the world. The Chinese are numerous. You have millions and millions of subjects. The twenty-six United States are as large as China, though our people are not so numerous. The rising sun looks upon the great mountains and great rivers of China. When he sets, he looks upon rivers and mountains equally large in the United States. Our territories extend from one great ocean to the other; and on the west we are divided from your dominions only by the sea. Leaving the mouth of one of our great rivers, and going constantly toward the setting sun, we sail to Japan and to the Yellow Sea.

Now, my words are that the governments of two such great countries should be at peace. It is proper, and according to the will of heaven, that they should respect each other, and act wisely. I therefore send to your court Caleb Cushing, one of the wise and learned men of this country. On his first arrival in China, he will inquire for your health. He has strict orders to go to your great city of Peking, and there to deliver this letter. He will have with him secretaries and interpreters.

The Chinese love to trade with our people, and to sell them tea and silk, for which our people pay silver, and sometimes other articles. But if the Chinese and the Americans will trade, there shall be rules, so that they shall not break your laws or our laws. Our minister, Caleb Cushing, is authorized to make a treaty to regulate trade. Let it be just. Let there be no unfair advantage on either side. Let the people trade not only at Canton, but also at Amoy, Ningpo, Shanghai, Fuhchau, and all such other places as may offer profitable exchanges both to China and the United States, provided they do not break your laws nor our laws. We shall not take the part of evil-doers. We shall not uphold them that break your laws. Therefore, we doubt not that you will be pleased that our messenger of peace, with this letter in his hand, shall come to Peking, and there deliver it; and that your great officers will, by your order, make a treaty with him to regulate affairs of trade—so that nothing may happen to disturb the peace between China and America. Let the treaty be signed by your own imperial hand. It shall be signed by mine, by the authority of our great council, the Senate.

And so may your health be good, and may peace reign.

Written at Washington, this twelfth day of July, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty-three. Your good friend.

Mr. Cushing arrived in China in the frigate Brandywine, Commodore Parker, February 24, 1844. The announcement of the general objects of his mission, and the directions he had to proceed to Peking, was made to Governor Ching, who instantly informed the court of his arrival; and with a promptitude indicative of the desire of the Emperor to give no cause of offence, Kiying was reappointed commissioner, with higher

Digitized by Google

powers than before. The frigate had brought out a flagstaff and vane for the consulate at Canton; the vane was in the form of an arrow, and as it turned its barb to the four points of the compass, the superstitious people thought it conveyed destructive influences around, transfixing all the benign operations of heaven and earth, and thereby causing disease and calamity among them. An unusual degree of sickness prevailed at this time in the city and its environs, which the geomancers and doctors declared would not cease until the deadly arrow was removed. The people accordingly waited on the consul, Mr. Forbes, to request the removal of the arrow, which he acceded to, and substituted a vane of another shape. The gentry issued a placard the next day, commending its removal, and requesting the people to harbor no ill-will toward the Americans as the cause of the sickness.

Kíying having announced his appointment and powers to the people, proceeded to the Bogue to meet Sir Henry Pottinger, and be introduced to Governor Davis, from whence he went to Macao and took up his residence in the village of Wanghia, in the suburbs of that city. He had associated three assistants with himself, viz., Hwang Ngăn-tung, Pwan Sz'-shing, one of the late hong merchants, and Chau Chang-ling, a prefect. H. E. Hon. Caleb Cushing was sole commissioner and envoy extraordinary; Fletcher Webster, Esq., was secretary; Rev. E. C. Bridgman, D.D., and Rev. Peter Parker, M.D., were joint Chinese secretaries, and Dr. Bridgman, chaplain; Messrs. J. H. O'Donnell, R. McIntosh, S. Hernisz, T. R. West, and John R. Peters, Jr., were attached to the legation.

Mr. Cushing had already prepared the general outline of the treaty, which greatly abridged the negotiations, and the few disputed or doubtful points in the draft having been modified and settled, it was signed at Wanghia on July 3, 1844, by the two plenipotentiaries, Commodore Parker, and a few other Americans, a large company of Chinese being present. Its fulness of details and clear exhibition of the rights conceded by the Chinese government to foreigners dwelling within its borders, made it the leading authority in settling disputes among them until 1860.

Digitized by Google

Soon after Kíying left Canton the populace began to show signs of disturbance. A party of gentlemen were walking in the Company's garden, when the gate was burst open by a mob and they were obliged to escape by boats. On the next evening the mob again collected, with the intention of getting possession of the large garden, but were driven out of the passage without much opposition. Two or three Americans, in escorting one of their countrymen to his house, were attacked by missiles on their return; whereupon one of them fired low to drive the people back, but unhappily killed a native, named Sü A-mun. The case was investigated by the district magistrate, and a report made by the governor to Kíying; but Ching took no pains to send a sufficient force to repress the populace. In a communication to the American consul he says, after ordering him to deliver up the murderer: "It has been ascertained that the man who was killed was from the district of Tsingyuen, having no relatives in Canton. But if he had been a citizen, it would have become at the moment an occasion for attack, for it would have been told to the populace, and they would have revenged it by again setting fire to the factories and plundering their contents, or something of that sort. The people are highly irritated against the offender, and it is impossible but that they have constant debates among themselves until they are revenged."

A party of marines from the corvette St. Louis came up to Canton the next day, and quiet was restored. Kíying brought the case before Mr. Cushing, stating it to be his conviction that "the murderer ought to forfeit his life," and begging him to give orders for a speedy examination of the case. In his reply Mr. Cushing expressed his regret at what had occurred, his willingness to institute an inquiry, and added a few remarks upon the necessity of better protecting foreigners at Canton, in order to prevent the recurrence of such scenes, and embroiling the two countries. Kíying replied in a considerate manner, still upholding the authority of his government and laws: "It seems from this that, regarding our nations and their subjects, the people of our land may be peaceful, and the citizens of the United States may be peaceful, and yet, after their governments

Digitized by Google

have become amicable, that then their people may become inimical; and albeit the authorities of the two governments may day after day deliberate upon friendship, it is all nothing but empty words. Thus, while we are deliberating and settling a treaty of peace, all at once the people of our two countries are at odds and taking lives." He also speaks of the overbearing and violent character of the people of Canton:

> Since the period when the English brought in soldiers, these ladrones have been banding together and forming societies; and while some, taking advantage of their strength, have plundered and robbed, others have called upon the able-bodied and valiant to get their living. Therefore, employing troops, which is the endangering of the authorities and [peaceable] people, is the profit of these miscreants; peace and good order which traders, both native and foreign, desire, is what these bad men do not at all wish. . . . I have heard that usually the citizens of Canton have respected and liked the officers and people of the United States, as they were peaceable and reasonable; that they would, even when there was a cause of difference, endeavor to settle it, which is very unlike the English. But unexpectedly, on the 16th instant, a cause for animosity was given in the shooting of Sü A-mun. I have heard different accounts of this affair; I judge reasonably in thinking that the merchants of your country causelessly and rashly took life. But the populace are determined to seek a quarrel, and I very much fear lest they will avail of this to raise commotion, perhaps under the pretence of avenging his death, but doubtless with other ideas too.

The American minister referred in a subsequent communication to the death of the boy Sherry, in May, 1841, when the boat's crew from the ship Morrison was captured. This affair had been already brought to the notice of the Chinese government by Commodore Kearny, and a sum of $7,800 paid for losses and damages sustained; but the present was a fitting opportunity for reviving it, since it and the case of Sü A-mun furnished a mutual commentary upon the necessity of securing better protection for foreigners. Kíying made an investigation of the case, and reported the successive actions of his predecessor, Kí Kung; so thoroughly indeed was his reply divested of all the rhodomontade usually seen in Chinese state papers, that one could hardly believe it was written by a governor-general of Canton. The exciting circumstances of the first casualty did indeed go far to extenuate it; though now both Kíying and his superiors could not but see that the time for demanding life for

Digitized by Google

life had passed away. The commissioner was, however, in a dilemma. He could only appease the populace by stating in his proclamations that he was making every effort to ascertain who was the murderer and bring him to justice, and they must leave the management of the case in the hands of the regular authorities. On the other hand, the arguments of Mr. Cushing and the stipulations in the English treaty, both convinced him that foreign nations would not give up their treaty right of judging their own countrymen. He finally escaped the trouble by deferring the petitioners and relatives of the deceased awhile, and then appeasing them by a small donation.

In conducting these negotiations, and settling this treaty "between the youngest and oldest empires in the world," Mr. Cushing exhibited both ability and knowledge of his subject. In his instructions he was directed to deliver the President's letter to the Emperor in person, or to an officer of rank in his presence; and, therefore, on his arrival he informed the governor that he had been sent to the imperial court, and being under the necessity of remaining a few weeks at Macao, he improved the first opportunity to inquire after the health of his Majesty. Whether he regarded the mere going to court as important cannot be inferred from his correspondence, but if so, he should have gone directly to the mouth of the Pei ho and waited there for a commissioner to be sent to meet him. Yet the real advantages of such a proceeding at this time would have been trifling, and its risks and contingencies very serious; as the Emperor was not disposed to forego that homage required of all who appeared before him, however willing he might be to grant commercial privileges, it was undesirable to excite discussions on this point. Moreover, the appointment of Kiying with such unusual powers indicated a favorable disposition toward the Americans. It was fortunate that the two plenipotentiaries were at hand when the riot and homicide occurred, while the discussion which grew out of those events was no small benefit to the local government. The secret of much of the power of the Emperor of China consists in the acknowledgment by his subjects of his sacred character as the Son of Heaven; and although that lofty assumption must come down before the advance of western civilization, and

Digitized by Google

will ere long crumble of itself, to have asked for an audience when this formality was known to be inadmissible would have irritated him, and put the foreign minister in an indefensible position. The subsequent discussions proved how deeply rooted in the Chinese mind was this attribute; the peaceful settlement of the question in 1873 could not have been anticipated in 1844.

The French ambassador, H. E. Th. de Lagrené, arrived in China August 14th. In addition to the two secretaries, MM. le Marquis de Ferrière le Voyer and le Comte d'Harcourt, five other gentlemen were sent out to make investigations into the commerce, arts, and industrial resources of the Chinese. M. de Lagrené took possession of the lodgings prepared for him at Macao, in the same building which Mr. Cushing had occupied. Kíying immediately made arrangements for opening the negotiations by sending his three associates to congratulate the French minister on his arrival; he himself reached Macao September 29th. The gratification of the Chinese statesmen at finding that the missions from the American and French governments were not sent, like the English expedition, to demand indemnity and the cession of an island, was great. Their arrival had been foreshadowed among the people of Canton, the number of ships of war had been exaggerated, and the design of the ambassadors strangely misrepresented as including the seizure of an island. These reports could hardly fail to reach and have some effect upon the highest officers in the land. The time, therefore, was favorable, not merely to obtain the same political and commercial advantages which had been granted to England, but further to explain to the Chinese officers something of the relations their nation should enter into with the other powers of the earth. The first interviews between Kíying and M. de Lagrené were held in October, and the treaty of Wanghia taken as the basis of agreement. The negotiations were amicably settled by the signing of the treaty at Whampoa on October 23d. This act may be said to have concluded the opening of China, so far as its government was prepared for the extension of this intercourse.

The instalments due according to the treaty of Nanking were

Digitized by Google

not yet all paid, but the Chinese had shown their desire to fulfil their engagements, and the $21,000,000 were received by the English within a short period of the specified time. This was a minor consideration, however, in comparison with the great advantages gained by England for herself and all Christendom over the seclusive and exclusive system of former days, which had now received such a shock that it could not only never recover from it, but was not likely even to maintain itself where the treaties had defined it. The intercourse begun by these treaties went on as fast as the two parties found it for their benefit. The war, though eminently unjust in its cause as an opium war—and even English officers and authors do not try to disguise that the seizure of the opium was the real reason for an appeal to arms, though the imprisonment of Captain Elliot and other acts was the pretext—was still, so far as human sagacity can perceive, a wholesome infliction upon a government which haughtily refused all equal intercourse with other nations, or explanations regarding its conduct, and forbade its subjects having free dealings with their fellow-men.

If in entering upon the conflict England had published to the world her declaration of the reasons for engaging in it, the merits of the case would have been better understood. If she had said at the outset that she commenced the struggle with the Emperor because he would not treat her subjects resorting to his shores by his permission with common humanity, allowing them no intercourse with his subjects, nor access to his officers; because he contemptuously discarded her ambassadors and consular agents, sent with friendly design; because he made foolish regulations (which his own subjects did not observe) an occasion of offence against others when it suited him, and had despoiled them of their property by strange and arbitrary proceedings, weakening all confidence in his equity; lastly, because he kept himself aloof from other sovereigns, and shut out his people from that intercourse with their fellow-men which was their privilege and right; her character in this war would have appeared far better. But it is the prerogative of the Governor of nations to educe good out of evil, and make the wrath, the avarice, and the ambition of men to serve his purposes and ad-

Digitized by Google

vance his own designs, although their intentions may be far otherwise.

The external and internal relations of the Chinese Empire at the close of the year 1844 were in a far better state than one would have supposed they could have become in so short a time after such a convulsion. The cities and provinces where the storm of war had beat most violently were reviving, the authority of the officers was becoming re-established, the bands of lawless desperadoes were gradually dispersing, and the people resuming their peaceful pursuits. No ill-will was manifested in Amoy on account of the losses its citizens had sustained, nor at Ningpo or Shanghai for their occupation by English troops. The English consuls at the five ports had all been received, and trade was commencing under favorable auspices. The opium trade—for this dark feature everywhere forces itself into the prospect—was also extending, and opium schooners plying up and down the coast, and anchoring on the outside limits of every port to deliver the drug.

The citizens of Canton, however, maintained their hereditary ill-will toward foreigners, and proceeded to such lengths that the local government became powerless to carry the stipulation of the British treaty, to enter its city gates, into effect. Governor Davis proceeded to Canton in May, 1847, with several vessels of war, capturing all the guns at the Bogue in his progress up the river, and compelled the authorities to grant a larger space for residences and warehouses on the south side of the Pearl River, to be occupied as soon as arrangements could be made. It was also agreed that the gates should be unconditionally opened within two years, so that foreigners might have the same access to this city as to the other four ports. When the time came for this to be carried out, the Emperor ordered Governor-General Sü to mind the voice of the people and disregard this engagement, which had probably never received his sanction. A careful examination of the Chinese text of all the treaties showed that an explicit permission to enter the citadel (*ching*), or walled portion of the marts opened to foreign commerce, was not given. In consequence of this vagueness the Hongkong authorities, acting under instructions from London,

Digitized by Google

did not press the point, and the gates of Canton remained inviolate till January, 1858.[1]

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vols. XVIII., pp. 216, 275; XV., p. 46 ff. Davis, *China during the War and since the Peace*, 1852, Vol. II., Chaps. V. and VI., *passim*. Among other authorities on the war may be mentioned Lord Jocelyn, *Six Months with the Chinese Expedition*, London, 1841; K. Stewart Mackenzie, *Narrative of the Second Campaign in China*, London, 1842; Col. Arthur Cunynghame, *Recollections of Service in China*, 1853; Lieut. John Ouchterlony, *The Chinese War*, 1844; *The Last Year in China to the Peace of Nanking*, by a Field Officer, London and Philadelphia, 1843; Auguste Haussmann, *La Chine, résumé historique*, etc., Paris, 1858; Ad. Barrot in the *Revue des Deux Mondes* for February 15, March 1, June 1, and July 1, 1842.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE TAI-PING REBELLION.

The war, which was brought to an end by the treaty of Nanking, left the imperial government astonished and crippled, but not paralyzed or dejected. It had, moreover, the effect of arousing it from the old notions of absolutism and security; and though the actual heads of bureaus at Peking were unable, from their secluded position and imperfect education, to ascertain and appreciate the real nature of the contest, the maritime officials could see that its results were likely to be lasting and serious. A few thoughtful men among them, as Ílípu, Seu Kí-yu, Kíying and his colleagues, understood better than their superiors at the capital that the advent of the 'Western Ocean people' at the five open ports introduced a permanent influence upon the Black-haired race. They could not, of course, estimate what this influence would become, but a sense of its power and vitality had the effect of preventing them from petty opposition in carrying out the treaty stipulations. With the major part of the officials, on the other hand, life-long prejudice, joined to utter ignorance as to the numbers, position, and resources of foreign nations, led them to withdraw from even such a measure of intercourse with consular and diplomatic officials as they could easily have held. The tone of official society was opposed to having any personal relations with their foreign colleagues, and after the old Emperor Taukwang had passed off the stage in 1850, his son showed—even eight years after the peace—that promotion was incompatible with cultivating a closer acquaintance with them.

It is not surprising that this reaction took on the form of doing as little as possible, and that its stringency was increased

Digitized by Google

in reality by the device of making the governor-general at Canton the only channel of correspondence with foreign ministers. This magnate was surrounded in that city by subordinates whose training had been inimical to extending intercourse with foreigners, because they had reaped the advantages of the old system in their monopoly of the trade. The intendants at the other open ports were directed to refer difficult questions relating to foreigners to this high functionary, but as they were more disposed to let such disputes settle themselves, if possible, few cases were ever sent to him. The animus of the whole governing class gradually assumed a settled determination to keep aloof from those who had humbled them in the eyes of their subjects, and yet give no handle to these potent outsiders to repeat their descent on the coast. It was a poor policy in every point of view, only serving to hasten the evils they dreaded.

Sir John Davis was appointed governor of Hongkong in 1844, and during four years' service so soon after the war saw much of this proud and foolish spirit. His two volumes, published in 1852 (*China during the War and since the Peace*), contain a digest of the official records and acts of the Chinese government which is highly instructive. It is remarkable that he should show so much surprise at the mendacity, ill-will, and weakness of the officers in these reports to their master, or at the Emperor's persistency in wreaking his wrath on those whose poltroonery had done him so much harm. A residence of nearly thirty years in the country should have developed, in his case, an intimate acquaintance with native ideas of honor and mercy, and shown him how little of either are practised in time of war. If he blames the Chinese leaders for their ignorance and silly mistakes in its conduct, one can readily see that they never had an opportunity to learn the truth about their enemies. Their struggle against the impossible was not altogether in vain, therefore, if it prepared them for accepting the inevitable. Had Sir John manifested a little sympathy for their plight in such an unequal contest, and shown more humanity for their sufferings under the evils which afflicted them, his opinion of the best remedies would have carried much weight. As an instance of the

Digitized by Google

result of his own training in the East India Company's school, he remarks respecting the imperial edicts against opium, that they fell into disuse, and that the subject had never been revived since the war; adding, "But at no time was the traffic deserving the full load of infamy with which many were disposed to heap it, for at most it only supplied the poison, which the Chinese were not obliged to take. The worst effect, perhaps, was the piracy it engendered, for this has told against the honest trade."[1] In his first interview with Kíying, in May, 1844, he proposed that the Chinese government should legalize the opium trade, for "such a wise and salutary measure would remove all chances of unpleasant occurrences between the two governments; it might provide an ample revenue for the Emperor, and check to the same extent the consumption of a commodity which was at present absolutely untaxed."[2] He, however, brought it more directly to his notice the next year in consequence of the revival of smuggling at Whampoa to as great a degree as in 1839, and the opium vessels all left the Reach.

Kíying was entirely indisposed to move, or even aid, in this matter, which he knew would be distasteful to the Emperor, other than by a truly Chinese device—that the officials of both nations should let it go on by mutual connivance. Sir John naïvely remarks on this: "The only thing wanting was that the Emperor should publicly sanction what he had once publicly condemned. . . . The trade, however, was practically tolerated, and to us this made a great difference. The Chinese government was not sufficiently honest to make a public avowal of this change in its system, but the position in which Great Britain stood became materially altered. China had distinctly declined a conventional arrangement for the remedy of the evil, and expressed a desire that we should not bring the existing abuse to its notice."[3] With two such men in command, of course nothing was ever done by either side to restrain the evils growing out of this contraband and demoralizing trade, until another war and new treaties changed the national relations.

[1] *China during the War*, etc., Vol. I., p. 19.
[2] *Ibid.*, Vol. II., p. 44.
[3] *Ibid.*, Vol. II., p. 208.

Digitized by Google.

At Canton the long-cherished dislike to foreigners was fomented by demagogues and idlers. These worked upon the fears of the people by telling them that their lands were to be taken to build warehouses upon; and this rumor was so far believed that it soon became unsafe for foreigners to venture far into the suburbs. In December, 1847, not long after the arrangement with Sir John Davis respecting an entrance into Canton city was made, six Englishmen were attacked by a mob at Hwang-chuh-kí while on a ramble, and all killed, some of them with refined cruelty. Kíying took immediate measures—extremely creditable to his sense of what he owed to justice and maintenance of peace—to punish these villagers. A number of men whom their fellows indicated as leaders in the outrage were arrested; the prisoners were tried at Canton by the regular courts. Four were presently decapitated in the sight of a military deputation sent from Hongkong, and two others by orders from Peking. This well-timed justice secured the safety of foreigners peaceably going about the city and environs; but it was credibly stated afterward that there were numerous placards already posted in that region informing the people that foreigners would perhaps be coming thither to select sites for themselves. These unfortunate Englishmen, indeed, would perhaps have been allowed to return home, if they had been able to speak to the villagers and explain their object.

This incident makes it proper to notice a common misapprehension abroad in respect to the influence of the treaties which had been signed with China upon the people themselves. It was inferred that as soon as the three treaties with England, France, and America had been ratified, the great body of educated Chinese at least would inquire and learn what were their provisions, and a natural curiosity would be manifested to know something about the peoples of those lands. Nothing could be more likely—nothing was farther from the reality. No efforts were ever made by the imperial officers at the capital or in the provinces to promulgate these national compacts, whose original and ratified copies were never even transmitted to Peking. Consequently, the existence and nature of these *hwo yoh*, or 'peace contracts,' had to be continually taught to the natives,

Digitized by Google

who on their part did not usually feel themselves under much obligation to obey them. In China, as elsewhere, just laws never execute themselves, and it is hardly surprising that not an officer of the Emperor should go out of his way to enforce their distasteful stipulations.

It was therefore uphill work to see that the treaties did not become a dead letter, and all the hardest part of this labor fell to the lot of the British consuls. They alone stood forth among foreign officials as invested with some power of their own; and being generally able to use the Chinese language, they came into personal relations with the local officers, and thus began the only effectual mode through which the treaties could become agencies for breaking down the hoary wall of prejudice, ignorance, and contempt which had so long kept China out of the pale of progress. In doing this, no fixed course could be laid down; though the constant tendency of the consuls was to encroach on the power of the mandarins, these latter were generally able to recur to the treaties, and thus learn the necessity and benefits of adherence to them. Their education was a colossal undertaking, and considering the enormous difficulties, its progress has been as rapid as was consistent with the welfare of themselves or their subjects. In this progress they bear the greatest share of the burden; its responsibilities and costs, its risks and results, almost wholly come upon them, while foreign nations, with the immense undefined rights of exterritoriality on their side, are interested on-lookers, ready to take advantage of every *faux pas* to compel them to conform to their interpretation of the treaties. Very little consideration is given to their ignorance of international law, to their full belief in the power of China, or to their consequent disinclination to accept the new order of things so suddenly forced on them. On the other hand, no one who knows all the features of this period will withhold the praise due to the British authorities in China for their conduct in relations with its functionaries; it might fairly be added that the improved state of international intercourse is mostly due to them.

The condition of the Empire at the close of the war was most discouraging to its rulers, who had not dreamed of re-

Digitized by Google

ceiving so crushing a defeat. It is creditable to them that they honorably paid up the $21,000,000 exacted of them by the British, who of course restored Chusan at the stipulated time. The name of R. Montgomery Martin, then treasurer of Hongkong colony, must be awarded due mention as being the only Queen's official who endeavored to resist its surrender, on the plea of its great benefit to her eastern empire and influence. Sir John Davis speaks of the "political and military considerations" which gave importance to it; but the proposal of Mr. Martin was promptly rejected by his superiors, and the whole archipelago has since been neglected. At the four northern ports opened by treaty, with the exception of Fuhchau, trade began without difficulty. This city having entirely escaped the ravages of the war, its proud gentry influenced the citizens against foreigners and their trade; the first European residents there met with some ill-usage, but this bitter feeling gradually wore off as the parties became better known.

At Canton the case was aggravated by the prejudices of race and the turbulence of the unemployed braves who had flocked into it on the invitation and inducements of Commissioner Lin to enlist against the English. They had been disbanded by Kíying, but had not returned to their homes; their lawlessness increased till it threatened the supremacy of the provincial government, and required the strongest measures of repression. The disorders spread rather than diminished under an impoverished treasury and ill-paid soldiery, and prepared the way for the rebellion which during the next twenty years tasked the utmost resources of the nation. The ignorance of one part of its people of what was taking place in another province—which during the foreign war so greatly crippled the Emperor's efforts to interest his subjects in this struggle—here did much to preserve them from uniting against him to his overthrow. It was plain to every candid observer that however weak, unprincipled, and tyrannical the Manchu rulers might be, they were as efficient sovereigns as the people could produce, and no substituted sway could possibly elevate and purify them until higher principles of social and political life had been adopted by the nation at large.

The protracted convulsion, known abroad as the Tai-ping

Digitized by Google

Rebellion, owed much of its duration as well to the exposure of the government's internal rottenness as to its weakness against foreign nations; but many other causes were at work. The body of the Chinese people are well aware that their rulers are no better than themselves in morals, honesty, or patriotism; but they are all ready to ascribe the evils they suffer from robbers, taxation, exactions, and unjust sentences to those in authority. The rulers are conscious that their countrymen consider it honorable to evade taxes, defy the police when they can safely do so, and oppose rather than aid in the maintenance of law and order. There is no basis of what in Christian lands is regarded as the foundation of social order and just government—the power of conscience and amenableness to law; nevertheless, from the habits of obedience taught in the family and in the schoolroom, the people have attained a good degree of security for themselves and show much regard to just rulers. The most serious evils and sufferings in Chinese society are caused by its disorderly members, not its rapacious rulers; and both can only be removed and reformed by the reception of a higher code which raises the standard of action from expediency to obligation.

In giving an account of the rise and overthrow of the Tai-ping Rebellion, it will be necessary to limit the narrative to the most important religious, political, and military events connected with it up to its suppression in 1867. The phrase "Tai-ping Rebellion" is wholly of foreign manufacture; at Peking and everywhere among those loyal to the government the insurgents were styled *Chang-mao tseh*, or 'Long-haired rebels,' while on their side, by a whimsical resemblance to English slang, the imperialists were dubbed *imps*. When the chiefs assumed to be aiming at independence in 1850, in order to identify their followers with their cause they took the term *Ping Chao*, or 'Peace Dynasty,' as the style of their sway, to distinguish it from the *Tsing Chao*, or 'Pure Dynasty,' of the Manchus. Each of them prefixed the adjective *Ta* (or *Tai*, in Cantonese), 'Great,' as is the Chinese custom with regard to dynasties and nations; thus the name *Tai-ping* became known to foreigners. The leader took the style *Tien-teh*, or 'Heavenly Virtue,' for his reign, thereby indicating his aim in seeking the throne. His own personal

Digitized by Google

name, Hung Siu-tsuen, was regarded as too sacred to be used by his followers. The banners and edicts used at Nanking and in his army bore the inscription, *Tien-fu, Tien-hiung, Tien-wang Tai-ping Tien-kwoh*, or 'Heavenly Father, Heavenly Elder Brother, Heavenly King of the Great Peace [Dynasty] of the Heavenly Kingdom' (*i.e.*, China).

The incidents of this man's early life and education were ascertained in 1854, from his relative Hung Jin, by the Rev. Theodore Hamberg, whose narrative[1] bears the marks of a trustworthy recital. Hung Siu-tsuen was the youngest son of Hung Jang, a well-to-do farmer living in Hwa hien, a district situated on the North River, about thirty miles from Canton city, in a small village of which he was the headman. The family was from Kiaying prefecture, on the borders of Kiangsi, and the whole village was regarded as belonging to the Hakkas, or Squatters, and had little intercourse with the Pun-tis, or Indigenes, on that account. Siu-tsuen was born in 1813, and at the usual age of seven entered school, where he showed remarkable aptitude for study. His family being too poor to spare his services long, he had to struggle and deny himself, as many a poor aspirant for fame in all lands has done, in order to fit himself to enter the regular examinations. In 1826 his name appeared on the list of candidates in Hwa hien, but Hung Jin says: "Though his name was always among the first upon the board at the district examinations, yet he never succeeded in attaining the degree of Siu-tsai." In 1833 he was at Canton at the triennial examination, when he met with the native evangelist Liang A-fah, who was distributing and selling a number of his own writings near the Kung yuen to the candidates as they went in and out of the hall. Attracted by the venerable aspect of this man, he accepted a set of his tracts called *Kiuen Shi Liang Yen*, or 'Good Words to Exhort the Age.' He took them home with him, but threw them aside when he found that they advocated Christianity, then a proscribed doctrine.

In 1837 he was again in the provincial tripos, where his re-

[1] *Visions of Hung Siu-tshuen and Origin of the Kwang-si Insurrection*, Hongkong, 1854. Mr. W. Sargent in the *North American Review* for July, 1854, Vol. LXXIX., p. 158.

Digitized by Google

peated disappointment and discontent aggravated an illness that seized him. On reaching his home he took to his bed and prepared for death, having had several visions foretokening his decease. He called his parents to his bedside and thus addressed them: "My days are counted and my life will soon be closed. O my parents! how badly have I returned the favor of your love to me; I shall never attain a name that shall reflect lustre on you." After uttering these words he shut his eyes and lost all strength and command over his body, and became unconscious of what was going on around him. His outward senses were inactive, his body appeared as dead, but his soul was acted upon by a peculiar energy, seeing and remembering things of a very extraordinary nature.

At first, when his eyes were closed he saw a dragon, a tiger, and a cock enter the room; a great number of men playing upon instruments then approached, bearing a beautiful sedan-chair in which they invited him to be seated. Not knowing what to make of this honor, he was carried away to a luminous and beautiful place wherein a multitude of fine men and women saluted him on arrival with expressions of joy. On leaving the sedan an old woman took him down to a river, saying: "Thou dirty man, why hast thou kept company with yonder people and defiled thyself? I must now wash thee clean." After the washing was over he entered a large building in company with a crowd of old and virtuous men, some of whom were the ancient sages. Here they opened his body, took out the heart and other organs, and replaced them by new ones of a red color; this done, the wound closed without leaving a scar. The whole assembly then went on to another larger hall, whose splendor was beyond description, in which an aged man, with a golden beard and dressed in black robes, sat on the highest place. Seeing Siu-tsuen, he began to shed tears and said: "All human beings in the world are produced and sustained by me; they eat my food and wear my clothing, but not one among them has a heart to remember and venerate me; what is worse, they take my gifts and therewith worship demons; they purposely rebel against me and arouse my anger. Do thou not imitate them." Hereupon he gave him a sword to destroy the demons, a seal to

Digitized by Google

overcome the evil spirits, and a sweet yellow fruit to eat. Siu-tsuen received them, and straightway began to exhort his venerable companions to perform their duties to their master. After doing so even to tears, the high personage led him to a spot whence he could behold the world below, and discern the horrible depravity and vice of its inhabitants. The sight was too awful to be endured, and words were inadequate to describe it. So he awoke from his trance, and had vigor enough to rise and dress himself and go to his father. Making a bow, Siu-tsuen said: "The venerable old man above has commanded that all men shall turn to me, and that all treasures shall flow to me." This sickness continued about forty days, and the visions were multiplied. He often met with a man in them whom he called his elder brother, who instructed him how to act and assisted him in going after and killing evil spirits. He became more and more possessed with the idea, as his health returned, that he had been commissioned to be Emperor of China; and one day his father found a slip on which was written "The Heavenly King of Great Reason, the Sovereign King Tsuen." As time wore on, this lofty idea seems to have more and more developed his mind to a soberness and purity which overawed and attracted him. Nothing is said about his utterances while the war with England was progressing, but he must have known its progress and results. His cataleptic fits and visions seem not to have returned, and he pursued his avocation as a school-teacher until about 1843, having meanwhile failed in another trial to obtain his degree at Canton. In that year his wife's brother asked to take away the nine tracts of Liang A-fah to see what they contained; when he returned them to Siu-tsuen he urged him to read them too.

They consisted of sixty-eight short chapters upon common topics, selected from the Bible, and not exactly fitted to give him, in his excited state and total ignorance of western books and religion, a fair notion of Christianity. As he read them he saw, as he thought, the true meaning of his visions. The venerable old man was no other than God the Father, and his guide was Jesus Christ, who had assisted him in slaying the demons. "These books are certainly sent purposely by heaven

Digitized by Google

to me to confirm the truth of my former experience. If I had received them without having gone through the sickness, I should not have dared to believe in them, and by myself to oppose the customs of the whole world. If I had merely been sick, but not also received the books, I should have had no further evidence as to the truth of my visions, which might also have been considered as mere products of a diseased imagination."

This sounds reasonable, and commends itself as wholly unlike the ravings of a madman. Nevertheless, while it would be unwise for us to closely criticise this narrative in its details, and assert that Siu-tsuen's pretensions were all hypocritical, we must bear in mind the fact that he had certainly, neither at this time nor ever afterward, a clear conception of the true nature of Christianity, judging from his writings and edicts. The nature of sin, and the dominion of God's law upon the sinner; the need of atonement from the stain and effects of sin; Christ's mediatorial sacrifice; were subjects on which he could not possibly have received full instruction from these fragmentary essays. In after days his conviction of his own divine calling to rule over China, seems to have blinded his understanding to the spiritual nature of the Christian church. His individual penchant was insufficient to resist or mould the subordinates who accepted his mission for their own ends. But he was not a tool in their hands at any time, and his personal influence permeated the ignorant mass of reckless men around him to an extraordinary degree, while his skill in turning some of the doctrines and requirements of the Bible as the ground and proofs of his own authority indicated original genius, since the results were far beyond the reach of a cunning impostor. From first to last, beginning with poverty, obscurity, and weakness in Hwa, continuing with distinction, power, and royalty at Nanking and throughout its five adjacent provinces, and ending with defeat, desertion, and death in his own palace, Hung never wavered or abated one jot of his claim to supreme rule on earth. When his end was reported at Peking in August, 1864, thirty-one years after his receiving Liang A-fah's tracts, the imperial rescript sadly said: "Words cannot convey any idea

Digitized by Google

of the misery and desolation he caused; the measure of his iniquity was full, and the wrath of both gods and men was roused against him."

A career so full of exceptional interest and notable incidents cannot, of course, be minutely described in this sketch. After Hung's examination of the tracts which had lain unnoticed in his hands for ten years, followed by his conviction of the real meaning of his visions in 1837, he began to proclaim his mission and exhort those around him to accept Christianity. Hung Jin (who furnished Mr. Hamberg with his statements) and a fellow-student, Fung Yun-shan, were his first converts; they agreed to put away all idols and the Confucian tablet out of their schools, and then baptized or washed themselves in a brook near by, as a sign of their purification and faith in Jesus. As they had no portion of the Sacred Scriptures to guide them, they were at a loss to understand many things spoken of by Liang A-fah, but his expositions of the events and doctrines occurring in them were deeply pondered and accepted. The Mosaic account of creation and the flood, destruction of Sodom, sermon on the Mount, and nature of the final judgment, were given in them, as well as a full relation of Christ's life and death; and these prepared the neophytes to receive the Bible when they got it. But the same desire to find proof of his own calling led Siu-tsuen to fix on fanciful renderings of certain texts, and, after the manner of commentators in other lands, to extract meanings never intended. A favorite conceit, among others, was to assume that wherever the character *tsuen*, 全, meaning 'whole,' 'altogether,' occurred in a verse, it meant himself, and as it forms a part of the Chinese phrase for *almighty*, he thus had strong reasons (as he thought) for his course. The phrase *Tien kwoh*, denoting the 'Kingdom of Heaven' in Christ's preaching, they applied to China. With such preconceived views it is not wonderful that the brethren were all able to fortify themselves in their opinions by the strongest arguments. All those discourses in the series relating to repentance, faith, and man's depravity were apparently entirely overlooked by them.

The strange notions, unaffected earnestness, moral conduct, and

Digitized by Google

new ideas about God and happiness of these men soon began to attract people to them, some to dispute and cavil, others to accept and worship with them. Their scholars, one and all, deserted them as soon as the Confucian tablet was removed from the schoolroom, and they were left penniless and unemployed, sometimes subjected to beatings and obloquy for embracing an outlandish religion, and other times ridiculed for forsaking their ancestral halls. The number of their adherents was too few to detain them at home, and in May, 1844, Siu-tsuen, Yun-shan, and two associates resolved to visit a distant relative who lived near the Miaotsz' in Kwangsí, and get their living along the road by peddling ink-stones and pencils. They reached the adjoining district, Tsingyuen, where they preached two months and baptized several persons; some time after Hung Jin took a school there, and remained several years, baptizing over fifty converts. Siu-tsuen and Yun-shan came to the confines of the Miaotsz' in Sinchau fu in three months, preaching the existence of the true God and of redemption by his Son, and after many vicissitudes reached their relative's house in Kwei hien among the mountains. Here they tarried all summer, and their earnest zeal in spreading the doctrines which they evidently had found so cheering to their own hearts, arrested the attention of these rude mountaineers, and many of them professed their faith in Christ. Siu-tsuen returned home in the winter, and was disappointed in not finding his colleague Yun-shan there as well as the other two, nor could he give any account of his course. It appeared afterward that Yun-shan had met some acquaintances on his road, and became so much interested in preaching to them at Thistle-mount that he remained there two years, teaching school and gathering churches.

Siu-tsuen continued to teach and preach the truth as he had learned it from the books in his hands. In 1846 he heard of I. J. Roberts, the American missionary, living at Canton, and the next spring received an invitation to come there and study. He and Hung Jin did so; the former remained with Mr. Roberts about two months, giving him a narrative of his own visions, conversion, and preaching, at the same time learning the nature and extent of foreign mission work in that city. He made a visit

Digitized by Google

home with two native Christians, who had been sent to Hwa to learn more about him. They seem to have obtained good reports of his character; but others in Mr. Roberts' employ were afraid of his influence if he should enter their church, and therefore intrigued to have him refused admission just then. Mr. Roberts appears to have acted discreetly according to the light he had respecting the applicant's integrity, and would no doubt have baptized him had not the latter soon after left Canton, where he had no means of support. At this time the political disturbances in Kwangtung seem to have greatly influenced Siu-tsuen's course, and when he reached home he made a second visit to his relative, and thence went to Thistle-mount to rejoin Fung Yun-shan. Hung Jin states that before this date he had expressed disloyal sentiments against the Manchus, but these are so common among the Cantonese that they attracted no notice. On seeing Yun-shan and meeting the two thousand converts he had gathered, it is pretty certain that hopes of a successful resistance must have revived in his breast. A woman among them also began to relate some visions she had seen ten years before, foretelling the advent of a man who should teach them how to worship God. The number of converts rapidly increased in three prefectures adjacent to the River Yuh in the eastern part of Kwangsí, and no serious hindrance was met with from the officials, though there were not wanting enemies, by one of whom Yun-shan was accused and then thrown into prison. However, the prefect and district magistrate to whom the case was referred, finding no sufficient cause for punishment, liberated him; though the new sectaries had made themselves somewhat obnoxious to the idolaters by their iconoclasm—so hard is it to learn patience and toleration in any country. In very many villages in that region the *Shangtí hwui*, or 'Associations for worshipping God,' began to be recognized, but they do not seem to have quoted the toleration edict obtained in 1844 in favor of Christianity, as that only spoke of the *Tien-chu kiao*, or Catholics. The worship of Shangtí is a peculiar function of the Emperor, as has been already explained; and it is not surprising to be told by Hung Jin that the new sect was regarded as treasonable.

Digitized by Google

In 1848 Siu-tsuen's father died trusting in the new faith and directing that no Buddhist services be held at his funeral; the whole family had by this time become its followers, and when the son and Yun-shan met them soon after, they began to discuss their future. The believers in Kwangsí were left to take care of themselves during the whole winter, and appear to have gone on with their usual meetings without hindrance. In June, 1849, the two leaders left Hwa for Kwangsí, assisted by the faithful, and found much to encourage them in their secret plans in the general unity which pervaded the association. Some members had been favored with visions, others had become exhorters, denouncing those who behaved contrary to the doctrines; others essayed to cure diseases. Siu-tsuen was immediately acknowledged by all as their leader; he set himself to introduce and maintain a rigid discipline, forbade the use of opium and spirits, introduced the observance of the Sabbath, and regulated the worship of God. No hint of calling in the aid of a foreign teacher to direct them in their new services appears to have been suggested by any member, nor even of sending to Canton to engage the services of a native convert, though Liang A-fah was still living then. The whole year was thus passed at Thistle-mount, and the nucleus of the future force thoroughly imbued with the ideas of their leader, who had, by June, 1850, gathered around him his own relatives and chosen his lieutenants.[1]

The existence of such a large body of people, acting together under the orders of one man, whose aspirations and teachings had gradually filled their minds with new ideas, could not remain unnoticed by the authorities. The governor-general lived at Canton, and received his information through local magistrates and prefects, whose policy was rather to understate the truth. But Sü Kwang-tsin felt that he was not fitted for the coming struggle. His place was therefore filled by the appoint-

[1] The insurgents cut off the tail, allowed their hair to grow, and decided that all who joined the insurrectional movement should leave off the *chang* and the Tartar tunic, and should wear the robe open in the front, which their ancestors had worn in the time of the Mings.—Callery and Yvan, *History of the Insurrection in China*, translated by John Oxenford, p. 61. London, 1853.

Digitized by Google

ment of Lin, then living in Fuhchau, who started to fulfil his new charge, but died in October, as he entered the province. Governor Sü was obliged to leave Canton on duty, but he never met the enemy nor returned to his post. The populace of the city made themselves merry over his violent conduct toward a poor paper-image maker near the landing, who had just set out to dry some effigies dressed in high official costume, each one lacking a head. Sü chose to regard this proceeding as an intentional insult, as the artisan must have known that he was to pass by that way, and ordered him to be bambooed and his effigies destroyed to neutralize the bad omen. The Peking government had just sent three Manchus to superintend operations in Kwangsí; their predecessors, Lí and Chau, with the provincial governor, Ching, were all degraded, but these new imperial officials did no better, nor did those on the spot expect that they would succeed. Tahungah was the ruffian who had executed one hundred and eighty British prisoners in Formosa nine years before; and Saishangah was the prime minister of the young Emperor Hienfung, as worthless as he was depraved. Uruntai, who had long been in command of the Manchu garrison at Canton, was also sent, in May, 1851, to check the growing power of the insurgents. They were well posted in Wusiuen hien, near the junction of two rivers, and this chieftain naïvely expresses his surprise in his report to the Emperor that the rebels should occupy an important post which he had just decided to fortify. However, his official report[1] explains the reasons for the imperial reverses better than anything which had hitherto appeared. Corruption, venality, idleness, opium-smoking, and peculation had made the whole army a mass of rottenness; no one can wonder that the Tai-pings marched without danger through the land to their goal at Nanking.

A year previous to this date, however, the conflict had been begun by the followers of Siu-tsuen. In their zeal against idolatry they had destroyed temples and irritated the people, which ere long aroused a spirit of distrust and enmity; this was further increased by the long-standing feud and mutual hatred

[1] *Chinese Repository*, Vol. XX., p. 498.

Digitized by Google

between the *pun-tis* and *hakkas* (natives and squatters) which ran through society. Siu-tsuen and his chiefs were mostly of the latter class, and whenever villages were attacked and the hakkas worsted, they moved over to Thistle-mount and professed to worship Shangtí with Siu-tsuen. In this way the whole population had become more or less split up into parties. When a body of imperial soldiers sent to arrest him and Yun-shan were driven off, they availed themselves of the enthusiasm of their followers to gather them and occupy Lienchu, a large market-town in Kwei hien. This proceeding attracted to their banner all the needy and discontented spirits in that region, but their own partisans were now able to regulate and employ all who came, requiring a close adherence to their religious tenets and worship. This town of Lienchu was soon fortified, and the order of a camp began to appear among its possessors, who, however, spared the townspeople. The drilling of the force, now increased to many thousands, commenced; its vitality was soon tested when it was deemed best to cross the river and advance on Taitsun in order to obtain more room. The imperialists were hoodwinked by a simple device, and when they found their enemy had marched off, their attack on the rear was repulsed with much loss. Like all their class, they turned their wrath on the peaceful inhabitants of Lienchu, killing and burning till almost nothing was left. This needless cruelty recoiled on themselves, and all the members of the *Shangtí hwui*, loyal and disaffected alike, felt that their very name carried sedition in it, and they must join Siu-tsuen's standard or give up their faith. He had induced some recent comers belonging to the Triad Society to put their money into the military chest and to submit to his rules. One of his religious teachers had been detected embezzling the funds while on their way to the commissariat, but the public trial and execution of the man had served both as a warning and an encouragement to the different classes who witnessed the affair. Most of the Triad chiefs, however, were afraid of such discipline, and drew off to the imperialists with the greater number of their followers. The defection furnished Siu-tsuen an opportunity to make known his settled opposition to this fraternity, and that every man joining his

Digitized by Google

party must leave it. At this time the discipline and good order exhibited in the encampment at Taitsun must have struck the people around it with surprise and admiration, if the meagre accounts we have received are at all trustworthy.

About one year elapsed between the conflict near Lienchu and the capture of Yung-ngan chau, a city on the River Mei in Pingloh prefecture. During this period Siu-tsuen had become more and more possessed with the idea of his divine mission from the *Tien-fu*, or 'Heavenly Father,' as God was now commonly called, and the *Tien-hiung*, or 'Heavenly Elder Brother,' as he termed Jesus Christ. He began to seclude himself from the gaze of his followers, and deliver to them such revelations as he received for the management of the force committed to him to clear the land of all idolatry and oppression, and cheer the hearts of those pledged to the glorious cause. This course was destructive of all those peculiar tenets which Christianity teaches, and, so far as can be learned, neither he nor Yun-shan any longer prominently set forth the doctrines of salvation by repentance and faith in Christ, as they had done in their first journey among the Miaotsz', but held their followers together by fanaticism and the hope of final triumph. In its main features, his course was copied from that of Moses and Aaron when they withdrew into the tabernacle, and it was easy to impress upon his uninstructed followers the repetition in his person of the same mode of making known the will of Heaven. An adequate reason can also be found in this scheme why he never called in the aid of foreign missionaries to teach his followers the truth as it is in Christ Jesus, knowing full well that none of them would lend any countenance to such delusion. As early as April, 1849, when still in Kwei hien, he began to promulge his decrees in the form of revelations received from the Heavenly Father and Elder Brother, when one or the other came down into the world to tell him what course he should pursue. In March, 1853, just before capturing Nanking, he issued a book of "Celestial Decrees," containing a series of these revelations, from which the real nature of his character can be learned. Two extracts will be sufficient to quote:

Digitized by Google

(The Heavenly Father addressed the multitude, saying, O my children! Do you know your Heavenly Father and your Celestial Elder Brother? To which they all replied, We know our Heavenly Father and Celestial Elder Brother. The Heavenly Father then said, Do you know your Lord, and truly? To which they all replied, We know our Lord right well. The Heavenly Father said, I have sent your Lord down into the world to become the Celestial King (*Tien-wang*); every word he utters is a celestial command; you must be obedient; you must truly assist your Lord and regard your King; you must not dare to act disorderly, nor to be disrespectful. If you do not regard your Lord and King, every one of you will be involved in difficulty.)

It is only from these official documents that we can learn the real political and religious tenets of the revolutionists now intrenched at Yung-ngan, and soon to burst forth in fury upon their country. It was in vain to expect gospel figs from such a bramble bush.

Another extract exhibits their jugglery still more clearly. It is dated December 9, 1851, and contains the proceedings and sentence in the case of Chau Sih-nang, who had been detected holding intercourse with General Saishangah at Taitsun. Four of the kings were that day consulting upon some weighty matters, when suddenly the Heavenly Father came down among them and secretly told them to instantly arrest Chau and two others and bring them to Yang, the Eastern King, while he returned to heaven. They did so, and reported the matter to the Tien-wang, but none of them had any evidence to proceed upon. "Happily, however, the Heavenly Father gave himself the trouble to appear once more," and ordered two of the royal cousins to go and inform the several princes of his presence. They all attended at court and entreated the Heavenly King to accompany them. Hereupon, his Majesty, guarded by the princes and body-guards, together with a host of officials, advanced into the presence of the Heavenly Father. They all kneeled down and asked, "Is the Heavenly Father come down?" He replied, addressing the Tien-wang, "Siu-tsuen, I am going to take this matter in hand to-day; a mere mortal would find it a hard task. One Chau has been holding collusive commu-

[1] This decree bears the date April 19, 1851, at Tung-hiang, a village near Wusiuen.

Digitized by Google

nication with the enemy yesterday, and has returned to court, intending to carry into effect a very serious revolt. Go and bring him here." The culprit soon came, and the examination is reported in full. In answer to the question, "Who is it that is now speaking to you?" he replied, "The Heavenly Father, the Supreme Lord and Great God (Shangtí) is addressing me." He said soon after, "I am aware that the Heavenly Father is omnipotent, omniscient, and omnipresent." By a series of questions his guilt was proved, and he and his accomplices, with his wife and son, were all put to death as a warning to traitors, in presence of a large concourse, to whom they confessed the justice of their fate.

When in possession of Nanking, Hung Siu-tsuen was formally proclaimed by his army to be Emperor of China, and assumed the style and insignia of royalty. Five leading chiefs were appointed to their several corps as South, East, West, North, and Assistant Kings; Fung Yun-shan was the Southern King. Who among them were the efficient disciplinarians and leading minds in carrying on their plan cannot be now ascertained, so complete was the secrecy which enveloped the whole movement from first to last as to the *personnel* of the force. Dr. Medhurst's translations of their orders, tenets, laws, revelations, and text-books furnish the most authentic sources for estimating its character, but they fail to describe its living agents. In so large an army, composed of the most heterogeneous elements, it cannot be expected that there would be at any time much knowledge of the sacred Scriptures, on which its leaders based their assumed powers derived from the 'Heavenly Father and Elder Brother;' but there certainly was a remarkable degree of sobriety and discipline among them during the first few years of their existence. A most perplexing question, which increased in its urgency and difficulty as soon as opposition drove the rebel general to intrench himself at Lienchu, was temporarily arranged by forming a separate encampment for the women, and placing over them officers of their own sex to see that discipline was maintained. In doing this he allowed the married people as great facilities for the care of their children as was possible under the conditions of army life; but

Digitized by Google

during their progress through the land in 1852 and 1853, much suffering must have been endured.

In 1852 the state and size of the army in Yung-ngan fully authorized the leaders of the revolt to march northward. Several engagements had given their men confidence in each other as they saw the imperialists put to flight; defeats had furthermore shown that their persevering enemy entertained no idea of sparing even one of them if captured. The want of provisions during their five months' siege within its walls further trained them to a certain degree of patient endurance; when, therefore, they broke through the besieging force in three divisions on the night of April 7, 1852, they were animated by success and hope to possess themselves of the Empire. Marching north they now attacked Kweilin, the provincial capital, May 15th, but having no cannon fit to besiege a walled city of that size, crossed the border and captured Tau in Hunan, which gave them access to the River Siang and means of transportation. Their course was thenceforth an easy conquest of the towns along its valley. Kweiyang chau, Chin chau, Tunghing, Nganjin, and others were taken and evacuated, one after the other, until they reached the capital of this province, September 18th. Changsha and Siangtan together form one immense city, and its defenders fully understood their peril, and the probability of entire destruction if they allowed it to be captured. For eighty days the Tai-pings exerted themselves in vain to obtain possession, losing, however, very few men, and doing no great harm to their enemy, who kept beyond reach. December 1st they raised the siege, and by the 13th reached Yohchau on the Yangtsz', which was taken without a struggle. Ten days after, replenished and encouraged by the spoil found in Yohchau, they occupied Hanyang and Wuchang, the capital of Hupeh province, lying on the other side of the river. Its garrison was unable to escape, and many soldiers were destroyed. Hwangchau and Kiukiang, two prefect cities lower down, were captured January 12th and February 18th, while Nganking, the capital of Nganhwui, fell a week later. Nothing seemed able to resist the advance of the insurgents, and on March 8th they encamped before Nanking. It was garrisoned by

Digitized by Google

Manchus and Chinese, who, however, made no better defence than their comrades in other cities; in ten days its walls were breached, and all the defenders found inside put to death, including Luh, the governor-general of the province. Chinkiang and Yangchau soon were dragged to the same fate, thus depriving the imperialists of their control of the Grand Canal.

This rapid progress through the land since leaving Yung-ngan eleven months previously had spread consternation among the demoralized officers and soldiers of the Emperor, who, on his part, was as weak and ignorant as any of his subordinates. The march of the insurgents showed the utter hollowness of the imperial troops, the incapacity of their most trusted leaders, and the little interest taken by the great body of the nation in the conflict. Many causes which might adequately explain this extraordinary success cannot now be ascertained, but a national dislike of the Manchus on the part of the Chinese lay at the bottom of their coldness. They felt, too, that a government which could not protect them against a few thousand foreign troops might as well give place to a native one. The insurgents had perhaps not more than ten thousand adherents, including women and children, when they left Yung-ngan;[1] but these went forth in the full conviction of the heavenly commission of their leader to destroy idolatry, set up the worship of the true God, and inaugurate the kingdom of heaven in the person of the "Heavenly King." The term *Shangti* was known by every schoolboy to be the name of the God worshipped at Peking by the Emperor in his right as Son of Heaven, and the successor of the ancient sovereigns mentioned in the *Shu King;* accordingly, when the insurgents set up the worship of the true God as they had been able to learn it from Gutzlaff's revised version of the Bible, their countrymen immediately recognized the challenge. It was an attack on the religious as well as political position of Taukwang; whoever maintained his side in the gage of battle, with him were undoubtedly the powers above. The progress of the new banner

[1] Though one of their officers told Mr. Meadows, at Nanking, that the force was about three thousand.

Digitized by Google

from Yung-ngan to Nanking was like that of a fiery cross, and the sufferings of the people, except in a few large cities, were really more owing to the savage imperialists than to the Taipings. The latter grew in strength as they advanced, owing to indiscriminate slaughter on the part of their enemies of unoffending natives, and at last reached their goal with not much less than eighty thousand men.

Their position was now accessible to foreigners—who had been watching their rise and progress under great disadvantages in arriving at the truth—and they were soon visited by them in steamers. The first to do so was Governor Bonham in H. M. S. Hermes, accompanied by T. T. Meadows, one of the most competent linguists in China, who published the result of his inquiries. The visitors were at first received with incredulity, but this soon gave way to eager curiosity to learn the real nature of their religious views and practices. The insurgents themselves were even more ignorant of foreigners than were these of the rebels, so that the interest could not fail to be reciprocal, nor could either party desire to come into collision with the other.

About two months after the cities of Nanking, Chinkiang, and Yangchau had been taken, garrisoned, and put in a state of defence by their inhabitants, working under the direction of Tai-ping officers, the leaders felt so much confidence in their cause, their troops, and their ability, that they despatched a division to capture Peking. No particulars of its size or composition are given, but its course and achievements are recorded in the *Peking Gazette*. The force landed not far from Kwachau, where it defeated a body of Manchus, and then proceeded to Liuho and Fungyang fu without finding serious opposition. Crossing the province of Nganhwui, they entered that of Honan, and in one month from landing the troops laid siege to Kaifung, the provincial capital, June 19th. Three days later they were repulsed, and their leaders crossed the Yellow River to Hwaiking fu, about a hundred miles west of Kaifung. For two months they were baffled by an unusual resistance on the part of the imperialists, and were compelled to leave it and go west into Shansí, where they took Pingyang fu and flanked the

Digitized by Google

enemy by turning east and north-east till they crossed the Liuming pass and got into Chihlí. It was their design to have gone down the River Wei to Lintsing chau on the Grand Canal, but they were compelled to make a detour of some hundreds of miles to reach this last place. In doing so they ascended the steep defiles leading from the basin of the Yellow River to the plateau in South Shansí. This march was accomplished in the month of September, and on October 9th the prefect city of Shinchau in Chihlí, only two hundred miles from Peking, was taken. Their army remained at Shinchau for a fortnight, when they marched across the plain north-easterly to Tsinghai hien, on the Grand Canal. Here they intrenched themselves on October 28th, but twenty miles south of Tientsin. A detachment sent to attack that city was repulsed, and the whole body were blockaded on November 3d by the Manchu force, which had followed it from Hwaiking, and other corps ordered from the north to intercept its progress toward the capital. In six months this insurgent force had traversed four provinces, taken twenty-six cities, subsisted themselves on the enemy, and defeated every body of imperialists sent against them. The men who performed this remarkable march of fully one thousand five hundred miles in the face of such odds, would have accomplished even greater deeds under better training. Considering all things, it is quite equal to General Sherman's march to the sea in 1864; yet so little is known of the details of this feat, that we are not even certain of its leader's name—whether Lin Fung-tsiang, spoken of by the *Gazette* as a 'Pretended Minister,' or some other general, was in command.

It is rather hard to understand why the Tai-pings intrenched themselves so near to Tientsin, but the officials of that city, in 1858, ascribed it to the fact that water covered the plain, preventing all operations against the town. Perhaps their want of siege guns, and the cavalry now brought from Mongolia, decided the leaders to intrench themselves at Tsinghai and send to Nanking for reinforcements. The Tai-ping Wang immediately despatched an auxiliary force, which also crossed Nganhwui to Funghien on the north bank of the Yellow River; this

Digitized by Google

place was captured March 17, 1854, "after taking city after city," as the Emperor Hienfung expressed it. The ice was gone when the army reached Lintsing chau, April 12th, and that city was taken by a fierce assault against the combined resistance of its garrison and the imperialists outside, after the insurgent auxiliary was attacked in force. The other body had left Tsinghai in February, starved out rather than driven away, and gone to the district town of Hien, which they left March 10th for Fauching, and probably rejoined their comrades somewhere between that and Lintsing. They were about a hundred miles apart, and the intervening region was no doubt forcibly drained of its supplies. This joint army remained in possession of their depots as long as they saw fit, and treated the inhabitants reasonably well, among whom there were no Manchus. The inability to understand each other's speech kept the people of this district from mixing with the southerners, and, combined with the impossibility of keeping open the road to Nanking, decided the Tai-pings to return. This they did in March, 1855, by re-entering Nganhwui and rejoining the main body whereever ordered; but no details are known of their movements for nearly a year before that date. Peking and the Great Pure dynasty were saved, however; while the failure of Hung Siutsuen to risk all on such an enterprise proved his ignorance of the real point of this contest. He never was able to undertake a second campaign, and his followers soon degenerated into banditti.

The possession of Nanking, Chinkiang, and Kwachau, with the large flotilla along the Yangtsz' River west to Ichang in Hupeh, a distance of over six hundred miles, had entirely sundered the Emperor's authority over the seven south-eastern provinces. The country on each side for fifty or one hundred and fifty miles was visited by the insurgents' troops merely for supplies. Their boats penetrated to Nanchang in Kiangsi, went up the River Siang even beyond Changsha in Hunan, ravaged one town after another in quest of provisions and reinforcements, which were either taken to Nanking or used to support the crews; but nowhere did the leaders set up anything like a government, nowhere did they secure those who submitted or

Digitized by Google

pursued their avocations quietly any protection against imperialist or other foes. As a revolution involving a reorganization of the Chinese nation on Christian principles, and a well-defined assertion of the rights and duties of rulers and subjects, it had failed entirely within a year after the possession of Nanking. There was no hope that any of the leaders in the movement would develop the ability to initiate the establishment of a consistent and suitable control, since not one of them was endowed either with the experience necessary to introduce provisional government over conquered communities, or with that tact calculated to impress their inhabitants with enduring confidence in them. All their prisoners were compelled to work or fight in their service, and were willing to earn their food and clothes; while in obeying such orders, and going through such religious ceremonies as were told them, they of course had not much to complain of; but this conduct did not imply hatred of the mandarins or an abjuration of Buddhism.

During the three years after Nanking had been occupied, the people in the Yangtsz' valley had suffered much from the conflict. Both armies lived on the land, and the danger of resisting the demands for food, clothes, and animals was nearly equalled by that of joining the contending forces; in either case beggary or loss of life was sure to be the end. As an instance of by no means unexampled suffering, the populous mart of Hankow and its environs was taken by assault six different times during the thirty months ending in May, 1855, and finally was left literally a heap of ruins. In country places the imperialists were, of the two parties, perhaps the more terrible scourge, but as the region became impoverished each side vied with the other in exhausting the people. The Tai-pings were gradually circumscribed to the region around Nanking and Nganking by the slow approaches of the government troops, and in 1860 seemed to be near their end. The interest which had been aroused at Shanghai in 1853, upon hearing of their Christian tenets and organization, had been satisfied in the various visits of foreign functionaries to Nanking, the intercourse with the leaders and men, perusal of their books, and observation of their policy.

Digitized by Google

One inherent defect in the enterprise, when viewed in its political bearing, ere long showed itself. Nothing could induce Hung Siu-tsuen to lead his men to the north and risk all in an attack on Peking. His own conviction of his divine mission had been most cordially received by his generals and the entire body of followers which left Yung-ngan in 1852; but their faith was not accepted by the enormous additions made to the Tai-pings as they advanced to Nanking, and gradually the original force became so diluted that it was inadequate to restrain and inspirit their auxiliaries. Moreover, the Tien-wang had never seriously worked out any conception of the radical changes in his system of government, which it would be absolutely necessary to inaugurate under a Christian code of laws. Having had no knowledge of any western kingdom, he probably regarded them all as conformed to the rules and examples given in the Bible; perhaps, too, he trusted that the "Heavenly Father and Elder Brother" would reveal the proper course of action when the time came. The great body of literati would naturally be indisposed to even examine the claims of a western religion which placed Shangtí above all other gods, and allowed no images in worship, no ritual in temples, and no adoration to ancestors, to Confucius, or to the heavenly bodies. But if this patriotic call to throw off the Manchu yoke had been fortified by a well-devised system of public examinations for office—modified to suit the new order of things by introducing more practical subjects than those found in the classics—and had been put into practice, it is hard to suppose that the intellectual classes would not gradually have ranged themselves on the side of this rising power. The unnecessary cruelty and slaughter practised toward the Manchu garrisons and troops carried more dread into the hearts of the population than stimulus to co-operate with such ruthless revolutionists. The latter had weakened their prospects by destroying confidence in their moderation, justice, and ability to carry out their aim to establish a new sway. There was a large foundation of national aspirations and real dislike to the present dynasty, on which the Tien-wang could have safely reckoned for help and sympathy. But he was far from equal to the exigency of his opportunity. The doubts of

Digitized by Google

his countrymen as to his competency were proved by the satisfaction and relief felt when his movement collapsed.

When the remnants of the two corps which returned from the north in 1855 were incorporated into the forces holding the Grand Canal and the Liang Kiang province, their outposts hardly extended along the Great River beyond Chinkiang on the east and Nganking on the west. In that year dissensions sprung up among the leaders themselves inside of Nanking, which ended in the execution of Yang, the Eastern King, the next year; a fierce struggle maintained by Wei, the Northern King, on behalf of the Tien-wang, upheld his supremacy, but at a loss of his best general. Another man of note, Shih Ta-kai, the Assistant King, losing faith in the whole undertaking, managed to withdraw with a large following westward, and reached Sz'chuen. The early friend of Hung Siu-tsuen, Fung Yun-shan, known as the Southern King, disappeared about the same time. Rumors of these conflicts reached Shanghai in such a contradictory form that it was impossible to learn all their causes.

One source of strife arose by Yang assuming to be the Holy Ghost. Receiving communications from the Heavenly Father and Elder Brother, he thus placed himself above the Tien-wang, and, it is said by Wilson,[1] "required him to humble himself and receive forty lashes" for some misdemeanors complained of by the Comforter. The notices of this man which have reached us show that he early took a prominent part in the movement, and perhaps manipulated "descents of the Heavenly Father," like the one referred to above as mentioned in the "Book of Declarations" in the case of Chau Sih-nang.[2] Many proclamations were issued in his name on the progress to Nanking, which set forth the principles under which the Heavenly Dynasty were trying to conquer. Incentives addressed to the patriotic feelings of the Chinese were mixed up with their obligations to worship Shangtí, now made known to them as the Great God, our Heavenly Father, and security promised to all who submitted.

[1] *The "Ever-Victorious Army," Lt.-Col. Gordon's Chinese Campaign*, p. 43.

[2] J. Milton Mackie, *Life of Tai-ping-Wang, Chief of the Chinese Insurrection*, Chap. XXXIV., New York, 1857.

Digitized by Google

In one sent forth by him when nearing Nanking, he thus summarizes the rules which guided the Tai-pings:

I, the General, in obedience to the royal commands, have put in motion the troops for the punishment of the oppressor, and in every place to which I have come the enemy, at the first report, have dispersed like scattered rubbish. As soon as a city has been captured, I have put to death the rapacious mandarins and corrupt magistrates therein, but have not injured a single individual of the people, so that all of you may take care of your families and attend to your business without alarm and trepidation. I have heard, however, that numbers of lawless vagabonds are in the villages, who previous to the arrival of our troops take advantage of the disturbed state of the country to defile mens' wives and daughters, and burn or plunder the property of honest people. . . . I have therefore especially sent a great officer, named Yuen, with some hundreds of soldiers, to go through the villages, and as soon as he finds these vagabonds he is commissioned forthwith to decapitate them; while if the honest inhabitants stick up the word *shun* ['obedient'] over their doors, they will have nothing to fear.[1]

Such manifestoes could not reassure the timid population of the valley of the Yangtsz', and the carnage of the unresisting Manchus in Nanking, Chinkiang, and elsewhere indicated a ruthless license among the followers of the Tien-wang, which made them feel that their success carried with it no promise of melioration. In addition, as the vast spoil obtained from these cities and towns up to 1856 was consumed, the outlook of the rebels was most discouraging. Among their forces, the disheartened, the sick, and the wounded, with the captived and desperate, soon died, deserted, or skulked, and their places were filled by forced levies. Under these circumstances the dissensions within the court at Nanking imperilled the whole cause, and showed the incapacity of its leaders in face of their great aim. Yang had sunk into a sensual, unscrupulous faction leader who could no longer be endured; by October, 1856, he and all his adherents, to the number of twenty thousand, were utterly cut off by Wei. But this latter king speedily met with a like fate. Shih, the Assistant King, was at this time in the province of Kiangsí. It had become a life struggle with Siu-tsuen, and his removal of the four kings resulted in leaving him without any real military chief on whose loyalty he could depend. The rumors which

[1] Lindley, *Tai-ping Tien-kwoh*, Vol. I., p. 94.

Digitized by Google

reached Shanghai in 1856 of the fierce conflict in the city were probably exaggerated by the desire prevalent in that region that the parties would go on, like the Midianites in Gideon's time, beating down each other till they ended the matter.

The success of the Tai-pings had encouraged discontented leaders in other parts of China to set up their standards of revolt. The progress of Shih Ta-kai in Sz'chuen and Kweichau engaged the utmost efforts of the provincial rulers to restore peace. In Kwangtung a powerful band invested the city, but the operations of Governor Yeh, after the departure of Sü Kwang-tsun in 1854, were well supported by the gentry. By the middle of 1855 the rising was quenched in blood. The destruction of Fatshan, Shauking, and other large towns, had shown that the sole object of the rebels was plunder, though it was thought at first that they were Tai-pings. The executions in Canton during fourteen months up to August, 1856, were nearly a hundred thousand men; but the loss of life on both sides must be reckoned by millions. A band of Cantonese desperadoes seized the city of Shanghai in September, 1853, killing the district magistrate and some other officials. They retained possession till the Chinese New Year, January 27, 1854, leaving the city amid flames and carnage, when many of the leaders escaped in foreign vessels.[1] None of these men were affiliated with the Tai-pings.

In Formosa and Hainan, as well as in Yunnan and Kansuh, the provincial authorities had hard work with their local contingents to maintain the Emperor's authority. This wretched prince was himself fast bound under the sway of Suhshun and his miserable coterie, devising means to replenish his coffers by issuing iron and paper money, and proposing counters cut out of jade stone to take the place of bullion. The national history, however, had many notices of precisely such disastrous epochs in former times, and the nation's faith in itself was not really weakened.

By 1857 the imperialists had begun to draw close lines about

[1] No foreigners here or elsewhere in China were injured designedly during all this insurrection.

Digitized by Google

the rebels, when they were nearly restricted to the river banks between Nganking and Nanking, both of which cities were blockaded. Two years later the insurgent capital was beleaguered, but in its siege the loyalists trusted almost wholly to the effects of want and disease, which at last reached such an extreme degree (up to 1860) that it was said human flesh was sold on the butchers' stalls of Nanking. Their ammunition was nearly expended, their numbers were reduced, and their men apparently desirous to disperse; but the indomitable spirit of the leader never quailed. He had appointed eleven other *wang*, or generals, called *Chung Wang* ('Loyal King'), *Ying Wang* ('Heroic King'), *Kan Wang* ('Shield King'), *Ting Wang* ('Listening King'), etc., whose abilities were quite equal to the old ones. As the siege progressed events assumed daily a more threatening aspect. Chang Kwo-liang and Ho Chun, two imperialist generals, invested the city more and more closely, driving the insurgents to extremity in every direction. The efforts of these men were, however, not aggressive in consequence of the war then waging with the British and French on the Pei ho. This encouraged the beleaguered garrison to a desperate effort to free themselves, and on May 6, 1860, a well-concerted attack on the armies which had for years been intrenched behind outworks about the city scattered them in utter disorder. A small body of Tai-pings managed to get out toward the north of Kiangsu, near the Yellow River. Another body had already (in March) carried Hangchau by assault by springing a mine; as many as seventy thousand inhabitants, including the Manchu garrison, perished here during the week the city remained in possession of the rebels. On their return to Nanking the joint force carried all before it, and the needed guns and ammunition fell into their hands. The loyalist soldiers also turned against their old officers, but the larger part had been killed or dispersed. Chinkiang and Changchau were captured, and Ho Kwei-tsing, the governor-general, fled in the most dastardly manner to Suchau, without an effort to retrieve his overthrow. Some resistance was made at Wusih on the Grand Canal, but Ho Chun was so paralyzed by the onslaught that he killed himself, and Suchau fell into the hands of Chung Wang with no resistance whatever.

Digitized by Google

It was, nevertheless, burned and pillaged by the cowardly imperialists before they left it, Ho Kwei-tsing setting the large suburbs on fire to uncover the solid walls. This destruction was so unnecessary that the citizens welcomed the Tai-pings, for they would at least leave them their houses. With Suchau and Hangchau in their hands, the Kan Wang and Chung Wang had control of the great watercourses in the two provinces, and their desire now was to obtain foreign steamers to use in regaining mastery of the Yangtsz' River. The loss of their first leaders was by this time admirably supplied to the insurgents by these two men, who had had a wider experience than the Tien-wang himself, while their extraordinary success in dispersing their enemies had been to them all an assurance of divine protection and approval.

The populous and fertile region of Kiangnan and Chehkiang was wholly in their hands by June, 1860, so far as any organized Manchu force could resist them. The destruction of life, property, and industry within the three months since their sally from Nanking had been unparalleled probably since the Conquest, more than two centuries before, and revived the stories told of the ruthless acts of Attila and Tamerlane. Shanghai was threatened in August by a force of less than twenty thousand men led by the Chung Wang, and it would have been captured if it had not been protected by British and French troops. Many villages in the district were destroyed, but the flotilla approaching from Sungkiang recoiled from a collision with foreigners, and the insurgents all retired before September. They, however, could now be supplied with munitions of war, and even began to enlist foreigners to help them drill and fight. It was an anomalous condition of things, possible only in China, that while the allied force was marching upon Peking to extort a treaty, the same force was encircling the walls of Shanghai, burning its suburbs to destroy all cover, and aiding its rulers to preserve it to Hienfung—all in order to conquer a trade. It was then the moment for the Tai-pings to have moved rapidly upon Chihli and tried the gage of battle before the metropolis, as soon as possible after Lord Elgin had withdrawn. But they had now very few left to them of the kind of troops which

Digitized by Google

threatened the capital in 1853–54, and could not depend on recruits from Kiangnan in the hour of adversity.

At this juncture the imperialists began to look toward foreigners for aid in restoring their prestige and power by employing skill and weapons not to be found among themselves. An American adventurer, Frederick G. Ward, of Salem, Mass., proposed to the Intendant Wu to recapture Sungkiang from the Tai-pings; he was repulsed on his first attempt at the head of about a hundred foreigners, but succeeded on the second, and the imperialists straightway occupied the city. This success, added to the high pay, stimulated many others to join him, and General Ward ere long was able to organize a larger body of soldiers, to which the name of *Chang-shing kiun*, or 'Ever-victorious force,' was given by the Chinese; it ultimately proved to be well applied. Its composition was heterogeneous, but the energy, tact, and discipline of the leader, under the impulse of an actual struggle with a powerful foe, soon moulded it into something like a manageable corps, able to serve as a nucleus for training a native army. Foreigners generally looked down upon the undertaking, and many of the allied naval and military officers regarded it with doubt and dislike. It had to prove its character by works, but the successive defeats of the insurgents during the year 1862 in Kiangsu and Chehkiang, clearly demonstrated the might of its trained men over ten times their number of undisciplined braves.

But we must retrace our steps somewhat. In 1860 the possession of the best parts of Kiangsu and Chehkiang led the Tien Wang to plan the relief of Nganking by advancing on Hankow with four separate corps. They were under the leadership of the Chung Wang, and, so far as the details can be gathered, manifested a practical generalship hardly to be expected. The Ying Wang was to move through Nganhwui from Luchau westerly to Hwangchau; the Attendant King (Shih) was to leave Kiangsi and co-operate with the Chung Wang by reaching the Yangtsz' as near Hankow as possible, and a smaller force under the Tu Wang was to recover Hukau at the mouth of Poyang Lake and ascend the Great River in boats. The area through which this campaign was to be carried on may be un-

Digitized by Google

derstood when we learn that the Chung Wang's march of five hundred miles was over the two ranges of mountains on the frontiers of Kiangsí, and that of the Ying Wang two hundred miles through the plains of Nganhwui. This last king did actually take his force of about eighty thousand men two hundred miles to Hwangchau (fifty miles below Hankow) in eleven days, but none of his colleagues came to his aid. The experience of eight years had quite changed the elements of the contest.

The people now generally realized that neither life, property, nor government was secured under the Tai-pings; the imperialists had learned how to obtain the co-operation of the patriotic gentry, and the rank and file of the Tai-pings were by this date mostly conquered natives of the same region, as no recruits had ever come from Kwangsí. Moreover, the region was impoverished, and this involved greater privations to all parties. Yet the Chung Wang went from Wuhu south-west to Kwangsin, crossed the water-shed into Kiangsí, defeated a force at Kienchang, crossed the River Kan near Linkiang, and marched north-west to Wuning hien on the River Siu. Here he heard of the defeat of Tu Wang, and the non-arrival of Shih's force; and, lest he should be hemmed in himself, as the failure of the campaign was evident, he led his army back across the province to Kwangsin by September, 1861. The particulars of this last great exploit of the Tai-pings are so imperfectly known, that it is impossible to judge of it as a military movement accomplished under enormous difficulties; but the Loyal King must have been a strategist of no mean rank.

In November, 1861, Nganking succumbed to the imperialists. Its defenders and the citizens endured untold sufferings at the last, while its victors had an empty shell; but the river was theirs down to Nanking. On his return east, Chung Wang moved into Chehkiang and overran all the northern half of that province, his men inflicting untold horrors upon the inhabitants, whom they killed, burned, and robbed as they listed. Ningpo was taken December 9th and held till May 10th, when it was recaptured by the allies; foreign trade had not been interrupted during this period, and the city suffered less than many others. In September the Tai-pings were driven out of

Digitized by Google

the valley of the Yung River, but the death of General Ward at Tsz'kí deprived the imperialists of an able leader. The career of this man had been a strange one, but his success in training his men was endorsed by honorable dealing with the mandarins, who had reported well of him at Peking. He was buried at Sungkiang, where a shrine was erected to his memory, and incense is burned before him to this day.

It was difficult to find a successor, but the command rather devolved on his second, an American named Burgevine, who was confirmed by the Chinese, but proved to be incapable. He was superseded by Holland and Cooke, Englishmen, and in April, 1863, the entire command was placed under Colonel Peter Gordon, of the British army. During the interval between May, 1860, when Ward took Sungkiang, and April 6, 1863, when Gordon took Fushan, the best manner of combining native and foreign troops was gradually developed as they became more and more acquainted with each other and learned to respect discipline as an earnest of success. Such a motley force has seldom if ever been seen, and the enormous preponderance of Chinese troops would have perhaps been an element of danger had they been left idle for a long time.

The bravery of the Ever-victorious force in the presence of the enemy had gradually won the confidence of the allies, as well as the Chinese officials, in whose pay it was; and when it operated in connection with the French and British contingent in driving the Tai-pings out of Ningpo prefecture, the real worth of Ward's drill was made manifest. The recapture of that city by Captain Dew's skilful and brave attack in reply to their unprovoked firing at H. M. S. Encounter, brought out the bravery of all nationalities, as well as restored the safety of the port. An extract from Captain Dew's report will exhibit the dreadful results to the common people of this civil war:

I had known Ningpo in its palmy days, when it boasted itself one of the first commercial cities of the Empire; but now, on this 11th of May, one might have fancied that an angel of destruction had been at work in the city as in the suburbs. All the latter, with their wealthy hongs and thousands of houses, lay levelled; while in the city itself, once the home of half a million of people, no trace or vestige of an inhabitant could be seen. Truly it was a city of the dead. The rich and beautiful furniture of the houses had become

Digitized by Google

firewood, or was removed to the walls for the use of soldiers. The canals were filled with dead bodies and stagnant filth. The stonework of bridges and pavements had been uplifted to strengthen walls and form barricades in the streets; and in temples once the pride of their Buddhist priests, the chaotic remains of gorgeous idols and war gods lay strewn about—their lopped limbs showing that they had become the sport of those Christian Tai-pings whose chief, the Tien-wang, eight years before at Nanking, had asked Sir George Bonham if the Virgin Mary had a pretty sister for him, the King of Heaven, to marry! It has been my good fortune since to assist at the wresting of many cities from these Tai-pings, and in them all I found, as at Ningpo, that the same devilish hands had been at work—the people expelled from their houses and their cities ruined.[1]

Yet so speedy was the revival from the ruins, that we are told that in one month houses had been refurnished and shops opened; their owners had mostly fled across the river into the foreign settlement. A larger force was now organized—MM. Le Brethon and Giquel being in charge of a Franco-Chinese regiment—and an advance made on Yüyau, which was retaken, and one thousand drilled Chinese left to defend it. Tsz'kí, Funghwa, and Shangyü were also cleared of rebels, and during the month of March they evacuated the prefect city of Shauhing, never again to return to this fertile valley. Their inroad had been an unmitigated scourge, for they had now given up all pretense of Christianity, and had not the least idea of instituting a regular government; to plunder, kill, and destroy was their only business. Their sense of danger from the hatred of the people whom they had so grievously maltreated led them at this time to defend the walled cities with a reckless bravery that made their capture more difficult and dangerous. This was shown in the siege of Shauhing fu, within whose walls about forty thousand Tai-pings were well led by the Shí Wang. The possession of cannon enabled them to reply to the balls thrown by Captain Dew's artillery, while despair lent energy to their resistance; so that the attack turned into a regular siege of a month's duration, when, food and ammunition being exhausted, they retreated *en masse* to Hangchau.

While this success relieved the greater part of Chehkiang from the scourge, the failure of the Ever-victorious force to

[1] A. Wilson, *The "Ever-Victorious Army,"* p. 102, London, 1868.

Digitized by Google

retake Taitsang and Fushan, under Holland and Brennan, had discouraged Governor Lí, who had now come into power. He applied to General Stavely, who, with a full appreciation of the exigencies of the case, and concurrence of Sir Frederick Bruce, aided in reorganizing Ward's force and placing Colonel Gordon over it with adequate powers. There were five or six infantry regiments of about five hundred men each, and a battery of artillery; at times it numbered five thousand men. The commissioned officers were all foreigners, and their national rivalries were sometimes a source of trouble; the non-commissioned officers were Chinese, many of them repentant rebels or seafaring men from Canton and Fuhkien, promoted for good conduct. The uniform was a mixture of native and foreign dress, which at first led to the men being ridiculed as 'Imitation Foreign Devils;' after victory, however, had elevated their *esprit du corps*, they became quite proud of the costume. In respect to camp equipage, arms, commissariat and ordnance departments, and means of transport, the natives soon made themselves familiar with all details; while necessity helped their foreign officers rapidly to pick up their language. It is recorded, to the credit of this motley force, that "there was very little crime and consequently very little punishment; . . . as drunkenness was unknown, the services of the provost-marshal rarely came into use, except after a capture, when the desire for loot was a temptation to absence from the ranks."[1]

In addition, the force had a flotilla of four small steamers, aided by a variety of native boats to the number of fifty to seventy-five. The plain is so intersected by canals that the troops could be easier moved by water than land, and these boats enabled it to carry out surprises which disconcerted the rebels. Wilson well remarks concerning Gordon's force: "Its success was owing to its compactness, its completeness, the quickness of its movements, its possession of steamers and good artillery, the bravery of its officers, the confidence of its men, the inability of the rebels to move large bodies of troops with

[1] Wilson, *ibid.*, p. 132.

Digitized by Google

rapidity, the nature of the country, the almost intuitive perception of the leader in adapting his operations to the nature of the country, and his untiring energy in carrying them out."[1]

The details of this singular troop are worth telling with more minuteness than space here allows, for its management will no doubt form a precedent in the future; but the good its remarkable chief effected in restoring peace to Kiangsu calls for that recognition which skill, tact, and high moral purpose ever deserve. Being formally put in command on March 24, 1863, he promptly reinstated the foreign officers belonging to the force, paid their dues, and within a few days was in readiness to march upon Fushan, a town on the Yangtsz' above Paushan. The fall of this place on April 6th led to the capture of Chanzu, when preparations were made for besieging Taitsang fu, where an army of ten thousand rebels, aided by foreign adventurers, presented a formidable undertaking for his force of two thousand eight hundred men, although supported by a large body of imperialists. In its capture (May 2d) the killed and wounded numbered one hundred and sixty-two officers and men; the booty obtained was so large that Colonel Gordon led his men back to Sungkiang, in order to reorganize them after this experience of their conduct. Finding that their former license in appropriating the loot thus obtained tended to demoralize them all, he accepted the resignations of some of the discontented officers, and adopted stringent measures to bring the others to render military obedience. Consequently, when he started for Kiunshan with about three thousand men, he had his force in a much better condition. This city occupied an important position between Shanghai, Chanzu, Taitsang, and other large towns on the east, and Suchau on the west. The rebels had set up a cannon foundry within its walls, and from it obtained supplies for the last-named city, with which it was connected by a causeway. By means of the armed steamer Hyson, Colonel Gordon was able to bring up through one of the canals a company of three hundred and fifty men and field artillery, cutting the causeway and pursuing its defenders, some

[1] *Ibid.*, p. 188.

Digitized by Google

into the town and some toward Suchau, almost to its very gates. On the return of the steamer in the night, the commander found the imperialists engaged with the garrison in a sharp contest, in which the foreigners then aided, and completely routed the rebel body of nearly eight thousand men. Fully four thousand of them were killed outright, and others were drowned or cut off by the exasperated peasantry before the day was over. This was on May 30th. The captured town was made headquarters by its victors, as a more eligible location than Sungkiang, though against the wishes of the native officers, who desired to go back there with their booty. The loss of men, material, and position to the rebels was very great, and Colonel Gordon could now safely turn his whole thoughts to the capture of Suchau.

This city is like Venice in its approaches by canals; owing to its location it was deemed best, before attempting its capture, to reduce certain towns in the vicinity, from which it derived supplies, so that the Chung Wang should not be able to co-operate with its garrison. The district towns of Wukiang and Kahpu were both taken in July with comparatively little loss. This rapid reduction of many strong stockades, stone forts, and walled towns, with the panic exhibited by the men, proved how useless to the rebels the foreigners in their service had been in rendering them really formidable enemies, and how incapable the wangs had been to appreciate the nature and need of discipline. After these places had been occupied, Colonel Gordon found his position beset with so many unexpected annoyances, both from his rather turbulent and incongruous troops as well as from the Chinese authorities, that he went to Shanghai on August 8th for the purpose of resigning the command. Arriving here, however, he ascertained that Burgevine had just gone over to the Tai-pings with about three hundred foreigners, and was then in Suchau. The power of moral principle, which guided the career of the one, was then seen in luminous contrast to its lack as shown in the other of these soldiers of fortune. To his lasting credit Colonel Gordon decided to return at once to Kiunshan, and, in face of the ingratitude of the Chinese and jealousy of his officers, to stand by the imperialist cause. He

Digitized by Google

gradually restored his influence over officers and men, ascertained that Burgevine's position in the Tai-ping army did not allow him freedom enough to render his presence dangerous to their foes, and began to act aggressively against Suchau by taking Patachiau on its southern side in September.

Emissaries from the foreigners in the city now reported considerable dissatisfaction with their position, and Colonel Gordon was able to arrange in a short time their withdrawal without much danger to themselves. It is said that Burgevine even then proposed to him to join their forces, seize Suchau, and as soon as possible march on Peking with a large army, and do to the Manchus what the Manchus had done, two hundred and twenty years before, to the Mings. Colonel Gordon's own loyalty was somewhat suspected by the imperialist leaders, but his integrity carried him safely through all these temptations to swerve from his duty.

As soon as these mercenaries among the rebels were out of the way, operations against Suchau were prosecuted with vigor, so that by November 19th the entire city was invested and carefully cut off from communication with the north. The city being now hard pushed, the besieging force prepared for a night attack upon a breach previously made in the stockade near the north-east gate. It was well planned, but the Muh Wang, *facile princeps* among the Tai-ping chiefs in courage and devotion, having been informed of it, opened such a destructive fire that the Ever-victorious force was defeated with a loss of about two hundred officers and men killed and wounded. On the next morning, however (November 28th), it was reported that the cowardly leaders in the city were plotting against the Muh Wang—the only loyal one among their number—and were talking of capitulating, using the British chief as their intermediary.

This rumor proved, indeed, to be so far true, that after some further successful operations on the part of Gordon's division, the Wangs made overtures to General Ching, himself a former rebel commander, but long since returned to the imperial cause and now the chief over its forces in Kiangsu. The Muh Wang was publicly assassinated on December 2d by his comrades,

Digitized by Google

and on the 5th the negotiations had proceeded so far that interviews were held. Colonel Gordon had withdrawn his troops a short distance to save the city from pillage, but did not succeed in obtaining a donation of two months' pay for their late bravery from the parsimonious Lí. He therefore proposed to lay down his command at three o'clock P.M., and meanwhile went into the city to interview the Na Wang, who told him that everything was proceeding in a satisfactory manner. Upon learning this he repaired to the house of the murdered Muh Wang in order to get his corpse decently buried, but failed, as no one in the place would lend him the smallest assistance. While he was thus occupied, the rebel wangs and officers had settled as to the terms they would accept; and on reaching his own force, Gordon found General Ching there with a donation of one month's pay, which his men refused.

The next morning he returned into the city and was told by Ching that the rebel leaders had all been pardoned, and would deliver up the city at noon; they were preparing then to go out. Colonel Gordon shortly after started to return to his own camp and met the imperialists coming into the east gate in a tumultuous manner, prepared for slaughter and pillage. He therefore went back to the Na Wang's house to guard it, but found the establishment already quite gutted; he, however, met the Wang's uncle and went with him to protect the females of the family at the latter's residence. Here he was detained by several hundred armed rebels, who would neither let him go nor send a message by his interpreter till the next morning (December 7th), when they permitted him to leave for his boat, then waiting at the south gate; narrowly escaping, on his way thither, an attack from the imperialists, he reached his bodyguard at daybreak, and with them was able to prevent any more soldiers entering the city. His preservation amid such conflicting forces was providential, but his indignation was great when he learned that Governor Lí had beheaded the eight rebel leaders the day before. It seems that they had demanded conditions quite inadmissible in respect to the control of the thirty thousand men under their orders, and were cut off for their insolent contumacy. Another account, published at

Digitized by Google

Shanghai in 1871, states that nearly twenty chiefs were executed, and about two thousand privates.

As Colonel Gordon felt that his good name was compromised by this cruelty, he threw up his command until he could confer with his superiors. On the 29th a reply came to Lí Hung-chang from Prince Kung, highly praising all who had been engaged in taking Suchau, and ordering him to send the leader of the Ever-victorious force a medal and ten thousand taels—both of which he declined. The posture of affairs soon became embarrassing to all parties. The rebellion was not suppressed; the cities in rebel hands would soon gather the desperate men escaped from Suchau; Colonel Gordon alone could lead his troops to victory; and all his past bravery and skill might be lost. He therefore resumed his command, and presently recommenced operations by leading his men against Ťhing hien, west of Suchau.

Concerning this wretched business of the Suchau slaughter, much was said both in the foreign communities in China and later in England. Mr. Wilson, in his book compiled largely from Colonel Gordon's notes on this campaign, discusses the question with as great fairness as precision, and concludes—as must every well-wisher of China with him—that it was in every way fortunate, both for his reputation and the cause to which he had lent himself, that this heroic man returned to his thankless task. Summing up the arguments of the Chinese and the various attendant circumstances that brought about this execution, Mr. Wilson points to Lí's not unnatural desire after revenge for his brother's murder by the rebels before Taitsang; to the army still under control of the wangs; to the almost absolute certainty of massacre of those imperialists who had already entered the city should he refuse compliance with their demands; as also to the impossibility of arresting these chiefs without an alarm of treachery spreading among their troops within the walls, and thus giving them time to close the gates, cutting off the imperial soldiers inside the city from those who were without. "Lí was in a very difficult and critical position," he says, "which imperatively demanded sudden, unpremeditated action; and though, no doubt, it would have been more

Digitized by Google

honorable for him to have made the wangs prisoners, he cannot in the circumstances be with justice severely censured for having ordered the Tai-ping chiefs who were in his power, but who defied his authority, to be immediately killed. It is also certain that Colonel Gordon need not have been in a hurry to consider himself as at all responsible for this almost necessary act, because in a letter to him (among his correspondence relating to these affairs) from the Futai [Lí], dated November 2, 1863, I find the following noteworthy passage, which shows that the governor did not wish Gordon to interfere at all in regard to the capitulation of the Suchau chiefs: 'With respect to Moh Wang and other rebel leaders' proposal, I am quite satisfied that you have determined in no way to interfere. Let Ching look after their treacherous and cunning management.'"[1]

On reaching Ihing, the dreadful effects of the struggle going on around Gordon's force were seen, and more than reconciled him to do all he could to bring it to an end. Utter destitution prevailed in and out of the town; people were feeding on dead bodies, and ready to perish from exposure while waiting for a comrade to die. The town of Liyang was surrendered on his approach, and its inhabitants, twenty thousand in number, supplied with a little food. From this place to Kintan proved to be a slow and irksome march, owing to the shallow water in the canal and the bad weather. On March 21st an attack was made on this strong post by breaching the walls; but it resulted in a defeat, the loss of more than a hundred officers and men, and a severe wound which Colonel Gordon received in his leg —oddly enough the only injury he sustained, though frequently compelled to lead his men in person to a charge. Next day he retired, in order, to Liyang, but hearing that the son of the Chung Wang had retaken Fushan he started with a thousand men and some artillery for Wusih, which the rebels had left. The operations in this region during the next few weeks conclusively proved the desperate condition of the rebels, but a hopeless cause seemed often but to increase their bravery in defending what strongholds were left them. At the same time a

[1] Wilson, *The "Ever-Victorious Army,"* p. 204.

Digitized by Google

body of Franco-Chinese was operating, in connection with General Ching on the south of Suchau, against Kiahing fu, a large city on the Grand Canal, held by the Ting Wang. This position was taken and its defenders put to the sword on March 20th, but with the very serious loss of General Ching, one of the ablest generals in the Chinese army. Hangchau, the capital of Chehkiang, capitulated the next day, and this was soon followed by the reduction of the entire province and dispersion of the rebels among the hills.

Colonel Gordon had recovered from his wound so as to lead an attack on Waisu April 6th, which town fell on the 11th, when most of its defenders were killed by the peasantry as they attempted to escape. His force was also much weakened, and needed to be recruited. With about three thousand in all, he now went to aid Governor Lí in reducing Changchau fu, and invested it on the 25th. The entire besieging force numbered over ten thousand; and as the rebels were twice as many, on the whole well provided, and knew that no mercy would be shown, their resistance was stubborn. Several attacks were repulsed with no small loss to Gordon's force, so that slower methods of approach were resorted to till a general assault was planned on May 11th, when it succumbed. Only fifteen hundred rebels were slain, and the greater part of the prisoners were allowed to go home, the Kwangsí men alone being executed. With this capture ended the operations of the Ever-victorious force and its brave leader. Nanking was now the only strong place held by the Tai-pings, and there was nothing for that army to do there, as Tsăng Kwoh-fan, the generalissimo of the imperial armies, had ample means for its capture. Colonel Gordon, therefore, in conjunction with Governor Lí, dissolved this notable division; the latter rewarded its officers and men with liberal gratuities, and sent the natives home. During its existence of about four years down to June 1, 1864, nearly fifty places had been taken (twenty-three of them by Gordon), and its higher discipline had served to elevate the *morale* of the imperialists who operated with them. It perhaps owed its greatest triumph to the high-toned uprightness of its Christian chief, which impressed all who served with him. The

Digitized by Google

Emperor conferred on him the highest military rank of *ti-tuh*, or 'Captain-General,' and a yellow jacket (*ma-kwa*) and other uniforms, to indicate the sense of his achievements. Sir Frederick Bruce admirably summed up his character in a letter to Earl Russell when sending the imperial rescript:

HONGKONG, July 12, 1864.

MY LORD,

I enclose a translation of a despatch from Prince Kung containing the decree published by the Emperor, acknowledging the services of Lieutenant-Colonel Gordon, R. E., and requesting that her Majesty's government be pleased to recognize them. This step has been spontaneously taken. Lieutenant-Colonel Gordon well deserves her Majesty's favor; for, independently of the skill and courage he has shown, his disinterestedness has elevated our national character in the eyes of the Chinese. Not only has he refused any pecuniary reward, but he has spent more than his pay in contributing to the comfort of the officers who served under him, and in assuaging the distress of the starving population whom he relieved from the yoke of their oppressors. Indeed, the feeling that impelled him to resume operations after the fall of Suchow was one of the purest humanity. He sought to save the people of the districts that had been recovered from a repetition of the misery entailed upon them by this cruel civil war. I have, etc.,

F. W. A. BRUCE.

The foreign merchants at Shanghai expressed their sense of his conduct in a letter dated November 24th, written on the eve of his return to England, in which they truly remark: "In a position of unequalled difficulty, and surrounded by complications of every possible nature, you have succeeded in offering to the eyes of the Chinese nation, no less by your loyal and disinterested line of action than by your conspicuous gallantry and talent for organization and command, the example of a foreign officer serving the government of this country with honorable fidelity and undeviating self-respect." [1]

Such men are not only the choice jewels of their own nation (and England may justly be proud to reckon this son among

[1] "The rapidity with which the long-descended hostility of the Chinese government became exchanged for relations of at least outward friendship, must be ascribed altogether to the existence of the Tai-ping Rebellion, without whose pressure as an auxiliary we might have crushed, but never conciliated the distrustful statesmen at Peking."—*Fraser's Magazine*, Vol. LXXI., p. 145, February, 1865.

Digitized by Google

her worthies), but leave behind them an example, as in the case of Colonel Gordon, which elevates Christianity itself in the eyes of the Chinese, and will remain a legacy for good to them through coming years.[1]

After the dissolution of the Ever-victorious force, its leader visited Nganking and Nanking to see the governor-general, Tsăng Kwoh-fan, and his brother, who were directing operations against the rebels, in order to propose some improvements in their future employment of foreign soldiers and military appliances. They listened with respect, and took notes of important suggestions—knowing at the same time that their subordinates were unable to comprehend or adopt many such innovations. The work before Nanking indicated the industry of its besiegers in the miles of walls connecting one hundred and forty mud forts in their circumvallations, and in various mines leading under the city walls. The Tai-pings at that date seldom appeared on the walls, and had recently sent out three thousand women and children to be fed by their enemies, proof enough of their distressed condition. The only general capable of relieving the Tien Wang was the Chung Wang, whose army remained on the southern districts of Kiangsu, while he himself was in the city with the Kan Wang (Hung Jin), now the trusted agent of his half-brother. All egress from the doomed city was stopped by June 1st, when the explosion of mines and bursting of shells forewarned its deluded defenders of their fate. Of the last days of their leader no authentic account has been given, and the declaration of the Chung Wang in his autobiography, that he poisoned himself on June 30th, "owing to his anxiety and trouble of mind," is probably true. His body was buried behind his palace by one of his wives, and afterward dug up by the imperialists.

On July 19, 1864, the wall was breached by the explosion of forty thousand pounds of powder in a mine, and the Chung Wang, faithful to the last, defended until midnight the Tien Wang's family from the imperialists. He and the Kan Wang

[1] Compare further Col. C. C. Chesney's *Essays on Modern Military Biography* (from the *Edinburgh Review*), pp. 163–213, London, 1874.

Digitized by Google

then escorted Hung Fu-tien—a lad of sixteen, who had succeeded to the throne of Great Peace three weeks before—with a thousand followers, a short distance beyond the city. The three leaders now became separated, but all were ultimately captured and executed. The Chung Wang, during his captivity before death, wrote an account of his own life, which fully maintains the high estimate previously formed of his character from his public acts.[1] He was the solitary ornament of the whole movement during the fourteen years of its independent existence, and his enemies would have done well to have spared him. More than seven thousand Tai-pings were put to death in Nanking, the total number found there being hardly over twenty thousand, of whom probably very few were southern Chinese—this element having gradually disappeared.

After the recapture of Nanking, two small bodies of rebels remained in Chehkiang. The largest of them, under the Tow Wang, held Huchau fu, and made a desperate resistance until a large force, provided with artillery, compelled them to evacuate. During this siege the sanguinary conduct of the Tai-pings showed the natural result of their reckless course since their last escape from Nanking; the narrative of an escaped Irishman, who had been compelled to serve them in Huchau for some months, is terrible enough: "All offences received one punishment—death. I saw one hundred and sixty men beheaded, as I understood, for absence from parade; two boys were beheaded for smoking; all prisoners of war were executed; spies, or people accused as such, were tied with their hands behind their backs to a stake, brushwood put around them, and they burned to death." The rebel force numbered nearly a hundred thousand men, and their vigorous defence was continued for a fortnight, till on August 14th their last stockade was carried by the imperialists, and about half their number made good their escape to the neighboring hills, leaving the usual scene of desolation behind them. This body undertook to march south through the hilly regions between Kiangsi and

[1] *The Autobiography of the Chung-Wang, translated from the Chinese by* W. T. Lay, Shanghai, 1865.

Digitized by Google

Chehkiang. The best disciplined portion was led by the Shí Wang, who had joined it with his men from the former province, and arranged an attack on Kwangsin, near which they were defeated. The remainder managed to march across the intervening districts south-westerly to the city of Changchau, near Amoy, where they intrenched themselves till the next spring, subsisting on the supplies found in it and the neighborhood. The Shí Wang and Kan Wang then left it April 16th, in two bodies, unable to resist the disciplined force of eight thousand men brought from the north. Feeling that their days were numbered, they seem to have scrupled at nothing to show their savagery—as, for example, when they slaughtered sixteen hundred imperialists who had surrendered on a promise of safe-conduct. No mercy was therefore shown them by the inhabitants; at Chănping in Kwangtung they even cut down their growing rice in order to prevent the rebels using it. The last straggling relics of the Tai-ping Heavenly King's adherents were thus gradually destroyed, and his ill-advised enterprise brought to an end.

Fifteen years had elapsed since he had set up his standard of revolt in Kwangsí, and now there was nothing to show as a return for the awful carnage and misery that had ensued from his efforts. No new ideas concerning God or his redemption for mankind had been set forth or illustrated by the teachings or practices of the Tai-ping leader or any of his followers, nor did they ever take any practical measures to call in foreign aid to assist in developing even the Christianity they professed. True the Kan Wang called Mr. Roberts to Nanking, but instead of consulting with him as to the establishment of schools, opening chapels, preparing books, or organizing any kind of religious or benevolent work to further the welfare of his adherents, the Tien Wang did not even grant an interview to the missionary, who, on his part, was glad to escape with his life to Shanghai.

If this rebellion practically exhibited no religious truth to the educated mind of China, it was not for lack of publications setting forth the beliefs its leaders had drawn from the Bible, or for laws sanctioned by severe penalties, both of which were scattered through the land. Dr. Medhurst's careful translations

Digitized by Google

of these tracts has preserved them, so that the entire disregard manifested by the new sect of their plainest injunctions may be at once seen.[1] The strong expectations of the friends of China for its regeneration through the success of Hung Siu-tsuen, would not have been indulged if they had better known the inner workings of his own mind and the flagitious conduct of his lieutenants.

In his political aspirations the Tien Wang entertained no new principle of government, for he knew nothing of other lands, their jurisprudence or their polity, and wisely enough held his followers to such legislation as they were familiar with. They all probably expected to alter affairs to their liking when they had settled in Peking. But if this mysterious iconoclast had really any ideas above those of an enthusiast like Thomas Münzer and the Anabaptists in the early days of the Reformation—whose course and end offers many parallels to his own—he must have lamented his folly as he reviewed its results to his country. The once peaceful and populous parts of the nine great provinces through which his hordes passed have hardly yet begun to be restored to their previous condition. Ruined cities, desolated towns, and heaps of rubbish still mark their course from Kwangsi to Tientsin, a distance of two thousand miles, the efforts at restoration only making the contrast more apparent. Their presence was an unmitigated scourge, attended by nothing but disaster from beginning to end, without the least effort on their part to rebuild what had been destroyed, to protect what was left, or to repay what had been stolen. Wild beasts roamed at large over the land after their departure, and made their dens in the deserted towns; the pheasant's whirr resounded where the hum of busy populations had ceased, and weeds or jungle covered the ground once tilled with patient industry. Besides millions upon millions of taels irrecoverably lost and destroyed, and the misery, sickness, and starvation

[1] *Pamphlets issued by the Chinese Insurgents at Nan-King; to which is added a history of the Kwangsi Rebellion*, etc., etc., compiled by W. H. Medhurst, Senr., Shanghai, 1853. Compare R. J. Forrest in *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, No. IV., December, 1867, pp. 187 ff. *The China Mail* for February 2, 1854.

Digitized by Google

which were endured by the survivors, it has been estimated by foreigners living at Shanghai that, during the whole period from 1851 to 1865, fully twenty millions of human beings were destroyed in connection with the Tai-ping Rebellion.[1]

[1] The most complete authorities on this conflict are files of the *North China Herald* (Shanghai) and the *China Mail* (Hongkong) during the years from 1853 to 1869; a careful summary of these has been made by M. Cordier in his *Bibliotheca Sinica*, pp. 273–281, which will be useful alone to those who can gain access to these newspapers. The number of articles on various phases of the rebellion contained in English and American magazines is exceedingly numerous, and can be readily found by reference to Poole's *Index*. Among these compare especially the *London Quarterly*, Vol. 112, for October, 1862; *Fraser's Magazine*, Vol. 71, February, 1865; *Blackwood's*, Vol. 100, pp. 604 and 683; W. Sargent in the *North American Review*, Vol. 79, July, 1854, p. 158. See also the various *Blue Books* relating to China; Capt. Fishbourne, *Impressions of China and the Present Revolution*, London, 1855; Callery and Yvan, *L'Insurrection en Chine*, Paris, 1853—translated into English, London, 1853; Charles Macfarlane, *The Chinese Revolution*, London, 1853; T. T. Meadows, *The Chinese and their Rebellions*, London, 1856; J. M. Mackie, *Life of Tai-ping Wang*, N. Y., 1857; Commander Lindesay Brine, *Narrative of the Rise and Progress of the Taeping Rebellion in China*, London, 1862; "Lin-le," *Ti-Ping Tien-kwoh, the History of the Ti-Ping Revolution*, London, 1866—a rather untrustworthy record; Sir T. F. Wade in the *Shanghai Miscellany*, No. I.; Richthofen, *Letter on the Province of Shensi*.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXV.

THE SECOND WAR BETWEEN GREAT BRITAIN AND CHINA.

THE particulars given in the last chapter respecting the Taiping Rebellion did not include those details connected with foreign intercourse during the same period which have had such important results on the Chinese people and government. It is a notable index of the vigor and self-poise of both, that during those thirteen terrible years, the mass of inhabitants in the ten eastern provinces never lost confidence in their own government or its ability to subdue the rebels; while the leading officers at Peking and in all those provinces at no time expressed doubt as to the loyalty of their countrymen when left free to act. The narrative of foreign intercourse is now resumed from the year 1849, when the British authorities waived the right of insisting upon their admission into the city of Canton according to the terms of the convention with Kíying in 1847. The conduct of the Cantonese, in view of the forcible entrance of English troops into their city, is an interesting exhibition of their manner of arousing enthusiasm and raising funds and volunteers to cope with an emergency. The series of papers found in Vol. XVIII. of the *Chinese Repository* well illustrates the curious mixture of a sense of wrong and deep concern in public affairs, combined with profound ignorance and inaptitude as to the best means for attaining their object.

A candid examination of the real meaning of the Chinese texts of the four earlier treaties makes clear the fact that there were some grounds for their refusal; but more attractive than this appears the study of an address from the gentry of Canton, sent upon the same occasion, to Governor Bonham at Hongkong, dissuading him from attempting the entry. Their con-

Digitized by Google

duct was naturally regarded by the British as seditious, and of these many urged their authorities to vindicate the national honor and force a way over the walls into the city. The practice of an unwonted approach toward self-government which this popular movement in defence of their metropolis gave the citizens, was of real service to them in the year 1855, when it was beleaguered by the rebels, since they had learned how to use their powers and resources. One result of their fancied victory over the British at this time was the erection of six stone *pai-lau*, or honorary portals, in various parts of the city and suburbs, on each of which was engraved the sentence, "Reverently to commemorate glory conferred," together with a copy of the edict ordering their establishment, and a list of the wards and villages which furnished soldiers during their time of need.[1]

The outcome of the working of treaty provisions between foreigners and natives at the five opened ports during the ten years up to 1853, had been as satisfactory to both sides as could have been reasonably expected. The influx of foreigners had more than doubled their numbers; and as almost none of them could talk the Chinese language, it happened that natives of Canton became their brokers and compradores—rather more by reason of speaking *pigeon-English* than by their wealth or capacity. The vicious plan of marking off a separate plat of land for the residence of foreigners at each port was adopted, and their development tended to build up *concessions*, or settlements, which were to be governed by the various nationalities. In doing this the local authorities vacated their rights over their own territory, and these settlements have since become the germs of foreign cities, if not colonies. The British and French consuls at Shanghai claimed territorial jurisdiction over all who settled within the limits of their allotted districts, and carried this assumption so far as to exercise authority over the natives against their own rulers. The British ere long gave up this pernicious system, which had no legal basis by treaty or conquest, and yielded the entire internal management

[1] The one placed near the southern gate became a target for the British gunners in October, 1856, its demolition, most unfortunately, involving the destruction and burning of millions of Chinese books in the shops on that street.

Digitized by Google

of all consular communities to those foreigners which composed them. There were not enough residents elsewhere to raise this question of local government to any importance, but the progress of the Tai-pings and the rapid growth of Shanghai as a centre of trade for the Yangtsz' basin, compelled the preparation and adoption of a set of land regulations in order to institute some means of governing the thousands of foreigners who had flocked thither. George Balfour, the first British consul in that port, had sanctioned a series of rules in 1845, which purported to be drawn up by the *tautai*, or intendant of circuit, and which worked well enough in peaceful times.

In the year 1853, however, the civil war altered the conditions, when certain Cantonese rebels captured Shanghai and killed some of its magistrates, driving others into the British settlement, to which ground the custom-house was shortly afterward removed. The collector of the port, Wu Kien-chang, had formerly been a hong merchant at Canton, and he willingly entered into an arrangement for putting the collection of foreign duties into the hands of a commission until order was restored. The presence there of the British, American, and French ministers facilitated this arrangement. Their respective consuls, R. Alcock, R. C. Murphy, and B. Edan, accordingly met Wu on June 29, 1854, and agreed to a set of custom-house rules which in reality transferred the collection of duties into the hands of foreigners. The first rule contains the reason for this remarkable step in advance of all former positions, and has served to perpetuate the employment of foreigners at all the open ports, and maintain the foreign inspectorate:

RULE I.—The chief difficulty experienced by the superintendent of customs having consisted in the impossibility of obtaining custom-house officials with the necessary qualifications as to probity, vigilance, and knowledge of foreign languages, required for the enforcement of a close observance of treaty and custom-house regulations, the only adequate remedy appears to be in the introduction of a foreign element into the custom-house establishment, in the persons of foreigners carefully selected and appointed by the *tautai*, who shall supply the deficiency complained of, and give him efficient and trustworthy instruments wherewith to work.[1]

[1] *McLane's Correspondence*, 1858. *Senate Ex. Doc.*, No. 28, p. 154.

Digitized by Google

In carrying out the new arrangement, each consul nominated one man to the intendant, viz., T. F. Wade for the British, L. Carr for the American, and Arthur Smith for the French member of the board of inspectors, who together were to take charge of the new department. The chief responsibility for its organization fell on Mr. Wade, inasmuch as he alone of this number was familiar with the Chinese language, and possessed other qualifications fitting him for the post. He, however, resigned within a year, and the intendant appointed H. N. Lay, a clerk in the British consulate, who completed the service organization. This proceeding shows the readiness with which the Chinese will shirk their own duties and functions in government employ, and illustrates as well many peculiar traits in their character.

The city of Shanghai had been in possession of a Cantonese chief, Liu Tsz'-tsai, and his rabble since September 7, 1853, and the position of foreigners at that port in the presence of such a body of outlaws developed new points of international law. If the foreigners had all been of one nationality the consul would probably have assumed temporary control of the city and port to assure their safety; but in this case a naval force under each flag lying in the river guaranteed ample protection of life and property. As soon as the city was occupied the difficulty of restraining the disorderly elements, as well among foreigners as natives, became painfully apparent to their rulers. Foreign rowdies eagerly purchased the plunder brought to them and supplied arms and other things in return—a line of conduct very naturally irritating to the officials in charge of the siege and inclining them at once toward coercive measures.

The fact that the French settlement adjoined the moat on the north side of the city made its authorities desirous to dislodge the brigands, which they essayed to do January 6, 1855, by joining the imperialists in breaking the walls; they were repulsed, however, with a loss of fifteen men killed and thirty-seven wounded, out of a rank and file numbering two hundred and fifty. Another joint attack, undertaken a month later, was likewise unsuccessful, though the attempt seems to have frightened the force within the walls, since on the night of February

Digitized by Google

16th they retired, leaving the place in ruins. A like cordiality was nevertheless not always maintained between native and foreign soldiers, for in the previous year (April 4, 1854) occurred a collision with the imperialists, in consequence of their near approach to the foreign quarter, in which over three hundred Chinese soldiers were killed by the foreigners who landed to resist them. This untoward rencontre did not, however, interrupt amicable relations with the intendant, and was followed by consular notifications that whoever entered the service of the combatants in or out of the city would forfeit all protection. These notices were nevertheless soon disregarded as the struggle went on, for the temptation to enjoy a lawless life was too strong for hundreds of sailors then found in that port. It was an anomalous state of affairs, and the exigency led to some acts of violence by consuls in control of men-of-war.

The city of Amoy had been captured by insurgents on May 18, 1852, but no contravention occurred; the number of foreigners residing at this port was small, while the opposite island of Kulang su afforded a refuge beyond the range of missiles. The city was regained by the imperialists before a year had passed. The districts north of Canton, whence Hung Siu-tsuen and many of his adherents originated, began the same year to send forth their bands of robbers to pillage the province. These gangs had really no affinity with the Tai-pings, either in doctrine or plans, and none of them succeeded in gaining even a temporary success. When the booty was expended they usually quarrelled, and the imperialists destroyed them in detail. Every part of the province was at one time or another the scene of savage conflict between these contestants, and it was soon shown that no regenerating principle was involved on either side. The confidence of the educated and wealthy classes in the just cause and final success of their rulers was shown in raising men and money for the public service and organizing bodies of local police; but the want of a sagacious leader to plan and execute, so that all this material and action should not be frittered away, was painfully apparent.

In the capture of Nanking by Tai-pings, the restless leaders of sedition in Kwangtung saw their opportunity, and gathered

Digitized by Google

their bands of freebooters in the southern prefectures. In June, 1854, the district town of Tungkwan near the Bogue was taken, the rich manufacturing mart of Fuhshan (or Fat-shan) near Canton fell a month later, followed by that of Shunteh, Sanshui, and other lesser places, throwing the southern part of the province into a state of anarchy. The theory of the Chinese government, that if the capital is preserved the whole province is loyal, and its officers can use its revenue, enabled Governor-General Yeh to concert measures to repress these disorders. The City of Rams was environed during August by large bodies of insurgents, whose wants were supplied from Fuhshan. In this crisis about one thousand five hundred houses abutting outside the city walls were destroyed, and the ward police strengthened for the better protection of their neighborhoods against incendiaries. In all these proceedings the foreigners at Canton were never consulted or referred to by the officials, but their merchant steamers kept the Pearl River open to the sea, while their men-of-war lying off the factories proved a safeguard to the crowded city. The rebels had occupied a post near Whampoa, and their gunboats prowled through every creek in the delta, burning, destroying, capturing, and murdering without restraint. They would be followed by a band of imperialists, whose excesses were sometimes even more dreadful than those of their enemies. So terrible was the plight of the wretched countrymen that the headmen of ninety-six villages near Fuhshan formed a league and armed their people to keep soldiers from either side from entering their precincts.

In September, at a general meeting of the gentry of Canton, a proposal to save the city by asking foreign aid was approved by Yeh, but happily the project failed of fulfilment and only resulted in showing them how much better was a reliance upon their own resources. The news of this discussion led Chin Hien-liang, the rebel leader near Whampoa, to circulate proposals among the foreigners asking them to help him in capturing the city and promising as reward a portion of the island of Honan. The condition of the people at this time was sad and desperate indeed, and their only remedy was to arm in self-defence, in doing which they found out how small a proportion of the in-

Digitized by Google

habitants was disloyal. No quarter was given on either side, and the carnage was appalling whenever victory remained with the imperialists. During this year the emigration to California and Australia became larger than ever before, while the coolie trade waxed flourishing, owing to the multitudes thrown out of employment who were eager in accepting the offers of the brokers to depart from the country and escape the evils they saw everywhere about them. The terrors of famine, fighting, and plundering paralyzed all industry and trade, and enabled one to better understand similar scenes described by ancient historians as occurring in Western Asia.

The exhaustion and desperation consequent on these events had almost demoralized society in and around Canton, which was overcrowded with refugees, raising food to famine prices. It was creditable to these poor and sickly people that their influx produced no other fear than that of a higher rate of living—none of pestilence or plunder, even in the extremity of their sufferings. In Fuhshan, fifteen miles away, no one was safe. The rebels had depleted its resources, killed its gentry, and oppressed the townsfolk until a quarrel broke out in their camp, and they departed about the season of Christmas, leaving the whole a smoking ruin. One of the insurgent practices consisted in driving great numbers of people into squares and there shooting them down by cannon placed in the approaching streets, while the houses around them were burning. The flames could be seen for two or three days from Canton, and it was estimated that during this conflict fully two hundred thousand human beings perished. The town was the manufacturing centre for the foreign trade, where silks, satins, shawls, paper, fire-crackers, pottery, and other staples were made, and their workmen resided. After this dreadful act the insurgents grew more and more desperate, feeling that they could not hold out much longer for want of booty and supplies to keep their men together. By March the force of fifteen thousand men inside the city was ready, and on the 6th it went quietly down to attack the fort below Whampoa. The onset and resistance were most determined; before the position succumbed, some twenty-five thousand men must have perished by battle or flood; the rebel

Digitized by Google

leader escaped toward Hiangshan. The insurrection was, however, scotched, and its victors celebrated their triumph three days later in the city to a grateful and applauding concourse. When the city of Shauking, west of Canton, was retaken in May, its victors boasted that thirty thousand rebels were drowned or beheaded.

Notwithstanding these reverses the insurgents did not yet disappear, but maintained themselves along the watercourses in large flotillas during many months. The Portuguese and British also fitted out expeditions to pursue the pirates, as the same men were now called, destroying them and their haunts at Kulan Lantao, and elsewhere. In rooting out these land and sea brigands, the merciless character of the people was made manifest; every one convicted of rebellion was straightway executed by the authorities. At Canton, where prisoners were received from all such districts, the executions were on a terribly huge scale, as many as seven or eight hundred persons being beheaded in a single day. A count taken at the city gate whence they all issued on their way to the field of blood near the river, revealed the fact that fully eighty thousand were thus executed in the year 1855. This did not include thousands who committed suicide in places provided for them near their homes, from which their relatives could take their bodies to the family tomb. As might be expected, other thousands left the province for the north, or escaped into distant lands as coolies and emigrants.

Public attention abroad was at this time so engrossed with the greater rebellion going on along the Yangtsz' River that the horrors of that in Kwangtung were overlooked. There were many foreigners at Whampoa and Hongkong who sided with the leading brigands, reported their successes in the newspapers, and supplied them with munitions of war. The inefficiency of a foreign consul to restrain his countrymen thus flagrantly violating all their treaty obligations toward China, showed most conclusively how easy it is for the stronger party in such cases to demand their rights, and shirk their duties if it suits their convenience.

During the year 1856 affairs between the Chinese government and foreign powers became more and more hampered, while

Digitized by Google

all attempts to arrange difficulties as they arose were defeated by the obstinate refusal of Yeh Ming-chin, the governor-general at Canton, to meet any foreign minister. He intrenched himself behind the city gates, and would do nothing. Sir John Bowring, the British plenipotentiary and governor of Hongkong, had most reason to be dissatisfied with this conduct, inasmuch as there were many questions which could have been easily arranged in a personal interview. It was ascertained from some documents[1] afterward found in Yeh's office that this seclusion was a part of the system devised at Peking to maintain a complete isolation and keep the dreaded foreigners at a distance. No course could be more likely to bring upon the government the evils it feared, and at the same time show more conclusively the ignorant and inapt character of those who carried it on. This state of things could not long continue when such powerful agencies were at work along the coast to disorganize legal trade and thwart the utmost efforts of all officials to restrain the reckless conduct of their subjects. The ten years now elapsed since the opening of the five ports had involved the Chinese in more complications, miseries, and disasters than had been known since the Manchu conquest; nevertheless, neither rebellion nor foreign complications seem to have impressed their lessons upon the proud bureaucracy in Peking, which was as unwilling to remedy as unable to appreciate the real nature of the difficulties that beset the country.

In the struggle between nations, as between individuals, the agony and weakness of one side becomes the opportunity of the other; and these conditions were now open to the British, who speedily found their excuse for further demands. In order to develop the trade of the free port of Hongkong, its laws encouraged all classes of shipping to resort thither, by removing all charges on vessels and granting licenses, with but few and unimportant restrictions, to Chinese craft to carry on trade under the British flag. This freedom had developed an enormous smuggling trade, especially in opium, which the Chinese revenue service was unable to restrain or unwilling to legalize.

[1] *Blue Book*, 1857.

Digitized by Google

These boats cruised wherever they might find a trade to invite or reward them, wholly indifferent to their own government, which could exercise no adequate control over them, and kept from the last excesses only on account of the risk of losing their cargoes. To the evils of smuggling were added the worse acts and dangers of kidnapping natives to supply baracoons at Macao. The Portuguese had many of these lorchas to carry on their commerce, and gradually a set of desperate men had so far engrossed them in acts of daring and pillage that honest native trade about any part of the coast south of Shanghai became almost impossible except under their convoy. The two free ports of Macao and Hongkong naturally became their resorts, where they all took on the aspect of legitimate traders, which, indeed, most of them were—save under great temptations.

It was not surprising that Chinese rulers should confound these two classes of vessels, nor, from the traders' side, was it a wonder that their crews should use the flag which gave them the greatest protection when beyond foreign inspection and jurisdiction. Few nations have ever been subjected to such continuous and prolonged irritation in respect to its commercial regulations as was the Canton government from those two alien communities during the ten years ending with 1856; few nations, on the other hand, have acted more unwisely in exertions toward peace and the removal of such difficulties than did the unspeakable Governor-General Yeh. That the inevitable collision between the Chinese and British was now at hand, follows almost as a matter of course, when to our knowledge of the commissioner's character we add Mr. Justin McCarthy's very appropriate estimate of the two Englishmen in whose hands well-nigh all British affairs in China were vested: "Mr. Consul Parkes," says he, "was fussy. Sir John Bowring was a man of considerable ability, but . . . full of self-conceit, and without any very clear idea of political principles on the large scale."[1]

Early in the morning of October 8th, two boat-loads of

[1] *A History of Our Own Times*, Chap. XXX.

Digitized by Google

Chinese sailors, with their officers, put off from a large war-junk, boarded the lorcha Arrow lying at anchor in the river before Canton, pinioned and carried away twelve of the fourteen natives who composed her crew, and added to this unexpected "act of violence," as Mr. Parkes stated it, "the significant insult of hauling down the British ensign." One Kennedy, a young Irishman who is described as a very respectable man of his class, was master of the lorcha, but chanced at the time to be on another boat lying in the immediate neighborhood of his own, and could in consequence offer no resistance. It is probable, judging from testimony given at the British consulate, that the hauling down of the flag was a mere bit of wantonness on the part of the junk's officer upon his finding that no foreigner was on board, and the offence might readily have been followed by an apology had the command of negotiations been in any other hands than those of Yeh. The Arrow was owned by a Chinese, Fong A-ming, her nominal master being engaged by Mr. Block, the Danish consul at Hongkong; his vessel was not, however, entitled to protection, inasmuch as her British register had expired by its own limitation eleven days before the episode in Canton River, and the lorcha was already forfeited to the crown.[1] Her papers were then at the consulate, and it was contended by Mr. Parkes that under Clause X. of the ordinance she retained a right to protection; a mere quibble, since the cause refers to the vessel when upon a voyage, and the Arrow had confessedly remained about the ports of Macao and Canton during a month.

Consul Parkes, after ascertaining the facts connected with this high-handed outrage, pushed off to the war-junk—which remained the while quietly at anchor—to claim the captured sailors and "explain to the officers, if it were possible that they had acted in error, the gross insult and violation of national

[1] Sir John Bowring indeed conceded that "the Arrow had no right to hoist the British flag," but alleged that the Chinese had no knowledge of the expiry of the license, and that this ignorance deprived them of the legal value of the truth. He quoted, moreover, Article IX. of the Supplementary Treaty, requiring that "all Chinese malfaisants in British ships shall be claimed through the British authorities."

Digitized by Google

rights which they had committed."[1] This was in vain. Among the men was a notorious pirate, he was told, and their orders were that the suspected crew should be sent to the governor for examination. Yeh stoutly upheld the act of his subordinate, and affirmed that the lorcha had no right to fly the British flag, disclaiming, however, any intention of molesting lawful traders under the emblem. Naturally enough, he would not yield the right of jurisdiction over his own subjects, and in doing this was asserting precisely what Great Britain and every other nation on the globe knew to be the first privilege of an independent government. The case was not unlike that much-discussed affair of the American Commodore Wilkes, who boarded the Trent in 1863 and captured Mason and Slidell—performing a right-enough action, but in a wrong and hasty fashion.

In his reply to Mr. Parkes, Yeh declares that he has held an examination of the sailors and finds that three of them were implicated in a piracy of the preceding month on St. John's Island, that the officers had good reasons for seizing these men, that the remaining nine shall be sent back to their vessel; which he straightway does, but they are as promptly returned by the consul because the entire crew is not given up. Sir John Bowring now demands, through his representative at Canton (1), "an apology for what has taken place, and an assurance that the British flag shall in future be respected;" (2) "that all proceedings against Chinese offenders on board British vessels must take place according to the conditions of the treaty;"[2] in case of refusal the consul is to concert with the naval authorities the measures necessary for enforcing redress. This threat extracted from the governor-general a promise that "hereafter Chinese officers will on no account, without reason, seize and take into custody the people belonging to foreign lorchas;" adding very properly, "but when Chinese subjects build for themselves vessels, foreigners should not sell registers to them, for if this be done, it will occasion confusion between native and foreign ships, and render it difficult to distinguish

[1] *Blue Book: Papers relating to the Proceedings of her Majesty's Naval Forces at Canton*, p. 1.

[2] *Blue Book, Ibid.*, p. 12.

Digitized by Google

between them."[1] Twelve days afterward (October 22d) the entire crew were returned, but once more refused by Mr. Parkes, ostensibly because the apology was not sent with them —and this the commissioner could not offer either in justice to his government or to the cause of truth.

Ensconced behind the walls of Canton city, Yeh resolved to stand firm on his rights as he understood them, even should the doing so involve the lives and property of thousands of his countrymen. To all foreigners in China this affair was intimately connected with most important possibilities and consequences: the inviolability of national flags, protection to every one whom they covered, personal intercourse with Chinese officers, maintenance of treaty rights. In upholding these the British drew to their side the good wishes of all intelligent observers for their success in arms, however unhappy their excuse for a resort to such means might be. One more word from Mr. McCarthy before leaving the initial episode of this war. "The truth is," he sums up, "that there has seldom been so flagrant and so inexcusable an example of high-handed lawlessness in the dealings of a strong with a weak nation,"[2] but like many another conflict where strength and justice have been ranged on opposite sides, the latter was speedily pushed to the wall. The incident of the Arrow appeared a trifling one; nevertheless on so slight a hinge turned the future welfare and progress of the Chinese people in their intercourse with other nations, a hinge which, opening outward, unclosed the door for all parties to learn the truth respecting the countries of each, and, in the end, agree upon the only grounds on which a beneficial and intelligent intercourse could be maintained.

It is hardly necessary to recount in detail the steps by which Governor Bowring and Admiral Seymour vainly attempted to bring Yeh to their terms. "Acknowledge that you are in the wrong," was their ultimatum, "by merely sending the three

[1] *Ibid.*, p. 15.

[2] *History of Our Own Times*, Vol. III., Chap. XXX. Lord Elgin in his journal refers frankly enough to "that wretched question of the Arrow, which is a scandal to us, and is so considered, I have reason to know, by all except the few who are personally compromised."—*Letters and Journals of Lord Elgin*, edited by T. Walrond, p. 209.

Digitized by Google

suspects to the consulate, and ask that they be returned on charge of piracy." The long-continued national policy of exclusion could not, however, be so easily overthrown; its reduction must be by force. The seizure of a military junk was the first act of the British, then the capture of the Barrier forts, followed by that of all others on the south of Canton, and lastly breaching the city wall opposite Yeh's yamun. This was entered by Admiral Seymour with a small party of marines.

Sir John Bowring had already made the demand that the city gates should be opened to them in accordance with the agreement entered into ten years before between Governor Davis and Kiying, and expresses his gratification to the consul that now one great object of hostile action had been satisfactorily accomplished—an object which Mr. Parkes declares was clearly based on treaty rights. However, they did not see Yeh, who resorted to all manner of petty annoyances, the evils of which mostly fell on his own people, without in the least advancing his cause.

On November 15th, to the complications with the English was added a quarrel with the Americans, whose boats had been twice fired into and one man killed by the Chinese officers in command of the Barrier forts. Commodore J. Armstrong had under his command the San Jacinto, Portsmouth, and Levant, then lying at Whampoa. He ordered the two latter to go as near to these forts as possible, and directed Captain A. H. Foote of the Portsmouth to destroy them all. Foote accordingly organized a large force and attacked them on the 16th, 20th, and 21st, till they were reduced and occupied. The resistance of the Chinese on this occasion was unusually brave and prolonged, the admirable position of the forts enabling each of them to lend assistance to the others. On the part of the Americans, seven were killed and twenty-two wounded; perhaps three hundred Chinese were put *hors de combat;* the guns in the forts (one hundred and seventy-six in all) were destroyed, and the sea-walls demolished with powder found in the magazines.[1] This skirmish is the only passage of arms ever

[1] One brass gun of eight-inch calibre was twenty-two feet five inches long; the entire armament of these forts was superior in equipment to anything before seen in China.

Digitized by Google

engaged in by American and Chinese forces—one which Yeh seemed to regard as of slight moment, and for which he cared neither to apologize nor sympathize. His unexampled indifference in referring to the affair less than two days after the demolishment of his forts [1] was met by an equal frankness on the part of Dr. Parker, who at once resumed correspondence with the commissioner, and, content with the practical lesson just administered, said no more about "apologies and guarantees." This episode is interesting chiefly as an example of the American course regarding an insult to the national flag, as contrasted with the English dealing with an injury not very different either in nature or degree.

Relations between Great Britain and China continued in this constrained position until the opening of another year, the conflict now being almost wholly restricted to unimportant collisions with village braves on land and voluminous discussions with the governor-general on paper. In November the French minister withdrew his legation from Canton, there being by that time neither French citizens nor interests to watch over. Principal among the events during this interval was the burning of the foreign factories by order of Yeh, December 14th. They were fired in the night and were entirely consumed with all their contents, as well, too, as the contiguous portion of the suburbs. The offer of thirty taels head-money for every Englishman killed or captured resulted in a few endeavors on the part of natives, whereby they kidnapped or slew two or three seamen when separated from their ships. These attempts at guerilla warfare were so promptly met and rewarded on the part of the English, by wholesale punishment of offending villages, as to cause little annoyance after the lesson of certain retribution had been taken to heart by the Chinese. More important than all these was a dastardly attempt, on January 11,

[1] "There is no matter of strife between our respective nations. Henceforth let the fashion of the flag which American ships employ be clearly defined, and inform me what it is beforehand. This will be the verification of the friendly relations which exist between the two countries."—Hoppin, *Life of Admiral Foote*, pp. 110–140. *Correspondence of McLane and Parker, Senate Document* No. 22, December 20, 1858, pp. 1019 ff. *Blue Book*, p. 137.

Digitized by Google

1857, to poison the foreigners at Hongkong, by putting arsenic in the bread supplied from a Chinese baker. This, it was afterward ascertained, was at the instigation of certain officials on the mainland, but fortunately even here their villany was foiled, owing to the overdose contained in the dough. It ought to be stated, in passing, that such acts are not common in China, and, in this case, that the baker's employers were proven entirely innocent.

During much of this time Canton had been reminded of the presence of the British force by intermittent bombarding of the city from guns in Dutch Folly Fort. Sir John Bowring had demanded an interview with Yeh in November, but received a prompt refusal, followed by a still more vigorous carrying on of the war in his peculiar fashion, and by raising the price on English heads. Admiral Seymour had now less reason for remaining within the Bogue, as all trade was at an end. Hundreds of foreigners had already been thrown out of employment, their property destroyed, their plans broken up, and in a few instances their lives lost in consequence of this quarrel. After holding an intrenched position around the church and barracks of the factories for the space of a month, the uselessness of this effort when sustained by so paltry a force seems to have moved the admiral (January 14, 1857) to retire from Canton, falling back upon Macao Fort until reinforcements should arrive from India. Before leaving the site of the factories, however, he burned down the warehouses of those native merchants in the vicinity, their inmates having previously been warned to leave them. These buildings and their contents were private property, and the intrenched position in the factory garden was not endangered by their remaining. The leaders of the British operations had hitherto professed to spare private property; and even if the performance was meant as a parting menace to the governor-general—"to show him," as Mr. Parkes remarked, "that we can burn too"—it was one of the few acts, on their side, which has left a stigma upon the English name in China. The hostile proceedings of the Chinese authorities had been both petty and useless, but as Admiral Seymour's force was inadequate to take and hold Canton,

Digitized by Google

a more serious cannonading of the imperial quarters might have been a more honorable method of taking retribution for outrages, and better calculated than this counter-incendiarism to increase respect for British arms and civilization.

The news of these operations in China excited great interest and speculation in Europe, inasmuch as all its nations were more or less interested in the China trade. Parliament was the scene of animated argument as to the policy of Sir John Bowring and his colleagues; the moral, commercial, and political features of British intercourse with China were discussed most thoroughly in all their bearings, the arguments of both parties in the debate being drawn from the same despatches. One remarkable series of papers was presented to the House of Lords in February, 1857, entitled *Correspondence respecting Insults in China*, "containing the particulars of twenty-eight outrages committed by the Chinese upon British and other foreigners between the years 1842 and 1856." This publication was intended apparently to show how impracticable the Chinese authorities were in all their intercourse with foreigners, and its contents became to members of the House so many arguments for placing this intercourse on a better basis at the imperial court. To those who had watched since 1842 the results of treaty stipulations upon the people of China and their rulers, it was plain that no satisfactory political intercourse could be hoped for so long as the governor-general at Canton had the power of concealing and misrepresenting to his government everything that happened between foreign representatives and himself. Nevertheless such a series of papers was but one side of the insults endured. As long as the British government upheld the opium trade, and did nothing to restrain smuggling and the awful atrocities of the coolie traffic at Macao, which were filling the ears of all the world with their shocking tales, these few "outrages" seem very petty if put forward as a defence of Lord Palmerston's going to war on account of the lorcha Arrow.

In the vote upon the question of employing force in China, the better sense of Parliament protested against the policy which had directed recent events; but the Premier knew his

Digitized by Google

countrymen, and in forty days from the dissolution (March 21st) England returned him a House of Commons strongly in his favor. He now decided to complete what had been wanting in the treaty of Nanking, and obtain a residence for a British minister at Peking. The governments of France, Russia, and the United States were invited to co-operate with England so far as they deemed proper, and their united interests were those of Christendom. No well-wisher to China could patiently look forward to a continuation of the past tantalizing semblance of official intercourse at Canton, and the varied experience of twelve years at other ports proved that the Chinese people did not sympathize in this policy. The French Emperor had a special grievance against H. I. M. Hienfung, on account of the judicial murder of Père Chapdelaine, a missionary in Kwangsí province, who had been tortured and beheaded at Sí-lin hien on February 29, 1856, by order of the district magistrate. This outrage was in direct violation of the rescript of 1844, and some atonement and apology were justly demanded. How totally unconscious of all these discussions and plans were Hienfung and his counsellors at Peking, may be guessed from their blind fright during subsequent events, while their inability to devise a course of action corresponded to their childish ignorance of their position and duties.

A powerful though unspoken reflection among these rulers must not here be overlooked as a secret motive in deciding many of their short-sighted counsels. Remembering the way in which their ancestors had captured the Empire over two centuries before, they felt that great risk was run in admitting the barbarians to the capital now, since the same game would probably be played over again. The visits of foreign ministers to the insurgents at Nanking, and their readiness at Canton to quarrel about so trifling a point as pulling down a flag and carrying off a few natives under its protection, all indicated, in their opinion, nothing short of conquest and spoliation. With such tremendous power arrayed against so weak an adversary, they knew well enough what would ensue. Their miserable policy of isolation had left them more helpless in their igno-

Digitized by Google

rance than diminished in their resources, and they had to pay dearly for their instruction.

The appointments of Lord Elgin and Baron Gros as plenipotentiaries for Great Britain and France were most fortunate as a selection of eminent diplomatists and clear-headed men. The two ambassadors entered into most cordial relations as soon as the land and sea forces placed at their disposal arrived on the Chinese coast. Lord Elgin reached Hongkong in July, but learning the state of affairs in that region, and that no advances had been made from Peking to settle the dispute, concluded to take the Shannon to Calcutta, to the assistance of Lord Canning against the mutineers; from this place he proposed to proceed in the cold weather, when the force detailed for China would all be ready. Returning to Hongkong by September 20th, he was obliged to tarry yet another month before the last of his reinforcements, or those of the French, had joined him. By the end of November the American minister, W. B. Reed, in the frigate Minnesota, and the Russian admiral, Count Poutiatine, in the gunboat Amerika, had likewise come.

Early in December, after a refusal on the part of Yeh of their ultimatum, the allied forces advanced up the Canton River. An extract from one of Lord Elgin's private letters illustrates admirably the spirit in which he entered upon the work he had been chosen to do. "December 22d.—On the afternoon of the 20th I got into a gunboat with Commodore Elliot, and went a short way up toward the Barrier forts, which were last winter destroyed by the Americans. When we reached this point, all was so quiet that we determined to go on, and we actually steamed past the city of Canton, along the whole front, within pistol-shot of the town. A line of English men-of-war are now anchored there in front of the town. I never felt so ashamed of myself in my life, and Elliot remarked that the trip seemed to have made me sad. There we were, accumulating the means of destruction under the very eyes and within the reach of a population of about one million people, against whom these means of destruction were to be employed! 'Yes,' I said to Elliot, 'I am sad, because, when I look at that town, I feel that I am earning for myself a place in the Litany, immediately

Digitized by Google

after "plague, pestilence, and famine."' I believe, however, that, as far as I am concerned, it was impossible for me to do otherwise than as I have done. . . . When we steamed up to Canton and saw the rich alluvial banks covered with the luxurious evidences of unrivalled industry and natural fertility combined—beyond them barren uplands sprinkled with a soil of reddish tint which gave them the appearance of heather slopes in the Highlands, and beyond these again the White Cloud mountain range standing out bold and blue in the clear sunshine—I thought bitterly of those who, for the most selfish objects, are trampling under foot this ancient civilization."[1]

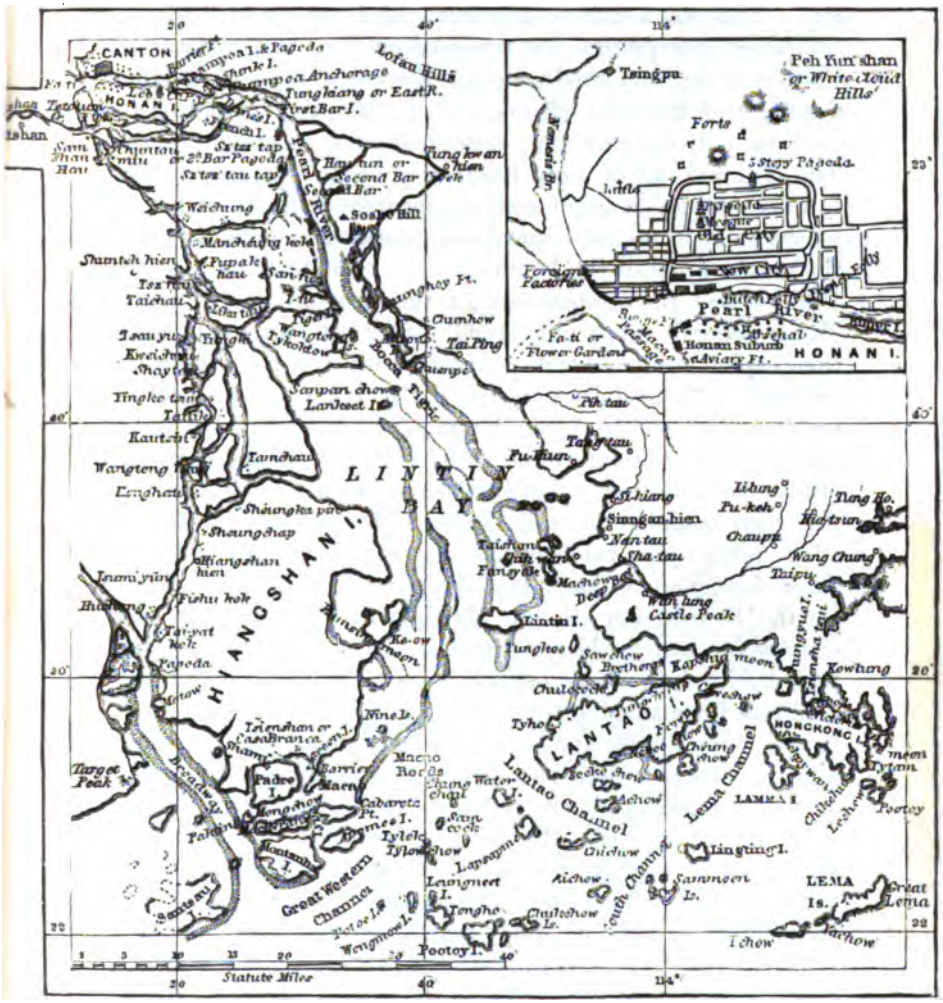
On the 27th the British and French, about six thousand in all, landed on the east bank a short distance below the walls. During the whole of the following day a furious bombardment was opened upon the city from the ships, driving thousands of the frightened natives into the western suburbs and destroying considerable portions of the town. By three o'clock of the 29th the city was in the hands of the foreigners—almost exactly the two hundred and seventh anniversary of its capture and entire reduction by the Manchus (November, 1650). The victory was not a brilliant one, since scarcely any one could be found with whom to fight; three or four forts to be entered, the wall scaled, a loss of one hundred and ten in killed and wounded to the victors, perhaps five times as many to the vanquished—this was all. Immediately upon their entry within the hitherto forbidden city the chiefs were forced to turn their energy upon their own troops and prevent them from bullying and looting the helpless Chinese.

Governor-General Yeh was, after some little search, found and captured while attempting an escape from his yamun,[2] and within twenty-four hours the lieutenant-governor, Tartar general, and all others in high authority came into possession of the invaders. Yeh was carried forthwith on board H. B. M. S. Inflexible, a wise step which deprived him of further power of

[1] *Letters and Journals*, p. 212.

[2] Some very curious documents were found among his archives illustrating the character both of the man and his government. See Oliphant, *Elgin's Mission to China*, Vol. I., Chap. VIII. Reed's *Correspondence*, 1858, pp. 443–488.

Digitized by Google



THE CITY OF CANTON AND ADJACENT ISLANDS.

Digitized by Google

resistance and misrepresentation, and left the plenipotentiaries free to arrange some method of temporary government for the city. This was a difficult problem, chiefly owing to the lack of competent interpreters, but rendered more so by the natural irritation of the conquered people at the losses they had sustained, the flight of the local officers, and the alarming extent of robbery by natives, somewhat countenanced by foreign soldiers. The skill and tact of Lord Elgin were never better shown than in the construction out of such incongruous materials of a mixed government whose subsequent easy working abundantly proved the master mind of the builder.[1] The two Manchus, Governor Pihkwei and the commandant of the garrison—called also the Tartar general—were now brought forward to assist in saving their capital from destruction and to form with the allies a joint tribunal. Pihkwei became legally (by Yeh's capture) the governor-general of the Liang Kwang, and his functions in that capacity were not interfered with; those of his colleague had always been restricted within the city walls. On January 9th they were installed by Lord Elgin and Baron Gros with all possible ceremony as rulers of the city, under the surveillance of three foreigners, Colonel Holloway and Consul Harry Parkes for the British, and Captain Martineau for the French. This commission had its headquarters in the same extensive yamun with Pihkwei, in whom happily were combined some estimable qualities for managing the difficult post he filled. The orderly habits of the literati and traders in and around Canton afforded a guaranty that no seditious proceedings would be countenanced against this joint authority if it gave them the security they had asked from the allies. A force of marines and the Fifty-ninth Regiment were quartered on Pagoda Hill, on the north side of the city, and ere long the commandant's yamun was cleared of its rubbish and put in order for the commission, leaving the other for Pihkwei. The allied chiefs deemed it wisest to attempt to govern as little in detail as possible, and their commissioners found enough to do in adjusting complaints brought by

[1] "You may imagine," he writes, "what it is to undertake to govern some millions of people when we have *in all* two or three people who understand the language! I never had so difficult a matter to arrange."

Digitized by Google

the Chinese against their own men. The Cantonese did not fail to contrast the considerate treatment they received from their foreign captors with the carnage and utter ruin which would have followed the occupation of the city by the Tai-pings or other insurgents, and during the whole period quietly submitted. The greater part of the responsible labor came upon Mr. Parkes, because of his ability to talk Chinese, but before many months he had taught many natives how to assist in carrying out the necessary details. He showed much skill in circumventing the designs of the discontented officials at Fuhshan, giving Pihkwei all the native criminals to judge, restraining the thievery or cruelty of the foreign police, and sending out proclamations for the guidance and admonition of the people.[1]

The kindness shown by Lord Elgin after the capture of Canton infused itself into the minds of those working with and under him, and the newly installed governor soon recovered his composure as he found himself in possession of his own dignities and power. The local and provincial officers under him kept themselves at Fuhshan, now recovering from its destruction of three years before. By the end of January affairs were put in order, the blockade was taken off the port, foreign merchants returned and settled in the warehouses still unharmed on Honam, while the native dealers reopened their shops in the vicinity.[2] Sixteen months had elapsed since the affair of the Arrow, and every one felt that a new day had begun to dawn on the relations of China with other lands.[3] Among the papers

[1] *Blue Book: Lord Elgin's Correspondence*, July 15, 1859, Despatches Nos. 88, 94, 108, and 128. Oliphant, *Elgin's Mission to China*, Vol. I., p. 170.

[2] Oddly enough, among the most earnest appeals for the restoration of commerce came one from Pihkwei himself, who wrote to Lord Elgin: "The eagerness with which merchants will devote themselves to gain, if the trade be now thrown well open, will increase manifold the good understanding between our nations, and the step will thus, at the same time, enhance your excellency's reputation."—*Blue Book*, January 24, 1858.

[3] The letters of G. W. Cooke, the *Times'* correspondent (London, Routledge, 1858), contain a fairly complete account of the proceedings of the allies at Canton; his conversations with Governor-General Yeh on the way to Calcutta are less valuable. Compare an article in the *Revue des Deux Mondes* (1e juillet, 1859), by C. Lavallée, *Un Historiographe de la Presse anglaise dans la guerre de Chine.*

Digitized by Google

taken in Yeh's yamun were the ratified copies of the treaties between China and Great Britain, France, and the United States, carefully preserved there, it was said, by directions from Peking, in order to serve for reference in case of dispute as to the text. It was, however, one of the indexes proving the desire of the Emperor to keep himself aloof from personal contact with foreigners.

The allied chiefs, early in the month of February, proposed to their American and Russian coadjutors to join them in laying their demands before the Peking Court, and affording it one more opportunity to amicably settle the pending difficulties by sending an officer to Shanghai with full powers for that end. Both Russians and Americans were cordially in unison with the allies, and their several despatches addressed to Yü, the first member of the *Nui Koh*, or 'Inner Council,' at Peking, were taken up to Shanghai and thence to Suchau, where Ho Kwei-tsing received and forwarded them before the end of February. These four letters simultaneously sent to the secluded court at Peking contained nothing which could alarm its members; but such was the ignorance of the highest officers there, that they knew not what to do—ostrich-like, hiding their heads from the approaching danger, simply declining to answer any unpleasant communication, hoping thereby to put far off the evil day. Their isolation would remain if left to themselves, and to have sent Kiying again to the south would only have cherished their stupid pride and worked their subjects ultimate injury. Their old-time policy of absolute non-intercourse lay like some great frigate sunk athwart the mouth of a river; the obstacle once removed, nothing remained to prevent the vast and populous regions beyond the barrier from an active and profitable communion with the whole world. They could no longer be left *in statu quo*, and few can find fault with the plan proposed to solve their difficulties—a plan which brought the four most powerful nations of Christendom in joint consent to set themselves on a fair and advantageous footing with the most ancient and populous nation of Asia. To those who admit the direct government of the Almighty Ruler in ordering the policy of nations in accord

Digitized by Google

with His wise plans, this simultaneous approach to Peking will always be deemed as one of the waymarks of human progress.

The letters presented to the Emperor[1] form in their topics and tone a pleasant contrast to the communications in past years. That of the Russian minister was peculiar in bringing forward the desirableness of allowing the profession of Christianity to all natives desirous of embracing it; but this point was made the subject of an address by the British missionaries at Ningpo and Shanghai to Lord Elgin, whose reply was a happy exposition of the dangers and difficulties connected with the toleration of Christianity by a government ignorant of its precepts. The imperial replies to these advances were, as every one expected, in the strain of *non possumus*. Lord Elgin returned his copy to Ho Kwei-tsing at Suchau, and enclosed therewith another despatch to Yü, in which he announced his intention to proceed to Taku, where he would await the arrival of a commissioner qualified to treat upon the points in dispute.

The force designed to accompany the allied chiefs was gathering at Shanghai, and by the middle of April most of the ships and transports had anchored off the Pei ho, together with the American frigates Minnesota and Mississippi and the Russian gunboat Amerika, having the legations of those nations on board. Nothing could be more dreary than the aspect of the rendezvous at this season. The ships were obliged to anchor about eight miles from shore, which was level, and would have been invisible if it had not been for the forts at the entrance of the river. The dim, hazy horizon was lurid with the rays of the sun shining through the dust that came in clouds from the plains of Mongolia and Chihlí. The turbid waters were often lashed into foam by the conflicting forces of tides and winds which acted on it from every quarter, and kept the gulf in a turmoil. No native boats ventured out to traffic, as would have been the case in the south, and the only signs of life were the gunboats and launches running in and out of the river, or the barges passing from ship to ship. Added to other discommodi-

[1] These are all given in the correspondence of Mr. Reed, printed by the Senate—Despatch No. 9, *Ex. Document* No. 30, March 13, 1860, pp. 122–133.

Digitized by Google

ties, were occasional blasts of hot air which swept over the water, charged with fine dust that settled on the decks and rigging, and insinuated itself into the dress and faces in an uncomfortable manner.

As usual the Chinese had done nothing. The increasing number and size of the ships which were anchored off the Pei ho had, however, been duly reported at Peking, and the Russian admiral had received a reply to his announcement of arrival. On April 23d communications were addressed by the four ministers to Yu-ching at Peking, and on the 26th replies came from Tan Ting-siang, governor-general of Chihlí, informing them that he, with Tsunglun and Wu, had been deputed to "receive their complaints and investigate and manage." The governor-general was not empowered to settle upon the terms of a treaty, but he desired to have a personal conference to learn what was demanded. Upon the day appointed the Russian and American ministers met Tan at the Taku forts (April 30th) at separate hours, when they learned that he had not been invested with "full powers," like those granted to Kíying and Ílipu in 1842, but had authority to discuss all matters preparatory to signing a treaty. The truth was that they were quite ignorant of the important questions raised at Canton; but while willing to discuss them, they were equally set on keeping the foreigners away from the capital. Here the allied chiefs and their two colleagues took issue. The former held out for commissioners to be sent with full powers; but the latter deeming that the governor-general had adequate authority, accordingly presented him with the main points of their demands and afterward with the drafts of their treaties. The negotiations were delayed by the difficulties of the entrance, but they afforded a needed instruction to these conceited and ignorant men, who were thus enabled at their leisure to prepare for the struggle. Not only were the officers themselves brought face to face with their dreaded visitors, and made to perceive the folly of resisting the armaments at their command, but with the democratic habits usual in Chinese courts, the hundreds of attendants present at the conferences heard all that passed.

Ere the non-belligerent powers had completed their nego-

Digitized by Google

tiations, the allies turned over theirs into the hands of the two admirals, MM. Seymour and Rigault de Genouilly. These advanced up the river on May 20th, forcing the slight boom across the stream, and capturing all the forts on both banks, with all their stores. Comparatively few Chinese were killed, and their defence of the forts was creditable to their courage and skill. All the troops fled or were driven from their intrenched camps as far as Taku town, and the other defences, stockades, and fire-rafts having been destroyed, the gunboats proceeded to Tientsin. The losses by shot on the part of the Allies were unhappily doubled by the explosion of a powder magazine in a fort as a party of Frenchmen entered. The news that the foreigners had forced the defences at the mouth of the Pei ho was soon spread through the towns along its banks, and myriads of unarmed people flocked to the shore to see the gun-boats, whose smoke and masts towering above the low land indicated their presence to the amazed inhabitants.

A house having been prepared at Tientsin for the allied chiefs, Lord Elgin and Baron Gros reached the city at daylight on May 30th, followed by the other two ministers, all of them having come up during the night without mishap or opposition. The inhabitants of the city were highly excited at the presence of the vessels and those of whom they had heard such dreadful stories, but their curiosity and fear kept them quiet and civil, and they were content with lining the shores in dense crowds, to gaze and talk. The general ignorance of each other's language did not prevent a constant intercourse with the citizens, all the more agreeable after the confinement on board ship. One old man was found managing a ferry-boat, who remembered Lord Amherst's visit in 1816. After his inquiries as to the meaning of the flags on board the ships had been answered, he exclaimed, "How easily you and we could get along if you but understood our language"—to which the crowd around reëchoed their hearty assent.

Two higher commissioners now appeared on the scene of action, Kweiliang and Hwashana, who superseded the discomfited Tan, Tsunglun, and Wu, and presented their cards as

Digitized by Google

having been invested with full powers to treat. Negotiations were opened with them, and thus, after months of delay, the plan which Yeh had so foolishly adhered to at Canton in October, to refuse all personal discussion, was accomplished at Tientsin under far more promising circumstances. The Chinese were obliged to accept almost any terms offered them, for negotiations carried on under such conditions were hardly those of free agents. The high commissioners were ignorant beyond conception of the gravity of their position and the results which were to flow from these treaties, whose provisions, linked into one compact by the favored nation clause, were, in fact, to form the future magna charta between almost the two halves of the human race. It was true that the Chinese commissioners were not altogether their own masters in making them, but owing to their perverse seclusion, they had foolishly shut themselves out from the opportunity of learning their rights. They had, of course, no desire to learn what they knew nothing about, and there was no alternative other than the display of force to break down the barriers which pride alone made strong. They had some grounds for fear, from their recent occupation of Canton, that the British wished for more territory than Hongkong; and the frequent visits of the national vessels of Great Britain, the United States, and France to the insurgents at Nanking indicated serious results in the future, for the latter owed all their religious fanaticism to foreign inspiration. To the persistent smuggling of opium along the whole coast since the treaties negotiated by Kíying sixteen years before, and the many social and financial evils entailed thereby, were now added the atrocities of the coolie trade in Kwangtung province. Yet the reserve of the officials upon these and other topics on which they might be expected to have expressed their views or remonstrances, was only equalled by the politeness and freedom with which they met their enemies in consultation. Never again in the history of nations can functionaries to whom were confided the settlement of questions of so great moment, be brought together in such honest ignorance of the other's intentions, fears, and wishes. It was high time for each of the five powers, now face to face, to have the way

Digitized by Google

opened for the removal of this ignorance and a better understanding substituted.

The despatches of Lord Elgin and Mr. Reed contain translations of many reports and memorials which were found in Yeh's yamun at Canton, and give one a good idea of the sort of information furnished to the Emperor by his highest officers. It is a wrong view of these papers to regard their extraordinary misstatements as altogether designed to deceive the court and screen the ill-success of the writers, for they had had no more facilities to investigate the real condition of foreign lands and the policy of their rulers than had the poor boy Caspar Hauser to learn about his neighbors.

One untoward event occurred during the negotiations. This was the sudden arrival of Kíying (June 8th) and his effort to force himself into the company of the plenipotentiaries. Since his departure from Canton in 1847 he had filled the premiership before the death of the late Emperor Taukwang, after which he had been deprived of all power and most of his honors. He seemed to have tried to recover them by making large promises at court respecting his influence over the *barbarians;* but when he reached Tientsin he was without credentials enabling him to participate, and acted as if his misfortunes had in a measure unsettled his reason. The British minister was suspicious of his designs, and sent his two secretaries, on the 9th, to learn what they could of or from him. These gentlemen plainly pointed out to the old man the difficulties in the way of settling the present troubles in any other manner than by acceding to the demands of Lord Elgin. Kíying had, however, put himself in a serious dilemma. Finding very soon that he was powerless to change the course of events and get the steamers away from Tientsin (as he no doubt had promised to do, and thus prove his influence), he returned to Peking on the 12th, though he had announced the reception of his full powers only the day before. His colleagues were not sorry to have him depart, but nothing definite was learned of his fate until at the end of three weeks, when the Emperor's rescript ordering him to commit suicide was received. His case was deemed of sufficient importance to call for a summation of the principal

Digitized by Google

features in order to prove the righteousness of his sentence, and manifest the Emperor's extreme desire to be at once just and gracious in his decree. Kíying's case is rather an unusual one among Chinese officials, but the real reasons for his fall are probably not all stated; his prominence abroad, arising from his connection with the Nanking treaty, was no criterion of his influence at home or of the loss to the government by his death.[1]

Soon after his departure the impertinence of a native crowd to a party of British officers while walking through the city, lent some strength to the belief that Kíying's counsel had been warlike, and that a *coup*, similar to the one made at Canton in 1841 by Yihshan, had been suggested, and the destruction of all the foreigners in Tientsin was hoped for as its result. Their relations with the citizens thus far had been amicable on the whole, and the interruption in this desirable state of things was very brief. Negotiations continued, therefore, but with an undercurrent of doubt as to details on some important points among the foreign envoys. Lord Elgin had the greatest responsibility, indeed, and the task before him was difficult and delicate, but he failed in drawing to himself his colleagues and learning their views. They hardly knew what to do, for none of them wished to thwart his desires for complete and honorable intercourse with the central government, though the manner of reaching this end might admit of discussion. This he never invited. The position of the American and Russian envoys, pledged to their instructions not to fight, and having the feeling that their nations were to obtain the advantages resulting from the hostilities of the allies, was not a pleasant one; but it could have been made so, and he himself relieved of his main anxiety as to the result, by an interview. In contrast

[1] Oliphant's *Mission of Lord Elgin to China and Japan*, pp. 238–253 (American edition), N. Y., 1860. It is interesting to note, before leaving this episode, a Frenchman's opinion of the character of this statesman: "Kíying a été de 1842 à 1844 le grand négociateur de la Chine. Les ministres étrangers ont vanté son habileté, sa finesse, ses façons aimables et courtoises. . . . Son nom symbolisait une politique nouvelle, bienveillante pour les étrangers, tolérante, libérale; il représentait une sorte de jeune Chine."—M. C. Lavallée in the *Revue des Deux Mondes*, 15 Déc. 1859, p. 602. The same article contains an interesting account of the first expedition up the Pei ho and its results.

Digitized by Google

with Lord Elgin's general bearing toward those around him, as detailed in his correspondence, his biographer gives an extract from a private letter written the day after signing his treaty, which describes his perplexities:

June 29th.—I have not written for some days, but they have been busy ones. We went on fighting and bullying, and getting the poor commissioners to concede one point after another, till Friday the 25th, when we had reason to believe that all was settled, and that the signature was to take place the following day. On Friday afternoon, however, Baron Gros came to me with a message from the Russian and American ministers to induce me to recede from two of my demands—1, a resident minister at Peking, and, 2, permission to our people to trade in the interior of China; because, as they said, the Chinese plenipotentiaries had told them that they had received a decree from the Emperor stating that they should infallibly lose their heads if they gave way on these points.

The resident minister at Peking I consider far the most important matter gained by the treaty; the power to trade in the interior hardly less so. I had at stake not only these important points in my treaty, for which I had fought so hard, but I know not what behind. For the Chinese are such fools that it was impossible to tell, if we gave way on one point, whether they would not raise difficulties on every other. I sent for the admiral; gave him a hint that there was a great opportunity for England; that all the powers were deserting me on a point which they had *all*, in their original applications to Peking, demanded, and which they all intended to claim if I got it; that, therefore, we had it in our power to claim our place of priority in the East by obtaining this when others would not insist on it. Would he back me? This was the forenoon of Saturday, 26th, and the treaty was to be signed in the evening.

I may mention, as a proof of the state of people's minds, that Admiral Seymour told me that the French admiral had urged him to dine with him, assuring him that no treaty would be signed that day! I sent Frederick to the imperial commissioners to tell them that I was indignant beyond all expression at their having attempted to communicate with me through third parties; that I was ready to sign at once the treaty as it stood; but that if they delayed or retreated, I should consider negotiations at an end, go to Peking and demand a great deal more, etc. Frederick executed this most difficult task admirably, and at six P.M. I signed the treaty of Tientsin. I am now anxiously awaiting some communication from Peking. Till the Emperor accepts the treaty I shall hardly feel safe. Please God he may ratify without delay! I am sure that I express the wish just as much in the interest of China as in our own. Though I have been forced to act almost brutally, I am China's friend in all this.[1]

The importance of these two provisos was not exaggerated in his mind, but he might have seen that the difficulties with his colleagues were increased by his own reticence.

[1] Walrond's *Life and Letters of Lord Elgin*, p. 252.

Digitized by Google

However much a different course might have harmonized these discordant views, the pressure on the city of Tientsin was too near and severe upon the Chinese, and they yielded from fear of worse consequences when no other arguments could have induced them. It was not Lord Elgin alone who felt very sensibly, on that occasion, "the painfulness of the position of a negotiator who has to treat with persons who yield nothing to reason and everything to fear, and who are at the same time profoundly ignorant of the subjects under discussion and of their own real interests." Looked at in any point of view, this period of negotiation at Tientsin in 1858 was a remarkable epoch. The sole great power of paganism was being bound by the obligations of a treaty extorted from its monarch by a handful of men in possession of the entrance to its capital. As one of the British officers pithily stated it, two powers had China by the throat, while the other two stood by to egg them on, so that all could share the spoil. Yet the past sixteen years had proven most conclusively that, unless this pressure was exerted, the imperial government would make no advance, admit no opening for learning its real position among the nations of the world, but mulishly cherish its ignorance, its isolation, its conceit, and its folly, until these causes had worked out the ruin so fondly hoped to be avoided. Even the necessity of coming into personal official relations with the foreign consuls to promote the maintenance of good order between their subjects had been hampered or neutralized by the Chinese authorities at all the ports; and there was no hope of introducing a better state of things until foreign ministers were received at Peking. Happily, Lord Elgin then saw the question in all its bearings, and no one ever proved to be a truer friend to China than did he in forcing it upon her. He had little idea, probably, of one motive for their resistance, namely, the fear of the Manchu rulers, already referred to, that in admitting the enemy to the capital they would be as summarily ejected as had been their predecessors in 1644.

However, by the first week in July the four treaties had been signed and ratified by Hienfung, and all the vessels had left the Pei ho, which itself was no doubt the greatest proof to

Digitized by Google

his Majesty that they were valid compacts; for if the tables had been turned he would not have let them off so easily, and perhaps wondered that Tientsin had not been ransomed at the same rate that Elliot had spared Canton in 1841. It is difficult to fully appreciate the crass ignorance and singular perversity of the men in whose hands the sway of the Chinese people were now lodged. He who is unwilling to acknowledge the overruling hand of God in this remarkable meeting of nations, would find it very difficult to acknowledge it anywhere in human history.

The revision of the tariff had been deferred for a future discussion among those qualified for the work. Five Chinese commissioners reached Shanghai early in October for this and other purposes, of whom Kweiliang and Hwashana were two. In this part of the negotiations the controlling power was properly left in the hands of the British, for their trade was worth more than all others combined. They used this power most selfishly, and fastened on the weak and distracted Empire a veritable remora, which has gone on sucking its resources without compunction or cessation. By making the tariff an integral part of the treaty, they theoretically made every infraction a *casus belli*, and as no provision was left for revision, it was virtually rendered impossible, since the original four powers could not again be brought to unite on its readjustment with a view to the rights of China. While particular provision was made in it for preventing the importation of salt and the implements and munitions of war, the trade in opium was legalized at a lower rate than was paid on tea and silk entering England, and the brand of immorality and smuggling was removed from its diffusion throughout China. The weakness and ignorance of the Chinese were such as laid them open to the power and craft of other nations, but the inherent wrong of the principle of ex-territoriality was never more unjustly applied than in breaking down the moral sense of a people by forcing them to legalize this drug. The evils of smuggling it were insufferable, but a heavy duty was desirable as a check and stigma upon the traffic. The solution to a statesman in Lord Elgin's position was exceedingly difficult in relation to this point, and

Digitized by Google

he perhaps took the safest course under the existing circumstances, but it has proved to be fraught with evils to the Chinese. One who now reads his biography and learns his nice sense of right and equity in national affairs, will not be surprised to see his doubts as to the best course to take where all were so many moves in the dark.

The war which arose about the Arrow was now virtually closed, but many things remained to be enforced in carrying out the treaty stipulations or restraining the irritation they produced. The vastness of the Empire sundered its inhabitants so widely that each felt the troubles it endured only when they came near; but to all of them the obligations of treaty were of the most shadowy nature. It would require years of patient instruction to educate the mass of natives up to the idea that these obligations affected them as individuals. One means of this instruction, which subsequent years have shown to be both practical and profitable, was the extension and reorganization of the administration of the customs under foreign supervision. Its short service at Shanghai had proved it to be easy and safe of operation, and the increased fidelity everywhere in collecting the duties gratified the central and provincial governments exceedingly. It was a startling proof of the degrading effects of the opium and smuggling trade upon the honor of the foreign merchants that they generally resisted the transfer of collecting duties from native to foreign hands, and endeavored in a thousand ways to thwart and ridicule the altered system. This feeling, however, disappeared with the incoming of a new set of merchants, and the Chinese government has, since the first, found no difficulty in utilizing the skill, knowledge, and power of their employés, not only in fiscal departments, but wherever they felt the need of such qualifications. Beginning at Shanghai, when the local officers were helpless against their own subjects, mandarins and people alike desired the advantages of an honestly collected tariff to be extended to every port opened for foreign trade.

The changes formulated in the treaties of Tientsin could receive their accomplishment only after patient efforts on the part of ministers, consuls, and collectors to carry them into

Digitized by Google

effect with due regard to the position of the native rulers. In order to open the way into the country, Lord Elgin visited Hankow in four ships in November, after he had signed the tariff. The rebels in possession of Nanking and other towns, being unapprised of his character, fired at him from some of their forts, for which "they were pounded pretty severely in return." But a few words afterward proved more effectual than many shots, and no further altercation occurred. The voyage to and return from Hankow occupied seven weeks, and inaugurated a commerce and intercourse which has resulted in much good to the natives by making them rapidly acquainted with foreigners. The right of China to the exclusive navigation of her internal waters was summarily set aside by making Hankow a seaport; on the other hand, the government derived many advantages in the moral assistance given her at the time against the rebels by having them restrained, and, up to the present day, in the stimulus given to internal trade and rapid intercourse between the peoples of remote districts.

The year 1858 was fraught with great events, involving the welfare of the people of China and Japan and their future position and progress. Much against their will they had been forced into political relations with Europe and America, and in a measure deprived of their independence under the guise of treaties which erected an *imperium in imperio* in their borders. Their rulers, ignorant of the real meaning of these principles of ex-territoriality, were tied down to observe them, and found themselves within a few years humbled before those of their own subjects who had begun to look to foreigners for protection. The perplexity of the Chinese commissioners at Shanghai in this new position was exhibited in a despatch addressed on November 1, 1858, to the three envoys. In it they discuss the right of foreigners who have no treaties to go into the interior, and insist upon the absolute necessity of restraining them, which their own mercantile consuls could not and would not do.

"Being unacquainted," they wrote, "with the usages of foreign nations in this respect, and unwilling of ourselves to lay down preventive regulations respecting issuing passports, we

Digitized by Google

desire first to receive the result of your deliberations before we act in the premises." They then proceed to show how necessary it will be for the future peace between conflicting interests and nationalities that consuls should not be merchants, for "some of those of your respective nations have formerly and often acted in a manner calculated to impede and mar the harmony that existed between their nations and our own; wilfully disregarding everything but their own opinions, they have carried out their own high-handed measures to the ruin of all cordial feeling." The writers had no idea how this despatch was an argument and a proof of the need of strong measures to drag them out of their stupid ignorance and childish desires for isolation, and compel them to understand their duties. The education then begun was the only means through which to raise the Chinese rulers and people to a higher plane of civilization and liberty. One document like this carries in itself enough to show how ignorant were its writers and their colleagues of their own duties, and how hopeless was the prospect of their emerging voluntarily from their seclusion. The treaties bound them down to keep the peace, while they opened the channels through which the people could learn whatever was true and useful, without fear of punishment or reproach. The toleration of Christianity, the residence of foreign ministers at Peking, and the freedom to travel through the land were three avenues heretofore closed against the welfare and progress of China which the treaties opened, and through which she has already made more real advances than ever before in her history.[1]

[1] For full details on these important negotiations, see the Blue Book presented to Parliament July 15, 1859, containing Lord Elgin's correspondence; *U. S. Senate Executive Document* No. 30, read March 13, 1860, containing correspondence of Messrs. Reed, Williams, and Ward, from June, 1857, to September 17, 1859; Oliphant's *Mission of Lord Elgin to China and Japan*, London and New York, 1860; Lieutenant-Colonel Fisher, *Personal Narrative of Three Years' Service in China*, London, 1863; le Marquis de Moges, *Baron Gros's Embassy to China and Japan*, 1860; Walrond's *Letters and Journals of James, Earl of Elgin*, London, 1872; Lieut. J. D. Johnston, *China and Japan*, Philadelphia, 1860; *North American Review*, Vol. XC., p. 125; *Blackwood's Magazine*, Vols. LXXXVI., p. 647, LXXXVII., pp. 430, 585, and LXXXIX., p. 373.

Digitized by Google

By the end of December, 1858, the four envoys had left China, as well as most of the small force under their control. None of them had reached Peking, so that the Emperor was relieved of his fear that he would be carried off as was his commissioner, Yeh, from Canton; he had, moreover, another year of grace to learn what he ought to do to carry out the treaties. He was also relieved by the refusal of the allies to join their quarrel with the efforts of the Tai-pings and march together to the conquest of the Empire. In Canton the presence of the allies had been an irritation chiefly to the provincial officers, who busied themselves in stimulating large bodies of braves in its vicinity to assassinate and rob individual foreigners near or in the city, keeping up in this manner a lasting feeling of discontent. Several skirmishes took place, and a large district within the city near the British quarters on Kwanyin Shan was burned over to insure protection against sudden attacks. The new governor-general, Hwang, had formed a league of the gentry and braves, which chiefly exhibited their power in harassing their own countrymen. He was removed in disgrace at Lord Elgin's request, and all these puny and useless attacks brought to an end.

An incident which occurred near Canton about fifteen months after the city had been captured, strikingly shows the character of the people: "February 11th.—On the 8th a body of troops about one thousand strong started on an expedition which was to take three days. I accompanied, or rather preceded them on the first day's march, about twelve miles from Canton. We rode through a very pretty country, passing by the village of Shek-tsing, where there was a fight a fortnight ago. The people were very respectful, and apparently not alarmed by our visit. At the place where the troops were to encamp for the night a cattle fair was in progress, and our arrival did not seem to interrupt the proceedings. February 13th.—The military expedition was entirely successful. The troops were everywhere received as friends. Considering what has been of yore the state of feeling in this province toward us, I think this almost the most remarkable thing which has happened since I came here. Would it have happened if I had given way to

Digitized by Google

those who wished me to carry fire and sword through all the country villages?" [1]

These same villages furnished thousands of volunteers in May, 1841, to attack Sir Hugh Gough's army, and had been engaged in a desperate struggle with their countrymen only three years before, so that this change was owing neither to cowardice nor sulkiness. It had been brought about chiefly through considerate treatment of the people by the British garrison in Canton, by honest payment for supplies, and by regard for the traffic and local government of the city; the citizens consequently had no complaint to make or revenge to satisfy. Those who from infancy had been brought up to call every foreigner a *fan-kwei*, or 'foreign devil,' now slowly appreciated the fact that they had been mistaken—nor were the misconceptions all on their side. During the three years the city was occupied, public opinion there underwent an entire change; and the Cantonese are now as courteous as they before were ill-mannered.

At this season of rebellion and foreign war under which China was now suffering, the province of Kwangtung had a special cause for just irritation against all foreigners in the coolie trade. The headquarters of this trade were at Macao, and by 1860 it had become nearly the only business carried on there. The population of the colony is perhaps seventy-odd thousand, of whom less than five thousand wear a foreign dress. Traffic and industry are mostly carried on by Chinese, who do all the work. When the trade of hiring Chinese as contract laborers to go to Cuba, Peru, and elsewhere began, there was no difficulty in obtaining men willing to try their fortunes abroad. As rumors of gold diggings open to their labors in California were spread abroad and confirmed by returning miners, the coolie ships were readily filled by men whose ignorance of outer lands made them easily believe that they were bound to El Dorado, whatever country they shipped for. The inducement for hiring them was the low rate of wages ($4 a month) at which they were willing to sell their labor, and the profits derived from introducing them into western tropical regions. The temptations

[1] Walrond's *Letters and Journals of Lord Elgin*, p. 308.

Digitized by Google

of this business became so great that within ten years the demand had far exceeded the supply. Seldom has the unscrupulous character of trade, where its operations are left free from the restraints either of competent authority or of morality, been more sadly exhibited than in the conduct of the agents who filled these coolie ships. The details of the manner in which natives of all classes, scholars, travellers, laborers, peddlers, and artisans, were kidnapped in town and country and sent to Macao, were seldom known, because the victims were unable to make themselves heard. When the rebels at Fuhshan were defeated in 1855, thousands of their followers were glad to save their lives by shipping as coolies, but this lasted only a short time.

The allied commissioners in charge of Canton took cognizance of these outrages, and upon the representations of Governor-General Lao took vigorous measures for breaking up the trade at Whampoa.[1] The United States minister, Hon. J. E. Ward, lent his aid in February, 1860, by allowing the Chinese authorities to take three hundred and seventeen men out of the American ship Messenger in order to ascertain whether any of them were detained on board against their will. Every one of them declined to go back to the ship, but it was not proved how many had been beguiled away on false pretences—the usual mode of kidnapping. The report of the commission sent to Cuba a dozen years later asserts, as the result of careful inquiries, that the majority of the coolies in Cuba "were decoyed abroad, not legitimately induced to emigrate."

The Portuguese rulers of Macao were unwilling to make thorough investigation into the facts about this business until after the return of the commission sent to Cuba in 1873, whose report disclosed the inevitable evils and wrongs inherent in the traffic. Urged by the British government, they finally (in 1875) closed the barracoons, and thus put an end to it. During the twenty-five years of its existence about five hundred thousand coolies were taken away.

[1] Compare Lieutenant-Colonel Fisher, *Personal Narrative of Three Years' Service in China*, pp. 260–342, where the matter is pretty thoroughly discussed and Lao's proclamations given in detail.

Digitized by Google

To return to the war: throughout the winter no event of note occurred in any part of China, but the imperial government was busily employed in fortifying the mouth of the Pei ho to prevent the entrance of the allies. They demolished the old forts to rebuild new ones of materials gathered on the spot, and constructed somewhat after the manner laid down in foreign authorities on fortification. These books had been translated for them by natives trained in mission schools. Notwithstanding all that Kweiliang and Hwashana may have assured them to the contrary, the Emperor and his officers could not divest themselves of their fears of serious reprisals, if not of conquest, should they permit the allied gunboats to anchor a second time at Tientsin and their embassies to enter the capital. The two commissioners awaited at Shanghai the arrival of the British, French, and American plenipotentiaries, for the purpose of urging them to exchange the ratifications in that city. Nevertheless, since Peking was expressly appointed in the first two treaties as the place for signing them, Mr. Bruce and M. Bourboulon, the English and French ministers, determined to insist upon this detail. The poor commissioners, on the other hand, knowing more than they dared to tell of the hostile preparations going on, steadily declined the offer of a passage to Taku. Mr. Ward was not tied down to any place or time for exchanging the American treaty, but decided to do so at the same place with his colleagues. The three ministers remained in the south to exchange views and allow the British gunboats to collect off Taku before their arrival, when they all joined them on June 20th. The appearance of the forts was entirely different from last year, and confirmed the reports of the great efforts making to prevent foreigners reaching the capital in large numbers. The river was found to be barred by an elaborate boom of timber and chains; but though no soldiers were in sight on the battlements, it was evident that a collision was intended. The reconnoissance had been carefully made from the 17th to the 24th, and the Chinese general, Săng-ko-lin-sin, felt confident of his ability to hold his own against the ships inside of the bar. All official intercourse was refused with Admiral Hope, though he had stated his purpose clearly, because, as was alleged, these

Digitized by Google

forts and men were merely gathered by the common people to defend themselves against pirates.

In order to discover the real state of feeling toward a neutral, Commodore Tatnall took Mr. Ward, in the United States chartered steamer Toeywan, into the river on the 24th, and proceeded toward a jetty near the fort. The steamer ran aground when about half a mile short of it; the minister then sent his interpreters to the jetty, where they were met by a dozen or more miserably dressed fellows who had come from the fort for that purpose. On learning the errand of the foreigners, one or two of the men spoke up in a way which showed that they were officers—probably disguised as coolies—telling the deputation that the passage to Tientsin by the Pei ho had been barred, but that the governor-general, Hăngfuh, was then at Pehtang, a place about ten miles up the coast, where he was ready to receive the American minister. They added that they had no authority to take any letter or card for him; that they knew very well the nationality of the Toeywan, which would not be harmed if she did not attempt to break through the boom laid just above the jetty; and, lastly, that they were not at all empowered to aid or advise the Americans in getting up to Pehtang. The whole episode was a ridiculous ruse on the part of the Chinese to hide their design of forcibly preventing the ministers from ascending the river; but by so undignified a behavior the general commanding the works forfeited whatever moral advantage might otherwise have remained on his side. After Admiral Hope had commenced his operations against the barriers, Hăngfuh did indeed send a letter to the British minister—then lying nine miles off the shore—informing him of the arrangements made at Pehtang to take the allied envoys from thence to the capital. These arrangements certainly violated no article of the treaties, nor any promise made to the foreigners, though they neutralized entirely the journey to Peking upon which the British government had determined to send its plenipotentiary.

One may learn from the letters of Mr. Bruce to Lord Malmesbury (of July 5th and 13th) many details of the impertinent reception accorded to Admiral Hope's messengers by the rabble

Digitized by Google

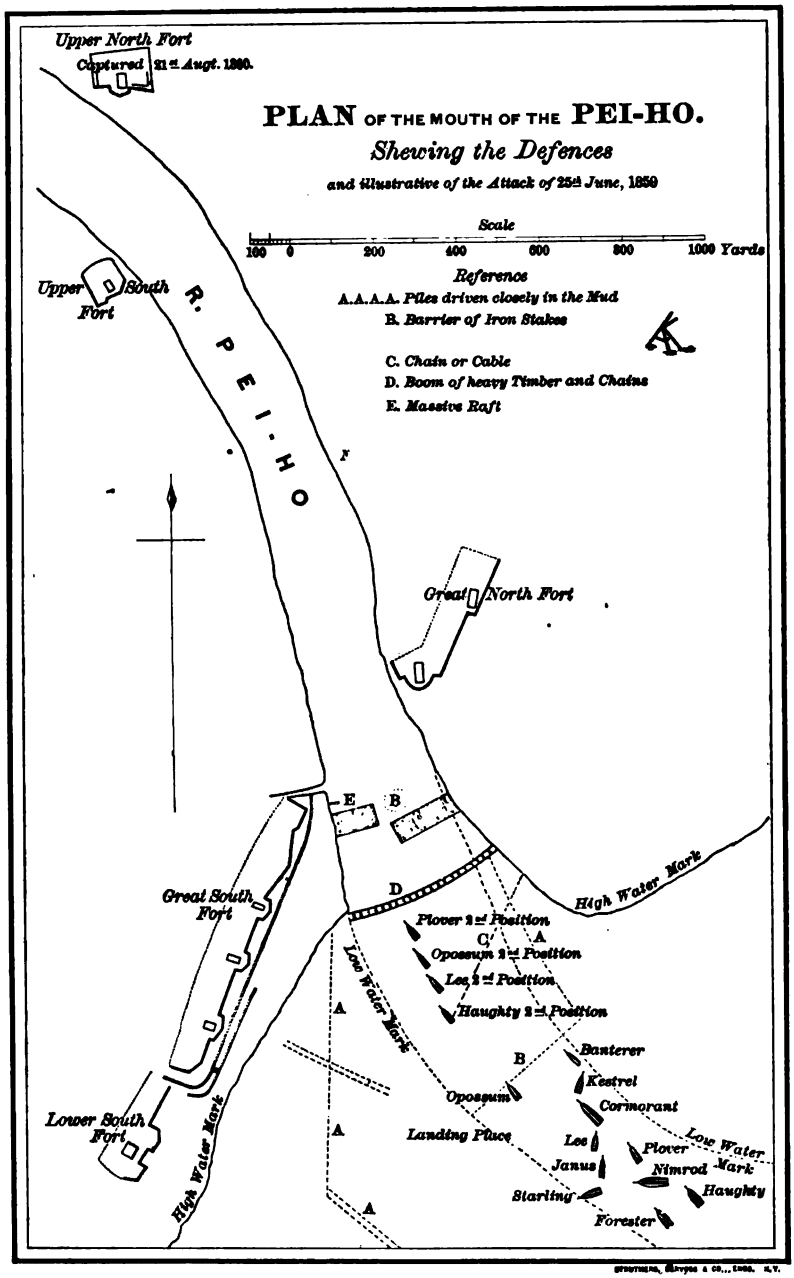
and soldiers near the Taku forts, all proving plainly enough their hostile intentions. But the minister overlooks what we, in retracing the history of these years, cannot too attentively keep in mind, namely, the ever-present fear of trickery and foul play with their unknown engines of war which the Emperor's counsellors momentarily dreaded from their foreign adversaries. On the other hand, what could be done with a government which would never condescend to appreciate its own weakness, would never speak or act the truth, would never treat any other nation as an equal? These and other despatches from the Blue Book afford a key to the policies of both parties in this remarkable contest, and convince the impartial student of the necessity of personal contact and acquaintance before it was possible to reach a lasting understanding between the holders of so widely separated views.

During the night of the 23d, after the Toeywan had floated at high water, the British advanced and blew up the first boom, leaving, however, the second and stronger obstruction untouched. The attempt to ascend the river in force was commenced by the allies in the following afternoon, when the forts opened fire upon them and by evening had sunk or silenced almost every vessel. In this fleet thirteen small gunboats were engaged, one of the largest among them, a French craft, carrying six hundred men; besides these were some six hundred marines and engineers designed to serve as an escort upon the journey to the capital. This guard was now landed in the mud before the forts and an attempt made to carry the works by escalade, but the effort failed, and by daylight the men were all once more afloat. From the gunboats twenty-five men were killed and ninety-three wounded; the loss among the marines was naturally heavier—sixty-four killed and two hundred and fifty-two wounded, while of the boats four were sunk.[1]

Throughout this action the American vessel Toeywan remained inside of the bar, being a non-combatant. The gallant energy of Commodore Tatnall, who in the thick of the fight passed through the fleet to visit the British admiral lying

[1] One of these afterward floated of itself and was preserved.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

wounded in the Plover, well-nigh cost him his life; a shot from the Chinese guns tore into the stern of his barge, killing the coxswain, and narrowly missed sinking the boat with all on board. Tatnall's declaration, in extenuation of his technical violation of international law by towing boat-loads of British marines into action, that "blood is thicker than water," has indissolubly associated his name with this battle of the Pei ho.[1]

The American minister was present as a spectator at this repulse before the Taku forts, but this could not be properly considered as a reason for not making further attempts to reach Peking. He accordingly, though not without some difficulty, notified the governor-general at Pehtang of his arrival, and four days later a pilot was sent off and the Toeywan taken up to Pehtang. Mr. Ward, in his report to Washington, expresses his belief that he would not be allowed to reach Peking, while the Chinese had no other intention than to escort him there and bring him safely back. On July 8th boats were sent to conduct his party to the place of meeting, which they reached through a line of soldiers in uniform placed along the sides of the streets, and were ushered into a large hall amid a crowd of officials. The recent encounter at Taku was discussed in a sensible manner, without apparent anxiety or bravado, and then the arrangements for taking the whole party of twenty to Peking were made known. Among other topics of inquiry brought forward was the cost of such vessels as had been sunk in the Pei ho by their guns—as if the officials had been estimating the probable expense of their victory when the English brought in their usual bill of damages. But the offer of Commodore Tatnall to place his surgeons at the disposal of the Chinese, to aid in treating the wounded men at the forts, was declined.

Everything being made ready by July 20th, the American minister set out under the escort of Chunghow, now first brought into contact with foreigners. About forty miles of flat, saltish plain was crossed, until the party reached Pehtsang, on the Pei ho, where were lying the boats prepared for

[1] Lieutenant-Colonel Fisher's *Personal Narrative of Three Years' Service in China*, Chaps. XIII. and XIV.

Digitized by Google

their reception. As they proceeded up the river the inhabitants flocked to the banks to behold the dreaded foreigners, but no expressions of vaunting or hostility were heard among the myriads who now gazed for the first time upon them. The vast crowd at Tungchau, when the twenty Americans landed, comprised apparently the whole population of that city; clad in white summer garments, and preserving a most remarkable stillness and decorum as they lined the river banks and highway, this silent, gazing multitude produced upon the strangers an effect incomparably weird. The day was oppressively hot, and many preferred the carts to the mules provided for the trip to Peking, where they all arrived on the 27th. A ridiculous rumor, illustrated by appropriate pictures, respecting this journey was circulated in Paris about a fortnight afterward, stating that Mr. Ward and his party were conducted from the coast in an immense "box or travelling chamber, drawn overland by oxen," and then put "on a raft to be towed up the river and Imperial Canal as far as the gate of the capital. They were well treated, and were taken back to the coast in the same manner." This *jeux d'esprit* probably expressed the popular sentiment in France of what was expected from the Chinese, and has ever since been associated with it.

On announcing his arrival, a meeting was arranged for the 30th between Mr. Ward and Kweiliang and Hwashana, at which all the time was occupied in discussing the question of the manner of audience. The minister had the advantage in this interesting colloquy, for he had come up at the invitation of the governor-general, had no directions from the President upon the matter, was quite indifferent as to the result of the conference, and had no presents to be rejected as Lord Amherst's were in 1816. The nature of the *kotow* and the reasons for requiring it of all who had audience of the Emperor were fully discussed at several interviews in the most amicable and courteous manner. The Chinese were anxious to bring about an audience, and went so far as to waive the *kotow*, or knocking head, from the first, and proposed instead that the envoy should bend one knee as he approached the sovereign. This was even less of an obeisance than English courtiers paid

Digitized by Google

their Queen, and might have been accepted without difficulty—if any compromise were possible—had not one of the party previously declared the religious nature of the ceremony by saying, "If we do not kneel before the Emperor, we do not show him any respect; it is that or nothing, and is the same reverence which we pay the gods." Kweiliang further said that he himself would willingly burn incense before the President of the United States if asked to do so.[1]

During their whole national history the Chinese rulers and people had accepted this ceremony as the inseparable prerogative of the Son of Heaven; and as this discussion in their capital was in the hearing of a great crowd of officials, who, doubtless, were prompt enough in circulating among the populace a report of the disagreement, one may appreciate the feelings of the latter when the American embassy was allowed quietly to leave the city without entering into the "Great Interior" to behold the Dragon's Face. Foreigners have been so ready in China to ridicule or depreciate whatever partakes of resistance to their notions (unless it be backed up by force to make it respected), that this remarkable discussion on a vital point in Chinese etiquette and theology was generally regarded as silly verbiage on their part or ascribed to the effect of fear on the part of the Americans. As the time and place for exchanging ratifications were not mentioned in the treaty, there was no insuperable difficulty in adjourning the ceremony to another place; yet it seemed a grotesque ending to the four days' discussion for Kweiliang to seriously ask the minister for what purpose he had come to Peking, he himself being quite at a loss to understand the reason. Mr. Ward replied that it was to deliver the letter from the President, and to exchange the ratifications. It would have been better if he had held him to the promise made by the governor-general at Pehtang to do so in Peking. However, the return trip was concluded by the exchange of ratifications on August 15th at Pehtang, and the departure of the frigate for Shanghai soon after.

[1] See Ward's despatches, pp. 594–617, *U. S. Senate Executive Document* No. 30, read March 13, 1860; *American Eclectic Magazine*, New York, Vol. 51, April and May, 1861; *North China Br. R. A. Society*, Vol. I., No. 3, 1859.

Digitized by Google

The mortification of having been repulsed at Taku was not concealed by the British public or press, when they ascribed it to the too hasty landing at sunset on a mud flat over which there was no pathway or footing. There certainly was no treachery on the part of the Chinese, as Mr. Swinhoe declares in his *North China Campaign*, for they plainly told what they would do if the passage were attempted.[1] Yet it was a grievous disappointment to find that the exchange of ratifications had been interrupted from any cause; and though it will probably always be a debatable point whether it was right for the allied envoys to refuse the offered means of reaching Peking by way of Pehtang, there was no debate now as to the necessity of hastening to the capital at once.

The British and French governments moved immediately in the matter, and wisely decided to place the settlement of the question in the same hands that had carried it thus far. In April, 1860, Earl Russell wrote to Lord Elgin that "Her Majesty resolved to employ every means calculated to establish peace with the Emperor of China, and had determined to call upon him again to give his valuable services to promote this important object." The indispensable conditions were three, viz., an apology for the attack on the allied forces at the Pei ho; the ratification and execution of the treaty; and payment for the expenses incurred by the allies. Lord Elgin's colleague was Baron Gros, and the two were ready to leave Europe in April. They were supported in making their demands by an army of about ten thousand British troops of all arms, gathered from England, Cape Colony, and India, and nearly seven thousand French sent from France. Their respective naval forces were not largely added to, but the requisite transports increased the fleets to more than two hundred vessels in all, of which thirty-three

[1] Though they told many lies as well. These charges against the Chinese were reiterated until they were believed by all the world; but in the effort to find a good reason for proceeding to Peking in order to exchange the ratifications, it was not needful to say that the forts fired upon the British ships without notice. Mr. Bruce's despatches to Lord Malmesbury (of July 13th), together with the enclosures and translations of native documents, discuss this question with much good sense.

Digitized by Google

were French. The latter had small iron gunboats, fitted to carry one gun, brought from home in fifteen pieces each; when screwed together each boat had three compartments, made water-tight with layers of vulcanized rubber at the joinings. The British forces gathered at Talien-wan Bay on the south-eastern side of Prince Regent's Sword, and the French at Chifu on the coast of Shantung. The plenipotentiaries had arrived in July of this year and found the imperial government maintaining its old attitude of conciliation and undue assumption. On March 8th the foreigners' terms had been made known by Mr. Bruce, and a reply shortly afterward transmitted to him through Ho Kwei-tsing at Shanghai. In it the lurking fear of reprisals, so largely actuating its conduct, appears from the conclusion, when the council says: "If Mr. Bruce will come north without vessels of war and with but a moderate retinue, and will wait at Pehtang to exchange the treaties, China will not take him to task for what has gone by. But if he be resolved to bring up a number of war-vessels, and if he persist in proceeding by way of Taku, this will show that his true purpose is not the exchange of treaties."[1] After such a declaration there was but one way left by which to prove to the Emperor how thoroughly in earnest were the allies in their intention of exchanging the treaties. The last bulwark of Chinese seclusion was now to be broken down—never more, we may hope, to be erected against the advancing influences of a more enlightened civilization.

After the usual delays incident to moving large bodies of troops with their various equipages, the combined forces left their anchorages on July 26th, presenting with their long lines of ships a grand sight as they went up the smooth waters of the Gulf of Pechele toward the mouth of the Pehtang River. This assemblage was many times larger than the armaments sent to the same region in the two previous years, and the experiences of those years had prepared both parties to regard this third attempt to reach the Court of Cambaluc as decisive of their future relations. The forces found much inconvenience in ef-

[1] Wolseley's *Narrative*, p. 14. Fisher's *China*, Chap. XXIII.

Digitized by Google

fecting a landing at Pehtang, where the beach at low tide extends over miles of ooze and sticky mud, but met no forcible opposition. The towns in this region are among the most repulsive-looking on the whole Chinese coast. In consequence of the saline soil no trees or grass are to be seen on the wide plain; the only green things being a few fruit trees near the houses, or scattering patches of salsola and similar plants. The houses are built of mud and chopped straw; their walls rest on layers of sorghum stalks spread on the foundation to intercept the saline influences, while the thatched roofs also contain much mud. These soon present a scanty covering of grass, which, speedily withering in the hot sun, imparts to the dwelling a still more forlorn aspect. Cheerless enough on a bright day, the appearance of one of these hamlets in wet weather—with mud streaming from the roofs, the streets reeking with noisome filth, through which loaded carts and half-naked men wend dolefully their way—is certainly melancholy beyond any description.

The allies were on shore by the evening of August 2d, and in a most pitiable plight in their own eyes. The men had been obliged to wade through the mud left by the retiring tide to reach solid ground, and then cross a moat that received the drainings of the town, a reeking mass much worse, of course, than the other. No fresh water was to be had, and the time which elapsed before the men could be supplied from the boats was spent in putting themselves up for the night, wet, dirty, and hungry as they were. In the morning it was found that the few forts which they were to attack were merely for show, and soon the town was occupied by the troops, their generals taking the temples for quarters. In less than three days every house in it had been pillaged, and whatever was worthless for plunder was destroyed as useless, "the few natives that still lingered by their unusurped domiciles," adds Mr. Swinhoe, "quietly watching with the eye of despair the destruction of all the property they possessed in the world, and the ruin of their hopes perhaps forever." Even the poor wretches who were trying to carry off their goods in packs were stopped and stripped by the prowling soldiers.

Digitized by Google

In less than a fortnight the entire force had been brought ashore without accident or opposition. There were men, tents, guns, horses, provisions, animals, stores, ammunition, baggage, —everything, in short, which an army now needs and which steam easily brings to it. Besides these, two thousand five hundred Cantonese coolies, each of whom is estimated by Colonel Wolseley, with supreme candor, to have been of more general value than any three baggage animals. They were working constantly for ten days, carrying water, landing stores, and performing the toil devolving on camp followers, for which this author magnanimously praises them by saying: "They were easily fed, and when properly treated most manageable."

On August 12th the forces were ready to move on the Taku forts lying about five miles distant across the plain, now rendered miry by the constant rains. A single causeway three miles long, flanked by deep ditches, traversed it, and along this progress, especially for the heavy artillery, was exceedingly slow. Upon their passage of this road the Chinese general, Sängkolinsin, yielded the only vantage-ground where he could have encountered his enemy with hope of success. This ignorant blunder on the part of so energetic a commander seems all the more unaccountable, since a week previously the Chinese cavalry had been much emboldened by some slight successes over a reconnoitring party of the allies, and "approached our outposts with wonderful courage, a few even advancing to within a few hundred yards, brandishing the swords and making grotesque gesticulations."

At last the allies were ready to advance to the attack of the Chinese. The Mongol horsemen commenced the engagement by rushing fearlessly forward in several irregular lines of skirmishers, and bravely received the shot from the Armstrong guns, until they charged with a loud, wild yell the Sikh cavalry, with whom they engaged in close conflict. But "in less than a minute the Tartars had turned and were flying for their lives before our well-armed irregulars supported by two squadrons of the finest dragoons in the British army; the pursuit lasted for five miles, and was then only ended by our horses being pumped out. Had they been in good working order the re-

Digitized by Google

sults would have been far more satisfactory, and the worthy tax-payers at home would have had the pleasure of gloating over the account of an immense list of slain enemies."[1]

The allied infantry had already reached the intrenched camp, near the village of Sinho, and the "beautifully precise practice" of the Armstrongs, together with the accurate rifled guns of the French, were brilliantly successful in knocking over the Chinese who served their gingalls at the ranges of fourteen hundred or a thousand yards.

The reader cannot desire further particulars of this unequal contest as described by Colonel (now Lord) Garnet Wolseley. The various forces of the Chinese were entirely routed by the allies; the plain was speckled for miles by native corpses, while the care of wounded men called out the sympathies and skill of their conquerors. The village of Sinho was plundered, and its inhabitants fled, glad to escape with their lives.[2] The next morning an advance was made by the entire force upon the five forts and intrenched camps at Tangku, three miles off, from which the imperialists were dislodged with considerable loss on their part, the rest retreating across the Pei ho toward Taku. Tangku town was occupied by the foreigners, who took under their care everybody left in it, and relieved the wounded and starving while preparing for the intended attack on the forts. This kindness, and the consequent increased acquaintance arising between the contending parties in obtaining supplies, did much to remove their ignorance and contempt of each other—a result far more desirable and useful than the capture of forts and prisoners.

The French having already encamped on the further bank of the Pei ho, each army commenced the building of a bridge[3] across the stream, completing the structure so speedily that by the morning of August 21st the whole attacking force was in position. The twenty-three pieces of artillery now began to fire upon the north fort, from which the Chinese replied with

[1] Wolseley, *Narrative*, p. 108.

[2] A great collection of official documents disclosing the views of the court upon the struggle was found in the *yamun*.

[3] Lieutenant-Colonel Fisher, *Personal Narrative*, pp. 404–409.

Digitized by Google

all the alacrity they could, although taken thus in rear. About six o'clock, when the fire waxed hotter and hotter, and the troops were anxiously looking for the signal to advance, "a tall black pillar, as if by magic, shot up from the midst of the nearest fort, and then bursting like a rocket after it had obtained a great height, was soon lost in the vast shower of earth and wood into which it resolved itself—a loud, bursting, booming sound marking the moment of its short existence." But the fire from the fort only ceased for a minute or two, and the gunners served their pieces most manfully, though sometimes unprotected in any way from the crushing shell fire opposed to them. The attack began about seven o'clock, nearly four thousand men all told forming the advance. A gallant defence was made to a still braver onset, but the victory naturally fell to the disciplined forces of the allies, who had possessed themselves of all the defences before noon. A few guns taken from the ships destroyed June 25, 1859, were now recovered by the British, but otherwise the fort contained nothing of value. The loss of life on both sides was comparatively slight. The British had seventeen killed and one hundred and eighty-three wounded; the French, one hundred and thirty casualties in all; the Chinese lay dead in heaps in the fort, and their total loss probably exceeded two thousand. The interior testified in every part the noble manner in which it had been defended, even after the disastrous explosion had crippled the resources and discouraged the enthusiasm of its garrison. From this position the allies moved on the other northern fort with their artillery, under a continual fire from its walls; but before the guns could open upon it, many white flags appeared on the parapets; messengers were ere long seen to leave the great southern fort. They were all given up before sunset, and the famous Taku forts, which had last year witnessed the discomfiture of the allies, now saw them enter as conquerors[1]—"the tarnished honor of our arms was gloriously vindicated."

[1] When the allied generals came to carefully examine the construction of the walls, casemates, and internal arrangements, with the preparation made outside to hinder the enemy, they declared them to be absolutely impregnable from seaward if defended as well as the north fort had been.

Digitized by Google

Lord Elgin was quietly resting in Tangku, and refused to receive their surrender, or even to hold intercourse with Hangfuh, the governor-general of Chihlí, then in command, but turned him over to the commander of the forces. The path being now open for the troops to march upon Tientsin, the gunboats were sent forward to see that the river was clear. On the 25th the two plenipotentiaries were again housed at Tientsin, accompanied by naval and land forces amply strong to take them to Peking. No opposition was, however, experienced in reaching that city, while the pleasing contrast in the surface of this country with that of the dreary flats near Pehtang and Taku refreshed the men as much as the abundant supplies and peacefulness of the people aided them. Such remarkable contrasts in China illustrate the inert character of this extraordinary people; and further, also lead one to inquire what is the reason for their loyalty to a government which fails so completely in protecting them from their enemies. Mr. Swinhoe records[1] a conversation held with a well-to-do Chinese, in which this inquiry receives a partial answer in the peaceful education of a race which has no alternative.

His intrenchments at Sinho and Tangku being demolished, his vaunted defences upon the river razed, his enemies' ships in possession of Tientsin, nothing now remained for Sängkolinsin save to move his entire army nearer Peking, and there again meeting the invaders, endeavor to preserve the capital from capture. He would not there be able to shift the odium of defeat on the difficulties of the river defences, while the moral effect would be incomparably greater if he were vanquished near the palace.

The aged Kweiliang, the father-in-law of Prince Kung, was again directed to repair to Tientsin, where he arrived about August 28th. He and two others (all of them Manchus) endeavored to negotiate a peace so as to prevent the allies from advancing on Peking with their armies. Finding that they were trifling, Lord Elgin stopped the palaver, and started for Tungchau on September 8th, the British taking the left bank and

[1] *North China Campaign*, pp. 158–161.

Digitized by Google

the French keeping the southern. Near Yangtsun a new commission of higher rank reported itself, but it was rejected, and the army continued on its way. Further on, at Hosí-wu and Matau, signs of serious strife began to appear, but the commissioners assured their negotiators, Messrs. Wade and Parkes, that everything was or would be ready at Tungchau to conclude the convention. Affairs were becoming critical in the matter of supplies and transport, for Sängkolinsin's army prevented the people from safely bringing animals and making sales. The commissariat, therefore, was obliged to seize what could be found to feed the advancing force, and this involved ransacking most of the towns and hamlets lying near the river between Hosí-wu and Tungchau. The progress of the force was, therefore, much slower than below Tientsin, though the possession of sixty or eighty small boats helped to bring on the ammunition and other supplies.

On September 14th the interpreters, Messrs. Wade and Parkes, reached Tungchau, in order to meet Prince Í and his colleague to discuss the terms for stopping the army and exchanging the ratifications. This interview was marked with apparent sincerity, and resulted in an order for the army to move forward to a place designated near the town of Changkia-wan, about three leagues from Tungchau, where the troops were to encamp. The camp broke up from Hosí-wu early on the 17th to carry this arrangement into effect. Mr. Parkes was again sent forward to Tungchau (twenty-five miles), accompanied by an escort of twenty-six Sikh and other soldiers, to inform the imperial commissioners, and finally arrange terms. The ground pointed out was reached, and seemed to be well suited for the purpose. At Changkia-wan the party met an officer at the head of some cavalry, who challenged them, but allowed all to go on to Tungchau. Mr. Parkes soon met another high official in charge of a guard, who treated them with marked courtesy, informing them that he had been the general at Sinho, and let them proceed. They were received at Tungchau and conducted through the town to a temple by a messenger sent from the prince. At one o'clock the discussions began, but instead of entering into the details of carrying out the agreement, difficulties were made

Digitized by Google

about Lord Elgin's delivering his letter of credence to the Emperor. The whole afternoon was consumed in this debate, which probably was grounded not a little on the recent decision of Hienfung to leave the capital for his summer palace at Jeh-ho while the way was yet clear. At eventide the commissioners waived the settlement of the audience, and soon agreed to all the other points relating to the encampment near Changkia-wan. In the morning Mr. Parkes, Colonel Walker, and eleven others, leaving the rest of their party in the temple to await the arrival of the plenipotentiaries the next day, departed to view the designated encampment. Their journey was somewhat eventful. As they reached Changkia-wan they met bodies of Chinese infantry going south, but no notice was taken of them, and the foreigners rode on to reach the appointed spot. In doing so they came across a body of a thousand dismounted horsemen concealed in a dry watercourse, or *nullah*, evidently placed there in ambush; while riding along in front no interruption was made to their progress. Further on, in a small village, they detected a large force hidden behind the houses and in gardens, but still no hindrance to their advance was interposed by these men. A short distance ahead they came upon a masked battery of twelve guns just placed in position, from which they were driven away. It was now plain that Sängkolinsin was preparing an ambushment for the allied forces to enter, feeling confident, no doubt, of his success.

Mr. Loch, who accompained Mr. Parkes thus far, was now designated to force his way through the Chinese troops, so as to meet the allied generals and tell them the state of things. Sir Hope Grant had already noticed some bodies of men on his flanks, and was preparing for them when he learned the truth; but in order to give Mr. Parkes and the others a chance to escape from Tungchau, he agreed to delay two hours before opening upon the enemy. Mr. Loch accordingly started, in company with Captain Brabazon and two horsemen, to return to Tungchau. They reached it in a few hours and found their friends, unconscious of the danger, wandering through the town. Mr. Parkes had learned something of it, and called on Prince I at his quarters to claim protection; this dignitary was in a state of

Digitized by Google

much excitement, and said that "until the question of delivering the letter of credence was settled there could be no peace; there must be war." On returning to their temple the foreigners immediately started off in a body, but some of their horses were jaded, and the country was filled with moving bodies of troops.

When about five miles were gone over they came on a brigade of matchlock men, and ere long an officer of rank stopped them from going further, but offered to accompany two of them to obtain from the general a pass allowing the whole party to ride around the Chinese army on their way back. Mr. Parkes and Mr. Loch and a Sikh accordingly went with him, and he bravely looked after their safety. Meanwhile the battle had alreadybegun, as the booming cannon intimated. They had advanced only a few rods when the trio found themselves in the midst of a large body of infantry, some of whom seized their bridles, but their guide rushed in, striking right and left, and thus cleared the way. Ten rods in the rear they met the Chinese general, to whom Mr. Parkes addressed himself, pointing to the flag of truce and asking for a pass for the whole party to return to the British army. Sängkolinsin "gave a derisive laugh, and broke out into a torrent of abuse. He accused Parkes of being the cause of all the troubles and difficulties that had arisen. Not content with attempting to impose conditions which would have been derogatory to the dignity of the Emperor to accept, he had now brought the allied armies down to attack the imperial forces." This is only a part of his excited conversation with Mr. Parkes, as reported by Mr. Loch. They were now imprisoned, and ordered to be taken in an open cart with two French prisoners to Tungchau, and delivered over to Prince Î. The others, twenty-three in all, had also been made prisoners where they were waiting, and ere long conducted to Tungchau in charge of a guard.

The five in the cart reached Tungchau after Prince Î had left his temple, and were therefore hurried on to Peking after him, but on the way were turned off near Pa-lí-kiau (*i.e.*, 'Eight *Lí* Bridge') and taken to the quarters of Jinlin, a general then in command of the Peking gendarmerie. He ques-

Digitized by Google

tioned Mr. Parkes upon the strength of the allied forces, until the latter ended this catechising under the torture of kneeling with the arms twisted behind him, by pretending to faint. In the afternoon, while again undergoing examination by some officials formerly with Prince I, they were suddenly interrupted by a commotion, and everybody ran off, leaving them alone. Soon a number of soldiers rushed in and bound their arms, while they were led away to be beheaded in an outer court. But just as they crossed the yard a mandarin hurried forward, and seizing hold of the soldier, then waving his sword over Mr. Loch, rescued them both and hurried them into a cart, where the other three prisoners lay, upon which they immediately started for Peking by the great stone road. The torture and jolting of this ride over the rough causeway were increased by their weariness, hunger, and cramped position, and when they got out of the cart at the *Hing Pu*, in Peking, they were utterly prostrated. Nevertheless, their misery during the ride of ten miles was transient and light compared with what awaited them inside of the Board of Punishments. They were there separated, heavily pinioned, and put with the native prisoners. Mr. Loch justly commends these wretched men for their sympathy, and mentions many little acts of kindness to him in dividing their cakes and giving him a special bench to sit on during the ten days he was quartered with them. He was then taken to the room with Mr. Parkes, and they were soon driven away to a temple in the northern part of the city, where rooms had been fitted up for them. As to the party of twenty-three English and thirteen Frenchmen left by Parkes at his capture, they had been taken to Yuen-ming Yuen under a strong guard.

Meanwhile the allied army had come up to the Chinese forces. These, about twenty thousand men in all, had been posted with considerable skill between Changkia-wan and the Pei ho, showing a front of nearly four miles, much of which was intrenched and presenting a succession of batteries. The battle on the 18th died away as the allies reached that town, having driven Sängkolinsin's troops toward Peking, captured eighty guns, and burned all his camps. The loss of life was

Digitized by Google

much less among his men than at the Taku fort, for here none of them were chained to their guns, and were able to escape when their position was untenable. Changkia-wan was thoroughly pillaged that night by those who could get at it, especially the poor natives who followed the army.

On the 21st the Chinese forces made another stand near the Eight Lí Bridge over the Canal, from which the French dislodged them without much difficulty. The British came up on their flanks and drove them in upon their centre, which of course soon resulted in a general dispersion. The artillery opened up at long range; the cavalry riding in upon the Chinese horsemen, easily scattered them, often burning the separate camps before returning. The contest at the bridge was the most serious, and their loss here was estimated at three hundred; on the whole field it probably did not exceed five hundred, for neither their cavalry nor infantry often presented a solid front. The entire losses of the allies were less than fifty killed and wounded. Nothing interposed now between them and Peking, but they delayed to move until October 3d, when their entire force had come up, siege guns and commissary stores included. Full knowledge had been obtained of the environs of Peking, and negotiations had been going on respecting the return of the prisoners as a preliminary to the close of hostilities. These were now conducted with Prince Kung, the next younger brother of the Emperor, who was himself by this time safe at Jeh-ho.

On October 6th Lord Elgin and the generals were settled in the spacious quarters of the Hwang sz',[1] a lamasary near the northwest gate of Peking, and their army occupied much of the open spaces between it and the city. On that day, the outposts of the French army and some of the British cavalry reached the great cantonment of Hai-tien (where the Manchu garrison of Peking was quartered) and the palace of Yuen-ming Yuen near by. This was soon pillaged under circumstances and in a barbarously wasteful manner which will reflect lasting obloquy upon General Montaubon, who, more

[1] See Volume I., p. 79.

Digitized by Google

than any other person, could have interposed to save the immense and precious collection of objects illustrating Chinese art, architecture, and literature. Lord Elgin's journal gives his view of this act in a few words:

October 7th, 5 o'clock P.M.—I have just returned from the Summer Palace. It is really a fine thing, like an English park—numberless buildings with handsome rooms, filled with Chinese *curios*, handsome clocks, bronzes, etc. But alas! such a scene of desolation. The French general came up, full of protestations. He had prevented looting in order that all the plunder might be divided between the armies, etc. There was not a room that I saw in which half the things had not been taken away or broken to pieces. I tried to get a regiment of ours sent to guard the place, and then sell the things by auction; but it is difficult to get things done by system in such a case, so some of the officers are left [there], who are to fill two or three carts with treasures, which are to be sold. Plundering and devastating a place like this is bad enough, but the waste and breakage are much worse. Out of a million pounds' worth of property, I daresay fifty thousand pounds will not be realized. French soldiers were destroying in every way the most beautiful silks, breaking the jade ornaments and porcelain, etc. War is a hateful business. The more one sees of it the more one detests it.[1]

Mr. Swinhoe's account of one room in this palace has now a historical interest—but his description must be condensed:

Facing the gate (he says) stood the grand reception hall, well adorned outside, and netted with copper wire under the fretted eaves to keep off the birds. Entering it we found ourselves on a marble floor in front of the Emperor's ebony throne; this was adorned with carved dragons in various attitudes; its floor was covered with light red cloth, and three low series of steps led up to it, on the central and widest of which his subjects made the kotow. The left side of the hall was adorned with a picture representing the grounds of the palace, and the side tables contained books in yellow binding and ornaments. There was somehow an air of reverence throughout this simple but neat hall. On an audience day the Emperor here seated himself attired in a yellow robe wrought with dragons in gold thread, his head surmounted with a spherical crown of gold and precious stones with pearl drops suspended around by light gold chains. Eunuchs and ministers in court costume kneel on each side in long lines, and the guard and musicians are arranged in the outer court. The name of the person to be introduced is called out, and as he approaches the band strikes up. He draws near the "Dragon's Seat" and kneels before the central step, removes his hat, placing it on the throne floor with the peacock's feather toward the imperial donor. His Majesty moves his hand and down goes the head, striking on the step three times three. The head is then raised, but with downcast eyes the man hears the behests of his great master. When

[1] *Elgin's Letters*, p. 361.

Digitized by Google

the voice ceases, again the head makes the nine knocks, thus acknowledging the sovereign right, and the man withdraws. How different the scene now, adds Mr. Swinhoe. The hall filled with crowds of a foreign soldiery, and the throne floor covered with the Celestial Emperor's choicest curios, destined as gifts for two far more worthy monarchs. "See here," said General Montaubon, pointing to them, "I have had a few of the most brilliant things selected to be divided between the Queen of Great Britain and the Emperor of the French." [1]

On the following day—October 8th—the commanders were greatly relieved by the return of Parkes, Loch, d'Escayrac de Lauture, and five soldiers; the first two of these gentlemen had been comparatively well treated after their terrible experiences within the Hing Pu. A few days later both armies were horrified by the appearance in camp of eleven wretched men—all who had survived from the party of French and English made prisoners near Tungchau; Anderson, Bowlby, de Norman, and others had succumbed to the dreadful tortures caused by the cords which bound them. The coffined bodies were all brought to camp within a few days, hardly recognizable from the effects of lime thrown upon them. On the 16th occurred the impressive ceremony of their interment in the Russian cemetery near Peking, Lord Elgin, Sir Hope Grant, Parkes, and Loch being chief mourners, while a deputation from every regiment in the allied armies followed in the train.

Two days after this Lord Elgin ordered the destruction of the palace of Yuen-ming Yuen; a sudden though deliberate act. Feeling probably that such a decision would be closely criticised by those who were far removed in time and place from the exciting scenes around him, he took occasion to review his position in a long despatch. It was impossible in his situation to learn whether the responsibility for the capture and savage treatment of these men rested with the same Chinese officials.[2] This

[1] Swinhoe, *North China Campaign*, pp. 294 ff.—the most detailed and interesting account of this palace and its destruction. Compare M. C. Lavallée in the *Revue des Deux Mondes* for August 1, 1865. Other French writers on this war are Lieutenant de vaisseau Pallu, *Relation de l'expédition de Chine*, Paris, 1863; le Comte d'Escayrac de Lauture, *Mémoires sur la Chine*, Paris, 1864; Sinnebaldo de Mas, *La Chine et les puissances chrétiennes*, 1861.

[2] Probably not. The prisoners were in the hands of lictors whose habit it was to torture in the hope of extorting money on their own account. The

Digitized by Google

much, nevertheless, was plain—that the Chinese were fully aware of the obligations of a flag of truce, inasmuch as they had already often availed themselves of its privileges. Lord Elgin makes the Emperor personally responsible for the crimes which had been committed, but specifies Săngkolinsin as the real culprit. He then says:

I had reason to believe that it was an act which was calculated to produce a greater effect in China and on the Emperor than persons who look on from a distance may suppose. It was the Emperor's favorite residence, and its destruction could not fail to be a blow to his pride as well as to his feelings. To this place he brought our hapless countrymen, in order that they might undergo their severest tortures within its precincts. Here have been found the horses and accoutrements of the troopers seized, the decorations torn from the breast of a gallant French officer, and other effects belonging to the prisoners. As almost all the valuables had already been taken from the palace, the army would go there, not to pillage, but to mark, by a solemn act of retribution, the horror and indignation with which we were inspired by the perpetration of a great crime. The punishment was one which would fall, not on the people, who may be comparatively innocent, but exclusively on the Emperor, whose direct personal responsibility for the crime committed is established, not only by the treatment of the prisoners at Yuen-ming Yuen, but also by the edict in which he offered a pecuniary reward for the heads of the foreigners.[1]

The work of destruction left hardly a trace of the palace of the "Round-bright Garden;" indeed, the provocation for this act was great. The despatch refers only to the palace where Hienfung spent most of his time, and it is probable that Lord Elgin intended to burn that alone. He gave no orders for the destruction of the buildings on Wan-shao shan, Yuh-tsien shan, the Imperial Park near Pih-yun sz', and other places five to ten miles distant. All of these residences or villas had been erected or enlarged by former Emperors of the present dynasty; none have since been rebuilt. It is, nevertheless, easy to gather from Colonel Wolseley's record that his lordship's satisfaction in this

candid spirit of Loch's narrative is wanting in the more colored accounts of Wolseley and Swinhoe, written in the flush of victory. The charges they make against Prince Ï of treachery toward Mr. Parkes are not borne out; the deaths of Captain Brabazon and the Abbé de Luc seem to have been by order of Pao, and not from Săngkolinsin. Compare an article in the *Revue des Deux Mondes* (15 juillet, 1865) by C. Lavallée, *L'Expédition anglo-française en Chine.*

[1] *Elgin's Letters and Journals*, p. 366.

Digitized by Google

"retribution" was not greatly impaired by its over-zealous performance on the part of the troops. In addition to the loss of the palaces, the Chinese had to pay £100,000 as indemnity to be given to the prisoners and their families, before the victors would consent to sign the convocation.

On the 13th the ultimatum had been accepted by Prince Kung, who about two hours before noon opened the An-ting or northeast gate of Peking, which commanded the whole city. Arrangements were gradually completed for the grand entry of the plenipotentiaries into Peking. The *Lí Pu*, or Board of Rites, was selected as the place for exchanging the ratifications of the treaty of Tientsin and signing the convention, while the *fu*, or palace of Prince Í, had been chosen for Lord Elgin's residence in the city. On October 24th the latter was escorted to both these places by many officers, together with a body of four hundred infantry and one hundred cavalry, while in all the streets leading to them were guards placed. The whole city was out to witness the unusual parade. The procession passed slowly through the wide avenues, the music of the band heralding its approach to the dignitaries anxiously awaiting the arrival. The utmost care had been taken that no excuse should be ever after brought forward that the Emperor had not assented to the two documents signed that day; but much besides was done to show Prince Kung and his officers that they were in the presence of their conquerors.[1]

The following day Baron Gros signed his convention and exchanged the ratifications of the French treaty under similar formalities. The principal points in the British convention of nine articles were—the payment of eight million taels; the permission given by imperial sanction for the emigration at will of Chinese subjects as contract laborers or otherwise; the cession of Kowlung to the crown as part of the colony of Hongkong.

Without delaying for additional comment, the insertion here of a portion of Lord John Russell's despatch to Lord Elgin will

[1] **The frontispiece of this volume is intended to represent this ceremony. Its interest lies chiefly in the fact that it is from the work of one of the ablest painters in the capital, and represents from a native's stand-point one of the most remarkable and important events in the history of modern China.**

Digitized by Google

not be uninteresting in connection with these treaties. His lordship's document reads like the balance-sheet of a London merchant at the termination of some successful adventure: "The convention is entirely satisfactory to Her Majesty's Government. It records the reparation made by the Emperor of China for his disregard in the previous year of his treaty engagements; it sets Her Majesty's government free from an implied engagement not to insist in all particulars on the fulfilment of those engagements; it imposes upon China a fine in the shape of an augmented rate of indemnity; it affords an additional opening for British trade; it places on a recognized footing the emigration of Chinese coolies, whose services are so important to Her Majesty's colonial possessions; it relieves Her Majesty's colony of Hongkong from a source of previous annoyance."[1]

The French convention of ten articles contained like demands and rewards, but instead of a slice of territory, the sixth provided that Roman Catholic Christians should be indemnified for "all such churches, schools, cemeteries, lands, and buildings as were owned on former occasions by persecuted Christians, and the money handed to the French representative at Peking for transmission to the Christians in the localities concerned." The fulfilment of this article required over ten years; and as the injuries had been done in some cases as far back as the reign of Louis XIII., great irritation was aroused in the minds of the natives who had for generations been quietly in possession of lands which they had purchased.[2]

---

[1] "The practical result was not very great," concludes Mr. McCarthy. "Perhaps the most important gain to Europe was the knowledge that Peking was by no means so large a city as we had all imagined it to be. . . . There is some comfort in knowing that so much blood was not spilt wholly in vain." —*A History of Our Own Times*, Chap. XLII., Vol. III.

[2] An instance is mentioned in No. IV. of the *Journal of the N. C. Br. R. A. Soc.*, 1867, pp. 21–38, where a Roman Catholic church at Hangchau, which had been confiscated by the Emperor Yungching (about 1730), was changed into a temple dedicated to *Tien Hau*, the Queen of Heaven, "to serve the double purpose of extirpating a religion of false gossip and obduracy, and of making an offering to a spirit who really has a beneficial influence over human destinies."

Digitized by Google

The great objects of the expedition were now attained, and foreign nations could congratulate themselves upon having settled their representatives in the Chinese capital on terms of equality. Two *fu*, or palaces, were immediately occupied by those from Great Britain and France. Subsequently, the ministers from other countries have grouped themselves around these, and a foreign quarter has gradually grown up in the south-eastern part of the city. The chief agents in this important opening, Lord Elgin and Baron Gros, were well fitted by their urbanity, philanthropy, and moderation for the delicate task assigned them. The terrified officials and citizens in Peking had expected the worst consequences on the capture of their city, but besides the destruction of Yuen-ming Yuen, their capital and national unity escaped uninjured.

It was probably a great aid to the policy adopted by Prince Kung and his colleagues that the Emperor and his court had fled to Jeh-ho, for their influence, as the sequel proved, would have opposed any pacification. It was still more important for all future co-operation that he never came back at all, and thus the real guidance of affairs fell into better hands.

The 24th day of October saw the ending of the seclusion of the Chinese from their fellow-men; the contest honestly enough begun in 1839 by Lin, to rescue his country from the curse of opium, was in a manner completed on that day by the admission of those regenerating influences which could alone effectually remove that evil. The intermediate twenty years had done much to prepare the Chinese for this concluding act; and the honorable manner in which they fulfilled their promises and payments will stand as a lasting monument to their national credit.

The retirement of the allies from Peking was accomplished without impediment from the Chinese army under Sängkolinsin; the money disbursed for boats, carts, supplies, fuel, etc., as the troops went down the river, compensating many natives for their losses. By the end of November all had embarked except the garrisons left at Tientsin and Taku, which latter were removed as soon as the portion of the indemnity involving their occupation was paid up. The effectual and salutary work-

Digitized by Google

ing of the treaty stipulations for the mutual welfare of all parties depended on the diplomatic and consular officers left in the capital and open ports. The British government alone was adequately supplied in this respect, and their consulates became the expositors to the local rulers of the manner in which the treaties were to be interpreted and enforced. The great mass of natives knew almost nothing of their provisions, and looked upon the struggle chiefly as one between their sovereign and the foreigners. The defeat of the latter was in remoter districts declared proven by their retirement from Peking; but along the coasts and up the Yangtsz' the actual sight of steamers and contact with foreigners who could talk with them and explain the new state of things, really did more than anything else to show them that these strangers were by no means overcome. What was thus achieved to enlighten the people near the trading marts only required time and contact to spread into distant regions of the interior. As for the citizens of Peking, they met only those foreigners who could talk with them, for that city was not open to trade; and thus one prolific source of misunderstanding was removed. The death of the Emperor Hienfung (August 17, 1861) relieved them, too, from any attempt he might have made, in his irritation on returning to the Forbidden City and seeing his ruined palaces, to vent his wrath on the few foreigners then living near him. Christian missionaries also began their work in 1861, and thus thousands, who had had only vague ideas about the "barbarians," could easily learn the truth concerning them. Most fortunately, then, circumstances were from the first favorable for forming an intelligent public opinion in the capital.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXVI.

NARRATIVE OF RECENT EVENTS IN CHINA.

TWELVE months elapsed before the political atmosphere of China was disturbed by any break or change in its condition—a period of quiet which the government sorely needed for an appreciation of its relations with the foreigners who had forced their way into the capital. His Majesty Hienfung having ascended the Dragon Throne on high, left the Empire in the hands of his only son, a child six years old; whether through incapacity or disease, the debauched sovereign had long before his death allowed his courtiers to engross the reins of government, and these now formed a coterie which at Jeh-ho was all-powerful. At his death the administration rested in the hands of a council of eight, whose nominal head was Tsai-yuen, Prince I, a member of the imperial family belonging to the same generation with the infant Emperor. The design of this cabal was to at once assume the absolute power of a regency, to retain possession of the young Emperor's person at Jeh-ho, to make way in secret with his mother and the Empress-dowager, and lastly to arrest and destroy his father's three brothers; these initiatory steps to sovereignty being accomplished, nothing would interrupt their complete mastery of the government.

But in Prince Kung,[1] the Emperor's oldest surviving brother,

[1] Kung Tsin-wang, 'Prince Respect'—called by the people Wu-ako, 'Fifth Elder Brother'—is the sixth son of Taukwang, and was born about 1831. Three older brothers died young; Hienfung, the fourth, succeeded his father, while the fifth, being adopted into a branch of the Emperor Kiaking's family, was dropped out of Taukwang's household, leaving Prince Kung in 1861 to be the first prince during the minority of Tungchí. His personal name, Yih-hū, is never employed by those outside his immediate family. He has a commendable record for an Asiatic statesman trained in habits of autocratic command. The background in the portrait on the opposite page is a bit of rockwork in the Foreign Office at Peking.

Digitized by Google

PRINCE KUNG

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the conspirators found an opponent of no ordinary ability, to whose astuteness in outwitting their machinations (as may be safely affirmed in view of events which followed) is doubtless owing the continuance of the present reigning family. The prince was in concealment during the autumn of 1860, when his brother fled to Jeh-ho, but appearing when the capital was surrendered to the allies, he bore the brunt of that unpleasant task, signing the treaties, and undertook almost alone the management of affairs with foreigners while the government was recovering from its paralysis of defeat. It was a happy augury for the continuance of peace and friendly intercourse that to a man so well fitted by temperament for his difficult position should be joined the able and experienced statesman Kweiliang; though too old to take an active part in the settlement of the succession, this skilful diplomatist lent the greatest aid to his son-in-law by giving advice and a much needed support to the Empresses-dowager at this critical period.

Hastily quitting Jeh-ho with the boy—who had been proclaimed Emperor under the reign-name of Ki-tsiang, 'Lucky Omen'—the two Empresses availed themselves of their right to join the first prince, and repaired to Peking. Once settled in the Forbidden City they were able to impart to Prince Kung the magnitude of the plot against them, and concert measures with leading members of the imperial clan for the general safety. The arrest and trial of the traitors was promptly carried out; by a decree of December 2, 1861, Prince Î and his principal coadjutor, Prince Chin, were allowed to commit suicide, while their powerful and clever colleague, Suhshun, was executed in the market-place, to the unfeigned delight of the populace. This conspirator in his machinations and gross assumptions had acted like a veritable Tigellinus, and earned for himself a hatred and contempt which even members of the war party could not conceal. Others of this unsuccessful clique were disgraced or banished, but the punishments were not numerous or barbarous. The reign-name was now changed from Ki-tsiang to *Tung-chi*, or 'Union Rule,' to mark the successful demolition of this conspiracy, while Prince Kung (now but thirty years old), the shrewd perpetrator of the *coup d'état*,

Digitized by Google

was proclaimed *I-ching-wang*, or 'Regent Prince,' and with the Empresses constituted the regency during the minority.[1]

Considering all the circumstances of this palace intrigue, the rank of its leading members, and its successful suppression by the operation of legal methods alone, it may well deserve the attention of those interested in the political and historical development of China as an admirable instance of both the strength and weakness of her paternal government. To the ordinary outlays of the Empire were superadded the immense burdens of a foreign invasion just concluded and a terrible struggle with domestic enemies; yet neither the Regent nor his colleagues appear during this period of stress to have lost a particle of their confidence in the loyalty of the people; through loss and gain, failure of material or resource, treachery in palace or camp, abuse or assistance from foreigners, this faith in one another failed not. The face of China in 1865 was perhaps as wretched as that of Central Europe after the peace of Westphalia; indeed a more general desolation could hardly be imagined. Nevertheless the rapidity with which its inhabitants not only resumed their occupations as best they could but rebuilt dwellings and reorganized trade, startled even their habitual disparagers into praise and testified to the marvellous recuperative powers of this much-despised civilization.

Pleased with the excellent results of the introduction of western drill and arms into their military service, as against the Tai-pings, certain of the mandarins at the south proposed utilizing foreign war-vessels to the same end. To this scheme as at first suggested there was not, perhaps, much to say either in its behalf or otherwise. Their purpose was to purchase three or four gun and despatch boats, man them with as many scores of native seamen, and impart to these the necessary instruction by placing them under foreign officers. Mr. Horatio N. Lay had in 1856 proposed the use of armed revenue vessels in the customs service, a very similar suggestion. But innocent as were these conceptions, they assumed the gravest proportions

[1] *Journal N. C. Br. R. A. S.*, December, 1864, pp. 110–114. Dr. Rennie, *Peking and the Pekingese*, Vol. II., passim—an interesting contemporary record of this event.

Digitized by Google

when in 1861 Mr. Lay was allowed to visit England and there contract for the construction of a steam fleet and secure a number of British naval officers for three years' service.[1] The Peking authorities were still laboring under the disadvantages of their ignorance, and nothing can illustrate better than this remarkable enterprise the good influence which Sir Frederick Bruce had acquired in their counsels, and their willingness to follow his suggestions. Their secluded life in Peking had prevented them from learning many things in respect to the conduct of affairs in their new relations, but they could hardly have had a better counsellor than he. The instructions from Prince Kung sent to Mr. Lay in England described the kind of officers and hands which the vessels were to carry; they were to be men able and willing to teach ignorant sailors the practice of navigation, the management of machinery, and the use of guns of every kind. Instead of these he contracted for eight gunboats of different sizes, one or two of them powerful vessels, able to carry two hundred and more men; they arrived in China early in 1863 under the command of Capt. Sherard Osborne, R. N. Mr. Lay's disappointment was great and undisguised when, on reaching Peking in June, he found that Prince Kung and his advisers were totally unprepared for such a fleet, and unwilling to endorse the engagements he had entered into with the Queen's officers; nor were the funds for their current expenses provided. His ideas of his own position were soon modified, for he found that the vessels must necessarily be placed under the direction of the provincial authorities in operations against the rebels. One of the articles in the agreement with Captain Osborne stipulated that he should receive all his orders on those matters from the Foreign Office through Mr. Lay, and would follow his own choice in obeying others. Mr. Lay says himself that he was "ambitious of obtaining the position of middle-man between China and the foreign powers, because I thought I saw a way of solving the problem of placing pacific relations with China upon a sure footing. . . . My position was that of a foreigner engaged by the Chinese government to perform certain work *for*

[1] *Blue Book*, China, No. 2 (1864), p. 7.

Digitized by Google

them, not *under* them. I need scarcely observe, in passing, that the notion of a gentleman acting *under* an Asiatic barbarian is preposterous."[1] Ideas like these quite unfitted him for working with the Chinese, either *under* or *for* them. He could not understand that the former days of coercion and bullying had passed away, and that time must be allowed for them to gradually learn in their own way how to rise in the scale of nations, and adopt such improvements as they pleased.

In his perplexity and chagrin, he began to blame the British minister for lukewarmness in supporting his schemes, and to weary the members of the Tsung-lí Yamun by his demands. The controversy continued to grow warmer after Captain Osborne's arrival at Peking in September, where he first learned its real nature. Finally, in October, Prince Kung refused to ratify Mr. Lay's agreement made in England, very properly remarking upon the obnoxious article which required the commander of the flotilla to act only under orders from Peking. Happily for China, the dissolution of the force was decided on. The ships were to be sent back, for it was impossible to prevent the native officials from selling them after they had full control, and persons were already looking at them for their own lawless designs. At this juncture Sir F. Bruce came to the relief of the Chinese, and took the ships off their hands on account of the British government, paying back from the indemnity fund due to England all claims for wages, salary, and other expenses to officers and men till their arrival in London. This settlement involved an outlay of about $525,000, but the total cost of the vessels, crews, and outfit from first to last was not much less than a million sterling. The Peking government had, therefore, by this arrangement escaped a serious imbroglio with the provincial governors and generals—one which would have soon neutralized all responsibility, and perchance, even at that late date, entailed the success of the Tai-pings.

Mr. Lay, blinded by his own egotism and ambition, ascribes his failure to the negligence, treachery, ignorance, and ill-will

[1] *Our Interests in China: A Letter to Earl Russell*, p. 19.

Digitized by Google

of Sir F. Bruce, whose performances in these lines are fully detailed in his *Letter to Earl Russell*[1] of November 26, 1864. This statement of what occurred in relation to the Lay-Osborne flotilla exhibits the difficulties in the progress of Asiatic nations in the path of what we call *civilization*, and the ideas which such men have as to the way in which they are to be forced into this desirable condition. This extraordinary paper is an instructive exhibition of British interference in the administration of Asiatic countries, and how totally alien "the spirit of trade and progress" is to the independence and elevation of a pagan people when it alone is the chief agency depended on. In no case, nor under the best control, could Mr. Lay's plan have worked real benefit to China; but carried out under the domineering leadership of such a man, the scheme would have not only been humiliating in the last degree to those whom it was designed to assist, but would have inevitably resulted in the restoration of the conservative party to power and another profitless struggle with the foreigners.

Upon the dismissal of Mr. Lay the management of the Imperial Maritime Customs was placed in the hands of Robert Hart, Esq., who for a period of two years had given proof of his discretion in this position, and (in the words of Mr. Burlingame) had "by his tact and ability won the regard of every one." Already the imperial officers began to appreciate the immense material advantages of a regular income from the open ports, especially in the practical help it furnished toward the expenses of the dying rebellion. The contact of native and foreign rule in the same territory necessarily involved much assumption of power and friction of authority growing out of the undefined limits of the laws of ex-territoriality; but the legitimate working of treaty provisions—the prompt reference of grievances from complainant to consul, from the consul to his minister at Peking—served to enlighten court and country as to the gen-

[1] *Our Interests in China*, by H. N. Lay, C.B., London, 1864, pp. 66. See also correspondence in *Blue Book*, and letter of Sir F. Bruce, of November 19, 1863. *U. S. Diplomatic Correspondence* for 1864, Part III., pp. 348–378; and for 1865, Part I., p. 670. A. Wilson, *The "Ever-Victorious Army,"* pp. 260–266. *Fraser's Magazine*, February, 1865, p. 147.

Digitized by Google

eral honesty of their quondam enemies, in a fashion which neither preaching nor fighting could ever have accomplished.[1] In the year 1866 the arsenals at Fuhchau, Nanking, and Shanghai were reorganized and made to include schools for naval and military instruction as well as engine and gun works; the value of such works was promptly understood by the Chinese, and has been already the source of a creditable navy.[2]

The retirement of the Hon. Anson Burlingame from the position of United States minister in November, 1867, furnished to the Chinese government both an admirable agent and opportunity for an initial step in establishing diplomatic intercourse with the treaty powers. Into the hands of this gentleman was placed the charge of a general mission to those governments, there being added two co-ordinate Chinese ministers, an English and French secretary, and six students from the Tung-wăn Kwan at Peking. The three ministers were appointed Imperial Envoys and furnished with a letter of credence to eleven governments. The party left Shanghai February 25, 1868, for San Francisco, which port they reached about a month later. Few persons can now appreciate the excitement and discussion in China and elsewhere caused by this first diplomatic effort of the imperial government to take its place among the family of nations. Mr. Burlingame, naturally hopeful and enthusiastic, described his mission as an earnest of future peaceful relations with the Middle Kingdom. Wherever he went he elevated the estimate held of that ancient land by his hearers, and urged the European courts to but wait in patience until its backward people might be prepared for the changes it wished to adopt. Those changes and improvements were only to be

[1] The trial and condemnation of an American, who was hung at Shanghai in 1864 for the murder of two Chinese, tended to repress lawlessness on the part of foreigners and assure the native rulers of their earnest co-operation in bringing the guilty to punishment. The enlightened and friendly action of Prince Kung in issuing a proclamation, at request of Mr. Burlingame, against allowing any American Confederate cruisers to enter Chinese waters, was warmly appreciated by this and the other treaty powers as an interesting testimonial of the genuine friendship which was already disarming fear.

[2] Compare Captain Bridge, *The Warlike Power of China*, in *Fraser's Magazine*, Vol. 99, pp. 778 ff.

Digitized by Google

adopted when China had become convinced of their need and practicability; but many of Mr. Burlingame's hearers were both more eager and more ambitious than he, regarding the introduction of railroads, telegraphs, and steamers as opening an enormous field for their own immediate activity and gain. The consequent indignation among foreign merchants in China and at home upon learning the extent of his exaggeration was universal; the British merchants especially representing in strong terms the evil consequences of such "baseless expectations." The different points of view of the two parties will account for their opposite opinions. On the one side, the merchants were vexed that their hopes of a general trade arising all over China, as a result of the treaties of Tientsin, were likely to be disappointed, owing to the increasing attention of native traders in their own internal and external commerce to the exclusion of foreigners; while on the other, Mr. Burlingame laid great stress on those things which the Chinese government desired and intended to do as they became more and more qualified to act for themselves, through the agencies and institutions which they were inaugurating. The merchants seemed to think that nothing had as yet been accomplished in the direction of "progress," inasmuch as their personal expectations of an instant and lucrative trade were not realized; in reply to Mr. Burlingame's "enthusiastic fictions," they called for "tangible evidence of the existence of this spirit which he celebrates so loudly—some tittle of proof to support his sweeping theory."[1]

Without dwelling further upon these discussions, it pertains to the present narrative to briefly point out the two salient features of China's initial attempt to knock at the doors of

[1] See the letters to the *Daily News* of J. Barr Robertson, of Shanghai, which have been taken as a fairly characteristic specimen of the mercantile and political view. An article by the same gentleman in the *Westminster Review* for January, 1870, is rather calmer in language. Other data and opinions may be gathered from a work filling 890 pages, by the late J. von Gumpach, entitled *The Burlingame Mission: A Political Disclosure*, etc., 1872. Compare also the English newspapers issued in Shanghai and Hongkong in 1867–70; *British Parliamentary Papers; U. S. Ex. Doc., Foreign Relations*, 1868–71; *Harper's Monthly Magazine*, Vol. XXXVII., p. 592; *The Galaxy*, Vol. VI., p. 613.

Digitized by Google

other nations. Of these the first may be described as wholly sentimental; but it was the healthy sentiment of justice and good feeling toward a distant and unknown community, which Mr. Burlingame's tact and ability called forth in behalf of his clients' cause from their recent conquerors. During the years 1868 and 1869 he spoke for the right and privilege of the Chinese to manage their own affairs, and in America, England, France, Prussia, and other countries had already created a more healthy feeling of forbearance toward them, when his sudden death at St. Petersburg (February, 1870) cut short the complete achievement of his mission.[1]

In the United States the passage of this embassy might have made but a transient impression had it not negotiated a treaty of eight articles (July 28, 1868), regarded as an integral part of the Reed treaty of ten years previous. This, the second feature of the mission, has been attended with consequences whose influence does not yet appear to have ceased. Owing to the surprise of the Chinese government, which had given no express instructions as to treaty-making, the Foreign Office was somewhat tardy in ratifying this compact. This was, however, done in the following year. Its fifth article provides that the contracting powers "cordially recognize the inherent and inalienable right of man to change his home and allegiance, and also the mutual advantage of the free migration and emigration of their citizens and subjects respectively from the one country to the other for the purposes of curiosity, or trade, or as permanent residents. The high contracting parties therefore join in reprobating any other than an entirely voluntary emigration for these purposes." At this time the British and French ministers had recently agreed to a convention with Prince Kung respecting the conduct of the coolie trade in accordance with the stipulations made at Peking in October, 1860. The draft of those regulations had been submitted to the American as well as all other foreign legations, but only the Spanish treaty contained

[1] His colleagues, Chí-kang and Sun Kia-kū, afterward visited Italy, Spain, and other countries, returning to China within the same year. Neither of them was, however, brought forward at the capital as an adviser in relation to foreign affairs.

Digitized by Google

an article allowing the engagement of Chinese laborers in their own country for service abroad. This traffic had become so infamous from the cruelties and wrongs perpetrated on the coolies, both in China before they embarked and in Cuba and Peru after they had landed, that the American Congress had already passed laws against it; and this article was drawn up almost wholly with reference to that trade, and to show the abhorrence with which it was regarded. Chinese immigrants had come to San Francisco to the number of fifty-three thousand since 1855, and had been harshly treated by the miners and others in their common struggle for gold; the Burlingame treaty simply acknowledged their right to immigrate like other foreigners.[1]

Meantime at Peking the foreign ambassadors were in the way of learning that in their relations with the government to which they were accredited they had to deal with men of acute minds, whose prejudices and conservatism only needed enlightening to bring them quite upon a level with any other body of intelligent diplomatists. It was indeed a crucial period with Prince Kung and his coadjutors of the Tsung-lí Yamun—Wănsiang, Tung Siun, Tan Ting-siang, Hăng-kí—who were placed between the two great pressures of a warped and bigoted multitude of literati wedded to the old régime and the ministers of the outside powers, themselves dwelling complacently in the imperial city and representing armies and navies which had been found invincible. The pride of the "Celestial" was necessarily brought low, but the situation was accepted, on the whole, both wisely and cautiously; the good fortune of having men of the kindness and honor of Bruce, Vlangali, Berthémy, and Burlingame as heads of the four chief legations, can hardly be exaggerated in its encouraging and healthful effects upon the impression taking root in the minds of Chinese officers.

At this juncture occurred the massacre at Tientsin of twenty

[1] But notwithstanding its acceptance of their "inalienable right" to freely change their residence, the clamor against this admission was afterward so great among the people on the Pacific coast that a special embassy of three commissioners was sent to Peking in 1880, which relegated the right of admitting Chinese as immigrants into American territory entirely to Congress.

Digitized by Google

French and Russians and destruction of the French consulate, cathedral, and orphanage, by a mob on June 21, 1870, attended by circumstances of great atrocity. The event was a severe blow as well to the anxious mandarins at the capital as to every honest friend of the new order of things throughout the Empire. The Peking authorities were slow at first in opening an investigation, but testified to their earnestness and righteous indignation at the enormity in disposing troops about the capital and summarily examining the criminals, so that by the end of a month every fear of a general *émeute* had vanished.

The causes which led to this outbreak appear to have been almost wholly local, taking their rise in the year 1861, when the French occupied as their consulate a temple in Tientsin, where in former times the citizens used to promenade; this and other unpopular acts kept the natives at enmity with them. A more especial account of the most important of these is contained in Mr. Low's despatch of June 27th: "At many of the principal places in China open to foreign residence, the Sisters of Charity have established institutions, each of which appears to combine in itself a foundling hospital and orphan asylum. Finding that the Chinese were averse to placing children in their charge, the managers of these institutions offered a certain sum per head for all the children placed under their control given to them, it being understood that a child once in their asylum no parent, relative, or guardian could claim or exercise any control over it. It has been for some time asserted by the Chinese, and believed by most of the non-Catholic foreigners residing here, that the system of paying bounties induced the kidnapping of children for these institutions for the sake of the reward. It is also asserted that the priests or Sisters, or both, have been in the habit of holding out inducements to have children brought to them in the last stages of illness, for the purpose of being baptized *in articulo mortis*. In this way many children have been taken to these establishments in the last stages of disease, baptized there, and soon after taken away dead. All these acts, together with the secrecy and seclusion which appear to be a part and parcel of the regulations which govern institutions of this character

Digitized by Google

everywhere, have created suspicions in the minds of the Chinese, and these suspicions have engendered an intense hatred against the Sisters on the part of all the common people who live anywhere near a mission; and any rumor concerning the Sisters or their acts, however improbable or absurd, found thousands of willing and honest believers among the ignorant and superstitious people. Some time about the end of May or beginning of June an epidemic prevailed at the Sisters' institution at Tientsin, and a considerable number of the children died. In some way the report got abroad that the Sisters were killing the children to get their eyes and hearts for the purpose of manufacturing some sort of a medical specific much sought after in Europe and commanding a fabulous price. This report spread from one to another, and soon the belief became general. Crowds of people assembled from time to time near the mission buildings, demanding the liberation of the children, and on one occasion they became so noisy that the Sisters, fearing violence from the mob, consented that an examination should be made by a committee of five. The consul, hearing of the disturbance, made his appearance about this time, and although the committee had been selected and were then in the building, he stopped the whole proceeding and drove away the committee with angry words. Subsequently the district magistrate took a man who had been industriously spreading the reports, who said he could point out the persons who were guilty of acts of sorcery and other crimes, to question him in the presence of the Sisters, and when confronted by them admitted that all his stories were without foundation and false. The day prior to the outbreak the district magistrate (*chihien*) called upon the French consul, and stated that unless permission be given for a thorough examination of the Sisters' establishment, it was difficult to foretell the result. The consul, construing the language into a threat, replied that the magistrate being inferior in rank to the consul, no negotiation could take place between them for the purpose indicated or any other."[1]

[1] *Foreign Relations of the United States*, 1870, p. 355. A private letter quoted in the *Westminster Review* for April, 1871, says: "Even then (on the 19th) I think the riot could have been prevented if the consul had earnestly joined

Digitized by Google

This very unwise answer turned the popular rage against the French consulate as well as the cathedral and orphanage, and the 21st saw a surging multitude assembled in their vicinity ready for any violence. M. Fontanier, the French consul, now thoroughly alarmed, hurried off to the yamun of Chunghow (the superintendent of customs), while stones flew about the building he was quitting. For the rest, this poor man's fate is involved in uncertainty. Reaching Chunghow's office in a "state of excitement bordering upon insanity," he failed, either by persuasion or menace, in getting that dignitary to promise the impossible—to quell at once the angry mob. The officials, indeed, by this time were as helpless as he, and could only urge his remaining in the compound until the streets were clear. But the Frenchman and his clerk heeded nothing; how they were cut down in the way, after firing into the angry mob, how the rampant populace now attacked and pillaged the three or four French buildings, how the defenceless Sisters were butchered in their orphanage after suffering nameless barbarities, and how the frenzied host left the burning ruins to glut their passions upon the neighboring houses, has come to the world solely on Chinese authority, and must remain always in the obscurity resulting from greatly conflicting testimony. The children of the orphanage, however, were taken off, and though attempts upon some of the Protestant buildings were made, nothing serious resulted. Among the saddest casualties of this bloody day was the death of a Russian, his young bride, and a friend, who in escaping toward the foreign settlement of Tsz'-chuh-lin, two miles away, were mistaken for Frenchmen and promptly hacked to pieces on the road. The total number of victims in the massacre amounted to twenty foreigners and as many more Chinese servants, acolytes, and others.

To the joint note of the seven foreign ministers in Peking, calling for immediate and vigorous measures in the face of this terrible news, Prince Kung replied (on the 25th) that in vindication of the honor and justice of the imperial government toward

with the local authorities in making a full inquiry, with a number of the gentry, inside of the infirmary and church, to show them again that the rumors of foul deeds therein were groundless."

Digitized by Google

foreigners, Tsăng Kwoh-fan (governor-general of the province) and Chunghow had already been directed to do everything in their power to suppress the spirit of riot and arrest lawless men. An imperial edict was issued for the apprehension of Chau, Chang, and Lin, the intendant, prefect, and magistrate of Tientsin, for their remissness and complicity in the riot. The fact that no foreign armed vessel was there on the 21st doubtless had its weight with these officials in carrying out their plans at the moment. They now saw that they had pursued their ill-will too far, and that retribution was sure to follow for their atrocities. Exaggerated reports of their doings had rapidly gone over the world, and as the extent and strength of the disaffection in other provinces could not be ascertained, the inference was made that all foreigners in China were in imminent jeopardy, and that the people had at last risen in their strength to aid their sovereign to drive them out of the land. When the storm had passed over, and those in authority had examined the criminals and given such justice as they could, the opinions of the best informed observers as to the immediate causes were found to be sustained.

In a few weeks the naval forces of the leading powers had assembled at Tientsin. The French chargé d'affairs, Count Rochechouart, took the lead and demanded the execution of the prefect and magistrate for having instigated the riot. The Chinese refused to do this until a trial had proved their guilt—having, perhaps, in some measure recovered their composure upon learning of the commencement of hostilities between France and Germany. The imperial government was unable itself to coerce the turbulent populace of Tientsin, for it had no troops who could be depended on to punish the rioters, with whom the soldiers sympathized. The extravagant statements and demands continually put forth in the Shanghai and Hongkong newspapers tended to irritate and disconcert those high officials, who were already at their wits' end and were anxious to prevent a worse disaster. The foreigners seemed to think that they could utter hard charges indiscriminately against the Chinese rulers and people, who on their part were not to say a word. Minister Low, in his despatch of August 24th, when

Digitized by Google

speaking of the thousands of fans sold at Tientsin containing pictures of the riot and murdering of foreigners, says: "These fans are made to suit the taste of the people, and the fact that such engravings will cause a better sale for the fans is a conclusive argument that there is no sentiment of regret or sorrow among the people over the result of the riot. There is, undoubtedly, greater unanimity of opinion in Tientsin in favor of the rioters than in Ireland among the peasantry in favor of one of their number who shoots his landlord. If this feeling in Ireland is strong enough to baffle all attempts of the English government to bring to justice by the ordinary forms of law a peasant accused of injuring the person or property of his landlord, is it surprising that this feeble central government should find it difficult to ascertain and punish the rioters in a city of four hundred thousand inhabitants, all of whom either aided in the massacre or sympathized with the rioters?"[1]

The judicial investigations in Tientsin were conducted in a dilatory manner, but the above indicates some of the difficulties in the way of the presiding judges. However, on October 5th and 10th H. I. Majesty's decrees were made known to the foreign ministers, stating that the prefect and magistrate had been banished to Manchuria, twenty criminals who had killed the foreigners sentenced to death, and twenty-one others actively aiding in the riot banished. On the morning of October 18th sixteen were decapitated in the presence of the foreign consuls and others assembled as witnesses. This closing act of the tragedy, as a condign punishment of guilt, was, however, unfortunate; it was made rather an occasion of showing to the people that the sufferers had the sympathy of their rulers, while many foreigners looked upon the execution as a ghastly farce—"a cold-blooded murder." Many believed that the sixteen men were purchased victims; the proofs were ample, however, of the complicity of all; indeed, some of them gloried in what they had done, and were escorted by admiring friends to the block.[2]

[1] *Foreign Relations of the United States—China*, 1871, p. 380.

[2] As an instance of some of the bitter sentiment rampant upon this occasion, may be quoted the open proposition of a British missionary, who insisted that one-half of the city of Tientsin be razed by a detachment of foreign troops of

Digitized by Google

It is a palpable exaggeration of the power or desires of a Chinese official to affirm that he is capable of buying up candidates for immediate execution.

As to the remaining four condemned culprits, M. Vlangali, the Russian minister, judiciously refused to accept their deaths as a proper satisfaction for the murder of the three Russians until satisfied personally of their direct complicity in the deed. A careful examination of their case having been made before the consul-general of the Czar at Tientsin, revealed the fact that only two were guilty of the actual crime; the minister consented then that the punishment of the other two should be commuted to banishment. The sum of Tls. 400,000 was paid to the French for loss of life and property; in addition to this the loss done to Protestant mission premises was also made good. Chung-how was appointed imperial commissioner to proceed to France and present to that government a formal apology for the affair. This mission left Peking early in 1871 and returned the following year. The American missionaries who had in August been frightened away from their post in Tăngchau[1] by the warnings and threats of certain evil disposed persons, were taken back from their asylum in Chifu two months later in the U. S. S. Benicia, and publicly received by the prefect. This was the only instance throughout the Empire, connected with the riot of June, in which foreigners were interfered with, and here grave doubts exist as to the reality of danger and need of flight from Tăngchau.

In estimating the conduct of the Chinese in dealing with this eruption, the foreign press habitually spoke of them as if they were unwilling to grant any redress or take any measures for the future safety of those living among their subjects. Little consideration was made for the enormous difficulties of their position. They had been reared in ignorance of the multiplied questions and responsibilities involved in the recent treaties with other nations; and though the foreign ministers were

various nationalities, and that a pillar be erected upon the open space thus made, with a suitable inscription as to the occasion and authors of the monument.

[1] On the promontory of Shantung.

Digitized by Google

really acting most kindly toward them in forcing them to carry out every plain treaty obligation, the fair-minded observer can find small excuse for the harsh criticism, not to add abuse, which was hurled at everything said or done by Prince Kung and his colleagues in their peril and perplexity. The writers in newspapers seemed to look upon China as an appanage of Europe—one Englishman even going so far as to urge the most reckless employment of force to compel her rulers to give up the three odious officials to be dealt with and publicly executed. Another says that the execution of the sixteen criminals could "hardly be viewed as other than cold-blooded murder while those men are shielded from the demands of justice." Yet these writers forgot that all the treaties required that "Chinese subjects guilty of criminal acts toward foreigners shall be arrested and punished by the Chinese authorities according to the laws of China;" and each nation obliged itself to try and punish its own criminals. Chunghow was the object of much abuse because he had not prevented or put down the mob, though he was merely a revenue officer and had neither territorial nor military jurisdiction at Tientsin. Even the members of the Tsung-lí Yamun were freely charged with complicity in the tragedy, if not knowledge or approval. In short, the whole history of the riot—its causes, growth, culmination, results, and repression—combine as many of the serious obstacles in the way of harmonizing Chinese and European civilizations as anything which ever occurred.[1]

As a natural sequence to the judicial proceedings which ter-

[1] The records of this event are widely scattered in the local papers published in China and in diplomatic correspondence. See the *Missionary Recorder*, November, 1870, and January, 1871; *Journal of N. C. Branch of R. A. Soc.*, No. VI., pp. 186–196; *Edinburgh Review*, January, 1871; *Westminster Review*, April, 1871, Art. VI.; *The Tientsin Massacre*, &c., by Geo. Thin, M.D., Edinburgh, 1870; *Foreign Relations of the United States* for 1870 and 1871; *Legation to China; Parliamentary Blue Book*, 1871; H. Blerzy, *Les affaires de Chine en* 1871, *Revue des Deux Mondes*, 1 juillet, 1871; *North China Daily News* and *North China Herald* for 1870. One of the most carefully prepared and interesting accounts of the massacre is contained in Baron Hübner's *Ramble Round the World*, translated by Lady Herbert, New York, 1875, pp. 526–573.

Digitized by Google

minated the Tientsin tragedy, came the inquiry of the imperial counsel into what was briefly summed up as the "missionary question." More than ten years had now elapsed since the general repeal of all pre-existing edicts against Christianity in the Empire, and the officials were already concerned as to the movements and rumors respecting the new sect which had come to their ears since that time. Accordingly in February, 1871, after an earnest study of the matter from their stand-point, the Foreign Office sent to the various legations the following note and memorandum:

TUNGCHI, 9th year, 12th moon, 24th day.

SIR: In relation to the missionary question, the members of the Foreign Office are apprehensive lest in their efforts to manage the various points connected with it they shall interrupt the good relations existing between this and other governments, and have therefore drawn up several rules upon the subject. These are now enclosed, with an explanatory minute, for your examination, and we hope that you will take them into careful consideration.

With compliments, cards of WÄNSIANG.
SHÄN KWEI-FÄN.

The rules proposed (1) that only the children of native Christians be received into Romish asylums; (2) that "in order to exhibit the reserve and strict propriety of Christianity," no Chinese females should enter the chapels nor foreign women propagate the doctrines; (3) that missionaries should confine themselves to their proper calling, and that they "ought not to be permitted to set up an independent style and authority;" (4) that they should not interfere in trials of their native converts when brought into criminal courts; (5) that passports given to missionaries should not be transferred, but returned to the Chinese authorities when no longer required, "nor should they avail themselves of the passport to secretly go elsewhere," as the French ofttimes did; (6) that the missionaries should never receive men of bad character into the church, nor retain those of notoriously evil characters; moreover that quarterly reports of the converts be handed in to the provincial officers, as did the Buddhist and Taoist houses; (7) that missionaries should not use official seals, nor write official despatches to the local authorities, nor otherwise act as if they were officials instead of commoners. The last rule complained of the un-

Digitized by Google

reasonable demands of the Romish missionaries for lands and houses to be restored to them in accordance with the Peking convention; it proposed that no more be restored, and that lands bought for erecting churches be held in the name of the native church members.

This state paper was remarkable as being the first in which the Chinese government had expressed its desire for a satisfactory discussion and decision of the difficult questions involved in Christian missions, and the quasi independence allowed their foreign agents by the treaties. The public sentiment among foreigners in China was that these good people had a right to do everything not expressly prohibited by treaty until their own consular officers notified them to the contrary. The unauthorized conduct of Romish missionaries in two western provinces had already given rise to riots, in which Frenchmen had been killed. In such judicial proceedings as that described by Abbé Huc in his interesting travels are seen the high-handed perversion of justice denounced in the seventh section of this paper.[1] The writers of these rules were hardly aware of the serious import of the questions they had grappled, still less of the ignorance they exhibited in their handling of them. All the strictures referred exclusively to the Roman Catholics, for Protestant missionaries were hardly known to the Chinese magistrates, no complaints having been entered against them.

Most of the foreign ministers long delayed their answers to this minute, so that no personal discussion ever took place between the parties most interested. The straightforward and earnest reply of Mr. Low, the United States envoy (dated March 20th), carefully went over all the main points, and gave Wǎnsiang and Shǎn Kwei-fǎn a clear idea of what they might expect from other ministers, together with many good suggestions as to their own duties. Nothing practical ever came of the paper, but the discussions it caused throughout the country showed the interest felt in the whole matter.[2] A few Protestant missionaries themselves indulged in harsh strictures on the native officials.

[1] *Travels in the Chinese Empire*, Vol. I., Chap. VI.

[2] *Foreign Relations of the United States*, 1871, pp. 99–111; also for 1872, pp. 118–130 and 137–138. *Missionary Recorder*, Vols. III. and IV. passim.

Digitized by Google

one going the length of saying that he "looked upon the document rather as an excuse offered beforehand for premeditated outrages than as an indication of measures being taken to prevent them." However, no evil results ever came to the converts or their teachers from the discussion of the minute, and its diffusion gave many readers their first information on the whole subject. Differences of opinion led to a comparison of facts, and the small number of grievances reported upheld the conclusion that the Chinese officials and literati had been, on the whole, extremely moderate, considering their limited opportunities to examine the question and the irritation aroused by the demands and hauteur of the Romish missionaries. The unjust manner in which they possessed themselves of the ground within the city of Canton on which the governor-general's yamun once stood had made a deep impression on the citizens; and when their cathedral, towering above all the temples and offices of the metropolis, was located upon this site, their indignation knew no bounds.

The year 1873 saw the conclusion of the Mohammedan insurrection in the north-western provinces, the exact extent of which has never been perfectly made known. The capture of Suhchau (near the Kiayū Pass in Kansuh) by the imperial troops under General Tso Tsung-tang brought to an end all organized rebellion in China Proper.[1] As is customary, the central government threw the responsibility of promoting the peace of the provinces upon their governors, and the well-disposed among the people were usually sure of protection. The foreign administration of the import customs turned a large and certain revenue into the hands of the Peking officials, and their development of the defences of the coast in building forts, launching war steamers, and making war material at the new arsenals, indicated their fears of foreign reprisals and their unwisdom in deeming such outlays effectual. The same money spent in making good wagon roads, working iron, coal, and other mines, deepening navigable watercourses, and intro-

[1] *Foreign Relations of the United States*, 1874, p. 250. *Peking Gazette*, December 28, 1873.

Digitized by Google

ducing small steamers on them, would have brought more substantial returns. But these were achievements which the future alone could accomplish, and the people must be somewhat taught and prepared for them before any permanent advances would ensue.[1]

On October 16, 1872, occurred the marriage of the Emperor Tungchí to Aluteh, a Manchu lady. The ceremonies attending her selection, betrothal, and espousal were elaborate and complete in every particular. Such an event had only once before taken place during the Manchu dynasty—when Kanghí was a minor, in 1674—all the other emperors having been married during their fathers' reigns. The occasion, therefore, excited great attention, while the attendant expenses were enormous; but all passed off without the least disturbance and apparently to general satisfaction. The two Empresses-dowager controlled the details, the most important of which were announced to the Empire in a series of edicts prepared by members of the *Lí Pu*, or Board of Rites, containing directions for every motion of the two principal actors, as well as for those who joined the ceremonies during the occasion till the 21st of the month.[2]

The young Emperor entered into the spirit of the preparations with great interest, and on the day before sending the bride her phœnix robes and diadem he ordered three princes to offer sacrifice and burn incense on the altar to heaven, "these informing heaven that he was about to marry Aluteh, the wise, virtuous, and accomplished daughter of Chung, duke and member of the Hanlin." Another prince informed mother earth, and a third announced it to the imperial ancestors, in their special temple. During the weeks preceding and following the happy day, all courts throughout the land were closed and a general jail delivery promulgated.

Many of the ceremonies and processions in Peking were not

[1] Compare a rather enthusiastic article by Captain A. G. Bridge, *The Revival of the Warlike Power of China*, *Fraser's Magazine* for June, 1879, p. 778.

[2] A translation of these papers was made at Shanghai, not long after, by Miss L. M. Fay, an American lady, and furnishes an interesting and authentic account of the whole wedding.

Digitized by Google

public, for considerations of state and security demanded great care.[1] On the 19th the wedding was thus announced to the foreign ministers by H. I. Majesty, through Prince Kung: "We having with pious veneration succeeded to the vast dominion founded by Our ancestors, and enjoying in its fulness the glorious lot to which We have been destined, have chosen one virtuous and modest to be the mistress of Our imperial home. Upon October 15th, We, by patent, installed Aluteh, daughter of Chung Chí, a *shí-tsiang* in the Hanlin College, as Empress. This from the Emperor." The court had not as yet outgrown its exclusiveness further than this step of announcing the marriage and its completion; and to those best acquainted with the etiquette observed for centuries, even this seemed to be a good deal in advance of former times. The great counsellors of state soon arranged for closing the regency which had existed since 1861. The Emperor Tungchí, though born on April 27, 1856, was called seventeen at his marriage. The Empresses-dowager accordingly announced on October 22d that he would attain his majority at the next Chinese new year, and be inaugurated with all the usual ceremonies. One of his special imperial functions, that of offering sacrifices to heaven at the winter solstice, would be performed by him in person—a ceremony which had been intermitted since December, 1859. Accordingly, on February 23, 1873, he issued a decree through the Board of Rites, as follows: "We are the humble recipient of a decree from their Majesties the two Empresses, declaring it to be their pleasure that We, being now of full age, should in person assume the superintendence of business, and in concert with Our officers in the capital and in the provinces, attend to the work of good government. In respectful obedience to the commands of their Majesties, We do in person enter upon the

[1] For a report of what could be watched of this ceremony, see William Simpson, *Meeting the Sun*, Chap. XV. The bridal procession came off during the night, when a bright moonlight enabled him to see it pass, without molestation, from the shop where he was hidden. This chiaroscuro sort of panorama rather suited the ideas of the people, and was submitted to by the Pekingese crowd without a murmur. Compare K. Bismark in the *Galaxy*, Vol. XIX., p. 182; *Cornhill Magazine*, Vol. XXVII., p. 82.

Digitized by Google

important duty assigned to Us on the 26th day of the 1st moon of the 12th year of the reign Tungchí."

This announcement was on the same day communicated to the ministers of Russia, Germany, the United States, Great Britain, and France. They returned a collective note the following morning, and asked Prince Kung to "take his Imperial Majesty's orders with reference to their reception." This intimation could not have been unexpected to him and his colleagues, but with their usual habit of putting off the inevitable, they began to make excuses. After deferring the consultation with the envoys a fortnight on the plea of Wănsiang's illness, they met at the Russian legation on March 11th. The question of the *kotow* was the crucial point, as it had been in 1859 between Kweiliang and Mr. Ward. Then the court was willing to accept a sort of curtsey instead of a prostration when the American minister approached the throne. Now the court had put the strongest argument into the hands of foreign ministers by sending the Burlingame mission to their courts, and the rights of independent nations could not be waived or implicated by the least sign of inferiority. The conference was amicable and the matter fully ventilated. The demands upon the Chinese were summarized by the ministers: That a personal audience with the Emperor was proper and needful; that it should not be unnecessarily delayed; and that they would not kneel before him, nor perform any other ceremony derogatory to their own dignity or that of their nationalities. These points were maintained as their united decision in the weary series of conferences, correspondence, and delays which ensued during the next four months in Peking. The prince and his colleagues, by their discussion of the point, had aroused the resistance of the great body of literati and conservative officials in the Empire, who had grown up in the belief that its unity and prosperity were involved in the performance of the kotow. The discussion in July, 1859, when the Emperor Hienfung could safely decline to admit Mr. Ward to an audience without it, had exhausted their arguments; but his son had come to the throne under the new influences, which were rapidly breaking down all those old ideas and safeguards. The prince had, moreover,

Digitized by Google

learned that the foreign ministers were not very strongly supported by their own governments, none of whom intended to make the audience question a *casus belli*, or even a reason for withdrawing their legations from Peking. Perhaps the Yamun thought that the departure of the Russian and German ministers would leave the other three less inclined to persist in their demand, if serious consequences were likely to result.

The American minister clearly states the pith of the matter in his despatch of March 24th in his closing words: "I attach importance to the proper settlement of the audience question at the earliest time possible. To demand it, and urge compliance with the demand, is a duty every western nation owes to its own dignity and to the welfare of its citizens and subjects residing here; it is also a kindness to this government to try through this means to improve relations, and thus prevent, or at least postpone, what are now likely at any time to occur—hostile collisions, with their dreadful consequences."[1] This alternative was not a fanciful one, and this cause of chronic dispute and irritation between China and other nations during many centuries was removed chiefly through the patient persistance of Mr. Low in this discussion. His despatches contain every fact and argument of importance in perhaps the most serious controversy ever brought before China. One cannot but sympathize with Prince Kung and his colleagues in their dilemma, and to this embarrassment Mr. Low gives due weight.

The Chinese officials took a month to discuss the points among themselves, and signs of yielding were apparent both in the note of Prince Kung of April 16th and the memorandum of the 29th brought forward at an interview with the legations. Much of the same ground was gone over again; a vacation ensued, then another protocol on May 15th appeared, followed by notes on the 20th and 29th from both sides, all tending to the desired conclusion. At last the audience question was settled on June 29th by the Emperor first

[1] *Foreign Relations of the United States*, 1873, p. 169. See also the despatches of that year, and compare Pauthier's *Histoire des Relations Politique de la Chine*, Paris, 1858. Narrative of the American Embassy's visit to Peking, *N. C. Br. R. As. So.*, Vol. I, 1859.

Digitized by Google

receiving Soyeshima, the ambassador from Japan, by himself; and immediately afterward the five ministers of Russia, the United States, Great Britain, France, and Holland, accompanied only by Mr. Carl Bismarck, the German secretary, who interpreted for them.[1] Mr. Low's despatch of July 10th, giving the details of the ceremonies and the previous discussion in settling them, with the difficulty the prince and others had in swallowing the bitter pill, is very valuable as a description of the finale of this last struggle of Chinese seclusion to resist the incoming wave of western power. The wall of their separation was at last broken down. They were really stronger and wiser than ever, and every nation interested felt a relief that the days of proud assumption were ended. The young Emperor held only three more audiences during his short reign of nineteen months; and in all these discussions he seems to have taken no active part, nor did he oppose the conclusion. His ignorance of the whole question made his opinion a matter of small moment.

Among other advantages resulting to all parties by the settlement of this question was the right adjustment of the Chinese government in its relations with other courts. This acknowledgment of their equality as independent nations did not in anywise interfere with the obeisance of native officials when approaching their sovereign; but it smoothed the way for future diplomatic relations. No western power could maintain an envoy near the *Hwangti* at Peking with the least self-respect if he were not allowed to see this potentate unless by prostrating himself. While none of the great nations would deem a mere matter of ceremony a sufficient pretext for resorting to war—since war itself often fails to convince—a long continuance of this state of affairs must inevitably have led to complications the more unpleasant to diplomatists because sure to be oft-recurring. It was probably owing to the personal influence of Prince Kung and Wănsiang, the two most enlightened statesmen of this period, that a further insistance upon the kotow was not made, and preparations thus arranged for reciprocal courtesies when Chinese ambassadors appeared at foreign courts.

[1] Compare the *Illustrated London News* for June 23, 1873.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

WĂNSIANG.

Digitized by Google

But against what tremendous odds of superstition and national prejudice these two officials were pitted in this curious contest those who have never lived in the Empire can hardly appreciate.[1]

The years 1873 and 1874 were marked by the abolition of the coolie trade at Macao, which since its rise in 1848 had been attended with many atrocities on land and sea. During these twenty-five years attempts had been made to conduct the trade with some regard for the rights of the laborers, but experience had shown that to do this was practically impossible if the business were to be made remunerative. Driven from Hongkong and Whampoa, the agents of this traffic had long found shelter in the Portuguese harbor of Macao, from which semi-independent port they could despatch Chinese crimps on kidnapping excursions for their nefarious trade. When at last the governor closed this haven to its continuance, the Spaniards and Peruvians were the only nationalities whom the action affected; but Spain, falling back on her treaty of 1864, insisted that the coolie trade be allowed. The Yamun was advised not to admit this privilege until the harsh treatment of the laborers in Cuba had been inquired into. This was done in 1873, by means of a commission composed of three foreigners and two Chinese, who made as thorough an inquiry as the Cuban authorities would permit and reported the results in 1874. Since the dreadful disclosures which transpired in their report the trade has never revived. Peru, indeed, sent M. Garcia as its envoy to Peking to negotiate a treaty and obtain the right of engaging laborers,

[1] Of Wänsiang's personal history little is known. He was a Manchu, and a man of uncommonly prepossessing manner, being perhaps most highly esteemed of all the officials who came in contact with the foreign legations. At the termination of hostilities and the organization of the Tsung-li Yamun in 1861, he came prominently forward as a most efficient and sagacious adviser of the government. We have already in this narrative had occasion to note the influence of his name in the settlement of the Lay-Osborne flotilla and in the missionary question, the satisfactory conclusion of which was a meet tribute to his talents and judgment. He died at an advanced age in 1875, at the head of the administration. In his death the Chinese government lost an unselfish patriot and a keen observer of those things which were for the best interests of his country.

Digitized by Google

but this gentleman met with no success whatever. The Chinese negotiations on this occasion showed the good results of their freer intercourse with foreigners in the improved character of their arguments for maintaining their rights.[1] The lamentable condition of Chinese laborers in Peru was fully enough proved, inasmuch as their appeal for relief to their home government had been before the Yamun since 1868, but it could do nothing effectual to help them.

The Japanese government undertook in this year to try the issue of war with the Chinese in order to settle its demand of redress for the murder, in 1871, of some fifty-four Lewchewan sailors by savages on the eastern coast of Formosa. Japan had recently deposed the native authorities in Shudi, and being hard pressed for some employment of the feudal retainers of the retired daimios, undertook to redress Lewchewan grievances by occupying the southern part of Formosa, asserting that it did not belong to China because she either would not or could not govern its savage inhabitants. This view of the divided ownership of the island was promptly rejected by the foreign ministers resident at Tokio, but the officials were persuaded that all they had to do was to occupy the whole southern district, and the Chinese could not drive them out when once their intrenchments were completed.

The Mikado accordingly gathered his forces in Kiusiu during the years 1873–74, placing them under the command of General Saigo, and engaging qualified foreign military men to assist. The expedition was called a High Commission, accompanied by a force sufficient for its protection, sent to aboriginal Formosa to inquire into the murder of fifty-four Japanese subjects, and take steps to prevent the recurrence of such atrocities. A proclamation was issued April 17, 1874, and another May 19th, stating that General Saigo was directed to call to an account the persons guilty of outrages on Japanese subjects. As he knew that China was not prepared to resist his landing at Liang-kiao, his chief business was to provide means to house

[1] *Foreign Relations of the United States*, 1874, pp. 198–232. *Westminster Review*, Vol. 100, p. 75. *Customs Report on Cuban Coolie Trade*, 1876.

Digitized by Google

and feed the soldiers under his command. The Japanese authorities do not appear very creditably in this affair. No sooner did they discover the wild and barren nature of this unknown region than they seemed fain to beat an incontinent and hasty retreat, nor did the troops landed there stand upon the order of their going. They had in some measure been misled by the fallacious arguments of Gen. Charles Le Gendre, formerly United States consul at Amoy, who had travelled through these districts in 1865; the enormous cost which they had already incurred made them hesitate about proceeding further, though they had announced their intention of retaining possession of the territory. The aborigines having fled south after the first rencontre, the Japanese leader employed his men as best he could in opening roads through the jungle and erecting houses.

Meanwhile the Peking authorities were making preparations for the coming struggle, and though they moved slowly they were much in earnest to protect their territory. General Shin Pao-chin having been invested with full powers to direct operations against the Japanese forces, began at once to draw together men and vessels in Fuhchau and Amoy. The Japanese consuls at Amoy and Shanghai were allowed to remain at their posts; and during the year two envoys arrived at Peking to treat with the Court. Their discussions soon narrowed down to a demand on the Japanese ministers, Yanagiwara and Okubo, to withdraw from Formosa before treating with them upon the outrages there; which was met by a refusal on the ground that the Emperor had voided his sovereignty by having for three years taken no steps to punish his subjects, notwithstanding the repeated requests made to this end. The Chinese proved that the Japanese had violated their treaty, and acted in an underhand manner in certain negotiations with their envoy, Soyeshima, the preceding year; but this continued sparring was mere child's play. The probabilities were strong against any settlement, when the parties were induced to arrange their quarrel by the intervention and wise counsel of Sir T. F. Wade, the British minister. The Japanese accepted five hundred thousand taels for their outlays in Formosa for roads, houses, and defences; agreeing thereupon to retire and leave the further

Digitized by Google

punishment of the aborigines to the Chinese authorities. The two envoys left Peking, and this attempt at war was happily frustrated.[1]

The history of this affair was exceedingly instructive to those who saw the risks to their best interests which both these nations were running in an unnecessary appeal to force. Never, perhaps, has the resort to arbitration been more happy, when to the difficulty of keeping out of a quarrel which so many fortune-seekers were ready to encourage was added the fact that both nations had been eagerly developing their land and marine forces by adopting foreign arms, drill, ships, and defences; every friend felt the uselessness of a disastrous conflict at this time and willingly strove to prevent any such result. The civilization of all parts of Formosa has since rapidly advanced by the extension of tea and sugar culture, the establishment of Christian missions, and the better treatment of the native tribes. A single incident at this time illustrated the undefined position of the parties in this dispute. This was the arrival in Peking, after Okubo's departure, of a large embassy of Lewchewans to make their homage to the Emperor Tungchí. The Japanese chargé d'affaires was denied admittance to the Lewchewan hotel, and the Yamun refused to dismiss the embassy, but gave it an audience, as was the usage in former days—probably the last in their history. The experience acquired by these three nations in their quarrel concerning Formosa has not prevented considerable bitterness about their rights to Lewchew.

No sooner had the Chinese government escaped from the Japanese imbroglio by the payment of half a million taels than it found itself involved in another and more troublesome question with the British. This arose from the persistent attempts of the latter to open a trade through Burmah, along the Irrawadi River, with Yunnan and other south-western parts of China. The Indian government had sent or encouraged explorers to go through the little known regions lying between

[1] *Is Aboriginal Formosa a part of the Chinese Empire?* with eight maps, folio, Shanghai, 1874, pp. 20. *Foreign Relations of the United States* for 1873 and 1874—China and Japan, passim. *The Japan Herald* and *North China Herald* for those years record all the leading events.

Digitized by Google

the Brahmaputra and Lantsang rivers, but no trade could be developed in so wild and thinly settled a region. During the Tai-ping Rebellion the Emperor's authority in Yunnan had been practically in abeyance, and over the western half of the province it had been superseded by a revolt of the Panthays, a Mohammedan tribe long settled in that region. These sectaries date their origin from the Tang dynasty, and had been generally unmolested by the Chinese so long as they obeyed the laws. During the Mongol sway their numbers increased so that they began to participate in the government, while ever since they have enjoyed more or less the control of affairs.[1] The differences in faith and practice, however, aided in keeping them distinct; and in Yunnan their numbers were recruited by settlers from Kansuh and Koko-nor, so that they were led to throw off the Chinese rule altogether.

They began about the year 1855 to defend themselves against the imperialists, captured Talí in 1857, pushing their arms as far eastward as the provincial capital Yunnan fu, which was seized and held for a brief period; but in 1867 they proclaimed Tu Win-siu as their Imam, and located their capital in Talí. With affairs in this condition law and order speedily vanished, life and property were sacrificed, and general misrule furnished the lawless with an opportunity to burn, kill, and destroy until the land became a desert. The Panthays, as the Burmese called the insurrectionists, turned their hopes westward for succor, and to this end endeavored to keep open the trade with Burmah and India, but under the circumstances it could not flourish. The British in those countries were, however, quite ready to countenance, if not aid, the new ruler at Talí, as soon as his power was sufficiently consolidated to keep open the roads and protect traders.

In 1868 a party was ordered to proceed to this city and "discover the cause of the cessation of trade formerly existing by these routes, the exact position held by the Kakhyens, Shans, and Panthays with reference to that traffic, and their disposition or

[1] Compare Dr. Anderson, *From Mandalay to Momien*, p. 223. Du Halde, *Histoire*, Tome I., p. 199. Grosier, *China*, Vol. IV., p. 270. Garnier, *Voyage d'Exploration*, Tome I. Cooper, *Travels of a Pioneer of Commerce*.

Digitized by Google

otherwise to resuscitate it." This party, numbering a hundred in all, was in charge of Major Sladen, assisted by five qualified men, and guarded by an escort of fifty armed police; its object embraced diplomacy, engineering, natural science, and commerce. Their steamer reached Bhamo January 22, 1868, and the party began their travels early in March, arriving after much delay at Momein (or Tăng-yueh chau), a town on the Taping River, one hundred and thirty-five miles from Bhamo and about five thousand feet above the sea. Another forced delay of nearly two months convinced them of the impossibility of their getting to Talí (nearly as far again); in face of the determined opposition, therefore, both of the hill tribes and Chinese traders, Major Sladen was fain to retire in safety to Bhamo. The retreat of this anomalous expedition could be officially ascribed to the weakness of the Panthay rulers, the wild region traversed, and its yet wilder inhabitants. But to what principles of justice or equity can we attribute the action of the British in retaining their minister at the capital of an Empire while sending a peaceful mission to a rebel in arms at its boundaries? This impertinence seems thinly veiled by dubbing the expedition one of inquiry concerning trade; no trade did or could exist with an ill-assorted rabble of wild mountaineers; when these had been duly subjected an expedition for purposes of science would meet with as ready assistance from the authorities as did that of the Frenchman, Lieutenant Garnier, then exploring eastern Yunnan. This disregard of the courtesies and rights of independent nations reflects as little credit upon the powerful nation which used her strength thus unfairly as does her similar attempt of negotiating with another rebel, Yakub Beg in Ílí.

Major Sladen's mission, owing to the admirable qualities of its leader, made so fair an impression upon the natives along his route that upon his return in 1873 his progress was materially assisted, instead of retarded, by them as far as Momein. In the years intervening the Imam at Talí, with about forty thousand of his followers, had been hemmed in by the Chinese forces under the leadership of Lí Sieh-tai, or Brigadier Lí. The Mohammedans felt their weakness against such odds, and the so-called Sultan Suleiman sent his son Hassan to London to

Digitized by Google

implore recognition and aid from the British government; but before he returned his father had killed himself and the victorious Chinese had massacred most of their opponents and regained possession of the whole province in 1873. Its western half had been virtually independent since 1855, during which period the wretchedness of the inhabitants had greatly reduced their numbers and resources.

Trade soon revived. The British appointed an agent to reside at Bhamo and learn its amount and character. In 1874 an expedition—this time provided with Chinese passports—was planned to make the trip across China from Burmah to Hankow, as Lieutenant Garnier had done from Saigon. The Chinese traders in Burmah set themselves to circumvent it, for its success boded disaster to them, as they better knew the resources of their competitors. The British plan was to send an accredited agent across the country from Hankow to Bhamo, there to meet a party under charge of Col. Horace Browne, which was to "thoroughly examine the capabilities of the country beyond Momein." As only six years had passed since Sladen's party had reached that town on its way to the Panthays at Talí, there had perhaps been hardly time to remove all suspicion among the local officials about the objects of this new move. One of the consular clerks, Augustus R. Margary, was furnished with necessary passports and instructions from her Majesty's legation to go to Bhamo and act as Colonel Browne's guide and interpreter. His journals testify that no better choice could have been made, and all who knew him were hopeful of the success of this young man.[1] He left Hankow September 2d and reached Bhamo January 17th without molestation or accident, having been received with respect by all Chinese officials, whom the governor-general of Yunnan had required thus to act. While the party in Bhamo prepared the equipment for its journey, Dr. Anderson observes that the Chinese "watched its movements with a secret feeling that the objects contemplated were somewhat beyond the peaceful pursuits of commerce and scientific inquiry."[2]

[1] *Journals of A. R. Margary*, edited by Sir R. Alcock, London, 1877.

[2] The report was also circulated that the party was going to lay down a railroad.

Digitized by Google

Mr. Margary intimated that he thought there were intrigues going on at Manwyne adverse to the advance of the mission; but Brigadier Lí, who treated him there with great honor, did every thing to promote his journey to Bhamo.

The arrangements as to routes and escorts were at last completed so far as to allow the party finally to leave Bhamo February 3, 1875; it numbered nearly fifty persons in all, together with a Burmese guard of one hundred and fifty. The rivalries and deceptions of the Kakhyen tribes proved to be worse than in 1868, and progress was slower from the difficulty of providing animals for transport. By the 18th it had crossed the frontier, and the next morning Mr. Margary left, with five Chinese, for Manwyne, to arrange there for its reception by Brigadier Lí. Increased dissensions among the tribes as to escort, transport, and pay led Colonel Browne to push on after him with a guard so as to reach that town and find some competent authority to aid his expedition. Many signs of serious opposition had by this time manifested themselves; and when he was preparing to start from Seray on the 23d, large bodies of armed men were seen on the opposite hills coming to attack the British. A Burmese messenger also arrived from Manwyne with letters giving an account of the horrid murder of Mr. Margary and his attendants by the treacherous officials there on the 20th. The Chinese soldiers or robbers were in a manner repulsed by the bravery of Browne's escort and by firing the jungle, but the expedition was in face of too powerful an opposition to contemplate advancing after such disasters. The return to Bhamo was soon made, and the earnest efforts of the Burmese officers there to recover everything belonging to the British proved their honesty.

The disappointment at this rebuff was exceeded by the general indignation at the treachery which marked the murder. It was soon known that Lí Sieh-tai was not at Manwyne at the time, though the real actors in the tragedy belonged to his army, and must have made him cognizant of the deed.[1]

[1] *Mandalay to Momien: A Narrative of Two Expeditions to Western China*, by Dr. John Anderson, contains a most satisfactory narrative of these attempts; the writer's opinion is of the highest value.

Digitized by Google

When news of this disaster reached London and Peking, the British minister was directed to demand an investigation of the facts connected with the outrage in presence of a British officer in Yunnan, the issue by the Yamun of fresh passports for a new mission, and an indemnity. After months of delay and correspondence with the Yamun Sir Thomas Wade, the British minister, was able to make up his commission and despatch it from Hankow, November 5th, for Yunnan fu. It consisted of the Hon. T. G. Grosvenor, second secretary of the legation, and Messrs. Davenport and Baber of the consular service, all of them well fitted by previous training for attaining the objects of their expedition. The journey was performed in company with a Chinese escort, without danger or interference, the city of Yunnan being reached in March. The gentlemen found the provinces through which they travelled perfectly at peace, and the Emperor's authority everywhere acknowledged—a fact extremely creditable to the Chinese after more than twenty years of civil war.

The Chinese appointed to conduct the inquiry into the murder, in connection with Mr. Grosvenor, was Lí Han-chang, governor-general at Wuchang and brother of Lí Hung-chang. He was long in making the journey, but the two began their proceedings, having Sieh Hwan, an old member of the Yamun in 1864, as aid. Those who had any experience or acquaintance with similar joint commissions in China anticipated but one result from it—an entire failure in proving or punishing the guilty parties; while those who wish to see their character should read Mr. Grosvenor's various reports[1] to learn how slow are the advances of the Chinese in truth-telling. Nevertheless, such an investigation had some prospective benefit in that the trouble which the British made on account of the taking of one life warned the officials to exercise the greatest caution in future. In this preventive aspect, the mission doubtless accomplished more than can be estimated. Mr. Baber is sure that Margary was killed (and his opinion is entitled to great respect) by the discontented Chinese train bands then around Manwyne—

[1] *Blue Book—China*, No. 1 (1876) and No. 3 (1877).

Digitized by Google

a lawless set, who were afterward hunted to death.[1] The weight of evidence obtained at Yunnan fu went to prove that the repulse of the British party was countenanced, if not planned, by the governor-general, and carried into effect with the cognizance of Brigadier Lí. Amid so much irreconcilable evidence, the inference that the officers, chiefly by so doing, intended to prevent the extension of trade by the British, offers the most adequate explanation. When the impoverished condition of Southwestern China is remembered, the question arises, Why should the Indian government strive to open a trade where industry and population have been so destroyed? But the expectation that thereby a greater market would be found for its opium in all Western China is a sufficient reason, perhaps, for undertaking so costly an experiment.

No sooner had Sir Thomas Wade learned of Margary's death than he impressed upon the Chinese government the necessity for unremitting and vigorous measures toward the arrest and punishment of the guilty. In addition to what has been already stated concerning this reparation, he brought forward some other matters affecting the intercourse between the two countries. They were long and painfully debated, and those agreed on were embodied in a convention which was signed by himself and Lí Hung-chang, on the part of Great Britain and China, September 13, 1876. The correspondence relating to this convention is given, with its text, in the Parliamentary Blue Books,[2] and is worth perusal by all who wish to learn the workings of the Chinese government.

The Yunnan case was settled by immediate payment of two hundred thousand taels ($280,000), which included all claims of British merchants on the Chinese government; by posting an imperial proclamation in the cities and towns throughout the Empire; by sending an envoy bearing a letter of regret to Queen Victoria for what had occurred in Yunnan; and by

[1] *Blue Book—China*, No. 3, 1878. *Report of Mr. Baber on the route followed by Mr. Grosvenor's mission between Tali fu and Momein.* Reprinted, with his other interesting travels and researches in Western China, in *Supplementary Papers*, Vol. I., Part 1, 1882, of *Roy. Geog. Soc.*, London.

[2] *Blue Book—China*, No. 1 (1876) and No. 3 (1877).

Digitized by Google

stationing British officers at Talí or elsewhere in that province to "observe the conditions of trade." The proclamation[1] was posted very widely (three thousand copies in Kiangsu province alone), and through it the people learned that the safety of all foreigners travelling through their country was guaranteed by the Emperor. Other matters agreed upon in this convention were the manner of official intercourse between native and foreign officers at Peking and the ports, so that perfect equality might be shown; the better administration of justice in criminal cases between their respective subjects, every such case being tried by the official of the defendant's nationality, while the plaintiff's official could always be present to watch proceedings; the extension of trade by opening four new ports as consular stations, and six on the Yangtsz' River for landing goods, with other regulations as to opium, transit, and *lí-kin* taxes on goods; and lastly, the appointment of a joint commission to establish some system that should enable the Chinese government to protect its revenue without prejudice to the junk trade of Hongkong.

This final article might well have been omitted. The concessions and advantages in it accrued to the British, and through them also measurably to other nationalities. But while the Chinese under the circumstances had no right to complain of paying heavily for Margary's life, it was manifestly unfair to cripple their commerce by sheltering Hongkong smugglers under promise of a commission which could never honestly agree. In order to better understand the British minister's views regarding the political and commercial bearing of his convention, the reader is referred to his labored minute of July 14, 1877,[2] in which the fruits of thirty-five years of official experience in China impart much value to his opinions. The singular mixture of advice, patronizing decisions, and varied knowledge running through the whole render the paper extremely interesting. The Chinese historian of the next century will read with wonder the implied responsibility of the British minister for the conduct of the Empire in its foreign manage-

[1] *Blue Book—China*, No. 8 (1877). [2] *Ibid*, pp. 111–147.

Digitized by Google

ment, and the enormous development of the principle of ex-territoriality so as to cover almost every action of every British subject. He may also be instructed by this proof of the ignorance and fears of the former rulers, as well as their conceit and hesitation in view of their wants and backwardness to cope with the advancing age. He must acknowledge, too, that the sharp and prolonged discussion of eighteen months between Sir Thomas and the Yamun was one of the most profitable exercises in political science the high officers of Peking ever had allowed them.

Since the convention of Chifu the progress of China at home and abroad has been the best evidence of an improved administration. The reign of Hienfung ended in 1861, with the prestige, resources, and peace of the realm he had so miserably governed reduced to their lowest ebb. During the twelve years of his son's nominal régime, the face of affairs had quite changed for the better. Peace and regular government had been for the most part resumed throughout the Eighteen Provinces, and even to the extreme western frontier of Kashgar and Kuldja. The people were returning to their desolated villages, while their rulers did what they could to promote agriculture and trade. The young Emperor gave small promise of becoming a wise or efficient ruler; and when he died (January 12, 1875) it was felt that an effigy only had passed away, and no change would ensue in the administration. In the question of selecting his inheritor were involved some curious features of Chinese customs. It is a rule that the succession to the *Lung-wei*, or 'Dragon's Seat,' cannot pass to the preceding generation, since this would involve the worship of a lower or younger generation by an older one. The line of Hienfung died out in his childless son; the eldest of his brothers had, as we have seen, been made posthumous heir of an uncle in 1854, consequently his son, Pu-lun, was ineligible. The elevation of Prince Kung's son Tsai-ching to be Emperor was in the highest degree inexpedient, as this would necessitate the retirement of his father from active participation in the government, arising from their relationship of father and son. The next eligible candidate, Tsai-tien, a child of Prince Chun—the seventh son of Taukwang—born August 15,

Digitized by Google

1871, was unanimously chosen by the Empresses dowager and assembled princes of the Manchu Imperial Clan. His parents were brother and sister of those of his predecessors, while the same regency had been reappointed, so that his tender age involved neither difficulty nor alteration during the minority. He took the reign-name of *Kwang-sü*, or 'Illustrious Succession,' having reference to the disturbance in the regular descent. By this arrangement the same general set of officials was continued on the government, and the risk to its peaceful working from the freaks of Tungchí avoided.[1]

A most notable event during the last decade has been the recovery of the vast regions of the Tarim Valley to the imperial sway. Their loss took place during the early part of the Tai-ping Rebellion, beginning in Kansuh, where the discontented Moslem population, aided by the reckless and seditious of all clans, arose and drove out the governmental minions even to the eastern side of Shensí. Of this extended revolt little is known in the west save the name of its figure-head and leading character under whose mastery it culminated and succumbed.

The famous Yakub Beg, whom the jealous attentions of both England and Russia had united in raising to the rank of a hero, commenced his military career as lieutenant of Buzurg khan, a son of the notable Jehangír, kojeh of Kokand.[2] By the year 1866 the energetic lieutenant had made way with his licentious and cowardly chief, and possessed himself of a large part of Western Kashgaria; then, turning his attention to the rebellious Dunganis north of him, a series of vigorous campaigns ended in leaving him undisputed ruler of all Tien-Shan Nan Lu. These conquests over, hordes of neighboring rebels must now be recognized as fatal errors in the policy of Yakub. The Atalik Ghazi, or 'Champion Father' as he was now called, had not only attracted the distrust of Russia—manifested in their taking of Kuldja from the Dunganis before his approach was possible—but in annihilating other Moslem insurrectionists,

[1] The Eastern Empress-dowager, the legal widow of Hienfung, whose only child, a daughter, died early in 1875, followed her to the grave in 1881, leaving the regency with her coadjutor, the Empress An, aided by Prince Kung.

[2] See Volume I., p. 236.

Digitized by Google

had constituted himself an avenger of Chinese wrongs, and prepared the way of his own enemies whenever the terrible day of reckoning should come.

The attempt on the part of China to restore its prestige in a territory where every hand was turned against her seemed indeed hopeless. Her exhausted resources, her constant fear of the foreigners within her gates, her suspicions of Russia, the immense distances to be traversed, seemed to unite every factor against her success. Nevertheless, by 1871 symptoms of disorganization began already to appear among the rebels, while in the wishes of the common people for a strong power to insure order and encourage trade Tso Tsung-tang, the Chinese general, found both assistance and men.

A moment's attention to the relations between the Chinese and Mohammedans of this region will throw much light on their contest. Since their conquest by Kienlung, the inhabitants of Eastern Turkestan had enjoyed an unexampled period of tranquillity and prosperous trade. The Chinese, known as Kitai, settled in their cities and brought a degree of wealth and civilization far ahead of anything previously known, while the rulers, or ambans, joined to their duties as administrators of justice a fostering care of trade routes and methods for developing the country. They have at all times been celebrated for irrigating their provinces, and now reproduced their wonderful canals (says Boulger) "even in this outlying dependency. Eastern Turkestan is one of the worst-watered regions in the world. In fact there is only a belt of fertile country around the Yarkand River, stretching away eastward along the slopes of the Tien Shan as far as Hami. The few small rivers which are traced here and there across the map are during many months of the year dried up, and even the Yarkand then becomes an insignificant stream. To remedy this, and to husband the supply as much as possible, the Chinese sunk dikes in all directions. By this means the cultivated country was slowly but surely spread over a great extent of territory, and the vicinity of the three cities of Kashgar, Yangi Hissar, and Yarkand became known as the garden of Asia. Corn and fruit grew in abundance, and from Yarkand to the south of the Tien

Digitized by Google

Shan the traveller could pass through one endless orchard. On all sides he saw nothing but plenty and content, peaceful hamlets and smiling inhabitants. These were the outcome of a Chinese domination."[1]

In addition to the fields and rivers, mines were worked, mountain passes cut and kept in repair, and the internal government of tribes placed on an equable basis. As to the precise manner in which discontent and rebellion crept into this apparently happy territory, it must always remain a matter of conjecture. The customs of its inhabitants have for ages been based on the tribal principle to such an extent that they found it impossible to assimilate with the Chinese and their methodical government, even though for their advantage to do so. The repeated failures of the United States to introduce a certaindegree of civilization among the Indians present an analogous case. Uneasiness among the natives caused by agents from Kokand and Tashkend was speedily followed by larger demands from turbulent Mussulmans, who saw in Chinese moderation an evidence of weakness and decline. Jehangír's rebellion not unjustly incensed a government which had devoted more than half a century to the building up of a shattered State, and was punished with merciless rigor. Oppression from the Chinese met by resistance, equitable rule alternating with weakness and injustice, trade impeded by illegal imports, ambitious Usbeck chiefs exciting their tribes to rise against their conquerors—these and similar causes had been at work to prevent all permanent progress in Turkestan.

During the lowest ebb of Manchu authority in the Empire, when foreigners and Tai-pings were straining the utmost resources of the government in the East, a small village of Kansuh was the scene of a sudden riot. When after two days couriers brought word that the disturbance was quelled with some loss of life, the authorities began to suppose that the affair had already been forgotten; but it proved to be the fuse that lighted an outbreak scarcely smaller than the other civil war

[1] *Life of Yakoob Beg*, London, 1878, p. 59. See also R. B. Shaw, *Visits to High Tartary, Yarkand, and Kashgar*, London, 1871, Chaps. II. and III.

Digitized by Google

within the provinces.[1] The Dunganis had arisen and spread the infection of revolt wherever they existed—over large districts of Shensí, but principally toward the west, to Turfan, Kuche, and Aksu—continuing the weary story of surprise, slaughter, and barbarity even to the city of Kuldja.[2] Allying with themselves the Tarantchi, a sort of fellah class which the Chinese had imported into the regions from Kashgar, the victorious rebels established one of those ephemeral governments over the Tien Shan and its adjoining valleys that have so frequently arisen in the history of Central Asia. Under their rule travel beyond the Kiayü Pass was of course impossible, while trade diminished throughout the country, and Russia, as we have seen, wrested Kuldja from Abul Oghlan in order to secure her own borders. The first serious check received by this confederation was its virtual overthrow, when Yakub advanced upon Aksu and from thence cleared the great road eastward to Turfan.

Tso's first labor, then, was to clear Shensí and Kansuh of the rebels, in which his progress was marked by admirable foresight and energy in disposition of men, arrangement of courier service, and use of modern arms. Establishing himself by 1876 in Barkul and Hami as headquarters, by the following spring he was prepared for a concerted movement from the north (Gutchen and Urumtsi) and east (Pidshan) upon Yakub Beg at Turfan. The redoubtable chieftain was finally caught by the tardy but certain power which he had long despised with impunity, and driven backward through the towns of Toksun and Harashar to Korla, where he died or was murdered, May, 1877. During this and the following years the governor-general succeeded in reinstating the authority which had been in abeyance nearly a score of years. His army under two able generals advanced along the parallel roads north and south of the Tien Shan, punishing the rebels without mercy, while "the Moham-

[1] "It is impossible not to connect this event in some degree with that unaccountable revival among Mohammedans, which has produced so many important events during the last thirty years, and of which we are now witnessing some of the most striking results."—Boulger. *Life of Yakoob Beg*, p. 95.

[2] Which fell in January, 1866, after the Chinese governor had destroyed himself and his citadel by gunpowder.

Digitized by Google

medans who submitted themselves were permitted to revert to their peaceful avocations."[1] When upon the desert the troops were provisioned from Russian territory, but during the early years of the campaign it appears that the soldiers were made to till the ground as well as construct fortifications. The history of the advance of this "agricultural army" would, if thoroughly known, constitute one of the most remarkable military achievements in the annals of any modern country.[2]

With the fall of Kashgar (December 17, 1877) the reconquest was practically completed, though Yarkand and the neighboring towns held out some months longer, at the end of which the chiefs of the Moslem movement had either fled to Ferghana or succumbed in the fight. The Chinese now turned their attention to the occupation of Kuldja, and sent Chunghow in December, 1878, to St. Petersburg upon a mission relating to its restoration. The envoy needed, indeed, but to remind the Czar of Russian promises made in Peking in 1871 concerning the prompt retrocession of the occupied territory when China should have reasserted her authority in those regions; but neither European nor Oriental diplomats seemed to regard the city "held in trust for China by the Russian government" as in the least likely to return to the dominion of the Hwangti, while many were persuaded that Russia would resort to arms before surrendering one of the most prosperous of her possessions in order to keep a rash promise.[3]

Chunghow—whose capacity had been in some degree tested in the Tientsin riot—was hardly the best choice for envoy even among the still ignorant officers at Peking, inasmuch as to the seemingly apparent defect of an unusually Bœotian temperament was added a profound ignorance of any European language, of modern methods of diplomacy, and of the topography of the territory in question. It is almost needless to add that

---

[1] *Peking Gazette.*

[2] *The Spectator*, April 13, 1878, *Pall Mall Gazette*, June, 1878, and *London Times*, November, 1878. Boulger, *Life of Yakoob Beg*, Chaps. XII.–XIV.

[3] For an excellent illustration of the prevailing sentiment on this question, even after Chunghow's embassy, see Mr. D. C. Boulger in *Fraser's Magazine* for August, 1880, p. 164.

Digitized by Google

such an embassy was ill-prepared to cope with the astute diplomatists of an eager court, or that it speedily fell a prey to the designs upon it. A treaty of eighteen articles was signed at Livadia yielding a portion of the Kuldja district to China, Russia retaining, however, the fruitful valley of the Tekes River, all the more important strategic strongholds and passes in the Tien Shan, and the city of Yarkand; China, moreover, to pay as indemnity five million rubles for the cost of occupying Kuldja. Other important concessions, such as a trade route from Hankow through Suhchau to Kuldja and Siberia, the opening to Russian caravans of thirty-six frontier stations, the modification of the Kashgarian frontier, the arming of Muscovite merchants, and the navigation of the Songari River, were apparently added to this compact according as the Russians increased their experience of the "gullability" of these remarkable ambassadors.

Even officers of the Czar's army, in referring afterward to this treaty, were prone to add to their remarks some measure of apology. When in January, 1880, Chunghow returned home with the unwise and humiliating document in his possession, he could not have felt wholly certain of a triumphant reception. Nevertheless it is not likely that the luckless ambassador contemplated being at once deprived by imperial edict of all his offices and turned over to a board for trial and punishment. Statesmen of both parties joined in denouncing him, Lí Hung-chang and Tso alike presenting memorials to the same effect, while a flood of petitions more or less fierce poured upon the government from mandarins of all ranks. On the 28th the returned envoy was cashiered for having signed away territory and promised indemnity without special authorization, and in punishment was sentenced to decapitation. The actors in this movement, which upon the manifestation of such prompt and furious measures assumed the phase of an intrigue of the war party, were Tso and Prince Chung, who seized upon the popular wrath as an opportune moment for a master stroke against Prince Kung.

With the appearance of danger such as this the party in power recoiled at once from its angry position, depreciated the highly bellicose tone of court officials, and accepted the good

Digitized by Google

offices of the foreign ministers who joined in protesting against the unworthy treatment of Chunghow and the monstrous barbarity of his sentence. Possibly the temperance of Russia's attitude in demanding the unconditional pardon of Chunghow before consenting to receive a second ambassador—the Marquis Tsăng, minister to England, already appointed—materially aided in quieting the storm. Fortunately, too, amid the rumors of a resort to arms and manifest preparations of the palace discontents to force an issue, Colonel Gordon visited the capital, and in a communication to Governor Lí pointed out the folly of attempting a foreign conflict and the peculiar dangers in overwhelming, by courting a certain defeat, the great benefits which must come to the Chinese army by its gradual reorganization upon modern methods. "Potentially," said this unpalatable but honest critic, "you are perhaps invincible, but the outcome of this premature war will show you to be vulnerable at a thousand points." Counsels such as these carried unusual weight as coming from a man whom all parties in China respected and admired; there can be little doubt that it sensibly decreased the war feeling, and possibly prevented the country from rushing to certain disaster.

Chunghow was accordingly reprieved, and in June of this year set free. The intelligence and experience of Tsăng[1] proved an acceptable contrast to his predecessor's unguarded conduct, and resulted in an agreement (May 15th) on the part of the Czar's negotiators to recede nearly the whole of the contested district, excepting a narrow strip upon its western edge for purposes of colonization or retreat for those inhabitants of Ílí who preferred to remain under Russian control.[2] In return

[1] Upon his return to China the marquis published his diary, some portions of which have found their way into the *China Review* (Vol. XI., p. 135) and are extremely interesting as the outspoken opinion of an appreciative and enlightened Chinese gentleman.

[2] Precisely the extent of this strip depends upon the exact definition of the boundary here under Taukwang. The present line is laid down in that portion of the new treaty quoted in Volume I., p. 218; the territory forms approximately a wedge whose apex is in the Ala Tau Mountains, and whose base, about three degrees south of this point, lies against the crest of the Tien Shan. It meets the old boundary at the Muzart (or Muz-daban) Pass. Since the treaty

Digitized by Google

"for military expenses incurred by Russia in holding and protecting Ílí on behalf of China since the year 1871, and in satisfaction of all claims by Russian merchants for losses previously suffered by pillage within Chinese territory, and by Russians who have suffered outrage," the Chinese agreed to pay nine million roubles. This appears to have been less repugnant to oriental diplomacy than five millions in acknowledgment of getting back their borrowed property. As for the other points, the treaty does not seem to have been greatly altered, save in the Songari River and other more vexatious clauses. This treaty was ratified August 19, 1881.

From domestic wars and political complications, the influences of which have hardly as yet disappeared from our morning newspapers, our attention must be turned to the yet sadder spectacle of famine and pestilence. The occasional notices of a great scarcity of food in Northwestern China which drifted into the news items of western countries may still remain within the memory of many; those, however, who live under the ascendancy of occidental institutions can with difficulty appreciate, from any mere description of this scourge, its immense influence as a factor in removing somewhat the suspicions of the ignorant and apathetic Chinese against their fellow-men in other lands. The sympathies and charities of the Christian world, as called forth by this terrible visitation, were more effectual in making acceptable the distasteful presence of foreigners within their cities than had been the united influence of two wars and a half-century of trade, diplomacy, and social intercourse.

The Great Famine of 1878 was in some measure foretold over Shansí and Shensí by the decreasing rainfall of the four previous years. The peculiar nature of this loess-covered region, and its absolute dependence for fertility upon a sufficient supply of moisture, has been pointed out in another chapter of this work.[1] Here, then, and in Shantung the missionaries of all denominations were called upon to organize methods

strenuous efforts have been made by the officers of both nationalities stationed there to entice the Usbeck, Kirghis, and Dunganis of the region to settle permanently on their side of the boundary.

[1] Volume I., p. 300.

Digitized by Google

of relief as early as the summer of 1877. By the opening of the following spring a central committee in Shanghai and their agents in Chifu and Tientsin—all Protestant and Roman Catholic missionaries—had put forth so great energy in their well-directed efforts as to gain the zealous co-operation of Lí Hung-chang, governor-general of Chihlí, and active countenance of the rulers and gentry in other provinces. "At the beginning of their labors," writes the secretary of the committee, "the distributors were received with a degree of prejudice and suspicion which utterly frustrated any attempt to prosecute the work. They were supposed to have sinister objects in view, and not only was their charity refused, but they were even in imminent danger of their lives. It required the utmost carefulness on their part to carry on their operations with any degree of success. They were urged to act in a way that contemplated the speedy exhaustion of their funds and their evacuation of the place. So far as we can ascertain, however, the distributors conducted themselves in a most commendable manner, and after a time at least bore down the ill-will and aspersions of all classes, changing their sentiments and feelings of doubt and distrust into those of the deepest gratitude and respect, so that they are now regarded as the very saviours of the people."[1]

After the experience of some weeks in the destitute regions, it was found that only the strictest adherence to a business system of distribution could be attended with any mitigation of the evil. Tickets representing certain amounts of money were given to the houses of each community which appeared on the catalogues of needy families furnished by village elders. Food being plenty in the south, the means of transportation and storage during distribution constituted the chief labor of those concerned in this work. When brought to the starving settlements, grain was promptly doled out in exchange for the tickets, and to the lasting credit of the Chinese character it must here be noticed that not a single raid upon the provisions or resort to force in any way has been recorded of these famished multitudes.

---

[1] Rev. W. Muirhead, in *Report of the China Famine Relief Fund*, Shanghai, 1879, p. 4.

Digitized by Google

That good-will, affection, and gratitude should take the place of the old mistrust under these conditions was most natural.[1] Nevertheless the terrors of their experiences in this awful time were hardly lightened by this cheering aspect of the *curse*. Misery and desolation such as this overwhelmed every other sentiment save that of compassion. The visitor was often met by the solitary remnant of a large household, to hear from him a harrowing recital of suffering and death, fitted to shock the most callous of humanity. Again, he would come upon the corpse of one recently fallen in the vain effort to walk to a neighboring town, and about it a lazy pack of wolves squatting —gorged and stupid from the fulness of many ghastly meals. At other times a silent dwelling might be found giving shelter only to the cadaverous bodies of its former inmates; or anon a ruined house would tell where the timbers had been plucked out and sold for a little bread. Of the last extreme of famine, cannibalism, which cropped out here and there, but which in most cases met with instant punishment when discovered, it is hardly necessary to add notice or description. The remarkable patience under suffering exhibited by the people made their relief comparatively easy, though the despair which had rendered them insensible to excitement or violence often prevented their recuperation from the fever and plague which laid hold upon their weakened bodies even after plenty had returned to the land.

In their report the committee at Shanghai acknowledge Tls. 204,560 as having passed through their hands, while about as much more may safely be said to have been otherwise expended by foreigners for the relief of the sufferers.[2] The Chinese government furnished food and supplies amounting to

[1] A notable exception to this universal sentiment of kindliness was exhibited among the officials and gentry of Kaifung, the capital of Honan, in which city foreigners were to the last forbidden to remain, or even to carry on their work in the environs.

[2] About $22,670 were subscribed in the United States—which does not include, however, the donation from the Pacific slope. An effort was made to induce Congress to return on this occasion the surplus of the Chinese indemnity fund, amounting to nearly $600,000, but upon this the Committee on Foreign Affairs reported adversely, alleging among other reasons that all the starving people would be dead before the machinery of both nations would admit of this money being exchanged for food!

Digitized by Google

more than Tls. 2,000,000, while rich natives contributed very largely in their own districts. Sixty-nine foreigners were personally engaged upon the work of distribution in the four afflicted provinces, of whom Messrs. Hall, Hodge, Barradale, and Whiting died in consequence of exposure and overwork.[1] Upon the mortality connected with this frightful visitation there exist but the vaguest figures. "The destruction as a whole is stated to be from nine and a half to thirteen millions," observes the *Report*[2] already quoted, and its proofs in support of this statement are as trustworthy as any that can be compiled. No famine is recorded in the history of any land which equalled this in death-rate. The area at the base of the Tibetan and Mongolian highlands will always be subject to great vicissitudes of heat and moisture,[3] and the future, like the past, cannot but suffer from these frightful droughts unless a careful attention to the climatic influence of trees and irrigation mitigate in some degree the dreadful comings of these plagues.

The Chinese plenipotentiary in London, Kwoh Sung-tao, gave utterance to the sincere sentiments of his government in saying:

> The noble philanthropy which heard, in a far-distant country, the cry of suffering and hastened to its assistance, is too signal a recognition of the common brotherhood of humanity ever to be forgotten, and is all the more worthy to be remembered because it is not a passing response to a generous emotion, but a continued effort, persevered in until, in sending the welcome rain, Heaven gave the assuring promise of returning plenty, and the sign that the brotherly succor was no longer required. Coming from Englishmen residing in all parts of the world, this spontaneous act of generosity made a deep impression on the government and people of China, which cannot but have the effect of more closely cementing the friendly relations which now so happily exist between China and Great Britain. But the hands that gave also assumed the arduous duty of administering the relief; and here I would not forget to offer my grateful thanks and condolence to the families of those, and they are not a few, who nobly fell in distributing the fund.[4]

---

[1] Mr. Whiting was honored by the governor of Shansi with a public funeral in Taiyuen, the provincial capital.

[2] P. 7.

[3] Mr. A. Hosie in the *N. C. Br. R. A. S. Journal*, Vol. XIII., 1878, has translated the native lists of more than eight hundred famines and droughts occurring in the Yangtsz' basin and northward on the Plateau during a thousand years ending A.D. 1643.

[4] Letter of October 14, 1878, to Lord Salisbury.

Digitized by Google

One who has been acquainted with Chinese affairs for the last fifty years can better than younger persons appreciate from this letter the vast stride which has been made by China since the withdrawal of the East India Company's factory in 1834. The Empire had then been closed for more than a century, and its inhabitants had been taught to believe that all mankind outside of its boundaries were little better than ignorant savages. Their rulers had maintained that "barbarians could only be ruled by misrule," and in their honest efforts to keep them from entering the gates of the Celestial Empire in order that the people might not become contaminated, had faithfully though ineffectually endeavored to fulfil the first duty of every government. We have seen how small was their success when dealing with the iniquitous opium traffic; no amount of moral or ethical principle in the cause which he represented could make up to Commissioner Lin for his ignorance and stiff-neckedness in pushing his injudicious methods of reforming this abuse. Had he succeeded as he and his imperial master had planned, they would have sealed their country against the only possible remedies for those evils they were striving to remove—free intercourse, commercial, intellectual, and political, with their fellow-men.

The story of China's rapid progress from semi-barbarism toward her appropriate position among nations is now fully known to any whose interests have directed their attention thither. It cannot be denied that the advance has been hampered by the mass of superstitions, assumptions, and weaknesses through which every such stride to reformation must push forward; nor is it strange that interested foreigners from their vantage-ground of a more perfect civilization should at times bemoan the wearisome course and manifold errors of this regeneration. Nevertheless, hopeful signs abound on every side; against a few errors may be balanced a multitude of genuine successes, and the fact that these latter have come about deliberately assures us that they are permanent. In the hands of statesmen as far-sighted and patriotic as those who now control the government, there is little cause to apprehend retrograde steps or a return to the exclusive policy of Commissioners Lin and Yeh. As for the conservative spirit which yet characterizes the present

Digitized by Google

régime, in this will be found the safeguard against extravagant and premature adoption of western machines, institutions, methods, dress, and the thousand adjuncts of modern European life which, if too rapidly applied to an effete and backward civilization, push it rather into bankruptcy and overthrow than out into a new existence.

Before closing these volumes, and as an illustration of these observations, it remains to notice the so-called Chinese Education Commission—a highly lauded project which is still fresh in the minds of many Americans. Soon after the Tientsin riot and Chunghow's mission of apology, Yung Wing, a Chinese graduate of Yale College, proposed to Lí Hung-chang and others in authority a plan of utilizing certain surplus moneys remaining from the fund for military stores, to defray the expenses of educating a number of Chinese boys in the United States. The scheme found such favor with the governor-general and members of the Foreign Office, that early in the year 1872 thirty boys were selected by competitive examination at Shanghai, and took passage for San Francisco July 12th, Yung Wing having preceded them to make the necessary arrangements. This gentleman's acquaintance with the social life and educational methods in New England was so complete as to enable him readily to place the students—usually in pairs—in comfortable households, where they might learn English and become initiated into the manner of life among western peoples as agreeably as possible.

The commission established its headquarters in Hartford and easily disposed their boys in adjoining towns of Connecticut and Massachusetts, where numbers of families welcomed them with open arms. Prince Kung's satisfaction upon learning of this friendly reception was expressed in a personal note of thanks to Mr. Low at Peking, while the fair prospects of the scheme now tended to hasten other parties of students to these shores until their number was swelled to one hundred and twenty.[1] These lads proved themselves almost without excep-

[1] The original plan included the sending of one hundred and fifty boys, but the fund laid aside for the purpose was found to be insufficient to cover the cost of the full number.

Digitized by Google

tion capable and active in the studies set before them, and as their hold upon the language increased, began to outrank all but the brightest of their American classmates. As they advanced into the higher scientific schools or colleges, greater liberty was allowed them, each boy pursuing his inclination as to a special course or institution. With the appointment of Yung Wing to the Chinese legation at Washington and the arrival of one Wu Tsz'-tăng (who knew no English) as commissioner in his place at Hartford, the complexion of this enterprise seems to have changed. In the spring of 1881 a formal memorial, endorsed by Chin Lan-pin, the minister at Washington, was addressed to the home government, complaining of the course of study pursued by these youths as including Latin and Greek and other unnecessary subjects; of the disrespectful behavior of the boys when brought before their chiefs; of their deplorable lack of patriotism; of their forgetting their mother tongue, and other sins of omission and commission. The memorial seems to have fallen in with the desires of those momentarily in power at Peking; the commission and students were all recalled by the return mail, and arrived at Shanghai in the fall of the same year.

Although this action may have been in some degree prompted by a spirit of conservatism and distrust, the leading motive of the Chinese government cannot be far to seek. Had these boys of a dozen years each received his fifteen years' instruction in our common-school, classical, and professional courses, it is impossible to believe that they would not at the end of this time have been more American than Chinese. Their speedy recall was a matter of regret to the many friends these interesting lads had made in New England, but from a truly Chinese stand-point this foreign popularity would become as the flesh-pots of Egypt to them after their return to the arid intellectual life in China—and the event in one or two instances appears to have proved the shrewdness of this surmise. However, this experiment can in no wise be considered a failure, even if we consider only the knowledge of English and elements of a western education obtained by each student; how considerable has been its success will be seen when the

Digitized by Google

young men—now engaged by their government in telegraph posts, arsenals, schools, etc.—shall have achieved sufficient distinction in their various professions to prove their fitness for the pains bestowed upon them. The organization of schools for other than Chinese methods of education is already begun in China—as, for example, the Tung-wăn Kwan, under charge of Dr. Martin, at Peking—and from these a much more rational advance to their proper position in scientific knowledge may be expected, than by hazardous schemes of foreign tuition.

The pages of this brief compendium of our present knowledge of the Chinese Empire were not written in the first place, nor have they been revised, with any intent to laud that people beyond their just deserts. What there is of weakness, vice, narrowness, bigotry, in the national character has been pointed out with great frankness, while their blindness and folly after the lessons of two warlike visitations from foreign nations have not passed unnoticed. The experiences of the last three decades will probably prove more momentous for the Chinese than those of any previous century in their history, and these have not come about without much bitterness and the surly traces of misunderstanding and misrepresentation. But the great fact must have become apparent, even to the cursory reader, that in the Chinese character are elements which in due time must lift her out of the terribly backward position into which she had fallen and raise her to a rank among the foremost of nations. There is a basis of encouragement when we kĕep in mind the literary institutions of the country and their early attention to obtaining a corps of scientific men of their own nationality, as in the effort just mentioned.[1]

[1] The reserved force in the Chinese character was very strikingly brought out in a new-year's call at Peking, which the writer remembers, in 1870. The topic came up as to how to diminish the expense of getting coal from the mines to the city (which up to that time was carried on camels and mules), so as to put it within the reach of the poor people. I suggested a tram road as the best plan for the fifty miles distance from the mines, and involving trifling expense. After listening to the plan, Tan Ting-siang, one of the members of the Board of Revenue, and Prince Kung, together exclaimed, "*Tieh-lu lai liao! Tieh-lu lai liao!*" ('Railroads are coming in time'). The ex-

Digitized by Google

Another ground of hope—and these words are as pertinent to-day as when written thirty-five years ago—lies in the matter-of-fact habits of the Chinese, their want of enthusiasm and dislike of change, which are rather favorable than otherwise to their development as a great community. The presentation and reception of the highest truths and motives the human mind can realize always excites thought and action; the chiefest fear must be that of going too fast in schemes of reform and correction, and demolishing the fabric before its elements are ready for reconstruction. The non-existence of caste, the weakness of a priesthood which cannot nerve its persecuting arm with the power of the State, the scanty influence religion has over the popular mind, the simplicity of ancestral worship, the absence of the allurements of gorgeous temples, splendid ritual, seductive music, gay processions, and above all, sanctified licentiousness, to uphold and render it enticing to depraved human nature, the popular origin of all government holidays, and lastly, the degree of industry, loyalty, and respect for life and property—these are characteristics which furnish some grounds for trusting that the regeneration of China will be accomplished, like the operation of leaven in meal, without shivering the vessel.

---

istence of the treaty principle of ex-territoriality and its consequences is constantly before the Chinese high officers, though they appreciate as well the fact that their country is preparing and will be the better for such improvements.

Digitized by Google

INDEX.

ABACUS, or *Swanpan*, principle of, ii. 66.
Abeel, Rev. D., i. 134, 835, ii. 240; arrives in China, ii. 325, 327, 338, 348; memoir, ii. 368.
Abel, Clarke, i. 363, ii. 458.
Aboriculture, curiosities of, ii. 12.
Aboriginal races, of China, i. 41; of Formosa, i. 137; in Hunan, i. 148.
Abulgasi (History of the Tartars), i. 202–203.
Abu Zaid, his work on China, ii. 163; generally trustworthy, ii. 414, 425.
Acupuncture, ii. 123.
Adams, Hon. John Quincy, his mistaken notions of Chinese war, ii. 469.
Agar-agar, a glue made from seaweed, ii. 397.
Agnosticism, Chinese, ii. 201.
Agriculture, Temple of, Peking, i. 78; in loess fields, i. 362; Chinese works upon, i. 686; consideration of, ii. 1; utensils, ii. 3.
Aksu, town and river of Ili, i. 225; Yakub Beg captures, ii. 730.
Alabaster's *Wheel of the Law*, ii. 229.
Alak. See Tien Shan.
Alcock, Sir R., ii. 627.
Almanac, rectified by Jesuits, ii. 68, 298; its importance, ii. 79.
Altai, *i.e.*, 'Golden Mountains,' or Kin Shan, i. 9.
Altars, to Heaven, Agriculture, and Earth, Peking, i. 76–78; fashion of Romish, in China, ii. 315.
Altchuku, or A-shi-ho, town in Kirin, i. 197.
Alum, found in Sz'chuen, i. 308; an article of export, ii. 392.
Amber, brought to China, ii. 398.
Amherst, Lord, rebuff of his embassy at Yuen-ming Yuen, i. 80; his mission to the capital, ii. 458.
American, missionaries and the Hangchau settlement, ii. 351; treaty with China respecting toleration of Christianity, ii. 360; trade with China, ii. 460; residents at Canton and Governor Lin, ii. 514; embassy to China concludes treaty of Wanghia, ii. 567; homicide of Chinese by, in Canton, ii. 568; Chinese favorably disposed toward, ii. 570; fleet destroy the Barrier forts, ii. 638; government asked to co-operate with England, ii. 642; minister, Mr. Reed, arrives in China, ii. 643; minister, Mr. Ward, co-operates in preventing coolie trade, ii. 663; negotiations with the Chinese officials at Taku forts, ii. 665; embassy escorted to Peking via Pehtang, ii. 669; minister refuses to kotow and returns, ii. 670; sailor hung for murder at Shanghai, ii. 696; treaty with China negotiated by Burlingame, ii. 698; missionaries frightened away from Tängchau, ii. 705.
Amiot, Père, i. 598, ii. 96, 149, 309.
Ampère, J. J., i. 715.
Amoy, climate of, i. 53; island, i. 129; city, i. 133; its environs, i. 134; lexicon, the *Shih-wu Yin*, i. 590; dialect, i. 611, 612, 615; New Year usages at, i. 814; infanticide at, ii. 289; sentiment toward foreigners, ii. 338; Protestant mission at, ii. 348; Chinese and Dutch take, ii. 438; East India Company trade at, ii. 445, 448; taken by the English, ii. 524, 528; not hostile to foreigners, ii. 573; during Tai-ping Rebellion, ii. 629.
Amulets and charms, to ward off evil, ii. 255–257.
Amusements, at dinner, i. 808; out-door, i. 825; peaceful character of Chinese, i. 829.
Amur River (called also Sagalien, Kwän-tung, Helung kiang), i. 189.
Analects of Confucius, the *Lun Yu*, i. 656.
Ancestral worship, compatible with Buddhism, ii. 223; its antiquity, ii. 236; its forms, etc., ii. 250–255; allowed by Ricci, ii. 292, 299; and Christianity, ii. 355.
Anderson, Dr. John, i. 79, 181, 184, 337, ii. 719, 721, 722.

Digitized by Google

Anglo-Chinese College at Malacca, ii. 324.
Animals, of China, quadrumanous, i. 314–317, carnivorous, 317–320, ruminants, 320–323, domestic, 323–326, rodents and smaller animals, 326–329, cetaceous, 329–330, four fabulous, 342–345; in the *Herbal*, i. 374–377; used as food, i. 772, 776; pack, ii. 7; of the calendar and zodiac, ii. 69, 71; sculptured, ii. 115.
Ant-eater, or pangolin, Chinese ideas of, i. 328.
Antelope, *hwang yang*, or *dzeren*, of Mongolia, i. 321.
An-ting mán, in Peking wall, i. 63; opened to the allied troops, ii. 686.
Ants, studied by Chinese, i. 354.
Apple, or *haw*, of Manchuria, i. 366.
Arab, merchants introduce the name *China* into Europe, i. 3; travellers in China, ii. 168, 414, 421; name for opium, ii. 373.
Arabdan, khan of the Songares, i. 233.
Architecture, Chinese, compared with Indian, i. 726, domestic, 728, military, 758; its needs and limitations, ii. 116.
Area of the Eighteen Provinces, i. 272, 276.
Argali, mountain sheep, in China, i. 321.
Arithmetic, Chinese knowledge of, ii. 66.
Arms used in warfare, ii. 88.
Army of China, pay of, i. 293; laws concerning, i. 388; memorial as to its condition in 1838, i. 494; examination system in, i. 560; in theory and practice, ii. 88–93; its condition on outbreak of Tai-ping Rebellion, ii. 590.
Arnold's *Light of Asia*, ii. 220.
Arrow, case of the lorcha, ii. 359, 635–638.
Art, Chinese, in book illustrations, i. 686; in aboriculture, ii. 13; in bronze, ii. 21; porcelain decorations, ii. 25; carving, etc., ii. 59; illustrative, ii. 105–111; symbolic, ii. 111, 112; caricatures, ii. 115; export of objects of, ii. 393; example of, ii. 686, note.
Assam, tea native of, ii. 51.
Ass, wild, of the steppes, i. 212, 322.
Assembly halls, or club-houses, in Chinese cities, i. 76, 122, 167, 739.
Astrology and divination, ii. 69, 74.
Astronomy, Chinese study of, ii. 68, 72; romance of, ii. 76; and Jesuits, ii. 298.
Atkinson, T. W., i. 331.
Atlas of China, the *Tien Chu*, or 'Heaven's Pillar Mountains,' i. 13.
Auber, Peter, on foreign trade with China, ii. 450, 453.
Audience, of officials before Emperor of China, i. 801; of the Dutch ambassadors Goyer and Keyzer, ii. 435; of Lord Macartney, ii. 455; question not raised by Cushing, ii. 570; question discussed by Ward's embassy at Peking, ii. 669; Swinhoe's description of an, at Yuen-ming Yuen, ii. 683; granted to all foreign ministers, ii. 714.
Azaleas about Ningpo, i. 370.
Azure Sea (see Koko-nor), i. 210.

BABER, E. C., i. 181; sent on Grosvenor mission, ii. 723, 724.
Baldwin, C. C., i. 615.
Balfour, F. H., ii. 212.
Ball, Samuel, ii. 55, 373.
Ballads, specimens of Chinese, i. 705–714.
Balls, hollow, how carved, ii. 59.
Bamboo, beauty and uses of, i. 358–360; articles exported, ii. 393.
Bamboo books, the, i. 681; their authenticity, ii. 149, 155.
Banditti numerous in China, i. 486, 495, 497.
Banks and banking system in China, ii. 85.
Baptism, of moribund infants by Catholics, ii. 310; discussion among missionaries concerning word for, ii. 363.
Baptist Missionary Society in Hong Kong, ii. 347.
Barbers' establishments in China, i. 760; their treatment of the eyes, ii. 120.
Barkul (or Chinsi fu), town and lake of Kansuh, i. 214.
Barkut, or golden eagle, hunting with, i. 331.
Barrier forts, near Canton, destroyed by Americans, ii. 638.
Barrow, J., i. 22, 105, 117, 175, 287, 290, 741, 755, 772; ii. 5, 95, 97, 104, 240, 455.
Batang, in Se'chuen, i. 20.
Bats, Chinese, i. 316; symbol of happiness, ii. 111.
Bayan-kara in the Kwánlun system, i. 11, 211.
Bazin, i. 345, 714, ii. 213, 217.
Beal, Samuel, ii. 229.
Beal, T., aviary of, at Macao, i. 341.
Bears, Chinese, i. 317.
Beggars, on the Tai-shan, i. 91; in Canton, i. 736; how controlled, i. 742; condition of, i. 885; and Buddhist priests, ii. 226; alms for, ii. 263.
Bell, great, of Peking, i. 74; temple of, at Peking, i. 79.
Bell, John, his residence at Peking, ii. 442.
Belles-lettres, character and variety of Chinese, i. 674.
Bellew, Dr. H. W., i. 224, 227.
Bells, rich in tone, ii. 20.
Belur-tag, Tartash ling, *Tsung ling*, 'Onion' or 'Blue Mountains,' i. 9.
Benevolent institutions, Chinese, ii. 263–266; foreign: Morrison's and Parker's hospitals, ii. 333; Society for Diffusion of Useful Knowledge, ii. 340; Morrison Education Society, ii. 341.

Digitized by Google

Bentham, Geo., i. 296, 355.
Betel-nut, a masticatory, how used, ii. 397.
Betrothment, ceremonies relative to, i. 785; 'spilling the tea,' i. 793; evils attending early, i. 795.
Bible, translated by Nestorians, ii. 286; Montecorvino ordered to illustrate the, ii. 288; withheld from Chinese by Ricci, ii. 292; Dr. Morrison's translation, ii. 319, 320; revision, ii. 363, 364; contains the earliest notice of China, ii. 408; revision and J. R. Morrison, ii. 560.
Biche-de-mer, or sea-slug, how eaten, i. 780; imported, ii. 397.
Bickmore, A. S., i. 296.
Biographies, numerous in Chinese literature, i. 681.
Biot, Edouard, i. 259, 263, 271, 413, 421, 482, 521, 543, 554, 559, 590, 638, 644, 681, ii. 34. 87, 203.
Birds, of Tibet, i. 243; of China, i. 330–341; under one radical, i. 374.
Birds'-nest soup, its preparation, i. 780; and sharks' fins imported, ii. 397.
Birthday fête at Ningpo, i. 814.
Black-haired race, *Li Min*, common term for Chinese, i. 5.
Blacksmith, his shop and tools, ii. 57.
Blakiston, T. W., i. 21–22, 145, 305.
Blodget, Dr. H., ii. 364.
Blood of animals used for food, medicines, etc., i. 778.
Boards, Six, in government, i. 415; Civil Office, i. 421; Revenue, i. 422; Rites, i. 423; War, i. 424; Punishments, i. 426; Works, i. 427; presidents of, i. 436; subordinate offices in the, i. 559.
Boats, bridge of, at Ningpo, i. 121; variety and number of, in China, i. 749–753; decorated at New Year, i. 813; and internal navigation of China, ii. 390.
Bogue, or Bocca Tigris, near Canton, i. 160; negotiations with Kishen at, ii. 517; forts taken, ii. 520; destroyed again, ii. 528; supplementary treaty signed at, ii. 561; Governor Davis retakes the forts, ii. 573.
Bonham, Governor, visits the Tai-pings at Nanking, ii. 577; advised by gentry of Canton not to enter the city, ii. 625.
Book of Rites (*Li Ki*), i. 424, 520, 643–647, 805, ii. 33.
Book of Odes (*Shi King*), i. 636–643, ii. 236, 321.
Book of Records (*Shu King*), i. 633–636, 808, ii. 32, 36, 68, 146 ff., 169, 372.
Book of Changes (*Yih King*), i. 627–633.
Books, used in schools, i. 526–541, 574; manufacture and price of, i. 600–602; burned by Tsin, B.C. 200, ii. 161; Nestorian, destroyed, ii. 286; circulated in the opium traffic, ii. 379; destroyed at Canton, ii. 626; by Protestants, ii. 328, 331, 340.
Boone, W. J., ii. 338, 348.
Bore, or Eagre, of the Tsientang, i. 114, ii. 415.
Borget, A., i. 128, 320, 771.
Bostang-nor, or Lake Bagarash, i. 24, 223, 224.
Botany, of China, i. 355–370; of the *Pun tsao*, i. 372–374.
Boulger, D. C., i. 237, ii. 137; notice of Turkestan, ii. 728; of Mohammedan revolt, ii. 730, 731.
Boundaries, of the Chinese Empire, i. 6; of the Eighteen Provinces, i. 8; made under Kienlung, i. 59; of Ili, i. 215; of Tibet, i. 237; disputes concerning the Amur, ii. 441; of the Empire near Kuldja, ii. 733.
Bowring, Sir John, i. 459; his relations with Yeh, ii. 633; his character, ii. 634; action in the Arrow case, ii. 635; opens hostilities with China, ii. 637; his conduct discussed in Parliament, ii. 641.
Braam, Andreas van, Dutch ambassador to Kienlung, i. 324, ii. 439.
Bremer, Sir Gordon, attacks Tinghai with the fleet, ii. 514; takes the Bogue forts, ii. 517, 520; sails for Calcutta, ii. 521.
Breton, i. 314, 771.
Bretschneider, Dr. E., i. 84, 345, 651, ii. 413.
Bribes, nature and extent of, among officials, i. 474; at examinations, i. 569.
Bricks, Chinese, their shapes and uses, i. 728.
Bridges, construction and variety of, in China, i. 753–756.
Bridgman, Dr. E. C., i. 530, 537, ii. 277; arrives in China, ii. 327, 332, 335, 342, 346.
Bridgman, J. G., i. 43, 269, 316.
Bronze, beauty and excellence of, ii. 20.
Brosset, *jeune*, i. 643.
Brown, Rev. S. R., ii. 342, 344.
Bruce, Sir Frederick A., and reorganization of Ever-Victorious force, ii. 611; commendation of Gordon's conduct, ii. 619; sent by Elgin to commissioners at Tientsin, ii. 655; repairs to Taku with the allies, ii. 664, 665, 671, 672; his good offices in Lay-Osborne flotilla affair, ii. 693, 694; his influence in China, ii. 699.
Buddha, temple and statue of, in Peking, i. 71; near Si-ngan, i. 151; his life, ii. 218; Chinese expedition to buy relics of, ii. 414.
Buddhism, of the Mongols, i. 205, ii. 234; in Khoten, i. 231; the lion and, i. 317; ridiculed in the 'Sacred Commands,' i. 689; and pagodas in China,

Digitized by Google

i. 744; introduced A.D. 65, under Ming ti, ii. 163; in fourth century A.D., ii. 165; and the Emperor Wu ti, ii. 166; its growth in China, ii. 217–229; and Romanism compared, ii. 231, 315; bibliography, ii. 299, 232, 234; and *fung-shui*, ii. 246.
Buddhist, name for China, *Chin-tan*, i. 3, 5; Olympus, i. 12; temples in Peking, i. 73–79; manufactories at Dolon-nor, i. 87; temples in Hang-chan, i. 118; on Puto Island, i. 124; at Canton, i. 164–166; books translated into Mongolian, i. 206; temples at Kuldja, i. 218; at H'lassa, i. 245; priests and snakes, i. 346; images in clam-shells, i. 350; *chakrawartiti* and Chinese *kwangti*, i. 395; arrangement of Chinese characters, i. 589; tractate, i. 708; chanting, ii. 96; pilgrims between India and China, ii. 413; notions of cosmogony, ii. 139; charm cut in Kü-yung kwan gateway, ii. 176; missionaries in China, ii. 189; priest as rain-maker, ii. 203; priests oppose Nestorians, ii. 280, 286.
Buffalo (*shui niu*), used more than the ox, i. 274, 330; in rice-fields, ii. 3; worshipped, ii. 14.
Bukur, a town of Ili, i. 225.
Bunge, Alex. von, i. 296, 355.
Burdon, Bishop J., ii. 364.
Burgevine, succeeds Ward in command of the Ever-Victorious force, ii. 609; goes over to Tai-pings, ii. 613; his proposal to Gordon, ii. 614.
Burial, of lamas in Tibet, i. 250; places in China, i. 275; ceremonies attending, ii. 243–255; ceremonies and Christians, ii. 313.
Burkhan-buddha in the Kwänlun system, i. 11, 211.
Burlingame, Hon. Anson, ii. 695; enters upon his mission to foreign powers, ii. 696; his death, ii. 698; influence in China, ii. 699.
Bushell, Dr. S. W., i. 88, ii. 160, 174.

CABINET, or Imperial Chancery, i. 415–417.
Callery, J. M., i. 589, 643, 644, 672, 627.
Cambaluc (Peking), i. 61, 63, 65.
Camellia, a favorite flower, i. 367; akin to tea, ii. 40.
Camels, wild, of Lob-nor, i. 223; usefulness of, i. 325; hair rugs, ii. 89.
Camphor on Formosa, i. 140; its preparation, ii. 55.
Canals (see Grand Canal, i. 31), i. 37.
Candida, a Roman Catholic convert, establishes hospitals, ii. 265; baptized, ii. 292; her good works, ii. 294.
Cangue (*kia*), its use as a punishment, i. 509.
Canfu (or Kanpu), i. 127, ii. 414; Abu Zaid concerning, ii. 415.
Cannon, imitating English, found, ii. 63; cast by Jesuit missionaries, ii. 298; found at Tinghai, ii. 535; at Shanghai, ii. 536; at Barrier forts, ii. 638.
Canton, climate of, i. 53; rainfall, i. 56; description, i. 160–169; environs, i. 169–170; granaries in, i. 295; the *tan-kia*, i. 412, 751; location of magistrates in, i. 445; Gov. Chu's departure from, i. 462; 'Free Discussion Hall' at, i. 488; executions at, in 1854, i. 513; prisons, i. 514; examinations, i. 550; words in dialect, i. 611, 614; shops, i. 736; street scenes, i. 740; fire control in, i. 743; the river craft of, i. 749; dog-meat restaurants, i. 778; at New Year, i. 813; at Feast of Lanterns, i. 819; porcelain painting, ii. 26; a cotton-factory experiment at, ii. 62; taken by Manchus in 1650, ii. 179; the prefect and governor of, pray for rain, ii. 203–205; infanticide rare in, ii. 239, 242; disposal of the dead at, ii. 254; worship at street shrines, ii. 263; Moslems in, ii. 268; excitement in, about Portuguese, ii. 292; Morrison arrives in, ii. 318; dies there, ii. 327; unpromising field for missionaries, ii. 346; Marcus Aurelius's embassy enters, ii. 410; the East India Company established at, ii. 446; homicides among foreigners in, ii. 451; Lord Napier at, ii. 467–473; foreigners detained by Lin at, ii. 498; Elliot leaves, ii. 503; fortified, ii. 513, 521; Elliot accepts a ransom for, ii. 523; dislike of foreigners at close of war, ii. 555; Kiying sent to, ii. 557; troubles at, with foreigners, ii. 568; question of admittance to the city, ii. 573; lawlessness at, ii. 580; sentiment in, ii. 625; rebels about, ii. 630; their wholesale execution, ii. 632; Admiral Seymour enters, ii. 638; French legation withdraws from, ii. 639; taken by Franco-English forces, ii. 644; influence of Elgin's tact at, ii. 647, 661; coolies with British at Taku, ii. 674; French missionary aggressions at, ii. 709.
Cantor, Dr. T. E., i. 350, 351.
Caps, various official, i. 414.
Cards, visiting, i. 802.
Caricature in Chinese art, ii. 115.
Carving, delicacy of Chinese, ii. 59; export of, ii. 394; horn and ivory, ii. 400.
Cassia, and cinnamon, ii. 55; and cassia oil as exports, ii. 392; the *malabathrum* of the Periplus, ii. 412.
Catalogue, Imperial, i. 626; of ancient Chinese books recovered, ii. 149.
Cathay, a modern Persian name for China, i. 4; its signification in the Middle Ages, ii. 408.

Digitized by Google

Cats (*kia-li*), in China, i. 318; eaten, i. 777.
Celestial Empire, derived from *Tien Chau*, 'Heavenly Dynasty,' i. 5.
Celestial Mountains. See Tien Shan.
Censorate, its duties and influence, i. 480–483.
Censors, reports from, i. 464, 480, 566.
Censuses of China, i. 258–264; considered and compared, i. 265–272; method of taking, i. 280–282; probable accuracy, i. 283–288.
'Century of Surnames' (*Pih Kia Sing*), a school-book, i. 530.
Ceremonies, importance of, in government, i. 424; Court of, i. 435; the *Siao Hioh* upon, i. 540; in broader sense mean *li*, i. 645; marriage, i. 787–791; of obeisance at court, i. 801; funeral, ii. 243–250.
Ceylon, Yungloh's expedition against, ii. 414.
Chahar. See Tsakhar, i. 87.
Chalmers, John, ii. 72, 207, 211.
Chang-an, in Shensi. See Si-ngan.
Changchau, in Fuhkien, i. 135–136; bridge at, i. 755; infanticide in, ii. 240; taken by Tai-pings, ii. 605.
Chang-peh Shan, 'Long White Mountains,' their position, i. 10; called Kolmin-shanguin alin by Manchus, i. 13, 188.
Changsha, capital of Hunan, i. 147; stormed by Tai-pings, ii. 595.
Chapu, i. 126, ii. 414; captured by the British, ii. 533.
Characters, Chinese, for bee, ant, etc., i. 354; botanical, i. 372; zoölogical, i. 374; method of memorizing, at school, i. 541; origin of, i. 580; six classes, i. 583; their number, i. 589; classification, i. 590–598.
Chau, 'department' or 'district,' term explained, i. 58; prefect of, i. 441.
Chau dynasty, term 'Middle Kingdom' dates from, i. 4; and the Kwoh-tsz' Kien, i. 543; King Wăn of the, i. 629; Duke, i. 637, 643, 808, ii. 157–160; After Chau, ii. 172.
Chau hu, 'Nest Lake,' in Nganhwui, i. 109.
Chau-li, or 'Ritual of Chau,' i. 482; its character, i. 643.
Chau-sin, Emperor of the Shang, ii. 156.
Chehkiang province, climate of, i. 55; position and water ways, i. 114; trees and productions, i. 115; the mulberry in, ii. 11; silk, ii. 34; missions in, ii. 351.
Chess, the Chinese games of, i. 827–829.
Chih-li, 'Direct rule,' term explained, i. 58.
Chihli province, position, i. 60; lakes and rivers of, i. 88; productions, i. 89.
Children, course of study for, i. 521–541; how regarded in ancient times, i. 640; arrangement of their hair, i. 765; names, i. 797; how spoken of, i. 804; infanticide, ii. 239 ff.; foundling hospitals for, ii. 264; baptism of, by Catholics, ii. 310; in the Tientsin Romanist orphan asylum, ii. 700.
Chifu, in Shantung, i. 90, 93; gold near, i. 311; French at, ii. 672; convention, ii. 724.
Chin dynasty, its trade and intercourse, ii. 166.
Chin, sub-district or department, term explained, i. 59.
Chin Hwa-ching, Chinese general, at Wusung, ii. 534; his bravery, ii. 535.
China, origin of name uncertain, probably from *Tsin*, i. 2, ii. 161; name introduced into Europe by Arab traders, i. 3; native names of, i. 4; Buddhist and Mohammedan terms for, i. 5; dimensions of the Empire, i. 5; of the Eighteen Provinces, i. 8; boundaries, i. 6; its three grand divisions, i. 7; its mountain systems, i. 9; deserts, i. 15–17; rivers, i. 18; lakes, i. 23; coast, i. 25; Great Wall of, i. 29; Grand Canal, i. 31; roads, i. 37; general aspect, i. 40; aboriginal races of, i. 42; climate on coast of, compared with America, i. 55; colonies, i. 185–257; population, i. 264; science in, i. 297, 377; education in, i. 521 ff.; popular ideas concerning, i. 724; methods of cultivation in, ii. 7; its early history not without foundation, ii. 135; Christianity in, ii. 275; survey of, by the Jesuits, ii. 303; prospects of Christian missions in, ii. 354; ancient and modern commerce of, ii. 372, 390 ff.; earliest notices of, ii. 408; general condition of, after first war, ii. 573; forcibly opened, ii. 656; condition in 1865, ii. 692; hopeful prospects for the country, ii. 738, 742.
Chinchew, or Tsiuenchau, the ancient Zayton, i. 129, 136; bridge at, i. 755; Portuguese traders at, ii. 428.
Chin-chin, origin of the word, i. 805.
Chinese, race types, i. 41; women, i. 42; industry and civilization of, i. 46; works on geography, i. 49; people of Shantung, i. 93; policy in Ili, i. 214 ff.; *Herbal*, i. 370–377; political education of, i. 384; divisions of society, i. 411; advancement affected by their language, i. 579; philosophy mixed with divination, i. 629, 632, ii. 74; care of their early records, i. 651; their notions of foreign countries, i. 725; popular ideas respecting their food, i. 777; their social customs, i. 782; regulations regarding marriage, i. 792; names, how written, i. 798; ceremony and etiquette, i.

Digitized by Google

800; a temperate people, i. 808; commendable traits of the, i. 833; gardeners rather than farmers, ii. 3; society, industry of, ii. 63; their tendency to co-operate, ii. 88; chronology and cosmogony, ii. 136–144; their origin, ii. 144; adopt the queue, ii. 179; causes of their remarkable duration, ii. 188 ff.; influence of ancestral worship on, ii. 237 ff.; benevolence, ii. 263 ff.; Christian missions among the, ii. 275; character of, emigrants in the Archipelago, ii. 323; future influence of newspapers among, ii. 341; generally irreligious, ii. 355; their early isolation and suspicion, ii. 406; subsequent estimate of foreigners influenced by early Portuguese traders, ii. 427; maltreated by Spaniards in Manila, ii. 432; terms for 'foreigner,' ii. 461; view of first war with England, ii. 508; national confidence during Taiping Rebellion, ii. 604, 625; foreigners' abuse of, ii. 706; character as exhibited during the great famine, ii. 735, 736; Education Commission to the United States, ii. 739, 740.

Chinese Repository, its origin and object, ii. 332; on first war with England, ii. 550.

Chinhai, in Chehkiang, i. 123; capture of, ii. 526.

Ching-hwang miao, of Peking, i. 69; in Canton, i. 165; in Shanghai, i. 107, ii. 202, 535.

Chingtih. See Jeh-ho, i. 88.

Chingtu, in Sz'chuen, i. 149, 156–157.

Chinkiang, in Kiangsu, i. 104; Nestorians in, ii. 285; capture by British, ii. 540; by Tai-pings, ii. 596; recaptured by rebels, ii. 605.

Cholera and small-pox common, ii. 132.

Chop (*hao*), meaning of the term, i. 800; in tea trade, ii. 48.

Chop-sticks (*kwai tsz'*), how used, i. 807.

Christianity, and the Sabbath in China, i. 810; its introduction into China by Nestorians, ii. 275; by Roman Catholics, ii. 287; confounded with Triad Sect, ii. 312; Protestants commence their labors, ii. 318; prospects for toleration in China, ii. 354; preached in Formosa by the Dutch, ii. 434; Hung Siu-tsuen accepts, ii. 586; he studies at Canton, ii. 588; absence of its principles in Tai-ping movement, ii. 600; Lord Elgin's reply to missionaries concerning, ii. 649; and missions in China, problem discussed by the officials, ii. 707.

Chronology, Chinese, ii. 135; its claims to belief, ii. 143.

Chu, Governor, valedictory ode of, i. 462.

Chu Hí, commentator of Confucius, his home in Kiangsi, i. 113; his *Siao Hioh*, i. 540; commentaries of, i. 652, 654, 677; his philosophy, i. 683; on cosmogony, ii. 141; on Tablet of Yu, ii. 150, 174, 200.

Chukiang. See Pearl River, i. 22, 159, etc.

Chung-ho tien, 'Hall of Central Peace,' Palace at Peking, i. 68.

Chunghow, escorts American embassy to Peking, ii. 668; in the Tientsin riot, ii. 702, 703; sent to France on a mission of apology, ii. 705; abused by the foreign press, ii. 706; sent to Russia, ii. 731; punishment for negotiating treaty of Livadia, ii. 732.

Chungking, in Sz'chuen, i. 155, 158.

Chung Kwoh, or 'Middle Kingdom,' name for China since B.C. 1150, i. 4, 98.

Chusan Archipelago, i. 128–126; British fleet arrives at, ii. 515; restored, ii. 580.

Chun Tsiu, or 'Spring and Autumn Record,' i. 647–651, 663.

Chu Tsun, a censor, i. 432.

Cibot, Père, i. 537, ii. 14.

Cicadas, tricks with, i. 352.

Cities in China, aspect of, i. 40; arrangement of streets in, i. 738; their dull appearance, i. 746.

Civilization, of the Chinese, i. 46, 380–383; the wife in, i. 792.

Club-houses, in Peking, i. 76; Ningpo, i. 122; Canton, i. 167, 739.

Clans, in south China, i. 482; their customs, i. 484; secret societies, i. 492; in the Archipelago, ii. 323.

Classics, or Chinese canonical books, characters in, i. 589; the minor, as school-books, i. 526–541; price of the nine, i. 602; the five chief, described, i. 627–651; the 'Four Books,' or minor, i. 652–672; Hall of the, i. 74, 730.

Clientelage in Chinese official ranks, i. 461.

Climate, of Eighteen Provinces, i. 50; of Mongolia, i. 201; of Ili, i. 223; of Tibet, i. 241.

Cloisonné, its manufacture, ii. 60.

Coal, in Chihli, i. 89; in Shantung, i. 93; in Shansi, i. 94–95; in Formosa, i. 139; in Hunan, i. 147; Kwangtung, i. 174; Yunnan, i. 184; mode of working, i. 305.

Coast, length of Chinese, i. 7; granitic mountains of, i. 14; character of, i. 26; climate of, i. 55; trade along the, ii. 389.

Cobblers, itinerant, ii. 39.

Cobdo province, i. 208; Tourgouths in, i. 220.

Coffin, C. C., i. 781.

Coffins, stored in temples, i. 275; form and value of, ii. 244; in *lararium*, ii. 254.

Cole, R., i. 604, ii. 325, 350.

Colledge, Dr. T. R., his hospital at Macao, ii. 333, 335.

Digitized by Google

Colleges, in Canton, i. 542, 545; Anglo-Chinese, at Malacca, ii. 324.
Collie, Rev. David, i. 654, ii. 324, 368.
Colonial Office, Peking, i. 72, 428.
Colonial Possessions of China, i. 7; general table of, i. 186; population, i. 284; governed by the Li Fan Yuen, i. 428.
Commerce, Chinese, ii. 372–405. See also under Trade
Concessions, or foreign settlements at trade ports, ii. 626.
Concubines, their position in the household, i. 791.
Confucius, worship of, in 'Hall of Intense Thought,' Peking, i. 69; temple to, at Peking, i. 73, ii. 159; birthplace, i. 90; 'bird of,' the peacock, i. 337; influence of, on permanence of Chinese institutions, i. 381; family of, ennobled, i. 387, 406, 520, 525; and Hiang Toh, i. 534, 536, 538, 630, 637; and the *Li Ki*, i. 644; his *Chun Tsiu*, i. 647; *Analects* of, i. 656; his life, i. 658; character of his philosophy, i. 663; worship of, i. 664; influence in government polity, ii. 92; on music, ii. 94; and early emperors, ii. 146; writings burned, ii. 161; worshipped, ii. 195; on religion, ii. 199; temples to, ii. 203; as an example, ii. 206; his meeting with Lau-tsz', ii. 212, 218, 237.
Contrarieties in Chinese and Western usages, i. 829–833.
Cooking among the Chinese, i. 781.
Coolie trade, and Kwangtung rebellion, ii. 631; its atrocities, and efforts toward its suppression, ii. 662; labor employed by the British at Taku, ii. 684; convention signed respecting, ii. 698; is finally abolished, ii. 715.
Cooper, T. T., i. 43, ii. 719.
Copper, in Yunnan, i. 184; uses and localities of, i. 311; manufacture, ii. 19.
Cordier, Henri, i. 624, 781, ii. 318, 624.
Corea, frontier of, i. 190; trade at Kí-iu wăn fair, i. 194; Chinese attempts to conquer, ii. 92; conquest of, by the Tang, ii. 169; language, ii. 190.
Cormorant, fishing with the, ii. 16; noticed by Friar Odoric, ii. 423.
Cosmogony, Chinese, ii. 137; Chu Hi's, ii. 141, 200.
Cotton cultivation, ii. 9; and manufacture, ii. 36, 62.
Cottrell, C. H., i. 207.
Council of State, or General Council, i. 415, 418.
Couriers, government and post, i. 389, 425.
Court, of Controllers, Peking, i. 69; arrangements of imperial, i. 407; of Colonial Government, i. 423; Censorate, i. 430, Transmission and Judicature, i. 433; minor courts, i. 435; criminal, i. 503; dialect, i. 613; ceremony of *kotow*, i. 801.
Creation, Chinese ideas concerning, ii. 137.
Crickets used for gambling, i. 352, 826.
Crime, laws respecting, in the code, i. 389.
Crow, the, on Desert of Sha-moh, i. 17; about Peking, i. 334.
Cushing, Hon. Caleb, appointed U. S. minister to China, ii. 565; concludes treaty of Wanghia with Kiying, ii. 567; correspondence in case of homicide, ii. 568.
Customs, management of, i. 444, ii. 402; internal transit, ii. 391; revenue, ii. 404; put into hands of foreigners at Shanghai, ii. 627, 658; under Mr. Hart, ii. 695.
Cutch, or terra japonica, a dye, imported, ii. 396.
Cuvier, Baron G., i. 343.
Cycle adopted by Hwangti, ii. 69, 146.
Cyclopedias in Chinese literature, i. 692.

DALAI-LAMA of Tibet, i. 245, 256; the Pope of Shamanism, ii. 233.
Dancing, or posture-making, ii. 104.
Daourian Mountains, on north frontier of China, i. 9.
Darwin, Charles R., i. 354.
Darwin, Erasmus, i. 357.
Dates, so-called, of China, the jujube plum, i. 365, 775.
D'Avezac, ii. 416, 418.
David, Père, i. 157, 243, 296, 314, 317, 331, 352, 355.
Davis, Sir J., notice of Grand Canal, i. 32; of Yuen-ming Yuen, i. 80; on Canal, i. 92; Nanking, i. 101; Ngan-king, i. 110; *Sketches*, i. 114, 161, 296, 297, 434, 561, 655; *Chinese Poetry*, i. 703, 714, 715, 719, 722, 745, ii. 19, 22, 27, 28, 55, 65, 79, 118, 137, 152, 179, 200, 214, 226, 232, 249, 252, 382, 406, 426, 446, 449, 454, 458, 464; Kiying introduced to, ii. 567; takes the Bogue forts, ii. 573, 574; his *China during the War*, ii. 576.
Day, its divisions, ii. 79.
Debts and debtors, laws and practice concerning, i. 515; at New Year, i. 811.
Deer, varieties of, in China, i. 321.
Degrees, four literary, in China, i. 547–560; sale of, i. 549, 566; value of, i. 571.
De Guignes, i. 37, 119, 266, 271, 286, 289, 291, 292, 681, 724, 735, 794, 806, 812, ii. 30, 32, 33, 72, 96, 207, 250, 271, 410, 439.
D'Herbelot, on origin of name *China*, i. 3; on *Tartar*, i. 202.
Deluge of Yao, probably an inundation, ii. 147.
Dennys, N. B., i. 84, 120, 176.
Density of population in China, i. 273.

Digitized by Google

Dent, invited to meet Lin in Canton, ii. 499; conducted to consulate by Captain Elliot, ii. 500; Lin probably wishes him as a hostage, ii. 508.
D'Entrecolles, ii. 26.
DeQuincey, Thomas, i. 234.
Desert of Gobi, or Sha-mob, i. 15. See Gobi.
Deshanterayes, Le Roux, i. 651.
Dew, Captain, captures Ningpo, ii. 609; before Shanhing, ii. 610.
Dialects, of the Chinese language, i. 611; the Mandarin, i. 613; Canton and Amoy, i. 614–616.
Dictionary, of Kanghi, i. 588, 591, 592, 602, 672; Dr. Morrison's, i. 611; its compilation, ii. 320.
Dictionaries, used by the Chinese, i. 589–591; words in various, i. 611; of dialects, i. 615; in the Imperial Catalogue, i. 672.
Dikes, along Yellow River, i. 19; the Grand Canal, i. 35; at Kaifung, i. 99, 100.
Dinners, formal Chinese, described, i. 806.
Dish-mending by travelling tinkers, ii. 58.
Diseases prevalent in China, ii. 129.
Divination, by the figures of the *Yih King*, i. 632; by the horary characters, ii. 69; at graves, ii. 246; Chinese, compared with Roman, ii. 261.
Divisions, of China, i. 7; of Mongolia, i. 202; of Tibet, i. 244; of society, i. 412; by Yang Kien into *chau*, *kien*, etc., ii. 167.
Divorce, laws respecting, i. 794.
Dogs, in China, i. 318; eaten, i. 777.
Dolon-nor, or Lama-miao, i. 87.
Dominican friars in China, ii. 297; rivalry and quarrels with Jesuits, ii. 299, 300; persecuted in Macao, ii. 302.
Doolittle, Justus, i. 480, 550, 559, 719, 752, 781, 788, 797, 817, 821, 827, ii. 14, 76, 87, 104, 119, 212, 231, 242, 248, 255, 261.
Douc, or Cochinchinese monkey, i. 314.
Douglas, Dr. C., i. 615.
Douglas, R. K., i. 663, ii. 217, 261.
Dragon, or *lung*, of the Chinese, i. 344; imperial emblem, i. 395; on Emperor's used as symbol, ii. 112; and grave geomancy, ii. 246.
Dragon-boat Festival, i. 148, 696, 816.
Dramas and plays in China, i. 714; résumé of a plot, i. 822.
Dress, style and variety of Chinese, i. 759; of Chinese women, i. 763; at theatrical representations, i. 822; felts and skins as, ii. 39; of Tai-pings, ii. 589.
Drought, action of officials during, ii. 203–205.
Drum Tower, Peking, i. 74; stone drums in Confucian Temple, ii. 159.
Ducks, numerous, i. 339; the mandarin, i. 340; hatching establishments, i. 778.
Dudgeon, Dr. J., i. 770, ii. 134, 240, 241, 443.
Dufresse, Romish missionary to China, ii. 306, 307; on infant baptism, ii. 311; his letters, ii. 317.
Du Halde, i. 62, 196, 593, ii. 137, 294, 443, 719.
Dunganis, Mohammedan tribe of, i. 210; and Yakub Beg, ii. 727; their revolt, ii. 730.
Du Ponceau, P. S., i. 586.
Dutch, bring tea into Europe, ii. 51; driven from Formosa by Koxinga, ii. 180; in the Pescadores, i. 141, ii. 433; and missionaries in the Archipelago, ii. 326; Chinese notice of, ii. 427; trade and embassies to China, ii. 434.
Dutch Folly Fort, at Canton, i. 163, 170; British bombard Canton from, ii. 640.
Dwellings, in loess, i. 301; in cities, construction and arrangement, i. 727–733; boats used as, i. 750.
Dyer, Samuel, i. 604, ii. 325, 368.
Dynasties, table of the Chinese, ii. 186.
Dzaring Lake, in Koko-nor, i. 18.

EAGLE, or Barkut, in Mongolia, i. 331.
East India Company, appoint Morrison as translator, ii. 319; oppose his son's press at Macao, ii. 345; and the opium trade with China, ii. 376, 377; its influence and character in China, ii. 443. 459, 463; attempt to start a trade at Fuhchau, ii. 445; control the British in China, ii. 453; its responsibility, ii. 458; its close, ii. 459, 738.
Eclipses, of moon at Canton, i. 819; Chinese observations of, ii. 73; noticed in the *Shu*, ii. 149.
Edicts, style of, and modes of publishing, i. 469.
Edkins, Dr. Joseph, i. 3, 752, ii. 197, 212, 217, 229, 247, 271, 364.
Education, in China, Chap. IX.; probable extent of, i. 545; female, i. 573–577; character of Chinese, ii. 370; of Chinese by missionaries, ii. 310, 341; of Chinese boys in the United States, ii. 739–741.
Egypt, Chinese snuff-bottles found in, ii. 27.
Eighteen Provinces (or China Proper), called *Shih-pah Sang* and *Chung Kwoh* in Chinese, i. 8; its mountain system, i. 14; boundaries, i. 25; coast, i. 26; climate, i. 50; topographical divisions, i. 58; area and population-density of, i. 272; their government, i. 437–443.

Digitized by Google

Eitel, Ernest, ii. 282, 247.
Elders of villages, their position, i. 483, 500.
Elephants at Peking, i. 323.
Eleuths, tribe of Mongols, i. 212, 219.
Elgin, Lord, his opinion of the Arrow case, ii. 637; arrival in China, ii. 643; before Canton city, ii. 644; construction of municipal control at its capture, ii. 646; replies to Shanghai missionaries on toleration of Christianity, ii. 649; reaches Tientsin, ii. 651; bearing toward the allies in Tientsin, ii. 654; and the opium question, ii. 657; visits the rebels at Hankow, ii. 659; among natives near Canton, ii. 661; reappointed plenipotentiary to China, ii. 671; refuses surrender of Taku forts and advances to Peking, ii. 677; view of the pillage of Yuen-ming Yuen, ii. 683; he orders its destruction, ii. 684; signs the treaty of Peking, ii. 686; his character, ii. 688.
Elliot, Admiral G., arrives at Chusan, ii. 515.
Elliot, Captain Charles, made superintendent of trade, ii. 481; his opinion of the opium trade, ii. 482; ordered to drive away opium ships, ii. 491; his exertions to stop smuggling, ii. 496; returns to Canton and offers co-operation with Lin, ii. 499; his circular upon surrendering the opium, ii. 502; leaves Canton with the prescribed Englishmen, ii. 503; retires with them on board ship, ii. 506; effect upon Lin of his protecting Dent, ii. 509; arrival off Chusan as plenipotentiary, ii. 515; interview with Kishen at Taku, ii. 516; at the Bogue, ii. 518; his humane policy, ii. 519; reward offered for, ii. 520; accepts a ransom for Canton, ii. 523; superseded by Sir H. Pottinger, ii. 524.
Ellis, Henry, i. 85, 174, 561, ii. 458.
Embassy, received by Kienlung, ii. 182; to China: of Marcus Aurelius, ii. 410; Ibn Batuta, ii. 422; character of an, during the Ming, ii. 426; the Portuguese send four, ii. 428; Spanish, ii. 432; Dutch, ii. 438, 439; Macartney's, ii. 454; Lord Amherst's, ii. 458; Pottinger's question concerning reception of an, ii. 552; the Burlingame, to foreign countries, ii. 697.
Embroidery, on official costume, i. 763; on ladies' dresses, i. 765; Chinese skill in, ii. 36.
Emigration, restrictions to, from China, i. 278, 411; character of, to the Archipelago, ii. 323; of Chinese to America, treaties respecting, ii. 699.
Emperor of China, his residence at Peking, i. 66–69; country place at Jeh-ho, i. 88; revenue of, i. 289; position, titles, etc., i. 393–399; inaugural proclamation, i. 399; coronation, i. 401; authority, i. 403; family of, i. 404; his escort, i. 410; relations with ministers, i. 420, 437; his dress, i. 768; worship, i. 801; his ceremony of ploughing, ii. 13; in Chinese annals, ii. 154; tables of Ming and Tsing, ii. 186; worships Heaven as *Tien-tsz'*, ii. 194–199; prays for rain, ii. 205; and ancestral worship, ii. 288; funeral of, ii. 250; worshipped in mosques, ii. 270; peculiarities about succession of the present, ii. 726.
Empress-dowager, position of, i. 409; death of the Eastern, ii. 727.
Empress-regent, two during Tungchi, ii. 184; their critical position at death of Hienfung, ii. 691; and marriage ceremonies of Tungchi, ii. 710.
England, compared with China as to population-density, i. 273; consumption of tea in, ii. 51; attitude of, at commencement of opium war, ii. 510; observations upon, ii. 572.
English, manifesto against, at Canton, i. 488; caricature of, ii. 116; outrage the dead at Canton, ii. 254; toleration clause in, treaty, ii. 360; introduce opium into China, ii. 377; commerce attempted in 1635 and 1664, ii. 444; and French sailors' quarrels, ii. 451; troops at Macao, ii. 456; and Chinese expectations at Napier's arrival, ii. 466; at Canton petition the king regarding trade, ii. 476; losses during the first war, ii. 556; murder of, near Canton, ii. 578; consuls at Chinese ports, ii. 579; waive right of entering Canton, ii. 573, 625; attack pirates, ii. 632; insult to flag, ii. 635; open hostilities at Canton, ii. 638; sustain Palmerston's war policy at home, ii. 641; influence of, consular body, ii. 689; expeditions "of trade and exploration" into Yunnan, ii. 718–723; responsibility for China, ii. 725.
Erman, A., i. 366.
Escayrac-de-Lauture, Comte de, ii. 215; his return from imprisonment at Peking, ii. 684.
Etiquette, at a court levee, i. 800; of a formal call, i. 802.
Eunuchs in imperial household, i. 407.
"Ever-Victorious Force" (*Chang-shing Kiun*), its organization under Ward, ii. 607; under Col. Gordon, ii. 609; uniform and character, ii. 611; takes Fushan and other towns, ii. 612; before Suchau, ii. 613; last operations, ii. 617; dissolved June 1, 1864, ii. 618.
Examinations, Hall of, at Canton, i. 166; riot, i. 498; system of, founded, i. 521; mode of conducting, i. 547; ar-

Digitized by Google

rangements, i. 551; example of an essay, i. 554; statistics of, i. 558; army, i. 560; practical merits and demerits of system, i. 562–572.
Execution, of criminals, i. 511; attempted, in front of factories, ii. 495; of rebels in Canton, ii. 632; of Shushun, ii. 691; of Tientsin rioters, ii. 704.
Exports, of silk from China, ii. 35; items of, from China, ii. 373, 392; table of, ii. 405; duties on, in eighteenth century, ii. 447.
Ex-territoriality, its inherent wrong, ii. 657; Chinese officials inquire concerning, ii. 659; its indirect influence, ii. 695; assumption of, by British minister, ii. 726; anecdote illustrating Chinese dislike of, ii. 741.
Extortions practised by officials, i. 475.
Eyelet-hole ware, called 'rice-China,' how made, ii. 25.

FABER, Ernst, i. 663, ii. 255.
Fabulous animals of the Chinese, i. 342.
Factories, the, at Canton, i. 167; Chinese troops placed over, ii. 474; mob attack the, ii. 495; Lin confines foreigners in, ii. 500; occupied by British troops, ii. 521; brawl and fire at, ii. 556; burned by Yeh, ii. 639.
Fairs, on frontiers of Corea, i. 194; at Peking, i. 817.
Falcons in Peking, i. 332.
Families, cluster together in China, i. 277; Confucian, ennobled, i. 387; in tea cultivation, ii. 41; and ancestral worship, ii. 236 ff.
Famine of 1878, Chinese benevolence during, ii. 266; its extent and terrors, ii. 734; efforts of foreigners toward its relief, ii. 736.
Fân River, in Shansí, i. 94.
Fan kwei, 'foreign devils,' reason for name, i. 42; use at Canton, ii. 346, 347; influence of the term, ii. 461; gradual disappearance, ii. 662.
Farce, a Chinese, i. 715.
Farms in China, generally small, i. 276, 278.
Feet, compressed, origin and extent of practice, i. 776; its appearance and effects upon women, i. 768; noticed by Friar Odoric, ii. 428.
Felt, poorly made, ii. 39.
Female, education in China, i. 572–577; dress, i. 763; position in society, i. 784; privileges and misfortunes, i. 794–796; parts in theatres, i. 821; missionaries, ii. 364.
Fergusson, James, i. 726, 727, 745, 758, ii. 176, 232.
Festivals, of Dragon-boats, i. 696, 816; numerous and popular, i. 809; New Year, i. 810–816; of lanterns, i. 817, 818; of ploughing and the first of spring, ii. 13.
Fiction (see also Novels), character of Chinese, i. 694.
Field, Dr. H. M., on Chinese justice, i. 510.
Fí-fí, Chinese monkey, i. 315.
Filial Duty, the 'Canons of,' or *Hiao King*, i. 536; notable examples of, i. 538; taught in the *Book of Rites*, i. 646.
Finn, James, ii. 271, 274.
Fires, how controlled in cities, i. 743; in pawnshops, ii. 87.
Fire-wells in Ss'chuen, i. 312.
Fire-works, in Peking, i. 817; and gunpowder, ii. 90.
Fischer, Heinr., i. 309.
Fisher, Lieut.-Col., ii. 660, 663, 667, 668, 675.
Fishes, immense supply of, in China, i. 276; of the Empire, i. 346–350; shellfish, i. 350–351; in Canton markets, i. 780; models of, carried in procession, i. 818; and fishermen, ii. 14; fins and maws eaten, ii. 397.
Fishing, various methods of, i. 779, ii. 14.
Five Sovereigns, the, of Chinese legendary history, ii. 142–148.
Flag, Chinese national and private, i. 752.
Flint, his efforts to establish a trade, ii. 448; imprisoned, ii. 449.
Flogging, a common punishment, i. 509.
Flowers, much esteemed, i. 363; worn upon the head, i. 764; at New Year, i. 811; culture of, ii. 12; used in scenting tea, ii. 48.
Food, of Tibetans, i. 241; in use in China, i. 274; supplies of palace, i. 408; Chinese, i. 771–778.
Foreigners, how classified, i. 429; ideas of Chinese society, i. 782; thought to have no surnames, i. 798; tricks played on, i. 799; establish free hospitals, ii. 333 ff.; Morrison Education Society, ii. 340; Chinese contempt for, ii. 450–454; Chinese terms for, ii. 461; in Canton kept like animals, ii. 477; imprisoned by Lin in the factories, ii. 500; how looked upon by the Chinese, ii. 506; in general included in terms of English treaty of Nanking, ii. 561; continued hatred of, at Canton, ii. 578, 580; and the Taipings at Nanking, ii. 597; none injured by Tai-pings, ii. 604; enlisted by the rebels, ii. 606; by imperialists under Ward, ii. 607; and the Ever-Victorious force, ii. 611; and collection of duties at Shanghai, ii. 627; Chinese opinion of, after the war of 1860, ii. 689; plan of employing, on war vessels, ii. 692; their abuse of China, ii. 706; admitted to audience of Emperor, ii. 714; efforts

Digitized by Google

toward relief of the famine of 1878, ii. 735.
Formosa Island, or Taiwan, i. 27, 44; position, character, and products of, i. 137–141; hog found in, i. 324; pheasant of, i. 337; camphor on, ii. 55; Dutch driven from, ii. 180; missions in, ii. 349; history of the Dutch occupation of, ii. 433–438; massacre of shipwrecked crews on, ii. 554; during the Tai-ping Rebellion, ii. 604; Japanese descent upon, ii. 716; its recent growth and improvement, ii. 718.
Forts, their construction in China, i. 758; at the Bogue, ii. 520; at Taku, ii. 676.
Fortune, R., i. 107, 136, 296, 370, 733, ii. 10, 12, 29, 38, 55, 253.
Fortune-tellers, and the cabala of the *Yih*, i. 632; and astrology, ii. 74; their methods, ii. 260.
Fox, localities of, ideas concerning, i. 320.
French, studies in Chinese silk-culture, ii. 32, 34; toleration clauses in, treaty, ii. 361; relations with China, ii. 441; and English sailors, their quarrels at Canton, ii. 451; treaty of Whampoa with China, ii. 571; attack on rebels at Shanghai, ii. 628; legation withdraws from Canton, ii. 639; grievance against China, ii. 642; convention of Peking, ii. 687; massacre of consul and Sisters of Charity at Tientsin, ii. 700; action of the, chargé, ii 708.
Fritsche, H., i. 52, 57.
Frogs, how caught, i. 778.
Fruits, of China, i. 366; common table, i. 774; at dinner, i. 807.
Fu, 'department' or 'prefecture,' term explained, i. 58; government, i. 441.
Fuhchau (Hokchiu), description of, i. 130–133; its dialect, i. 611; bridge at, i. 754; nunneries abolished in, ii. 230; missions at, ii. 349; van Hoorn lands at, ii. 438; East India Company commence trade at, ii. 445; treatment of foreigners at, ii. 580; arsenal established at, ii. 696.
Fuh-hí, the inventor of writing, i. 580; and the *Yih King*, i. 627–628; the first monarch, ii. 142; confounded with Fuh (Buddha), ii. 217.
Fuhkien province, temperature of, i. 55; description of, i. 127–130; dialect, i. 614–616; marriage customs of, i. 785, 787; experiment in coinage, ii. 84; Taoist priests in, ii. 215; infanticide in, ii. 240; funeral customs, ii. 243; missions in, ii. 348.
Fuh-niu shan, in Honan, i. 96.
Fuhshan (or Fat-shan), a mart near Canton, i. 59; taken by rebels, ii. 630; their brutalities in, ii. 631.
Funerals, ceremonies attending, ii. 243–255.
Fung-hwang, or phœnix, i. 343; as an emblem, ii. 111.
Fung-shui, founded on the *Yih King*, i. 628; a system of geomancy, ii. 246.
Fung Sien tien, temple in Emperor's Palace, Peking, i. 69.
Fung Yun-shan, an early follower of Hung Siu-tsuen, ii. 586; made the 'Southern King,' ii. 594; he disappears, ii. 602.
Furniture, in country houses, i. 733; materials, i. 734.
Furs used for winter garments, i. 763.
Futai, or *fuyen*, governor of a province, i. 438.
Fuyin, or mayor of Peking, i. 89.

GABEL, or Salt Department, its importance, i. 443.
Gambier, an import, ii. 400.
Gamble, W., i. 604, ii. 325.
Gambling, modes and extent of, i. 825.
Games, morra (*chai mei*), at dinner, i. 808; out-door, i. 825; chess, i. 827.
Gang-dis-ri, Zang, or Kailasa Mountains, i. 13.
Gardens, style of private, in China, i. 734; in Shanghai, ii. 202.
"Gates of China," perhaps Straits of Luichau, i. 26; probably at Canfu, i. 127, ii. 415.
Gaubil, Père, i. 633, 634, 636, 809.
Gegen, at Wu-tai shan, in Shansi, i. 96.
Geography, Chinese knowledge of foreign, i. 49; native topographies, i. 50, 185; popular ideas of, in China, ii. 80.
Geology of China, i. 297–312.
Gerbillon, Père, i. 88, ii. 181, 441.
German representative sent to China in 1843, ii. 565.
Genghis khan, i. 726; takes Peking, ii. 175; and Prester John, ii. 286.
Gill, Capt. W., i. 21.
Ginseng, localities of, i. 367.
Glass, manufacture of, ii. 21.
Gobi, or Sha-moh, Great Desert of, the Olympus of Buddhist and Taoist myths, i. 12; its position and area, i. 15; sand-hills, i. 16; called Peh hai and Hah hai, i. 25, 201, 216; grasses of, i. 357; its influence on Chinese civilization, ii. 189.
God, word for, in Chinese, ii. 154; discussion concerning, among Romanists, ii. 297; among Protestants, ii. 364.
Goddard, Josiah, i. 615.
Goës, Benedict, i. 310; his journey to Cathay, ii. 424.
Gold, found in Shensi, i. 151; in Khoten, i. 230; in Tibet, i. 244; uses of, i. 311, ii. 19; never coined, ii. 83, 84.
Golden Island (Kin Shan), in Kiangsu, i. 105.
Gold-fish, methods of rearing, i. 348.
Gonçalves, J. A., i. 591.

Digitized by Google

Gongs, how made, ii. 20; their use, ii. 103.
Gordon, Colonel Peter, ii. 91; takes command of the 'Ever-Victorious force,' ii. 609, 611; captures Fushan, ii. 612; before Suchau, ii. 613; efforts to protect life after its surrender, ii. 615; indignation, ii. 616; wounded before Kintan, ii. 617; dissolves the 'Ever-Victorious force,' ii. 618; his honorable conduct appreciated, ii. 619; visits the works before Nanking, ii. 620; his advice to Peking officials as to a war with Russia, ii. 738.
Gough, Sir Hugh, arrives to command English land force, ii. 521; invests Canton, ii. 522; at Ningpo, ii. 529; his force at taking of Chapu, ii. 533; at the capture of Chinkiang, ii. 542; before Nanking, ii. 545; his rewards after the war, ii. 556.
Gould, Dr., ii. 340.
Gould, John, i. 339.
Government, of Peking, i. 82–83; of Mongolia, i. 199; of Ili, i. 231–233; of Tibet, i. 255–257; revenue of imperial, i. 289–292; Chinese, its theory patriarchal, i. 380; laws and departments of, i. 381–384; cabinet and boards of, i. 415; provincial, i. 437–447; influence upon literature, i. 719.
Grain, Commissioner of, i. 443.
Grains, in the *Herbal*, i. 372; eaten by the Chinese, i. 772; how sown, ii. 5.
Grammar of the Chinese language, i. 617–621; Morrison's, ii. 321.
Grand Canal, Chah ho, or Yun ho, i. 31; Davis's description of, i. 32; present condition, i. 35, 52, 89, 92, 108, 119; deepened by Kublai, ii. 176; Tai-pings control, ii. 596.
Grasshoppers, edict for destruction of, i. 469.
Graves, in China, i. 275; legend concerning the false, ii. 107; geomancy in selecting, ii. 246; *pai shan* at, ii. 252; prayers before, ii. 262.
Gray, Archdeacon J. H., i. 413, 573, 715, 778, 788, 796, 821, ii. 14, 231, 255, 261, 271.
Gray, Mrs., i. 752, 788.
Great Plain of China, i. 14; extent, i. 27; population of, i. 28; climate, i. 52.
Great Wall, Wan-li Chang Ching, i. 29; construction, i. 30; aspect, i. 31, 152, 203; built by Tsin, ii. 160; Arch of Mongol dynasty in, ii. 176.
Greece, and China, infanticide in, ii. 242; China known as Θιν in, ii. 408; communication with China in the dark ages, ii. 412.
Griffis, W. E., ii. 78.
Gros, Baron, arrives in China, ii. 643; at capture of Canton, ii. 646; arrives at Tientsin, ii. 651; leaves China, ii. 661; reappointed envoy with Lord Elgin, ii. 671; signs the treaty of Peking, ii. 686; well fitted for his task in China, ii. 688.
Grosier, Abbé, ii. 38, 56, 90, 104, 719.
Grosvenor, Hon. T. G., sent as commissioner to Yunnan, ii. 723.
Gully, Robert, his shipwreck and murder on Formosa, ii. 554.
Gunpowder, invention and use of, ii. 89.
Gutzlaff, Rev. Charles, i. 100, 193, ii. 137, 180, 325; his three voyages, ii. 328, 350, 363; at Chusan during the war, ii. 515; at Shanghai, ii. 536, 542, 548, 556.
Gypsum, uses of, i. 306.

HAAS, Joseph, i. 633.
Hailing, General, at Chinkiang, ii. 255; his devotion, ii. 540; posthumous honors to, ii. 557.
Hainan Island, aborigines on, i. 44; notice of the island, i. 175.
Hair, how dressed and worn, i. 761; of women, i. 764.
Hai-tien, near Peking, i. 80; British and French troops at, ii. 683.
Hai-tuh, or khi-doc, a Chinese monkey, i. 315.
Hakkas, in Formosa, i. 138; in Kwang-tung, i. 486; and the Tai-pings, ii. 583, 591.
Hales, Dr., chronology of, ii. 143, 145.
Hanbury, Daniel, i. 353, 355, ii. 134.
Hamberg, Rev. Theodore, his *Life of Hung Siu-tsuen*, ii. 582.
Hami, or Kamil, in Kansuh, i. 213, 224.
Han dynasty, Latin name of *Seres* originated during, i. 4; Hau (or 'After' Han) at Chingtu, i. 154; censuses under, i. 260; its historians, ii. 159; its founder Kautsu, ii. 162; and Eastern Han, ii. 164; After Han, XXth dynasty, ii. 172.
Hance, Dr. H. F., i. 355, 365.
Hangchau, capital of Chehkiang, i. 115; its temples and manufactures, i. 117–119; pagoda at, i. 744; Moslems in, ii. 268, 270; Nestorians in, ii. 285; missions in, ii. 251; Abu Zaid on, ii. 415; retaken by imperialists, ii. 618; Romanist church confiscated at, ii. 687.
Hanchung, in Shensi, i. 151.
Han hai, 'Mirage Sea,' or Desert of Lobnor, i. 16.
Han-jin, *Han-tsz'*, 'Men,' or 'Sons of Han,' terms used by Chinese for themselves, i. 4. ii. 162.
Hankow, in Hupeh, i. 144; its fortune during the rebellion, ii. 600, 607; visited by Lord Elgin, ii. 659.
Hanlin Yuen, National Academy, Peking, i. 72; its character, i. 434; membership a degree of literary rank, i. 559.
Han River, in Hupeh, i. 142.
Han-sing Pass, in Shansi, i. 97.

Digitized by Google

Hao-king, ancient name of Si-ngan, i. 3.
Harashar (or Karashar), town and district of Ili, i. 224
Hardy, R. S., i. 395, 412, ii. 217, 218, 220, 224, 226, 232.
Hare, alpine and others, i. 327.
Harem, imperial, i. 407; and Board of Revenue, i. 422; Sung's daughter in, i. 456.
Harland, Dr., ii. 122.
Hart, Sir Robert, takes management of customs service, ii. 695.
Hats, official, i. 414; laborers' and other, i. 762.
Hayton, king of Armenia, visits Mangu khan, ii. 420.
Heaven, Altar to, Peking, i. 76; ideas concerning the creation of, ii. 138; worship of, ii. 194–198; and the term *tien*, ii. 300.
Hedde, Isidore, ii. 34.
Heeren, A. H. L., i. 196, 238, 343, 398, 412, 446, 482, 508, ii. 410, 412.
Hemp, four kinds of, ii. 10.
Henderson, Dr. James, ii. 127.
Hepburn, Dr., ii. 131.
Herbal, Chinese (see *Pun tsao*), i. 370, etc.
Herdsman and weaver-girl, fable of the, ii. 76.
Hereditary local officers of *sz'* districts, i. 59.
Hervey-Saint-Denys, Marquis d', i. 703, 704, ii. 14.
Hia dynasty, founded by Yu, ii. 148; its early annals, ii. 152; its period, ii. 158.
Hia, Tartar tribe, ii. 173, 174.
Hiao, Emperor, B.C. 909, confers Tsin-chau on Prince Feitsz', i. 2.
Hiao King, or 'Canons of Filial Duty,' a school-book, i. 536.
Hien, 'district,' term explained, i. 58; its *chi*, or 'district magistrate,' i. 441.
Hienfung, Emperor, his reign, ii. 184; attitude toward foreigners, ii. 575; imbecility during Tai-ping revolt, ii. 604; childish ignorance during war with England, ii. 642; signs treaty of Tien-tsin, ii. 656; escapes to Jeh-ho, ii. 679; his death, ii. 689.
Hieroglyphics, Chinese and Assyrian, i. 581; early Chinese, i. 583–586; erroneous ideas concerning Chinese, i. 605, 606.
Himalaya Mountains, i. 10; the fourth mountain system of China, i. 13.
Hindu name for China, 'Ma-chin,' i. 3.
Hing-an mountain system, i. 13.
Hingking (Yenden), in Shingking, i. 198.
Hinkai-nor, in Kirin, i. 24.
History, of Ili, i. 233–237; of Tibet, i. 254–255; in Chinese literature, i. 675; and chronology of China, ii. 136; period of fable, ii. 137; of legend, ii. 143; of the twenty-six dynasties, ii. 148–187; worth of Chinese, ii. 413.
History of the Three States, a Chinese historical novel, i. 602, 677–680, ii. 164.
H'lassa, capital of Tibet, i. 245–247.
Ho, Duke, i. 80; career of, i. 452.
Hobson, Dr., i. 776, ii. 125, 127, 337.
Hobson, B. H. E., ii. 180, 346.
Hodgson, B. H., i. 243, 254.
Hog, appearance and usefulness of, i. 324; much eaten, i. 777; for sacrifices, i. 781.
Ho Kwei-tsing, governor-general of Kiangsu, his cowardice at fall of Chinkiang and Suchau, ii. 605; receives letters of the allies, ii. 648; sends reply to Mr. Bruce at Shanghai, ii. 672.
Homicides, foreign, at Canton, ii. 451–454, 460; of Lin Wei-hi at Hongkong, ii. 505; of Sü A-mun at Canton, ii. 568; of Englishmen near Canton, ii. 578.
Honam, or Honan Island, opposite Canton, i. 164–165, 169.
Honan province, its position and people, i. 97–99.
Hong, explanation of term, i. 167; merchants: their gardens, i. 736; their integrity, i. 834; monopoly established, ii. 447; relations with foreign traders, ii. 450; their position between Governor Lu and Napier, ii. 469, 473; and Chinese shopkeepers, ii. 477; expostulate with foreigners concerning opium smuggling, ii. 493, 494; a last attempt to squeeze, ii. 559.
Hongkong, climate of, i. 54; description of city, i. 171–173; botany of, i. 355; Triad Society prohibited in, i. 493; missions remove to, ii. 347; homicide of Lin Wei-hi at, ii. 505; taken possession of by British, ii. 557; influence as a free port on smuggling, ii. 633; attempt to poison foreigners at, ii. 640; British encouragement to smuggling at, ii. 725.
Honorary Portals, or *Pai-lau*, i. 83, 756.
Hoorn, Van, Dutch ambassador to Peking, ii. 438.
Hoppin, Prof. J. M., ii. 639.
Horse, new wild, found by Prejevalsky in Khoten, i. 231; little used, i. 274, 320; appearance, i. 323; notices of, in the *Herbal*, i. 375; shoeing, ii. 4.
Hospitals, native foundling, at Shanghai, ii. 264; established by Candida, ii. 295; by Dr. Parker at Canton, ii. 333, 334 ff.; versus itinerary practice, ii. 340; at Tinghai and Shanghai, ii. 351.
Howqua, a Canton merchant, his son created *kü-jin*, i. 567; and Parker's hospital, ii. 334; his death, ii. 559.
Huc, Père Évariste Régis, i. 88, 144, 156, 195, 210, 213, 246, 257, 336, 343, 644, ii. 50, 231, 232, 277, 286, 290, 293, 299, 423, 708.

Digitized by Google

Humboldt's theory of hills in Mongolia, i. 11; Sz'chuen springs, i. 313; on the plantain, i. 362.
Hume, David, on infanticide in Rome, ii. 242.
Hunan province, i. 146–148; inscription of Yu in, ii. 149.
Hung Jin, brother of the *Tien Wang*, ii. 582; is converted, ii. 586; teaches and baptizes, ii. 587; at the capture of Nanking, ii. 620; subsequent efforts, ii. 622.
Hung Siu-tsuen, the *Tien Wang*, leader of the Tai-ping revolt, ii. 582; his vision, ii. 583; belief in his divine calling, ii. 585; goes to Mr. Roberts, ii. 588; commencement of military movement, ii. 590; his opposition to the Triad Society, ii. 591; his 'Celestial Decrees,' ii. 592; proclaimed Emperor at Nanking, ii. 594; failure to reach Peking the death of his movement, ii. 599; dissensions among his generals, ii. 602; his indomitable spirit, ii. 605; his death at Nanking, ii. 620; character of his political aspirations, ii. 623.
Hungtsih Lake, in Kiangsu, i. 24, 100, 109.
Hungwu, Emperor, tomb of, at Nanking, i. 101, ii. 115; inaugural proclamation in 1644, i. 395; founds the Ming, ii. 177.
Huns, driven back by Tsin, ii. 161; inroads during third century A.D., ii. 165; their kingdom of Wei in fifth and sixth centuries A.D., ii. 166; go West instead of East, ii. 189.
Hunter, W. C., ii. 560.
Hupeh province, i. 142–146.
Hurun Lake, in Manchuria, i. 24.
Hwaiking, in Shansi, i. 94.
Hwa Hia, 'Glorious Hia,' an ancient term for China, i. 5.
Hwai-ngan, in Kiangsu, i. 108.
Hwang Ching, 'Imperial City,' Peking, i. 69.
Hwang ho. See Yellow River.
Hwangti, an appellation of the Emperor, i. 393; a primeval monarch, the possible inventor of writing, i. 580; of clothing, ii. 32; of the sixty-year cycle, ii. 69, 146; importance of audience before the, ii. 714.
Hwang yang (*Antelope gutturosa*), i. 321.
Hwang sz', monument to Teshu Lama, Peking, i. 79; Lord Elgin at, ii. 682.
Hwashana, Commissioner, at Tientsin, ii. 651; at Shanghai, on tariff revision, ii. 657, 664; discusses audience question with Ward at Peking, ii. 669.
Hwuichau, in Nganhwui, i. 110.
Hwui, kwan, club-houses at Peking, i. 76; 'clubs,' variety and extent of, ii. 87.
Hyacinthe, Père, i. 62.

I, 'BARBARIAN,' a term for foreigners, ii. 461.
I, Prince, and the British interpreters at Tungchau, ii. 678, 679; the prisoners sent to, ii. 680; Elgin located in palace of, ii. 686; his conspiracy, ii. 690; death, ii. 691.
Ibn Batuta, ii. 271, 373; his travels in Cathay, ii. 421.
Ibn Wahab, an Arab traveller, ii. 414, 425.
Ice in Peking, i. 52; the coast towns, i. 53.
Ichang, in Hupeh, i. 145.
Iching, on the Yangtsz', reception of the English at, ii. 544.
Ides, E. Ysbrandt, envoy of Russia to Peking, ii. 442.
Idols, how carved, ii. 115; in Buddhist temples, ii. 235; patronage of, general, ii. 259; allowed by Ricci, ii. 292.
Ifung hien, in Honan, waste-wier at, i. 37.
Ilchí, capital of Khoten, i. 230.
Ili province, i. 215; its recent boundaries, i. 215; physical features, i. 216; its two circuits — Songaria, i. 218–220; Eastern Turkestan, i. 221–231; its government, i. 231–233; historical notice of, i. 233–237; Mohammedans of, ii. 271.
Ilípu, Governor-General and Commissioner, i. 464; truce with Elliot at Chusan, ii. 517; his banishment, ii. 529; thanks the English for care of prisoners, ii. 534; associate commissioner with Kiying, ii. 537; concludes and signs treaty, ii. 547, 553; death, ii. 557.
Imitation a Chinese national trait, ii. 63.
Imperial, City, *Hwang Ching*, Peking, i. 69; clan and its government, i. 405; family, i. 407; Academy, or Hanlin Yuen, i. 434.
Imports, of opium into China, ii. 388; from the Archipelago, ii. 396.
Infanticide, female, in Fuhkien, i. 136; prevalence of the practice in China, ii. 239–241; comparison with Greece and Rome, ii. 242.
Ink, materials of India, i. 599.
Inner Council, or Cabinet, i. 415.
Inscription, of Yu, in Kau-lau shan, Hunan, ii. 149; in gateway at Kü-yung kwan, ii. 176; on Nestorian Tablet of Si-ngan, ii. 277.
Insects of China, i. 351–354.
Intercourse, social, among the Chinese, i. 800; between China and Western Asia, ii. 166; ancient, with foreign nations, ii. 408; mediæval, ii. 414. See also under Trade.
Iron, in Shantung, i. 93; in Shansi, abundant, i. 95–96; its manufacture, ii. 19.

Digitized by Google

Irrigation, various modes of, ii. 6.
Islamism. See Mohammedan.
Issik-kul, or Lake Temurtu, i. 24, 217.
Isolation of the Chinese, its influence on their character, i. 583, 833; its causes and results, ii. 188–190, 642, 648, 660.
Isothermal lines of China, i. 51.
Ivory imported from Africa, ii. 400.

JADE, or *yuh*, found in Khoten, i. 223, 229; description of, i. 309; *feitsui*, or jadeite, i. 312.
Jamba, food used in Tibet, i. 241.
Japan, tea shrubs, ii. 41; character symbols and sounds in, ii. 190; expedition to Formosa, ii. 716.
Jauchau, in Kiangsi, i. 113.
Jehangir, kojeh of Kashgar, i. 235, 454; his end, ii. 184, 727, 729.
Jeh-ho, or Chingtih, Emperor's summer retreat, i. 88, 312; thermal springs at, i. 312; Sung at, i. 455; expense of, i. 566; Hienfung retires to, ii. 682; palace conspiracy at, ii. 690.
Jenkins, Dr. B., i. 530, ii. 96.
Jesuit missionaries, correct the Chinese calendar, ii. 68; their map-making, ii. 80; enter China in 1580, ii. 177; and ancestral rites, ii. 252, 293, 299; and other Catholics, ii. 294, 297; obnoxious to Yungching, ii. 443.
Jewels, of China, i. 310; imported, ii. 400.
Jews in China, ii. 271; visited by Dr. Martin, ii. 272.
Jones, Owen, ii. 107.
Johnson, Samuel, his *Oriental Religions*, i. 691, ii. 211, 217, 255.
Johnson, Rev. Stephen, ii. 349.
Judicial proceedings, character of, i. 500–508; cruelty and mercy of, i. 510; in cases of foreign homicides, ii. 451 ff., 460.
Julien, Stanislas, i. 345, 599, 674, 714, ii. 22, 32, 33, 62, 207, 212, 229.
Junks, Chinese, i. 755; coast trade in, decreasing, ii. 389.
'Just Medium,' the, *Chung Yung*, i. 653.

KAIFUNG (Pien-liang), capital of Honan, i. 99; Jews in, ii. 271 ff.; stormed by Tai-pings, ii. 597; surly spirit in, during the famine, ii. 736.
Kailasa, mountain in Tibet, i. 239.
Kalgan, town in Northern Chihli, i. 203.
Kalkas, Mongol tribes, i. 205, 206, 209.
Kan River, tributary of the Yangtze', i. 21, 112; boats upon, i. 751.
Kanchau, in Kiangsi, i. 113.
Kane, Dr. H. H., ii. 388.
Kang, or brick bed, i. 53, 306.
Kanghi, Emperor, singular festival of, i. 68; abolishes capitation tax, i. 266; dictionary of, i. 588–591, 602, 672, etc.; orders copper types, i. 603; his 'Sacred Commands,' i. 687; tries to suppress fashion of compressed feet, i. 770; and the calendar, ii. 68; introduces foreign music, ii. 103; and Koxinga, ii. 180; against strange religions, ii. 227; prevents immolation of women, ii. 250; and Father Schaal, ii. 297, 298; memorialized by Jesuits, ii. 299; counter decree against the Pope, ii. 302; Portuguese embassy to, ii. 429; letter of Louis XIV. to, ii. 441; sends Tulishen to the Czar, ii. 442; his prophecy quoted, ii. 484.
Kanpu, or Canfu, i. 127.
Kansuh province, climate, i. 55; description of, i. 152–154; Mohammedan insurrection in, ii. 269, 730.
Kaolin, a constituent of porcelain, ii. 23.
Kara-korum, Mountains, their position, i. 13; town, Carpini's mission to Kuyuk at, ii. 416.
Kashgar, government and town, i. 227–228, ii. 728; its reconquest, ii. 731.
Katshe, or Kor-kache, a district of Tibet, i. 238.
Kautsu, or Lin Pang, founder of the Han, ii. 162.
Kautsung, Emperor of Tang dynasty, ii. 170.
Kerr, Dr. J. G., i. 164, ii. 337, 339, 340.
Khoten, district of Ili, i. 230–231.
Kiakhta, trading post on Russian frontier, i. 207; apples of, i. 366, ii. 443.
Kiaking, the Emperor, i. 431, 453, 465, 466; his reign, ii. 182; prohibits import of opium, ii. 378.
Kiang, 'river.' See Yangtze'.
Kialing River, in Sz'chuen, i. 155.
Kiangnan—the two Kiang, fertility of the region, i. 100.
Kiangning (see Nanking), i. 100.
Kiangsi province, its surface, i. 111.
Kiangsu province, i. 99; watercourses, i. 100; its towns, etc., i. 101–108.
Kiao, 'sect,' meaning of term, ii. 193, 194; its vagueness, ii. 358.
Kiayu kwan, on Great Wall in Kansuh, i. 152, 211, ii. 145, 189.
Kieh Kwei, last Emperor of the Hia, ii. 153.
Kienlung, Emperor, festival of, i. 67–68; effusion on Mukden, i. 193, 598; revives census, i. 266, 285, 291; upon naming his successor, i. 404; casts lead types, i. 603; bronzes made under, ii. 20; his reign, ii. 181; treatment of Catholics, ii. 305; Van Braam's embassy to, ii. 439, 447, 449.
Kien Tsing Kung, 'Palace of Heavenly Purity,' Peking, i. 68.
Kihngan, in Kiangsi, i. 113.
Ki-lin, or unicorn, i. 342; Sz'ma Kwang and the pretended, i. 676.

Digitized by Google

Kilung, on Formosa Island, i. 137.
Kin, or Niu-chih (or Nu-chih), Tartars, i. 202; established in Peking, ii. 174; inscription at Kû-yung kwan, ii. 176; overthrow the Mings, ii. 178.
Kinchau, in Shingking, i. 193, 195.
King, *King-tu*, *King-sz'*, Chinese terms for the capital, i. 60, 61.
King Shan, Prospect or Coal Hill, Peking, i. 70.
Kingsmill, T. W., i. 296, 298, 299, 304, ii. 159, 406.
Kingteh chin (Kiangsí), porcelain works at, i. 113, ii. 22, 394.
Kin-sha, 'River of Golden Sand,' a name of the Yangtsz', i. 20, 155.
Kin Shan, or Altai Mountains, i. 9.
Kircher, i. 79, 257, ii. 277, 284, 286.
Kirghís, and Pruth Kirghís, tribes of Ílí, i. 226; in Kashgar, etc., i. 236, 331.
Kirin, province of Manchuria, i. 196–198; town, called Chuen Chwang, i. 197.
Kíshen, governor-general of Chihlí, interview with Captain Elliot at Taku, ii. 516; apologizes for attack on flag of truce, ii. 517; negotiation with Captain Elliot at the Bogue, ii. 518; ordered to Peking, ii. 521; reprieved and associated with Yihking, ii. 529.
Kitai, a Russian form of *Cathay*, i. 4; term for Chinese in Ílí, i. 224.
Kítan, or Liautung Tartars, oppress the After Tsin, ii. 172.
Kites, flying, a favorite amusement, i. 326.
Kiukiang, on the Yangtsz', captured by Tai-pings, ii. 595.
Kiu-tiao shan, in Shensí, i. 151.
Kíying, Commissioner, his life, i. 459, 570; obtains toleration for Christians, ii. 356, 358; grants privileges to Macao, ii. 430; joint commissioner with Ílipu, ii. 537; writes to Pottinger, ii. 546; signs Nanking treaty, ii. 549; exchanges ratifications, ii. 557; his proclamation, ii. 558; includes all foreigners under terms of Nanking treaty, ii. 561; interviews with representatives of other foreign powers, ii. 565; reappointed commissioner to meet Mr. Cushing, ii. 566; his correspondence on case of homicide, ii. 568; concludes a treaty with M. de Lagrené, ii. 571; interview with Governor Davis on opium question, ii. 577; action regarding murder of Englishmen near Canton, ii. 578; disbands companies of braves about Canton, ii. 580; his sudden appearance at Tientsin, ii. 653; his untimely end, ii. 654.
Klaproth, J., derives name of Tsung ling from onions found there, i. 9; on Grand Canal, i. 36–37; Peking, i. 62; *Mémoires*, i. 129, 141, 188, 193, 204, 213, 226; on Tibet, i. 245, 254, 285; deluge of Yao, ii. 147; on Tsin, ii. 160, 162, 205, 232, 233, 411, 421, 442.
Koeppen, C. F., on Buddhism, i. 249, 250, ii. 229, 259.
Koko-nor, Tsing hai, or 'Azure Sea,' i. 25, 209–213.
Kopi. See Gobi.
Körös, Csoma de, Hungarian author on Tibet, i. 244, 253.
Kotow, or prostration, Ceremonial Court and the, i. 435; described, i. 801; at funerals, ii. 245; performed by Dutch ambassadors, ii. 435; by Ides, ii. 442; discussed before Ward's embassy at Peking, ii. 669; its importance in audience of the Emperor, ii. 712; the ceremony yielded in case of foreign ministers, ii. 714.
Ko-tsing shan, in Western Nganhwui, i. 12.
Koulkun. See Kwánlun.
Kowlung, opposite Hongkong Island, i. 172; affray at, in 1839, ii. 506; ceded to the British, ii. 558, 686.
Koxinga, his descendants ennobled, i. 406; takes Formosa, ii. 180, 435.
Kreitner, Lieutenant G., i. 151, 158, 213, 214, 257, 300, 715.
Kublai khan, i. 176, 181, 281, 318, 330; his paper money, ii. 85; his reign, ii. 175; receives Montecorvino, ii. 287; and the Polos, ii. 420.
Kuché, a town of Ílí, i. 225, ii. 730.
Kü-jin, 'promoted men,' second degree of literary rank, i. 550; their number, i. 558; military, i. 560, 566.
Kuldja (Gouldja), Kuren, or Hwuiyuen ching, capital of Ílí, i. 218; its capture, i. 219; occupation by Russia, i. 236, ii. 727, 730; Friar Pascal at, ii. 289; negotiations respecting its cession, ii. 731–734.
Kung, Prince, *Kung tsin-wang* his proper title, i. 405; appointed a regent, ii. 184; rewards Colonel Gordon, ii. 616; conducts negotiations with Elgin at Peking, ii. 682; signs the treaty, ii. 686; his *coup d'état*, ii. 691; refuses to ratify Lay's agreement, ii. 694; signs convention respecting coolie trade, ii. 698, 699; in Tientsin riot correspondence, ii. 702, 705; discusses audience question, ii. 712, 715; his son and the succession, ii. 726, 739.
Ku-peh kau Pass, in Great Wall, i. 39, 89.
Kuren (see Urga), i. 204.
Kur-kara usu (Kingsui ching), town and district of Ílí, i. 220.
Kuro-siwo, ocean current, i. 55.
Kutuktu, lama high-priest in Urga, i. 204.
Kuyuk khan, Plano Carpini's embassy to, ii. 415.
Kuzupchi, sand-hills on Desert of Gobi, i. 16.

Digitized by Google

Kū-yung Kwan, gateway at, ii. 176.
Kwangsi, an unhealthy province, i. 55; its position and products, i. 176; rise of Tai-ping Rebellion in, ii. 590–595.
Kwangsū, his succession to the throne, i. 398, 404; his reign, ii. 185, 186; his accession, ii. 726.
Kwangtung, considered unhealthy, i. 55; description and towns of, i. 158–176; revenue of, i. 290; resists the Manchu conquest, ii. 179; missions in, ii. 348; rebels in, ii. 604, 630.
Kwănlun, or Koulkun Mountains, position and extent, i. 11; mineral treasures, i. 12; source of Yangtsz', i. 20.
Kwanyin, Goddess of Mercy, temple to, in Kwangtung, i. 175.
Kweichau province, i. 55; description of, i. 178–180.
Kweiliang, Commissioner, meets allies at Tientsin, ii. 651; sent to Shanghai to revise tariff, ii. 657; refuses to accompany the allies to Taku, ii. 664; discusses the audience question with Minister Ward, ii. 669; sent to intercept Elgin at Tientsin, ii. 677; his support to Prince Kung, ii. 691.
Kweilin, capital of Kwangsi, i. 177; attacked by Tai-pings, ii. 595.
Kwoh hao, national designation, period, or reign name of Emperor, i. 398.

LACHARME, Père, i. 643.
Lacquered-ware, Hwuichau, i. 110; its manufacture, ii. 30; export, ii. 394.
Ladak not a Chinese possession, i. 13.
Lagrené, French envoy to China, ii. 309; obtains toleration for Christians through Kiying, ii. 355, 357; his mission in 1844, ii. 441; concludes treaty of Whampoa with Kiying, ii. 571.
Lakes, of China, i. 23; of Hupeh, i. 143; of Ilí, i. 216–217; of Tibet, i. 240.
Lama, mausoleum to a, Peking, i. 79.
Lamasary (*Yung-ho Kung*) at Peking, i. 73.
Lanchau, capital of Kansuh, i. 154.
Land, how held, ii. 1–3.
Landscape, appearance of, in China, i. 40.
Land tax in China, i. 294, 789.
Language, of Tibet, i. 253; proportion of readers in China, i. 544; Chinese, its groups of natural objects, i. 372; labor of learning its characters, i. 541; an obstacle to progress, i. 568; its influence upon people and literature, i. 579, ii. 190; origin of, i. 581; misapprehension regarding, i. 605; dialects, Mandarin and local, i. 611–616; its grammar, i. 617; defects, i. 621; methods of studying, i. 623; an obstacle to missions, ii. 370; ignorance of, by early traders, ii. 450, 453.
Lange, Laurent, his residence at Peking, ii. 442.
Lanterns, feast and variety of, i. 817.
Lantsan River, in Yunnan, i. 181.
Larks as song birds, i. 333.
Lau-tsz', founder of Taoism, i. 684; his life, ii. 206; and teachings, ii. 207–214.
Lavallée, C., ii. 647, 654, 684, 685.
Laws, of China, i. 384; reports of, 385; *Penal Code*, 385–398; their administration, Chap. VIII.; as a profession, i. 783; controlling marriage, i. 793.
Lay, G. T., i. 605, 606, 715, 822, ii. 102, 103, 117, 330.
Lay, H. N., appointed intendant of customs, ii. 628; his flotilla fiasco, ii. 692.
Lay, W. T., ii. 621.
Leather, quality and uses of, ii. 39.
Le Comte, i. 289, 509, ii. 285, 295.
Le Gendre, C. W., i. 140, ii. 717.
Legge, Dr. James, i. 398, 537, 627, 629, 633, 634, 635, 636, 638 ff., 648, 663, 671, 674, 681, 703, 809, ii. 72, 143, 144, 147, 198, 212, 237, 347, 372.
Legislation, general features of, i. 391–394.
Lí Hung-Chang, Governor-General, concurrence in reorganizing the 'Ever-Victorious force,' ii. 611; executes surrendered wangs at Suchau, ii. 615; his position there, ii. 616; dissolves the 'Ever-Victorious force,' ii. 618; and Sir T. Wade in the Chifu convention, ii. 724; denounces the treaty of Livadia, ii. 732; co-operates with foreigners in relief of Great Famine, ii. 735.
Lí Tai-peh, a poet of the Tang dynasty, story of, i. 696–703; extent of his collected poems, i. 704.
Liang dynasty, the XIIIth, ii. 166; After Liang, XVIIth dynasty, ii. 171.
Liang A-fah, Morrison's first convert, ii. 321; his labors and persecution, ii. 328, 347, 371; his tracts fall into the hands of Hung Sin-tsuen, ii. 582, 589.
Liau River (Sira-muren), in Manchuria, i. 190.
Liau, Tartar tribe, ii. 173, 174.
Library at Peking, i. 69; its catalogue, i. 626.
Lí K, or 'Book of Rites,' i. 643–647, 805, ii. 196.
Lí-kin, or 'cash a catty' tax, i. 444.
Lilies, varieties of, i. 361; eaten, i. 773.
Lí Min, 'Black-haired Race,' common name for Chinese, i. 5; a tribe on Hainan Island, i. 176.
Lime, made from shells, i. 307; use in building, i. 729; how burned, ii. 56.
Li-mu, aboriginal tribe, i. 41; in Hainan, i. 44; mountains, i. 159.
Lí shui River, in Hunan, i. 147.
Lin Tseh-sū, Commissioner, geography of, i. 50; and the rhubarb trade, i. 365; career of, i. 457, 464, 472, ii. 184; arrives at Canton, ii. 497; demands sur-

Digitized by Google

render of opium, ii. 498; imprisons foreigners in factories, ii. 500; an example of his public writings, ii. 501; visits Macao, ii. 506; his reason for demanding Mr. Dent, ii. 508; reply to American request, ii. 514; offers rewards for British, ii. 516; his recall, ii. 516; memorializes the Emperor against peaceful measures, ii. 518; recalled from banishment, ii. 529; his death, ii. 590.
Lindsay, H. H., i. 481.
Lintin, Sir G. Robinson among opium smugglers at, ii. 479; Captain Elliot ordered to send opium smugglers away from, ii. 491.
Lin-tsing-chau, in Shantung, i. 92.
Lion, the, in China, i. 317.
Liquor little used in China, i. 808.
Literati, or literary class, the gentry of China, its influence, i. 520, 562; and religious sects, i. 691; persecuted by Tsin, ii. 162; their opposition to Buddhism, ii. 223, 227; to Christianity, 369.
Literature, Chinese geographical, i. 50; classical, size and importance, i. 626; five greater, i. 627–652, and four lesser classics, i. 652–672; works on history, i. 675; historical novels, etc., i. 677; fiction, i. 694; ballads and impromptu verses, i. 705; dramas, i. 714; its limits and deficiencies, i. 718; of Chinese music, ii. 98; flourishes under the Hans, ii. 164; foreign missionary, ii. 367.
Ljungstedt, Sir A., i. 171, ii. 333, 428; his history of Macao, ii. 430.
Lob-nor, Desert of, i. 16; Lake, i. 24, 222–223.
Lobscheid, Rev. W., i. 271, 615.
Loch, Captain G. G., i. 105, ii. 202, 536, 541, 543, 547, 550.
Loch, Henry, experiences at Tungchau, ii. 678; capture and imprisonment at Peking, ii. 680, 681; is returned to the English, ii. 684, 685.
Lockhart, Dr. Wm., ii. 123, 129, 134, 266, 336, 339, 350, 354.
Locusts, occasional ravages of, i. 351; edict against, i. 469; character for, i. 587; Father Faber's miracle of the, ii. 296.
Loess, roads in, i. 38, 97; of Shansí, i. 95; of Shensi, i. 149; extent of, in China, i. 297; its nature, i. 298–300; dwellings in, i. 301; Richthofen's theory of origin, i. 303; terraces, ii. 6; great famine in the region, ii. 734.
Loh (or Fo Loh) River, in Sz'chuen, i. 155.
Lohyang, made the capital by Siangkwan, i. 3, ii. 159, 162, 164, 168, 174; and Buddhism, ii. 218, 411.
Lolos race, in Sz'chuen, i. 43, 158; in Yunnan, i. 183.
Longevity, Temple of, at Canton, i. 164.
Loomis, Rev. A. W., i. 703, ii. 350.
Lotus, highly esteemed, i. 368.
Low, Hon. F. F., United States Minister to China, ii. 700; concerning sentiment toward foreigners at Tientsin, ii. 704; his reply to Wánsiang's note, ii. 708; on audience question, ii. 713, 714; thanked by Prince Kung, ii. 739.
Lowrie, W. M., i. 755, ii. 287, 350, 368.
Lu, governor of Kwangtung, opposes Napier's coming to Canton, ii. 464; rejects his letter, ii. 467; stops the trade, ii. 471, 473; his successor Tíng, ii. 481.
Luhchau, on female education, i. 574; instance of reproving a mother-in-law, i. 795.
Lukan Gorge, on Yangtze', i. 146.
Lung, or dragon of the Chinese, i. 344; carried in procession, i. 818.
Lung River, in Fuhkien, i. 129.
Lung-tsüen, in Shansí, i. 95.
Lute, or *kin*, a favorite instrument, ii. 99.

MA TSUPU, marine goddess, temple to, at Ningpo, i. 123; and the Virgin, ii. 316.
Ma Twan-lin, his *Antiquarian Researches*, i. 259–265, 681; list of comets, ii. 73.
Macao, climate of, i. 54; description of, i. 170; governor of Canton retires to, from pirates, ii. 183; Ricci in, ii. 290; Tournon imprisoned in, ii. 302; Mrs. Gutzlaff's school at, ii. 345; smuggling trade in opium at, ii. 378; origin of the settlement and name, ii. 428; recent history, ii. 430; the Dutch repulsed before, ii. 433; English man-of-war at, ii. 448; their troops occupy, ii. 456; Lord Napier reaches, ii. 464; Elliot and the English retire to, ii. 506; Lin's soldiers repulsed at, ii. 516; Kíying goes to, ii. 567; becomes a resort of smugglers, ii. 634; of coolie traders, ii. 662; finally closed to the coolie trade, ii. 715.
Macartney, Lord, i. 402, 431, 452, 454; his embassy to Peking, ii. 454.
Macgowan, Dr. D. J., ii. 350, 388.
Ma-chin, from *Maha-china*, 'Great China,' its Hindu name, i. 3.
Mackie, J. Milton, ii. 602, 624.
Macy, Wm. A., ii. 344.
Magaillans (Magalhaens), Père Gabriel, i. 64, 289, 473, 589, 817, ii. 297; his embassy, ii. 429.
Mahábhárata, name *China* occurs in the, i. 2.
Mailla, J-A-M. de M., ii 34, 73, 137, 152, 309, 413.
Maimai chin, of Urga, i. 204; of Kiakhta, i. 207, ii. 443.
Malacca, Protestant missions in, ii. 323, 324.
Malte Brun, estimate of Eighteen Provinces, i. 8, 296.

Digitized by Google

Manchu, physical traits, i. 44; Emperors publish the *Penal Code*, i. 385; nobility, i. 387; and education system, i. 521, 560; and Chinese poem, i. 598; alter the Chinese head-dress, i. 761; names, how written, i. 798; military endeavors of their Emperors, ii. 92; peculiar dread of foreign invasion, ii. 642.
Manchuria, one of the three grand divisions, i. 7; extent of, i. 187; watercourses and mountains, i. 188–191; three provinces, i. 191–200; climate, i. 195; administration of government, i. 199; by native nobles, i. 406.
Manchus, their ancestors the Kins, ii. 174; overthrow the Mings, ii. 178; their government better than the Mings, ii. 185; and the Triad Society, ii. 267; close China to foreign trade, ii. 426; terrible destruction of, at Chinkiang, ii. 542; as rulers of China, ii. 580; national dislike of, and Tai-ping revolt, ii. 596.
Mandarin ducks, fidelity of, i. 340; as an emblem, ii. 112.
Mandarin, derivation of word, i. 417.
Mandarin (or court) dialect, the *kwan hwa*, i. 613; the Bible in, ii. 364.
Mangu khan, successor of Kuyuk, mission of Rubruquis to, ii. 418; of King Hayton to, ii. 420.
Manji, tribes in Yunnan, i. 4.
Manning, T., mission of, to Tibet in 1811, i. 246.
Mausoleum, of Grand Lama at Peking, i. 79; at Teshu Lumbo, i. 252; of Chinese Emperors, ii. 248.
Manu, Laws of, mention of China in, i. 2.
Manures, preparation of, ii. 8.
Marble, uses of, i. 307; slabs, etc., exported, ii. 394.
Marco Polo. See Polo.
Margary, A. R., i. 184; sent from Hankow to Bhamo, ii. 721; his murder, ii. 722; its subsequent investigation, ii. 723, 724.
Marriage, customs in Tibet, i. 251; in Fuhkien, i. 785–791; good sense of the laws controlling, i. 793; and ancestral worship, ii. 239; of Emperor Tungchi, ii. 710.
Marshall, Thos., ii. 287, 307, 318.
Marshman, J., i. 657, ii. 320; his term for *baptism*, ii. 363.
Martin, R. M., i. 120, 285, ii. 406, 443, 562; his proposition regarding Chusan, ii. 580.
Martin, Dr. W. A. P., i. 20, 435, 550, 551, 559, ii. 217, 272, 741.
Match-makers employed in marriages, i. 785, 786.
Matting, grass grown for, i. 357; manufacture and uses of, ii. 61; export of, ii. 395.
Mayers, W. F., i. 438, 752, ii. 90, 185, 217, 248.
Maximowitch, Carl J., i. 296, 355.
McCarthy, Justin, ii. 565; estimate of Bowring and Parkes, ii. 634, 637; on results of the war, ii. 687.
McCarty, Dr. D. B., ii. 350.
McClatchie, Rev. Canon T., i. 632, 633; ii. 142, 200.
McCulloch's area of China, i. 5; of the Eighteen Provinces, i. 8; population on Plain, i. 28; Mongols, i. 45; population, i. 285.
Meadows, T. T., i. 192, 494, ii. 2, 596, 597, 624.
Measures of length, weight, etc., ii. 81.
Meats seen upon Chinese tables, i. 776.
Mechanical arts, and implements, ii. 18; attainments in, ii. 117.
Medhurst, W. H., i. 125, 265, 271, 278, 290, 530, 615, 634, 636, 685, 755, 809, ii. 28, 151, 214, 258, 295, 321, 326, 329, 330, 352, 354, 363, 369; his Tai-ping translations, ii. 594, 623.
Medicine, practice better than theories of, i. 377; its profession in Chinese society, i. 783; attainments in, ii. 118–134.
Mei ling, in Kwangtung, i. 12.
Mei Shan, or 'Coal Hill,' Peking, i. 70.
Mencius, birthplace of, i. 90; praises the *Chun Tsiu*, i. 649; life of, i. 666; his doctrines, i. 668–672; and early Emperors, ii. 146; writings burned, ii. 161; a saint, ii. 201, 237.
Mendacity of the Chinese, i. 834.
Metals and metallurgy, ii. 18; knowledge of, ii. 118.
Metaphysics of Chu Hí and tendency of Chinese thought, i. 683–685.
Meteorology of China, i. 51–55.
Miao hao, or ancestral name of Emperor, i. 399.
Miaotsz', i. 41; *sáng* and *shuh*, i. 43, 115, 177, 179–180; *tankia* descendants of, at Canton, i. 412; songs, ii. 95; Hung Siu-tsuen among, ii. 587.
Michie, A., i. 205.
Middle Kingdom, *Chung Kwoh*, a name for China since B.C. 1150, i. 4.
Military, control of, in provinces, i. 444; examinations among the, i. 560; architecture in China, i. 758; science, ii. 88.
Milk little used, i. 776.
Millet, Italian (*Setaria*), in Shingking, i. 191; much eaten in the North, i. 772.
Milne, Rev. Wm. C., i. 121, 494, 508, 686, 744, 745, 746, ii. 132, 229, 231, 265, 269, 350.
Milne, Dr. W., ii. 225; arrives in China, ii. 319; at Malacca, ii. 323, 368.
Min River, in Fuhkien, i. 128; in Sz'chuen, i. 154, 155.
Minerals, probably abundant in Kwán-

Digitized by Google

lun, i. 12; of Shantung, i. 93; of Yunnan, i. 183; of the Empire, i. 304–310.
Ming dynasty, its period, ii. 177–179; table of Emperors, ii. 186; trade during, ii. 373.
Ming ti, Emperor, ii. 163; introduces Buddhism, ii. 218, 229.
Mint, its management, i. 428; one in every province, ii. 83.
Mirrors, Chinese magic, ii. 20; to cure maniacs, ii. 256.
Missionaries, letter from Romish, concerning Chinese boat life, i. 751; they teach mathematics at Peking, ii. 67; under Kanghi, ii. 181; Buddhist, their influence, ii. 189; Moslem, ii. 268; Nestorian, ii. 275, 286; Roman Catholic, ii. 287; their conduct in China, ii. 305; the first Protestant, ii. 318; female, their influence, ii. 364; information derived from French, ii. 440; French, beheaded in Kwangsi, ii. 642; British, address to Lord Elgin, ii. 649; their influence in Peking, ii. 689; massacre of French, at Tientsin, ii. 700; American, frightened away from Tungchau, ii. 705; Chinese grievances against, ii. 709; their devotion during the great famine, ii. 736.
Missions, earliest Christian, to China, the Nestorians, ii. 275–286; Roman Catholic: first period, ii. 287–289; second period, ii. 289–304; decrease after edict of Yungching, ii. 304; statistics of Catholic, ii. 307; their literary and educational labors, ii. 309; Protestant, introduced by Morrison, ii. 318; among Chinese emigrants in the Archipelago, ii. 323; their hospital practice, ii. 333–340; condition of Protestant, at Morrison's death, ii. 346; conference of, in 1877, ii. 365; obstacles and encouragements to, ii. 368; Russian, established at Peking, ii. 443; problem of foreign, in China, rules suggested, ii. 707.
Mobs, fear of, in Peking, i. 84; attack British troops before Canton, ii. 523; attack the factories, ii. 495, 556, 568.
Mohammedan, name for China, *Tung Tu*, i. 5; mosque in Peking, i. 74; in Hangchau, i. 119; rebellion in 1865–73, i. 149, 154, 269; sect in China, ii. 268–271; insurrection in Kansuh suppressed, ii. 709; uprising in Yunnan province, ii. 719; rebellion in Eastern Turkestan, ii. 727–731.
Mohammedans, in Kuldja, i. 219; in Bukur, i. 225; first come to China, ii. 268; the sect in the Empire, 270; found by Ibn Batuta, ii. 422; universal uprising of, ii. 730.
Monetary system of the Chinese, ii. 83.
Mongol, race characteristics, i. 144; derivation of name, i. 202; dynasty (Yuen) and paper money, ii. 85, 177; régime, ii. 175; Buddhists, ii. 229, 233.
Mongolia, position and climate, i. 200–202; divisions—Inner Mongolia, i. 202–204; Outer Mongolia, i. 204–209; Kokonor, i. 209–213; outlying towns, i. 213–215.
Mongols, their number, i. 45; religion, Shamanism, ii. 233; tolerate the Nestorians, ii. 286; and first period of Catholic missions, ii. 288; their conquests in Europe, and the embassies to, ii. 415.
Monkeys of China, i. 314–316.
Monsoons on coast, i. 53–54.
Montecorvino, John of, ii. 271; goes to Cathay, ii. 287, 421; found in Peking by Friar Odoric, ii. 423.
Moon, an eclipse at Canton, i. 819; symbols of, ii. 73, 74.
Morals of the Chinese stage, i. 824.
Morrison, J. R., ii. 332, 342, 345, 363; reward offered for, ii. 520; services as an interpreter, ii. 547, 548, 556; his death, ii. 560.
Morrison, Dr. Robert, i. 230, 265–269, 282, 284, 523, 524, 530, 559, 603, 622, 624, 674, 801, 817, ii. 227; his life, ii. 318; and Ricci compared, ii. 322, 332, 333, 363, 453, 458, 459.
Morrison Education Society, ii. 341.
Mosques, at Kuldja, i. 218; near Moslem pagoda in Canton, i. 745; notice of, at Ningpo, ii. 269.
Mountains, of China, its frontier, i. 9; its four great ranges, i. 10; Pumpelly's "Sinian System," i. 14; passes in, i. 39; of Manchuria, i. 188.
Mourning, cards, i. 802; customs in China, ii. 249, 250.
Mukden, capital of Shingking, i. 87; description of, i. 192; money remitted to, i. 295; Kienlung's elegy on, i. 598.
Mulberry and silk worms, ii. 10.
Mules, fine, in China, i. 323.
Mun-pai, or 'door-tablet' for the census, i. 283, 288.
Murray, Hugh, i. 300, ii. 137, 152, 406, 410.
Murui-nssu, 'Tortuous River,' i. 20.
Music, in Tibet, i. 253; Board of, i. 424; works on, in the catalogue, i. 672; style and principles of Chinese, ii. 93–98; instruments of, ii. 99–104.
Musk, and musk-deer in China, i. 322; exported, ii. 395.
Myths and legends, of the Chinese, ii. 76; of the creation, ii. 138–142; Taoist, ii. 216; Buddhist, ii. 233.

Digitized by Google

NAILS worn long on fingers, i. 766.
Names, for China, i. 2–5, ii. 408; ancestral, of Emperor, i. 399; how indicated in books, i. 621; changed at marriage, i. 788; several, during life, i. 797; periphrases in use for, i. 803; for porcelain, ii. 22; for tea, ii. 45; for opium, ii. 373.
Nanchang, capital of Kiangsi, i. 112; Ricci in, ii. 290.
Nanhiung, in Kwangtung, i. 174.
Nan-kau, 'South Gate,' in Great Wall, i. 14, 31.
Nankeen, a cotton cloth, ii. 37; decrease in export of, ii. 395.
Nanking, climate of, i. 52; description of, i. 100; Porcelain Tower of, i. 102; its *nankeen* cloth, ii. 37; stone animals at, ii. 115; capital of one of the 'Three States,' A.D. 211, ii. 164; pillaged by the Kin, ii. 175; capital of the Ming, ii. 177; Ricci in, ii. 290; the English before, ii. 545; treaty of, ii. 549; Hung Siu-tsuen proclaimed Emperor (Tien-teh) at, ii. 584; rebel capture of, ii. 596; their stress in, ii. 605; taken by imperialists, ii. 620.
Nan ling, 'Southern Mountains,' a continuation of the Yun ling, i. 12.
Nan shan, in Kwangtung, i. 159; in Koko-nor, i. 211.
Napier, John, mentioned in a Chinese treatise, ii. 67.
Napier, Lord, superintendent of trade, his arrival, ii. 464; letter to Governor Lu rejected, ii. 467; contest with the governor, ii. 471; retires from Canton and dies suddenly, ii. 474.
Nari (A-li), a division of Tibet, i. 244, 256.
Navarette, a Dominican friar, and the Jesuits, ii. 300.
Natural history, study of, in China, i. 296; geology, i. 297–313; zoölogy, i. 313–346; ichthyology, i. 346–351; insects, i. 351–354; botany, i. 355–370; the *Pun-tsao*, or Herbal, i. 371–376; condition of the science in China, i. 377–379.
Niu-chih, or Kin Tartars, i. 202; ancestors of Manchus, ii. 174.
Navy, control of, interchanged with army, i. 445, 496, 562; Lay's flotilla fiasco, ii. 692.
Nestorian, monument at Si-ngan, i. 151, ii. 276; missionaries at court of Taitsung, ii. 169; during the Yuen, ii. 286; oppose Corvino, ii. 287; missionaries come with traders, ii. 411; priest and Rubruquis, ii. 418.
Nevius, J. L., i. 810, ii. 217.
Newspapers (see also *Peking Gazette*) and cheap types, i. 605; edited by Protestant missionaries, ii. 341.
New Year, festival and ceremonies, i. 810–816; its date, ii. 70.
Nganhwui province, i. 108.
Nganking, or Anking, in Nganhwui, i. 110; taken by Tai-pings, ii. 595; their march to relief of, ii. 607; captured by imperialists, ii. 608.
Ningpo, temperature at, i. 53; description of, i. 120–123; the *to min* of, i. 412; birthday fête at, i. 814; spring festival, ii. 14; cannon found at, ii. 62; the cholera at, ii. 132; nunneries at, ii. 231; foundling hospital, ii. 265; its mosque, ii. 269; missions at, ii. 350; Portuguese at, ii. 428; its capture by the British, ii. 527; attempt at recapture, ii. 531, ii. 573; during Tai-ping Rebellion, ii. 608, 609.
Nieuwhof (or Nieuhoff), J., ii. 3, 428; account of the fall of Fort Zealandia, ii. 436.
Nitre common in China, i. 308.
Niu Kien, Governor-General, conduct at Wusung, ii. 535, 537; British offer, opportunity of ransoming Nanking, ii. 544; joint letter to Pottinger, ii. 546.
Niuchwang (Yingtsz'), in Shingking, i. 194, 751.
Nobility, Manchu and Chinese, i. 387; orders of, i. 406.
Notation, Chinese arithmetical, ii. 66; musical, ii. 94.
Novels, Tibetan, i. 251; and tales in Chinese literature, i. 692; character of Chinese fiction, i. 695.
Nui Hing-an ling, or Sialkoi Mountains, west of the Amur, i. 13.
Numerals, Chinese, i. 619; limitations to use of, ii. 66.
Nuns, Buddhist, at Canton, i. 165; and nunneries, ii. 230.
Nü-rh Yu, 'Words for Women and Girls,' a school-book, i. 577.

OBEISANCE, sundry degrees of, i. 801.
Observatory at Peking, i. 72; and the Jesuit missionaries, ii. 298.
Odes, the Book of (see *Shi King*, i. 636, etc.), 'for children,' the *Yiu Hioh Shi-tieh*, i. 533; in Nestorian inscription at Si-ngan, ii. 282.
Odoric, Friar, i. 302; on casting out devils, ii. 314; his journey to Cathay, ii. 422.
Officers, in China, their extortions, i. 278; nine ranks, i. 413–415; and Board of Civil Office, i. 421; provincial, i. 438–448; checks upon, i. 449; their character and position, i. 451; their establishments, i. 503; compelled to extortion, i. 516; of education, i. 548; dresses, i. 763; formalities of meeting, i. 805; their religious duties, ii. 201–205; instance of their functions, ii. 230; of their corruption, ii. 378; of their

Digitized by Google

methods, ii. 557; attitude toward foreigners at close of the opium war, ii. 575.
Oling Lake, in Koko-nor, i. 18.
Oliphant, Lawrence, i. 460, ii. 644, 647, 654, 660.
Olives (the *Pimela*), so-called, of China, i. 365, 775.
Olyphant & Co., their assistance to missionaries, ii. 328, 330, 342.
Ometo Fuh, Buddhist prayer, i. 125.
Om mani padmi hum, its meaning, i. 249.
Opium, smuggling incident, i. 477; its increase under Taukwang, ii. 184; introduction and names of, ii. 373; cultivation in India, ii. 374; preparation and sale, ii. 376; manner of smoking, ii. 381; its effects, ii. 384; value of the trade, ii. 387, 430; Robinson's paper on smuggling, ii. 479; proposal to legalize, ii. 482; the matter referred to Canton, ii. 486; prohibitory laws severely enforced, ii. 490; increase of smuggling, ii. 492; demanded by Lin, ii. 498; surrendered, ii. 502; and destroyed, ii. 504; sales recommence, ii. 506; Pottinger's position regarding, ii. 538; his discussions on, with commissioners, ii. 550; smuggling and the port of Hongkong, ii. 558; *laissez faire* policy of British and Chinese after first war, ii. 561, 577; increase of smuggling, ii. 633; legalized in revised tariff, ii. 657.
Oranges, many varieties of, at Canton, i. 774.
Osbeck, Peter, his voyage to China, ii. 461.
Ouchterlony, Lieutenant J., his *Chinese War*, ii. 551, 574.
Oysters common along the coast, i. 350; their quality, i. 780.

PAGODA, Porcelain, at Nanking, i. 102; and dagoba in China, i. 743; purpose and construction, i. 745; plain, at Canton, ii. 269.
Pai-lau, in Peking, i. 83; their purpose and construction, i. 756–758; to commemorate British retreat from Canton, ii. 626.
Painting, as a fine art in China, ii. 105; examples of illustrations, ii. 106–116; on pith paper, ii. 113. For reproductions of Chinese, see the two frontispieces of these volumes.
Pakhoi, port in Kwangtung, i. 175.
Palace, of Emperor, at Peking, i. 65–69; of Yuen-ming Yuen, i. 80; life and arrangements of, i. 407.
Palafox, Bishop, i. 162.
Palisade boundary between Chihlí and Shingking, i. 25, 187.
Palladius, Archimandrite, ii. 277, 285.
Palms, fan, cocoanut, etc., i. 360.
Palti, or Yamorouk Lake, in Tibet, i. 25.
Panthay insurrection in Yunnan province, ii. 719.
Pao-ho tien, 'Hall of Secure Peace,' in Peking, i. 68.
Pao-teh, on Yellow River, and chief anticlinal axes of Sinian system, i. 14.
Paper, in China, history and varieties of, i. 599; used for window glass, i. 782; collected by priests, ii. 257; burned for spirits, ii. 257.
Paper money, in Fuhchau, i. 132; Polo's delight over, ii. 85; and Yuen dynasty, ii. 177; mentioned by Ibn Batuta, ii. 422.
Parker, Admiral Sir William, arrives from England, ii. 524.
Parker, Dr. P., i. 706, ii. 124, 325; his hospital at Canton, ii. 333–337, 567, 639.
Parkes, Sir Harry, ii. 29; McCarthy's estimate of, ii. 634; action in the Arrow case, ii. 635–637, 640; one of commission to govern Canton, ii. 646; his ability, ii. 647; experiences at Tungchau, ii. 678; his capture and imprisonment, ii. 680.
Pascal, a Spanish friar, missionary to Kuldja, ii. 289, 424.
Patriarchal feature of government, i. 381.
Panting, in Chihlí, i. 85.
Pauthier, G., i. 65, 84, 643, 662, 674, ii. 34, 85, 87, 137, 149, 150, 161, 207, 210, 212, 286, 413, 419, 713.
Pauying Lake, in Kiangsu, i. 100.
Pavié, T., i. 696.
Pavilion, prominent feature of Chinese architecture, i. 730.
Pawnbrokers' establishments, ii. 86.
Peacocks reared throughout China, i. 337.
Pearl River, in Kwangtung, i. 22, 159; duck-hatching on, i. 778; pirates on, during this century, ii. 133; kept open by foreigners, ii. 630.
Pearls, genuine and artificial, i. 350.
Pechele (for *Peh-chihli*), sometimes used for Chihli, i. 60.
Peepul, or *pu-ti* tree (*Ficus religiosa*), worshipped, ii. 259.
Peh ling, 'Northern Mountains,' in Kwănlun system, i. 12.
Peh-ta sz', 'White Pagoda Temple,' Peking, i. 75.
Pehtang, Americans urged to go to, ii. 665; they repair to Peking, *via*, ii. 668; Ho asks English to exchange treaties at, 672; allies land and capture, ii. 673.
Pei ho, and towns on its banks, i. 85–86; allied fleet reach, ii. 649; repulse at battle of, ii. 666.
Peking, climate of, i. 51; situation, area, and history, i. 60–64; walls, i. 64; 'Prohibited City,' i. 65; plan of, i. 66;

Digitized by Google

palaces, i. 67–69; 'Imperial City,' i. 69; parks, public buildings, temples, i. 69–76; Altar to Heaven, i. 76; other temples, i. 78; summer palace, i. 80; streets, city government, life, i. 81–84; dogs of, i. 319; crows about, i. 334; State school at, i. 543; examinations for *tsin-sz'* degree, i. 558; Pih-yung Kung, i. 73, 730; street scenes in, i. 741; carts used by royalty in, i. 747; compressed feet in, i. 770; marriage processions at, i. 789; fireworks in, i. 817; ploughing ceremony at, ii. 13; its medical college (*Tai-i Yuen*), ii. 121; taken by the Mongols, ii. 175; by the Mings, ii. 177, 178; Barrow on infanticide in, ii. 240; funerals in, ii. 245, 250; Moslems in, ii. 269; Catholics first established in, ii. 287; Ricci goes to, ii. 291; medical instruction at, ii. 339; Friar Odoric visits, ii. 423; Van Hoorn's embassy to, ii. 438; Russian mission at, ii. 443; Tai-ping expedition against, ii. 597; Ward's visit to, ii. 669; allied troops at, ii. 682, 686; a foreign quarter in, ii. 688.

Peking Gazette (*King Pao*), on revenue, i. 293; notice of, i. 420.

Penal Code, of China, i. 279, 282, 287; examination of, i. 384–392; regulating trials and punishments, i. 506; number of characters in, i. 589; laws on land, ii. 2; on physicians, ii. 133; framed by Yungloh, ii. 177.

People of China, their clans, i. 482; general education, i. 519.

Pepys, Samuel, mentions tea, ii. 51.

Perny, P., i. 719, ii. 96.

Pescadores, or Panghu Islands, i. 27, 141; the Dutch in, ii. 433.

Petitions presented by the poor to high magistrates, i. 505.

Petroleum in Formosa, i. 139.

Pheasants, gold, silver, Reeves, and others, i. 336.

Philosophy, Chinese, of the *Yih King*, i. 628–633; of Confucius, i. 662; of Chu Hí, i. 683; ideas concerning the 'action and reaction of the elements,' ii. 74; of the creation, ii. 137–144; Baxin's view of growth of Chinese, ii. 213.

Phœnix, or *Fung-hwang*, i. 343.

Physical traits of Chinese, i. 41.

Physicians, their position in society, i. 783; their practice, ii. 124–127; foreigners educate Chinese as, ii. 339.

Pigeon-English, an unwritten patois, i. 624; examples of, i. 832, ii. 346, 402, 626.

Pigeons, abundant in Peking, i. 335; raised and eaten, i. 779.

Pihkwei, made governor of Canton after Yeh's capture, ii. 646; asks Lord Elgin to reopen trade, ii. 647.

Pih-yung Kung, or 'Classic Hall,' Confucian Temple, Peking, i. 73, 730, 757.

Pilgrims, to Tai Shan, i. 90; Chinese, to Mecca, ii. 270; travels of Buddhist, ii. 413.

Pines, the white, etc., i. 362.

Pirates, infest Kwangtung, ii. 183; pursued by British and Portuguese, ii. 632.

Piry, A. Théophile, i. 686.

Pí-shan, a doubtful volcano in Ílí, i. 11.

Plain. See Great Plain, i. 14, 27, etc.

Plano Carpini, John of, missionary to China, ii. 287; his mission to Kuyuk, ii. 417.

Plantain, productiveness of, i. 361; how eaten, i. 774.

Plough, its construction, ii. 3; drill-plough, ii. 5; foreign, introduced, ii. 63.

Ploughing, annual ceremony of, at Peking, i. 78, ii. 1, 13.

Poetry of the *Shí King*, i. 638–643; characteristics of Chinese, i. 703; examples of their odes and ballads, i. 705–714.

Po-lai-tsz', a name of the Yangtsz' kiang, i. 20.

Police, of Peking, i. 83; tyranny and venality of, i. 475–480; memorial to Emperor concerning, i. 495.

Policy of Chinese government, in Ílí, i. 214; its theory, i. 380–384; toward foreign traders since the Mings, ii. 426; at close of opium war, ii. 575.

Polo, Marco, i. 32, 116, 118, 127, 136, 157, 181, 212, 242, 281, 304, 330, 336, 337, 343, 345, 350, 360, 364, ii. 51, 85, 176, 271, 285, 415; his journeys in China, ii. 420, 425.

Polyandry in Tibet, i. 250.

Polygamy, its extent in China, i. 792.

Poor, troublesome element of Peking population, i. 84; petitions forced upon magistrates, i. 505; dwellings of the, i. 733; disposal of their dead, ii. 254.

Pope of Rome, appoints Corvino archbishop, ii. 287; sends other missionaries to China, ii. 288; Ming claimants write to, ii. 296; and question of rites, ii. 299, 301, 302; supports Tournon and the Dominicans, ii. 303; sends Carpini to Kuyuk khan, ii. 415.

Population, of Great Plain, i. 28; of Peking, i. 62, 84; of Canton, i. 161; of Shingking, i. 192; of the Empire, i. 258–288; of Tibet, unknown, i. 284; of China during the Tang, ii. 171; of Peking at last determined, ii. 687.

Porcelain, i. 111; works, i. 113; materials and manufacture, ii. 22; export of, ii. 394.

Porcupine in China, i. 328.

Portuguese, church in Peking, i. 75; in Ningpo, i. 120; settlers in Formosa, i. 137; in Macao, i. 170; name porcelain, ii. 22; during the Mings, ii. 177; and

Digitized by Google

pirate fleets, ii. 183; oppose introducing Christianity, ii. 289; excitement in Canton against, ii. 292; conduct of early, traders with China, ii. 426; misrepresent the English, ii. 444; keep them out of Canton, ii. 446; homicide of a, at Canton, ii. 451; attack the pirates, ii. 632; smuggling lorchas, ii. 634; abolish coolie trade at Macao, ii. 663.
Pottinger, Sir Henry, arrives from England, ii. 524; takes Chinhai and Ningpo, ii. 527; his proclamation before Chinkiang, ii. 537; his position regarding the opium trade, ii. 539; Kiying writes to, ii. 546; exchanges civilities with commissioners, ii. 547; discusses opium problem with them, ii. 550; signs Nanking treaty, ii. 553; action on hearing of Formosa massacres, ii. 555; exchanges ratifications with Kiying, ii. 557; on J. R. Morrison, ii. 561; action against opium smuggling, ii. 562.
Poutiatine, Admiral Count, his arrival in China, ii. 643.
Poyang Lake, in Kiangsi, i. 23, 111.
Prayers, Buddhist, ii. 225, 226; machines for, ii. 234; at ancestral tomb, ii. 253; 'Girdle Classics,' ii. 257.
Prejevalsky, Colonel N., observations on Gobi, i. 16; on source of Yangtsz', i. 20; Lob-nor, i. 24; Kansuh, i. 153; Mongolia, i. 205, 210, 212, 222, 231, 243, 296, 338, 355, 364.
Prémare, Père, i. 589, 714, ii. 232.
Prester John, Prince of the Kara Kitai, ii. 285, 286.
Priests, in Canton, i. 164, 165; and snakes, i. 346; harbor thieves, i. 498; in society, i. 783; and theatres, i. 820; grow tea, ii. 42; no hierarchy of, in China, ii. 191, 199; Taoist, ii. 214, 215; Buddhist, ii. 220, 224, 256; Nestorian, ii. 285, 286.
Primitives in the Chinese language, i. 591–593.
Printing, in China, i. 600; missionary, ii. 367.
Processions, marriage, i. 787–791; style of, i. 819; funeral, ii. 245, 248.
Professions, the liberal, in Chinese society, i. 783.
Prisons in Canton, i. 167, 514.
Pronunciation, varieties in local Chinese, i. 615–617.
'Prohibited City' of Peking, i. 65.
Prospect, or 'Coal' Hill, Peking, i. 70.
Protestants, first, missionaries to China, ii. 318; methods compared with Catholics, ii. 322; toleration granted to, ii. 357; statistics of, in China, ii. 366.
Proverbs, Chinese, i. 116, 442, 619; collections of, and specimen, i. 719–723, 792, ii. 244.
Provincial governments, character of the system, i. 437; higher, i. 438, and lower officers, i. 441; law courts, i. 504.
Prussian blue, used in coloring teas, ii. 47; introduced, ii. 62.
Psalmanazar, George, his *History of Formosa*, i. 141.
Ptolemy, the geographer, his mention of China, ii. 408; his "Stone Tower," ii. 409.
Pulses, their importance in medical practice, ii. 122, 125.
Pumpelly, R., his "Sinian System" of mountains, i. 14; remarks on Gobi, i. 17; quoted, i. 145, 205, 207, 296, 304, 305.
Punishments, Board of, i. 426; five kinds, i. 508; Parkes and Loch at Board of, ii. 681.
Pun tsao, or 'Chinese Herbal,' i. 316; concerning the sphex, i. 354; its author and scope, i. 370; divisions of: geology, i. 371; botany, i. 372; zoölogy, i. 374; notices of the horse, i. 375, 691, ii. 373.
Pushtikhur, mountain knot in Turkestan, i. 10.
Puto Island, i. 124.
Puyur, or Pir Lake, in Manchuria, i. 24.
Pwanku, the first man, ii. 138–141.

QUAILS, fighting, i. 826.
Queues, how worn, i. 761; false hair in, i. 765; imposed upon Chinese by the Tartars, ii. 179; mourning, ii. 249; cut off by Tai-pings, ii. 589.
Quicksilver mines in Kweichau, i. 178, 311; experiments in, ii. 118.

RACES (see under Aboriginal), aboriginal and colonial, of China, i. 43.
Radicals in the Chinese language, i. 591–593.
Raffles, Sir T. S., i. 482.
Rain, in North China, i. 51; in the south, i. 53; contrast in, between coasts of China and America, i. 55; Taukwang's prayer for, i. 467; efforts after, by officers, ii. 203–205.
Ranking, J., i. 330.
Ranks, titular, of noblemen, i. 405; of the people, i. 411; insignia of, i. 414.
Rationalists, or Taoists, considered as magicians, i. 694; ideas of the creation, ii. 138; creed, ii. 207 ff.
Rats, how and when eaten, i. 778.
Red Book, of officials, its character, i. 452.
Reed, William B., United States Minister, i. 460; arrives in China, ii. 643, 649.
Regis, Père J. B., i. 633.
Reinaud, J. T., i. 127, ii. 168, 271, 414, 425, 426.
Religion, sects in Tibet, i. 248; ridicule

Digitized by Google

of, by the literati, i. 691; none in early mythology, ii. 142; only external modifying influence in China, ii. 189; two negative features of Chinese, ii. 192; the three *kiao*, or sects: State, ii. 194; *Tao*, or Rationalist, ii. 207; *Fuh*, or Buddhist, ii. 217; toleration of, in China, ii. 221; effete among the people, ii. 266.
Rémusat, Abel, his derivation of word *Tsung ling*, i. 9; myths of the Great Desert, i. 12; river basins of China, i. 27, 213, 214, 230, 231, 233, 234, 237, 238, 250, 251, 254, 308, 353; observations on natural sciences, i. 377, 500, 597, 605; on Chinese grammar, i. 617; Mencius, i. 666, 674, 675, 681, 682, 694, 696, ii. 123, 139, 167, 176, 180, 224, 232, 233, 298, 309, 441.
Rennie, Dr. D. F., i. 65, ii. 692.
Researches of Ma Twan-lin, i. 259–265.
Responsibility, a main feature of government, i. 382–388; its operation, i. 436; of Emperor for natural calamities, i. 465; results of, i. 481.
Revenue, of Chinese Empire, i. 289–292; Board of, i. 422; Department of, i. 443; and transit duties, ii. 391.
Rhubarb from Kansuh, i. 864.
Ricci, Father Matteo, comes to China, ii. 289; travels northward, ii. 290; his death, ii. 292; his character, ii. 293; decision as to the rites, ii. 292, 299; compared with Morrison, ii. 322; compiles account of Goës' journey, ii. 425.
Rice, its importance, i. 772; its cultivation, ii. 5–7; paper, painting on, ii. 113; an import, ii. 396.
Richardson, Sir John, i. 296, 347, 348.
Richthofen, Baron F. von, remarks on conformation of Central Asia, i. 18; roads in loess, i. 39, 97, 120, 150, 158, 184, 212, 221, 222, 257, 296, 297, 303, 305, 636, ii. 137; on early knowledge of China, ii. 407, 411, 624.
Ripa, Père M., ii. 124; arrives in China, ii. 302; observations on Catholic missionaries, ii. 305.
Rites, five kinds of, i. 423; Book of, i. 643–647; question of the, Ricci's precedent, ii. 292; Catholic quarrels concerning, ii. 297–303.
Ritter, Carl, i. 208, 234, 237, 257.
Rivers, of China, i. 18; of Shansi, i. 94; boat life on, i. 751.
Roberts, Rev. I. J., his connection with Hung Siu-tsuen, ii. 587, 622.
Roads, public, i. 37; mountain, i. 39; of Shansi, i. 96; of Sz'chuen, i. 156; safety of, in the Empire, i. 212; in loess region, i. 300.
Robinson, Sir G. B., associated with Napier, ii. 464; succeeds him as superintendent, ii. 479.
Rome, Chinese knowledge of, during the Han dynasty, ii. 163; the country Ta Tsin, ii. 207; and China, infanticide in, ii. 242; divination in China and, ii. 261; intercourse with China, ii. 410.
Roman Catholics', and Buddhists' rituals compared, ii. 231, 315; they suggest the founding of hospitals, ii. 265; missions first established in China, ii. 286; second period of their missions, ii. 289; discussions concerning the rites, ii. 253, 292, 299; expelled from China by Yung-ching, ii. 304; character of their labors in China, ii. 316; they move to Hong-kong, ii. 347; restitution of their confiscated property, ii. 361, 362; indemnified in treaty of Peking, ii. 687.
Rondot, Natalis, Chinese commerce, ii. 19, 31, 38, 83.
Roofs, how constructed in China, i. 726, 729.
Rubruquis, Friar William, sent by Louis XI. to Mangu khan, ii. 418, 425.
Russia, treaty between, and China on frontier of Ili, i. 215, 594; and toleration of Christianity in China, ii. 360; boundary disputes, trade, and treaties of, with China, ii. 441; takes possession of Kuldja, ii. 727.
Russian, 'pigeon,' spoken in Vierny, ii. 402; Admiral Poutiatine arrives in China, ii. 643; and American ministers at Tientsin, ii. 654; diplomacy and the Kuldja question, ii. 732.

SABBATH not known in China, i. 809.
Sacharoff, T., i. 271.
Sacred Edict (or Commands) of Kanghi, the *Shing Yu*, i. 548; a politico-moral treatise, i. 686–691; its observations on mulberry culture, ii. 33; illustrations from, ii. 107–111, 227, 267.
Sacrifices, no human, in China, ii. 192; three grades, ii. 195; of women at funeral of Empress, ii. 250.
Sagalien, River (see Amur), i. 189; town of (Igoon), i. 198.
Saint-Martin, Didier, Romish missionary to China, ii. 306, 312; on casting out demons, ii. 314.
Salaries, of Chinese officers, i. 294; of Mongol princes, i. 430.
Sale of office practised continually by Emperor, i. 475.
Salisbury, Prof. E. E., ii. 232.
Salt, produced in Shansi, i. 95; in Sz'chuen, i. 158, 308; Yunnan, i. 184; Department, or Gabel, i. 443.
Salvétat, ii. 23, 24.
'Sand,' a malady at Nanking, i. 52.
Sand-storms on the Plains, i. 52; dunes or moving hills in Kashgar, i. 227.
Sângkolinsin, Tartar general, at Taku forts, ii. 664; drives back the allies, ii.

Digitized by Google

666; blunder in operations against allies before Taku, ii. 674; retires toward Peking, ii. 677; his deception, ii. 679; conversation with Parkes, ii. 680; his connection with treatment of English prisoners, ii. 685; allows the return of allied troops, ii. 688.
San-tsz' King, or 'Trimetrical Classic,' a school-book, i. 526–530.
Sayce, Prof. A. H., on hieroglyphics, i. 581.
Schaal, Father Adam, recommended to the Emperor, ii. 294; and Shunchí, ii. 296; proscribed, and dies, ii. 297; makes cannon, ii. 298.
Scarborough, W., i. 720.
Scherschewsky, Bishop, S. I. J., ii. 373, 364.
Science, study of, in China, i. 297; foreign terms of, introduced, i. 621; abstract, not pursued, ii. 65; attainments in and ideas upon, ii. 66–86.
Schlegel, Dr. Gustave, i. 48, 494, 633.
School name, *shu ming*, i. 525; when conferred, i. 797.
Schools, boys', how conducted, i. 525; books studied, i. 527–541; high, i. 542; Romish mission, ii. 310; Morrison Education Society, ii. 341–345.
Schuhmacher, M. Joh. H., i. 633.
Schuyler, Eugene, i. 217, 219, 283, ii. 402.
Sculpture as a fine art, ii. 105, 114.
Secret societies in China, i. 492; their character, ii. 267.
Sedan chairs of magistrates, i. 503; their kinds and uses, i. 748.
Sénamaud, J., i. 663.
Seres, Latin designation for China, i. 4; distinguished from *Sinæ*, ii. 408.
Seu Kí-yu, Governor, compend of geography by, i. 50; and Dr. Abeel, ii. 348, 409, 575.
Sèvres and Chinese porcelains compared, ii. 23.
Seymour, Admiral, ii. 637; enters Canton city, ii. 638; withdraws from the river to Macao Fort, ii. 640; takes Taku forts, ii. 651.
Sexes, separation of, in Chinese society, i. 784.
Shamanism, the Buddhism of Tibet and Mongolia, ii. 233–235.
Shameen, foreign settlement at Canton, i. 168.
Sha-moh (see Gobi), i. 15; its character, i. 17.
Shang dynasty, its annals, ii. 154–157, 158.
Shangchuen, Sançian, or St. John's Island, Kwangtung, i. 173, ii. 289, 427.
Shanghai, climate, i. 53; rainfall, i. 56; description of, i. 106; its dialect, i. 611; Ching-hwang miao at, ii. 202; foundling hospital at, ii. 264; missions established at, ii. 351, 357; conference, ii. 365; taken and ransomed by the British, ii. 536; at close of first war, ii. 573; captured by rebels, ii. 604; protected from Tai-pings by foreigners, ii. 606; foreigners at, thank Gordon, ii. 619; customs duties entrusted to foreigners at, ii. 627; troubles with Cantonese rebels at, ii. 628; arsenal established at, ii. 696.
Shangtí, worship of, as God, ii. 154, 157; the Taoist, ii. 215; and *Tien*, the term question among Catholics, ii. 297; among Protestants, ii. 364; Hung Siu-tsuen and the worship of, ii. 588, 596.
Shangtu, or Xanadu, i. 87.
Shan-hai kwan, a town on the Gulf of Pechele, i. 25.
Shansí province, description of, i. 94; productions, i. 95; mountain passes, i. 97; loess regions of, i. 298–308.
Shantung province, i. 89; productions, i. 92; people of, i. 93.
Shark, mode of catching, i. 347; fins eaten, ii. 397.
Shasí, in Hupeh, i. 145.
Shauchau, in Kwangtung, i. 173.
Shauking, a town in Kwangtung, i. 173; Ricci established there, ii. 290, 431; rebel slaughter at, ii. 632.
Shaw, R. B., ii. 729.
Shaw, Samuel, his voyage to China, ii. 460.
Sheep, domestic and mountain, i. 321.
Shensí province, i. 148–152; loess in, i. 298; the Huns in, ii. 165.
Shigatsé, capital of Ulterior Tibet, i. 247.
Shih, a grain measure, its value, i. 290.
Shih-pah Sáng, or 'Eighteen Provinces,' called *Chung Kwoh*, i. 8.
Shí King, the 'Book of Odes,' its poetry, i. 636–643, 703; allusion to silk, ii. 32; and ancestral worship, ii. 236.
Shingking colony, i. 25; a province of Manchuria, i. 191–196.
Shinnung, inventor of agriculture, temple to, at Peking, i. 78.
Shoeing animals, manner of, ii. 4.
Shoes, how made and worn, i. 761; women's, i. 769; given at New Year, i. 811.
Shops, in Peking, i. 82; arrangement of Chinese, i. 736; their names, i. 799; decorated at New Year, i. 811–813.
Shuga Mountains, in the Kwánlun system, i. 11.
Shu King, the 'Book of Records,' i. 90; its character and value, i. 633–636; on temperance, i. 808; notice of silk culture, ii. 32; of cotton, ii. 36; of early attention to astronomy, ii. 68, 69; the deluge of Yao, ii. 147 ff.; its credibility, ii. 152, 155; and House of Chau, ii. 157, 159; and religion, ii. 196; on ancient commerce, ii. 372, 596.
Shun, an early Emperor, ii. 145, 146–148.
Shunchí, Emperor, i. 385; orders women

Digitized by Google

amelated, ii. 259; and Schaal, ii. 296, 1.
ttien, a department of Chihli, i. 60.
toi Mountains, in Manchuria, i. 13, 8.
g River, in Hunan, i. 146.
gkwan, King of Tsinchau, changes s capital to Lohyang, i. 3.
Hioh, or 'Juvenile Instructor,' a rt-book, i. 522, 540.
-boards of Peking, i. 83, 788.
ta, or *Sih-hih-tch* Mountains, in anchuria, i. 10, 188.
Hu, 'West Lake,' near Hangchau, i. 7; near Fuhchau, i. 131.
, Hangchau, i. 119; of Sz'chuen, i. 7; worm reared, i. 351; manufacture, 33–35; export of, ii. 395.
-worm, discovered by Yuenfi, i. 71; s culture, ii. 33.
er, localities of, i. 311; 'shoes' of *cee*, ii. 84.
er Island (Siung Shan), near Chin-ang, i. 106.
on, Eug., ii. 88.
pson, William, i. 727.
gan (Hao-king and Chang-an), aban-ned in 770 B.C. by Siangkwan, i. 3; escription of the city, i. 150; capital of e Chau, ii. 152, 158, 162, 165; during e Tang, ii. 168; temple to Lautsz' in, 215; Nestorian tablet of, ii. 276, 408.
ing, in Kansuh, i. 154, 210, 213, 252.
tsai, or 'Bachelor of Arts,' first de-ree in examination system, i. 547; ilitary, i. 560; Hung Siu-tsuen tries or, ii. 582.
enhwa, in Chihli, i. 86.
Boards, bureaus of, Peking, i. 72, 415, 21–428.
Yuen, 'Western Park,' Peking, i. 70.
kinning papers" used in examinations, 551.
ves, few in China, i. 413, 564.
ith, Rev. Arthur, i. 97.
ith, Bishop George, i. 498, ii. 242, 272.
ith, F. Porter, ii. 134, 241.
uggling, desperate case of opium, i. 47; at Macao and Whampoa, ii. 378; increase of, about Hongkong, ii. 633; British encouragement of, ii. 725.
akes in China, i. 346.
ow, in Peking, i. 51; in Shanghai, i. 58; in Canton, i. 54.
uff, how taken, i. 771; bottles found in Egypt, ii. 27.
cial life, in China, i. 782–836; and government in reform movements, ii. 581.
ciety, Medical Missionary, ii. 334; for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge in China, ii. 340; Morrison Education, ii. 341.
ngari River, in Manchuria, i. 190; in treaty of Livadia, ii. 732.
Songaria (see Tien-shan Peh Lu), or Dzungaria, i. 215; its productions, i. 218; chief cities, i. 219; history, i. 233–236.
Sorghum (*kaoliang*), on Tsungming Island, i. 108; not used for sugar, i. 776.
Sounds, of the Chinese language indicated by symbols, i. 586; mistaken ideas regarding, i. 605; still unwritten, i. 608; dialectic, of Canton and Amoy, i. 615; and sense in Chinese rhymes, i 704.
Soy, how made, i. 365, 773; an export, ii. 396.
Soyorti Mountains. See Sialkoi.
Spanish, trade and relations with China, ii. 431; Don S. de Mas appointed, minister, ii. 565; government and the coolie trade, ii. 715.
Spectacles, fashion of Chinese, ii. 22.
Sphex, or solitary wasp, Chinese ideas respecting, i. 354.
Spirits, ardent, temperance in use of, i. 808; dread of wandering, ii. 258.
Squirrels, varieties of, i. 327.
Stanley, Dean A. P., on Confucius and Buddha, ii. 290.
Stanovoi, or Wai Hing-an Mountains, their position, i. 9.
Stars, arrangement of the, ii. 76.
Staunton, Sir G. L., i. 80, 118, 269, 353, 362, 403, 453, ii. 444, 454.
Staunton, Sir G. T., i. 279, 384, 589, 674, 686, ii. 318, 452, 458, 460.
Steel everywhere made, ii. 19.
Stent, Geo. C., i. 703, 706, 770.
Stevens, Rev. Edwin, i. 93, 129, 764, ii. 329, 352, 368.
Stimpson, i. 296.
Straas, made in Tsinan, i. 91; uses of, ii. 21.
Strauss, Victor von, i. 643, ii. 207, 212.
Streets, of Peking, i. 82; of Canton, i. 168; scenes in, i. 740; at New Year, 812, 815; at Emperor's funeral, ii. 250.
Sturgeon, or *yiu yü*, in Yangtsz', i. 347.
Sü, a censor, his punishment, i. 432.
Su-Hwui, a poetess of the fourth century, i. 708.
Sü Kwang-hi, or Paul Sü, his *Encyclopedia of Agriculture*, i. 686, ii. 10, 51; converted by Ricci, ii. 291, 292, 294, 354.
Sü Kwang-tsin, Governor-General, keeps foreigners out of Canton, ii. 573; his folly, ii. 590, 604.
Suchau, in Kiangsu, i. 103; captured by Tai-pings, ii. 606; recapture of, ii. 613–616.
Sugar, on Formosa, i. 139; largely grown, i. 776; how made, ii. 11.
Suhshun, favorite of Hienfung, ii. 604; his conspiracy and death, ii. 691.
Sui dynasty, ii. 167.

Digitized by Google

Suicides carefully dressed, i. 513.
Sulphur found in Formosa, i. 139.
Sun symbolized by a raven, ii. 74.
Sung dynasty, cotton introduced during the, ii. 37; the XIth dynasty or Northern Sung, ii. 165; the XXIId, its period, ii. 173; the Southern Sung, ii. 174.
Sung, a censor, his rectitude, i. 431; his career, i. 454.
Sungkiang, in Kiangsu, recaptured by Ward, ii. 607; Gordon retires to, ii. 612.
Sunglo hills, in Nganhwui, i. 109; in 'Tea-Pickers' Ballad,' i. 710 ff.
Sunnite tribe of Mongols, i. 206.
Superstitions, of the Chinese, respecting divination, i. 630; in marriages, i. 785 ff.; Taoist priests and, i. 694, ii. 214; in funerals, *fung shui*, ii. 245, 246; various, ii. 255–263; Chinese and Romish, ii. 314, 316; of mediæval travellers in the East, ii. 428.
Supremacy, Governor Lu's ideas of Chinese, ii. 472; Chinese principles of, ii. 475, 476; illustrated in case of Lin's homicide, ii. 506, 510; Chinese, and Pottinger's proclamation, ii. 538.
Swallows about Peking, i. 332.
Swinhoe, Robert, i. 296, 318, 328, 329, 331, 337, 342, ii. 671, 673, 677, 683, 684, 685.
Symbolism, Chinese, ii. 74, 111.
Syle, E. W., ii. 96.
Sz', a 'township' or 'commune,' i. 59; government of, i. 441.
Sz' ('Silk'), origin of the Latin *Seres*, China, i. 4; of *silk*, ii. 35.
Sz'chuen province, climate, i. 55; description of, i. 154–158; alum found in, i. 308; wax-worm of, i. 353; tea of, ii. 50.
Sz' Hai, 'All within the Four Seas,' ancient Chinese term for the land, i. 4.
Sz'ma Kwang, a historian, i. 676, ii. 174.
Sz'ma Tsien, a Chinese historian, i. 675, ii. 146, 149, 212.

TABLES: Area and population of European States, i. 272; Censuses of the Eighteen Provinces since 1710, i. 264; Colonies of China, their government and subdivisions, i. 186; Dynasties of China, ii. 186; Expenditure of Chinese government, i. 293; Exports from China during 1880 and 1881, ii. 405; "Five Sovereigns" of Chinese legendary annals, ii. 148; Ming and Tsing Emperors, ii. 186; Missionaries (Protestant) in China, 1877, ii. 366; Nature, powers, and functions of elementary, ii. 75; Numerals, Chinese, in three dialects, i. 619; Opium import to Hongkong, ii. 388; *Pah Kwa* of Fuhhí, in the *Yih King*, i. 628; Population of China, comparative estimates of, i. 263; Provinces, government and divisions of the Eighteen, i. 61; Provincial officers, i. 444; Pulse and its corresponding organs in the human body, ii. 123; Revenue of the Eighteen Provinces: Customs report, ii. 404; De Guignes's estimate, i. 291; Medhurst's estimate, i. 290; Radicals of the Chinese language, i. 592; Rice tribute sent to Peking, ii. 5; Tea export during ten years, ii. 404; Trade, value of Chinese foreign, ii. 403; Zodiac, divisions of the Chinese, ii. 71.
Ta-chung sz', 'Bell Temple,' Peking, i. 79.
Ta Hioh, or 'Superior Learning,' i. 652.
Ta hu, or Tai hu, 'Great Lake,' near the Yangtsz', i. 23, 100, 103.
Tai-ho tien, 'Hall of Highest Peace,' imperial palace, Peking, i. 67.
Tai Miao, 'Great Temple,' Peking, i. 70.
Taintor, E. C., i. 141, 176, 433.
Tai-ping, 'Trimetrical Classic' of, i. 530; loyalty of imperial officials during the rebellion, i. 563, ii. 184, 359; origin of the term, ii. 581; commencement of insurrection, ii. 589; first military success, ii. 591; character of its control, ii. 593; arrangement of camp, ii. 594; advance to Nanking, ii. 595; expedition against Peking, ii. 597; rapid degeneration of the movement after this failure, ii. 599; dissensions among the leaders, ii. 602; eleven new wangs appointed—the sortie from Nanking of May, 1860, ii. 605; they fail in not following Elgin to Peking, ii. 606; operations to relieve Nganking, ii. 607; resistance at Suchau, ii. 613; execution of leaders at its surrender, ii. 615; desperate condition of the rebels, ii. 617; end of rebellion in the fall of Nanking, ii. 620; subsequent movements of the refugees, ii. 621; their final collapse, ii. 622; authorities on the rebellion, ii. 624; army at Hankow visited by Elgin, ii. 659.
Tai shan, in Shantung, i. 90.
Taitsung, Emperor, of the Tang dynasty, institutes examination system, i. 521; his reign and acts, ii. 168–170.
Taiwan, on Formosa, i. 140.
Taiyuen, capital of Shansi, i. 96.
Taku, on the Pei ho, i. 86; interview between Elliot and Kishen at, ii. 515; the allied fleet at, ii. 649; Russian and American interview with Tan at, ii. 650; forts taken by English and French, ii. 651; the four foreign ministers repair to, ii. 664; negotiations of Americans at, ii. 665; repulse of the allies at, ii. 666; attack upon and capture of, ii. 676.
Tallow and the tallow-tree, ii. 11.
Tang dynasty, the best period of Chinese

Digitized by Google

poetry, i. 704; drama originates during, i. 714; its brilliant period, ii. 167–171; the After Tang, ii. 172; Moslems in China during the, ii. 268; Arabs, ii. 413; travelling regulations under, ii. 425.
Tang jin, *Tang Shan*, local terms for the Chinese and China, i. 4, ii. 168.
Tangnu Mountains, in Mongolia, i. 9.
Tăng Ting-ching, governor at Canton, ii. 481; his son in the opium trade, ii. 498; his helpless position toward foreigners, ii. 495; foolish answer to Elliot, ii. 496; visits Macao, ii. 506.
Tang Tsz', Temple to Imperial Ancestors, Peking, i. 72.
Tanguts, tribe of, i. 210, 212.
Tankia boats at Canton, i. 412, 751.
Tan Ting-siang, governor-general of Chihlí, meets American and Russian ministers at Taku, ii. 650; superseded by Kweiliang at Tientsin, ii. 651.
Taoism, or Rationalism, priests regarded as magicians, i. 694; its founder, ii. 206; its classic, the Tao Teh King, ii. 207–214; and *fung shui*, ii. 240.
Tarbagatai, district of Songaria, i. 220.
Tariff and commercial regulations after the first war, ii. 558; after the second, ii. 657.
Tarim, or Ergu River, i. 16; its course and basin, i. 221–223; reconquest of the valley, ii. 727.
Tartars, or Tatars, i. 44; "Fish-skin," i. 196; derivation of name, i. 202; Kitan of Liautung and the After Tsin, ii. 172; and the Kin, ii. 174.
Tartary, country formerly called, i. 202.
Tatnall, Commodore, at Taku, ii. 665; his conduct during the action, and bon mot, ii. 668.
Ta Tsing Kwoh, 'Great Pure Kingdom,' present official name of China, i. 5.
Tau, *Tau-tai*, 'Circuit' and 'Intendant of Circuit,' i. 59, 440.
Taukwang, the Emperor, coronation address, i. 399; honors the Empress-dowager, i. 409; rescript of, i. 449; prayer for rain, i. 466; his reign, ii. 183; his efforts to stop the opium trade, ii. 492, 497; rejects Bogue treaty, ii. 519; his spirit in pushing the war, ii. 527; proclamation concerning the causes of the war, ii. 539; his death, ii. 575.
Taxes, in China, i. 294; difficulty of collecting, i. 498; 'Sacred Edict' upon, i. 688; on building lots, i. 739; land, ii. 2; how paid, ii. 84.
Tayé, son of Emperor Chuen-hü, founder of the Tsin family, i. 2.
Taylor, Dr. C., i. 102.
Tea, in Nganhwui, i. 109; Kiakhta trade in, i. 207; its preparation in Tibet, i. 241; ballad on picking, i. 710; culture, ii. 39; manufacture, etc., ii. 40–55; as an export, ii. 373, 404; duty on, in 1689, ii. 446.
Teachers in boys' schools, i. 524 ff.; qualifications, i. 526; severity required, i. 546.
Temperance, address of Duke Chau in the *Shu King*, i. 808, ii. 157; of the Chinese, ii. 54.
Temples, in Peking (q.v.) i. 73–80; in Canton, i. 164–166; in Tibet, i. 245; pillars of Chinese, i. 730; public resorts, i. 738, ii. 202; to Confucius, ii. 203; proportion of Buddhist, ii. 224; worship in, ii. 232, 263.
Temperature, of Peking, i. 51; of coast towns, i. 53.
Tengkiri-nor, in Tibet, i. 25, 240.
Tennent, Sir E., ii. 413.
Terrace cultivation, in loess, i. 300; extent of, ii. 6.
Terranova, an American sailor, case of, ii. 453; his judicial murder, ii. 460.
Teshu-lama, monument to a, Peking, i. 79; palace of the, at Teshu-Lumbo, Tibet, i. 247, 252, 256.
Theatres, management of, i. 820; style of plays, i. 714. 822; morals of Chinese, i. 824.
Thom, Robert, interpreter to Pottinger, ii. 548, 556. 557.
Thompson, James, i. 771.
Thoms, P. P., i. 292; fonts of Chinese type of, i. 603; *Chinese Courtship*, i. 704, ij. 320.
'Thousand Character,' or 'Millenary Classic' (*Tsien Tsz' Wän*), a schoolbook, i. 531, 598.
Thrashing-floors, how made, ii. 9.
Thrushes, trained, i. 333.
Tibet, physical characteristics of people, i. 45; names and boundaries, i. 237; natural features, i. 238–240; climate, productions, and animals, i. 241–244; H'lassa and Shigatsé, i. 245–247; manners and customs, i. 248–254; language, i. 253; history, i. 254; government, i. 255; population not numbered, i. 284; manner of concocting tea in, ii. 50; annexed by Kienlung, ii. 182; Shamanism in, ii. 233.
Tieh kü, 'Iron whirlwind,' term for typhoon, i. 57.
Tien, 'Heaven,' worshipped, ii. 194, 195, 198; and *Shangti*, as terms for God, ii. 297, 300.
Tien chu, 'Heaven's Pillar,' or *Atlas* of China, a name for the Kwănlun, i. 13.
Tien Hia, 'Beneath the Sky,' a term for China, i. 4.
Tien shan, Tengkiri, or Celestial Mountains, in Cobdo, i. 9; erroneously called Alak, i. 10; one of the four great chains of China, i. 11.
Tien-shan Nan Lu, or Southern Circuit

Digitized by Google

(Eastern Turkestan), i. 221; its position and topography, i. 221–223; population, i. 224; towns, i. 224–231; history, i. 233–237.
Tien-shan Peh Lu, or Northern Circuit (Songaria), i. 218; its towns and districts, i. 218–221.
Tien Tan, 'Altar to Heaven,' Peking, i. 76; Emperor's worship at, ii. 195–198.
Tientsin, description, i. 85; riot and missions, ii. 313; Mr. Gutzlaff's visit to, ii. 328; Flint at, ii. 449; Tai-pings repulsed at, ii. 598; allies reach, ii. 651; negotiations of the allies at, ii. 654; the armies again reach, ii. 677; riot and massacre of foreigners at, ii. 700; feeling in the city, ii. 703.
Tiger, the, in China, i. 318; in geomancy, ii. 246.
Timur, or Ching-tsung, Kublai khan's successor, ii. 176.
Ting, 'department' or 'district,' term explained, i. 58; prefect of, i. 441.
Tinghai, capital of Chusan Archipelago, i. 123; Lockhart's hospital at, ii. 350; capture of, by British in 1841, ii. 514; second capture, ii. 525.
Timkowski, i. 86, 207, 250, ii. 442, 443.
Tí Tan, 'Altar to Earth,' Peking, i. 78.
Titles, of Emperor, i. 397–399; of nobility, i. 405, 406; and Board of Civil Office, i. 422; assumed on taking office, i. 799; of the Tien Wang, ii. 582.
Tí Wang Miao, the Walhalla of China, i. 75.
Tobacco, introduced into China, i. 369; how used, i. 776; exported, ii. 394.
Tombs, of the Chinese, ii. 246; worship at, ii. 252.
Tones (*shing*), in the Chinese language, i. 609.
Topographical, terms, i. 58; divisions of China, i. 61.
Tortoise, or *kwei*, fabulous animal, i. 345.
Torture, its infliction upon criminals, i. 507.
Tourgouths, tribe of, in Northern Ílí, i. 220; flight of, from Russia, i. 234; Tulishen's embassy, concerning, ii. 442.
Trade, restrictions of, with Corea, i. 194; through Kiakhta, i. 206; revenue from, etc., i. 291; ancient, of China, ii. 372; value of opium, ii. 388; general export, ii. 391; import, ii. 397; present management of, ii. 402; ancient, with Roman Empire, ii. 411, 414; limited to Canton by the Manchus, ii. 426; Portuguese, ii. 430; Spanish, ii. 431; Dutch, ii. 433; Russian, ii. 141; history of the English, ii. 443–459; peculiarities of early Chinese, ii. 450; American, ii. 460; Napier appointed superintendent of British, ii. 464; mutations of, during Napier's embroglio, ii. 473–477; Lin finally stops the British, ii. 507; carried on during the war, ii. 517, 521, 524; settlement of, regulations after the first war, ii. 557.
Transformations, Chinese notions about, i. 345, 378.
Travelling, modes of, in China, i. 747; regulations under the Tangs, ii. 425.
Treaties, Russo-Chinese, concerning frontier of Ílí, i. 215; clauses of toleration in, of June, 1858, ii. 360; Russian, ii. 441; failure of the negotiations at the Bogue, ii. 518; of Nanking, ii. 549; its ratification, ii. 557; British supplementary, signed at Bogue, ii. 561; of Wanghia between China and the United States, ii. 567; French, of Whampoa, ii. 571; how regarded by the Chinese, ii. 578; of Tientsin signed, ii. 656; difficulty of enforcing, in China, ii. 658; American, ratified at Pehtang, ii. 670; English and French, signed at Peking, ii. 686; the Burlingame, ii. 698; of 1880, ii. 699; of Chunghow at Livadia, ii. 732; of Marquis Tsăng in settlement of Kuldja question, ii. 734.
Triad Society, or Water-lily Sect, i. 493; its character, ii. 267; and Christians, ii. 312, 323; opposition of Hung Siu-tsuen to, ii. 591.
Trials, criminal, how conducted, i. 504.
Trigautius (or Trigault), French missionary, i. 265, 289, ii. 288, 309, 425, 428.
'Trimetrical Classic,' *San-tsz' King*, a school-book, i. 526–530.
Trinity of the *Tao-teh King*, Pauthier's fancy, ii. 210.
Tsaidam, plain of, i. 210.
Tsakhar, or Chahar, territory in Chihli, i. 60, 87; tribes, i. 208.
Tsăng Kwoh-fan, generalissimo of imperial forces against the Tai-pings, ii. 618; is visited by Gordon, ii. 620; investigates Tientsin massacre, ii. 703; his son sent to England and Russia, ii. 733.
Tsau hu, in Nganhwui, i. 23; its gold-fish, i. 348.
Tsau-ti, or Grassland of Gobi, i. 17.
Tsetsen khanate, i. 204.
Tsi dynasty, A. D. 479–502, ii. 166.
Tsientang River, in Chehkiang, i. 114.
Tsin, the IXth dynasty in China, ii. 165; After Tsin, XIXth, ii. 172.
Tsin, name *China* derived from family of, i. 2, ii. 161; they establish the custom of giving the Empire the dynastic name, i. 4; dynasty ends with Chwang-siang, ii. 163; *Ta-tsin*, an ancient name for Rome, ii. 410.
Tsin Chí Hwangtí, 'Emperor First,' alters taxes, i. 260; first universal monarch, ii. 160; subjugates feudal States, ii. 188.

Digitized by Google

Tsínan, capital of Shantung, i. 91.
Tsinchau awarded to Feitsz', a prince of Tsin, i. 3.
Tsing, present dynasty of China, ii. 179–186.
Tsing hai (see Koko-nor), i. 209.
Tsining chau, in Shantung, i. 92.
Tzinistæ, a term for China, i. 4; used by the Greek monk Cosmas, ii. 412.
Tsin-sz', third literary degree, i. 558, 566.
Tsitsihar province (Helung kiang), i. 198–200; town of, i. 199.
Tsiuenchau (Chinchew), the ancient Zayton, i. 129, 136, ii. 431.
Tso Chuen, a commentary on the *Chun Tsiu*. i. 649.
Tso Tsung-tang, commences operations against Mohammedan rebels, ii. 709, 728; his successful campaign, ii. 730; leader of the war faction, ii. 732.
Tsungming Island, mouth of Yangtsz' River, i. 108.
Tsung ling, 'Onion,' or 'Blue Mountains,' also Belur-tag and Tartash ling, its position, i. 9.
Tsungtuh, Governor-General, or Viceroy, i. 438.
Tsz'ki, near Ningpo, visited by British troops, ii. 530; camp near, ii. 531; Ward's death at, ii. 609; taken from the rebels, ii. 610.
Tuchétu (Tusiétu) khanate, i. 204.
Tumors common among the Chinese, ii. 131.
Tunes, examples of Chinese, ii. 97.
Tungchau, the port of Peking, i. 86; Ward's embassy at, ii. 669; Parkes's experiences in, ii. 678–681.
Tungchí, the Emperor, i. 411; his reign, ii. 184; palace intrigue upon his accession, i. 404, ii. 691; Peking in mourning for, ii. 250, 276; his marriage, ii. 710; audience before, ii. 714; his death and successor, ii. 726.
Tungting Lake, in Hunan, i. 23, 147.
Tung Tu, 'Land of the East,' Mohammedan name for China, i. 2.
Tung-wăn Kwan, at Peking, i. 436, ii. 339, 696, 741.
Turkestan, Eastern (see Tien-shan Nan Lu), i. 221–237; the region, ii. 728.
Turkoman races of Mongolia, i. 44.
Tu sz', commune divisions in South China, i. 59.
Types, movable printing, in China, i. 603–605; Dyer's work on, ii. 325, 367.
Tyfoons, phenomena described, i. 56.

ULIASUTAI, in Sainnoin khanate, i. 208, 209.
Unicorn, or *ki-lin*, i. 342.
United States, trade relations with China up to 1843, ii. 460; first minister to China, ii. 565; treaty of Wanghia, ii. 567; Minister Ward visits Peking, ii. 669; the Burlingame treaty with China, i. 698; action of Congress as to indemnity surplus, ii. 736; Chinese boys sent to, for education, ii. 739.
Urga, or Kuren, i. 17, 204.
Urumtsi, or Tih-hwa, western department of Kansuh, i. 214.
Ushí, or Ush-turfan, a town of Ílí, i. 225, 226.

VACCINATION, its adoption in China, ii. 132.
Van Braam, A. E. (see Braam), i. 324.
Varnishes, manufacture and use of, ii. 32.
Vegetables used in Chinese cooking, i. 773.
Verbiest, a Jesuit priest, ii. 297; appointed astronomer at Peking, ii. 298.
Vermilion, its preparation, ii. 61.
Vice, never deified in China, ii. 192; absence of, in their mythology, ii. 222, and in their funerals, ii. 254; the opium, ii. 386.
Victoria (see Hongkong), i. 171.
Villages (*hiang*), usual aspect of Chinese, i. 40; about Canton, i. 280; their elders, i. 483, 500.
Visdelou, Bishop Claude, i. 2, 202, 633, 681, ii. 277, 309.
Visiting, the etiquette of formal, i. 802; at New Year, i. 815; cards, how adorned, ii. 111, 249.
Vissering, W., ii. 87.
Vlangali, Russian minister at Peking, ii. 699; his temperate action in trial of Tientsin rioters, ii. 705.
Vocabularies (see also Dictionaries), native Chinese, i. 590.
Volcanoes, so-called, in Formosa, i. 140; in Central Asia, i. 219.
Voltaire, founds a drama on the "Orphan of China," i. 714.
Vrooman, Daniel, i. 169.

WADE, Sir T. F., i. 398, 420, 460, 611, ii. 624; nominated intendant of customs at Shanghai, ii. 628; experiences at Tungchau, ii. 678; his good offices between China and Japan, ii. 717; action upon murder of Margary, ii. 724; his minute on the Chifu convention, ii. 725.
Wai Hing-an, or Stanovoi Mountains, i. 9.
Wall (see also Great Wall) of Peking, i. 63.
Wallace, A. R., i. 360.
Walls, construction of house, i. 728.
Walrond, T., ii. 637, 655, 660, 662.
Wanghia, treaty of, between the United States and China, ii. 567; taken as basis for French treaty of Whampoa, ii. 571.
Wanleih, Emperor, receives Ricci, ii. 292, 294.

Digitized by Google

Wăn Miao, 'Literary Temple,' Peking, i. 73.
Wănsiang, a minister of the Foreign Office, his superstition, ii. 204, 699; letter to foreign ministers at Peking, ii. 707; Low's reply to, ii. 708, 712, 714; his character and influence, ii. 715.
Wăn-yuen koh, or library, Peking, i. 69.
War, Board of, i. 425; theory of, studied, ii. 88.
War, with England, features of the first Chinese, ii. 463; Lord John Russell's reasons for declaring, ii. 510; debate upon, in Parliament, ii. 512; opened by capture of Tinghai, ii. 514; resumed after negotiations at the Bogue, ii. 521; thought by Chinese to be an opium war, ii. 539; concluded with treaty of Nanking, ii. 547, 550; a wholesome infliction upon China, ii. 572; authorities upon, ii. 574; Tai-ping Rebellion, ii. 575–624; second, with England and France—the Arrow case, ii. 635; hostilities opened by Admiral Seymour, ii. 637; discussed in Parliament, ii. 641; arrival of Elgin and Gros and capture of Canton, ii. 643; Taku forts taken, ii. 651; treaties signed at Tientsin, ii. 656; closing incidents, 659; repulse of allied envoys at Taku forts, ii. 666; allies land at Pehtang and recommence the, ii. 673; capture of Taku forts, ii. 676; operations on the way to Peking, ii. 679–682; authorities on the, of 1860, ii. 684; objects attained, ii. 687, 688.
Ward, Frederick G., organizes the 'Ever-Victorious force,' ii. 607; his death at Taz'kí, ii. 609.
Ward, Hon. J. E., ii. 660; co-operates in suppressing coolie trade, ii. 663; repairs with the allies to Taku, ii. 664; interview with natives, ii. 665; goes to Peking, ii. 668; refuses to kotow before the Emperor, and returns, ii. 670.
Watters, T., ii. 212, 229.
Wax-worm of Sz'chuen, i. 353.
Wei River, in Shensí, i. 148.
Whales, and mode of catching them, i. 329.
Whampoa, a town on the Pearl River, i. 170; opium first shipped to, ii. 378; case of homicide at, ii. 453; treaty of, between France and China, ii. 571.
Wheelbarrows used for travelling, i. 747, ii. 7.
White Deer Vale, in Kiangsí, i. 113.
Whitney, Prof. Wm. D., ii. 72, 234.
Wife, her position in Chinese society, i. 792; controlled by the mother-in-law, i. 795; is given a new name, i. 797, 799; elevated in ancestral worship, ii. 238.
Willow, in poetry, etc., i. 362.
Williams, John, on comets, ii. 73.
Williamson, Rev. Alex., i. 65, 87, 190, 200, ii. 277.
Wilson, Andrew, i. 250, ii. 92, 602, 610, 611, 616, 617, 695.
Wolseley, Colonel Garnet, ii. 672; observations on Canton coolies, ii. 674, 675; character of his narrative, ii. 685.
Women, physical traits of Chinese, i. 42; in Tibet, i. 248; laws restricting, i. 388; of imperial palace, i. 408; illiteracy of mothers, i. 521; their education, i. 572; position, i. 646; consideration of literary, i. 681; kidnapped at fires, i. 743; their dress, i. 763; shoes, i. 769; toilet, i. 770; their milk sold, i. 776; separation from men, i. 784; conduct toward young brides, i. 789; never appear at feasts, i. 806; well treated in crowded fairs, i. 817; their skill in embroidery, ii. 36; they practise obstetrics, ii. 123; Chinese historians on Empress Wu, ii. 171; not admitted to worship, ii. 196; Yungching against, at Buddhist temples, ii. 228; as nuns, ii. 230; their tablets honored in the ancestral hall, ii. 238, 250; Kanghí forbids immolation of, ii. 250; old, employed as baptists by Catholics, ii. 311; as missionaries among the Chinese, ii. 364; how disposed of in Tai-ping camp, ii 594.
Wolves in China, i. 320.
Wood, Lieutenant J., i. 221, 230, 241, 310.
Wordsworth, W., ii. 232.
Worship, of Shangtí in Shang dynasty, ii. 154; by the Emperor, ii. 197; of Heaven, the ceremony and its meaning, i. 76, ii. 194–198; various objects of, ii. 202; Buddhist and Catholic, compared, ii. 232; ancestral, ii. 236–255; disputes respecting ancestral, by Romanists, ii. 297–303.
Writing, how taught in schools, i. 541; six styles of, i. 597–598; materials, i. 599.
Wu River, in Kweichau, i. 21.
Wu Tsih-tien, the Empress Wu of the Tang, her reign, ii. 170, 280.
Wuchang, in Hupeh, i. 144; taken by the Tai-pings, ii. 595.
Wuchau fu, in Kwangsí, i. 177.
Wuhu hien, on the Yangtsz', i. 110.
Wusung, near Shanghai, i. 106; captured by the English, ii. 534.
Wylie, A., i. 494, 523, 686, ii. 67, 72, 73, 119, 176, 213, 214, 277, 286, 321.

XANADU, or Shangtu, ancient palace of Kublai, i. 87.
Xavier, tomb of, on Shangchuen Island, i. 173; his mission to China, ii. 289, 428.

Digitized by Google

YAK of Koko-nor a..d Tibet, i. 242, 331.
Yakub Beg, Atalik Ghazi, i. 224, 229, 236; outline of his career, ii. 727; his defeat and death, ii. 730.
Yaluh River, its head-waters, i. 10; course, i. 190.
Yalung River, in Sz'chuen, i. 20, 156.
Yang and *Yin*, the two principles of Chinese philosophy, i. 628; in medicine, ii. 122; in the creation, ii. 137, 141, 198, 200.
Yangi Hissar, a town of Kashgar, i. 228; ii. 728.
Yangtse' kiang, or Ta kiang, i. 20, 106, 110, 145, 305, 347, 349, 443, 487; the cotton region, ii. 9; English fleet upon, ii. 584; effect of Tai-pings in valley, ii. 606; their control of, ii. 606; ports on, opened, ii. 725.
Yao the Great, and the *Shu King*, i. 634; and the calendar, ii. 68; his place in history, ii. 144 ff.; and the deluge, ii. 147.
Yao-jin, the, in Hunan, i. 148.
Yarkand, or Yerkiang, i. 45; notice of the city, i. 229; cultivation about, ii. 728; its reconquest, ii. 731.
Yaru-tsangbu River, in Tibet, i. 12, 239.
Year, named, ii. 69; divisions, ii. 70.
Yeh Ming-chin, Commissioner, at Canton, ii. 359; operations against rebels in 1854, ii. 604, 630; his policy of seclusion, ii. 633; unwise demeanor, ii. 634; action in the Arrow case, ii. 636–638; burns the foreign factories at Canton, ii. 639; refuses British ultimatum, ii. 643; captured at Canton, ii. 644; sent to India, ii. 647.
Yellow River, i. 18–20, 37; early immigration to, ii. 144; early notice of overflow, ii. 147.
Yih King, or 'Book of Changes,' i. 627–633; and the *Tao-teh King*, ii. 210.
Yihking, appointed "majesty-bearing generalissimo," ii. 529; his terror and flight to Suchau, ii. 531.
Yihshan, a nephew of Taukwang, appointed general of Canton forces, ii. 521; his measures of defence there, ii. 527, 654.
Yu the Great, Emperor, drains off the waters, ii. 147, 148; inscription of, ii. 149–152; his acts and successors, ii. 153.
Yuen, or Mongol dynasty, ii. 175–177.
Yuenfi, discoverer of the silk-worm, i. 71; worship of, ii. 33, 196.
Yuen-ming Yuen, palace, i. 80; expense of, inveighed at, i. 566; copper pavilion at, i. 730; bridge near, i. 758, 758; its pillage and destruction, ii. 682.
Yuen River, in Hunan, i. 146.
Yuh, jade or nephrite, found in Khoten, i. 223; its varieties and qualities, i. 309.
Yukien, Commissioner, funeral honors to, ii. 255, 530; despair at fall of Chinhai and suicide, ii. 526.
Yule, Colonel H. (see also under Polo), i. 3, 183, 212, 239, 249, 309, 337, 343, 360, 364, 751, ii. 87, 168, 176, 215, 232, 285, 286, 407, 408, 409, 410, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 423, 424, 425, 441.
Yung Wing, proposes Chinese education commission, ii. 739; appointed secretary at Washington, ii. 740.
Yungching, Emperor, amplifies the *Sacred Commands*, i. 688, ii. 228; his reign ii. 181; treatment of the Romish missionaries, ii. 304; receives Magaillans, ii. 428; permits a Russian mission at Peking, ii. 443.
Yung-ho Kung, 'Lamasary of Eternal Peace,' Peking, i. 73.
Yungloh, Emperor, builds Nanking Pagoda, i. 102; his great cyclopedia, i. 692; use of gunpowder, ii. 90; sculptures at tomb of, ii. 115; his reign, ii. 177; tomb of, ii. 248; expedition against Ceylon, ii. 414.
Yun ling, 'Cloudy Mountains,' in Kwăn-lun system, i. 11, 15.
Yunnan province, unhealthy, i. 55; description of, i. 180–184; silver in, i. 311; Major Sladen's expedition into, ii. 719; Grosvenor mission of inquiry to, ii. 723.
Yurt, or Mongol tent, described, i. 206.
Yüyau, Yukien's suicide at, ii. 526; capture of, ii. 530; taken by the Ever-Victorious force, ii. 610.

ZAK, or saxual, grass of Gobi, i. 357.
Zang, Gang-dis-ri, or Kailasa range, in Himalaya system, i. 18.
Zayton (Tsiuenchau), i. 129, 136; Friar Odoric visits, ii. 422.
Zodiac, divisions and animals of, ii. 70.
Zoölogy of China, i. 314–345; of the *Pun tsao*, i. 374–377.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

3 2044 020 054 102

THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.

WIDENER
BOOK DUE
MAR 6 199

WIDENER
OCT 13 1998
BOOK DUE

CANCELLED
JUN 15 1988

WIDENER
SEP 18 2001
CANCELLED

WIDENER
WIDENER
OCT 06 1999
BOOK DUE

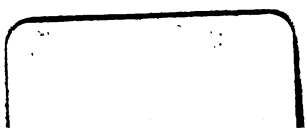
MAY 21
MAY 21 1979
CANCELLED

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Ch 16 E. 70

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The Sam-hop-cheung Hatstore, Canton.

Digitized by Google

THE OLDEST

AND

THE NEWEST EMPIRE:

CHINA AND THE UNITED STATES.

BY

WILLIAM SPEER, D. D.,

CORRESPONDING SECRETARY OF THE PRESBYTERIAN BOARD OF EDUCATION.
FORMERLY MISSIONARY IN CHINA AND TO THE CHINESE IN CALIFORNIA.

Who does not see that henceforth every year, European commerce, European politics, European thoughts and European activity, although actually gaining greater force, and European connections, although actually becoming more intimate, will nevertheless ultimately sink in importance; while the Pacific ocean, its shores, its islands, and the vast regions beyond, will become the chief theatre of events in the world's great hereafter?

WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

HARTFORD, CONN.:
PUBLISHED BY S. S. SCRANTON AND COMPANY.
SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.: H. H. BANCROFT & CO.
1870.

Digitized by Google

Ch168.70

1870, July 11.
Bought with
the Gift of the
Editors of the
Harvard Advocate,
Class of 1870.
$2.80

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1870, by
S. S. SCRANTON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the District of Connecticut.

WESTCOTT & THOMSON,
Stereotypers, Philada.

4364.109
52
14

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

THE relation which the writer has held to Christian and philanthropic efforts in behalf of a race whose advent to our shores is now awaking universal and anxious inquiry as to their character, their capacities and their probable influence upon the future of our country and continent, has imposed upon him the necessity of preparing the present volume. In the years 1840 to '42 the Opium War strongly drew his attention toward China, where was presented the strange spectacle of a heathen but civilized nation suffering the bombardment and destruction of numerous cities, and the slaughter of thousands of its people, in its natural and righteous, but vain, resistance to the fraudulent introduction among them of what it justly styled "a flood of poison," the track of which in society was black and desolate as that of a stream of lava down a mountain's side. In 1846 he was sent by the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions to the province of Canton, and in 1852 to California, where he was the first to preach the gospel in their own language to the Chinese coming there. In the very trying circumstances in which they were placed during the first few years of their immigration to a country whose people, language, laws and usages were so strange to them, and where their peculiarities became the subjects of grave and pernicious misapprehensions on the part of the Americans, it pleased God to make his labors the means of rendering to them important benefits.

These facts will explain whatever of peculiarity this book may possess. It is largely made up of materials which have grown up in the writer's experience, labors and intercourse with the Chinese under circumstances which drew out the best side of their character,

Digitized by Google

warmly interested his feelings and personally attached him to many of them; and which led him to consider the nation and its institutions in a new light. He has been made to carefully and practically examine the past relations of China with the United States and this continent, the advantages we may expect to derive from the increasing political and commercial intimacy, and from the introduction of many of the people into various departments of labor in all parts of our country, and the duties we owe to these new wards which the great Father of all has brought and placed in our national family.

It has been deemed important by judicious friends that in connection with the volume as thus constituted there should be presented for the benefit of popular readers a summary account of the Chinese at home, the history of their empire, their manners, arts, institutions, etc., which should be a ground-work for the information and suggestions connected with their relations to us. For some of the chapters devoted to this object (the third to the twelfth) I am indebted chiefly to an English compilation published by Bohn, of London, prepared by various hands, the materials of which were drawn from Gutzlaff's "History of China," Williams' "Middle Kingdom," Davis' "General Description of China," and other well-known and reliable books. To the portions used of this compilation I have made considerable additions, have re-written parts of them, corrected many mistakes and misapprehensions into which compilers not well acquainted with the Chinese people and language would fall, and given to them a more candid and Christian tone.

It is a strange thing that we Americans have acquired the fashion of speaking of the Chinese with contempt and dislike. It is a fashion—and it should be changed. In almost all the nations of Southern and Western Asia and of the Continent of Europe, the Empire of China has been generally mentioned and described in language of honor and admiration. Louis the Fourteenth of France, and many other distinguished European monarchs, have taken the warmest interest in its history and institutions, and in the efforts to

Digitized by Google

impart to its people the advanced science and the religious knowledge of the West. Some of the most intelligent of the French nobility have gone to China as religious missionaries, with the royal advice and approbation, and that too at times when it was probable that their lives would be a sacrifice. A leading German philosopher (Frederick Von Schlegel), in summing up the characteristics of the Chinese, says that their skill in agriculture, and "their unique and, in their way, excellent products of industry and manufacture, prove the very high degree of civilization to which this people has attained;" that they are "entitled to a high, even one of the highest, places among civilized nations," and are "remarkable for the utmost polish and refinement of manners." It is hard to account for the common estimate of China and its people in Great Britain and America otherwise than by attributing it to the influence of the bad East India Company and the diabolical opium trade.

The Chinese are a heathen people, and much that is evil can truthfully be said against them. But why do we judge them so much more severely than other heathen empires which have not excelled or equaled them in morality? The Romans were a far more depraved and cruel people than the Chinese. Their idolatry was more gross and loathsome.

> . . . . "Idols of monstrous guise,
> Terrific, monstrous shapes, preposterous gods,
> Of fear and ignorance, by the sculptor's hands
> Hewn into form and worshiped; men to these,
> From depth to depth in darkening error fallen,
> At length ascribe th' inapplicable Name." [1]

And yet many of our poets have exhausted the language of praise upon the Romans and their virtues. They have painted a glory which,

> . . . . "Like the day, diffused itself, and still
> Blesses the earth—the light of genius, virtue,
> Greatness in thought and act, contempt of death,
> God-like example." [2]

[1] J. Dyer, *Ruins of Rome.* [2] Samuel Rogers, *Italy.*

Digitized by Google

Can we not then exercise candor in forming our opinions of the Chinese? In the case of a people in whom we and our descendants must be so much interested, it surely becomes us to act with fairness and with charity. They have had reason to judge us, our institutions and our religion with severity. This book is an attempt to make our people better acquainted with them, and to incite efforts which shall lead them to hold a better opinion of us. It will have subserved a good end should it accomplish no more than to bring their manly and indignant REMONSTRANCE TO THE CONGRESS OF THE UNITED STATES thoroughly before the attention of our legislators and people.

The volume is made as full and complete as possible, in the free use of a mass of original and other materials which the author has been long accumulating for this end. For any defects which may be discerned in it he can only plead that it has been finally put in shape for the press in hours taken from rest and relaxation amidst the weighty cares of a sacred and responsible office which he dare not neglect. Were he to have attempted a formal dedication of the book it would have been in the line of the work in which he is now engaged—to the Christian young men of the United States, whose task and honor it will be, by the diffusion of the blessings of education and the gospel, to accomplish the regeneration of this Newest Empire of the world as the chief human means of effecting that of its Oldest Empire. This seems to be the consummating work which the Church and our nation have to perform in order to prepare the earth for the Kingdom of the Messiah.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

PAGE

PREFACE 3

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS, WITH EXPLANATIONS 19

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

Mammoth Trees of California, a symbol of the Chinese Empire—21. Several respects in which it is the first in the world—23. Peculiar Relations to United States—Source of our Aborigines—23. Discovery of America—"Indians" means *Chinese*—Marco Polo—24. Subsequent efforts to reach China—Ponce de Leon—Object of Carver's visit to Minnesota—25. Era of Discovery of Gold in California—Importance of the Immigration of the Chinese to this Continent—Interest to the Historian, to the Philosopher, to the Patriot, to the Christian—26. Future of this Immigration—The two National Elements—Resemblances of the two Countries, of the people—Differences, as to History, Arts, Labor, Population—Probable Influence of China on the New World—Importance of understanding our Relations and Duties—28. Influence of the two nations on others bordering the Pacific ocean—31.

CHAPTER II.

THE CHINESE PEOPLE: THEIR ORIGIN—RACES IN THE EMPIRE.

Sir John Maundeville's accounts of wonderful races in India, China, etc.—Wealth of the East—How Diamonds grow—32. Grotesque ideas of ourselves held by the Chinese—34. Heathen Origin of these fables—Tendencies of Infidel Science—35. Christian Views—36. Fuhi probably means Noah—Early Colonization—37. First use of Silk—Origin of the name "China"—38. References to it in the Old Testament and in the New—39. Name "Tsin" from *Tsan*, the silkworm—40. Fragments of the Turanian race in China—41. Expelled by the Aryans—42. Hill-tribes of China—Remarkable resemblance to our Indians—43. Various Sources of Indian tribes on this Continent—*Note*, 44. Number of Population of China—Recent Census—45. Comparison of Censuses of last century—Reasons for supposing them true—47. Colonial Possessions—Practical bearings of question of Population—48.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III.

GEOGRAPHY, VEGETABLE PRODUCTIONS, ANIMALS.

Remarkable Physical Resemblances between China and the United States, Latitude, Contour, Gulf Stream, Climate, River Systems, Minerals, Vegetable Productions, Races, Institutions—50. Extent of Empire—Varieties of Climate, etc.—52. General Aspect—53. Yang-tsz-kiang and Yellow rivers—55. Provinces of North and East, Peking, Nanking, regions whence Tea and Silk come—57. Mining regions, Volcanic signs, Petroleum, etc., in the West—58. Cassia and Camphor districts—59. Description of Canton Province—60. Manchuria and Colonial Regions north; Ginseng, cause of first trouble between China and United States, letter from Rev. Jonathan Edwards—61. Amoor region—62. Mongols—Tibetan tribes—62. Formosa and other Islands—64. European nations long counted "tributary" —64. Zoology—Numerous wild Animals—65. Splendid native Birds—Fishing Cormorants—Quail-fighting—66. Reptiles—67. Fish, endless variety—Gold and Silver fish—How brought to America—68. Curious Insects—68. Splendid Moths—Cricket-fighting—Cicadas—69. Sources of Wax—Mantis, or Soothsayer—70. Abundance and variety of Vegetable Productions—71. Tea, sources, cultivation—72. Fortune's botanical explorations, takes Tea to Assam—72. Difference of Green and Black Tea —74. Processes of Manufacture—75. Painted green to suit Americans and English—77. The national Beverage in China, Tartary, etc.—78. Chinese Eulogies upon it—79. Rice, its Cultivation—79. Simplicity of Agricultural Implements—80. Sugar and its uses—81. Cultivation of Cotton and Mulberry—Silk—82. Bamboo, its uses—Paper and Printing —83. Camphor and Tallow trees—Japan, or Lacker varnish—87.

CHAPTER IV.

SOCIAL LIFE, AMUSEMENTS, POPULAR FESTIVALS, THE GOVERNMENT.

Chinese Civilization and Refinement, peculiar but genuine—88. Style of Houses and Furniture—89. Cabinets, Lanterns and Ornaments—91. Condition of Women—Dress of Ladies—91. Dress of Gentlemen—93. Visiting, Social Customs—94. Dress of Common People—95. Boat-people—The Queue —96. Tables of the Rich—Birds'-nest Soup—Sharks' fins—97. Customs in eating and drinking—97. Cookery—98. Rob't Fortune's description of an Inn—99. Amusements—Gambling—Kite-flying—Shuttlecock—101. Theatrical Performances described by Tiffany—102. Religious Forms—New Year the great Festival—Trying to Debtors—107. Feast of Lanterns —Dragon-boat Festival—110. Public reading of Moral Essays, the Sacred Commands—112. Abundance of Schools—114. Examinations of Boys—115. Examinations of Candidates for degrees—116. Higher degrees, re-

Digitized by Google

joicings over successful Candidates—117. Number and Character of Civil officers—119. Power and responsibility of highest Officers—120. Peking, the present Capital—Description of city—122. Principal Temples—Scenes in Streets—The new part—Triumphal Arches—124.

CHAPTER V.

THE PATRIARCHAL AGE IN CHINA.

First nine Sovereigns of China—Arts they introduced—First Silk-weaving and Husbandry—127. Imperial honor rendered to Agriculture—128. Early Inventions—Division of Time by sixties, like Chaldeans—129. Chinese origin of Mariner's Compass—130. Foundation of Political Institutions—Gradual Population of the Country—130. Beginning of authentic History—131. Chinese Coinage—Useful implement for counting—Division of Weights and Measures by decimals—133. Markets—Hunting—Early Commerce—Warfare—135. Honor to Education—Estimation of the art of Writing—Industry of females in the manufacture of Silk—138. Struggles of rival kingdoms—Beginnings of Commerce across the Continent—140. Era of Babylonish Captivity—Colony of Jews upon the Yellow river—Purpose of Dispersion of Jews—141. Age of Confucius the turning-point in Chinese history—Life and Character of Confucius—144. Account of his Writings—148. Their Moral Influence—Stationary Character of Chinese Institutions—151.

CHAPTER VI.

AUGUSTAN AGE IN CHINA.

China during the Augustan Age in Rome, its extent and greatness—153. "Prince of Peace" on the throne at the Birth of Christ—Universal Expectation of Christ—155. Chi Hwang-ti, Founder of the first General Dynasty—155. Building of the Great Wall, stupendous character of the Work—156. Destruction by this Emperor of previous Literature—Burial of wife and slaves with him at Death—158. Usurpation of throne by Liu-pang—159. Invasions of the Tartars—160. Invention of Paper and Books—161. Paper brought to Europe by the Arabs—162. Invention of Ink—163. Slavery—164. Traces of the Apostles—164. Introduction and Character of Buddhism—165. Native System of Tauism—The Elixir of Life—The Philosopher's Stone—166. Roman Embassy to China—168. Chinese Envoys to Western Nations—169. Frequent Rebellions—169. Interference of Women with Government—171. Employments of Common People—Social Customs—Rules as to Names of Children—Laws as to Inheritance—171. Costumes of People—Faith in Omens and Astrology—174.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VII.

THE MIDDLE AGES IN CHINA.

Superiority of China to Western Nations in the Middle Ages—176. The Ancient Capitals—177. Tartar Invasions—178. Umbrella an Ancient Emblem of Royalty—*Note* i., 178. Luxuriousness of the Tsin Dynasty —178. Revolution under Liu-yiu—180. Five Dynasties in Rapid Succession—181. Extensive Trade with Arabians and Persians—181. Silk brought to Europe by Nestorian Missionaries—182. Illustrious Race of Tang—183. Justice of Tai-tsung—184. Famous Christian Statesman, Kwoh tsz-i—Labors of Nestorian Missionaries—185. Canals and increase of Trade—185. Han-lin, or Imperial College—186. Literature for the Young—187. Advance of Arab Commerce—Mohammedans in China—Extant Narrative of two Mohammedan Travelers—Their account of Tea —188. Custom of binding the Feet adopted—190. Corruption of the Court—Invention of Printing—192. Establishment of the Lung Dynasty —193. Irruptions of the Tartars—Famous Porcelain Factories in Kiang-si—Exports of Silks and Spices—Decline of the Empire—195. Conquests of the Mongols in Asia—Become Masters of China—196.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE MONGOL DYNASTY.

Closer Communion of China with sister Nations—Romantic history of Zingis Khan—198. Conquest of China by Kublai Khan—His illustrious Character—199. Capital established at Peking—201. Paper Money—Grand Canal opened, Utility of it—202. Residence of Matteo and Nicolo Polo in China—Sent as Ambassadors to the Pope of Rome—204. Visit of Marco Polo—Valuable Narrative of his Travels—206. His Description of the Improvements made by Kublai Khan—Accommodations for Travelers—Extent and good order of Cities—208. War with the Japanese —211. Grand Festival on Birth-day of Emperor—212. The Imperial Palaces—Tartar Hunts—214. Extent of Mongol Dominions—216. Favor to Buddhism—217. Decay of Mongols—217. A poor lad rises to the Imperial Throne—218. Comparison of China and Europe at that Period—219. Character of Marco Polo—219.

CHAPTER IX.

THE LAST NATIVE DYNASTY—THE MING.

Emperor Tai-tsu, his Reforms in the Government and in Buddhist Monasteries —221. Conflicts for the Succession—222. Proposed Invasion of China by Tamerlane, his Death—223. First Arrival of Portuguese—Their Piracies

Digitized by Google

—224. Ferdinand Mendez Pinto and his Companions—Their Crimes—Well flogged by the Chinese—225. First Portuguese Embassy—229. Establishment of Portuguese Colony of Macao—230. Romish Missions—Francis Xavier—231. Spaniards at the Philippine Islands—Colony established at Manila—232. Visit of Spanish Monks to China—Sent home—232. Commencement of other Romish Missions—233. Emperor Wan-lieh—Red Book, or Court Calendar—233. Anarchy in the Country—Way prepared for the Manchu Tartars—Father of Wu San-kwei—234. Downfall of the Ming Family—238. Dutch first come to China—Settlement on Pescadore Islands—On Formosa—Dutch Protestant Missions—238. English open Trade—Captain Weddell, Destruction of Chinese Forts and Junks—240. French in China—242.

CHAPTER X.

THE MANCHU DYNASTY—FIRST EMPERORS.

Careful Education of the Young—Emperor Shun-chi—243. Destruction of Nanking—Famous maritime chief Koshinga—243. The Queue, a badge of Subjection—Black Turban worn in Fu-kien—244. Form of the Present Government—Private Cabinet—General Council—Six Boards: Civil Office, Finance, Rites, War, Punishments, Public Works—246. Embassy from Russian Emperor Alexis—Disputes about *ko-tau*—249. Dutch Embassy—Their Compliance—250. Influence of Jesuit Adam Schaal—253. Troubles of the Dutch on Formosa—254. Quarrels of Romanist Monks and their Effects—256. Subjection of Formosa—257. Description of the Island—Traces of Dutch Missions—258. Greatness of Emperor Kang-hi—261. Jesuits cast Cannon for him, prepare Almanacs—Handsome presents made by them, their success—Become Politicians and Ambassadors—263. Kang-hi's wars with Eleuth and other Tartars—Rejoicings on Sixtieth Anniversary of his Accession to the Throne—270. Spring Festival, Emperor Ploughing—271. Kang-hi's "Sacred Instructions," account of the Book—274. His Literary Character—276. Troubles with Mongols—277. English obtain a footing—First exports of Tea—East India Company—Quarrels with the Chinese—278. New Embassy of Dutch—280. Successive Missions of Russia—281. Overland Tea—286. Installation of Emperor Yung-ching—Severe Persecution of Romanists—288. Mild Character of Emperor—289. Russian Trade at Kiakhta—290. Mourning at the Decease of an Emperor—292. Chinese Funeral Rites—294.

CHAPTER XI.

THE GREAT KIEN-LUNG.

Resemblance of Kien-lung to Kang-hi—Extraordinary Length of their Reigns—296. Princes of the Empire—297. Persecutions of the Jesuits—299.

Digitized by Google

Conquests in Western Tartary—Defeat in Burmah—299. Wars with the Mountain Tribes—300. British Embassy of Lord Macartney, Origin in trouble with Hong Merchants—Narrative of their Journey to Peking—303. Their Reception at the Palace of Jeh-ho—311. Dignity and Condescension of Kien-lung—313. Amusements—Tartar ladies—Anniversary of the Emperor's Birth-day—315. Return of the British Embassy—317. Accession of Kia-king—His Profligate Habits—Courageous Rebuke by a Minister—Dissatisfaction of the People—319. New Efforts to expel Roman Priests —322. Increase of Piracy—A Female Corsair—Unsettled state of Country —322. Emperor's Life saved by his Son—325. Unsuccessful British Embassy of Lord Amherst—325. Floods in the Yellow river—327.

CHAPTER XII.

TAU-KWANG AND THE OPIUM WAR.

Insurrections among the Tartar tribes—Among the Mountain tribes of the Interior—329. Causes of the Opium War—Immense amount of Opium smuggled—331. Lord Napier arrives as Superintendent of British Commerce, his unhappy Death—333. Succeeded by J. F. Davis, he by Captain Elliott—Increase of Smuggling—335. Celebrated Chinese Commissioner Liu—Twelve Millions of Dollars' worth of Opium destroyed—336. English establish themselves at Hong-kong—338. Naval battle at the Bogue—339. Chinese Army—340. Taking of the Island of Chu-san—Negotiations at Tien-tsin—Return to Canton—341. Terrible battle at Bogue Forts—Slaughter of the Chinese—343. Ransom of Canton for six millions of Dollars—345. Sir Henry Pottinger as Plenipotentiary—Capture of Amoy—346. Brave defence of Chiu-hai by the Tartars—Fearful slaughter of them—348. Beautiful Country about Ningpo and Hang-chau —349. Capture of Ningpo—351. Characteristic Appeal of People to British army—352. Bloody battle with Tartars at Cha-pu—353. Fleet in the Yang-tsz-kiang—354. Desperate defence of Chiu-kiang—Suicide of the Tartar General—355. City of Nanking—Porcelain Pagoda—Ancient Glory of the City—Treaty of Peace—356. Stipulations of the Treaty —Twenty-one millions of Dollars paid for Opium and British expenses—358. Resistance to opening of Fuh-chau—359. Advantages of port of Shanghai—360. Improvements at Hong-kong—361. Hostile Publications of Chinese and mobs at Canton—361. Bad Character of Hong-kong—363. Effects of Opium War upon the Emperor Tau-kwang—Upon the Chinese people—364. Interest felt in Europe—Hon. Caleb Cushing Ambassador from United States—Treaty of Wang-hia—Hon. A. H. Everett, Resident Minister—365. General distress in China—Rebellions in Kokonor, etc.—Energy of Liu—366. Death of Tau-kwang—His amiable Character —367.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIII.

RESULTS OF THE OPIUM WAR.

Opium War, Great Crisis in the history of China—370. Opium, ancient use as a Narcotic by Greeks, Hebrews, etc.—371. Introduction from India—372. Destructive Effects—Resistance of Chinese Government—Immense Injury to the people—373. Enormous Profit to Great Britain—Its Responsibility—375. Effect on Christian Missions—Darkest Stain on the Nineteenth Century—377. Connection of America with it—Duty of Great Britain—379. Robert Morrison, first Protestant Missionary—His translations of Scriptures and Dictionary—Bridgeman, first American Missionary—The Chinese Repository—381. New Translations—Preaching in Chinese—Missionary Hospitals—381. Mission Schools and extensive Results—383. Succession of Hien-fung to the throne—Disorders in the country—384. Hung Sew-tsuen receives Christian Books—Beginning of the Tai-ping Rebellion—Bright promise, sad End, partial good Results—385. New War with Great Britain and France—Origin in Opium smuggling—390. Bombardment of Canton—Capture of Forts on the Pei-ho—Treaty of Tien-tsin—Heavy Assessment for expenses—Legalization of Opium trade—391. Failure of Chinese government to Ratify—Capture of Peking—Sacking of the Summer Palace—Death of the Emperor—393. New Ports opened—Treaties with various European Powers—395. French Protection to Romanism—Present State of Romish Missions—Reason of Opposition of Government to them—396. Russian Treaty—Accession of territory on the Amoor river—Prospective Colonization and importance—399. Present condition of Foreign Commerce with China—401. Opening of Route by Isthmus of Suez—Its History and Importance—402. Late Rebellions—Mohammedans of South-west—405. Troops drilled by American and European Officers—Advantages gained by them—Rejection of Vessels of War purchased in Great Britain—406. Youthful Emperor Tung-chi—Regency of Empress Dowager and Prince Kung—407.

CHAPTER XIV.

AMERICAN RELATIONS WITH THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

Early Trade of East India Company with American Indians—410. Resistance to Introduction of Tea—Destruction of cargoes at Boston—First American ship to China—Beginning of Fur trade—411. Effect upon Discovery on our Pacific coast—Expedition of Lewis and Clarke—Enterprises of Astor—Benefits to United States—412. Influence in Christianizing Sandwich and other Islands—415. Advancement of the art of Ship-building—Era of Clipper Ships—Of Steam Vessels—417. Important Provisions of treaty of Wang-hia—419. Friendly feeling to the United States—Interesting Trib-

Digitized by Google

ute of Seu Ki-yu's Geography to George Washington—Present of Portrait to him from our Government—His Degradation and restoration to power —420. New American treaty—Its Provisions—First Announcement by the Atlantic Cable—426. Recent Development of Foreign trade—Danger of Alienation of Chinese territory—427. Honorable career of Mr. Burlingame—Origin of Mission to Western Powers—429. Recent treaty with China, its Effects—Honors to the Embassy—431. Treaty with England, Presentation to Queen—Address of Lord Stanley—433. Treaties with other European Powers—Probable Effects—435.

CHAPTER XV.

ANCIENT CONNECTIONS WITH THIS CONTINENT.

Variety of Races found on this Continent—Civilization of Aztecs, Toltecs, Peruvians, etc.—438. Question of their Origin—438. Asiatic Source—Dates of their Arrival—438. Evidence from Agencies of Nature—Great Ocean Currents, Pacific Gulf Stream—Courses of Winds, Monsoons—Typhoons—439. Evidence from Recent Wrecks on our coast—Japanese and Chinese junks, Remains on this Continent and the neighboring Islands—442. Spread of the Malay family among Pacific islands—444. Evidence from Legends among Asiatic nations, Tartars, Japanese, etc.—445. Translation from Chinese Encyclopædia, on *Fu-sang*—Interesting Discussions as to Application—Opinions of eminent Scholars—446. Corroborations from Aztec Customs, etc.—Letters of Cortez—Oriental character of Aztec life and institutions—Answer to objections—Aztecs certainly Buddhists—Other Legends —449. Evidence from Resemblances of Modern American Languages and Customs to Asiatic—454. Tribes on either side of Behring's straits—Resemblances of Tchuktchis, Malemutes, Esquimaux, etc.—455. Athapascas and Apaches—456. Customs and Legends in Peru, Oriental and Buddhist —457. Remains of Wonderful Military Roads, described by Humboldt—459. Future of Peru and Mexico—461.

CHAPTER XVI.

CHINESE IMMIGRATION.

Ancient Separation of Old and New Hemispheres—Anglo-Saxon Occupation of New—Tuition of African Race—Advent of Asiatic—462. Emigrations of Chinese Races in former Ages—463. To other Asiatic Regions—Chinese in Indian Archipelago—Pleasing picture of Chinese Life in Borneo—In Java—464. Reasons for opposition to Intercourse—468. Commencement of Immigration here—Early Usefulness—470. Interest in them, subsequent Opposition—471. All from Province of Canton—472. No Coolies in California—What are Coolies?—No Caste in China—473. Motives and Means of Emigration—478. Hindû Coolies in Guiana—479. Chinese in Cuba —In Peru and Chincha Islands—Terrible Crimes of Coolie trade—479

Digitized by Google

Prohibitions of by various Nations—English, French and American Conventions with Chinese Government—483. Validity of Contracts for Labor —485. Extent of future Immigration—Causes of Increase in the Past— 486. Number of Chinese in California—487. Their Dispersion over other States, Territories and Countries—488. Influence of Varieties of Population of different Provinces on future Immigration—489. They must be treated as Freemen—Laws necessary for Emigrant Ships—490. Fidelity to Contracts—491. Families should be brought—Our Duty—492.

CHAPTER XVII.

CHINESE LABOR.

Elements which make Chinese Labor peculiar—493. Its Characteristics—Industry of the People—Exhibitions of this in China—Illustrations to foreigners—494. Economy—Utilization of Materials—Regard for Utensils, Time, etc.—Wages—496. Intelligence—General Information—Cheerfulness and Patience in Work—497. Variety of Employments—Early Occupations in this Country—499. Faults of Chinese—500. Difference in Individuals— Practical Difficulties in Employing Chinese—502. Fields for Application of Chinese Labor—Characteristic of Servants—502. Usefulness in Agriculture—Value in California—503. Cultivation of Cotton—Original Seats of it in Asia—Cotton Regions of China—Peculiar Adaptation of Pacific Coast to Cotton—504. British Plans for Cotton Culture in Indian Archipelago— Superiority of our Advantages—506. Manufacture of Silk, its great Value —Extraordinary Advantages of Pacific coast—Chinese Labor an important item—509. Silk at recent Agricultural Fair—Japanese Colony—Comparison of Japanese and Chinese—510. Variety of Moths which produce Silk, a provision for various climates—512. English Experiments in India— Varieties in China and America—English Silk Supply Association—513. Manufacture of Silk in the United States, Extent, Results, Prospects—517. Other Chinese Textile Plants—520. Introduction of Tea—Success of British in Assam—Tea Plant in Java, Brazil and our Southern States—521. Rice—Sugar—Fruits—Pea-nuts—Value of Bamboo—523. Capacity of Chinese as Common Laborers—Workmen in factories—Miners—524. Employment on Public Works—Our Debt to them in construction of Pacific Railroad—Immense Field for their employment—525. Value as Consumers of American products—527. Favorable Testimonials from various classes of Americans—528.

CHAPTER XVIII.

POPULAR GOVERNMENT IN CHINA.

Objectionable Sources of Information as to Chinese institutions—Roman Priests, British Opium Traders—531. Juster Estimate needed—Resemblance to

Digitized by Google

the United States—532. Analogies in Ancient Rome—In India—In Russia—534. Leading Features of the Chinese Government—Beautiful Theory of the Imperial power—537. Principles of the Administration of it—Preferment based on Education—Interest of Literary Examination—538. Guards against Abuses—Detachment from Local Influences—Term of Office three years—Imperial Board of Review—System of Official Reports—"The Peking Gazette"—540. Popular Organizations—The Clan—Analogy to Jewish Kindreds—General Benefits, Number and Influence—543. Trade Associations or Guilds—547. Local government by Town and District Councils—Resistance to Foreigners after Opium War—To Imperial Government—Robber in the Wa-lam Temple—547. Disturbances at Canton—Bombardment of the City by English and French Allies—549. Opinions of Eminent Scholars—550. Practical Corruptions and Abuses—Foundations for Better Things—551.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE CHINESE COMPANIES IN CALIFORNIA.

Continual Puzzle to Americans—Absurd Stories—554. Ui-kuns or Companies—Description of a Building in San Francisco—Account of Members—555. Translation of "Rules of the Yeung-wo Company"—Membership—Fees—Regulations as to Building—Provisions as to Charity—Settlement of Difficulties—557. Conduct of Members—Rules as to Meetings—Arrangements for Collecting of Debts—Officers to be elected, their Duties—560. Amusing attempt of a Company to be freed from Taxes—Introduction of first Idol—564. Translation of Account of Sze-yap Company—Property—Membership—Numbers—Fees—Objects for which Money is expended—Officers elected—No Slaves—565. General Character—Utility and Propriety of these Institutions—567. Objections to permanent Continuance—569.

CHAPTER XX.

A REMONSTRANCE TO CONGRESS.

Scene in Chinese Mining Camp—Night attack of Robbers—A Remarkable Plea, and its Confirmation—572. Barbarous Occurrence at a Mining Bar—573. Cloud of Villains around Chinese Camps—Conscientiousness in Robbing Heathen—Illuminating influence of an act of Justice—574. Acts of violence by Tax-collectors—575. Threefold cover to Atrocities—Astonishing Decision of Supreme Court of California—Prudent Conduct of the Chinese—576. Gov. Bigler's Messages—Admirable Reply of Lai Chun-chuen—Extracts—Why Families are not brought—Why Chinese Customs differ from ours—Objections to Gamblers answered—Charges of bad character replied to—Protest against being confounded with Negroes and Indians—Willingness to leave the Country—578. Repeal of Oppressive Law—581.

Digitized by Google

Continued Troubles—Injury to Americans—Favorable Testimonies of Newspapers—582. Preparation of a Remonstrance to Congress—The Author—Character of the Paper—Moral Tone—Indignation of Chinese—Summary of Topics—583. Translation of REMONSTRANCE TO CONGRESS—588. Reasons for making the Appeal—Americans do not conform to their Religious Knowledge—Chinese Principles of Government—Treatment of Foreigners by the Chinese Government—588. Continual Trials of Chinese in California—Murderous Injuries—Persecutions of Miners—Illegal Conduct of Tax-collectors—594. Objectionable Usages—Request as to Abandoned Women—As to Punishment of Gambling—599. Proposition as to Testimony in regard to Criminals—Request either to Grant Justice or Enact a Law fixing time for Departure of Chinese from the Country—601. Duty of Congress and State Legislatures as to this Plea—603.

CHAPTER XXI.

MORAL ASPECT OF CHINESE IMMIGRATION.

What are Heathen?—Generic Attributes—605. Touching admissions of Ignorance as to Divine things by Confucius and Mencius—606. Ideas of Hierarchies in Earth and in Heaven—Worship of the Moon—Origin of Theatrical Performances connected with it—607. Worship of god To-ti—History as a man—Worship in California of the god of Fire—Of god of Health—Of goddess of Mercy—Temples—610. Favorite Religion, Worship of the Dead—Annual Celebration of it—Most popular Festival in China—612. Transportation of the Bones of the Dead—Benevolent Association for the purpose—Translation of an extract of a Report—Divinations as to Places of Burial—614. Superstition as to Powers of Nature—Translation, Flagstaff to the god Tsz-mi-yuen to counteract evil influences—Bondage to ideas of Luck—Translation of list of Unlucky Days—Remedies for Evil Influences—616. Ideas of Future Reward and Punishment—Translation of tract by Lau-tsz—Buddhist ideas of ten Judgment gods and of Punishment of Sin—619. Buddhist Monastic Institutions—People worship what and when they please—No Caste, or indecent or cruel Forms—Appointment of Sacrifices by City Officers—621. Fragments of Primeval Truth—No Evil Spirits known as "Joss"—Imaginary Monsters—622. Toleration of heathenism does not imply the Immunities of Christianity—Basis of our Common Law—624. Right of Chinese to bear Testimony—Grounds of Competency—Legal Authorities—Form of Oath—Notions of American Justice, "Plenty money, no hang"—627. Bad females in California—Blame cast on Americans—Children—High Character of Female Sex in China—630. Gambling in California, bad effects, censured by Better Class—633. Opium-smoking, sad Cases—635. Good traits—Few Brawls—No Public Drunkenness—Charity to Poor, and to Whites—Charitable Associations—635. Diverse elements of Morality—637.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXII.

THE GLORY OF AMERICA.

The two great Streams of the World's Civilization, Eastward and Westward—Divine Purpose in our Continent and Nation—638. Preparation in Asia—In California—640. Effects upon Europe and Asia, Humboldt's opinion—641. Religious Results—Interest of the greatest minds in the office of America—The philosopher Berkeley—Objects of his College in Rhode Island—Gifts to Yale College—642. Jonathan Edwards—His labors and writings—645. The Point from which to settle questions as to the Chinese here—646. America the School of the Nations—Lessons of our Arts to the Chinese, Steamers, Railroads, etc.—Of our various Sciences and Discoveries—Of our Politics—Of our Religious Forms and Influences—646. Political Questions as to Chinese Residence, Employments, Testimony, Voting and Education—Generic Principle in them—Great Principles which decide these Questions—Ideas of Alex. Hamilton—651. Preparatory Qualifications needed by Chinese—655. Three Chief Elements of Danger to America from them—Their Paganism and its relation to our Politics—Their Ignorance of our Language and Laws, our Duty to Educate them—Their Temporary Residence, Necessity of care as to Naturalizing them—656. Our Social and Personal Influence—658. Sketch of Presbyterian Mission in California—659. Baptist, Episcopal and Methodist missionaries—661. Recent general Religious Interest in the Chinese—Spirit which should animate our People—662.

CHAPTER XXIII.

THE FUTURE OF THE CHINESE RACE.

The three Empires of the Future, the United States, Russia and China—General Resemblances—663. Remarkable Prophecies of Napoleon as to Russia and America, as to Results of English Wars with China—663. Predictions of William H. Seward, twenty years ago—664. The Future of Asiatic Russia, of our Pacific Coast, of South America, of the Pacific Islands—Illustrations in Sandwich Islands, Decrease of Natives, Introduction of Chinese Labor, Results—666. Classes of Americans needed in China for Development and Advancement—668. Efforts of Government in the way of Progress—Military Discipline, Arsenals, War Steamers built at Shanghai, San Francisco Mission-scholar made a high Official, Another represents his People before a Congressional Committee, Opening of Coal Mines, Inland Navigation, Coast-trade, Telegraphs, Difficulties as to Railroads, University at Peking and other Schools of Foreign Science, Indifference of Chinese Statesmen as to Prevalence of Christianity—General Concern in the Empire as to Foreign Religion and Trade—669. Joyful Picture of China all and completely Christian—The Gospel the Primary Power of Civilization—671.

Digitized by Google

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

(WITH EXPLANATIONS.)

THE SAM HOP CHEUNG HAT STORE. Canton. Owner smoking Tobacco pipe—Salesman displaying to Customer gentlemen's winter hats—Coolie preparing to hand Tea—Beggar making noise at the Door to compel Alms.....FRONTISPIECE.

CHINESE MINERS. California. Digging—Carrying Dirt—Washing with a Rocker. *To face page* 28

SCENE ON THE RIVER. Canton. Ferry and other Boats—Landing-Place—Gateway to Temple of Honan—Crowds in Street..... 48

COCHIN-CHINESE DIGNITARIES..... 64

FISHING WITH CORMORANTS. Fisherman on Raft, with Basket, Hand-net and Birds—Taking in Bird with a Fish..... 68

PREPARATION OF TEA. Workingmen in Factory firing the Tea—Merchant giving directions—Coolies bringing Tea-leaves in Baskets..... 76

CLEANING COTTON. Workman beating up the Cotton with bow, supported by elastic rod fastened to his back..... 82

DOMESTIC SCENE. Ladies amusing themselves Playing Cards—Nurse with babe and small boy—Lattice Work—Flowers in Pots..... 92

IMPLEMENTS FOR EATING. Chopsticks, knives, toothpicks, etc., with cases..... 96

PLAYING AT SHUTTLECOCK WITH THE FEET,..... 102

EXAMINATION OF PRISONER. Judge—Clerk recording Confession—Prisoner on his knees—Policeman ready to apply Bamboo..... 120

ITINERANT BARBER. Case of drawers—Furnace with basin, etc..... 124

ARCHER IN CHINESE ARMY. An Inferior Officer..... 136

TEMPLE OF BUDDHA. Hall containing a greenish marble Monument covering a Toe-nail of Buddha—Columns of dark-red wood—Worshipers—Musicians..... 166

STOCKING MAKER. Sewing Stockings cut from cotton cloth..... 188

CHINESE SOLDIER. The "Tiger Guard"..... 214

STREET PUNISHMENTS. Whipping Thief through the Streets, with gong to call attention 226

OFFICER AND WIFE. Robes of rich embroidery..... 246

BUDDHIST TEMPLE. Images—Robed and shaven-headed Priests reciting Liturgies—Burning printed Paper, gathered from streets, in a furnace, as an Act of Merit..... 276

MILITARY OFFICER..... 300

Digitized by Google

STREET SCENE IN CANTON. Head of Lün Hing, or "Associated Prosperity" Street—Placards of Charms or Advertisements—Barbers and Eating-stall outside—Meat-market inside. *To face page* 336

CHAMBER OF A LADY OF RANK. Dressing the Hair—Maid-servant playing the Guitar—Lattice Work—Ornamented Bedstead and Furniture..... 356

VIEW NEAR CANTON. Side of small Temple—Foreign soldiers..... 380

OUTSIDE OF WALL, CANTON. Sedan-chair—Water-carriers..... 390

CHINESE BANKERS, SAN FRANCISCO. Ordinary business dress—Reading newspaper..... 418

HON. ANSON BURLINGAME. First Plenipotentiary from Chinese Empire to Western Powers..... 430

WIVES OF CHINESE MERCHANTS. San Francisco..... 452

TOBACCO MANUFACTORY. San Francisco. Dress of workmen partly Americanized..... 472

ILLUSTRATIONS OF RICE CULTURE, copied from a Chinese Work:

1. PLOUGHING FOR RICE. Using the Buffalo, or "Water-ox"..... 500
2. TRANSPLANTING RICE, when half-grown—Irrigating by bucket, across the dike..... 512
3. HULLING RICE, with a rude mill..... 524
4. RETURNING THANKS TO THE GODS AND SPIRITS AFTER HARVEST. Rural Temple—Offerings—Laborer and family gratefully worshiping..... 538

CHINESE RESTAURANT IN SAN FRANCISCO. Circular Door—Religious and poetical Inscriptions on Walls—Chinese Guests and Waiters..... 556

INTERIOR OF IDOL-TEMPLE IN SAN FRANCISCO. Idol—Table with large Censer—Standards—Large Candles..... 564

COMPANY HOUSE, SAN FRANCISCO. Miner carrying Baggage in baskets—Gateway—Shops on either side..... 570

CHYLUNG & CO. No. 640 Sacramento street, San Francisco. Porcelain and Silk goods in windows—Camphor-wood Chests—Attendants..... 588

CHINESE THEATRE. The Stage—Actors, one in female dress—Musicians—Spectators..... 606

CONSULTING A GOD FOR LUCK. Casting lots before idol—Priest comparing corresponding Tables—Furnace for burning waste printed paper..... 634

MR. TSUI SHING-CHEUNG, Elder of the Chinese Presbyterian Church, San Francisco..... 656

SCHOLAR OF PRESBYTERIAN MISSION SCHOOL, San Francisco.....Same plate.

CHINESE SHOP IN SAN FRANCISCO. Merchant reading American Newspaper..... 664

Digitized by Google

THE OLDEST

AND

THE NEWEST EMPIRE.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

IN the heights of the Sierra Nevada Mountains the Creator has set, in royal majesty, the throne of the sovereigns of the vegetable world.[1] And the feelings with which one stands beneath the mammoth trees resemble those which thrill the mind of a man with awe and wonder and pleasure when he gazes on the cataract of Niagara. There before him, the grandest of living things on earth, is a plant which began to grow with the beginning of that era, defined by the incarnation of the Son of God, by which all Christian nations mark the events of their history. Scores of generations

[1] The mammoth trees of California well deserve this honorable title. The baobab and dragon trees of equatorial Africa are as large in diameter—some of them measuring thirty-six feet through—but they are not more than one-third of the height of these magnificent coniferæ; several of which are over twenty feet taller than Trinity Church spire in the city of New York. In the section of one cut down in 1854, I counted twelve hundred and forty-eight annual rings, and calculated the extent of the surface of its stump, at eight feet from the ground, to be about four hundred and sixty square feet. There are some which are older and larger.

Digitized by Google

of men and beasts have lived and gone back to their dust since it put forth its first leaves. Empires have risen, swayed the affairs of continents, and fallen; but it has continued to grow. And now it stands taller than the tallest columns or spires that man has built in the New World, towering in a pyramid of living green, its foundations fixed in the everlasting rocks, its summit crowned by the glittering clouds of heaven.

There is an empire with which we associate naturally such an emblem, the oldest empire in the world. It was planted in the earliest generations after the renovation of the world and of human history by the Deluge. Assyria, Persia, Egypt, Greece, Rome, have risen and gone; their pride, their wealth, their dominion, all are things of the past. But the Chinese race is still the same, scarcely tinged by the admixture of others. The primeval religion, customs and literature are still vigorous and fresh. Virtuous examples of their own ancestors who lived four thousand years ago encourage the generation of to-day. School-books prepared by a contemporary of the Jewish prophet Daniel are yet the manuals of the teacher of children. The language is the unchanged monosyllables of the infancy of mankind. The social usages are those which have been made familiar to us in the patriarchal pictures of the book of Genesis. We contemplate, amidst all the ruins Time has wrought elsewhere, such an empire with constant amazement and curiosity. And when we behold at length a change in the wind of time beginning to blow the seeds of this stupendous ripe tree across the waters, so that they are seen taking root in our new virgin soil, the study of its whole character becomes to us a subject

Digitized by Google

of such interest as has few parallel to it. We are the newest, as China is the oldest, empire of the world. Our institutions are but the raw experiments of yesterday. We are only beginning to realize that we have a national life, and that God has formed it for some great commission, the mere alphabet of which we are just learning to stammer.

The nations of the West boast of their greatness; but how paltry they seem in the eyes of an inhabitant of that venerable empire! And is this pride without foundation? It alone, in Asia—and many Chinese know this—is equal to the whole of either of the other continents of the world in the number of its people. Bewildering as it is to our ideas, there can be no just exception taken to the computation which makes its population to amount to the one-fourth of the entire family of man. It stands first of all existing nations in agricultural productiveness, first in some important manufactures, first in the sum of the wealth of its subjects. China, to one who can bring his mind to measure what these statements embrace, seems almost a world of itself—a world which, like those strange binary stars which revolve about each other and communicate mutual powerful influences, but are each a distinct sun, has moved in all time, strangely connected with, yet separate from, the world of our ancestry and history.

Interesting as China may be to the other nations of the world, it is related to ours and to our continent by ties far closer than to any others. The first and the last find themselves most nearly allied.

There is, first, the bond of interest which is suggested in that most fascinating and romantic subject of inquiry,

Digitized by Google

the origin, history and character of the aboriginal races of the New World. That they were Asiatic no honest and unprejudiced mind, when thoroughly informed upon the subjects which evince it, can doubt. Physical geography, the literature of China, the legends of the American nations, and the records of the Spaniards, all make it as manifest as any great historic question can be which is not a matter of direct testimony.

Then we people of America may be said, in some sense, to owe to China the discovery of our continent by Europeans in the fifteenth century. It is the mere use of a general for a particular appellation which prevented our Indians from being called by us "Chinese." Columbus meant *Chinese*. They were called "Indians," because all Eastern Asia was then called in Europe the "Indias," or "Indies," just as the Arabian and other Mohammedan writers style all the countries east of the Indian Archipelago, the "Chinas." The ambition of Columbus to cross the Western ocean was kindled by Marco Polo's wondrous tales, written two centuries before, of the boundless riches and grandeur of Cathay, Mangu or Mangi, and Cipango. The first of these words is the Mongol name for China Proper; the second is the same with the native name for the Manchu Tartars, who descended from the shores of the ocean to the north of China in the seventeenth century, and yet hold the enviable position of its supreme lords; the third is easily recognized by a Chinese scholar as Jih-pwan-ko, "the land of the sunrise," which we adopt in our abbreviation "Japan." The doctors of Florence assured Columbus that a voyage of four thousand miles would bring him to China. In the names and productions of the tropical

Digitized by Google

islands which he discovered he endeavored to trace those he found mentioned in the glowing narrative of the Polos. And he died in the belief that he had only found a new path to the empire of China, and that the islands he had visited were upon the coasts of China.

We trace this same high visionary hope in the journals of the succeeding Spanish, English, Portuguese and French discoverers. The grand prize at which they all aimed was China. Their long voyages, north and south, amidst strange archipelagoes, and up rivers and deep arms of the sea, were efforts to push their way through to the Chinese waters. They set Chinese names on some of the divisions of the land or sea, a few of which still remain. They explored vast forests, and underwent astonishing hardships and sufferings, to discover the fountain of immortality, whose waters the Tauist priests of China have for ages pretended to be under their control. There is no more pathetic picture in human history than that of the aged Ponce de Leon, exhausted by wars, self-indulgence and disappointments, fitting out three ships at his own expense, going forth westward in search of the way to the fountain that was to renew the vigor and enjoyment of youth, discovering our Florida, and, upon the shore where he expected to find a point of rest and departure, pierced by the arrows of the inhabitants of his fancied paradise, and retreating to the island of Cuba to die.

To tell all that this continent owed in geographical explorations over every portion of it, between the Caribbean sea and the Arctic zone, to the determined and oft-renewed efforts to penetrate barriers which Nature had made vast beyond their supposition at that time,

Digitized by Google

would itself afford a subject worthy of a volume. Even in the last century, the first acquaintance of one of our own race with the new and beautiful State of Minnesota was made in the journey of Carver, one of whose objects, he tells us, in his account of his travels, was to "facilitate the discovery of a north-west passage, or a communication between Hudson's Bay and the Pacific ocean," and to "promote many useful discoveries," and thus "open a passage for conveying intelligence to China and the English settlements in the East Indies with greater expedition than a tedious voyage by the Cape of Good Hope."

But all the interest of America in the Chinese based upon these matters of the past is small, very small, compared with that which arises out of those of which we witness the beginnings in this our own generation. The discovery of gold on the Pacific coast of North America was the commencement of revolutions in the commerce, the politics, the religions of the world, to which there have been no parallels in all the history of the past.

The subject of Chinese immigration to this continent is one of an importance and interest which language can hardly exaggerate. The reader of history beholds in this contact of the populations of America and China, on the shores of the Pacific ocean, the termination of that westward course of empire which began in the first periods of the history of man; and in it the completion of one great cycle of the Divine government on earth, and the commencement of another—the glorious and golden age of mankind. The philosophic mind finds abundant material for the profoundest thought in the numerous

Digitized by Google

questions of a political and social nature which arise from the return of the grand current of civilization, transformed by all the changes which so many ages and influences have wrought, and freighted with the spoils of so many lands, to the regions whence it originated; and in considering the results as they will affect the nations which hold that civilization in its oldest and in its newest forms, the chief empire and the chief republic of the world. The patriot must speculate upon the effects of the introduction of a new and boundless supply of productive labor, of mechanical skill and of commercial enterprise, as they shall tend to settle the national embarrassments which have followed our employment of the African race; as they may prove useful in developing the resources of the western portion of the continent, and elevating it to a full level with the eastern portion; and as they may modify our institutions and possibly even our form of government. The Christian must watch with deepest concern the infusion of new, subtle and powerful elements of religious error and forms of vice amidst the more bold and unregulated mind of our nation. And the man who waits for the consolation of the Israel of the latter days must praise God for the new form which his almighty power has given to the immense work of regenerating the continent of Asia, through the multitudes of its people to be brought hither, enlightened with Christianity and returned to it again. Taken in whatsoever aspect we will, the coming of the Chinese to America is excelled in importance by no other event since the discovery of the New World. It is one of the impulses, beyond all human conception or management, by which God is mov-

Digitized by Google

ing the history of mankind onward to its great consummation.

To what this immigration may come, and what its influence upon the future of this nation, upon North America and upon South America, no finite mind can imagine. There are two national elements of the problem. Separated by an ocean whose passage every year becomes more expeditious and cheap, which is hemmed not many degrees distant by a continuous shore-line, along which already an electric telegraph has been partially constructed, lie two vast countries. Each resembles the other in location, contour, climate, and other physical conditions and capacities, more than it does any other of the countries of the earth. Each is occupied by a people naturally thoughtful, earnest, acquisitive and enterprising; each by a people strangely conglomerate, yet strangely homogeneous; each by a people among whom intellect and education constitute the only patent of nobility; each by a people the freest upon its own continent, and governed mainly by rulers of its own election; and each country is now in the travail of a change from old bondage and feebleness to new power, light and influence, which will be felt to the very corners of the earth. But with so much that is alike in these countries, it is easy to group together some respects in which they differ to the farthest extremes. The foundation of the one occurred within the memory of men now living: the other, as has been before remarked, is one of the most ancient, and is the most permanent, of the empires of the world; which was extensive as Rome when Rome was most extensive, and built the vastest work of human architecture—its Great Wall—for its protection against

Digitized by Google

Chinese Theatre, Calcutta.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

northern barbarians two thousand one hundred years ago. The one is a country where the utmost advances of scientific knowledge are continually made practical for the development of its wondrous agricultural and mineral wealth: the other exhibits the arts which are necessary to the increase and comfort of man carried to the farthest limit which it is possible for them to reach until the principles of true science, founded on the Christian religion, shall have been infused into them. In the one, labor is scarce, more difficult to obtain and dearer—in the other, it is more abundant and cheaper—than in any other part of the world. A man in China receives but six cents for a day's work, while one in America gets from two to five dollars; and many a good workman in the former country keeps his family for a month, or even for a summer, upon what the family of a workman here would spend in a day. The one is settled only here and there, in the localities most favorable to agriculture, to trade, to manufactures or to health: the other is densely inhabited by a population whose numbers bewilder the mind; a province of its eighteen may contain as many people as the United States, or Great Britain, or France; and the whole of them sustain one-fourth of the entire human race. Into the immense solitudes of the one, whose only previous occupants were a few scanty, roving, barbarous Indian tribes, immigrants have pressed from all the nations of the world: out of the other are flowing, and have for two centuries flowed, multitudes, which, after they have peopled and renovated, or rendered great benefits to, many countries of Northern and Central Asia, and the numerous great and rich islands within two or three thousand miles of them,

Digitized by Google

have recently begun to cross to the New World, and already number in the United States one-third as many as the total remains of the aboriginal tribes. The knowledge of modern ages in the West, and the introduction of labor-saving machines, will expel myriads from China, as the bees swarm and hive in the spring; and any reasonable man who will consider no more than the statements of this paragraph must conclude that attempts to prevent their coming to the New World are as ridiculous and futile as it would be to endeavor to change the laws of Nature, which cause the soil of the mountains to descend into the valleys, or the floods of the rain to force a channel to the sea. The day is coming when many millions of Chinese will be dispersed over the Pacific coast, the Mississippi Valley, the wastes in the northern portion of the continent, the provinces of Mexico and Central America, the whole continent of South America, where already there are several thousands of them, and over all the island groups or island continents of the Pacific ocean, whose indolent races are departing, having accomplished their mission, to make room for them. To find a place and use for a handful of vile African slaves, who were brought here in a condition little above the brutes, in the plan of the great temple of civil and religious freedom which the Supreme Governor of the world is rearing upon this continent to be a blessing to all its nations, has cost us an indescribable amount of discussion and trouble, ending in a stupendous and calamitous civil war. An hundred-fold more important is it to understand fully, and to treat with wisdom and justice from the beginning, the race whom He is now bringing to our shores—one so incom-

Digitized by Google

parably greater than the negro in numbers, in civilization, in capacity to bestow immense benefits on our land or to inflict upon it evils which may end in its ruin. Our faith in that God and in his word leads us to hope that their coming shall be for good to us and to them.

To present with satisfaction to the reader the new world of interests opened up around the Pacific ocean, it will be also necessary to look beyond the two nations represented in our title, "The Oldest and the Newest Empire," and to take some notice of the changes taking place also in Asiatic Russia, in the countries bordering upon China on the west and south, in other countries besides our own in the New World, and in the numerous fertile islands of the Pacific ocean, both in the smaller central groups and in those which separate it from the Indian ocean, and which approach continents in magnitude, and in the variety and extent of the products of their soil and mines. The destiny of these parts of the world, and of the races which inhabit them, is to be decided by the influences that shall proceed from the United States and China.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

THE CHINESE PEOPLE: THEIR ORIGIN—RACES IN THE EMPIRE.

WHEN the valiant knight of St. Albans, Sir John Maundeville—who informs us that he passed the sea on St. Michael's Day of the year 1322, and has written down his narrative in English, that "other noble and worthy men, if he err from defect of memory, may redress it and amend it"—traveled through many parts of Europe and Asia, he saw or learned of "many divers folks, and of many divers manners and laws, and of divers shapes of men." In the far East he learned of men and women that "have dogs' heads; and they are reasonable and of good understanding, except that they worship an ox for their god." There was a country where there is "a kind of snails so great that many persons lodge in their shells, as men would do in a little house;" another, where "are white hens without feathers, but they bear white wool, as sheep do here." "In one of these isles are people of great stature, like giants, hideous to look upon: and they have but one eye, which is in the middle of the forehead, and they eat nothing but raw flesh and fish. And in another isle toward the south dwell people of foul stature and cursed nature, who have no heads, but their eyes are in their shoulders. In another isle are people who have the face all flat,

Digitized by Google

without nose and without mouth. In another isle are people that have the lip above the mouth so great that when they sleep in the sun they cover all the face with that lip. And in another isle there are dwarfs which have no mouth, but instead of a mouth they have a little round hole; and when they eat or drink they take it through a pipe, or pen, or such thing, and suck it in. And in another isle are people that have ears so long that they hang down to their knees. And in another isle are people that have horses' feet. And many other divers people of divers natures there are in other isles about, of which it were too long to tell." The account of the empire of China by this writer is equally veracious and entertaining. "The greatest river of fresh water in the world," he says, is there, which, "where it is narrowest, is more than four miles broad." "That river goes through the land of pigmies, where the people are small, but three spans long. These men are the best workers of gold, silver, cotton and silk, and of all such things that are in the world. And they have oftentimes war with the birds of the country, which they kill and eat. And of the men of our stature they have as great scorn and wonder as we should have among us of giants." "Cathay is a great country, fair, noble, rich and full of merchants." "They are the most skillful men in the world in sciences and all crafts; for in subtlety, malice and forethought they surpass all men under heaven; and therefore they say themselves that they see with two eyes, and the Christians see with but one, because they are more subtle than they." Of the grandeur of the emperor and his many thousands of great lords and nobles he relates wonderful things. In the

Digitized by Google

palace "all the vessels that men are served with, in the hall or in chambers, are of precious stones; and especially at great tables, either of jasper, or of crystal, or of amethyst, or of fine gold. And the cups are of emeralds, and sapphires or topazes, of perydox, and of many other precious stones. Vessels of silver there is none, for they set no value on it to make vessels of; but they make therewith steps, and pillars and pavements to halls and chambers." In order to impress the people of Western lands more sensibly with the amazing wealth of the East, the worthy knight says that in India diamonds grow upon the rocks in the sea or in the mines of gold. "They grow many together, male and female, and are nourished by the dew of heaven; and they engender commonly, and bring forth small children [of their own kind], that multiply and grow all the year. I have oftentimes tried the experiment, that if a man keep them with a little of the rock, and wet them with May-dew often, they shall grow every year, and the small will grow great. He who carries the diamond upon him, it gives him hardiness and manhood, and it keeps the limbs of his body whole. It heals him that is lunatic, and those whom the fiend pursues or torments. And if venom or poison be brought in presence of the diamond, anon it begins to grow moist and sweat." [1]

Now these stories of good Sir John seem, no doubt, to the reader grotesque and absurd enough. But they may be made the ground of two remarks. The first is, that our pictures of Eastern races in the books of the West are not a whit more monstrous than the pictures which they draw of ourselves. Their writers, in turn,

[1] *The Book of Sir John Maundeville*, chaps. xiv.-xx.

Digitized by Google

describe nations of people with dogs' heads, of cannibals, of pigmies, of Amazons among whom there are no men, which are found in this opposite end of the earth. The popular name for our people resorting there is "devils;" and they suppose we are possessed of a roving, insatiable disposition, are naturally fiendish and cruel, and wander off to the Celestial Empire because of the horrible sterility and nakedness of the miserable regions to which we belong, that we may seek there supplies of food, raiment and medicine. In truth, they have had too much reason for a poor opinion of us. But surely freer and more intimate knowledge of us will disabuse the Chinese of their prejudices, and show to them that we possess the attributes of a common humanity; and a similar change may perhaps be hoped for in our ideas of them.

The other remark is, that Sir John's wonderful stories, which our ancestors believed to be all true, are but the repetition of the old fables which we get from the Romans and Greeks. Pliny's Natural History is full of them. They came to those countries from Oriental lands. They are pure heathenism. They are the end of the philosophy of man, thousands of years ago, which then, as now, invented all manner of "imaginations" to dishonor God and his revelations of man's nature and our duty and future destiny. The false reasoning of some of the self-confident geologists and naturalists of our day would end precisely in a belief of what we read as to the various races of mankind in the ridiculous fables of Maundeville, and would land us, a little farther on, in the degradation of God from his rightful throne, in the change of his truth into a lie, and in the worship and

Digitized by Google

service of the creature more than the Creator. Such men would of a truth make us all heathen again.

We are about to enter upon a survey of Chinese history. Let us assume as true what Paul says, that God "hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed and the bounds of their habitation." Let us accept this divine allotment of national localities, and of their historical events, as having reference to the planting of the light of revelation at a central point in Palestine. "When the Most High divided to the nations their inheritance," said he who has told us all we know of the creation—"when he separated the sons of Adam, he set the bounds of the people according to the number of the children of Israel." And let us not treat with disrespect the evidences of progress in civilization, the lessons from the lips of great and wise men, the inferences from events that have decided the condition of society, or the field for the study of human nature in all its strange and deep workings, only because a certain land is separated from ours by a tract of salt water, or because climate, diet and circumstances have produced in its population effects in complexion, stature, speech or customs which are no more strange in our eyes than our own appear in their eyes.

Which of the families that sprang from the solitary household that was saved in the ark when the world was drowned for its corruption first threaded its way along the valleys of the Jihon, the Yarkana and the Hwang-ho into the territory of the present empire of China, no inspired chronicle relates. The Creator had prepared a national highway in the neighborhood of the fortieth

Digitized by Google

degree of latitude, along which some would naturally push eastward. The dispersion at Babel was a new act of the justice of heaven, when the insane builders attempted to renew the superstitions for which their fathers had been destroyed, which would only spend its force when its guilty subjects were placed far apart. And in the legends of the Chinese there are evidences that the settlement of the country must have been made within two or three centuries, at longest, after the deluge. It does not seem probable, though some have judged so, that Noah himself led the company which formed the first colony. But the Chinese possess traditions of one who, omitting several mythical personages, was the first of whom they have any distinct knowledge. Their story is, that he came from Central Asia into what is now the province of Shen-si, bordering upon the desert on the north-west. His name was Fuhi, which signifies *an oblation.* He was born of a virgin, who was enveloped by a rainbow upon a mountain-top. He offered seven clean beasts in sacrifice. It has been remarked that the date of the commencement of "the reign of Fuhi" corresponds nearly, according to the common chronology, in which we follow Archbishop Usher, with that of the birth of Noah; while, if we prefer Dr. Hale's system, it corresponds with the latter half century of the life of that patriarch. The name of his son or successor was Shin-nung, or Shin the husbandman, which may possibly point to Shem. And the wonderfully regular and well-sustained chronological system of China, which moves in cycles of sixty years, is the same with the ancient Babylonish, and commences in the reign of Hwang-ti, his second successor. Take all these facts into

Digitized by Google

view, and it is difficult to deny the conclusion that, though Noah may not claim to have founded their empire, yet the Chinese possess some traditions of him as the great second father of mankind.

The several generations after Noah, according to the Chinese histories, were directed of Heaven to the discovery of those arts which are most necessary to man's existence and comfort. Shin-nung is worshiped yet as the first to commence agriculture.

It is a point of great interest that the date of manufacture of the thread of the silkworm for the first time into useful garments is fixed by the Chinese in the reign of Hwang-ti, the second from Fuhi. His queen, Si-ling, is named as the foster-parent of it. And in this we have the clue, most probably, to the source of the name "China," by which the empire is now almost universally known. Silk appears to have been the most characteristic article of manufacture and of export from China in all subsequent ages. There is no other fabric so splendid, none so durable, and the source of the fibre, and the first processes of reeling and weaving it, were successfully concealed from the nations of the West until the reign of the Roman emperor Justinian, in the sixth century of the Christian era. The eggs of the silkworm were brought to Constantinople, say the Greek historians of that period, by two Nestorian monks, concealed within a bamboo staff.

The origin of the name *China* has been discussed with great interest by scholars. The common declaration that it was taken from the Tsin dynasty, which became supreme only 249 B. C., though ingeniously proposed and defended by some intelligent men, cannot bear the

Digitized by Google

test of criticism enlightened by modern acquaintance with the literature of the East. It is evident that the word was used in the Sanskrit and other Indian languages long previous to the Tsin dynasty. The exact word "China" is found in the Laws of Menu, and in ancient Tamul books. It is found in the Hebrew of Isaiah, four centuries before the reign of the Tsin, in a prophecy of the conversion of the distant East to Christ: "Behold, these shall come from far (the south), and lo! these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim."[1] This remarkable passage the best Hebrew scholars of the day have almost unanimously settled to mean "the Chinas," the plural form of the word being that which is often granted to notable or extensive countries.

The probability is, that this name, of which the natives know nothing, except those of them who have discovered our use of it by intercourse with foreigners, originated in one of two ways. It may have been derived from some man, perhaps an ancestor or chieftain, as were Rome, Idumea, Russia, America. The name of Shinnung, the son of Fuhi, by whom they no doubt mean the patriarch Shem, it is barely possible, may be the source of it. Yet the opinions of scholars lean more toward placing the Chinese among the descendants of Ham, one of the advocates of which view is Sir William Jones,[2] or among those of Japhet. The Mohammedan writers hand us down an old legend of Persia and Arabia, that Japhet had eleven sons, of whom Gin or Chin was the eldest; that as such his father sent him for his portion to the fertile countries of the far East, and that his de-

[1] Isa. xlix. 12.

[2] *Works*, vol. iii., p. 201.

Digitized by Google

scendants early became distinguished for painting, carving and the cultivation of silk.[1]

But we are more likely to solve this curious question by tracing this very ancient word to some epithet derived from a characteristic product of its soil or manufacture, just as Britain meant the "land of tin;" Brazil, the country of a certain crimson dye-wood; and Palmyra or Tadmor, the land of the palm and its products. The writer, after a thorough investigation of the subject during more than twenty years, has been led to the conclusion, which he has seen nowhere else mentioned, that the word Sin or Tsin was probably taken from a Chinese word signifying the silkworm. In the Shu-king,[2] the most ancient historical work of China now existing, compiled by Confucius from the primeval traditions and writings remaining in his time, the silkworm is designated *tsan*. The emperor Ta-yu, who began to reign B. C. 2205, is said to have selected land suitable for the cultivation of the mulberry, collected silkworms and induced many people who lived among the mountains to come down and occupy the plains. This manufacture and trade in silk became at a very early period the most marked characteristic of the nation upon the Yellow river. The Shu-king describes the commerce which sprang up with their neighbors in furs, metals, precious stones, silk, hemp, cotton, products of the forests and ivory. The word *Tsan* seems to have been the source of the name Tsin or Chin or Sin, by which these people were distinguished in the languages of most of the nations of Asia. There is another ancient name given to them, which we find in the Greek—the "Seres." It

[1] D'Herbelot, *Bibliothèque Orientale;* tom. iii. art. "Sin." [2] Book ii.

Digitized by Google

occurs once in the New Testament in the adjective form, *serikos* (Rev. xviii. 12), which no doubt has given to us the word *silk*. The root, it has been supposed, no doubt correctly, is from the Chinese *sze*, which means the *silk fibre* or *thread*. This was in that luxurious age imported from China and sold at its weight in gold to the wealthy Romans.

While the first Chinese families crossed the deserts of the North and slowly moved down the valleys tributary to the Hwang-ho, we trace a corresponding eastward progress of another people as early, if not earlier, to the southward of them.

It is a fact upon which a clear light is now thrown by the investigations of the languages, history, customs and religious ideas of many tribes of the more remote and more mountainous portions of Central, Eastern and Southern Asia, that another of the fragments of the explosion at Babel was cast in a more southerly direction, and dissolved upon the highlands of Northern India. Some of the ancient legends of Persia assert that Tsin, or Gin, was not the eldest son of Japhet, but that older than he was another, named Turk, who gave his name to the countless and widely-dispersed Turanian or Turkish tribes. In the Sanskrit of India also is found the name Turushka, applied to the same race. They were followed by the Aryans, who pushed them to the extremities of the great peninsulas, to the large islands upon the coast of Asia, up into the mountainous tracts, and out into the deserts. In India they thus became the progenitors of the hill-tribes of the central parts, the Coles, the Bhils, the Waralis, and others as impoverished, degraded and distinct from the more powerful races that have rolled

Digitized by Google

over the land in successive waves. They are the Tamul people of the South, whose language is largely overlaid by the Sanskrit. They occupy portions of the island of Ceylon, under the name of the Vaidas. In the mountains of Asam they are the Meris and Abors. They are the Kambojans and Peguans, or Mons, of the ultra-Ganges peninsula. They give to the Malays the character of their language. They form the great tribes of the Kalmuks, the Mongols, the Ugrians or Uigurs, the Manchus, the Si-fans and people of Tibet. The language of the Japanese I have found to be one-half so like to the dialects of the neighboring coast of China that so far it might well be considered Chinese, but the other part carries us back to their own Turanian source. It is polysyllabic, and is written with an alphabetic character which has been derived from some of their Tartar cousins. But the most curious part of the history of this Turanian family, with which the "hill-tribes" of Eastern Asia appear to be connected, is, that in the far Northeast it has begotten the Yakuts and other savage nations, some members of which are found in Asia, others a thousand miles distant, on the Youcon river, which rolls its mighty tide, the rival of the Mackenzie, across thirty degrees of longitude, and falls into the Sea of Kamschatka, within our new Territory of Alaska.

The Aryans, who, as has been said, pressed forward the Turanians, and occupied the best lands of Southern Asia, and who gave us the inexhaustible literature of the Sanskrit, sent members of their race into the West. They are the Indo-European family to which we belong. The word "Ire-land" probably retains the ancient name as to its people. And there is seen here in the Indian wars

Digitized by Google

of the New World, after a lapse of more than three thousand years, the renewal of the same transactions which occurred in Central Asia—the descendants of the more civilized Aryan race dispossessing and exterminating those of the earlier and barbarous Turanian.

The hill-tribes of China are denominated in that language the Miau-tsz, a name taken from buds in spring, and signifies that they were the first inhabitants of the central and western provinces in which they are found. They are noticed in the most ancient records of Chinese history. The Shu-king states that about the years 2286 to 2258 B.C. the emperor Shun made war upon three tribes of the Miau-tsz, who dwelt south of the Yang-tsz-kiang river, and drove them to the West. In the reign of Ta-yu, which dates from 2204 B.C., the war was renewed, and continued at intervals for seventy years.

It will gratify the interest in this people to further remark that these "aborigines" of Central China yet occupy its mountain districts. They are divided into small tribes, which are, many of them, so entrenched in inaccessible and wild mountains as to be entirely independent of the Chinese government. They generally choose their own chiefs, and are allowed to manage most of their local affairs. They follow in some regions agricultural pursuits, but in others abandon themselves to hunting and fishing. It is remarkable that some of them are called the Blacksnakes, the Crows, the Blackfeet, and other names which remind us of our Indians, and that the men often ornament themselves, like them, with a plume in the hair. The women cultivate and spin silk, dress neatly in short gowns, tying their wide pantaloons, like the Persians, about the ankles, and are

Digitized by Google

fond of silver and copper trinkets. Their houses are partially excavated in the mountain sides, or in the forests are framed of bamboo among the branches of spreading trees. Their language is said by the Chinese to be wholly different from their own. A few of them have visited Canton and other ports open to foreigners, but I am not aware of any successful attempt to obtain a vocabulary of it. Many of them read and talk the Chinese language. They have not yielded to the Buddhist proselytes who have swept the Chinese into that superstition. Their religion is simple. They believe in lucky and unlucky times, celebrate the New Year and other festivals, and live in great terror of evil spirits. They sacrifice the dog and other animals. The worship which has the strongest hold upon them is that of the spirits of their deceased kindred. They suppose these remain with the corporeal parts. They therefore sometimes do not bury the body for twenty years, and then carry a number of the corpses together out to the place of interment with great parade. A man revenges himself upon an enemy by tearing up or destroying the tombs of his kindred, or secures payment from a debtor by stealing their bones and keeping them. They seek to obtain the relief of one who is sick by sacrifices before the remains of an ancestor, and perhaps by cleansing and washing the bones. This notice of them will suggest many points of resemblance to the Indian tribes of our own continent, whose condition in history seems so strangely parallel and interlinked with theirs.[1]

[1] It should be remarked here that the Indians of the New World have sprung from several sources. In the East there were, beyond reasonable doubt, some who, from the tenth century and later, were descended from small colonies of Northmen, who coasted the irregular shore of the Atlantic from the frozen

Digitized by Google

Of the Mongols, who conquered China under Kublai Khan in the thirteenth century and reigned over it ninety years, of the Manchus, who for more than two centuries have been its rulers, and of the Jews who have been found upon the Hwang-ho river, mention will be made in future chapters of this volume. From what has been said of the two primeval races in China, and the intimation of the presence of others, the inference is easily drawn that the population of the present empire of China is far from being the dull, uniform, stagnant mass which some inconsiderate or uninformed writers represent. The truth is, that while there is a dominant style of civilization, of religious sentiment and of national character, yet the people of the north, of the west, of the central provinces, and of the southern sea-coast differ very much in stature, in customs, in energy; their spoken languages are as unlike as the German to the English, and their leading employments are very dissimilar. This variety amidst general unity will prove favorable to future improvement and to the development of the vast national resources, through the infusion of Western ideas, inventions and merchandise.

An account of the races which inhabit the empire of China may be suitably followed by a statement of the

regions whence they ventured forth in their compact ships. This has been shown by the investigations of the Royal Antiquarian Society of Copenhagen. (*Mémoires de la Société Royale des Antiquaires du Nord; section Asiatique*, 1840–3.) From the North-west there descended, probably from a period many centuries before the Christian era, the Turanian tribes, of which we have spoken, who crossed at Behring's Straits, and formed the bulk of those which dispersed themselves in time over North and South America. And another distinct element is to be recognized in the cultivated Toltecs, Otomis and Aztecs of Mexico, who were certainly Buddhists, and came, at least in part, from Chinese and Japanese stock. On this subject some interesting light will be thrown in a future chapter.

Digitized by Google

probable number of the present entire population. The Marquis de Moges states, in his narrative of the French embassy to China in 1857–8 (according to statements made in the *Foreign Missionary*, Jan., 1869), that the last census of the empire makes its present population to be nearly 415,000,000.[1]

The mind staggers beneath the conception of so vast a mass of human beings being collected under one government, speaking one kindred family of languages, writing identically the same character, and entertaining so largely the same general social and religious ideas. Can this estimate of their number, it is asked, be correct? It is the opinion of those best acquainted with the empire, who have most extensively visited its accessible portions, and who have examined the statistics obtained from its own officers, that it is not far wrong.

In a work of M. de Guignes, published in 1808,[2] he

This population is distributed as follows:

Northern Provinces.		**Southern Provinces.**	
1. Chihli (Petscheli, Pescheli,)	36,879,838	12. Kwangtung (Canton).	21,152,603
2. Shantung	29,529,877	13. Kwangsi	8,121,327
3. Shansi	17,056,925	14. Yunnan	5,823,670
4. Honan	29,069,771	15. Kweichau	5,679,128
	112,536,411		40,776,728
Eastern Provinces.		**Western Provinces.**	
5. Kiangsu	39,646,924	16. Shensi	10,309,769
6. Nganhwui	36,596,988	17. Kansuh	19,512,716
7. Kiangsi	26,513,889	18. Szchuen	22,256,964
8. Chikiang	30,437,974		51,079,440
9. Fukien (Fokien)	25,799,556		413,021,452
	158,995,331	To which is added the number of the Chinese in Shing-king, a new province created in Manchuria	1,665,542
Central Provinces.			
10. Hupeh	28,584,564		
11. Hunan	20,048,969		
	48,633,533	Total	414,686,994

[1] *Voyages à Peking, Manille et l'Ile de France*, etc., tom. iii., pp. 55–80.

Digitized by Google

compiles in a table the information collected from Amiot and other Roman Catholic missionaries as to the population of the empire between the years 1736 and 1761. He shows that in the former year it was 125,046,245; in the latter, about 205,293,053. He explains from his own observations how this was within the truth. Dr. S. W. Williams, the most thorough and reliable Chinese scholar living, in his "Middle Kingdom" [1] presents the whole subject in a clear and satisfactory light, aiming to show that the census taken by the emperor Kia-king in 1812, which made the sum to be 362,447,183, was probably nearly correct.[2]

If these enumerations be not far wrong, the increase in the first twenty-five years was three and one-fifth millions a year; for the seventy-six years previous to 1812, three and one-eighth millions a year. This certainly does not seem extravagant, and amounts to but two and a half per cent. yearly. From 1812 to 1858 the increase is one million and one-fourteenth per annum. That the rate would diminish is probable, since in that time the Tai-ping rebellion, wars in the west and with foreigners, and consequent famines and diseases, have swept off many millions of people.

The general opinion of the foreign missionaries, mer-

[1] Vol. i. pp. 206–234.

[2] This census is contained in the last collection of statutes put forth by the emperor. J. R. Morrison (son of the missionary) says: "It will probably serve to set at rest the numerous speculations concerning the real amount of population. We know, from several authorities, that in China the people are in the habit of diminishing, rather than increasing, their numbers in their reports to government. And it is unreasonable to suppose that in a work published by the government, not for the information of curious inquirers, but for the use of its own officers, the numbers so reported by the people should be more than doubled, as the statements of some European speculators would require us to believe."

Digitized by Google

chants and official persons who have visited extensively the provinces fronting upon the eastern and southern seas, and lying along the great rivers, is, that the population is as great within them as the statements of the censuses require. The multitude of cities and towns, the swarming throngs of people in the streets of the cities, the narrowness of the streets, the small number of animals used for beasts of burden and the performance of their tasks by men, the garden-like cultivation of the soil, the hills with their irrigated terraces, the countless boats and vessels of all sizes and kinds on the rivers, lakes and seas, the streets of them anchored in rows for tenements, the variety of employments and the diligence of the people in them, even the women laboring at the oar upon the water—indeed, whatever could be supposed to characterize a most crowded country—press upon one the conviction that China is thus populous.

Of the number of the tribes occupying the vast colonial and tributary regions of Manchuria, Mongolia, Kokonor, Ili and Tibet, it is almost in vain to attempt an estimate. Portions of them are occupied by settled communities; still larger parts by nomadic and predatory tribes, and great deserts on the west and barren plains on the north are silent and untenanted. Gutzlaff, half a generation ago, estimated these entire regions to contain thirty-three millions of human beings. But this is probably too large a number.

There is reason to think that the empire of China contains, within its immense area, which equals the one-tenth of the dry land of the globe, one-fourth of the race of man. The practical bearings of this question of population are of an importance which cannot now be

Digitized by Google

Scene on the Pearl River, Canton.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

appreciated. Commerce with such a centre of civilized and inexhaustible productions of the field, the garden, the forest, the loom and the mine, enriches the nations engaged in it. These muscular and patient millions have been schooled by Providence to supply the rest of the world with the labor which is to make its wildernesses blossom as the rose. There Christendom sees spread before it its grandest and most inviting field of religious enterprise.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III.

GEOGRAPHY, VEGETABLE PRODUCTIONS, ANIMALS.

WHEN we turn to consider the physical characteristics of China, the first impression made upon an American—one which has been remarked upon by several of our writers—is its general resemblance to his own country. This may be traced in more particulars than I have yet seen mentioned.

China is the great empire of Asia, as the United States is, in a freer sense, that of America. It fronts eastward and southward upon the Pacific, as the United States do upon the Atlantic ocean. Upon the coast of each a great gulf stream, rising in the tropics, sweeps northward and eastward, making its vicinity stormy, and attracting to its tepid waters multitudes of fish. The terrific cyclones or hurricanes rising in the south move regularly in the same directions along each continent and expire in the ocean. Though the United States lie somewhat more to the north, the lines of mean annual heat and of the limit of the fall of snow at the level of the sea maintain a general correspondence. The extreme difference between the mean temperature of the coldest month of the year and that of the warmest (55° to 95°), which marks the New England, is also felt on the northern Chinese coast. For-

Digitized by Google

mosa is the Florida of China. The Philippine Islands are its West Indies. Two great mountain chains bind its extremes into one grand domain, though we observe that the all-wise ends of the Supreme Governor planned their courses in the Old World, according to the wants of the human tenants, from the west to the east, but in the New World from the north to the south. The immense river system of the Mississippi finds its parallel in that of the Yang-tsz-kiang—two which are only exceeded by the Amazon and La Plata in the quantity of water which they discharge into the sea. The geographical purposes of the great fresh-water lakes of the New World are largely provided for in the Hwang-ho and Amoor rivers. The United States and China have each their great deposits of precious metals in the west and north-west. Each have their wheat and apples in the north, their rice and oranges in the south, though rice is more of a national diet with the latter. In each, the inhabitants of the north are more muscular and more fair. The wild western territories of each are kept in continual agitation by barbarous tribes, whose glory is their herds of horses, their skill in the use of the bow and the spear, and, we might perhaps add, in taking the scalps of their enemies, for this was also an ancient Scythian or Tartar luxury. It would be easy to draw the analogies between the mental character and the institutions of the people of China and those of the United States, but that subject it is better to reserve for another place.

With this comparison, which will convey a clearer idea of the physical characteristics of China, I proceed to supply, largely from the excellent English compilation mentioned in the Preface, some further particulars.

Digitized by Google

With its dependencies and tributary states the Chinese Empire extends from the Sea of Japan to the head waters of the Indus among the Himmaleh mountains in the west—a space of seventy-one degrees of longitude, equal, in a straight line, to three thousand statute miles. From north to south it stretches from the Ural mountains, in north latitude 50°, to the southern border, about latitude 21°, being twenty-nine degrees, or nearly two thousand three hundred miles. Of this immense area, China Proper measures about twelve hundred statute miles in length, and not much less in average breadth. The empire proper, which the people usually designate the Eighteen Provinces, contains nearly one million three hundred thousand square miles. The territorial possessions contain about three million seven hundred thousand additional. Their populations profess dependence on the Celestial Empire, or have the laws and manners, and speak or read the language, of the Chinese, with whom, in fact, they are almost identified.

The climate of China presents every variety of temperature, from the snows and chilling blasts of Siberia to the scorching heat of the torrid zone on its southern borders. That of the north-western provinces is made distressingly hot and dry when the wind during the summer months blows from the great deserts of the interior. Even in Canton, where the tropical heat of the season is tempered by the friendly south-west monsoon, which blows almost steadily day and night, a change of the wind for two or three days, bringing these oven-like blasts, is almost intolerable. It is amusing to witness in that latitude the eagerness of the people when once

Digitized by Google

in many years a slight snow falls in the winter, to gather it into bottles, in which they suppose its precious virtues will be preserved after it melts, and be an efficacious remedy for fevers. "No country," says truly a recent writer,[1] "presents greater diversities in its physical geography, productions and natural history, whether we regard its verdant and cultivated plains or its sterile and solitary deserts, its mountains and its valleys, its gigantic rivers, its cities teeming with intelligent and civilized inhabitants, or its mountain fastnesses and its forests, the abodes of wild beasts or marauding banditti."

In its general aspect China presents a series of river basins, or broad valleys of rivers, and of low lands along the sea-coast, divided by ranges of hills, which rise in many places to a very considerable elevation. Yun-nan, the south-western province, is exceedingly mountainous. The chief range sends out two branches eastward, one of which separates the valley of the Si-kiang river from the coasts of the Gulf of Tung-king; the other separates it from the valley of the Yang-tsz-kiang river and its affluents, whose basins are themselves divided by ranges which diverge from each other and from the coasts of the East sea. The valley of the Yang-tsz-kiang is separated from that of the Hwang-ho by a stretch of high land, which trends eastward from the Pih-ling mountains on the borders of Tartary, but which, terminating before it reaches the coast, leaves a broad alluvial plain between the mouths of these two great rivers. The remaining portion of the country lying between the Hwang-ho and Gulf of Pe-che-lee consists of the basin

[1] The Rev. W. Ellis, Introduction to Gutzlaff's *Journal of Three Voyages along the Coast of China.*

Digitized by Google

of the Pei-ho and the Yu-ho, having the hills of Shantung province on the south, and a cross range on the west, and communicating with the basin of the Hwang-ho by an opening at the angle formed by the two ranges. The appearance of even that portion of the country which has been traversed during the last century by Europeans and Americans is exceedingly diversified. Between Canton and Peking, a distance of twelve hundred miles, travelers have observed nearly every variety of surface, but each variety very remarkably disposed in large, broad masses. At first they have passed over a great, continuous plain; then for days over precipitous mountains, naked and unvaried, and for the remainder of their journey through lakes, swamps and morasses, or across extended sandy plains. There is a constant succession of large villages, towns and cities, with considerable navigable rivers, communicating with each other by means of artificial canals. Both canals and rivers are crowded with boats and barges. Hedge-rows and trees are scarce. Generally the surface of the country rises in terraces from the sea. As yet, its geology is very imperfectly known. China, however, has been well mapped. "The scientific skill of the Jesuit missionaries accomplished a survey of the whole on trigonometrical principles, so admirably correct as to admit of little improvement; and, with the exception of the British possessions in India, there is no part of Asia so well laid down as China."[1]

Since the time of the Jesuits' survey, however, an alteration has taken place in the divisions of the country;

[1] Sir JOHN FRANCIS DAVIS, *The Chinese; A General Description of China and its Inhabitants.*

Digitized by Google

the provinces, which then consisted of fifteen in all, were increased, by the sub-division of three of the largest, to eighteen; and another has been added of late years, carved out of the hereditary possessions of the reigning dynasty in Manchuria. The name *Shih-pih Sang*, or the Eighteen Provinces, is the popular name of the empire.

The two principal rivers of China occupy a very high rank. The Yang-tsz-kiang and the great Hwang-ho, or Yellow river, surpass all the rivers of Europe and Asia, and are second only to the Amazon and the Mississipi in America. The Yang-tsz-kiang, or the "Son of the Ocean," rises in Kokonor, not far from the sources of the Yellow river. Making a circuitous course, and receiving the tribute of innumerable streams and the superfluous waters of two immense lakes (the Tung-ting-hu and the Po-yang-hu), it flows with a strong current past Nanking into the ocean, which it reaches under the thirty-second parallel of latitude.

The Yellow river also rises in the country of Kokonor; but while the Yang-tsz-kiang turns to the south, the Yellow river strikes off abruptly to the north, passes across the Great Wall, making an elbow around the territory of the Ortous, then strikes back and again crosses the Great Wall, whence it flows due south and forms the boundary of Shan-si and Shen-si, from which boundary it turns sharply to the east, and, until recently, reached the ocean in latitude 34°. The Rev. Dr. W. A. P. Martin, an American missionary, who has been appointed a professor in the University at Peking, reports that it has of late cut a new channel for itself, probably during some great inundation; starting north-east below

Digitized by Google

the city of Kai-fung, it has pushed its way to the Gulf of Pe-che-lee, at a point four degrees farther north. The stream of the Yellow river is so excessively rapid as to be hardly navigable throughout the greater part of its course. It carries along with it a prodigious quantity of yellow mud in a state of solution, and its frequent floods occasion great damage to the country, and expense to the government in maintaining artificial embankments. But its waters fill numerous canals, which are furnished with locks, and carry fertility to many districts which would otherwise be dry and sterile. As for the internal commerce of the empire, the Chinese are rendered almost entirely independent of the rivers and of coast navigation by their Imperial Canal, which, in point of extent and magnitude of undertaking, is, like the Great Wall, unrivaled by any other work of the kind in the known world.

The flat, sandy and unproductive province in which Peking is situated offers, according to universal report, little that is worthy of notice. The vast plateau, or elevated plain, which surrounds that capital, is entirely devoid of trees, but wood is procured from the nearest hills and mountains of Tartary. The provinces at the mouth of the Yang-tsz-kiang are described as the richest provinces in all China. They are famous for their silks and japanned goods, made principally at Su-chau, a very ancient city. Nanking, the capital of Kiang-su, and at one time of the whole empire, measures seventeen miles in circumference; but only a corner of this vast area is now occupied by the habitations of men, the city having suffered greatly in the wars with the Tartars, and from its occupation by the Tai-ping rebels, who slaughtered a vast

Digitized by Google

multitude, and also in consequence of the removal of the court and capital to Peking. In the district of Hwui-chau-fu, the most southern part of the province, is grown the best green tea; the soil in which the tea-plants are reared is a decomposition of granite, abounding in felspar, as is proved by the soil being extensively used in the manufacture of fine porcelain. Thus, as Davis observes, the same soil produces the tea and the cups from which it is drank.

The adjoining province of Kiang-si is described as being, in natural scenery and climate, the most delightful part of the empire. Here the Po-yang lake, in size approaching the character of an inland sea, spreads its broad waters, and exhibits on its west side a long framework of strikingly beautiful mountain scenery.

The maritime province of Chi-kiang competes with the great provinces north and west of it in the production of silk and the extent of its plantations of young mulberry-trees, which are constantly lopped and renewed as the most certain way of improving the silk spun by the worms which feed on the leaves. The younger the tree, the more tender the leaves; and the more tender the leaves, the finer the silk. It is by want of attention to this rule that silk, in several parts of the continent of Europe and in various Asiatic countries, has deteriorated in quality. The principal city of this province is the celebrated Hang-chau, close to the famous lake Si-hu. This beautiful lake is about six miles in circumference; its water is quite limpid and almost overspread with the beautiful water-lily. It figures continually in Chinese tales, poems, apothegms, similes and songs, and is held as a place sacred to pleasure and enjoyment. Its exten-

Digitized by Google

sive sheet of water is described as being covered with barges, which are splendidly fitted up, and appear to be the perpetual abodes of gayety and dissipation. The province of Fukien, which is contiguous to Chi-kiang, and like it maritime, is very far from being so fertile. But the inhabitants are the best sailors and the boldest and most adventurous part of the Chinese population; they chiefly supply the emperor's war-junks with sailors and commanders; they build an immense number of the trading-junks that are found in the seas of China and Malacca; and they furnish the greater part of the Chinese emigrants to the Indian archipelago and the neighboring countries, and of the coolies who have gone to the West Indies and South America in Spanish vessels. Other coolies have been taken from Canton province, sailing from Macao. Fukien, moreover, is the great country of the black teas; and our word Bohea is merely a corruption of *Bu-i*, the name which the natives give to the hills on which these black teas are principally grown. The name *tea* was first derived from the people of this province. In the dialect of Canton, whence it was exported afterward by the East India Company, and in those of the court and of most of the provinces with which we are acquainted, it is called *Cha*.

Yun-nan, the most western province of China Proper, borders on the Burmese territory, and extends nearly to Amarapura, the old capital of that kingdom. It is extremely mountainous, and abounds in metals and other valuable minerals, among which is good coal. The copper is said to be very fine, and nearly equal in quality to the copper worked in the islands of Japan. Gold is found in the sands of the rivers, and the Yang-tsz-kiang,

Digitized by Google

in this part of its course, is called the "golden-sanded river." Toward the north-west of this province, and the borders of the Tibet country, is found the *yak*, or cow of Tibet, the tail of which is famous on account of the people of the province using the hairs of it in various manufactures, particularly carpets. Though presenting a more alpine character than any other part of China Proper, Yun-nan yet contains some extensive, broad and finely-watered plains.

The extensive province on the north-east of Yun-nan is traversed by very lofty mountains, called the "Mountains of Snow." These peaks, which are probably from ten to twelve thousand feet high, look over the mysterious, closed country of the Delai Lama. The province of Shen-si, which also borders on Tibet, is said to abound in mineral wealth—in mines which have been neither worked nor visited by any people of the West for very many ages. Both this country and the adjoining province of Shan-si, toward Peking, abound in craters and other symptoms of extensive and tremendous volcanic action. Sulphur, tufa, salt-water lakes, hot wells, springs with jets of inflammable gas, pools of *petroleum* (which the Chinese burn in lamps), are found all through these regions.

The provinces of the interior and West do not seem to require special description in this volume. The general character of their productions resembles that of those in corresponding latitudes upon the coast, except that upon the western confines of the empire the land becomes more mountainous, forests are more numerous, the population becomes more sparse, and wild tribes are found occupying the more rugged and inaccessible regions.

Digitized by Google

In those of the south-west, contiguous to Canton province, the cassia, a species of *laurus*, is found, whose tender bark, carefully separated from the smaller branches, supplies that spice which is an inferior kind of cinnamon. In the same regions the camphor tree flourishes. The gum is obtained by macerating the leaves and wood in water, from which it is evaporated over a slow fire. The larger wood is made into a great variety of articles of furniture and use. Few foreigners visit China without securing at least a bureau or a chest made of it, for the sake of its bright yellow color, and because the odor which long remains in the wood is a preservative of its contents from insects.

The province best known in past ages to the people of the West is Canton. It is the most southern in its situation. It is well watered, and all parts of it are reached by the Pearl river and its spreading branches and other streams. Its extent is about eighty thousand square miles, or nearly that of the States of Pennsylvania and Virginia together. Its irregular and bold shores afford numerous harbors and are often the haunts of pirates. The northern and western parts are mountainous. The city of Canton has been the great outlet of the commerce with Europe for many centuries. The Arabian fleets from the Red sea and the Persian gulf traded there, and probably the Romans before them. Its importance has diminished since the opening of the northern sea-ports and the new channels of trade created by the rapid growth of the Pacific States of this continent. The climate of the coast is tropical, and tropical fruits and other products abound there. Of this province and its people we shall have much to say hereafter, since

Digitized by Google

nearly the entire body of immigrants to California and our Pacific coast have been inhabitants of it.

The countries contiguous to, and dependent on, China may be briefly dismissed. Manchuria consists of three provinces. Moukden or Shing-king commences at the eastern extremity of the Great Wall, and is bounded on the south by the Gulf of Pe-che-lee. Here, in the country from which they originally came, the emperors are buried. Kirin is to the eastward of Moukden and borders on Corea. Here the famous wild plant, *ginseng*, a mild aromatic to which the Chinese attribute, however, for superstitious reasons, miraculous properties, is gathered as an exclusive monopoly of the emperor. Till about a century ago they would never believe that this plant could grow in any other part of the world. But it then was discovered in New England also. In 1752 the celebrated Rev. Jonathan Edwards complains in a letter to his friend, the Rev. Mr. McCulloch in Scotland, that since it had been found the previous summer in the woods about Stockbridge and elsewhere in New England, and in the country of the Six Nations, "the traders in Albany have been eager to purchase all they could of the root to send to England, where they make great profit by it. This has occasioned our Indians of all sorts, young and old, to spend abundance of time in the woods, and sometimes to a great distance, in the neglect of public worship and their husbandry, and also in going much to Albany to sell their roots (which proves worse to them than going into the woods), where they are always much in the way of temptation and drunkenness." This was probably the first of the troubles arising out of commercial intercourse between China

Digitized by Google

and America. The East India Company sold the ginseng in China at a profit of five or six hundred per cent. The trade in it yet continues. Large quantities are annually sent to China from the newer parts of the West, especially from Minnesota and Wisconsin, which correspond somewhat in climate with the districts where it is found in Manchuria and Corea.

The other province, called by the Chinese Hih-lung-kiang, or "the river of the Black Dragon," borders on the Russian territory. The river which gives its name to the province is, in fact, the Amoor. A district of three hundred thousand square miles in extent north of this river was gradually taken possession of by the Russians, who, in the year 1860, by a masterly diplomacy, while the Chinese government was struggling against England and France, backed, we may add, by at least the moral influence of that nation and the United States, succeeded in obtaining a formal cession of it. This was, however, under Providence, a means for bringing it more within the range of the influences of civilization and Christianity, as well as of giving to Russia a territory much needed for the development of her vast Asiatic possessions.

All these regions are excessively cold in winter, and sterile and thinly peopled. The people seem to be chiefly employed in tending sheep or rearing horses and other cattle. As they approach the frontiers of the dominions of the czar of Russia they become very independent of Chinese rule, yet they acknowledge the laws and follow most of the customs of the "Central Kingdom." They will be described more at length in a future chapter.

The western and Mongol Tartars, commencing from

Digitized by Google

the western line of the Great Wall, extend as a distinct race to the very borders of the Caspian sea, where they, too, give the hand to the subjects of Russia. They are thoroughly a nomadic people, wandering with their flocks from one region to another, dwelling in tents and still making use of the bow and arrow in warfare as in hunting. They appear to be all Buddhists; the bonzes or priests, who accompany them in their wanderings, are called "shamans." They are governed through the medium of their own princes and khans, but a vast portion of them acknowledge a dependence on China.

On the western side of China, bordering principally on the province of Sz-chuen, are other Tartar tribes, called the Si-fan and Tur-fan, who occupy inaccessible mountains, and are quite independent of the Chinese, who, however, count them among their subjects: they are all Buddhists, and said to be completely under the control of their Lama priests and excessively superstitious.

On the southern side of China, bordering on Yunnan, is an exceedingly mountainous and wild territory, occupied by several Tibetan tribes, whose chief wealth consists in their flocks and herds. The imperial authority over them is but doubtful, although their chiefs receive titles of honor from Peking. On the utmost outskirts of the empire, toward the west, are found a number of small settlements or stations, called "native jurisdictions," where the people are ruled to some extent by their own khans in the name of the emperor. Others, however, have during the last few years taken advantage of the national troubles with foreigners to proclaim their independence. Whether they will be able to maintain it is doubtful.

Digitized by Google

The principal islands of China are Formosa and Hai-nan. Formosa owes the name by which it is known in the West to the Portuguese, who called it *Ilha Formosa* (the beautiful island), and it is by far the more desirable region of the two. It lies just opposite the coast of Fuh-kien, from which it is distant about twenty leagues. It is nearly two hundred miles long, with an average breadth of about fifty miles; the climate is delightful. The island is divided longitudinally by a chain of high mountains; westward of this chain it is occupied by the Chinese, but the country eastward of the mountains is still inhabited by the aborigines, who are described as a primitive and savage race, bearing some common resemblance to the Malays and to the inhabitants of the islands in the Pacific. Hai-nan, the second island, is rather smaller than Formosa, being about a hundred and fifty miles in length by sixty in breadth. It is separated from the continental province of Kwang-tung by a very narrow and shallow strait. The climate is excessively hot, and the island is much exposed to those terrible tempests—the typhoons—which annually strew the Chinese seas with wrecks. The mountains in the interior of Hai-nan are occupied by another wild race, who not unfrequently beat up the quarters of the Chinese on the coast.

The Chinese, previous to the treaties of the past few years with the nations of the West, affected to treat all foreign nations as tributary that have once sent an ambassador to their court. In their court calendar, Portugal, Spain, Holland, England are all tributaries. Their list must be greatly shortened, but still there would remain some really tributary states. The principal of these are Corea, Cochin-china, Loo-choo and Siam.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

All these annually send their tribute to Peking, and, with very little interruption, they appear to have done so for many ages.

If we limit our observations to China Proper (which, it must be remembered, is about twelve hundred English miles long, and nearly as broad as it is long), and make every deduction for the less-favored parts of the land, we must still admit, with our best informed travelers, that it deserves the name of a vast, a fertile, a wealthy and a beautiful country.

The zoology of China is very rich and varied, for although there are scarcely any animals which are not to be found in some other countries, she has within her wide limits and diversified surface nearly all those which are found collectively in all the other countries of the globe. The elephant, the rhinoceros, the dromedary abound in various parts. Bears are very common in the hilly country west of Peking, and the paws of these animals, which abound in fat, are eaten by the Chinese as a delicacy. Deer of various kinds, from the majestic elk to the diminutive tippity, wild boars, foxes and other wild animals, swarm in some of the provinces. The lion, the royal tiger, the leopard, the ounce, the lynx, the hyena, the jackal and other savage creatures, are found. It is declared by the Chinese that the tiger abounds to a fearful extent in some parts of the empire, but we are inclined to believe that a good many of the animals they speak of are not tigers, but leopards. The lion has become degenerate and scarce. The woods of the south swarm with a breed of wild-cat, which, though rather small, is fierce and altogether untamable.

Digitized by Google

This noxious creature is considered by Chinese epicures as an exquisite kind of *game*, and it is served up in ragouts and stews at table, after being fed for some time in a cage.

They have domesticated the horse, the ox, the buffalo, the dog, the cat, the pig and all the other animals which have been domesticated in Europe, together with some creatures with which we have failed.

Some of the native birds are very splendid. The gold and silver pheasants of China are now quite familiar to the eye in America. The still more splendid bird, called the *Reeves' pheasant*, is yet a rarity, even in China. Its tail feathers are of the extraordinary length of six feet and surpassingly beautiful. Another description is called by the eminent naturalist, Mr. Bennett, the *medallion* pheasant, from a beautiful membrane of resplendent colors, which is displayed or contracted according as the bird is more or less roused. The brilliant hues are chiefly purple, with bright red and green spots, which vary in intensity according to the degree of excitement. It should appear that this rare pheasant might be acclimated in most parts of Europe and in America. The country abounds in wild fowls of all kinds. The immense flocks of geese and wild-ducks during the winter months quite cover the rivers of the south, and excite the notice of all strangers. In the summer season they migrate to the north. A handsome species of teal, usually called "the mandarin duck," is very common. Unlike its fellows, it generally roosts in high situations upon trees or rocks. The fishing cormorant, which the Chinese have perfectly tamed and trained to their will, is well known by

Digitized by Google

drawings, engravings and descriptions. It is a brown bird of the pelican family, with yellow bill, white throat and whitish breast spotted with brown, having a compact, rounded tail. While employed in diving and fishing for their masters these birds are prevented from swallowing what they catch by means of a ring or tight collar passed over the lower part of the neck; but when their work is over, this ring is removed and they are allowed to fish for themselves or to feed upon the refuse. It is said, however, that they are sometimes so perfectly trained and disciplined as to need no restraint whatever—that they will finish the work for their masters before they think of themselves. On many of the more considerable rivers there exists a large aquatic population, dwelling in boats and barges and seldom setting foot on shore. With two or three good fishing cormorants, a family of this sort can nearly support itself. Quails are very abundant, and the Chinese have trained them to fight like our game-cocks. The sport is much cherished by the common people, who will frequently stake all they possess on the result of a quail-fight. A delicate species of ortolan makes its appearance in the neighborhood of Canton during the rice harvest. The Chinese call it the "rice bird."

In other parts of the empire, crocodiles, alligators and monstrous serpents exist; but the neighborhood of Canton, though under the tropic, is little infested by these reptiles or by any venomous creatures. There is, however, a slender snake, between two and three feet long, which is very much dreaded by the natives, and the bite of which is said to cause inevitable death in a few hours. It is covered from head to tail with alternate bands of

Digitized by Google

black and white, and is called by the Chinese the black-and-white snake.

Fish are in great and almost endless variety. An immense number of people on the coast are maintained in various ways by the fisheries; a portion of them spend their whole lives on their boats or vessels, except when they come ashore to purchase clothing, food and other necessaries, or to worship at the shrine of some favorite deity. Besides those produced in the seas, gulfs, bays and estuaries, fresh-water fish (of which great care is taken) swarm in most of the rivers, lakes, canals and brooks. On the sea-coast and at Canton, sturgeon, soles, carp, shrimps and other species are held by foreigners in high estimation. The Chinese stew made from sturgeon is so palatable as to have been introduced at their tables. The beautiful gold and silver fishes which ornament our vases and garden ponds came originally from China, where they are very numerous. They are a species of carp, and were perhaps carried by the Dutch first to Java, and thence to Holland, whence they have been brought to England and to America. Some of them have escaped into the rivers in congenial climates in America. We have seen some in Philadelphia which were caught in the Schuylkill river.

Among the curious insects of China there are some which call for notice even in a brief and general sketch like the present. A monstrous spider is found inhabiting trees, and attaining to such size and strength as to be able to catch and devour small birds, as our spiders do flies. Locusts sometimes commit extensive ravages, but their depredations do not usually extend over any great tract of country at once, and they seldom appear

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

two years successively. Eastward of the city of Canton, on a range of hills called Lo-fau-shan, there are butterflies of large size and night-moths of remarkable dimensions and most brilliant coloring, which are captured for transmission to the court at Peking and for sale to foreigners and others. Some of these insects measure nine inches across; their ground color is a rich and varied orange-brown; in the centre of each wing there is a triangular transparent spot, resembling a piece of mica.

Sphinx-moths, also of great beauty and size, are common in the south, and in their splendid coloring and rapid, noiseless flight from flower to flower at the close of day, remind one of the humming-bird. The common cricket is caught and sold in the markets for gambling, and persons of rank, as well as the coolies and lower classes, irritate two of these insects in a bowl, betting upon which shall prove the conqueror—an amusement which may seem trivial to some, but which is surely far less objectionable in every way than the brutal exhibitions in which men beat and bruise each other or torture bulls, dogs and other powerful animals worthy of better treatment. A gigantic species of the *cicada*—described as being more than four times the size of the cicada of the south of Italy and Greece—is very common among the trees in the neighborhood of Canton, and in every other part of the country where the climate is warm and the pine tree abundant. All through the summer its stridulous sound is heard from the trees and woods with deafening loudness. Even those who have been accustomed to the noise of the cicada in the American forests have been astonished and almost stunned by the Chinese insect. These loud sounds proceed solely from the males,

Digitized by Google

the females being perfectly silent. This difference was known to the old Greek epigrammatist, who said, "The male cicada leads a happy life, for he makes all the noise himself, and his wife makes none." Chinese boys often capture the males, tie a straw round the abdomen, so as to irritate the sounding apparatus, and carry them through the streets in this predicament, to the great annoyance of strangers. The fire-fly, or, as it is called here, the "lantern-fly," is very abundant in many parts of the empire. It is far larger than the fire-fly of Southern Europe, and said to be as much more luminous. It has orange-yellow wings with black extremities. Its appearance, when seen flitting through the skirts of a thicket or grove in the summer evenings, is striking and poetical, and imparts a brilliant aspect to the shades of night. The *pih-lah-shu*, or wax-tree, affords nourishment to an insect which is supposed to belong to the coccus tribe. It is covered with a white powder, which it imparts to the stem of the particular plant it inhabits, from the bark of which it is collected by the natives. This substance remembles beeswax, and is used as such. A casing of it, colored with vermilion, is often used to enclose the tallow candle. Small as are these insects, the quantity of wax is said to be very considerable. This wax is used as a medicine, as well as made into candles and tapers. The tree or shrub it inhabits resembles our privet. Wax is also made from wild and domestic bees, but honey is said not to be much in demand. The *mantis*, or soothsayer—so called by us from the superstitious respect paid to it in idolatrous countries on account of the priest-like posture in which it raises up its anterior legs—is common in Southern China. The Chinese are fond

Digitized by Google

of making collections of curious insects, some of which find their way to our museums. The most valuable insect of China—that from which the name of the empire is probably derived, the silkworm—we will briefly notice in a future paragraph.

China is uncommonly rich in vegetable productions. The southern provinces possess all that are found growing in the tropical regions. In other parts, oranges, lemons, tea, sugar-canes, rice, pomegranates, black and white mulberries, the vine, walnut, chestnut, peach, apricot and fig are seen growing on the same spot of ground. There are several pleasant native fruits, such as the lai-chi, lung-yen or "dragon's eye," and others, for which foreigners have not yet found names. Camellias, cypresses and bamboos, of all sorts and sizes and in immense quantities, are also found. The mountains, for the most part, are covered with pines and other forest trees. The list we already possess of Chinese plants is a very copious one, but many new discoveries remain to gratify and reward botanical research. The principal object of cultivation is rice, but in the north-western provinces, where there are many districts too cold and dry for this grain, rice is replaced by wheat, millet and other grains. Yams, potatoes, turnips, onions, beans, and a white kind of cabbage, called *pih-tsai*, are extensively and very carefully cultivated. The Chinese pay more attention to the manuring of the soil of their gardens and orchards than any other people, whether in the East or in the West.

Of all the natural productions of China, the tea-plant is the most interesting to us, and is one of the most important as an article of home consumption.

Digitized by Google

Tea is grown, more or less, in many parts of the country, but principally in the province of Fukien and about the Yang-tsz-kiang. It is cultivated on the hills, these being sometimes clothed to the very summit with the fragrant shrub, a species of camellia, which bears a white flower. The difference in the quality of the teas depends partly on the district in which they are grown, and partly on the season when they are gathered, as the young leaves of the spring are of much finer flavor than the full-grown leaves of the summer or the still coarser ones of the autumn. The plants produce each, on an average, about half a pound of the dried leaves in the course of the year.

The tea-growers are generally small proprietors, who, with the help of their families, cultivate their own pieces of land, which are divided from those of their neighbors by a narrow path or ditch. The farmers, after having gathered their crops, partially dry them in the sun, just sufficiently to prevent their being spoiled, and in that state they are sold to the agents of the merchants, who usually contract with the farmer to take his whole crop at a certain price.

The best account of tea-gathering, and of the districts which produce the greatest quantities of tea, has been given very recently by Mr. Robert Fortune, an intelligent English botanist and traveler.[1] In the year 1848 the court of directors of the East India Company were anxious to improve the cultivation of tea in their own dominions on the lower slopes of the Himmaleh mountains. Government plantations existed in those parts,

[1] His work on this subject is entitled, *A Journey to the Tea Countries of China, including Sung-lo and the Bohea Hills.* London: Murray, 1852.

Digitized by Google

and in one or two districts in the Tenasserim provinces, which had been ceded in 1826, after the war with the Burmese. But the tea-plants were not of the best qualities. They had been originally imported from the southern provinces of China, where inferior teas are grown; and in order to get at the finer varieties it was essential to explore the northern provinces. It was thought, moreover, that the cultivation of tea did not prosper in India, for want of good manufacturers and proper implements. Although the treaty of peace which closed the war with the Chinese in 1842 opened several new ports, it by no means gave free access to the north of China or to any part of the interior, and it was believed that no foreigner could safely penetrate into the best tea districts. Mr. Fortune, however, undertook the feat. This gentleman had previously spent three years in the Middle Kingdom, absorbed in botanical pursuits; he could speak the Chinese language, and his previous experience had induced the belief that the Chinese inhabitants of the north, and especially of the interior, were a civil, harmless, obliging people. In 1848, Mr. Fortune, unaccompanied by any European, and himself disguised as a native Chinaman, started on his journey. He returned safely to England in September, 1851, having forwarded to the Himmaleh mountains twenty thousand plants from the best black and green tea countries of Central China, together with six first-rate native manufacturers, two headmen and a good supply of Chinese implements from the celebrated "Hwui-chau districts."

The soil in which Mr. Fortune found some of the finest of his black-tea plants was in the Bohea district, called by the Chinese Wu-i Shan, or the Wu-i moun-

Digitized by Google

tains. This soil he describes as being moderately rich, of a reddish color, and well mixed with *débris* of rocks. It was kept moist by the water constantly oozing from the sides of the rocks, and was well drained—on the mountains in consequence of its height, and on the plains by reason of its slight elevation above the water-courses. In the month of June the temperature at Wu-i Shan ranged from 85° to 95° Fahr., and in July it rose to 100°, beyond which it rarely rises. In winter the maximum shown by the thermometer was 78°, and the minimum 44°.

Mr. Fortune informs us that black and green tea are both really made from the same variety of plants, the difference in the appearance of these teas (when the *green* teas are not artificially colored) depending entirely upon manipulation. It would appear that age, as in the mulberry plant, injures the quality of the produce. In the black-tea districts, as well as in the green, great quantities of young plants are annually raised from seeds. These seeds are gathered in October, and kept mixed up with sand and earth during the winter months. In spring they are sown thickly in a corner of the farm, from which they are afterward transplanted. When a year old they are about ten inches high, and are ready for transplanting. They are then planted in rows about four feet apart; five or six plants are placed in each hole, and the holes are about four feet from each other in the rows. A plantation of tea at a distance looks like a shrubbery of evergreens. The plantations are suffered to grow unmolested for three years, when they are well established and produce strong and vigorous shoots.

Digitized by Google

The tea farms at Wu-i Shan were small in extent, no single farm producing more than a chop of six hundred chests. A chop, or lot, is made up as follows: A tea merchant from one of the larger towns in the interior sends his agents to all the small towns, villages and temples in the district to purchase teas from the Buddhist priests, who are large growers, and from small farmers. All the teas so purchased are taken to the merchant's house, where they are mixed together, care being taken to keep the different grades apart as much as possible. By such a method a chop of six hundred and twenty or six hundred and thirty chests is made, and all the tea of this chop is of the same general description.

The process of manufacture is briefly this: In the northern provinces the leaves from which green tea is to be made being gathered are brought from the plantations and spread thinly out on small bamboo trays, in order to get rid of their moisture. In two hours the leaves are dry; they are then thrown into roasting-pans and rapidly moved about and shaken up. Affected by the heat, they make a crackling noise, become moist and flaccid, and yield a considerable portion of vapor. In this state they remain five minutes, when they are drawn quickly out and placed upon the rolling-table. Men take their stations at the rolling-table and divide the leaves among them. Each takes as many as he can press with his hands and makes them up in the form of a ball. The ball is rolled upon the table and greatly compressed to force out the last remaining moisture and to give the leaves the necessary twist. The leaves are then shaken out upon flat trays, and are carried once more to the roasting-pan, where they are kept in rapid motion by

Digitized by Google

the hands of the workmen. In an hour and a half the leaves are well dried and their color is fixed. So ends the first process. The next one consists in winnowing and passing the tea through sieves of various sizes, in order to get rid of impurities and to divide the tea into the kinds designated by the names which we commonly apply to them. During this process the tea is refined—the coarse kinds once, and the finer sorts twice or thrice. Such is the manufacture of the most grateful of our beverages. Black tea, in the Wu-i mountains and elsewhere in the southern provinces, undergoes similar treatment, but the method of manipulation, as before indicated, is not the same; the difference, according to Mr. Fortune, being sufficient to account for some of the effects experienced by the foreign drinker who swallows green tea only.

The tea, being manufactured, is secured in the house of the merchant, resident in one of the larger towns, whence it is conveyed to the sea-coast, there to be delivered to foreign purchasers. The merchant who intends his tea for the Canton market engages a number of coolies to carry the chests northward across the Bohea mountains to Ho-kau. If the teas are of the common kind, each coolie carries two chests slung over his shoulder on a bamboo pole, one being suspended at each end. These chests are often much knocked about during the journey over the steep and rugged mountains, and the carrier is allowed to rest them on the ground, which is often wet and dirty. The finest teas must, however, never touch the soil during the whole journey, and they are accordingly carried in single chests across the coolie's shoulder. In six days the

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

coolie reaches Ho-kau, where the teas are placed in flat-bottomed boats to proceed by water to Canton, the time occupied in the transport from the Bohea country to Canton averaging from six weeks to two months. The tea intended for Shanghai and the eastern ports is sent in the opposite direction.

The green tea obtains its complexion, in most of what is exported, from the presence of foreign coloring matter. By one of those perverse tastes which obtain among us, our early tea-purchasers betrayed a strong predilection for a certain color. "Foreigners," said the Chinese, "like to have their tea uniform and pretty;" so they poison the herb to gratify the ridiculous tastes of England and America for *bright green*, just as many of our pickle-makers poison their pickles. They throw in a blue substance, commonly known as "Prussian blue" or prussiate of iron (cyanide of potassium and iron), and they mix it with a quantity of gypsum. They never think of drinking this tea themselves, but the more gypsum and blue they can communicate to the plant, the higher becomes its value in the eyes of their best customers; and the dyeing process accordingly goes on in China to an alarming extent. It is calculated that in every hundred pounds of some of the cheaper colored green tea consumed by our people, more than half a pound of coloring blue and gypsum is contained!

The consumption of tea among Chinese themselves is truly immense. They make it best by putting a few leaves in the cup and pouring hot water over it when wanted, but in shops and families it is kept in pots ready made. A true Chinese is never seen to drink cold water, for he thinks it destructive to health, and hates it. Tea

Digitized by Google

is his beverage from morning till night. He uses it without milk or sugar. He takes it, in short, as the Persians, Arabs and Turks take their coffee, without the admixture of any other ingredient. If a Chinaman is traveling, he stops at an inn to take his cup; if he pays a visit, he is offered tea as soon as he arrives; and if he receives a visitor, he immediately plies him with a cup of tea and a pipe, just as the Turk produces his tiny cup of coffee and long chibouque. Before dinner he takes a cup of tea to stimulate appetite, and after dinner he invariably takes another cup to promote digestion. With such incessant potations there can be little doubt that he would be a dead man in three months if he betook himself to the use of the colored green tea which we so rashly consume.

Tea-drinking prevails to an almost equal extent in regions far beyond the Great Wall. John Bell of Antermony found it universal throughout the wilds and steppes of Tartary. Wherever the gentlemen of his Russian embassy stopped in those regions, scalding hot tea was served up to them. But the Tartars had the disagreeable custom of frequently mixing solvent mutton fat, and even salt, in their tea-cups. It has often been said that Asia may be divided into "Tea-drinking Asia" and "Coffee-drinking Asia." Where the use of tea ceases that of coffee begins, and is quite as frequently in requisition.

The following advice is from a native Chinese writer as to how best to make tea. "Whenever the tea is to be infused for use," says Tung-po, "take water from a running stream and boil it over a lively fire. It is an old custom to use running water, boiled over a lively fire;

Digitized by Google

that from springs in the hills is said to be the best, and river water the next, while well water is the worst.

"When making an infusion do not boil the water too hastily, as first it should begin to sparkle like crabs' eyes, then somewhat like fishes' eyes, and lastly to boil up like pearls innumerable, springing and waving about. This is the way to boil the water."

The same Chinese author gives the names of six different kinds of tea, all of which are in high repute. As their names are rather flowery, Mr. Fortune quotes them for the reader's amusement. They are these: the "first spring tea," the "white dew," the "coral dew," the "dewy shoots," the "money shoots," and the "rivulet garden tea."

"Tea," says he, "is of a cooling nature, and, if drunk too freely, will produce exhaustion and lassitude; country people before drinking it add ginger and salt, to counteract this cooling property. It is an exceedingly useful plant; cultivate it, and the benefit will be widely spread; drink it, and the animal spirits will be lively and clear. The chief rulers, dukes and nobility esteem it; the lower people, the poor and beggarly, will not be destitute of it." Another Chinese author says, regarding tea, that "drinking it tends to clear away all impurities, drives off drowsiness, removes or prevents headache, and it is universally in high esteem."

The great object of agricultural interest to the population of China is rice, the staple food of all classes, from the prince to the peasant. The plains present an endless succession of rice or paddy fields, which, in the early stage of the crops, exhibit a vast surface of bright green, but turn yellow as the grain ripens. The seed is

Digitized by Google

first sown in small patches, enriched with a preparation of liquid manure, which promotes its immediate development, so that soon the shoots are five or six inches in height, when they are transplanted to the fields, the laborers dropping them into holes, about six together. This method of cultivation requires much additional labor, but it greatly economises the rich and valuable soil of the river shores, and gives the plants, when of a maturity to need it, the space and sun which make them vigorous and productive. These men stand up to the ankles in water, for it is requisite that rice should be kept constantly wet, or it would be spoiled; but when the rice is ripe the fields are drained, so that the reapers, whose labors commence about midsummer, work on dry ground.

The second harvest is ripe in November, after which the ground is usually planted with cabbages and other vegetables; but in some parts of the country a crop of cotton is obtained between the two rice crops.

The Chinese are deservedly celebrated for their industry and ingenuity; yet it is to be remarked that in their cultivation of the soil they employ very little machinery, and are strongly prejudiced against the introduction of any improvements which would tend to abridge manual labor. Even their agricultural implements are as few and simple as they were in the early days of the empire; yet, by dint of the excessive toil of the vast numbers of people employed, the lands are as well cultivated and as highly productive as they are elsewhere by any improved system. The plough, the harrow and the hoe, all of the rudest construction, are the chief implements used by a Chinese farmer, the spade being only seen occasionally. The plough is

Digitized by Google

usually drawn by buffaloes, but sometimes that labor is performed by men, and even by women, among the lowest class of farmers. Water-wheels and chain-pumps are used for irrigating the lands. The water-wheel is an immense yet very light machine, composed entirely of bamboo, its buckets for raising the water being made of the same material; it is fixed adjoining the banks of all such rivers as have the stream running one way, which keeps it going night and day, and supplies water to a large trough, which empties its contents into several channels which run through the fields in various directions, and thus keep them constantly watered. The chain-pump is used to raise water from the wells and ponds for the same purpose, and, being portable, is extremely useful to the Chinese laborer; consequently, the making of such machines is a branch of industry which affords employment to a great number of mechanics.

Another great edible product of the soil of China is sugar. It is not made, as many suppose in this country, from the sorghum, which was brought to us by the French. This plant is there comparatively little known, and is only used for fodder; and the Chinese are surprised at the ingenuity which has managed to extract so excellent an article of sugar as we do from its juice. The sugar-cane is sold on the fruit-stalls in pieces a few inches in length, to be eaten thus; its expressed juice is evaporated in the sun and made into coarse brown sugar, or crystallized into rock-candy, which is pulverized to make a finer article; and it is manufactured into a thousand forms of colored candies, syrups, artificial and ornamental work, saturated dried fruit, and others to please the eye and the palate.

Digitized by Google

The provinces adjoining the Yang-tsz-kiang are those where cotton is most extensively cultivated; and in the neighborhood of Nanking the cloth known by that name is made in large quantities. The weavers work at their own homes, for there are no large manufactories in China, either for silks or cottons; so that there is scarcely a cottage where there is not some manufacture carried on, either for sale or home consumption, and generally for both.

The introduction of cotton instead of silk for clothing must have proved a material benefit to the lower classes, being so much more durable and better suited to their occupations than silk; yet it was not till after the accession of the Ming dynasty that it was cultivated in sufficient quantities to allow of its coming into general use. The extended cultivation of cotton was one of the causes of the almost entire disappearance of sheep from the southern provinces, for it was found that it would take much more land to supply a certain number of persons with mutton and wool than with rice and cotton; there the pastures were gradually turned into rice and cotton plantations, while sheep were banished to the mountains and less fertile parts of the country. For the same reason, cattle, horses and other domestic animals are scarce; the few that are kept for the purposes of husbandry are poor and ill-fed. Dairy farms are unknown in China, where the people use neither milk nor butter, though they use curds in various forms.

A large portion of the peasantry in the silk districts are chiefly engaged in taking care of the mulberry plantations, which require constant attention that they may produce fine leaves. The worms are kept in

Digitized by Google

Cleaning Cotton.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

houses in the centre of the grove, for it is an essential point in the management of them that they should be always surrounded by perfect stillness, as it is found that noise is extremely injurious, especially to the younger ones. The care of feeding and tending them belongs to the female part of the family, who also manage the silk after it is spun by the worms.

The provinces which produce the finest silk are those about the mouth of the Yang-tsz-kiang and the region adjoining; but there are species of worms in many other parts of China that feed on some of the common forest trees, and from which are obtained coarse silk, which is very durable, but which will not take any dye, and is less glossy and beautiful than the silk of the worm which feeds on the mulberry tree.

The Chinese do not sell their best silk fabrics to foreigners; consequently we rarely see in this country the rich silks which they wear themselves. Their velvets are not equal to those of Europe, but their damasks and crapes are superb. There are skillful workers among the women who can earn thirty dollars a month by embroidering the beautiful shawls of China crape which are so much admired in Western countries.

The bamboo is one of the Creator's best gifts to the people of China, and it is wonderful to what a variety of uses it is applied by them. There are many varieties of this valuable production of the East, some kinds being much larger and stronger than others, and differing also in color. In the construction of temporary buildings it is far more useful than timber, on account of its lightness; and from it are made excellent water-pipes, the cabins of the sampans, or family boats, ropes, etc., whilst

Digitized by Google

it enters largely into the manufacture of paper. It is shaped into a thousand articles of furniture, household use, rude machinery, and amusement or ornament. Its young shoots are a very delicate vegetable for the table, not unlike asparagus; and among the innumerable minor purposes to which it is applied, we may mention its employment at Canton in the manufacture of hats, which are made and sold to foreigners in that city. The making of these hats is a specimen of the ingenuity of the Chinese, who are very clever in imitating anything they see, and will produce the counterpart of articles of foreign dress with the most minute exactness. The body of the hat is made of a composition formed of the inner part of the bamboo, beaten into a pulp and mixed with glue. It is spread on a block of the proper shape, and when dried, is covered and lined in the same manner as gentlemen's silk hats in this country. There is another small species of bamboo which grows in the marshes, seldom measuring more than two inches in diameter, the pith of which is the material commonly called rice paper. The pith is used in its natural state, being only pared in thin slices and rolled out into flat sheets, as we receive it in this country. The Chinese, who make some use of everything that falls in their way, may really be said to make almost everything out of bamboo. We have mentioned but a few of the articles of furniture, shipping, etc., to which this gigantic cane is applied; to name them all would fill pages.

The most valuable of all the uses of bamboo is to make the paper of which their books are composed. Among a people so addicted to reading and writing, the manufacture of paper must necessarily be carried on to an im-

Digitized by Google

mense extent, and this is much increased by the annual consumption of it in their sacrifices. The paper used for printing books, being thin and transparent, is only impressed on one side, and folded, so that every leaf is double, with the edge uncut. Books are not bound, like ours; but every work is divided into a number of separate parts, with strong paper covers. The parts in this shape are placed all together, loosely, in a square case or envelope—a plan that seems to have been adopted for the purpose of avoiding the inconvenience of holding a thick volume in the hand.

Books are very cheap, for there is no duty on paper; and the wages of printers, as of all other workmen, are very small. There are a great many booksellers in all the principal towns. The books are almost wholly those of the native authors. The most ancient are those most valued. Then, say they, men were more pure, more honest and more wise. The most valuable are those of a historical character. But multitudes are seen in the shops on medicine, agriculture, the language, religion and poetical subjects; novels are very abundant, and theatrical plays, which are, some of them, well written and interesting.

Printing is executed very cheaply on wood, hardened wax or metal. The most common method is by means of wooden blocks, which are prepared thus: The copy is written on very thin paper, and pasted on plain blocks, from which all the blank parts are neatly cut away, and as the letters are left raised on the surface, they are, of course, an exact representation of the manuscript, which should, therefore, be very carefully written. Movable types have been used at Peking, but they are expensive.

Digitized by Google

In the process of printing the Chinese employ no press; nor would it facilitate their operations while they continue to print on paper of so delicate a texture that any hard pressure would be likely to break through it. The printer works with two brushes; having inked the characters with one brush, he lays on his paper, and runs the other over it, which makes the impression; and this is done so quickly that a good workman can take off two thousand copies in a day.

There are other members of the vegetable kingdom which deserve particular mention as affording materials for the industry of the people. One of the most remarkable is the tallow tree. This has some resemblance to the aspen and birch, the branches being long and flexible, with leaves of a very dark green, which, in autumn, turn red, with a purple tint. The fruit, or rather seed, is contained in brown pods, which grow in bunches at the extremity of each bough, and on opening disclose three small white berries, which hang very prettily by their slender strings when the husk has completely fallen off. These have each a small nut in the middle, but the white coating is the tallow, of which candles are made; and thus the Chinese, who from local circumstances kill but few animals as compared with the number killed in America, are furnished with a vegetable substance which supplies the deficiency of the material used here for the manufacture of candles. This, in fact, is a very important branch of Chinese industry, as it is not alone for domestic purposes that lights are required, but all the temples have to be supplied with those great candles that are set up at the festivals before the images.

Digitized by Google

The camphor tree grows to a great height, and is one of the most useful timber trees in the empire, as it does not split and is never destroyed by insects. It is chiefly used for chests and household furniture, and sometimes in boat-building. The luxuriant foliage of this fine tree is of the brightest green, and from the fresh-gathered branches is obtained the resinous gum which we call camphor, and with which the wood is highly scented.

Another branch of industry, which has never been imitated with success in this part of the world, is that of making the lacker, or japanned material that we often see in the shape of folding-screens, cabinets, tea-trays, boxes and ornamental tables, so brilliantly adorned with paintings and gildings in that peculiar style which is at once recognized as Chinese. In some branches of this art, however, the people of China yield the palm to those of Japan, from whom it derives its name; and costly screens and cabinets are seen in the houses of Chinese gentlemen, the work of the Japanese, who send them to China. The varnish used for japanning them is the gum which oozes from a small tree, a species of sumac which grows both in China and Japan. The excellence of the art consists in laying on the varnish perfectly smooth, which is a tedious and difficult process, as many coatings are required, and each must be spread with the same nicety. The varnish will take any color without losing its brilliancy, so that all the painting is executed upon the japanned surface; and although the Chinese have no high or pure art, we cannot refuse to give them credit for their skill in the execution of the ornamental designs.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IV.

SOCIAL LIFE; AMUSEMENTS; POPULAR FESTIVALS; THE GOVERNMENT.

THE habits of social life in China are peculiar, although not destitute of refinement. It is not the difference between civilization and barbarism that distinguishes the Chinese of the present age from their contemporaries, but it is the more remarkable dissimilarity between ancient and modern and Eastern and Western civilization which marks them as a nation belonging to other times and other climes.

To speak of the Chinese as a rude or uninformed race would be quite as erroneous as to style them a highly-civilized people—a term that can only be applied with propriety to those who are enlightened by modern science, which in China has hitherto made no progress. The refinement of the Chinese consists in the elegance and luxury with which the higher and richer classes are surrounded in their own houses, and that strict attention to the forms of good-breeding which prevails generally through all the grades of private life. Politeness is an indispensable accomplishment, and the rules of etiquette are studied in all the schools of China as regularly as grammar in those of the West. A knowledge of the forms and ceremonies to be observed both at home and

Digitized by Google

abroad, in the drawing-room of a friend as well as at the court of the emperor, is essential to every one who studies with a view of taking degrees, as he knows not to what rank he may be called, and ought to be prepared to conduct himself with propriety in different grades of life, from the station of the petty officer of an obscure village to that of the chief ko-lau, or minister of state. It must be understood that to conduct himself with propriety does not altogether refer to his integrity in office or his moral character—to both of which, however, his most careful attention is requisite—but he must know how many bows to make to his visitors; what compliments to address to them according to their rank; whether, at their departure, he should attend them as far as the door or only so many paces toward it; and other minute observances, too numerous to mention, must be studied and practiced. These trivial ceremonies impart a dullness and formality to Chinese society which are found tedious by most Americans, whose easy, unstudied manners would be thought quite barbarous among the well-bred of the Celestial Empire.

Yet there is withal a great deal of genuine courtesy in the intercourse of the better classes, and a true refinement, which can only come from the cultivation of the purer and better sentiments of our nature. The degree of this existing in circles to which some of our officers, merchants and missionaries have been admitted has often surprised them. It is confessed that men like Keying and Howqua would be considered gentlemen in the best society of any country. The manners of the ladies are often polished and agreeable.

The houses of the wealthy are built, like those of most

Digitized by Google

other Oriental nations, within a court, surrounded by a wall, consequently they are not visible to the passers-by; but those of government officers are always known by two red poles which are set up before the gate. The handsomest dwellings are those which consist of a number of separate buildings, or ranges of apartments, all on the ground floor. The principal entrance is threefold—namely, by a large folding-door in the centre, and a smaller one on each side, at which hang two handsome lanterns, inscribed with the name and titles of the master of the house. This entrance leads to the saloon, where visitors are received, which is usually the first of a suite that may be called the state-apartments, since they are chiefly used for the reception and entertainment of distinguished guests. They are elegantly and commodiously furnished; for the Chinese are not deficient in taste, nor do they spare expense in their interior decorations of their houses, which are often fitted up in a very costly style. The walls of the best rooms are generally adorned in different parts with scrolls of silk or paper-hangings from the ceiling to the floor, on which are written or painted, in large characters, maxims and moral sentences extracted from the works of the ancient sages, which are considered far more ornamental than the finest paintings. Many of these sentences bear some resemblance to the Proverbs of Solomon. Their chairs—which, it may be remarked, are articles of furniture not used by the natives of other parts of Asia, and indicate the more dignified manners of the Chinese as compared with other Asiatics—are rather clumsy and heavy in appearance, but they are made of a beautiful dark brown wood which grows in

Digitized by Google

China, and is not unlike rosewood. They are all made with arms, and sometimes are furnished with silk or satin cushions and hangings for the back, embroidered by the ladies of the family, who devote a great portion of their time to needlework. Japanned cabinets and tables, with a profusion of porcelain jars and other ornaments, are always seen in a Chinese drawing-room; but none of these are so striking or so characteristic as the lanterns, suspended by silken cords from the ceiling and ornamented with a variety of elegant designs.

In any civilized part of the world we may find Indian cabinets and porcelain vases, but the lanterns are exclusively Chinese, and are very showy specimens of the national taste and ingenuity. They are made in every form that fancy can invent and of all sizes—from the small ones carried by pedestrians at night to those that illumine the halls of the great; the latter being sometimes eight or ten feet in height and three feet in diameter. The most costly are composed of transparent silk, adorned with landscapes, birds, flowers and fanciful devices in colors of dazzling brightness; the framework being richly carved and gilt, and the cords and tassels by which they are suspended made of silk and gold thread. The possession of fine lanterns is a sort of passion among the Chinese, many of whom spend considerable sums in the gratification of this fancy.

The real condition of ladies in China, and the position they hold in society, are not yet very accurately known. They are seldom seen in the streets, it is true, but that is sufficiently accounted for by their inability to walk with ease; and as they do sometimes appear abroad, and are often observed at the windows, without making any

Digitized by Google

attempt to conceal their faces from the gaze of strangers, it is evident they enjoy far more liberty than the Turkish ladies, although it is not the custom for the sexes to mix together in general society. When a mandarin gives a grand entertainment, his wife frequently invites her friends to witness the theatrical performances and various amusing exhibitions that are going forward during the dinner. These they can see, without being seen, from a latticed gallery provided for that purpose; and thus they are not entirely debarred from the enjoyment of the festivities, although they do not mingle with the guests.

But we must consider the sex degraded wherever the system of polygamy prevails, and wherever (as in China and all these Eastern countries) men add to the number of their wives according to their wealth and rank. Another source of humiliation should seem to be the common practice of buying and selling women. All classes of Chinese present some equivalent to the parents or guardians of the women they marry. A family of handsome daughters, particularly if well trained in ceremonials and Chinese accomplishments, are often a source of great profit to their parents.

The dress of a Chinese lady is not different from that worn in ancient times: it consists of a short loose robe, confined round the throat with a narrow collar. The robe is worn over a long, full skirt, and both are frequently made of richly-embroidered silks. The sleeves are wide, and sufficiently long to fall over the hands; and the hair is gathered up in a knot at the top of the head, and is fastened with golden bodkins and adorned with flowers. They all wear trowsers; and their tiny

Digitized by Google

Domestic scene in a merchant's family

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

shoes are of satin, silk or velvet, beautifully worked with gold, silver and colored silks, the soles being formed of layers of paper, from one to two inches in thickness, and covered outside with white leather made from pigskin. The little girls are very becomingly attired in short dresses, reaching to the throat and worn over the full trowsers. The hair, which is combed from the forehead, hangs down on each side, and the black hair is plaited into one or two long tails; in which style it remains until the young lady is about to become a bride, when the moré matronly fashion is adopted, and the braids and curls are formed into a knot, intermixed with flowers and jewels.

A gentleman usually wears in the house a loose robe of silk, cloth, or, in summer, of some lighter material, with a cap also suited to the season. If he be a mandarin, a ball is worn on the top of the cap to designate the class to which he belongs. The summer cap is as light as chip, to which it bears a resemblance. It is made of bamboo, in the shape of a cone; and if the wearer be a government officer, has attached to the ball a crimson silk ornament, which hangs like a fringe. The winter head-dress is of satin, with a wide brim of black velvet turned up all around, and the usual adornments of ball and fringe at the top. A mandarin of the first rank is known by a red ball on his cap; a transparent blue one denotes the second class; and the other grades are distinguished by white, opaque blue, crystal, gilt and other balls.

A Chinese is not at liberty to wear his summer or his winter cap when he pleases, but is obliged to wait for the time appointed by the Board of Rites for making the

Digitized by Google

alterations in his head-gear. The announcement is made in the Gazette, when the viceroy of the province lays aside the cap he has been wearing for the previous six months to adopt that of the approaching season, and the example is immediately followed by all other mandarins and officers within his government. It is very usual to wear at home a cap of silk or velvet, fitting closely to the head. Furs are very much used in the winter costume, for as the Chinese have no fires in their apartments, they wear a great quantity of warm clothing, putting on one garment over another until they are sufficiently protected from the cold. Dress boots are of velvet or satin, with the universal thick white soles; and a fan, in an embroidered case hanging from the girdle, is as indispensable a part of the costume of a Chinese gentleman as his cap or gown.

Visiting in China is conducted in a manner which is very formal according to our notions. A gentleman in making a morning call does not alight from his chair until he has sent in his visiting card, that the master of the house may give him a proper reception according to his rank, as it is the etiquette to hurry to the door, in some cases, to receive a guest, while in others it is only necessary to meet him in the middle of the room; and in the former case the bowings are lower and more numerous than in the latter. The law has decided that the superior shall take precedence in entering the room, yet it is considered polite to make a pretence of refusing to go in first, and a few unmeaning compliments always pass on the occasion, both parties knowing very well which of them is to take the lead. It is not the custom in China to uncover the head unless invited so to do;

Digitized by Google

in warm weather, therefore, a gentleman usually says to his friend, "Pray put off your cap!" and it would be a mark of ill manners to omit this compliment.

Tea is always offered to a morning visitor, and is usually accompanied with sweetmeats and pipes, for the Chinese are fond of smoking, and every gentleman wears an embroidered tobacco-pouch at his girdle. It is not exactly certain when tobacco was first introduced into China, but it is supposed that it found its way there soon after the discovery of America, as the Chinese were in the habit of smoking before the time of the Manchu-Tartar conquest, although there is no mention of such a custom prior to the sixteenth century. Smoking is not confined to the male sex nor to the lower class of females, but even a Chinese lady may have her richly-ornamented pipe, which would really be an elegant appendage if it did not involve so unfeminine an indulgence. It has become quite common for men, and even women, to intoxicate themselves by smoking opium. The usual employments among wealthy Chinese ladies are—working embroidery, playing on different musical instruments and painting on silk and rice paper. Yet some ladies are well educated, and there are families where private tutors are employed, and the girls are allowed to participate, to a certain extent, in the studies of their brothers.

The lower orders in the towns—men, women and children—all wear loose gowns of nanking cloth, usually dyed blue, without collars. The laboring men in the country work in large cotton trowsers, with or without a gown over them, and a broad bamboo hat, which answers the purpose of an umbrella to shield them from the sun and rain. But the most extraordinary article of apparel

Digitized by Google

worn by the Chinese laborer is a cloak made of long, narrow leaves, which has a very rough, unsightly appearance, but is extremely useful in wet weather, either in the fields or in the boats.

The river population of Canton forms a very large portion of the community, and is considered by the people of the city to be a distinct and inferior race. Until the time of Kien-lung these people were not permitted to intermarry with the people on shore; but that enlightened sovereign removed the restriction, and those who live on the water now enjoy equal privileges with those who have their dwellings on land, and a boatman may take to wife a village lass without incurring any penalty. Some of the poor people who emigrate to neighboring counties often take their wives with them, notwithstanding the laws that so strictly prohibit women from leaving China; but there is no doubt that the laws against emigration are altogether very much relaxed, and it is probable that the government may purposely refrain from being very vigilant in seeing them enforced.

It is rather curious that, among the personal decorations of the Chinese, there is not one they prize more highly, or on which they bestow more attention, than the plaited queue, which, at first, was detested as a disgraceful badge of dependence, and is still a sign of their subjection to the Tartar rule. The beauty of the queue consists in its length and thickness, and many who have not hair enough to make a handsome braid supply the deficiency with false hair and silk; but whatever pains and cost a man may bestow upon improving his appearance by the aid of art, he can have no pretensions to

Digitized by Google

personal attraction unless his figure indicate that he has not been kept upon spare diet.

The tables of the wealthy are supplied with a great variety of rich dishes, among which is a soup that supplies the place of our turtle. It is made of the nests of birds, the trade in which is a government monopoly. These nests are principally brought from Java, Sumatra and the coasts of Malacca; they are obtained among the rocks with difficulty by men let down from their summits by a rope. They consist of a delicate sea-moss gathered from the surface of the waves by a species of swallow, and formed into nests among the precipitous cliffs. They are best when taken before they have been soiled by the bird. After having been properly cleansed, they are packed in boxes and sent to Canton, where they are often worth more than their weight in silver. Sharks' fins are esteemed a great luxury. There appears to be scarcely an end to the number and variety of the culinary preparations of these people; but of all their dishes there are very few that are palatable to an American stomach.

The Chinese take wine with each other, and when they have done so, turn the cup upside down, to show that they have emptied its contents, this being a point of good-breeding. The wine, which is a liquor extracted from rice, is taken hot, and at the tables of the rich is poured into the cups from a silver vessel like a coffee-pot. The dinner-service consists of porcelain bowls of various sizes, with plates shaped like saucers, and sometimes a few silver dishes. Instead of knives and forks, they use what are termed chopsticks, which are small round sticks of ivory or ebony; but they have also

Digitized by Google

spoons of ebony, and silver ladles for the soups. The dinner is preceded by fruits and confectionery. After it the company usually adjourn to another room to take tea and amuse themselves, but the foreigners are never gratified by the company of the ladies.

The shopkeepers of China, and those whose appetites are not stimulated by bodily labor, usually take only two meals in the day—one between eight and ten in the morning, the other between four and six in the afternoon. Their usual fare is rice and vegetables, with a little pork or fish; their ordinary drink is tea, but they sometimes indulge in samshu, a spiritous liquor distilled from rice.

Flour of rice or wheat is chiefly employed in making pastry and flat, unleavened cakes, the latter constituting the only bread which is known in China. The ovens, or rather baking-machines, consist of a flat plate of iron, suspended by chains from a beam over a copper filled with burning charcoal. The cakes are placed on the iron plate, which can be raised or depressed at pleasure by means of the chains; and as this is the only mode of baking among the Chinese, their bread is necessarily made in the form of cakes, and is eaten only as a dainty. The process of cooking is carried on over charcoal fires; and as there are no chimneys to any of the houses, a part of the brick-work above the fire in their kitchens, or cooking-places, is left open to suffer the vapor to escape. There are plenty of eating-houses, both for rich and poor—those for the latter being open sheds, where they can procure a hot breakfast or dinner at any hour of the day for a very trifling sum. The superior sort are fine, handsome hotels, where gentlemen of the

Digitized by Google

1. Tortoise-shell Chopstick case.
2 & 6. Chopsticks.
3. Toothpick.
4 & 8. Knives.
5. Large Chopstick case with sliding top and bottom.
7. Chinese Fork.
9. Soup Spoon.
10. Quatrefoil saucer for soy.

Implements for eating.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

higher classes can dine when their families are out of town.

The traveler and botanist, Mr. Robert Fortune, has given us a description of a road-side inn in the provinces, that will convey a good idea of such places, which have their counterparts in some of the Chinese restaurants of California. The first use of the "company-houses" there is to be a sort of general inn for the people from the same neighborhood in their own country. It must be borne in mind that the gentleman named was traveling in disguise and passing for a Chinese:

"The inn was a large and commodious building, extending backward from the main street of the town. Its front was composed of a number of boards or shutters, which could be removed at pleasure. The whole of these were taken down in the morning and put up again at night. The floor of the building was divided into three principal compartments, the first facing the street, the second being behind it, and the third at the farthest end. Some small rooms which were formed on each side were the bed-rooms.

"Coolies and chair-bearers crowded that part of the building next to the street, in which they had their meals and smoked their pipes. The second and third divisions were destined for travelers, but as there were large doors between each, which stood wide open, it was easy to see through from the front to the back part of the premises.

"When I got out of my chair, I followed 'mine host' into the second compartment, in which I observed a table at each side of the room. One of them being unoccupied, I sat down at it, and with becoming gravity

Digitized by Google

lighted my Chinese pipe and began to smoke. The host set a cup of tea before me, and left me to attend upon some one else. I had now leisure to take a survey of the strange scene around me. At the opposite table sat two merchants, who, a single glance told me, were from the province of Canton. They were evidently eyeing me with great interest, and doubtless knew me to be a foreigner the moment I entered the room. One of them I had frequently seen at Shanghai. This person looked as if he wished me to recognize him, but in this he was disappointed, for I returned his inquiring look as if I had never seen him before. I now observed him whispering to his companion, and thought I heard the word 'Fankwai' used. In the mean time, Sing-hu, who had just arrived, came in, and began to bustle about and get in the dinner, which was soon ready. The host was a civil sort of man, but very inquisitive, and as he set down the dinner he put various questions to me. With Chinese politeness he asked me my name, my age, where I had come from and whither I was bound; and to all such questions he received satisfactory answers. The Canton merchants were all eyes and ears while this conversation was going on, and one of them quietly prompted the innkeeper to ask a few more questions. These gentlemen wanted to know the starting-point of my journey, the particular part of Fukien to which I was bound, and the objects I had in view. As I could not see that answers to these questions concerned them very much, or could be of any use, I judged it better to keep them in the dark.

"Several dishes being now set before me, and a cup of wine poured out by the host, I took a sip of it, and,

Digitized by Google

taking up my chopsticks, went on with my dinner. Having had great experience in the use of chopsticks, I could handle them now nearly as well as the Chinese themselves; and as I had been accustomed to all the formalities of a Chinese dinner, I went on with the most perfect confidence.

"When I had finished dinner, a wooden basin, containing warm water and a wet cloth, was placed before me, in order that I might wash my hands and face. Wringing the wet cloth, I rubbed my face, neck and hands well over with it, in Chinese style. Having finished my ablution, I returned again to the table. The dinner and dishes having in the mean time been removed, tea was again set before me.

"The Canton men still remained at the opposite table, but the greater part of the others who, at their instigation, had been taking sly peeps at me, had gone away. I suppose when they saw that I ate and drank just like the rest, they must have felt some little surprise, and had their original opinion strengthened—namely, that, after all, I was only one of themselves.

"My chair-bearers having dined as well as myself, they sent a message by Sing-hu to say that they were ready to proceed. Making a slight bow to mine host, and a slighter one to the Canton gentlemen in Chinese style, I got into my chair and went my way."

Gambling with cards, dice, dominoes and other contrivances, and gambling by betting, are excessively prevalent. The populace bet upon anything, from two crickets in a basin to fighting quails and a combat of gamecocks. This is one of the great national vices. From childhood to old age they never get rid of the

Digitized by Google

propensity. Some of the games played by the wealthier classes indoors appear to be childish; they, however, play at draughts and have a sort of chess.

Among the outdoor amusements of the commonalty, that of kite-flying is carried to a degree of perfection unseen in any other country. The kites are made in a variety of forms, as of birds, butterflies or fishes, and the flyers often try their skill in bringing down each other's kites, in imitation of hawking. Football is a favorite pastime, and a game called *jang*, which is of very ancient date, and is played with two wooden toys in the form of a pair of shoes, one of which is placed on the ground and its fellow thrown from a distance, the object being to insert one within the other, and he who succeeds in doing so is the winner.

Our child's game of battledore-and-shuttlecock is very prevalent, and is played by grown-up people as well as by children. There is, however, this difference—the Chinese do not play with their hands, but with their feet, and their battledores are the broad soles of their shoes, with the sides of which they adroitly strike the shuttlecock as it approaches the ground. The game thus played is still more common among the Siamese, whose dexterity at it is said to be surprising.

But the great amusement of the people of all ranks and at all seasons of the year is the theatre. A lively American writer has given us some very amusing notes on this subject, which are the more suitable to quote since some of the theatrical companies have crossed the ocean to the New World:

"The actors are formed into strolling companies, and travel all over China. They perform their parts ad-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

mirably and excel in pantomime. The Hong merchants sometimes engage a company for several days, and throw open their hongs to the foreigners as well as the rabble. I accepted an invitation to attend one of these exhibitions, and the tea merchant at whose establishment the show took place politely expressed his desire that all should come.

"Two or three of us went together to the hong, and were ushered into an apartment in the second story looking out upon the courtyard, and furnished with seats ascending as they retreated, so that the hindmost spectators could see as well as those in front. These benches, with the exception of a few reserved seats, were densely occupied by the respectable and well-dressed friends of the hongist.

"We were politely ushered into the first seats, looking immediately on the stage opposite. As soon as we were comfortably seated a boy brought to us very nice tea and fans, as the weather was warm. Below us, in the open yard, were the closely-packed hundreds admitted to the exhibition without charge, but obliged to stand, and with the sun beating down on their unprotected heads. They were very orderly and quiet, however, and watched every change of scene with intense interest. The stage was formed of bamboo poles, strongly tied together, and the floor was of boards, resting on the horizontal reeds and covered with a carpet. The ceiling was of a piece with the splendor of the theatre, and composed of rather dingy matting. There was no drop or green curtain, no footlights or scenery of any description, and the orchestra was behind the performers. There was a retiring-room at the back of the stage,

Digitized by Google

whither the actors resorted to change their dresses. The beauty of the establishment was much improved by a number of half-naked coolies, who had climbed up the bamboo poles to have a better view of the scene, where they clung like apes; and one or two, more fortunate than the rest, had actually managed to get on top of the frame, and sat with their dusky legs dangling through holes in the matting. The performance was ludicrous, and yet very good in its way; in pantomine, the actors were masters, and the expressions of their countenances admirably suited to the feelings they meant to express. The dresses were truly gorgeous; it is in costume, not in scenery, that great sums are expended, and that of actors is always a representation of the ancient dresses of China before the Manchu-Tartar conquest.

"They were of the richest silks and satins, stiff with gold thread and gay embroidery, and well put on.

"The actors screamed and bawled at the top of their voices, and seemed to lash themselves into the most furious excitement. There was a vast deal of fighting, and on the least pretence the heroes of the piece drew their swords and hacked at each other without mercy; and every moment the orchestra would come in with an awful crash, and nearly drive one frantic by the din of gongs, the squeak of stringed instruments and the shrill shrieks of fifes. I soon became aware that I could not appreciate the performance, for when I laughed at the apparent absurdities, all the Chinese looked on with breathless interest; and sometimes, during a part that I considered particularly stupid, I would hear loud explosions of delight, and a contagious chuckle would animate the whole assembly.

Digitized by Google

"There were no women to be seen, either as spectators or actors, though the impersonation of feminine character was so admirable, and the dress so perfectly worn, that I came away at first under the belief that I had seen females acting. Delicate-looking lads of seventeen or nineteen are selected to personate the softer sex; and when the dress is put on, the false head-gear assumed, the feet squeezed into the smallest of shoes, and the voice mimics the high, shrill tones of womanhood, the disguise is complete.

"The faces of the boys are painted, as is usual with the females in China, and the womanly way of moving, talking, and even thinking, seems to be adopted. They make love in the most natural and sentimental manner, assume airs of coquetery and raillery with equal ease, and play the belle and the mother much better than nine-tenths of the European actresses. There was no indecency committed.

"To the bamboo poles in front are attached boards, with the name of the play represented inscribed on them, and these are changed with the drama. A play will frequently last two or three days; the one I saw occupied nearly twelve hours, and when I returned in the afternoon the boards were unchanged, and the same old fellows were wrapped up in the story that I had seen all eyes and ears in the morning.

"When it is time to go to dinner, the orchestra suddenly ceases to emit its deafening clangor, the actors roll up the stage carpet and adjourn to some eating-house, and the audience disperses till the meal is over, when the actors come back as violent as ever. The crowd will stand patiently for hours under the hot sun to enjoy a

Digitized by Google

performance which depends more on the excellence of the actors than on the merits of the play.

"The actors vary their exhibitions by gymnastic exercises, some of which are very remarkable. In one that I saw a number of men formed a circle, joining hands, and on the shoulders of these stood another tier, and a third group of three or four persons stood on the top of the pyramid. Those beneath then commenced dancing, and finally went whirling round like a top until they attained a fearful velocity. I expected to see some of the fellows go off in a tangent, but they all managed to retain their hold, those above jumping and kicking as they revolved.

"As there is no scenery, of course the audience have to imagine it, and transport the players in their fancy from point to point; but the actors have a very cheap and ingenious method of locomotion. If they wish to mount on horseback, they bestride a chair and crack a whip; and if the hero of the piece desires to go to Peking he skips across the stage, claps his hands, bawls with joy and informs the hearers that he has arrived. The fashionable world at once believe him, and go to court without presentations. There are hundreds of dramatic authors in China; their name is legion, and their productions seem to be the most popular reading of the Chinese. A few plays have been translated into English, but are hardly adapted for the European stage. Books are extremely cheap in China, and the 'sing-song' books, as they are called, are more lively and entertaining than most others. All the plays represented can be found in print, and a complete collection would outnumber the British drama.

Digitized by Google

"The same company does not visit a city more than once in three or four years, and each troop has a number of performances in which it is particularly skilled.

"The only harm likely to result from theatrical exhibitions arises from the narrow and densely-crowded streets; if a panic ensues, many are trampled to death, and a short time after I left Canton a lamentable tragedy occurred. A fire took place during a performance, and upward of two thousand persons lost their lives by the flames and by their frantic efforts to escape destruction."[1]

These theatrical exhibitions are designed partly for the propitiation of the gods and good and evil spirits. The first play each day is generally religious in its character.

The Chinese are a religious people, yet far from being so superstitious as the Hindûs. Their objects of worship are generally their deceased sages, heroes, emperors or ancestors. Every house, belonging either to rich or poor, has its household gods, to which offerings are frequently made according to the mode of Chinese worship, consisting of cakes, rice, plates of meat and cups of tea, which are placed before the images for a certain space of time and then taken away to be consumed by the family. At the great public festivals, tables covered with offerings brought by the people are set in the streets or in the temples, and are arranged with the nicest care. Each table displays a variety of choice viands, such as ducks, fowls, pigs' heads, large cakes, fruits and confectionery of all kinds, with wine and rows of very

[1] Osmond Tiffany, Jr. *The Canton Chinese; or, The American's Sojourn in the Celestial Empire.* Boston, 1849.

Digitized by Google

small cups filled with tea. Upon the tables are large wax candles and lighted incense-sticks, which burn slowly, and when exhausted are replaced by others. As long as the festival lasts the tables remain untouched, but as soon as it is ended the offerings are distributed among the crowd, so that the lower orders may be said literally to share in all public festivities.

The commencement of a new year is the great time for feasting and merry-making in China and wherever its people emigrate. The Christmas of the olden time in Europe was not a season of more universal merriment than this is in the Flowery Land. On this most important of all the Chinese festivals, high and low, the rulers and the people, indulge in a cessation from the cares of life and give up all their thoughts to pleasure. A regular order is issued by the Board of Rites that all government business shall be suspended from the twentieth day of the twelfth month to the same day of the first month; thus allowing to all the mandarins in office a holiday of thirty days, unless any particular business should demand their attention; and they do not fail to avail themselves of this release by locking up their seals and preparing to enjoy their long vacation. The rest of the people devote as much time to amusement as they can spare from their ordinary avocations; but those must be miserable indeed who do not join, for two or three days at least, in the general gayeties.

The festival, which begins at the midnight that closes the old year, is ushered in by the ceremonies of offerings, incense-burning and numerous other rites, which last till daylight; the temples being lighted up, the pagodas illuminated and candles set up before the do-

Digitized by Google

mestic idols in every house. As soon as the day appears, visits of congratulation are paid and received, and new year's gifts are sent to particular friends, always accompanied by a visiting card of red paper, on which is written the name of the donor and a list of the presents sent, consisting usually of silks, fine tea, sweetmeats, ornaments, toys and other trifles suited to the occasion. All the actors, musicians, jugglers and tumblers in the empire are in requisition at this period of recreation, when grand entertainments are given by the rich, and plays are performed in the streets, at the expense of government or by a subscription among the inhabitants, for the amusement of the poor. The lower orders are very much addicted to gambling, smoking and drinking, particularly in the towns, where there are plenty of booths for their accommodation, to which they resort as soon as their daily labors are ended. These taverns, which are merely open sheds, are much frequented at all seasons, but at holiday times they are crowded from morning till night with noisy revelers.

The last day of the year is not quite so joyful a one as the first, for among the many regulations of the Chinese government is a law by which all men are obliged to settle accounts with their creditors on that particular day; and it is considered so disgraceful to leave any debt unpaid that the unlucky debtor who cannot discharge his pecuniary obligations at the appointed time is liable to be treated with insult and injury by those to whom the money is owing; and among the vulgar it is not uncommon for an individual under such circumstances to have his furniture broken, and his family annoyed in every possible way; nor can he apply to the magistrates

Digitized by Google

for redress, however serious the injury he may sustain, because the fact of not having paid his debts would render his complaint of no avail.

The Feast of Lanterns, which takes place almost immediately after the celebration of the new year, is a popular festival of ancient date among the Chinese, and is the occasion of a most brilliant and beautiful spectacle. On the fifteenth day of the first moon, every city, village and hamlet throughout the country is splendidly illuminated with an infinite variety of these beautiful lanterns, which are hung up at every house, from the palace of the viceroy to the hut of the humble fisherman, the general feeling being a desire on the part of each to outshine his neighbor. The tradition respecting this festival is, that the wife of an emperor of one of the early dynasties, being extravagant and fond of pleasure, chose to have the palace illuminated every night with a thousand lights, which might supply the place of the sun and keep up a perpetual day within her abode. This legend, which refers to a period antecedent to the era of Confucius, may be received as an evidence that the Feast of Lanterns was celebrated in China in very ancient times; but its real origin, like that of many other Chinese customs, is lost in obscurity, nor is it likely ever to be discovered. The illumination is continued for three nights, and is attended by a grand display of fireworks, in which the Chinese excel all other nations. Many of the lanterns made for such occasions exhibit moving figures, such as huntsmen on horseback galloping round, ships sailing, troops of soldiers marching or people dancing, all kept in motion by some ingenious contrivance not visible to the beholder, the propelling power

Digitized by Google

of which is the current of air created by the heat of the lamp within. These are seen only at the houses of the rich, and of course attract vast crowds of spectators. The chief part of the many thousands of lanterns manufactured for this festival are of strong, transparent paper, or gauze, varnished, which is used in many parts of China instead of window glass. Even the commonest of them are elegant in shape and gayly decorated, so that altogether the effect of the illumination is very brilliant. Even the poor fishermen who dwell on the sea-shore, and those who live in boats on the rivers, bestow as much as they can possibly spare of their hard earnings for the purchase of a fine lantern to exhibit on this festive occasion; so that even the waters are lighted up; and as the towns and villages are neither few nor far between, the spectator placed upon any eminence beholds on all sides an illuminated panorama of the country. During the festival the gates of the cities are left open at night, that the country-people may enjoy the pleasure of seeing the display.

Besides the annual festivals already mentioned, there are several others, to which the people run with great eagerness. The "Dragon Festival," which falls in spring, is very pretty and interesting. It is a sort of regatta, and is in honor of Kiuh-yuen, a famous sage, who was drowned before the Christian era. The boats are shaped like Indian canoes, with the figure of a dragon at the prow, and are otherwise highly ornamented and gilded. They are of great length, and the rowers use short paddles or sculls. They dart up and down the rivers in vast numbers and with fearful speed, for the long, narrow boats cut through the water like birds

Digitized by Google

through the air. Some of the boats contain more than sixty men, and the sport sometimes continues two or three days. The boatmen shoot hither and thither, as if searching for some lost object; and this commemorates the efforts made to discover the ancient sage when he fell into the river. In the mean time, the boatmen shout and the people on shore beat gongs, wave flags and fire innumerable crackers to inspire the rowers to redouble their exertions. If firing crackers can be styled a recreation, it is one which lasts in China all the year round, and is not neglected by a human being in the empire. There is probably no single moment in the round of the twenty-four hours in which thousands of crackers are not exploded in some part of the country or other. They are extremely cheap, not costing more than a penny a pack. No one takes the trouble to light one cracker at a time. They set fire to a whole pack; and generally, when a new house is finished, or when some other pleasant event has happened, they burn tens or hundreds of packs.

A very remarkable observance of a moral, if not religious, nature is the stated assemblage of the people of the principal cities and towns to hear the Commands, or edicts, of the emperors Kang-hi and Yung-ching. The object is that the moral virtues shall be instilled into the minds of the people by the magistrates, who are obliged by law to give instruction in public on the first and fifteenth days of every moon, by reading one of the sixteen discourses, which treat on all the principal duties of social life in every station. The first lesson is on filial piety and the respect which a younger should pay to an elder brother. These duties are so strictly enjoined and en-

Digitized by Google

forced that a few years since a man was put to death for having beaten his mother, and his wife shared the same fate for having assisted him. The act was regarded as a crime so heinous that the house in which it was perpetrated was deemed unfit for the residence of any human being, and was dug up from the foundation, that not a stone of it might remain. The magistrates were all disgraced, the wife's mother was severely punished, and the scholars of that polluted district were prohibited from attending the public examinations for three years. The second of the sixteen discourses exhorts the people to preserve a respectful remembrance of their ancestors, and enjoins them not to neglect to visit their tombs at the proper periods. The principal subjects of the other lectures are—the benefits of concord in the villages; the respect due to the profession of husbandry and the culture of silk; the advantages of economy and industry; the education of youth; application to business; obedience to the laws; and the punishments incurred by those who are negligent of their duties.

The care of admonishing the people belongs to the officers of small communities; but the governors have also to perform their part as teachers by assembling the inferior officials within their provinces about once a year to give them instructions as to their respective duties, to which they are bound to listen with respect, as coming from the emperor himself by the voice of his representative. However, all these moral lectures are now printed from the ancient originals, and in order to save themselves trouble the mandarins often merely enjoin the people or their headmen to read them at least once in every year. At every step one must be careful not

Digitized by Google

to confound theory with practice, and not to attribute unreservedly the strict ancient usages to the existing generation.

In a country where the system of instruction is entirely regulated by the laws, and forms so material a part of the constitution, the palpable deficiency is that there are no free schools supported by the government. Yet there are numerous establishments for education founded by the munificence of those who in past ages have acquired fame and riches by their literary attainments. The master of a district school is paid at the rate of two to three dollars a year for each boy; yet even this small sum cannot very easily be spared by a laboring man, whose wages are not more than a few pennies a day; so that many families of the poorer classes send only one son to school, selecting, of course, him who shows the most promising genius. The boys are incited to industry and good behavior by the hope of prizes which are distributed at stated periods, and consist of pencils, paper, Indian ink and ink-stones or little palettes for grinding the ink, which are all much prized by the Chinese, who call them "the four precious materials," and teach the children to keep them in very neat order. In most of the country villages and in all large cities there are evening schools for boys who are obliged to work in the day-time; for the children of the poor are inured to labor from a very tender age, so that little fellows of five or six years of age may be seen trudging along the roads with a stick across their shoulders carrying loads; and they are set to work in the fields almost as soon as they can walk. It is the usual practice now for persons of rank and wealth to engage private tutors

Digitized by Google

for their children; but whether the latter are educated at home or at a public school, they must undergo the regular examinations before they are eligible to office, nor are they taught in any way differently from the boys at the village seminaries.

These examinations were first instituted for the purpose of selecting the fittest persons to fill all offices of state, without regard to rank or fortune, and have as a general rule previous to the present dynasty been conducted with impartiality. One of the favorite maxims of the Chinese is, "By learning the sons of the poor become great; without learning the sons of the great are mixed with the common people." The beneficial influence of this maxim is observable in the village schools, which are generally well attended, since it is natural for every father to hope that one of his children at least may distinguish himself by a superior capacity, and thus make his own fortune as well as that of his family; for as parents are frequently degraded in consequence of the misconduct of a son, so they are often honored and rewarded on account of his virtues.

Many years of laborious application to study are required to fit a youth to become a candidate for literary distinction. Five or six years are entirely spent in committing to memory the works of the ancient sages, particularly the five canonical books of which Confucius was either the author or the compiler; and thus its officers come to know by heart the maxims by which the empire has been regulated from time immemorial. Six years more are devoted by the unwearied student to the making himself master of the art of composition, to which end he studies innumerable set phrases and apt

Digitized by Google

similes; so that the learned Chinese all write in the same general figurative style and use the same metaphors.

The lower examinations take place annually, when those young men who are looking for preferment and are qualified for trial assemble at the public hall before a council of the literati, who are to judge of their merits; when each candidate is furnished by the president with a theme, on which he has to write an essay and an ode to test his fitness for a further trial. The best of these compositions being selected, the authors are sent to the chief literary mandarin of the department in which their district is situated, who subjects them to a much more rigorous examination than the former one, which ends by giving certificates to a certain number, who thus gain what is called "a name in the village," while the rest either give up the pursuit or wait for the next opportunity of making another trial. The chosen few have then to appear before a still higher tribunal, which is yet stricter than the last. The hall where this trial takes place is provided with a great number of small apartments, so that each candidate may be shut up alone, and the judges thus assured that their performances are entirely their own. They are even searched on entering these little cells, to see that they have neither books nor papers about them; and this being ascertained, all are supplied with writing materials and themes to try their skill in composition, both in prose and verse. To guard against any partiality being shown by the president and members of the board, these papers are laid before them unsigned, and they select the best without knowing who are the authors. The fortunate individuals whose pieces are thus approved then receive

Digitized by Google

the first degree, styled Siu-tsai, which is equivalent to that of our Bachelor of Arts; but the numbers are so considerably diminished at each fresh trial that, on an average it is reckoned that not more than ten arrive at this degree, out of every thousand who present themselves, in the first instance, at the hall of the district; but as the districts are numerous, these tens amount to several hundreds in a province.

The second degree is that of Ku-jin, which may be translated "elevated man," a rank equal to that of Master of Arts at our colleges. All those who have attained the first step are qualified to try for the second, but the task is a much harder one, and as the number to be chosen is very small in proportion to that of the candidates, being not much more than one out of every hundred and forty, the emulation and excitement are of course very great. This trial takes place only once in three years in all the provincial capitals, before a board composed of an imperial chancellor and some of the principal officers of the province. On this occasion, as before, the competitors write their essays in separate cells, which are guarded by soldiers to prevent the possibility of communication with any one outside. They have to pass through three ordeals, with an interval of two days between each. On the first day two or three thousand pieces are, perhaps, sent in for inspection to the judges, who are so strict that if one word of the composition be incorrectly written it is thrown aside, and the mark with which it is signed (for no names appear) is put up at the gate of the hall, which spares all the mortification of a public rejection, as no one knows the signature but the candidate himself, who, on recognizing his own mark, returns quietly home;

Digitized by Google

so that on the second day there are not perhaps one-quarter of the original number, and on the third there are fewer still. At length the names of the successful candidates are declared, on which handbills notifying the same are printed and posted up in all directions; their parents and nearest relatives are sent for to share in the honors that are bestowed on them; they are invited to the houses of the great and overwhelmed with presents and congratulations. Their blue dress is exchanged for a brown gown with a blue border, and their silver badge superseded by a golden or gilt one. The happy scholar is now on the highroad to wealth and fame; he is qualified for any office, and if his conduct and ability are such as to entitle him to advancement, he is expected to rise.

Such are the means by which nobility is acquired in China, and before the reign of Yung-ching they were the only means; but in the reign of that prince and since his time rich merchants and others, who have not gone through the ordeal above described, have been allowed to purchase rank, and have thus obtained office without possessing the necessary qualifications; but this innovation caused much dissatisfaction, and was not carried then to any great extent. There are still two degrees above those already mentioned, to which all who have taken the second degree are privileged to aspire. Once in three years those who are ambitious of rising another step repair to Peking for the examination by the doctors of the Han-lin College, who elect three hundred out of about ten thousand, which is the average number of candidates for the honor of a rank somewhat similar to that which among us is called Doctor of Laws.

Digitized by Google

The three hundred elected to this dignity are again examined in the presence of the emperor, and a few of them chosen to fill up the vacancies that have occurred in the Han-lin College, from which the ministers and other high officers of state are usually appointed. The attainment of this grade is the grand object of every one who enters upon a literary career in China—a grade equally open to all, yet reached only by a few.

When the last election is decided, three of the new members whose names stood highest on the list are paraded round the city for three days with flags flying, drums beating and all the usual pompous appendages of a Chinese procession.

The number of civil officers in China, it is estimated, amounts to about fourteen thousand, all of whom are paid by the government. Every province has its viceroy, every city its governor, every village its prefect, and each of these is assisted by a council of inferior magistrates, and has a number of officers in various departments subordinate to him.

The officers, whatever may be their rank, are only elected for three years, at the expiration of which they are appointed to the government of some other place. It was formerly a custom that when a good magistrate of a village or district had fulfilled his term of office, the people should testify their respect and gratitude by sending a deputation to invest him with a richly-embroidered robe, which was proudly preserved in his family as a memorial of his virtues; and on such an occasion, when the time of his departure had arrived, the villagers would set up lighted sticks of incense for some distance along the road by which he was to pass, and kneel down by

Digitized by Google

the wayside to receive his farewell greeting. We regret to say that this is a picture of past more than of present times. There is much corruption in the government, and multitudes of the people pine for the expulsion of their Tartar rulers. Yet their dynasty as a whole has been exceeded by no other in the intelligence and justice of those who have occupied the throne.

Each governor of a province maintains a court of his own, and whenever he appears abroad he is attended by a numerous retinue bearing the symbols of his high office. He is carried in a gilded chair or sedan, and invariably followed by the public executioners, some carrying chains, others that universal instrument of justice, the bamboo, which is very unceremoniously applied on the spot to any unlucky wight who may chance to be detected in a misdemeanor; consequently, the approach of the high functionary never fails to inspire a degree of awe, which is manifested by the respectful haste with which the people make way for the procession, ranging themselves close to the wall, where they stand perfectly still and motionless till the whole retinue has passed. The governors are entrusted with despotic authority; but they must be careful how they use it, as they are always liable to the visits of the imperial commissioners, who frequently arrive from the capital without giving notice of their approach, for the purpose of seeing whether all is as it should be; and if they find anything wrong it is immediately reported at the court, when the offender is visited with a prompt, and often a severe, punishment. A single word from the emperor is sufficient at any time to deprive the first grandee in the land of his rank, his property, or even his life. The

Digitized by Google

Examination par Plumier.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

governor of a province or city is particularly liable to such a reverse from the nature of the laws, which hold him responsible for many public calamities, which are attributed to accident in other countries, which are supposed to arise from want of vigilance on the part of the chief magistrates, who are required to see that the subordinate officers are attentive to their several duties. Every one holding an official situation is answerable for the conduct of those below him, and if the inferiors are negligent in their respective departments, the superiors are liable to punishment. Thus, if the country is inundated by the sudden rising of a river, the chief magistrate is considered in fault for not having attended diligently to the repairing of the embankments. Should lives or property fall a sacrifice to fire, it is presumed that they might have been saved by more active measures; consequently the magistrates are blamed for not keeping a more efficient police, and the governors are blamed for appointing such careless magistrates. The most usual punishment for maladministration is degradation to a lower rank, according to the nature and magnitude of the offence. If the fault be a very serious one, the offender, if of the highest degree, is perhaps degraded to the lowest; that is, from the first to the ninth class of officers; but if it be only a trivial error, he is lowered one, two or three degrees; and in most cases the punishment is only for a certain time, at the expiration of which he is restored to his rank and office, and resumes his former place in society as though nothing had happened, for a temporary disgrace of that kind leaves no stigma on the character of the individual.

Crimes that are considered in the light of treason are

Digitized by Google

visited with a heavier penalty. Banishment or death is the doom of him who is discovered to have neglected or disobeyed the commands of the emperor; and generally the whole family of the culprit share in some measure his fate, although they may be wholly innocent of any participation in his crime. The enactment of this unjust law was no doubt originally intended to deter people from ill-advising their relatives or encouraging them in any act contrary to the interests of the government, and even to make them watchful and anxious for the good conduct of each other.

The seat of government is at Peking, a name which means the "Northern Capital," where, on the borders of their original territory, the Manchu Tartars have planted their imperial power. The previous native dynasty, the Ming, had its seat at Nanking, the "Southern Capital." Two centuries' enjoyment of dominion and wealth have made Peking one of the most magnificent cities in the empire.

The city is about twenty-five miles in circumference. It is divided into two distinct parts; the northern, or Tartar city, and the southern, or Chinese city. The former, which is inhabited chiefly by Tartars, is surrounded by a wall with nine gates, always guarded by soldiers, and contains the imperial palace, which, with its magnificent gardens, stands in the centre, within a space of about five miles in circumference, enclosed by another wall, and called the Forbidden City, as no one may enter it but privileged persons. The Tartar city contains the residences of all the grandees of the court, the halls of the Six Tribunals, the Han-lin College, several superb temples, a Mohammedan mosque and many

Digitized by Google

other public buildings. The principal streets are very long and wide, and contain numerous shops as well as private houses; but they are not paved, which is a great inconvenience in wet weather; neither are they lighted at night; but as no one is allowed to be abroad after dark unless on some very particular occasion, it is not of much importance that they should be so, particularly as any one who is obliged to go out must carry a lantern with him. Large spaces of ground in this part of Peking are occupied by ornamental gardens belonging to the richer classes, and it is adorned with a fine lake a mile and a half in length and more than a quarter of a mile in breadth, crossed by a bridge of nine arches constructed entirely of white marble. The banks of this lake are bordered with trees, among which the drooping willow bends its graceful branches; and in the midst of this expanse of waters is an islet adorned with a temple and an elegant pagoda, the never-failing ornaments of Chinese scenery. Peking is, therefore, by no means devoid of natural beauties; and even the old, or Chinese town, which is the trading part of the capital, contains large gardens and fields where vegetables are grown for the daily supply of the markets; and also many nursery-grounds, where flowers are cultivated expressly for the adornment of the ladies of Peking, who wear them in their hair. This simple and elegant mode of decorating the hair is generally adopted in all parts of China, and when natural flowers are not to be obtained, artificial ones are substituted; but a female head is seldom seen without the one or the other, which, among the higher classes, are mixed with golden bodkins, jewels and other ornaments.

Digitized by Google

The temples in this part of the capital are very magnificent, especially those dedicated to Heaven and Earth; the former standing in the centre of a spacious enclosure, elevated by three stages, each ascended by a flight of marble steps and surrounded by a handsome balustrade. Within the enclosure is an edifice styled the Palace of Abstinence, to which it is customary for the emperor to retire for three days before the grand ceremony of sacrificing in the temple, which is performed annually at the winter solstice, when the emperor officiates in his character of high-priest; and on this occasion the produce of the field he ploughed in the spring, with the silks cultured and woven within the precincts of the palace, are offered up to the Supreme Ruler of the Universe, under the name of Tien, or Lord of Heaven. The procession to the temple on the day of the sacrifice is very magnificent, as the emperor is accompanied by the whole court, besides a numerous cavalcade of civil and military mandarins, all in full dress. It is remarkable that in a religious procession there should be no priests, nor any symbols of its sacred character; unless we may so consider a vast number of lighted flambeaux and several hundred gorgeous lanterns, which are carried in the train. On the day of this solemnity, as well as that of the ploughing festival, the emperor is visible, but is seldom seen in public at any other time, or passes the boundary wall of his own park, except during the annual hunting expedition or when he removes from one royal residence to another.

The streets of Peking are crowded, noisy and bustling; for there, as in all other great cities of China, it is a common custom for men of the lower orders to work at their

Digitized by Google

Itinerant Barber.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

several trades in the streets, where they sit with their tools around them as if they were in a workshop. Cobblers, tinkers and blacksmiths set up their apparatus wherever they may obtain a job; and medicine-venders, who are generally fortune-tellers also, establish themselves, with their compounds ranged in order before them, in any convenient locality. There are also a great number of peddlers, ballad-singers and mountebanks, who contribute no less to the noise than to the throng. But the most remarkable persons who exercise their calling in the streets are the barbers, who are all licensed, and shave the heads and plait the queues of their customers with the utmost gravity in the open air. All the men of the lower orders, as well as some of a higher class, have this operation performed in the public street. The shops have open fronts, gayly painted, and before the door of each is a wooden pillar, covered with gilt characters describing the nature of the goods sold within; and as these sign-posts are usually decorated with gay streamers floating from the top, they have not been unaptly compared in appearance to a line of ships' masts with colors flying. The windows of all the houses in Peking are made of Corea paper, very frequently of a rose color, and strengthened by a thin framework of bamboo; for there is no glass in the north of China, nor is it yet very common in the south, although more frequently seen now than in the last century. The houses in Peking are seldom more than one story in height, and have flat roofs, which are often covered with flowers and shrubs; for as there are no fireplaces, so there are no chimneys, the rooms being warmed by pans of lighted charcoal, of which fuel great quantities are brought from

Digitized by Google

Tartary on dromedaries, and these animals are constantly seen thus laden in the streets of the city.

The new town was partly built and greatly embellished by the emperor Yung-lo when he removed the court from Nanking to Peking, which was then entirely inhabited by Chinese; but when it was taken by the Manchus, the native people were all driven out of the new town and the houses given to the Tartar conquerors, since which time it has been called the Tartar city. In this part of the city the streets are wide and handsome, but the old town presents the same general features that distinguish all the great cities of China; the most striking of which are the high walls, narrow streets, open-fronted shops, gayly-decorated temples and triumphal arches, with a constant succession of sedans and noisy processions, the bustle being increased by the incessant activity of itinerant artificers and venders of almost every commodity, amongst whom not a few are water-sellers.

The triumphal arches, which are seen in most of the principal streets, are ornamental gateways that have been erected in honor of eminent persons; by which may be understood those who have distinguished themselves by their wisdom and virtues, either in public or private life. The emperor Kang-hi, for instance, ordained that every widow who attained to her hundredth year without forming a second matrimonial engagement should be presented with thirty taels of silver for the erection of a triumphal arch, with an inscription in her praise; for although a woman is allowed to take a second husband if she pleases, and many do so, it is accounted far more honorable to remain faithful to the memory of the first.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER V.

THE PATRIARCHAL AGE IN CHINA.

THE ancient records of China mention nine sovereigns of the first dynasty, founded by Fuhi, whom they suppose to have been gifted with superhuman virtues and knowledge, by which they were enabled to rescue the people from their original barbarism and to instruct them in the arts of civilized life, which were undoubtedly acquired at a very early period and promoted by the rulers of the country.

The earliest and most useful of these arts were husbandry and silk-weaving, both of which must have been taught by necessity as soon as the nation was established, as the people depended for subsistence on the cultivation of the land, and for clothing on the chief natural produce of the country adapted for that purpose, which was found in the vast forests, where silkworms were abundant on many species of the forest trees. The merit of teaching the people to weave silk into garments and dye it of various colors is ascribed to one of the earliest empresses—Si-ling; and that of instructing them in husbandry is given to Shin-nung, which may be translated either "Shin, the husbandman," or "the divine husbandman," the immediate successor of Fuhi, whose name is held in veneration accordingly; and even to this day

Digitized by Google

the Chinese offer up annual sacrifices and hold a festival in honor of the princess who first wove silken garments, and the no less praiseworthy monarch who taught his people to plough the earth.

Agricultural pursuits have always been, and still are, held in the highest estimation by the Chinese, who commence the year with a grand festival in honor of the spring; on which occasion the emperor, in imitation of his ancient predecessor, performs the operations of ploughing and sowing seed in a field set apart for that purpose—a custom which has seldom been neglected by the sovereigns of China, who have thus by their own example stimulated their subjects to the performance of these useful labors and maintained the honorable character of the husbandman, who even now holds a rank in their theory of society next to the literary man, and above that of the soldier or the merchant, however wealthy the latter may be. Among the ancients, particularly the Egyptians, Persians and Greeks, it was a common practice to hold games and festivals, mingled with religious ceremonies, at that season when the earth is ready to receive the seed, thus showing the cheerfulness with which the farmers returned to their rustic toils, and the reliance they placed on a superior Being to reward them with an abundant harvest. The old festival of Plough Monday in England was probably derived from these customs of the ancients, and was formerly celebrated in all the rural districts with great merry-makings on the Monday following Twelfth Day; some of the rites observed being not unlike those among the Chinese; as an instance of which, the plough-light was set up before the image of some patron saint in the vil-

Digitized by Google

lage church—a custom somewhat similar to that observed among the Chinese, who placed lighted candles opposite certain images in their temples. .

To their ancient emperors they impute inventions which must have been made much farther West and previous to their existence.

One is said to have been the inventor of writing, another of musical instruments, a third the discoverer of the art of working in metals, while a fourth has the credit of having taught his subjects to build bridges. Shin-nung was the father of several inventions. His successor, Hwang-ti, divided all the land into groups of nine equal squares, of which the middle one was to be cultivated in common for the benefit of the State. He is said, likewise, to have invented the mode of noting the cycles of sixty years, the foundation of the Chinese system of chronology.[1] Other emperors of this semi-fabulous period are celebrated for their skill in astronomy and chronological computations. But some of these inventions had in truth been brought from the plains of Chaldea. And it is curious to observe the Chinese at one extreme of the habitable world retaining the Babylonish sacred number of sixty for the largest division of time, and ourselves, at the other extreme, applying it to the smallest—the minutes and seconds. They, like us, preserve twelve as a numerical division for hours, though

[1] According to this system, which seems to have been kept up with great care and precision, they are now in the seventy-sixth cycle. The year 1863 completed the seventy-fifth; that is, exactly four thousand five hundred years since the date assumed for a beginning, which would be 2637 B. C. Whatever theory of chronology we adopt, this must carry us back to an early generation after the deluge, or into the life of Noah, of whom, as has been shown, they retain a legendary remembrance.

Digitized by Google

they reckon the hours of light and darkness as but six each.[1]

Among the wonderful inventions which there is every reason to believe originated in China is that of the mariner's compass, which, according to an old tradition, was invented by the same Hwang-ti to guide him through the forests when hunting. This story may be, and most probably is, an utter fiction, but it forms a reasonable ground for supposing that the powers of the magnet were originally discovered by the Chinese ages before the Christian era. It appears, however, from modern research, that although the attractive power of the loadstone has been known to the Chinese from remote antiquity, its property of communicating polarity to iron is for the first time explicitly noticed in a Chinese dictionary which was finished in the first quarter of the second century of the Christian era. The Arabs borrowed the invaluable invention from the Chinese, with whom they then traded, and Europeans borrowed it from the Arabs during the early Crusades; for it is now universally admitted that Gioja of Amalfi, or whoever brought it into notice in the West, was only the introducer, and not the inventor, of the magnetic needle. Gilbert, in his work on the Magnet, asserts directly that Marco Polo brought the knowledge of it to Europe about A. D. 1260. But it was probably used before his time, at least east of the Red Sea; and he does not seem to make mention of it in his own book.

The last two emperors of the line of Fuhi are celebrated, under the names of Yau and Shun, as the wisest

[1] HERODOTUS says (lib. ii., § 109) that the Greeks obtained the division of the day into twelve parts from the Babylonians.

Digitized by Google

and best of princes, and have always been held up as bright examples to all Chinese sovereigns. They are reckoned among the sages of China, and to them are attributed most of the political institutions by which the country is even now governed. About this time it is mentioned that the lands were flooded. It was then that Yau the Great, one of the ministers of Shun, distinguished himself by draining the lands, which by his means were again rendered fit for cultivation; and for this eminent service, added to his wisdom and numerous good qualities, he was appointed by the emperor to succeed him on the throne, according to the laws of China, by which the reigning sovereign chooses his successor. Yau, to promote Shun, set aside his own son. Even at the present day the choice of the emperor regulates the succession to the throne, and it is seldom that the eldest son succeeds in preference to the rest. By this time the empire was extended over all the northern provinces as far as the Yang-tsz-kiang river, not by conquest, but by the establishment of new colonies as the population increased. The monarchs from time to time bestowed the government of these new settlements on their relatives, so that there arose by degrees a number of petty kingdoms, each having its own sovereign, who was dependent on the emperor. Of the southern part of the country very little was then known, but it is supposed it had but few inhabitants, and that these were in a state of barbarism.

As time rolled on the country became more populous and the people more civilized than in earlier days. The emperors, who succeeded each other without interruption, employed sages to record the principal events that occurred during their several reigns; but in these early

Digitized by Google

annals much fable is blended with the truth, just as in the early traditions of the classic nations of Europe; and yet there is much less that is extravagant and much more that is designed to convey sound lessons of morality in those of the Chinese. It is supposed that the earliest *authentic* history relating to the Chinese empire is contained in the compilations of Confucius, who was born in China about five hundred and fifty years before the Christian era, and who was one of the most illustrious characters that ever appeared in that country. He was nearly contemporary with Herodotus, the father of Grecian history, and Pope has given to him a very lofty niche in his Temple of Fame:

> "Superior and alone Confucius stood,
> Who taught that useful science—to be good."

The monarchy had probably then made great progress in civilization. The people lived under a regular form of government, were skilled in agriculture and were acquainted with many useful and elegant arts. The northern part of the country was still divided into the several small principalities which had been granted by the emperors at different times to their sons and brothers, who constituted the only hereditary nobility of the State, and were all tributary to the chief sovereign. Each of these petty states contained a city, where the prince resided, and all around it were numerous villages and detached dwellings inhabited by the peasantry, who held small farms, which they cultivated for their own advantage, growing rice and vegetables in abundance, so that every poor man could support his family by his own industry. They were not held in bondage by the great, like the

Digitized by Google

peasantry of Europe during the feudal ages; and amongst other privileges which they enjoyed were these: a ninth part of the land was in common amongst them for pasturage and farming, and all the poor were at liberty to fish in the ponds and lakes—a right which was denied to the lower orders in feudal countries, where the mass of the people were vassals and slaves. The peasants of China, therefore, appear to have been at that period in a better condition than those of any other part of the world, working for themselves and paying taxes to their respective princes, who by that means raised the tribute which the emperor claimed of them.

At the time of Confucius all taxes and tribute were paid as they are at present, chiefly in kind—usually, as Mencius, who lived in the next generation, says, to the amount of about one-tenth of the produce of the earth. It is, however, supposed there was always some sort of coined money current among the Chinese, and that at a very early period of the monarchy they had coins of gold and silver as well as of lead, iron and copper; but many ages have elapsed since any other than copper money has been in use among them. Silver is also used as a medium of exchange, beaten out into small bars or pieces, and upon these responsible traders generally put their stamp in a small character, so that they become in time particularly ragged and broken. Yet even in these bits adroit rogues make holes which they fill with lead. In buying and selling men scrutinize them carefully and weigh them, being always provided with a small pair of scales for that purpose. They reckon their accounts by means of an instrument called in the Canton dialect, the *sün-pún*, which resembles the Roman *abacus*.

Digitized by Google

It consists of a frame across which are fastened thin rods of bamboo, like the notation tables used in the primary schools of America. But instead of ten balls, as with us, the Chinese use seven. A cross-bar divides the frame, so that the rods have on one side five balls each, on the other side two each. The two balls on each rod count, however, five apiece. This makes the process of counting more rapid and certain. Commencing at any convenient rod or row, it counts as units, the second as tens, the third as hundreds, the fourth as thousands, and so on. To count five, either the five balls on the lower side of the units row are pushed up or to the middle with the finger, or one of the two balls on the other side of it. Ten is made by the two five balls, or by one of them and five of the other balls. And thus we go on in each row successively for tens, hundreds or thousands. For any number between five and ten a five ball is pushed to the middle and the remainder in single balls from the other end of the same row. An expert accountant pushes the balls with his fingers as rapidly in adding or subtracting as a player strikes the keys upon a piano. It is rarely a mistake is made, and when done it is never to the disadvantage of the accountant. The invention of the *süin-pún* is attributed to the emperor Hwang-ti, the same who is said to have found his way through the forests by means of the compass. Their arithmetic, as well as their weights and measures, proceeds universally on the decimal scale; and decimal fractions are their *vulgar* fractions, or those in common use. It is remarkable that the single exception to this consists in their *kin* or marketing pound-weight, which, like ours, is divided into sixteen ounces or parts. This

Digitized by Google

affords another illustration of the common origin of the Chinese and our own arithmetic and weights and measures in Central Asia. The Roman Catholic missionaries relate that when the first of them went to China from Europe they found Persian astronomers at the Chinese court, who yielded the field to their superior scientific knowledge. There are still many things in the Chinese ideas of astronomy which remind us of those of the ancient Chaldeans.

There were public markets in the towns to which the people generally resorted about noon; and there were shops also, where the artisans pursued their various callings, and sold, or exchanged with the farmers the produce of their labors for rice and other commodities of which they stood in need. Beyond the cultivated lands were pastures for sheep; and the rest of the country generally consisted of extensive forests, inhabited by tigers and other beasts of prey, which were so destructive, especially among the flocks, that great hunting-parties were made every spring for the purpose of destroying them; and this dangerous sport seems to have been the favorite amusement of the sovereigns and great men of the land.

For a long series of years, trade, even with foreign nations, appears to have been remarkably free. The markets of China were the resorts of foreign merchants before the Romans invaded Britain, and her ports were annually visited by great squadrons of commercial vessels from the Red sea, the Persian gulf, Ceylon, the Malabar coast and the coast of Coromandel.

The principal weapons used both in war and hunting were bows and arrows, consequently the practice of

Digitized by Google

archery was a constant and favorite sport of the great, and there were particular rules by which it was conducted; as, for example, the imperial target was the skin of a bear, while that of a stag was set up as a mark for a prince to aim at, and that of a tiger for the grandees of the court. Yet the Chinese have not often during their long history attempted to enter the lists of the world as a martial nation, holding literature, as they have done husbandry, in far higher estimation than military achievements; regarding the man who distinguishes himself by his literary attainments beyond him who gained renown by his warlike exploits, and the husbandman who labored in the field as a better member of society than the soldier who fought in it. Yet the petty princes were frequently at war with each other, so that the whole of the empire was seldom quite at peace.

The education of youth was considered of so much importance that every district was obliged by law to maintain a public school, where boys were sent at eight years of age to be instructed in reading, writing, arithmetic, and their several duties to parents, teachers, elders and magistrates, as well as to their equals and inferiors. They were also taught to commit to memory a great number of wise maxims and moral sentences contained in the writings of the ancient sages; and many of their lessons were in verse, that they might be the more readily learned and remembered. A new school was always opened with much ceremony in the presence of the chief magistrate, who delivered a discourse to the boys, exhorting them to be diligent and submissive to the master, and setting forth the advan-

Digitized by Google

An Archer of the Chinese Army.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

tages of learning, which has been, in every age, the only road to wealth and honors in China. At fifteen, those who had most distinguished themselves were sent to higher schools, where public lectures were given by learned professors on the laws and government of the empire, and such subjects as were best calculated to fit them for offices of state, to which those who attended these schools usually aspired, but which were never bestowed on any but such as had studied profoundly and given proofs of their knowledge. Subordination, submission to the laws, to parents and to all superiors, and a peaceful demeanor, were strictly inculcated. This instruction has continued unchanged. "The Chinese," says a modern writer, "teach contempt of the rude, instead of fighting with them; and the man who unreasonably insults another has public opinion against him, whilst he who bears and despises the affront is esteemed. A Chinese would stand and reason with a man, when an Englishman would knock him down, or an Italian stab him. It is needless to say which is the more rational mode of proceeding."

Among the arts that are held in high estimation among the Chinese is that of writing, which was known at so distant a period of their history that it must have been one of their earliest steps in civilization. This art, as practiced in China, is rather difficult of attainment, on account of the number and not very simple formation of the characters; yet it was rare to meet even with a poor peasant who could not read and write, for rich and poor were all educated alike, in the manner just described, which is mentioned as "the ancient system" in books that were written more than two thousand

Digitized by Google

years ago. The autographs of distinguished men are highly prized.

The females of China, from the empress to the wife of the meanest peasant, practiced the spinning and weaving of silk; which material, from the earliest times known, was used for clothing by the poor as well as by the rich, for the same reason that wool was used by the ancient English—because it was the material of which they had the greatest abundance. "When the king of France," says Barrow, "introduced the luxury of silk stockings, the peasantry of the middle provinces of China were clothed in silks from head to foot; and when the nobility of England were sleeping on straw, a peasant of China had his mat and his pillow, and the man in office enjoyed his silken mattress."

The empresses of those days were as zealous in promoting the branches of industry adapted for females by their own example as were the emperors in encouraging agriculture by similar means. A plantation of mulberry trees was formed within the gardens of the palace, and a house built purposely for rearing the worms, which were tended by the ladies of the court and often fed by the fair hands of royalty. Every autumn a festival was held to commemorate the invention of silk-weaving, when the empress, attended by the princesses and ladies of her train, made sacrifices in the temple of the Earth, and then proceeded to her mulberry grove, where she gathered leaves and wound the cocoons of silk, which were afterward spun and woven by her own hands into small webs. These were carefully preserved for the grand spring festival, when they were burned in sacrifice.

Digitized by Google

Great attention was bestowed on the management of silkworms throughout the whole of the empire; and as it had been discovered that those which were fed on mulberry leaves produced a finer kind of silk than the common worms of the forest, a law was made by one of the early emperors that every man possessing an estate of not less than five acres should plant the boundary with mulberry trees.

The difference between the garments of the higher and lower orders consisted in the quality and colors of the silks of which they were composed and the fashion in which they were made. The robes of the grandees were often richly embroidered with gold and silver, and ornamented with various devices, according to their rank and occupation. The dress of a literary man was ornamented with a bird worked on a square of black silk on the breast, or with the figure of a tiger or some other animal or design; and these are among the innumerable customs which have been continued from that time to the present.

The wars among the princes, and the efforts of some of them to render themselves independent of the emperor, led to a vast deal of disorderly conduct in the several states, each petty sovereign being more intent upon his own aggrandizement than on keeping good order among his people; who, finding that the affairs of government were neglected and the laws seldom enforced, paid very little attention to them. Such was the state of the Chinese empire when the celebrated philosopher Confucius was born in the kingdom of Lu, one of the small sovereignties in the north of China. This event occurred when the ancient Greek republics

Digitized by Google

were in all their glory and Rome was just beginning to rise into power and greatness. The Greeks and Romans, however, knew little or nothing of China at that time, nor did the Chinese imagine there was any truly great empire in the world besides their own; an opinion they have maintained even until our own days.

But on the other hand it is manifest from the remains of great, populous and magnificently-built cities which stretch in a chain from the Mediterranean sea to the countries now embraced in the Chinese empire, from the historic legends and philology of the nations existing there, and from hints in the inspired history which the holy men of Palestine have given us, that there was kept up an intercourse by caravans[1] across the continent, and also by sea between the western and eastern sides of the continent. The silk, the cassia, the camphor, the broiddered work, the ivory, the porcelain of China, were known through the ages of the old Jewish dispensation to the people of India, Central Asia and Phœnicia and her neighbors. The vessels of Solomon and Hiram, king of Tyre, sailed two monsoons eastward and two monsoons back—a period of three years—which connected them at the Indian archipelago with the commerce which in like manner from the beginning of history has vibrated with the semi-annual monsoon up and down the China sea. The prophet Isaiah (as has been shown in a previous chapter) looked with glowing hope to the time when China, multitudinous and vast, and potential in Asia, should "come" to the feet of Immanuel as her Prince and Saviour.

[1] The most common route is traced by A. H. HEEREN; *Historical Researches*, vol. i.; Babylonians, chap. ii., vol. ii.; Appendix xiii., etc.

Digitized by Google

We observe, with strengthened confidence in the government of the Great King over all, the historical fact that the philosopher whose life marks the greatest moral era of the Chinese people was raised up just at the period when the Jewish nation was sent into captivity to Babylon, and when thus from that metropolis of Asiatic commerce, science and religious ideas there began to stream forth to the most distant confines of the continent the light of the clearer revelation of God and of the promise of a coming Saviour.

The influence of the dispersion of the Jews upon the literature and religious systems of the remoter East has long been a subject of the deepest interest. We observe the most distinct marks of it in the fragments of the religion of Zoroaster, the great philosopher of Persia; in the traditions of Bokhara, Affghanistan and Northern India; in the apparent hint by Confucius of "a holy One in the West;" in the continual pilgrimages of the Chinese in that direction to inquire for One that was to come; but still more plainly in the discovery in modern times of a colony of Jews upon the Yellow river, in the most populous part of China, whose accounts of themselves prove that they have been there since long before Christ. They were first brought to light by Semedo and Martini, Jesuit priests, in the year 1625. Within the past twenty years they have been visited several times by Protestant missionaries or Chinese members of Protestant churches; and some of them in turn have visited our stations on the coast. Some of their children have been sent to our schools to learn of Him of whom Moses and the prophets bore witness. Of late years they have become very poor, ceased some of

Digitized by Google

their ancient observances, and seem prepared for a change.

It is calculated to fill the soul of the thoughtful student of God's ways among the nations of the earth with awe and reverence to mark, inscribed upon the walls and tablets amidst the ancient temples upon the great river of the north, the grand and solemn declaration:

"HEAR, O ISRAEL! THE LORD OUR GOD IS ONE LORD.

"BLESSED BE THE NAME OF HIS GLORIOUS KINGDOM FOR EVER AND EVER."

Or elsewhere these words:

"UNSEARCHABLE IS HIS NAME; FOR JEHOVAH IS THE GOD OF GODS."

What a verse is the following in the Chinese, to meet the eyes of the worshipers of idols!—

"Raise thine eyes to Heaven, the source of creation;
Canst thou refuse to render solemn praise?
Or, bowing before the Lord of eternal life,
Should'st thou not come with clean body and a pure heart?"

At what time this Jewish colony reached the city of Kai-fung, where now they reside, their traditions do not mention. No doubt they were one of many that were either pushed forth by the oppressions of the Persians or attracted by the fame of the wealth and grandeur of China, and were distributed at various times into different portions of what are now the territories or provinces of the Chinese empire. This colony seems to have known nothing of the fact of the advent and atonement of Christ or of the destruction of Jerusalem. They "ate not of the sinew which shrank, which is upon the hollow of the thigh, unto this day; because God touched

Digitized by Google

the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew that shrank."[1] They have always kept the passover; and it is only within two centuries past that they have neglected to circumcise their children. Large portions of the Old Testament in Hebrew, written with the Masoretic points, have been obtained from their rabbis.

It seems to have been a part of the purpose of the great Governor of nations in the "captivity in Babylon" that the Jews should be dispersed over the East as witnesses of the approaching kingdom of his Son. In all the "hundred and twenty and seven provinces" of the empire, "from India even unto Ethiopia," "to the rulers of every people of every province, according to the writing thereof, and to every people after their language, in the name of King Ahasuerus," were written the wonderful works of the Almighty. And before any distinct colonies of the Jews could have made their homes in China some knowledge of them must have been carried thither. A remarkable evidence of the expectations of the Jews of Palestine and Egypt in regard to the return of their brethren then in China, and of the conversion of that nation to the Messiah, it is probable may be seen in the Septuagint translation of the Scriptures. In that version, made in Egypt at the desire of King Ptolemy Philadelphus, nearly three centuries before Christ, by seventy of the most learned Jews, the words, "These shall come from the land of Sinim," which modern enlightened criticism supposes means China, and which they knew most probably did so mean, they chose to render into the Greek by the substitute, "These shall come from the land of the Persians." Their purpose seems to have

[1] Gen. xxxii. 32.

Digitized by Google

been to include the remotest East, all of which the Persians claimed as their possessions, and to signify that, as some of their brethren were known to have been driven to that distant empire by the God of all the earth, so thence also would He, according to his promise, bring them finally back again.

The age of Confucius was the great turning-point in Chinese history. He was to Eastern Asia what Luther was to Western Europe—the great harbinger of the departure of an old, corrupt and iron age, and of the advent of a new, thinking, progressive, silver age. Or we might compare the new era of Chinese history from the beginning of the Han dynasty (249 B. C.) to that of the Roman empire in the Augustan age.

These statements seem necessary as preliminary to some account of Confucius himself.

The proper name of this greatest philosopher of the Oriental world was Kung Chung-ni, the first, according to the Chinese order, being the family name. He is popularly styled Kung Fu-tsz; the last word is a title which we may translate "doctor," or "professor." The French missionaries have given us the Latin form of this title, Confucius. He was born about 550 B. C., and was nearly contemporaneous with the Jewish prophet Daniel. He was the only son of a lady of illustrious family, if not of royal rank. His father, who had several other sons by another wife, held a high government employment, but dying some three years after his birth, seems to have left the future philosopher very indifferently provided for. He was a native of what is now Shantung, in the north-east corner of the empire, the province where he grew up. In his nineteenth year he married,

Digitized by Google

but divorced his wife after she had borne him a son. The Chinese tell marvelous stories of his love of study when a child and of his early proficiency. They also record a little fact which may interest phrenologists—namely, that Confucius' head was remarkable for the elevation of its crown.

His object in acquiring knowledge was to turn it to the purposes of moral reform and good government. When he thought himself sufficiently qualified to instruct the age in which he lived, he quitted his solitude for populous cities and the courts of princes and rulers. China was not then united and governed by one emperor as now. When Confucius began his mission there were many independent kings. The Chinese were not then more pacific than the rest of mankind. King warred against king, and every part of the Celestial Empire was in its turn deluged with blood. Not long before the birth of the philosophical reformer the horrors of internal war had been increased by some of the belligerents calling in the foreign aid of the Tartars, but at the period when he commenced his travels a powerful international confederacy had been formed, and China was comparatively tranquil.

He made a progress through the different states, giving public lectures on the benefit of virtue and social order, which produced such good effects that in a short time he was at the head of about three thousand disciples, who were converts to his doctrines and practiced the rules he laid down for their conduct. His fame increased with his years. He now visited the different princes, and endeavored to prevail upon them to establish a wise and peaceful administration in their respect-

Digitized by Google

ive territories. His wisdom and birth recommended him to the patronage of the kings; he was anxious to apply his theory to practical government, but he had to learn by sad experience that his designs must frequently be thwarted. After many changes and disappointments, he became prime minister in his native country, Lu, when fifty-five years of age. By his influence and his prudent measures the state of the kingdom underwent a thorough change within the space of three years. It is said that while he continued in power justice was so well administered that if gold or jewels were dropped on the highway they would remain untouched until the rightful owner appeared to claim them. But the corrupt influences communicated from the neighboring kingdom of Tsi were the means of staying the progress of reformation, and at length of compelling the departure of Confucius.

He was repulsed at three different courts to which he applied for office in order that he might improve the morals of the people; and after many other wanderings and disappointments he went into the kingdom of Chin, where he spent some time in grief. From Chin he went again to Lu, and vainly solicited to be re-employed in the government of that state. Meanwhile, war had again broken out among the rival kingdoms. Not being able to rule, or to make people virtuous, peaceful and happy, Confucius devoted himself entirely to philosophy, and the composition of those works which have rendered his name immortal, and the precepts of which, even to this day, regulate both the government and the religion of the state. His system perhaps may be more properly termed one of morality than of religion, as it is intended to

Digitized by Google

inculcate the duties of men toward each other, rather than those which they owe to a superior being. The Confucians speak of Heaven as supreme, which, if it mean the great Creator, does so only in a vague and impersonal sense, and they adore the earth as the mother of all things; but they have no regular priesthood, their religious rites consisting solely of sacrifices made in the temples on stated occasions, when the emperor officiates as high priest and the chief officials of the court as his subordinates. The reformation in which Confucius was the prime mover consisted mainly in the new force given to the idea of the parental relation, in founding firmly upon this theory the whole structure of the government, and in the higher and purer motives infused into the mutual obligations of society and into the acts of religion. The books of Confucius, which are universally studied by the Chinese as sacred volumes, teach them that the true principles of virtue and social order are, obedience to parents, and so representatively to elders and rulers; and the not acting toward others as they would wish that others should not act toward them. In the works of this great moralist the duties of the sovereign are as strictly laid down as those of his subjects; and while they are enjoined to obey him as a father, he is exhorted to take care of them as though they were his children. There was nothing absolutely new in this patriarchal system of government, which had existed from the very beginning of the monarchy; but it was brought into a more perfect form, and the mutual obligations of princes and people were more clearly defined than they had ever been before. But it was not only on the government of the empire collectively that

Digitized by Google

this celebrated teacher bestowed his attention; he also stated laws for private families, founded on the same principle of obedience from the younger to the elder and submission from the inferior to the superior. Indeed, all classes of persons, including even young children, were instructed in the duties of their several stations. Through his rigid principles, and firm, uncompromising practice of them, the philosopher gained many enemies. His life was more than once in danger, but he looked at death with a calm, philosophic eye. Mr. Gutzlaff has thus described the last scene of his life: "When he was sick he did not wish that any should pray for him, because he had himself prayed. Whilst approaching his end he deeply deplored the wretched state of his country. His great regret was that his maxims were rejected. He exclaimed, 'I am no longer useful on earth; it is necessary that I should leave it.' Having said this, he died, in his seventy-third year. His sepulchre was erected on the banks of the Su river, where some of his disciples, repairing to the spot, deplored the loss of their master."

The envy and hatred of his contemporaries soon passed away, and his disciples succeeded in erecting Confucius and his philosophy as the great objects of national veneration. When the empire was amalgamated and peace restored, his works, which had largely contributed to that happy issue, were looked upon as of paramount authority, and to mutilate or in any way to alter their sense was held a crime deserving of condign punishment. Unfortunately, however, the brevity and obscurity of the language rendered alterations and mistakes of the sense numerous and inevitable. Though

Digitized by Google

he had been left to conclude his life in poverty and neglect, the greatest honors and privileges were heaped upon his descendants, who still exist, and may be called the only hereditary nobility of China. In all the revolutions that have happened their privileges have been respected; every male of them holds by birth an honorary rank, and they are all exempted from the payment of taxes.

The writings of Confucius are chiefly on the subject of moral philosophy; but there are among them two books which may be considered historical—the one relating to his own, and the other to more ancient times. From the former—the Chun-tsiu, literally "Spring and Autumn," or "Annals"—is gathered all that is known of the state of the country at that period. The latter is regarded more as traditionary than as historical, for it is supposed to be merely a collection and arrangement of the records kept at the courts of the early monarchs by their historians; this is the Shu-king, or "Book of History." The Shi-king, or "Book of Odes," contains ancient poems and songs, which used to be sung or recited before the emperors, the compositions of patriotic bards who celebrated in verse the great and good actions of the heroes and sages. These traditional poems were collected and revised by Confucius, who formed them into a volume, which is still one of the standard works of the Chinese, and must be studied by all who aspire to preferment, as it forms the subject of a part of their examination ere they can be admitted as candidates for any high office. The same great man formed into a ritual all the ancient observances, both in public and private life, being of opinion that the preservation of order in a

Digitized by Google

state depended much upon the outward forms of society in general. This "Book of Rites" regulates the ceremonial observances of the whole community, from the emperor to the most obscure of his subjects, and it has maintained its influence from that time to the present in forming the manners of the people. The study of this book constitutes an important branch of the education of every Chinese. Confucius spent the whole of his long life in the practice and teaching of virtue. Two thousand four hundred years have elapsed since his death, and yet his name continues to be held in as much veneration as ever throughout the Chinese empire; and although he did not pretend to divine inspiration like Mohammed, or profess to be endowed with more than human attributes, he is worshiped as a superior being, and many temples are dedicated to him in all the provinces of China. The learned and refined are, however, careful to distinguish the worship which they render to Confucius from that offered by the common people to the Buddhist and other idols. They never employ in it an image or picture of the philosopher, but write his name, with some eulogistic titles, as the "most holy" or "wise," on a tablet of wood several inches in length and a third as wide, and before that present their oblations and bow themselves to the earth. The Jesuits in China maintained long and bitter discussions with the Dominicans and some other missionaries in behalf of the permission of the worship to Confucius among their converts. They were willing to sanction it because it procured them the favor of the learned and powerful class of the empire, and also the worship of ancestors, which was most deeply rooted in the hearts of the whole people.

Digitized by Google

The Tibetan, the Buddhist and other idolatries have divided influence with the system of Confucius, but have never overthrown its empire. All classes, from the emperor on the throne to the poor mariner on board the junk, burn gilt paper and offer sacrifices to wooden idols, practice incantations and offer up prayers to countless false gods, but at the same time they revere the name of Confucius, and the more enlightened of the nation pretend to be chiefly guided by his merely philosophical dictates. The mass of his laws and instructions is still followed to the letter by Chinese, Japanese, Coreans, Cochin-Chinese and other people, who, taken collectively, will probably exceed five hundred millions of souls.

If Christianity had nothing else in its favor than the elevation of the female condition and character, it ought to be revered as the purest and best of faiths. Confucius, like other Eastern lawgivers that preceded or followed him, has said little that is designed to elevate woman, or to inspire in man proper sentiments with regard to her position and influence in society. The worthy Protestant missionary, Gutzlaff, remarks, "We regret to say that he treats women and the duties of husbands toward their wives very slightly. By not giving a proper rank in society to females—by denying to them the privileges which are their due as sisters, mothers, wives and daughters, the more sensitive and devoted part of our kind—he has marred the harmony of social life and put a barrier against the improvement of society."

There was something in the system of Confucius calculated to carry the Chinese to a pitch of learning and

Digitized by Google

civilization beyond the other nations of Eastern Asia. After the fall of the Roman empire, and when all Europe was involved in the darkness of the Middle Ages, China might be considered as the greatest and most civilized kingdom upon earth. But, one by one, all the countries in the West awoke to a second dawn, and they have generally continued to improve ever since, while China has remained comparatively stationary. The peculiarity and difficulty of the language of the Chinese; the geographical situation of their country; the fact that for many centuries their neighbors and the only people they had frequent intercourse with were rude barbarians, that could suggest no improvement and no comparison, except such as was most flattering to themselves, have further tended to make them remain perfectly satisfied with the state of excellence in civil polity, arts and literature at which they had arrived, and to produce their past inflexible and self-complacent attachment to the ideas of ancient times. But a change is coming over the empire since it has been humbled by the late foreign wars, and since the light of Western religion and science has begun to penetrate it, which it will be our place to exhibit in another portion of the present volume.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VI.

THE AUGUSTAN AGE IN CHINA.

THE Augustan age of Rome was the period of her greatest power and renown. It was the boast of her people then that her armies had conquered the world. The Christian Church is accustomed to regard the extension of the dominion of Rome over the nations as one principal preparation for the coming of the Messiah and the universal preaching of the gospel. This is no doubt true. But it is a remarkable evidence of man's limited knowledge of the providence of the Most High that there was at the same period an empire equally extended and powerful upon the opposite side of the globe. The simultaneous existence of these empires, each so little acquainted with the other, is like that wonder of the heavens created by the moon's revolving round the earth in exactly the same time in which it revolves upon its own axis, so presenting to the gaze of the human race from age to age precisely the same surface. The opposite side of our satellite is as well lighted by the sun, and no doubt corresponds with that which we look upon in its physical character. But if it be peopled by any intelligent beings, they have never yet seen, from any of those opposite lands, the great world around which

Digitized by Google

they unconsciously revolve. Nor, on the other hand, has any inhabitant of our earth ever beheld that mysterious hemisphere of theirs which is turned so constantly away from us.

And so it seems to have been with much of the history of our world, which has moved on from age to age, the one and the other of its two great sides each knowing so little of that which was opposite. The side which we see is what lies westward of the region where man was created, where revelation was bestowed and where Jesus Christ died. Westward the course of empire has moved for us. But there is another side of the globe whither at least equal colonies of mankind at first advanced; where God's providence has been full as beneficent; where some of his moral precepts have been on the whole better kept; where he as mightily prepared the way for the manifestation of the knowledge of his Son; where it is not improbable the preaching of the apostles was originally as successful; and where, though, as in many portions of Europe and America, the truth has been forgotten, yet there is reason to believe the triumphs of the kingdom of the Messiah will be as glorious as we anticipate they will be amidst the nations of the West.

We read of the preparation of the world for the advent of the Saviour by the extension of the Greek and Roman empires, and their influence upon the civilization of the West; but it is not observed by historians that the preparation of the East for the same event was as distinct and complete. It is not within the scope of the present volume to trace this parallel at length. But we are at a point where it may be mentioned, and where

Digitized by Google

a few of the more remarkable particulars may be grouped together.

As the Greeks spread over the West a "wisdom" which prepared it for the "power" of the Romans, so the philosophy of Confucius, who wonderfully resembled Socrates in many respects, prepared China for the conquests of the Han dynasty. The Punic wars and the downfall of Carthage in the third century before Christ were an advance toward the consolidation of society and the formation of the imperial power; and at the same period we see the states of China first united in one great empire. Civil wars had prevailed in each of these two portions of the world. Peace reigned, it is commonly said, just at the birth of Christ, so that, as a sign of it, at Rome the temple of Janus was shut. In China it is remarkable that the name of the monarch who sat upon the throne was Ping-ti, which means the *emperor*, or *prince, of peace.* In the West, the magi of Persia, moved by the universal expectation, went westward to seek the new-born King. In China, within the same century, a royal commission was sent toward the same quarter to inquire for "a holy One" that was to arise; and this was the sad occasion of the introduction of Buddhism, whose priests imposed upon the members of it the statement that the religious founder of the sect—a Hindù prince—was the one whose doctrines would satisfy their spiritual longings.

The founder of the first general dynasty, which dates from the year 249 B.C., was Chi Hwang-ti. He had been a prince or king of the Tsin, a powerful state in the north-west. He conquered the neighboring states in succession, and at length established his dominion over

Digitized by Google

the most of the territory now embraced in the empire proper. The name Tsin was given to the very brief but memorable dynasty which he established.

When Chi Hwang-ti had subdued all the petty princes, he turned his arms against the Tartars, who had become very troublesome neighbors, making frequent hostile incursions into the Chinese territories. They were portions of the same general people who in European history are called Huns and Turks. They consisted of numerous tribes, who wandered about the barren plains of Central Asia, living partly by hunting and partly by plunder; and as they were a much more warlike people than the Chinese, they were enemies very greatly to be dreaded. The emperor therefore devised a plan to keep off their invasions by erecting a wall along the whole extent of the northern frontier, of such a height, thickness and solidity as to be proof against any attempts which might be made either to scale or to effect a breach in it.

In order to obtain a sufficient number of workmen for so vast an undertaking as the building of the Great Wall, the emperor ordered that every third laboring man throughout the empire should be compelled to enter his service, and they were forced to labor like slaves, without receiving any compensation beyond a bare supply of food. The wall extended fifteen hundred miles, from the gulf of Liau-tung, an arm of the Yellow sea, to the most western province of Kansuh. It was carried over the highest mountains, through the deepest valleys, and, by means of arches, across the rivers. Its breadth was sufficient to allow of six horsemen riding abreast on its summit, and it was fortified by strong towers, built at

Digitized by Google

short distances apart, in which guards were stationed. The exterior was formed of stone and brickwork of the most solid construction, which was filled in with earth, so as to render it impenetrable; and the whole was finished in the short space of five years.

Such is the account generally given of the Great Wall of China, which has now stood for two thousand years, and has been regarded as one of the wonders of the world. Dr. Johnson was accustomed to say of it that it would be an honor to any man to be able to say that his grandfather had seen the Great Wall of China. Lord Macartney exclaimed on seeing it that it was certainly the most stupendous work of human hands, and he rationally concluded that at the remote period of its building, China must have been a very powerful and civilized empire. Mr. Barrow, who saw it with Lord Macartney, went into some amusing calculations as to the quantity of materials it contains. According to his account, all the materials of all the dwelling-houses of England and Scotland, supposing them at that period (the end of the last century) to amount to 1,800,000, and to average 2000 cubic feet of brickwork or masonry, would be barely equivalent to the bulk of the wall, without taking in its fortresses and towers, which he calculated contained as much masonry and brickwork as all London did at that time. The eastern termination of the wall has been often visited by foreign vessels since the treaty of Tien-tsin and the opening of the port of Niu-chwang, to the north of it, to trade with us. The descriptions of it corroborate the accounts of it by previous travelers. Stupendous as was the work, we shall presently see that it failed in its object.

Digitized by Google

Chi Hwang-ti, a title which literally signifies the "first emperor," seems to have been extremely ambitious of fame; for although he had rendered his name immortal by the work just described, he aspired to still higher renown, and even entertained the vain-glorious desire that his name should be handed down to posterity as the founder of the Chinese monarchy. But there was a great obstacle to the attainment of this end which none but the veriest tyrant would have thought of removing; and that was the existence of a vast number of books wherein might be read the histories of those who had reigned before him. The emperor, however, was one of those who would sacrifice everything which stands between them and the object on which they have set their hearts; therefore he issued a peremptory order that all books and writings of every description should be collected and burned by the magistrates of each district throughout the whole empire; and the decree was so strictly enforced that many literary men were put to death for being detected in attempts to save valuable records.

But the tyrant whose mischievous ambition had tempted him to commit such an act of madness missed the end he had in view; for, in spite of all his precautions, several copies of the works of Confucius and some other eminent authors were hidden behind the walls and under the floors of different houses, where they remained until the death of the emperor rendered it safe to bring them again to light.

It is somewhere related of this same prince that when dying he commanded that his favorite wife and a number of slaves should be buried with him. This dreadful

Digitized by Google

custom had existed in the barbarous ages, and was common among the Tartars and Hindùs, not only at the death of princes, but also at those of all classes of the people, from a superstitious belief that the wives and domestics thus interred would pass with the deceased into the next world and be ready to attend upon him there. With the same idea the Chinese used in latter times to bury clothes, furniture, and even food, for the use of the departed, with a number of effigies in the likeness of slaves; and this custom has been continued down to the present time—with this difference, that most of the articles now sacrificed are made of paper; millions of bundles being consumed annually in these superstitious rites. The revolting practice of immolating human beings had, however, been so long out of date that it is mentioned in reference to this period as a relic of the barbarism of distant ages.

Chi Hwang-ti appointed his eldest son to succeed him; a case of rare occurrence. The custom of bestowing territories on the princes of the royal family was abolished by Chi Hwang-ti, who saw that these petty sovereignties were sure to occasion civil warfare. He therefore provided for his family by giving to each of his immediate male relatives a palace in one of the great cities, with a suitable maintenance, and the privilege of wearing yellow, which was then, as it is now, the imperial color, and, as a distinctive mark of rank, is highly valued. A yellow girdle has a greater degree of importance in China than a blue ribbon in Europe. It is always a sign that the wearer is nearly related to the emperor. The prince chosen by Chi Hwang-ti as his successor happening to be absent at the time of his father's death, a younger

Digitized by Google

son took advantage of the circumstance to seize on the sovereignty, and contrived to have his brother secretly strangled. But the usurper did not long enjoy the fruits of his crime, for he made himself so unpopular by neglecting the affairs of the state and attending to nothing but his own pleasures, that a formidable insurrection broke out in the country, headed by the chief of a band of freebooters, named Liu-pang, a man distinguished by many noble qualities, although he was no better than a robber. It is related of this adventurer that just after the breaking out of the rebellion he happened to meet a fortune-teller on the road, who, falling at his feet, said he offered him this mark of homage because he saw by the lines in his face that he was destined shortly to become emperor. In making this prediction the soothsayer no doubt foresaw the probability of its accomplishment, for it was not an unlikely termination of the rebellion that the leader, if successful, should be placed on the throne; with this belief, therefore, the stranger followed up his prophecy by offering his only daughter in marriage to the chief. Liu-pang accepted the proposal and married the lady, who was thus, by her father's artifice, raised to the dignity of empress; for, after many scenes of violence and bloodshed, in which the lawful emperor lost his life, the insurgents were victorious and their leader was raised to the imperial throne.

The new sovereign was a native of the kingdom of Han, one of those small states into which the empire had formerly been divided; therefore he is called the founder of the Han dynasty. The princes of his race occupied the throne for more than four centuries. The

Digitized by Google

first of the race obtained the sovereignty two hundred and two years before the Christian era, and commenced one of the most celebrated periods of Chinese history. In spite of the Great Wall, the Tartars continued their predatory warfare, and sorely disquieted the more polished and peaceful Chinese, who vainly attempted to propitiate them with alliances and tribute. The first emperors of this race endeavored to make friends of the great Tartar chiefs by giving them their daughters in marriage. A native historian of the period exclaims: "Our disgrace could not be exceeded: from this time China lost her honor!" In the reign of Yuen-ti, the ninth emperor, the Tartars having been provoked by the punishment inflicted by the Chinese on two of their chiefs, who had transgressed the boundaries of the Great Wall while engaged in hunting, the empire was again invaded by the "erratic nations," and a princess was demanded and yielded in marriage. These incidents form the subject of one of the hundred plays of Yuen, an English version of which was printed in London under the name of the "Sorrows of Han." The impolitic system of buying off the barbarians, which commenced thus early, led many centuries afterward to the total overthrow of the empire by the Tartars.

During this period, however, the Chinese made very important advances in civilization. The arts and sciences were improved, literature was encouraged, agriculture was in a progressive state, and several useful inventions date their origin from the same era. Among the latter, one of the most important is the manufacture of paper, which is supposed to have been commenced toward the end of the first century. The Egyptians had long pos-

Digitized by Google

sessed the art of making paper from the rush called papyrus, which was also used at Rome for the same purpose in the first century; but that the Chinese obtained their knowledge from either Rome or Egypt may well be doubted. Before they were acquainted with this useful art they were accustomed to write on thin slips of bamboo, not with ink, but with pointed tools, similar to those used by engravers, with which they cut or engraved the characters. Books were formed of bamboo by taking off the outside bark, and cutting it into thin sheets, all of the same shape and size; which, after the writing was finished, were strung together in such a manner as to form a compact, though rather clumsy, volume. At length, about the year of our era 95, it was ascertained, by what means does not appear, that bamboo might be made into a better material for writing upon than it furnished in its natural state, by pounding it in a mortar with water until it became a thin paste, which, being spread out on a flat surface, was dried into what we call paper. The earliest specimens of this new art in China were probably of a very rough description, but the manufacture was gradually improved by the mixture of silk and other materials, until the Chinese were able to produce a paper of the most beautiful texture, adapted for printing, which we now call India paper, and another kind for painting, known by the name of rice paper.

The history of paper, as we now possess it in Europe and America, is curious. The Tartars borrowed the art from their neighbors, substituting *cotton*, which abounded in their country, for the bamboo. At the commencement of the eighth century, when the conquests of the Arabs carried them to Samarkand, in the heart of the

Digitized by Google

Scythian wilds, they found the manufacture of cotton paper established there. The Arabs learned the art from the Tartars, as the Tartars had learned it from the Chinese, and in their turn substituted *linen* for cotton. To the Arabs, therefore, we are indebted for the inestimable article or paper made from linen; but whether the art of making it was introduced by the Italians of Venice, Gaeta and Amalfi, who, during the eighth, ninth and tenth centuries kept up a constant commercial intercourse with Syria and Egypt, or whether the Saracens (Arabs under another name), who conquered Spain in the early part of the eighth century, made known the manufacture in that country, has not, as yet, been clearly ascertained. Mr. Mills reasonably supposes that the flourishing linen manufactories at Valencia suggested the idea of the substitution of linen for cotton in that part of Europe, as the cotton manufactories at Samarkand induced the Tartars to employ cotton instead of bamboo.

The invention of paper naturally leads to that of ink, which in China is always made in those cakes which are imported by the merchants of Western countries under the name of Indian ink; it is used with the camel's-hair pencils for writing by the Chinese, who do not require such pens as ours in the formation of their hieroglyphical characters.

Most of the princes of the Han dynasty were munificent patrons of learning; they bestowed the highest dignities on men of literary fame, and thus learning, as in earlier times, continued to be the only sure road to wealth and honors. Nobility was not hereditary except in the imperial family, but depended entirely on personal merit;

Digitized by Google

and as it was always bestowed by the emperor, so it could be taken away at his pleasure. Thus the nobles, or highest class of mandarins in China, are not necessarily persons of high birth, but are men of learning, who must have passed a public examination with credit before they can aspire to rank and office in the state. This peculiar constitution of the government of China has continued down to the present time.

Under the Han dynasty lands were, for the first time, frequently bestowed on men of rank, with people to cultivate them, who were bound to the soil and were to a certain extent slaves: but it is not very clear how far the authority of their masters extended, how large a portion of the peasantry was thus held in vassalage, or how long the system continued. There are a few slaves in China at the present time. They are not, however, people of other races or countries. It is a mild servitude, like that among the Hebrews, which is sometimes entered into voluntarily by debtors or persons in distress through famine or other calamities. Poor parents often sell their children. The absurd stories that rich capitalists bring slaves to the mines in California are without foundation; they arise from the custom of forming "companies" or associations for their mutual benefit.

Reference has already been made to the extraordinary commission[1] of the emperor Ming-ti in the year 65 A.D., while several of the apostles were yet living and preaching in various parts of the continent of Asia, in search of further light as to some new religion, of which he

[1] It is said to have consisted of eighteen officers of state, with a prince of Chu, the brother of the emperor, as the head.

Digitized by Google

had heard, and which it is far from impossible was Christianity. Eusebius, the historian of the early Church, says that to Thomas was allotted Parthia, and to Andrew, Scythia. These names were each commonly applied to Northern and Eastern Asia. And traces of their primitive labors yet remain in some parts of the East. The counsels of Heaven alone can solve the reason why China was allowed to remain in the darkness of heathenism, while the gospel preached in the West was efficacious in converting multitudes and became the religion of its nations.

Some account of Buddhism will here be interesting. One of its leading doctrines was, and is, that of metempsychosis or transmigration of souls; according to which the Buddhists believe that the soul quits one corporeal frame to animate another, not necessarily of the human species; for that reason a Buddhist is forbidden by the laws of his creed to destroy animal life in any shape. When Buddha died, his followers believed that he was transformed into the god Fuh, by which name he is also worshiped; and is said to have passed through one great incarnation, is now in another, and another will take place in the future. These they usually represent in their temples by three great gilded idols, which they term the three precious Buddhas.

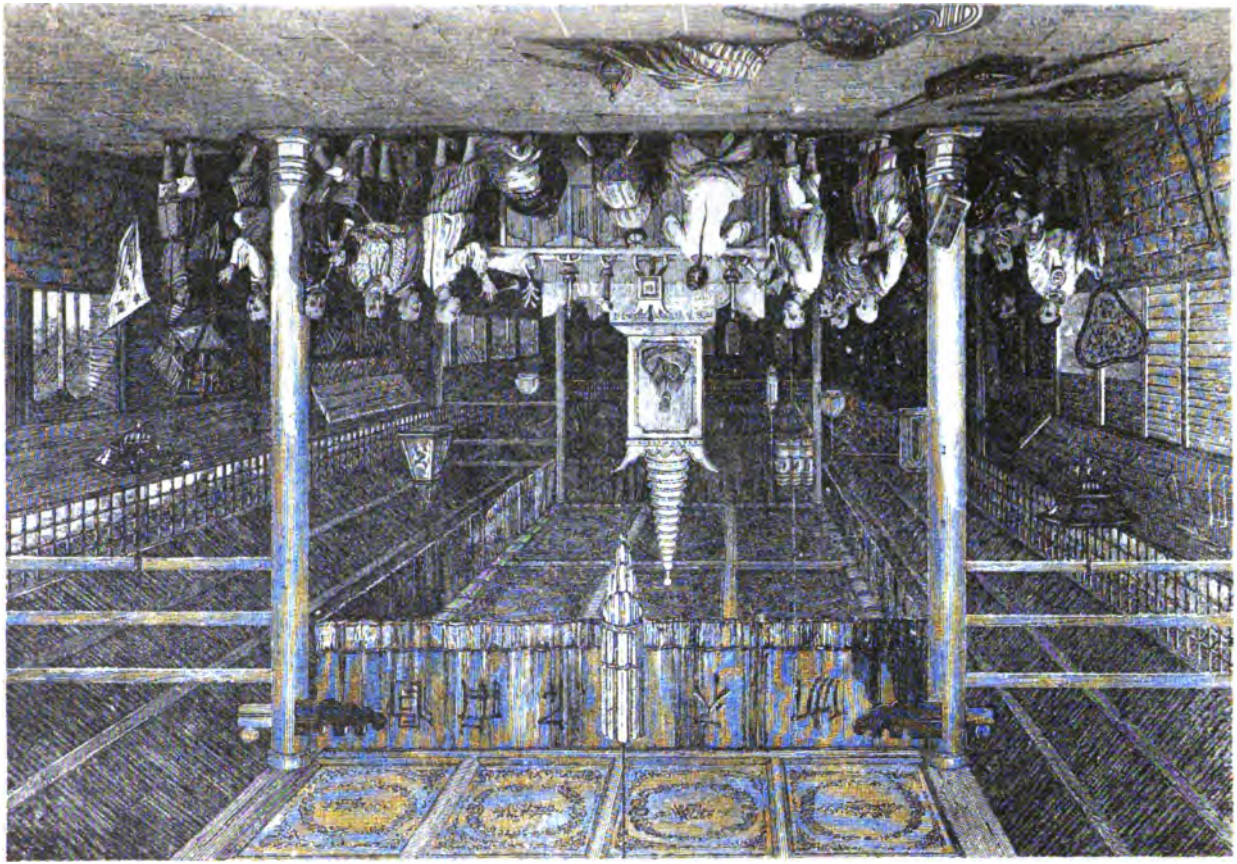
The Buddhist priesthood dwell together in communities in the manner of monks, subsisting chiefly upon alms, like those of the Roman and other churches. The head of this religion in Tibet, who holds the same rank among the votaries of Buddhism there, at least, as the Pope does among those of the Roman Church, is called the Grand Lama. He resides with much state in

Digitized by Google

Tibet, and is supposed to be immortal; for when he dies, it is given out that his soul has passed into the body of some infant, whom the priests pretend to identify by certain signs, and who is brought up in the belief that the same spirit which animated the form of his predecessor exists within himself. Thus the office of Grand Lama always commences with infancy and lasts till the close of life. There are a great many female devotees belonging to this faith, who live like nuns secluded from the world, and never marry; but they are not so numerous in China as in Tibet, Japan and Tartary. The Buddhists have five prohibitory commandments, which they strictly observe. These are—"Not to destroy animal life; not to steal; not to speak falsely; not to drink wine; and that the priests or bonzes shall not marry." Their belief as to their final state is, that after having passed through a certain term of probation upon this earth under various forms, they shall at length be received into the paradise of Buddha and partake of his divine nature.

Some of the Chinese sovereigns adopted this faith, while others encouraged the sect of Tau, "Reason," a native system, the founder of which was Lau-tsz, a contemporary of Confucius. The Tauists might be called magicians rather than a sect of philosophy or religion. Among those who favored them was Wu-ti, one of the early emperors of the Han dynasty, a prince who was famed for many virtues, but was strongly addicted to the belief in magic, and maintained a number of the Tauist priests at his court, who were constantly engaged in studies which he was credulous enough to believe would lead at last to the discovery of the elixir of life, a

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

draught of which he was extremely anxious to taste. In this hope he was continually supplying the sages with large sums of money to enable them to procure the rare ingredients for making the wonderful liquid, some of which they pretended were hidden in remote corners of the earth, and only to be obtained with great difficulty and by the aid of magic.

In vain did the ministers remonstrate with him on the folly of squandering the public money in such idle pursuits. He turned a deaf ear to their exhortations, and gave his whole attention to the Tauists and their experiments. At length it was announced that the coveted draught was really prepared, and the chief priest was deputed to convey it in a golden cup to his royal patron; when, in crossing the great hall of the palace, one of the ministers, feigning a desire to look closely at so miraculous a compound, suddenly snatched the cup from the hands of the astonished priest and drank off its contents. The enraged and disappointed emperor ordered that the offender should instantly lose his head; a consequence that had been foreseen by the daring courtier, who had provided himself with a very clever defence. "O most mighty prince!" said he, "how is it possible for thy commands to deprive me of life, if the potion I have just swallowed has really the power ascribed to it? Then make the trial; I willingly submit to the test; but remember, that if I die, thy system must be a false one, and in that case my poor life will have been well bestowed in convincing my prince of his error." The monarch pondered on these words for a few moments, and then pardoned the offender; not so much, perhaps, from motives of clemency as from reluctance to be un-

Digitized by Google

deceived, or to let the world into the secret of his credulity; so that it is evident he began to waver in the faith he had professed. The Tauists were engaged in other researches no less chimerical than that of finding means of prolonging human life beyond its natural time, and many of them spent the greater part of their lives in the search after the philosopher's stone. Yet we need not wonder at the folly and credulity of the Chinese princes in bestowing attention on such fruitless speculations so early as the first century, when we find the most profound scholars of Europe thirteen hundred years later engaged in the same visionary pursuits; and may read of one of the German emperors at the beginning of the seventeenth century neglecting the affairs of the state to shut himself up with the alchemists whom he maintained at his court, assisting them in their experiments, and expecting that they would at length discover the two great secrets which would bestow on him the gifts of endless life and inexhaustible riches.

The reign of Hwan-ti is memorable on account of a Roman embassy which reached China, according to the histories of that period, in the year 166 A.D. The fact of this intercourse makes more probable the brief assertions of the preaching of Christianity in those distant regions. The Romans are said to have come part of the way by sea, part by land, through Cochin-China. They are spoken of by the Chinese as remarkable for their wealth and for their integrity and honesty. It is interesting to remark also that accounts of Rome exist which seem to have been furnished by Chinese who visited that city about the same period, and even earlier, since they refer to the election of consuls by the people

Digitized by Google

themselves. The Chinese armies conquered during the Han dynasty the countries to the west and south of the empire, which have paid them tribute until now. One general is said to have reached the Caspian sea.

Toward the close of the second century the power of the Han dynasty began to decline. Some of the princes were weak, others wicked; the eunuchs of the palace fomented discord; and at length a formidable insurrection broke out, called "The Revolt of the Yellow Caps"—a cap of that color being the badge of the disaffected party, whose object was to depose the reigning family and place some warlike chieftain on the throne.

Ho-ti, the seventeenth emperor of the race of Han, is said to have had considerable intercourse with the nations to the west of China. It is even recorded that one of his envoys went as far as Arabia. It is certain that eunuchs, who afterward became numerous in China and the cause of infinite intrigue, malice, wickedness, confusion and revolt, were first introduced during this reign, and it may be inferred that Ho-ti borrowed them from Western Asia at the close of the first century of the Christian era.

The troubles occasioned by the Yellow Caps led to several usurpations of the imperial dignity, and opened a new field of ambition to the kings of Han, Wu and Wei, who each boldly asserted his claims to the throne. A fierce contest ensued, which lasted forty-three years, and is celebrated in Chinese history under the title of "The War of the Three Kingdoms." It would be vain to seek for any rational account of the events which marked this unhappy period of civil warfare. It was

Digitized by Google

the Chinese age of chivalry, and each chief was exalted into a wonderful hero by the writers of the time, who blended so much romance with history that nothing certain can be gathered from their works beyond the fact that the country was divided into three separate states, the sovereigns of which were at war with each other for nearly half a century.

The period of the "Three Kingdoms," into which the country was divided about A. D. 184, is a favorite subject of the historical plays and romances of the Chinese. A work designated by the above name is much prized and very popular among them. It is said to have as few extravagances as could be expected from an Oriental history, and, except that it is in prose, bears a resemblance in some of its features to the Iliad, especially in what Lord Chesterfield calls "the porter-like language" of the heroes. These heroes excel all moderns in strength and prowess, and make exchanges after the fashion of Glaucus and Diomed, Hector and Ajax. One shows his liberality in horses, another in wearing a weight of silver or *iron*—

"And steel well-tempered, and refulgent gold."

At length there appeared among the competitors for the imperial throne a prince who put an end to the war and reunited the three states under one sceptre. He assumed the title of emperor, established the capital in Ho-nan, and commenced, in A. D. 260, the dynasty called *Tsin*, a name which, though it is spelled in our alphabet like that of the first general dynasty of the empire, five hundred years earlier, yet is written in the Chinese with a different character. The new dynasty ruled over

Digitized by Google

China somewhat more than a century and a half, during which period fifteen sovereigns succeeded each other on the throne.

Warned by the destructions which had arisen from the interference and intrigues of women and eunuchs, the new sovereign of the race of Tsin passed a kind of Salic law, declaring that "women should not reign nor take any part in public matters." The Chinese historian of the period says that this was a good law and worthy of being an example. It was, however, soon abrogated in practice. Under weak emperors the women resumed their influence, and the mischievous eunuchs were greatly increased in number. This first emperor is said to have had political relations with a province of Sogdiana, and even to have received a Roman embassy.

The population of the country had so considerably increased that it had been found necessary to clear and cultivate much of the forest land, that a sufficiency of food might be raised for the people, who lived chiefly on rice. The peasantry were exceedingly industrious, the women and children working in the fields as well as the men; and as the farms on which they labored were in most cases their own, they had the greater motives for exertion. Many people at this period were employed in rearing horses for war, and most of the farmers grazed cattle on the commons; but this kind of farming was gradually discontinued as the necessity of bringing the public land under culture increased, till at length there were very few commons or pastures left, cattle became scarce, and sheep were only to be found in the mountainous districts.

The country people lived more together in large

Digitized by Google

families. It was customary for a son to bring his wife home to his father's house, where she was expected to submit entirely to the authority of her mother-in-law, whose province it was, as elder matron, to rule over the female part of the household; and if this part of the domination was not always exercised in the most gentle manner possible, it was no less the duty of the daughters-in-law to yield implicit obedience. Hence partly, perhaps, arose the custom prevalent among Chinese maidens, when any one of their young friends is about to marry, of going to sit and weep with her before she leaves her parental home to take up her abode with strangers. The birth of a son was always celebrated with great rejoicings, but that of a daughter was considered as rather a misfortune than otherwise, especially if the parents were poor; for a girl could in no way advance the fortunes of her family, whereas a boy always had the chance, at least, by applying himself to learning, of attaining high honors; and in that case his parents were sure to be exalted also as a reward for the attention they had bestowed on his education, which was regarded as a benefit to the state; and even if he were not gifted with extraordinary talents, he was looked up to for future support, as every young man was obliged by law to maintain his aged parents, and taught by his religion that it was one of his most sacred obligations so to do. This point of filial duty was held in so much importance by the government that a law was enacted to the effect that the life of a criminal, who would otherwise be condemned to death, should be spared, provided his parents were old, and had no other son or grandson above the age of sixteen to work for them.

Digitized by Google

Different names were given to an individual at successive periods of his life. The first was bestowed at his birth by his father, who, having assembled all his relatives, took the infant in his arms and pronounced its name with numerous prayers and ceremonies; the next name was conferred on the boy's first entrance into school by the master, and was called "the book-name;" the third appellation was assumed at his marriage, when, if he were the eldest son, the father also added another character to his own name; all which alterations, one would suppose, must at times have created some confusion, and must do so still, for these customs are even to this day continued; as is also a law which was instituted about this time, prohibiting any person from marrying one of the same surname, even though the parties were not related to each other.

In ancient times the law of primogeniture existed among the Chinese, and remained in force until the reign of the emperor Wu-ti, who abolished it and instituted a new one, by which, on the death of a father, his lands were divided among all his male children; the only difference being that the eldest had two portions. The right to this double portion still exists. A daughter had no inheritance, neither did she receive any marriage portion from her parents. On the contrary, her future husband or his friends sent presents according to their means, as was the custom as far back as in that primitive age when Abraham sent his steward to seek a wife for his son Isaac, who took with him jewels of silver and jewels of gold, and raiment, which he presented to Rebekah and her friends on his asking the damsel as a bride for his young master. As daughters and wives,

Digitized by Google

the women of China were not held in as much consideration as they are among the nations of the West; but as mothers, they were treated with the utmost respect, especially by their sons, who, even when themselves advanced in years, paid great deference to the commands and counsels of an aged mother.

At this period the men did not shave their heads, as they do now; but suffered the hair to grow very long and thick, and fastened it in a knot at the top of the head. The male attire was long and flowing, with loose sleeves; and in the winter men of rank wore costly furs; but the winter dresses of the poor were made of sheepskin. As to the ladies, it does not appear that they have much altered the fashion of their dress from that time to this. Their costume is not altogether unbecoming. It consists in a full robe gathered into a narrow band round the throat, from which it hangs in graceful folds, unconfined at the waist, with large falling sleeves. The most striking difference in the appearance of the gentlemen of ancient and modern times relates to the head; that of the ladies to the feet, which were then suffered to grow to the natural size, and were not distorted and squeezed into shoes four inches long, as they are at present.

In the ordinary affairs of life the people were much governed by superstition, putting implicit faith in omens, dreams and spells innumerable. A belief in astrology was universal, and charms and talismans were frequently resorted to even by the most learned men of the age, by the power of which they hoped to avert an impending evil. One of these popular superstitions was exemplified in a singular manner during the War of the Three

Digitized by Google

Kingdoms, by a chief named Kung-ming, who was a great astrologer, and very often consulted the stars on the subject of future events. One night, being thus engaged, he fancied he saw signs in the heavens predicting that his own death would take place in a few hours; but, as he was not willing to die so soon, he lost no time in endeavoring to avert the fatal doom by means of a spell. He lighted a number of lamps in his tent, placing them in a particular order, corresponding with the position of the heavenly bodies at the time, and then composed a sort of prayer, which he continued to repeat incessantly as he sat on the ground before the lamps. But all was unavailing, for before the sun rose he had breathed his last, most probably in consequence of the nervous excitement produced by his own superstitious dread. The inefficacy of the charm was thus clearly proved, yet the superstition still remains, and many of the Chinese occasionally light lamps and arrange them in correspondence with the position of the stars, in the full persuasion that a threatened misfortune may be thus averted.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VII.

THE MIDDLE AGES IN CHINA.

THE study of the history of the middle ages in China is calculated to fill the mind with surprise. Our ancestors present the melancholy picture of nations which had occupied a high position as to civilization retrograding to barbarism; of races which had enjoyed the light of the gospel of Christ allowing it to go out in darkness, and sitting down with a closed Bible, to accept for its heavenly teachings and comforts the "old wives' fables" of their heathen forefathers, only altered by the priests of Rome so far as to substitute the names of Christian saints for those of the ancient gods and goddesses. But in China there are peace, civilization, progress in the arts, and so manifest a superiority to Europe, that the fragmentary accounts of the travelers thither from the West express much the same wonder and admiration at what they beheld which now a native of Tibet might be expected to utter when he should visit the cities of France. The Arabs, who were then well acquainted with Europe, had such exalted ideas of the splendor of China that their authors were accustomed to say that "Chin" had the best inheritance of all the posterity of Noah, that he was the most ingenious and able of them all, and that he was the discoverer of the arts

Digitized by Google

of sculpture and architecture, of painting or dying with colors, and of the culture and manufacture of silk. The Persians also expressed this admiration of China. When they wish even now to describe a very beautiful and handsomely furnished house, they call it *kaneh Chini*, that is, a "Chinese house."[1] Such were the ideas of the Nestorian and the Roman Catholic missionaries who were drawn thither by the hope of converting so grand an empire to the Christian faith. And such were the pictures which Marco Polo[2] presented, which so greatly excited the zeal of Columbus and other European mariners to find a passage thither across the Western ocean.

But it is not our purpose to renew these extravagant pictures, or at least what would seem to us in this age extravagant. We would only recall the fact of a relative position of the East to the West, as to civilization and wealth, a thousand years ago, just the opposite from that which now exists.

The ancient capital of the Chinese empire was Hang-chau, a large, wealthy city, situated at no very great distance from Nanking, and containing an immense population, chiefly engaged in the manufacture of silk and cotton. The imperial palace, standing in the midst of extensive gardens, was adorned with Eastern splendor, and near it were several magnificent temples and many fine residences belonging to the grandees of the court. The first sovereign of the new dynasty of Tsin, however, removed the seat of government to Kai-fung, another large city, standing in the centre of the empire, in the province of Ho-nan, one of the most fertile and beautiful

[1] D'Herbelot, *Bibliothèque Orientale*, iii., art. "Sin."

[2] *Travels*, Part I., chap. lvii., etc.

Digitized by Google

parts of all China—the same where the remarkable Jewish colony was found; and this was the royal residence until the reign of Yuen-ti, the fifth emperor of the line of Tsin, who built a very magnificent palace at Nanking, where the court was held with more splendor than had been exhibited by any of the former sovereigns.

There was an interval of repose which lasted some years, when a new invasion of the Tartars again spread terror and desolation throughout the western provinces. They were led by a barbarian prince, who laid claim to the empire on the ground of being descended from one of those princesses of the race of Han who had married Tartar chieftains; and the fierce invader, having made a captive of the emperor, obliged the unfortunate monarch to wait upon him at table for several days in his tent, and then had him cruelly put to death; soon after which one of his generals captured the son of the murdered sovereign, who was treated with every insult, and, in the habit of a slave, was compelled to attend the barbarian chief on his hunting excursions, and to perform the degrading office of carrying his parasol; for this article of convenience was known from a very early period to the Chinese, Tartars, Hindùs and other Oriental nations as an ensign of dignity, and only used by persons of rank.[1]

The unhappy prince was not destined long to endure

[1] The umbrella, or parasol, so universal now in China, and probably so ancient, is depicted in the ancient paintings of the Egyptians. In the sculptures of Nineveh it is an emblem of royalty. Sometimes in them it is seen borne by an attendant, and may have a veil suspended from one side, more effectually to shield the royal person from the sun, or it is fastened upon the chariot. The sides are often ornamented with fringe and the top with an appropriate figure. Such coincidences of customs help to illustrate the intercourse of these ancient nations.

Digitized by Google

these mortifications, for he was beheaded by command of the tyrant in consequence of an attempt made to effect his liberation. Another prince of his family was immediately proclaimed emperor, and the Tartars were soon driven out of the Chinese territories, but not before they had done a vast deal of mischief in the provinces which bordered on their own country. The monarchs of the Tsin dynasty were not so illustrious as those of the race of Han. The country does not appear to have been so well governed; and the people were very much dissatisfied with the heavy taxes levied to support the extravagance of the court, which had never been held with so much magnificence as at this period. Grand feasts and expensive entertainments were constantly given at the palace, where the royal banquets were usually enlivened by dances performed by female slaves, who were splendidly attired in dresses sparkling with gold and jewels. Their movements were accompanied by very noisy music, for the Chinese have always been fond of cymbals, drums, trumpets and those deafening instruments called gongs. They had, however, many softer instruments, such as the lute and guitar, which were often touched by other female fingers and accompanied by other female voices besides those of the young slaves; but dancing was treated merely as an exhibition, and not resorted to for amusement, as in European countries. The excessive luxury of the court, which could be maintained only by burdening the people with taxes, excited much popular discontent, which manifested itself, as usual, by a number of insurrections, which broke out from time to time in different parts of the empire, and at length ended in the overthrow of the

Digitized by Google

Tsin dynasty—a revolution which was effected in a very remarkable manner, and of which the following are the incidents: A poor boy named Liu-yu, born in the city of Nanking, had been left a destitute orphan at a very early age, and must have perished from want, had not an old woman, who took compassion on him, brought him up as her own. As soon as he was old enough, he learned to make shoes, and sold them in the streets of the city; but he was so idle and careless that those who knew him predicted that he would come to no good. For a long time Liu-yu carried on his shoe trade, by which he earned a scanty livelihood without concerning himself much about his condition, until he happened to attract the notice of a military officer, who had probably stopped him to make a purchase, and who, being pleased with the replies to some questions he had put, proposed to him that he should become a soldier. As fighting was an occupation better suited to his taste than shoemaking, Liu-yu at once accepted the offer, and having been introduced into this new scene of action, he displayed so much courage and ability that he was promoted in his profession by degrees till he became chief commander of the imperial forces, and in that capacity rendered such important services to the emperor during a serious rebellion that he was elevated to the rank of chief minister of state. By this time he had become very ambitious; and taking advantage of the prevailing disaffection toward the reigning family, and having made himself exceedingly popular, he seized a favorable opportunity of aspiring openly to the throne, and, by the aid of a powerful party, compelled the emperor to abdicate in his favor. Such was the remarkable career

Digitized by Google

of Liu-yu, who was proclaimed emperor under the name of Yung-chu.

Toward the close of the dynasty of Tsin, China had become divided into two kingdoms, each having its own sovereign, which could scarcely fail to occasion many troubles, particularly as one was considered subordinate to the other. The superior prince, who alone bore the title of emperor, resided at Nanking, while the king of the northern part of the country kept his court at Ho-nan; and they were frequently at war with each other. It was fortunate for the people that the Tartars about this time turned their attention toward Europe, and under their renowned king, Attila, invaded the Roman empire. The Chinese were thus relieved from their most formidable enemies; yet there is no period of their history more confused or more disturbed than that which followed the downfall of the Tsin dynasty. For nearly two centuries afterward five successive races rapidly followed each other to the throne, and then to ruin and extinction. The strongest ruled, and the history of the period is a mere record of blood and crime.

The Chinese during this time carried on an extensive trade with the Arabians and Persians, whose caravans made regular journeys to the frontiers, from whence they returned laden with silks, of which a portion was sent to Constantinople for the use of the luxurious inhabitants of that city. The Arabians also maintained an extensive commerce by sea; so that they had formed considerable settlements in Ceylon and in various places on the Malabar coast, had made themselves familiar with the navigation of the Indian ocean, and had sent their

Digitized by Google

trading-vessels as far as China.[1] We must here remember that after Rome had been taken by the Goths, Constantinople, where the Roman emperors had held their court ever since the time of Constantine the Great, remained, with a large portion of what was termed the Empire of the East, in possession of the Romans. It was then the most wealthy city in the world, and its inhabitants indulged in every rare and costly luxury. Silks were in great demand, and were supplied at immense prices by the merchants of Arabia and Persia, who, however, could afford no information respecting the Chinese; neither did they know that silk was produced by insects. It was about the middle of the sixth century, and during the time when China was in the state of anarchy above described that the secret was discovered and brought into Europe by two Nestorian monks, who went as Christian missionaries into distant lands. They carried the intelligence to the emperor Justinian, and undertook, for a large reward, to procure for him a quantity of silkworms' eggs. The monks were fortunate enough to escape with the stolen eggs, which they carried to Constantinople inside a cane; and as they had made themselves acquainted with the art of rearing the worms, these multiplied very fast in the warm climate of Greece, and were the progenitors of all the silkworms propagated in Europe.

Toward the end of the sixth century the northern and southern kingdoms of China were again united into one, of which the city of Ho-nan was declared the capital;

[1] They introduced the Mohammedan religion into Southern China, where the writer has seen tombs which it is said were erected in the seventh century of the Christian era.

Digitized by Google

and not long afterward the country was restored to order by another revolution and the accession of a new and illustrious race of sovereigns, called the Tang, who re-established the old system of government which had been so happily pursued by the Han princes. The founder of the Tang dynasty was a chief or general named Li-yuen, who deposed the last prince of the five families which had so long kept the country in confusion, and ascended the throne A.D. 622. The greater part of his reign was spent in subduing rebellions raised by the princes of the late dynasty, and making such regulations as were likely to lead to future prosperity; but as soon as he saw that peace was restored, and that the stream of government was again flowing in its proper channel, he chose to abdicate in favor of his son, the great Tai-tsung, after having occupied the throne about nine years. Tai-tsung is celebrated by the Chinese as one of their most illustrious sovereigns; and he appears to have merited the praises bestowed on him for his clemency, wisdom, justice and general attention to the welfare of the people. Under the auspices of this enlightened prince, learning and the arts flourished as in the ancient times, and all the high offices were again filled by men of letters; while, in order to promote the revival of literature, which had so long been neglected for war, an academy was instituted within the precincts of the palace, where not less than eight thousand students received instruction from the most able professors. Tai-tsung also founded a great school for archery, where he often attended himself for the purpose of practicing that warlike art, in which it was important for the Chinese to excel, as bows and arrows

Digitized by Google

were their principal weapons. The ministers sometimes remonstrated with the emperor on the imprudence of trusting himself among the archers, but the good prince only replied, "Am I not the father of my people? What, then, should I fear from my children?"

The attention of Tai-tsung was constantly directed toward improving the condition of the lower orders, which he effected in a material degree by lessening the taxes, and sending commissioners into all the provinces to inquire into the conduct of the magistrates and to see that the poor were not oppressed by them; for he often expressed the benevolent wish that every poor man should have enough of the common necessaries of life to make him comfortable in his station; which may remind us of the well-known speech of Henry the Fourth of France, that he should not be satisfied till every peasant in the kingdom could afford to have a fowl in his pot on the Sunday. His strict sentiments with regard to the administration of justice induced him to pass a law for the prevention of bribery, by making it an offence punishable with death for any magistrate to receive a present as a propitiation in the exercise of his power; and, in order to ascertain whether this law had its proper effect, he employed a person to offer a bribe to a certain magistrate of whose integrity he had some suspicion. The bribe was accepted and the guilty magistrate condemned to death; but his life was saved by the interference of one of the ministers, who were always at liberty to speak freely to the emperors on the subject of their conduct. "Great prince," said the monitor, "the magistrate is guilty, and therefore deserves to die, ac-

Digitized by Google

cording to the law, but are not you, who tempted him to commit the crime, a sharer in his guilt?" The emperor at once admitted that he was so, and pardoned the offender.

During the reign of Tai-tsung, some Christian missionaries of the Nestorian Church first arrived in China, where they were well received by the emperor, who permitted them to build churches and preach Christianity among the people. They were successful in making many converts, one of whom was the famous minister of state, Kwoh Tsz-i. They gave to the Tartar tribes on the north of China their own Syriac alphabet, and great numbers of those people became Christians. When the first Roman priests visited China they found the sign of the cross in use, and other customs which bore evidence of the former influence of the Nestorians. A tablet was discovered at the city of Sin-ngan cut in the Syriac character, which related the success of their early labors. Their missionary zeal deserves great honor. It conferred lasting benefits upon the nations of Eastern Asia.

The emperor Tai-tsung died, after a reign of twenty-three years, universally regretted by his subjects, who looked up to him as a pattern of wisdom and virtue, and preserved many of his excellent maxims, which are frequently repeated with great veneration to this day. The successors of Tai-tsung maintained the peace and prosperity which had been established by that great prince; and under their dominion the country was much improved, and the people enjoyed a considerable share of comfort and tranquillity.

Among the great national works of the seventh century were several extensive canals for the convenience

Digitized by Google

of inland commerce, with locks of a peculiar construction, or slides placed in embankments, over which their flat-bottomed vessels, without being unloaded, were hauled by ropes attached to large capstans. By means of this inland communication, trade was so much increased that a great number of vessels came every year to the port of Can-fu, which was either Canton, or Kan-pu, near Hang-chau; and about the year 700 A.D. a regular market was opened there for foreign merchandise, and an imperial commissioner was appointed to receive the customs on all goods imported from other countries, which collectively produced a large revenue to the government.

The sixth emperor of the Tang dynasty founded the Han-lin College, the leading literary institution of the Chinese empire, consisting of forty members, from whose number the ministers of state are generally chosen, and from whom all successful candidates for honors receive their degrees. The members of the Han-lin are mentioned in old histories as the learned doctors of the empire, and in fact possessed quite as much knowledge in those days as they do now; for the members of the present day are all educated according to the ancient system, nor have any new branches of learning, until recently, been introduced into the schools of China; yet, when the Han-lin College was founded, the Chinese were far in the advance of the Europeans, both in knowledge and refinement, for the modern nations of Europe were then only just emerging from the barbarism into which they had been plunged by the conquests of the Gothic tribes. England was divided among the Saxon princes of the Heptarchy, and France

Digitized by Google

was in that rude state which preceded the reign of Charlemagne. It may be imagined that only a very small proportion of the boys in any school were gifted with such great talents as would entitle them to attain preferment; therefore, of the many who presented themselves as candidates for honors at the hall of their province, where an examination was held once a year, very few perhaps were chosen; and those had to pass other examinations by doctors of a higher degree before they were eligible to be appointed to offices of state. Still, each aspirant had a chance, and as the object was so important, great pains were taken to instill into the minds of youth a due sense of the value of learning; and many little stories, written with that intent, were read to children as soon as they were of an age to comprehend them. These juvenile tales are mostly very simple, but are not uninteresting as illustrations of the character and manners of the people. The following are specimens of their general style: "There was a boy whose father was so poor that he could not afford to send him to school, but was obliged to make him work all day in the fields to help to maintain his family. The lad was so anxious to learn that he proposed giving up a part of the night to study; but as his mother had not the means of supplying him with a lamp for that purpose, he brought home every evening a glowworm, which, being held in a thin piece of gauze and applied to the lines of a book, gave sufficient light to enable him to read; and thus he acquired so much knowledge that in course of time he became a minister of state, and supported his parents with ease and comfort in their old age." Another youth, who was rather dull

Digitized by Google

of intellect, found it a very laborious task to apply himself to learning, and made such slow progress that he was often rather disheartened; yet he was not idle, and for several years continued to study with unceasing diligence. At length the time arrived for his examination, and he repaired, with many others, to the hall of the province, where he had the mortification, after all his exertions, of being dismissed as unqualified to pass. In returning homeward, very much depressed in spirits, and thinking it would be better to give up literary pursuits altogether and turn his attention to some other employment, he happened to see an old woman busily employed in rubbing an iron pestle on a whetstone. "What are you doing there, good mother?" said he. "I am grinding down this pestle," replied the old dame, "till it becomes sharp enough to use for working embroidery;" and she continued her employment. Li-pi—such was the name of the student—struck with the patience and perseverance of the woman, applied her answer to his own case. "She will no doubt succeed at last," said he; "then why should I despair?" So he returned to his studies, and in a few years, on appearing again before the board, he acquitted himself so well that he passed with honor, and rose in time to one of the highest offices in the state. These short and simple tales, of which the Chinese have whole volumes, serve to show the bias they have endeavored to give to the minds of their children, and account for the studious habits of so large a portion of the community.

The Arabs, during the Tang dynasty, still advanced in prosperity and wealth. They were more civilized than any Western Asiatic nation. Their merchants were rich,

Digitized by Google

The Stocking Maker.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

and lived in a style of princely magnificence in their own country; and at Canton, where many of them went to reside, they were permitted to have a cadi, or magistrate, of the Mohammedan religion to preside over them. The existence of an ancient mosque at Canton, which has all the appearance of having been built so long ago as the time here referred to, is an evidence of their freedom to exercise their own form of worship. The Mohammedan faith is now professed by a great number of Chinese subjects in different parts of the empire, but is perhaps chiefly confined to those of Tartar origin, as there must have been many Moslems, or "true believers," as they call themselves, among the followers of the great Tartar chiefs of the race of Zingis Khan, whose conquests commenced an important era in the history of China.

It was during the latter part of the Tang dynasty (A. D. 851–877) that the two celebrated Mohammedan travelers whose accounts have been so often quoted visited China and resided at Canton. These Arab traders, though they frequently complained of the rapacity and venality of the mandarins, give, on the whole, a favorable account of the country. They describe the use of copper money, the light, transparent and elegant Chinese porcelain, their wine made from rice, and other things which were never before mentioned, and which are still found in use in that country. They are the first to describe the use of tea as a common beverage among the Chinese. They say: "The emperor reserves to himself the revenues which arise from the salt-mines, and those which are derived from impositions upon a certain herb called *cha* (tea), which they drink with hot

Digitized by Google

water, and of which vast quantities are sold in all the cities of China." They mention the relief afforded to the people from the public granaries during famine or scarcity. They likewise mention the bamboo as the great panacea in all matters of police. By connecting various disjointed sentences and paragraphs, we derive a consistent account of a very orderly and methodical government; but the two Arabian voyagers lament that recent revolutions and troubles had greatly affected the prosperity of the country and the administration of justice.

It was about this period that the strange custom was first adopted in China of binding the feet of female children to prevent their growth. The origin of this absurd and unnatural practice is unknown, nor is it easy to imagine what could have induced women in the first instance thus to deform themselves; for, although vanity may be a powerful incitement for the continuance of a custom which distinguishes the higher from the lower classes, it hardly accounts for the first introduction of this practice, as any other distinctive mark, less painful and less inconvenient, might have answered the same purpose. The daughters of all people of rank are obliged to submit, at an early age, to have their feet cramped up and tightly confined with bandages, which are not removed for about three years, when the bones are so far compressed that the feet never assume their natural shape and size. The health of the children generally suffers much from the want of proper exercise during this cruel process, and the enjoyment of after life must be greatly diminished by the difficulty which females find in walking or even standing without support.

Digitized by Google

Yet they are proud of their very helplessness, and would think it excessively vulgar to be able to walk with a firm and dignified step. The lower classes cannot follow a fashion which would disable them from pursuing their daily labors, yet many parents in a very humble station of life are not free from the vanity of desiring to have one daughter with small feet, the prettiest child being usually selected for that distinction; and such is the force of fashion that the little damsel who is thus tortured and crippled is looked upon as an object of envy rather than of pity.

Like every other dynasty in China, that of Tang rapidly degenerated. Its emperors became mere tools in the hands of the eunuchs of the palace, who ruled them through the women. The third successor of the line was so influenced by one of his wives that at his death he invested her with sovereign power. She reigned absolutely for about twenty years, and then left her son to succeed her, but the son remained a slave to the wretched slaves who had maintained her on the throne. The power of the eunuchs was at length destroyed by the last emperor of this race. Too weak to extirpate them himself, he called in the aid of a powerful chief, who fulfilled his commission to the letter, but subsequently killed the emperor and his heirs, and, after a course of atrocious cruelties, put an end to the dynasty of Tang A. D. 897.

For the space of fifty years after the extinction of the Tang dynasty the government was in much the same state as it had been three centuries before, when the Tsin dynasty was set aside by the usurper Liu-yu; and although the present period of anarchy was of so much shorter duration, it witnessed the accession of five differ-

Digitized by Google

ent families, numbering in all thirteen emperors, whose reigns were very brief, most of them having died by some kind of violence. Yet it was in these turbulent times that printing began to be practiced in China—an event which occurred about five hundred years before that art was known in Europe.[1] The method first adopted in China was to engrave the characters on stone; consequently, when the impressions were taken off, the ground of the paper was black and the letters were white. But this mode was shortly superseded by the invention of wooden blocks, cut in such a manner that the letters were raised instead of indented, and thus were impressed in black on a white ground. This mode of printing from wood is still practiced in China, and is well adapted to the written language of the Chinese, as its words are not formed of vowels and consonants like those of Western languages; but a single character, of which there are many thousands, expresses a whole word. Yet it is necessarily very slow; and for this reason must yield in the end to the use of divisible metal type and of our swift machinery. The superior beauty of the typography of our books already wins the wonder and praise of the Chinese. Before the invention of printing there must have been a vast number of Chinese constantly employed in writing, as they were always a reading people, and even the poorest peasants were able to obtain books in manuscript, while in Europe a book was a thing unknown among the lower classes, and seldom to be met with except in monasteries or the palaces of princes.

The troubles that followed the fall of the Tang dynasty encouraged the Eastern Tartars to make new irruptions

[1] Paper had been invented during the first century of the Christian era.

Digitized by Google

into the empire, and one of their chieftains having aided a fresh usurper to mount the imperial throne, received from him in return the grant of a large territory in the province of Pe-che-lee, with an annual tribute of silks; and thus the Tartars gained a footing in the north of China which laid the foundation of those long and terrible wars that ended in the first Tartar conquest. But ere these wars commenced there was an interval of repose, in consequence of the downfall of the last usurping family of the five petty dynasties, and the elevation of a race called the Sung, of which there were eighteen emperors.

The founder of the Sung dynasty was a popular minister, who had also had the command of the armies, and had distinguished himself by his courage no less than by his ability in affairs of state; therefore, as the emperor was dead and his son was but a child, it was decided by all the military leaders and other great men that it would be better to place on the throne a man who was able to defend the country against its enemies. They accordingly fixed on the chief minister, and sent a deputation to his palace to invest him with the yellow robe, and he was proclaimed, by the title of Tai-tsu, in the year 950. The names assumed by the emperors usually had some appropriate meaning; thus Tai-tsu signifies "Great Sire." The conduct of the new monarch justified the high opinion which had been formed of his virtues and abilities, and he holds a place in the history of China as one of the greatest of its sovereigns. His mother, too, is reckoned among the illustrious females of the empire, for the Chinese annals have preserved the names of many women distinguished by their superior

Digitized by Google

understanding, whose wise sayings and exemplary conduct are recorded as examples for others.

Under the first and second sovereigns of the Sung line the art of printing was improved, and still farther disseminated. Books were greatly multiplied, and to these causes may be attributed the increased fullness of the records of this period, from which the most interesting portion of Chinese history commences. "Our lights now multiply fast, and the Tartars begin to take a great share in the national transactions. In fact, the whole history of this polished but unwarlike race is a series of disgraceful arts of compromise with the Eastern Tartars, called *Kin* (the origin of the Manchus, or present reigning family), until the Mongols, or Western Tartars, took possession of the empire under Kublai Khan."[1] The emperors were even content to purchase temporary cessations from war by the payment of tribute—a plan which was pursued by the Saxon king of England at that very time, in order to keep off the invasion of the Danes; and in both cases it proved equally ineffectual. Yet the commercial intercourse with Arabia and Persia had continued to increase, and great portions of the empire might be said to be in a prosperous condition. The first emperor of this line paid great attention to the improvement of his army, but it was not possible either to give that army a good organization or to revive in it a martial spirit.

In the reign of the third emperor of the Sung dynasty were established the famous porcelain furnaces at King-ti-chin, a large village in the province of Kiang-si, where all the best china is still made. These manufactories

[1] Sir J. F. Davis, *The Chinese*, etc.

Digitized by Google

were erected about the year 1000 A.D., and still afford employment to many thousands of people. At that time porcelain was one of the principal articles of export, to which were added silks and spices; for although the Chinese had no spices in their own country except coarse pepper, still they were able to obtain abundance of the finer sorts of them in their trade with the neighboring islands; and about this time they took possession of the Moluccas, or Spice Islands, which they retained above sixty years, when they were dispossessed by the Malays, who were soon obliged to give them up to the Arabs. Tea had not yet become an article of foreign trade, although it was in very general use among the natives of China.

In the reign of Chin-tsung, the third emperor of the line of Sung, the *Kin*, or Eastern Tartars, laid siege to a town near Peking; they were obliged to suspend the siege and to enter into negotiations; yet they obtained from their unwarlike foes very advantageous terms, with a large annual donation or tribute of money and silk. Under Jin-tsung, the fourth emperor, the Chinese entered into a still more disgraceful treaty. Ten extensive districts within the Great Wall were claimed by the Eastern Tartars, who received an annual quit-rent of two hundred thousand taels,[1] and an enormous quantity of silk. This emperor even submitted to be styled, and to call himself, in his treaties with the Tartar chiefs, a *tributary*.

Under each succeeding ruler of the Sung family the decline of the empire was more and more accelerated. There was nothing but vice and effeminacy in the

[1] Equal to $280,000 in specie with us.

Digitized by Google

palace, and rank cowardice in the field. Large armies took to flight at the first distant appearance of a few squadrons of Tartar horse. Wei-tsung, the eighth emperor of this line, enslaved himself to conjurors and impostors, who promised him longevity and wealth, and to those old pests of the country—the eunuchs of the palace—who were again found in incredible numbers, and in possession of all the keys to honor, promotion or public employment, whether military or civil. Encouraged by the weakness and imbecility of this ruler, and the spiritless, abject attitude of his people, the Eastern Tartars advanced at a rapid pace, took possession of a good part of Northern China, and threatened the whole empire with their iron conquest. In this extremity the Chinese applied for aid to the Mongols, or Western Tartars, who had already conquered India, and who now inhabited the vast elevated plains which extend from the north-west of China to Tibet and Samarkand. These hardy warriors eagerly accepted the invitation, and in brief space of time they subdued both the Eastern Tartars, who were their rivals for dominion, and the enervated Chinese whom they had been invited to protect. It was now found that trade, wealth, literature and refinement cannot defend a state, that pacific habits do not ensure peace or exemption from foreign conquest, and that every country which would preserve its tranquillity, its riches, its independence and its other blessings, must keep alive its martial ardor and be at all times ready to maintain a war.

In the very populous cities of the empire which attempted to stand sieges the slaughter was terrific, and was estimated by the Chinese annalists at millions of

Digitized by Google

souls. We turn from the revolting details to give the great results.

By the year 1234 the Mongols, or Western Tartars, were absolute masters of the northern half of modern China. The *Kin*, or Eastern Tartars, who until then had occupied some of the provinces bordering on the Great Wall, were attacked on one side by the Chinese, and on the other by the Mongols, under the command of the celebrated Pih-yen (*Hundred Eyes*), who is mentioned by Marco Polo. Their principal city, called Kai-fung, and described as being then the largest city in the world, containing a population of more than two millions of souls, was invested twice, and taken at the second siege, after another deplorable sacrifice of human life. The last prince of these Eastern Tartars strangled himself in his despair; all his principal officers and five hundred other persons plunged into the river and perished.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VIII.

THE MONGOL DYNASTY.

THE time had come when China should be brought into closer communion with the other members of the great family of nations. In the thirteenth century we begin to trace over the whole world the first throes of the regeneration which became manifest when the Cape of Good Hope was circumnavigated, America discovered, society renovated by a flood of inventions in the useful arts, and the Word and Truth of God again given to the waiting souls of men through the labors of the great Reformers. The conquests of the Mongols in Asia and Europe performed the same office in preparing the way for those events, wherever their influence was felt, which the conquests of Rome had performed in preparing that for the Founder of the Dispensation of grace.

The history of Zingis Khan and his successors is one of the most stirring and romantic on record. It sounds like a fiction to tell that an obscure, nomadic tribe of Tartars was raised up by the hand of Providence to such a height of greatness and power that in three generations its chiefs conquered the world from the coasts of the Pacific ocean on the east to the heart of Europe on the west; that the empires of China, India, Persia and Russia were all subject to them; that they extended

Digitized by Google

their borders even into Silesia; and that France, Spain, Sweden and Britain gave themselves to fasting and prayer to God as their only hope of protection; and that the fountain and most important centre of this stupendous empire, far more extensive than any that had preceded it on earth, was within the Chinese dominions, in which its great potentate, Kublai Khan, built the new capital, Peking, which is now the seat of another Tartar family, the Manchus. But almost as astonishing as the growth of the Mongol empire was its decay when the ends of the Governor of nations had been subserved by it. Drunk with its sudden and boundless power, its nine emperors followed one after another in short, dissolute and shameful reigns, which only lasted in all for the brief period of eighty-eight years.

The causes which led to the introduction of the Mongol power into the north of China have been mentioned in the preceding chapter.

It was not to be expected that a people so active and warlike as the Mongols would long remain satisfied with the northern and poorer half of the country, and leave the fertile, rich and delightful regions of the south to a people so unwarlike as the Chinese. This was still less likely when a great warrior, statesman and administrator, such as Kublai Khan, the grandson of Zingis, ascended the Mongol throne. Finding himself in undisturbed possession of all the north of China, and with a countless reserve of light cavalry in the regions beyond the Great Wall, Kublai took advantage of the infancy of the reigning Chinese emperor to use an argument convenient to his purpose. "Your family," said he, "owes

Digitized by Google

its rise to the minority of the last emperor of the preceding dynasty; it is therefore just that you, a child, and the last remnant of the line of Sung, should give place to another family."

The Mongols rapidly approached the imperial city; the whole court fled in the utmost consternation, and went on board some junks which were lying near the mouth of the Canton river. Tartar vessels were sent in pursuit of the wretched fugitives, whose terror at the sight of the hostile fleet seems to have amounted to madness; for one of the grandees, seizing the infant emperor in his arms, jumped with him into the sea, and was instantly followed by the empress and the chief ministers, who thus all perished. This was in the year 1281.

Thus Kublai Khan was left in undisputed possession of the whole empire, but the conquest had not been achieved without much bloodshed and numerous acts of revolting barbarity. But when the great object was accomplished, and the Mongol emperor acknowledged by the Chinese as their sovereign, he endeavored to win their affections by conferring benefits upon them, and sought to establish his power on the firm basis of popular esteem, rather than suffer it to rest on the uncertain foundation of that terror which his name had hitherto inspired.

Never did a more illustrious prince ascend an Eastern throne, and never was there one more revered than Kublai Khan; and, although a conqueror and of a foreign race, he was deservedly called the father of his people, who had no cause to regret, beyond their previous sufferings, the revolution that had placed him at the head of the empire. He wisely abstained from

Digitized by Google

ng any alterations in the political institutions of the se, nor did he interfere with any of their ancient ms; the high functionaries who had submitted to thority were suffered to retain their employment, n the distribution of offices of state no unjust par- was shown toward the Tartars; and thus peace preserved between the conquerors and the con- d. The Chinese gladly accepted an exemption military service, so that the sword remained almost sively in the hands of the Mongols, whose dis- e and subordination to the civil authority appear ve been exemplary throughout the reign of this illustrious prince.

e tribute or rent imposed on the natives of the ry was a tenth part of all the silk, rice, wool, hemp ther produce of their land, except sugar and spices, hich only a very small duty was levied; but those were not levied on the mechanics, who, for their e, were obliged to work for the government one n nine, which amounted to a ninth part of their ; and on these days they were employed in keep- he public edifices in repair and making clothes and ke implements for the army.

e new emperor, under the Chinese name of Shi- xed the seat of government at Peking, or Kambalu, was styled by the Tartars and our early travelers. balu was near the ancient city of Yen-king, a por- f which was destroyed when it was stormed by the rn Tartars.

king, or Kambalu, in the time of Kublai Khan, was lthy and populous city, containing numerous shops stocked with the rich merchandise of Persia and

Digitized by Google

Arabia; for as soon as peace was restored a considerable trade was carried on overland with those countries, from which the caravans arrived regularly every year. Their merchants were lodged in hotels or caravanserais, of which there were many in the suburbs built expressly for the accommodation of foreign traders, each nation having its own particular hotels and storehouses.

The commerce of the empire had now increased to such an extent that it was found necessary to adopt a more convenient kind of money than the small copper coinage that was in general use; therefore Kublai Khan put into circulation paper money, similar to our bank-notes, made of paper manufactured (like most of that now used by the Japanese) out of the inner bark of the mulberry tree, and stamped with his own mark, to counterfeit which was a crime punishable with death. This great prince seems to have paid more attention to the interests of commerce than any of the emperors who had preceded him; and to him the Chinese are indebted for one of the grandest of their national works—the Great Canal—which forms the principal link in the communication by water between the southern part of the empire and Peking.

The want of good roads had always been a check to the internal trade of China, and this disadvantage was at once perceived by the emperor, who projected and carried into execution a design for facilitating the intercourse between the chief cities. This was effected by turning the waters of some of the lakes into artificial channels, which were made to communicate with the rivers; many branches also extending to towns that were not in their course. One hundred and seventy

Digitized by Google

and men were employed for years in the con-
ion of this mighty work, which was completed
the immediate successors of Kublai, and which,
eal utility, far surpasses the Great Wall, being at
moment of the utmost benefit to the Chinese, whose
l trade would be very limited without it, as the
s of land-carriage are few, and both tedious and
sive. Another great advantage of this canal was,
t answered the purpose of draining large tracts of
y but fertile land, which had till then been quite
s, but were thus rendered fit for cultivation.

nearly the length of a thousand English miles
grand canal affords the means of a safe, uninter-
l and commodious inland navigation; and from it
erived the means of irrigating a vast extent of
ry on either of its banks. On these banks, like-
are constructed strong and wide terraces, upon
traveling by land is rendered perfectly conveni-
"This magnificent work," says our earliest Euro-
traveler in the Chinese empire, "is deserving of all
ation; and not so much from the manner in which
conducted through the country or its vast extent,
m its great utility, and the benefit it produces to
innumerable cities which lie in its course. No
may count the number of bridges by which it is
d."

the admirable police organized under Kublai
, the Great Canal and its side communications
kept perfectly safe for the traveler. In case of
accident by land or water, or of sickness on the
houses were erected on the banks, and supplied
proper persons to afford succor and assistance.

Digitized by Google

Many of these humane establishments have disappeared, but many yet remain, and are still used in case of need. The expenses are wholly borne by the state or from charitable contributions. Some of these *hospices* are described as extensive, commodious and even elegant establishments.

It was in the early part of the reign of Kublai, before he had become master of the whole empire, that China was for the first time visited by the European travelers who have left on record any full and satisfactory narrative of what they saw, and these were fortunate enough to be admitted to the court of the Great Khan and honored by his confidence and friendship.

Matteo and Nicolo Polo were two merchants of Venice, who, having occasion to make a journey into Persia, heard so much there respecting the splendor of the imperial court that they felt a great desire to become acquainted with the distant city of Kambalu, which they found means to visit by accompanying a Persian ambassador who was charged with despatches for the emperor. They were received with the greatest courtesy by Kublai, who was well pleased at meeting with such an opportunity of gaining some correct information respecting the people of Europe, and made many inquiries on the subject of different European countries. He put minute and very sensible questions as to their religion, civil polity, forms of government, modes of administering justice and their system and conduct of warfare. The Polos, who were men of intelligence and wit, satisfied him on these particulars, and gave him ample information concerning the pope, whose influence in pushing the nations of Europe upon Asia in the Crusades had rendered him important in the eyes of Kublai

Digitized by Google

. The two enterprising brothers made themselves
cquainted with the Mongol language, so that they
o need of interpreters, but spoke directly with the
Tartar ruler—a vast advantage, as all must feel
nave had intercourse with any Oriental people
gh the medium of dragomans. In consequence
e conversations he held with these Venetians,
ni, who was himself a votary of the Buddhist
was, nevertheless, so highly impressed with their
entation of the excellence of the Christian relig-
nat he despatched by them a letter. to the pope,
ning a request that his Holiness would send proper
ns to instruct the Chinese in the doctrines of
tianity; and the Venetian travelers departed on
xtraordinary mission.

ey were furnished with a pass, or golden tablet,
ying the imperial cipher, according to the usage
ished by his majesty; in virtue of which the per-
bearing it, together with their whole suite, are
conveyed from station to station by the governors
places within the imperial dominions, and are
ed, during the time of their residing in any city,
town or village, to a supply of provisions and
thing necessary for their accommodation. In the
r dialect gotten up between the Chinese and foreign
nants on the coast this is now termed the emperor's
chop, a word used to express seal, mark, warrant
cense or passport. Passports existed in China
centuries before they were introduced into Europe.
st be confessed that a Chinese passport is a much
thing for the bearer than a European one, as it
es him gratuitous lodging and accommodation, and,

Digitized by Google

generally, food on the road. A Tartar nobleman was also sent with them, and was to accompany them all the way to the pope of Rome; but he sank under ill-health and the fatigues of the journey, and the Polos were obliged to leave him behind before they had traveled more than twenty days. So far as the vast Mongol dominions extended the golden tablet or passport procured them hospitality, attention, horses and mounted escorts, and whatever assistance they and their numerous suite required. They were as safe and as well treated in the wilds of Tartary as in the regions southward of the Great Wall.

Several years had passed away, during which the khan had been so much engaged in prosecuting the war against the southern provinces of China that he had almost forgotten the Venetians, whose first visit had taken place long before that conquest; nor was the war yet quite ended when they returned, accompanied by Marco Polo, the son of one of them, and the most celebrated of the three, since it was he who wrote, on his return to Italy, an account of the Chinese empire, or kingdom of Cathay, where he had resided no less than seventeen years, during which he had enjoyed, without interruption, the favor of the emperor.

At this period so little was known of China in the Western world that the history of Marco Polo gained but little credit, and failed to enlighten the people of the age with regard to that great country. In fact, there were very few who knew anything about the traveler or the book he had written; for the art of printing being then unknown in Europe, knowledge was but slowly and partially diffused, and those who read the work thought

Digitized by Google

improbable that they treated the whole narrative fiction. The extent and wealth of Cathay, the dor of its court, the number of its cities, the beauty s manufactures, the order of its government, all fully described by the author, were read with a of incredulity; nor was it till a much later period, the country was visited by other Europeans, that ce was done to his veracity. In fact, *full* justice never rendered to this illustrious traveler until the 1818, when the learned Mr. William Marsden pub- l his translation and edition, under the title of e Travels of Marco Polo, a Venetian, in the thir- h century; being a Description, by that Early eler, of Remarkable Places and Things in the East- Part of the World." This quarto volume of 860 contains the results of many years of labor de- l to the task of substantiating the authority of the raveler. The comments, notes and dissertations are ly to be numbered, and they are as valuable as they numerous. Other travelers and navigators of all and of all nations are quoted wherever they de- e the countries or places visited by Marco; and the mass of evidence thus collected, Mr. Marsden stablished, beyond the reach of rational doubt, that long-calumniated Venetian is in the main most re- ably veracious and correct in his descriptions. Of descriptions a very large portion relate exclusively ina and its dependencies.

t to resume the subject of our history. When Polos set out on their return to China, they had them two preaching friars, deputed as missionaries ope Gregory X., who also sent letters to the khan;

Digitized by Google

but some of the states of Syria, through which the travelers had to pass, were in a state of warfare, and the friars were, from untoward circumstances, prevented from proceeding, while the Polos, after encountering many difficulties and dangers, safely reached their destination. This was about the time when the Crusades were drawing to a close, and the year in which the three Italians arrived at the court of Kublai Khan was A. D. 1274, the same in which Edward I. returned to England from the Holy Land.

They found Kublai Khan at Yen-king, near Kambalu, or Peking, in the midst of his court and great officers of state. They performed the ko-tau or nine prostrations, as they are now practiced in the Chinese court; and Marco's father and uncle, then rising, related in perspicuous language all that they had done since their departure, and all that had happened to them, the khan listening with attentive silence. The letters and presents of the pope were next laid before the tolerant Tartar conqueror, who, it is said, received with peculiar reverence some oil from the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem.

The emperor testified much delight at the return of his former visitors, and was so much pleased with young Marco that he conferred on him a high post at the court, and employed him on missions to various parts of the empire. Marco had therefore sufficient opportunities of observing the state of the country as well as the manners of the court. He tells us himself that he was held in high estimation and respect by all belonging to the court, and that he learned in a short time and adopted the manners of the Tartars, and acquired a proficiency in

Digitized by Google

ifferent languages, which he became qualified to
nd write.

e cities were, at this period, thronged with indus-
artizans, who commonly worked at their own
, and sold the produce of their labor to the wealthy
ants, who traded principally to India; from which
ry the manufactures and produce of China were
yed to Alexandria, and from that port were trans-
l to Venice, where they were all received under
eneral name of Indian goods; and thus the Chinese
for a long time considered the same people as the
ns, and their country was supposed to be the most
e part of India.

long the many improvements made by Kublai
during his beneficent reign was the establishment
s or post-houses, commencing from the capital and
ued at intervals of about thirty-six miles to all the
pal places in the empire, and at these stations relays
ses were always kept in readiness for the emperor's
ngers, who were there also furnished with the re-
e food and lodging. There were also ferry-boats
nvenient stations to carry them across the rivers
kes without delay, so that in case of need a mes-
could travel two hundred miles in the twenty-
hours; and by these means fine fruits and other
ies for the court and rich citizens were often con-
from the most distant provinces to Peking—an
tage which that city would not so readily have en-
otherwise, since it stands in a cold and barren
and depends for its supplies on the more fertile
ts of the south.

ese supplies were, as now, obtained by the generality

Digitized by Google

of the inhabitants by means of the Great Canal, which was constantly covered with barges laden chiefly with grain. A great number of these barges were employed between the different provinces and the capital in conveying the tribute, out of which, when the harvest was abundant, the emperor laid up in his granaries stores of rice and corn, which in years of scarcity he sold to the poor at a cheap rate. Although, therefore, the taxes were heavy, the people derived benefit from them when they stood most in need of assistance, and they were always remitted, or at least much lightened, in a season of public calamity. Everything, indeed, appears to have been done by this beneficent prince that could tend to increase the prosperity and happiness of his subjects, who seem to have enjoyed, under his paternal government, the blessings of peace in their fullest extent.

Among the first things which struck Marco Polo were the orderly air of the people, the strictness of the police, the populousness of the superior cities, the extent and usefulness of the Grand Canal, and the immense number of bridges in all parts of the empire where rivers ran or canals were dug. In describing "the noble and magnificent city of Kin-sai," then the capital of Southern China, which is traversed by a river and many canals, he says: "It is commonly reported here that the number of bridges of all sizes amounts to twelve thousand." He adds: "Those which are thrown over the principal canals, and are connected with the main streets, have arches so high, and built with so much skill, that the vessels of the country can pass under them without lowering their masts, whilst at the same time carts and horses are passing over their heads, so well is the slope

Digitized by Google

he street adapted to the height of the arch. In
s the river or the canals run everywhere, if the
s were not so numerous there would be no conve-
of crossing from one place to another."

ll the cities good order was preserved, and no one
llowed to be abroad after dark, except on urgent
ess, when he was required to carry a lantern—a
tion which prevented robberies or disturbances in
reets at night. In the centre of the capital there was
ormous bell, suspended in a lofty building, so placed
t could be heard all over the city; and this was
every evening at a certain hour, as a signal for all
s to retire to their homes; as the curfew, in olden
was rung at eve, to warn the people of England
was time to extinguish the cheerful blaze and be-
hemselves to repose.

soon as Kublai had completed the conquest of
, he sent an ambassador to the sovereign of the
islands, who was an independent prince, ruling
numerous and not uncivilized people. The object
is embassy was to demand submission and tribute
e Japanese monarch as a vassal of the Chinese
e; and when the indignant chief refused to comply
so unjust a requisition, the emperor declared war
st him, and sent out a large fleet in the hope of
ng another important conquest.

e Japanese, however, made a successful resistance;
y the help of a storm, which destroyed the greater
of the Tartar fleet, they were fortunate enough to
rve that independence which they have maintained
s day.

e Tartar conquest produced no alteration in the

Digitized by Google

manners and customs of the native Chinese, which, indeed, as before observed, appear not to have been affected by any of the revolutions that have taken place in the country—all the national festivals being observed as in former times, and the same laws remaining in force that have so direct and powerful an influence on the character and social habits of the people of China.

The garments worn by the mass of the population were at this time still made of silk, for although cotton was then cultivated for the purpose of being manufactured, it was not so plentiful as silk, consequently it was much more expensive, and only used by persons of high rank; but the case is now entirely reversed, since at the present day the rich alone wear silks, while the poor are commonly clothed in cotton.

One of the great festivals described by Marco Polo as having been observed in China during the reign of Kublai Khan was the birth-day of that great prince, which was a universal holiday, and celebrated throughout the empire with all kinds of public rejoicings. Sacrifices were made in the temples, the cities were illuminated, and people of all classes spent the day in feasting and amusements. Among the latter were dramatic pieces performed by companies of strolling players, either in temporary theatres set up in the streets for the delight of the commonalty, or in the houses of the principal magistrates, who usually hired actors on grand occasions, as they do still, for the entertainment of their guests.

The emperor appeared on this festive day arrayed in a robe of cloth of gold, his whole dress glittering with jewels, and was attended by all the chief officers of his court in their magnificent state dresses, who stood around

Digitized by Google

rone while he received the homage of the tributary
s who came to offer their congratulations. The
et given at the palace on this occasion was ex-
ly sumptuous, and graced with the presence of the
ss and ladies of the court, for the Tartar ladies
ess secluded in their habits than the Chinese, and
they first arrived in the country were frequently
n public occasions, but they have since adopted in
t measure the more reserved manners of the ladies
ina.

e banquet took place in a large hall, where the
were seated according to their rank. The empe-
table stood on a daïs at the upper end, and the
were ranged according to their rank at tables by
elves. The meats were served on silver, and the
ing-cups were of gold. A band of music was in
lance the whole time, and at the lower end of the
temporary stage was erected for the performances
players and the feats of jugglers and tumblers.
must be observed that the mirth of the guests was
indulged to an extent that might have been deemed
pectful to the emperor. There was no noisy laugh-
nd whenever the imperial host raised the cup to
os, a signal was given and all present knelt down
owed their heads until he had finished his draught.
the occasion of the birth-day presents of great
were sent to the emperor from all the provinces;
they were too numerous, and some of them too
, to be laid at his feet, they were merely passed in
before him, borne by a train of camels. This
very general custom in the East; and the presents
to Eastern princes by their subjects must have

Digitized by Google

very materially contributed toward keeping up the extraordinary splendor for which their courts were so remarkable.

Marco Polo has left us a splendid description of the imperial place at Xanadu, or Kambalu—

> "Where twice five miles of fertile ground
> With walls and towers were girdled round."

The picture is, indeed, dazzling and marvelous, yet it does not appear in any essential particular to have exceeded the truth. Counting the enclosing park and gardens, the palace of Kublai Khan occupied considerably more than ten English miles of ground. The English gentlemen who attended Lord Macartney on his embassy to China in 1793, and those who have visited that capital within the past few years, have been astonished at the extent and magnificence of the imperial palace at Peking, and their descriptions of it correspond with those given by Marco Polo in the thirteenth century. They have found the river, the artificial lakes, the lofty hills raised by the hands of man, and planted to the top with shrubs and trees, surrounding summer-houses and cabinets contrived for retreat and pleasure. The whole, at the first glance, has almost the appearance of enchantment. In point of structure, materials and style of embellishment there has existed an exact resemblance between the buildings of Kublai Khan, as described by Marco, and those of the emperors of later centuries.

Since the Tartars had occupied the throne, hunting had been the grand amusement of the court, the sports of the chase being regarded by that people as emblemat-

Digitized by Google

The Tiger Guard.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY · WIDENER LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

of warfare, and the fearless hunter being respected
brave warrior. The annual hunting expedition
Tartary was conducted with all the solemnity of a
paign, the emperor taking the head of a numerous
, which had the appearance of a vast army march-
o the field of battle. The three winter months were
ely occupied with this pursuit, which, during the
n, was deemed the chief business of the state; so
the holding of these hunts is among the principal
s of a Tartar sovereign, and he who neglects them
es discontent.

hen the sporting season was over, it was customary
ne whole court to repair to a city of Tartary, where
mperor had a palace, with an extensive park and
ure-grounds; and to this summer residence he was
npanied by the empress and all his other wives, for
ad many, although only one of them enjoyed the
ty and title of empress. This favored lady was
ounded with as much state as her lordly husband,
ng three hundred female slaves to attend upon and
e her, for which purpose many of them had been
nt music and dancing, according to the custom of
East; and besides these damsels there were elderly
les, whose occupation it was to relate entertaining
es to the empress and ladies of the court, amongst
n reading was then an art comparatively unknown.
was by resorting to the cool, bracing, upland plains,
eppes, of Tartary, and by the exercise of hunting
hawking, that the first princes of the Tartar line
ed the enervating effects of the hot climate of
a and the easy, luxurious mode of living in the
. "It is worthy of remark," says Sir John F.

Digitized by Google

Davis, "that of the scores of dynasties which have followed each other, all established themselves on the vices, luxuries or indolence of their immediate forerunners. The present Manchu race has already shown no unequivocal symptoms of degeneracy. The two greatest princes by whom it has been distinguished, Kang-hi and Kien-lung, sedulously maintained the ancient habits of their Tartar subjects by frequent hunting excursions beyond the Wall, in which they individually bore no small share of the fatigue and danger. The emperor Kia-king, and his successors during the present century, have, on the other hand, been remarkable for their comparative indolence; and their reigns have exhibited a mere succession of revolts and troubles."

Kublai Khan lived to the advanced age of eighty-three, and had ruled over the whole of China about eighteen years when he died, A. D. 1294, and was succeeded by his grandson, Timur.

The empire of the Mongols had now attained its utmost magnitude. It extended from the Chinese sea and the Indies to the northern extremity of Siberia, and from the eastern shores of Asia to the frontiers of Poland in Europe; and all this vast portion of the globe was governed by princes of the family of Zingis, who were all vassals of the Great Khan, or emperor of China. The chief of these were the khans of Persia, Zagatai and Kipzac, who were tributary to Kublai, but after his death they became independent sovereigns.

The Chinese empire continued under the dominion of the Mongols about seventy-three years from the death of Kublai, and in that time eight princes of his family reigned in succession; not one of whom equaled his

Digitized by Google

predecessor in ability, although most of them were and beneficent rulers. Kublai had, with the wis- of a superior mind, accommodated himself to the s and prejudices of the conquered nation; but his ssors, less politic, made innovations on the ancient of government, and lost by degrees the confidence affection of the Chinese, who are extremely jealous e slightest interference with their established cus-, and whose dissatisfaction at length began to exhibit by frequent insurrections.

uring the whole of the Yuen (or Mongol) dynasty, dhism was the religion favored by the state; and so of the priests of that sect came into China that people found them very burdensome, as they were a licant race, who went from house to house asking Many Buddhist temples were built in the reign Kublai Khan, who was himself a devout professor uddhism—a faith which never possessed so much ence in China as during the sway of the Mongol rors.

un-tsung, the ninth and last sovereign of this race, ded the throne in 1331, and reigned thirty-five , or rather he suffered his ministers to reign, for he elf was too indolent and fond of pleasure to take share in state affairs. When the Tartars first ed from their own wild deserts, they were a bold, getic race of barbarians; but the ease and luxury hich they were enabled to indulge in the genial te of China had softened their manners, and had destroyed the warlike character by which their tors had gained possession of the country, and by h alone they could hope to retain it. Shun-tsung

Digitized by Google

neglected the annual hunts and the practice of every manly exercise and every manly virtue. He was stained with all the vices which usually adhere to the representative of a worn-out, decaying dynasty: he was voluptuous, effeminate, indolent to excess, a coward, and yet a sanguinary tyrant. After several insurrections against him had failed, a revolution was commenced, which was attended with full success, and which placed the empire of China once more under the dominion of native princes.

There was a poor laborer in the province of Nanking who had a son named Chu, a lad whose constitution was so delicate that he was quite unfit for hard work; his father therefore placed him in one of the monasteries, to be brought up by the priests, with a view to his becoming a member of that order. The boy, however, had no taste for so inactive a life, and growing stronger as his years increased, he enlisted as a common soldier in the imperial army, in which capacity he distinguished himself so highly on two or three different occasions that he was promoted, step by step, till he had attained to a high rank, when he married a widow of fortune and influence, whose family was among those who were disaffected toward the Tartar government. Chu soon imbibed similar principles, and took the lead in a formidable insurrection that broke out in the province in which the old capital, Nanking, is situated. As soon as it was known that this famous general was at the head of the insurgents, the whole province was speedily in arms, the capital having already declared for the rebel chief, who met and defeated the imperial forces. The numbers of the rebel army increased daily; the most considerable cities

Digitized by Google

ned their gates to them, and at length Peking itself
taken, and Shun-ti with his family fled into Tartary,
ving his capital in the undisputed possession of the
tor, who was proclaimed emperor by the title of
-tsu in the year 1366. This was the commence-
nt of the Ming dynasty, which was displaced nearly
ee hundred years afterward by the present reigning
ily.

China had reached a very high point of grandeur,
er and civilization under Kublai Khan at the close of
thirteenth century. There has been no remarkable
gress since that period, until the recent wars with
eign nations instituted a new order of things; in
eral, there has been an evident deterioration, decline
decay. The pictures of Marco Polo, collectively,
certainly present a vast, most populous, prosperous
well-governed nation, highly refined and civilized
compared with the very best countries in Europe at
t period, and far exceeding them all in extent, unity
consolidation. We have insisted on the authority
Marco Polo, and not without reason. So high did he
in the estimation and favor of the liberal-minded
blai—who, unlike most of the sovereigns who pre-
ed and followed him on the throne of China, readily
loyed Arabians, Persians and other foreigners—that
n a member of one of the high tribunals was un-
to proceed to the government of a city to which he
been nominated, the emperor sent the young Ve-
an in his stead. Marco mentions this honorable
nt of his life in the most modest manner, and only
dentally while describing the city, which was Yang-
u-fu, in the province of Kiang-nan, a place then of

Digitized by Google

great importance, and celebrated for its manufacture of arms and all kinds of military accoutrements.

In another chapter the Venetian says, "Marco, on his part, perceiving that the Grand Khan took a pleasure in hearing accounts of whatever was new to him respecting the customs and manners of people, and the peculiar circumstances of distant countries, endeavored, wherever he went, to obtain correct information on these subjects, and made notes of all he saw and heard, in order to gratify the curiosity of his master. In short, during seventeen years that he continued in his service, he rendered himself so useful that he was employed in confidential missions to every part of the empire and its dependencies; and sometimes also he traveled on his own private account, but always with the consent and sanctioned by the authority of the Great Khan. Under such circumstances it was that Marco Polo had the opportunity of acquiring a knowledge, either by his own observation or by what he collected from others, of so many things, until his time unknown, respecting the eastern parts of the world, and which he diligently and regularly committed to writing, as in the sequel will appear."

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IX.

THE LAST NATIVE DYNASTY—THE MING.

soon as Tai-tsu was firmly seated on the throne, ambassadors were sent by the kings of Corea and r tributary princes to congratulate him on his ele- on, and express their satisfaction that the country once more under the dominion of a native ruler. success of Tai-tsu and his excellent government are buted in great measure to the prudent counsels of wife. The new emperor chose Nanking for his cap- and erected Peking into a principality, which he owed on one of his sons, Yung-lo, who, when he me emperor, again removed the court from Nan- to Peking, the latter city being better situated for ing in check the Tartars, who were constantly at with the Chinese after the fall of the Mongol dy- y. Tai-tsu began his reign by restoring those insti- ns which had been disregarded since the time of lai Khan, whose successors had broken in upon one e most important usages of the Chinese government, lacing military men in all the chief offices of state, h under Kublai had been filled by the learned. was one of the innovations which had led to the revo- n, and was among the first grievances redressed by new emperor, who restored the literary mandarins to

Digitized by Google

their former rank and influence, and granted great privileges to the Han-lin College. He made several new regulations intended to promote the happiness of the people, and, among others, that women should not devote themselves as priestesses to the religion of Buddha, and that no man should enter a monastery till he was forty years of age; for Tai-tsu knew by experience that young people sometimes were induced to adopt this life of seclusion before they were old enough to judge whether it was exactly suited to their dispositions, and were thereby doomed to many years of misery and regret.

Tai-tsu reigned thirty-one years, and, having lost his favorite son, appointed his grandson, a boy of thirteen, under the imperial name of Kien-wan, to succeed him, which gave great offence to one of his sons, Yung-lo, who raised an army at Peking, and placing himself at its head, marched toward Nanking to demand from his nephew the surrender of the throne. He was opposed by the imperial troops, and a battle ensued, in which many were killed on both sides, but the cause was still undecided when the gates of the city were opened by a traitor. The assailants instantly rushed into the town, put many of the inhabitants to the sword and set the palace on fire. The youthful emperor perished in the flames, and Yung-lo took possession of the vacant throne. Some of the ministers were condemned to death, others killed themselves, while many of the mandarins, who expected to be punished for their adherence to the cause of the late unfortunate prince, shaved their heads and assumed the sackcloth habit of the bonzes, and, thus disguised, were not recognized.

Although the new emperor had obtained the throne

Digitized by Google

uelty and violence, he was not a bad sovereign, but
e contrary exhibited great moderation and justice
any acts of his government. He removed the court
king, as has been before remarked, which has been
mperial residence ever since; but he established
ate tribunals at Nanking, which city was occupied
governed by his eldest son.

was in this reign that the great Tartar chief
ur, or Tamerlane, as he is more generally called,
e conquests almost equaled those of Zingis Khan,
ambitious of adding China to the vast dominions
d already acquired by a long and successful course
arfare, set out with the intention of invading that
re; but, happily for the Chinese, he died on the
(A.D. 1405), and the expedition was abandoned.
time to time, however, the Tartars renewed their
ions in the hope of recovering the empire, and
a terrible scourge to those provinces which bor-
on Tartary. When there happened to be a power-
rince at the head of the state, they were kept in
, but whenever the government was weak, they
ot fail to turn that advantage to account; so that
Chinese were never entirely at peace during the
e period of the Ming dynasty, which lasted three
ries.

was in the reign of this race that the rapid pro-
of navigation which followed the discovery of
rica first brought the ships of Europe to the shores
ina.[1] The Portuguese, who were the great naviga-

[1] ose who love to trace the simultaneous tread of the great events which
he eras of the advance of our race will observe that this new link was
between the most distant West and the most distant East, between the
mobile and the most progressive parts of the world, at the hour when

Digitized by Google

tors of the age, having made several voyages to India by the newly-discovered passage round the Cape of Good Hope, ventured still farther eastward in the year 1516, and were the first Europeans who reached the Canton river. Their vessels, despatched by Alfonso Albuquerque, the captain-general of Malacca, were under the command of a bold and adventurous Portuguese named Perestrello, who, however, did not pass the islands at the mouth of the river. His name will be memorable as that of the first person who ever conducted a ship to China under a European flag.. On his return to Malacca, Perestrello reported favorably of the country and its commerce. The very next year he was followed by a squadron of eight vessels, under the command of Perez de Andrade, who passed the islands and sailed up the river. Some alarm was experienced at Canton on the appearance of strange vessels, of a form altogether new to the Chinese, who very naturally supposed an invasion was intended; consequently, the squadron was presently surrounded by war-junks, and it was with difficulty that Perez de Andrade obtained permission to proceed up the river to Canton with two of his ships. The viceroy granted an audience; but while successfully negotiating for a trade, the Portuguese captain received accounts that the rest of his squadron, left near the mouth of the river, had been attacked by pirates. Some of his vessels returned with cargoes to Malacca; the remainder sailed, in company with some junks belonging to the Loo-Choo islands, for the east coast of China, and succeeded in

Martin Luther was preparing the ninety-five theses, the nailing of which on the door of the cathedral at Wittemberg waked up the slumbering conscience of Europe, and was one of the first public acts of the Great Reformation.

Digitized by Google

ishing a colony at Ningpo. Shortly after this the guese brought their families to that port, and estab- a profitable trade, not only with various parts of hinese coasts, but also with the islands which com- he empire of Japan—an empire then abounding he precious metals and other valuable productions. the course of a few years the provincial govern- provoked by their rapacity, piracy and general nduct, expelled them from Ningpo; and thus the guese for ever lost an establishment on the conti- f China in one of the provinces of the empire best ed to the ends of European trade. It must hon- e admitted that the conduct of their first visitors he West was not calculated to give the Chinese a ble opinion of Europeans, and that these Portu- with the subjects of some other nations of the who very soon followed them, were little better uccaneers.

the hostility of the Chinese to foreign intercourse favorite subject of reproach against them in the gs of men of our kith and creed, we may perhaps some useful light as to the grounds of it by look- to its records. The truth is, that the specimens ristian civilization who first went to that coast— t must be added, some of later days—have been drels with whom the common knaves of Christen- would shrink from associating. Among the early rate adventurers from Portugal was Ferdinand ez Pinto, who has been made memorable by the ill bestowed upon him by Cervantes and the dramatist eve, but the bulk of whose descriptions and ad- res were indisputably true. Having been plundered

Digitized by Google

by native pirates, he and his comrades turned pirates themselves. These freebooters finally reached Ningpo, which was as yet in the hands of their countrymen, and which Mendez Pinto describes as a strongly-fortified settlement. They were received with "great affection and Christian charity;" prayers were put up for them in the church; they were visited and feasted by the richest and noblest of the settlers, who assured them that the Chinese empire was in so unsettled a state that they might plunder and burn even the great city of Canton without danger or difficulty. Thirteen different princes were contending for the imperial crown, war was waging in all parts of the empire, and the Manchu Tartars were coming. Before quitting Ningpo, Mendez Pinto's commodore, Antonio de Faria, furnished himself with a Portuguese priest or friar for each of his ships, in order that mass might be regularly performed at sea. The very devout Portuguese settled at Ningpo had learned from some Chinese that to the north-east there was an island containing the tombs of seventeen Chinese kings, all made of gold and surrounded by many idols cast in the same precious metal. For a long time this island seemed to evade the search of the Portuguese captain. At last, when his crew was in despair and mutinous, he hit upon the island and upon some of the royal tombs. But, alas! the gold turned out to be only burnished brass or gilded copper. The marauders, however, burst open the graves, and there, among the dry bones of the dead, they found a great quantity of silver. A tempest followed them, as if in vengeance, and they were all shipwrecked in the bay of Nanking. Of the total number, only fourteen saved their lives by swim-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The people on the solitary coast were kind and
able, giving them rice to eat, and pointing out the
o a pagoda and hospital where pilgrims could
s find food and lodging. When questioned by the
s or priests at the hospitium who they were and
e they came, the Portuguese said that they were
s of the kingdom of Siam, poor honest fishermen,
ad been cast away; and hereupon they met with a
umane reception. When these bonzes, who were
poor, had entertained them two or three days,
ent them on to another hospitium, three leagues
hich was very rich. These places of refuge for
ns and for the poor of all classes were then very
ous in China, and they had been faithfully
bed by Marco Polo. Two months the shipwrecked
s wandered through that immense province, beg-
n the villages and avoiding as much as possible
eat towns, for fear of being detected as Portuguese
ers. At last, in an evil hour, they entered the
of Taypor. There they were seen, as they were
g from door to door, by a sharp magistrate, who
them to be arrested, loaded with chains and iron
, and cast into a frightful prison, where one of
died. At the end of twenty-six days they were
ked on a canal for the city of Nanking, together
wenty or thirty Chinese criminals and cut-throats.
t as soon as they arrived at Nanking, which Ferdi-
Mendez correctly describes as an immense and popu-
ty, the second in rank in the empire, they were ex-
d by a very rigorous mandarin, who ordered them
ible flogging on the bare back, which caused the
of two of them. Two more had been previously

Digitized by Google

drowned in crossing an inlet of the sea. Some charitable Buddhist priests attended the nine survivors, healed their wounds, and then procured that they should be sent on to the grand imperial court of appeal at Peking. The unhappy Portuguese ascended the grand canals, which struck them with astonishment. They were also charmed with the number of the bridges and the magnificence of the pagodas, tombs, fountains and arches of triumph. Ferdinand had also occasion to admire the tranquil manners of the Chinese and the good order and industry that prevailed among them. Shortly after their arrival at Peking they were acquitted, or rather pardoned, by the supreme court, and liberated with a free permission to go again a-begging. For two months and a half they enjoyed this liberty in Peking, and among that countless population they found many charitable people. They were then sent to the city of Kin-sai, where they were taken into the service of the governor as part of his body-guard. They were kindly and even liberally treated, until (strange illustration of the kind of honor that often exists in the bosom of thieves!) there happened a quarrel among themselves about a question of precedence, genealogy and nobility, and a commotion and a scuffle, accompanied with bloodshed, which the Chinese laws have at all times held in great abhorrence. They were again well flogged or beaten with bamboos and thrown into prison, a method of settling such nice points in which the Chinese certainly set the nations of the West a good lesson. After eight more weeks of captivity the governor took pity on them, and they were released, though only to be slaves in perpetuity, and under the doom that if they ever again quarreled and

Digitized by Google

among themselves, whether about the antiquity
r families or aught else, they would all be instantly
ed to death. Although their taskmasters made
work very hard, they were still obliged to beg
door to door for their daily bread or rice. Luckily
them, Gaspar de Moreyles by name, was a very
musician, "playing the guitar and singing to it with
e which was not a bad one; and this music was
greeable to the richer sort of Chinamen, who pass
ives in banquets and the delights of the flesh, and
y called Gaspar in very frequently for their pas-
and never sent him away empty-handed." The
el generously shared the proceeds with his com-
They were released from their present thraldom
e Manchu Tartars, who captured Kin-sai, carried
away with them, and very soon gave them good
ry employment, finding that they were brave and
killed in the art of war. Beyond this point the
tures of Ferdinand Mendez Pinto are but little
cted with China.[1]

e first Portuguese embassy to Peking took place as
as the year 1520. It was headed by one Perez,
ound the imperial court in a fury at the depreda-
committed at sea by his countrymen. He was sent
under custody to Canton, the provincial govern-
of which place was no doubt instructed to arrest
r attempts on the part of strangers to communicate
he court. At Canton, Perez was robbed of his prop-
hrown into prison, and ultimately, it is supposed,
death. "The various embassies," adds Sir J. F.
"which followed in three successive centuries to

[1] C. Macfarlane, *Romance of Travel*, vol. ii. chap. 5.

Digitized by Google

Peking, met with different kinds of treatment; but, in whatever spirit conducted, they were (previous to the Opium War) equally unsuccessful in the attainment of any important points of negotiation."

The year after that in which Perez started on his mission, his countryman, Alfonso de Melo, with six vessels, and in ignorance of what had taken place, arrived in China. He became immediately involved in fierce conflicts with the indignant Chinese, who put to death more than twenty Portuguese prisoners who fell into their hands, and forced Melo's squadron to retire.

About the middle of the sixteenth century, the Portuguese, however, succeeded in establishing themselves at Macao, on a small peninsula near the mouth of the Canton river; the only European colony—and it with very limited success—that was planted on the coast of China until our own days and the recent war with the Celestial Empire. It seems that the Portuguese had a temporary refuge on shore as early as 1537, being allowed to erect sheds for drying goods, which were introduced under the name of tribute. By degrees the foreigners were permitted to build some warehouses, for which privilege they paid an annual tribute and rent. They erected there, by degrees, a number of good houses, and the merchants who went to reside took with them their wives and families, which was contrary to the laws of the empire, but connived at by the mandarins, who probably derived some advantage from granting this indulgence. Macao was honored by being the place of banishment of the great Portuguese poet Camoens, parts of whose beautiful poem of the "Lusiad" are said

Digitized by Google

e been here written in a grotto which still bears me.

new Portuguese town of Macao being situated at tremity of a small peninsula, joined by a narrow us to the island of Heang-shan, the Chinese gov- nt caused a wall to be built across the slip of land arrier; for although the Chinese were not insensi- the advantages of foreign commerce, they adhered ir system of exclusion, and while they strictly pro- d the strangers from entering their cities, or even g the bounds of their own settlement, they jeal- watched all their proceedings. An officer was ted at Macao, who governed the town in the of the emperor, and whose duty it was to give nation to his superiors of the conduct of the itants.

attempts of the Roman Church in the thirteenth urteenth centuries had left little discernible fruit. III., the enterprising king of Portugal, deter- to send the Christian religion to the heathen which God had opened to his commerce. The de- Francis Xavier was the first missionary who went under his care. He embarked at Lisbon, April 8, arrived at Goa in India the following year, labored and in the neighboring countries for six years, and letermined to carry the gospel to Japan and China. great success in Japan, he died upon the threshold work in China, December 2, 1552. His remains carried to Goa for interment, but the little island ang-chuen, on which he died, is a place of resort grims till the present day.

long after the Portuguese had opened a trade

Digitized by Google

with China, the Spaniards, rivaling their example, began to send out ships to the Indian ocean, and in the reign of Philip II. established a colony at Manila (A. D. 1543), in the Philippine Islands, where they entered into commercial dealings with the Chinese merchants, who carried silks and porcelain thither for sale. But, although they still possess the privilege of trading at Canton, as well as at Macao and at Amoy, the Spaniards have derived less advantage from an intercourse with the "Middle Kingdom" than most other nations, notwithstanding the vast advantage they have in the locality of Manila, which is within a few days' sale of China, and approached with equal facility in either monsoon. But if these ultra-devout people did not grasp the commercial advantages within their reach, they paid every attention to the propagation of their faith. Manila, in a little time, was well stocked with churches and religious houses, and with monks; and of these last two were sent over to convert the Chinese about the year 1570.

The appearance of foreigners in a Chinese city was so rare a sight that the house in which the monks lodged was constantly surrounded by the populace, who mounted the walls and the housetops to obtain a glimpse of the men from an unknown land. When they went out sedan-chairs were provided for their accommodation, but they could scarcely make their way along the streets in consequence of the crowds that were assembled to see them. They found the country through which they traveled extremely fertile and well cultivated, and the people, who were then generally employed in harrowing and seed-sowing, appeared to be in comfortable circumstances; but the strangers were so closely watched that

Digitized by Google

had little opportunity of gaining much information
ecting the real condition of the natives or of visit-
the interior of their abodes.

t length the Spaniards were politely but decidedly
rmed that their visit had been sufficiently prolonged;
without having received a direct reply with regard
he object of their mission, they were escorted to
on, where a bark was in readiness to convey
back to Manila; and thus ended their hopes of
agating Christianity among the Chinese. Other
npts were made with as little success until the fol-
ng century, when the Jesuits, Dominicans and
nciscans undertook missions to China. As they
in general more politic men than monks of other
rs, and in the habit of mixing more with the world,
succeeded better than those who had gone before
. They commenced the great work they had in
in a very cautious manner, giving out that they
holy men from the West, who, having heard of the
lers of the Celestial Empire, had come to finish their
in that celebrated land; and one of them gained
reputation of being a great astrologer by construct-
a sun-dial and an armillary sphere, which excited
h admiration.

aving conciliated the good-will of the natives, they
permitted to remain, and when they had gained
cient influence to make the attempt, they obtained
e to build a Christian church, and succeeded in
ing many converts.

uch was the state of affairs when Wan-lieh, the
eenth emperor of the Ming dynasty, ascended the
ne of his ancestors in the year 1571. Wan-lieh

Digitized by Google

is highly spoken of in Chinese history as being just, wise and benevolent, and altogether as a prince of an excellent disposition. He caused to be published every three months, for the convenience of the public, a book containing the name, rank and native city of every officer of the empire—a custom which has been continued ever since. It is called the Red Book, from the color; red being much used in connection with the ceremonial matters of both religion and the state: it may be mentioned, for instance, that there are before the portals of every official mansion two high poles which are uniformly painted red. There are nine degrees of rank among the officers of government, and alterations are continually made in their body by the advancement of some, and by the appointment of new magistrates to the offices of each province, and the admission of fresh candidates after every examination. The nobility is therefore, in fact, a constantly fluctuating body, and the Red Book is a court calendar corrected regularly according to the changes that have occurred.

The long reign of Wan-lieh was disturbed from its commencement by the irruptions of the Manchus, whose power was fast increasing, while that of the Ming princes was as rapidly declining; and at length the Manchu prince Tien-ming, provoked by the oppressive conduct of some Chinese officers on the frontiers, formally declared war against the empire, and published a manifesto stating his reasons for so doing.

Just at this juncture Wan-lieh died, and was succeeded by his grandson, Hi-tsung, who reigned only seven years, during which the war was continued with varied success, and it was still undecided when the last of

Digitized by Google

Chinese sovereigns, Hwai-tsung, ascended the throne
he year 1627.

The late emperor, Hi-tsung, and the Tartar king,
n-ming, died within a few months of each other, the
er being succeeded by his son Tien-tsung, who prose-
ed the war against Hwai-tsung with a view to the
quest of the empire. The whole country was now
a most dreadful state of anarchy, for the regular
ops being all engaged in the contest with the Tartars,
re were none to stop the progress of rebellion, which
an to show itself in all the provinces. Several
ing chiefs raised revolts, and collected large armed
ds, with which they ravaged the country and plun-
ed the cities with impunity; nor had the magistrates
power to prevent such outrages by enforcing the
s, which they could only do by military aid.

The way was prepared for the revolution which
ced on the throne the Manchu Tartars, who have
d it until the present time. We will dwell a little
our history upon the events which lifted to a position
so vast power a race which has given to China some
he ablest of its long line of rulers, and one which at
sent seems to be the appointed agency of Providence
ntroduce the civilization of the West, and with it the
wledge of the doctrines of Christianity.

The boldest of the insurgent leaders, whose name was
kung, even aspired to the imperial dignity, and
ing raised an immense army, he made himself
ter of the provinces of Ho-nan and Shen-si, where
secured his authority by putting to death the prin-
l officers of the cities, and freeing the people
n all taxes and contributions. The support of the

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY - WIDENER LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

commonalty being thus gained, he marched toward Peking, the capital, sending several of his party before him disguised as merchants, who went into the city, where they hired shops and carried on trade till an opportunity offered for executing their project, which was to gain over some of the soldiers of the guard and by their assistance to open the gates to the rebel army. All happened according to their wishes; and the night on which the treacherous soldiers were to keep guard was fixed for the entrance of Li-kung and his troops, who on the gates being opened rushed into the town and commenced a furious attack on the palace. The officers fled in dismay; the guards of the palace went over to the enemy; when the unfortunate emperor, seeing no other means of escaping from the foe, stabbed his daughter with his own hand, and then put an end to his own existence. The young lady was carried off by a faithful slave, and having survived the effects of the blow, was afterward married to a Chinese grandee; but the empress and many ladies of the court, dreading nothing so much as falling into the hands of the rebels, killed themselves in despair.

The triumphant chief caused himself to be proclaimed emperor, and taking possession of the palace, proceeded to exercise the sovereign authority, to which the people of Peking and the northern provinces universally submitted; but one of the loyal generals, Wu San-kwei, who still had an army under his command, held out with determined bravery, and fortified himself in a city on the confines of Tartary, which was speedily besieged by the usurper, whose cruelties had already made him hateful to all except his own soldiers. Enraged at the

Digitized by Google

osition of Wu San-kwei, the tyrant caused the aged
er of that general to be brought, loaded with chains,
er the walls of the city, and sent word to the general
if he did not surrender the old man would be in-
tly put to death; on which the unhappy son ap-
red on the wall, and on his knees, while the tears
amed down his face, received the commands of his
erable parent never to acknowledge the base usurper
his sovereign. Scarcely had the father uttered the
ds, when his head was severed from his body: a sad
t for the eyes of a son, whose filial affection was of
deep character so frequently met with among the
nese.

Vu San-kwei had now a double cause for vengeance—
death of his prince and the murder of his father.
therefore made terms with the Manchu Tartars, and,
d by them, soon expelled the usurper from the capi-
The Tartar prince determined to keep to himself
throne which he had won; and he was so well re-
ed at Peking, where the Chinese hailed him as a
verer, and he conducted matters with so much dex-
ty and prudence, that he found scarcely any difficulty
ssuming the sovereignty and being proclaimed em-
or. Scarcely, however, had he been invested with
high dignity than he was seized with a fatal dis-
er, of which he died in a few days, having named as
successor his son—Shun-chi—a child only six years
age, whose uncle was appointed to govern as regent
ing his minority.

uch was the revolution (A.D. 1644) which placed the
sent imperial family of the Manchu Tartar race on
throne of China; but some years elapsed before the

Digitized by Google

whole country was brought under submission to a foreign ruler; for although the provinces of the north, which had been disgusted by the tyranny of the usurping chief, had not hesitated to bestow the title of emperor on a Tartar, some of the southern cities supported the claims of the native princes, and a long civil war ensued, during which the loyalists kept possession of the south, and two or three princes of the Ming family were successively proclaimed emperors of Nanking, and held their courts in that city.

The Chinese general Wu San-kwei was raised to a very high rank, and a principality was bestowed on him, with the government of one of the principal cities of Shen-si. The fate of the usurper Li-kung was never known, but it was generally supposed he was killed in some engagement with the Manchus.

It was during the reign of the last emperor of the native Chinese dynasty of Ming, and the troubles which ended in the overthrow of that ancient family, and contemporaneous with the new order of things established in the supremacy of a foreign power, that the Dutch and the English from Europe were first led by Providence to put in their claims for a share of the productions and trade of China.

The Dutch, who had recently emancipated themselves from the Spanish yoke, were at this time at war both with the Spaniards and the Portuguese. The fierce conflicts between these three nations, who waged war by land as well as by sea, who almost invariably fought wherever they met, and who paid very little respect to the neutrality of the bays and harbors of China, were certainly well calculated still farther to estrange so

Digitized by Google

-loving and timid a people as the inhabitants of
elestial Empire, and to fill them with horror of the
gners of the West. And worse followed. Having
ted several Portuguese armaments, the Dutch cap-
Malacca, the Spice Islands and other places, and
e year 1622 they attacked the Portuguese settlement
acao on the Canton river, with a squadron of seven-
ships. Being repulsed, with the loss of their ad-
and about three hundred men, the Dutch retired
stablished themselves on the Pang-hu or Pescadore
ds. Their occupation of this position was a source
eat annoyance to the Chinese authorities and to the
guese and Spaniards. According to the custom of
days, the Dutch began to build a fort, and obliged
native Chinese to do their work, treating them all
hile with great harshness and severity. Most of
unfortunate Chinese had been kidnapped or made
ners by the Dutch in the course of their attacks on
coasts of the continent. The Chinese authorities
d the invaders a liberty to trade if they would only
farther off to Formosa, an island lying in the track
r commerce, which has of late years attracted public
tion, partly on account of the occasional massacres
e crews of foreign vessels wrecked on some portions
shores inhabited by wild aboriginal tribes, which
compelled our government to inflict severe punish-
on some of their towns, and partly as a field of
tian missions. The beginning of foreign inter-
e was characteristic. In this rich and beautiful
l the Dutch made a settlement in the year 1625,
ng Fort Zealand on its western shore. They in-
ed with the ancient laws and municipal institutions

Digitized by Google

of the islanders, and otherwise acted precipitately and unwisely, thereby losing the good-will of the people. They, however, did not neglect the moral and spiritual interests of the natives. In 1626 a devoted and able Dutch Protestant minister, George Candidius, was the first appointed to labor among the people, and it is said that in sixteen months more than a hundred of the principal men were converted to the truths of Christianity. The work is reported to have been advancing rapidly, with an extending foundation of churches and schools, when the Dutch governors in India, fearful of offending the Japanese, among whom they had obtained a settlement, and who were then persecuting and exterminating the Portuguese Roman Catholics in Japan, restricted these benevolent labors and discouraged the further conversion of the inhabitants of Formosa. These restrictions arose entirely out of the dread of losing the then profitable trade with Japan; and it must be admitted that in many parts of the East, if the merchant has often paved the way for the missionary, the passion of trade and love of lucre have not unfrequently thwarted the best efforts made for religious conversion. During the struggles which ensued after the overthrow of the Chinese Ming dynasty many thousands of families emigrated from the continent to Formosa, but so long as the Dutch remained on that island their trade with the Chinese was very limited.

The English, who were destined to have in after years so very large a portion of the Chinese trade, scarcely had a glimpse of success until the reign of Charles I. A very unfortunate attempt was made by Queen Elizabeth in 1596, when some English vessels under the

Digitized by Google

and of Benjamin Wood, who bore letters from the
to the emperor, made sail for Canton; but the
were lost on their way out, and thus a damper was
n such English enterprises for the space of forty
Under the reign of Charles I. another attempt
nade to open a trade; and on the 28th of May,
a small squadron of English ships, under the
and of Captain Weddell, passed the mouths of the
n river and anchored off Macao, being the first
s of that nation seen at the place. The jealous
guese intrigued against them, and so did the Jesuit
onaries. As for the Celestials, the acquaintance of
English with them, as usual, commenced with a
on and a fight. The Chinese were induced by the
guese, who represented the English to be a wicked
ruel nation with whom they should have no inter-
e, to fire upon the ships in the hope of driving
away. The result was, that Weddell attacked and
red the fort, burned and destroyed some public
ngs of the neighborhood, killed and wounded a
many of the people, and then took as lawful prizes
l of their trading-junks. Weddell thus compelled
to open trade with him. So far as relates to the
sh, there was, as may be supposed, after this inau-
us opening, a lull in ultra-Eastern enterprise, which
twenty-seven years. It was prolonged by the great
wars, and by the wars the English were waging
the Dutch, whose naval force in the Eastern seas
t that time far superior to theirs.
e French, though at times very active in the
boring countries of Cochin-China and Siam, never
formal mission to Peking or made any strenuous

Digitized by Google

efforts to obtain trade until the close of the Opium War, when a treaty was negotiated in behalf of his nation by Mons. de Lagrené. Yet it is worthy of notice that the missionaries of that nation have made Europeans better acquainted with China, and given the Chinese more knowledge of Europe, than those of any other country; and that their treaty, above mentioned, was the first, of those made at a time when the Chinese were in a position which compelled them to accede to the demands of the Western powers, which made mention of Christianity and endeavored to remove the barriers to its promulgation.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER X.

THE MANCHU DYNASTY.—FIRST EMPERORS.

IE family of the youthful emperor Shun-chi with great wisdom engaged excellent tutors, who not only ructed him in the literature of the country, but in- ed into his mind such principles as were likely to him for the government of the conquered nation. er the care of these able monitors he learned to be and moderate toward the people over whom the ne of war had placed him; and being naturally inclined, he attained to manhood with just such ciples as were best calculated to reconcile the ese to foreign dominion.

While Shun-chi was pursuing his studies the regent his generals were engaged in reducing the southern of the country to subjection, and all the finest inces were devastated by the long and fearful con- Many of the great cities were laid in ruins; for rever the Tartars met with resistance they set fire to houses, and demolished all the public buildings ex- the Buddhist temples.

he traces of this war are still visible in China, where y an empty space is bounded by a dilapidated wall ch once surrounded a populous town, but now encloses a few market-gardens; and some of the chief cities

Digitized by Google

are not much more than half their original size, as may be seen by the extent of their walls, which at present encompass large spaces of ground where no houses are remaining, and which are usually devoted to the culture of vegetables for food. A great part of Nanking, with the imperial palace, was destroyed at this time, and there are now within its walls orchards, fields, garden-grounds and scattered farm-houses, not above one-third of the area being occupied by the present city.

One of the most formidable opponents of the Tartars was a maritime chief, whom history, inasmuch as his cause failed, styles a pirate, known by the name of Koshinga, a noted character in the history of the period, not only for his loyalty to the Chinese royal race, but for his exploits against the Dutch, who had by this time considerably increased their Indian trade, and had strengthened their settlement in the island of Formosa.

Ching Chilung, the father of Koshinga, one of the richest merchants in China, had, in the early part of the war, fitted out a fleet at his own expense to support the native princes; but after the accession of Shun-chi he accepted the offer of a high post at court, leaving the command of his fleet to his son, Koshinga, who, instead of following the example of his father, remained faithful to the cause of the legitimate princes. This chief was the terror of the Indian seas, where no foreign vessels dared to appear during the wars, so that all trade was for a long time suspended. At length, the Tartars, having taken Nanking, laid siege to Canton, which by the aid of Koshinga's fleet was enabled to hold out for eight months, but was at the end of that time obliged to surrender, and the last prince of the Ming family fled

Digitized by Google

he court of the king of Pegu, where he was received
h the greatest hospitality.

Every place of importance having now submitted to
conquerors, the new government was acknowledged
oughout the empire; and shortly afterward, on the
th of the regent, in 1652, Shun-chi, although only
rteen years of age, took the government into his own
ds. The young sovereign, who no doubt acted by
advice of prudent and experienced ministers, suf-
d the Chinese to retain all the rights and immunities
y had enjoyed under their native rulers; but, as he
nd it necessary to satisfy his Tartar subjects also, by
nitting them to a share of the honors and emoluments
he empire, he doubled the number of officers of state
members of councils, making one half Chinese and
other half Tartars—a regulation which continues to
day.

The Chinese, however, were required to submit to one
k of subjection which was far more obnoxious and
ead more general discontent among them than any
nges that could have been introduced into the form
government. This was, that they should divest them-
es of the thick raven locks which they had been
ustomed to cherish with peculiar care, and adopt in
r stead the Tartar fashion of having the head
ven, except sufficient to form a long plaited queue
ind. A haughty and civilized people would natur-
feel deeply humiliated by such a badge of subjection
tribe of foreign barbarians. They resisted it with
gnation; and it is asserted that many chose to sub-
their heads to the executioner rather than to the
ber, for that was the cruel alternative, as it was

Digitized by Google

found impossible to enforce the decree by any gentler means than treating disobedience as rebellion, and punishing the offender accordingly. The queues were thus fully established, and have been worn ever since. However in one locality an alleviation was granted to this indignity. The last province to submit was that on the southern coast, next eastward of Canton, to which, in commemoration of the final success of their arms, the new dynasty gave the name Fuh-kien—"happily established." Its bold and energetic people received permission to retain the black turban to cover the shaved head, which they hated as the badge of submission to the Tartars; and this turban they proudly continue to wear. It is a strange phenomenon that, much as the Chinese hate the queue, they dread the loss of it, as their acute conquerors made cutting off the queue a punishment to mark the more ignominous crimes, and the want of it, like cropped ears in the Middle Ages in Europe, to be a proclamation of a rogue.

There were some few alterations made also in the national costume, but they were not very striking, nor would it be very easy to describe them. With regard to the laws, the religion and the system of government, the conquest produced no change, for the Tartar sovereigns governed, like their Chinese predecessors, according to the rules laid down in the ancient books; so that, although the emperor of China is absolute lord of the lands and the people, he is in some degree restrained by the laws as well as his subjects. He has first the nui-koh, or private cabinet, composed of four chief ministers—two Tartars and two Chinese—who, together with certain high officers of state, form the kiun-ki-chu, or

Digitized by Google

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY - WIDENER LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

eral council; but the ordinary business of the gov-
ment is conducted by the luh-pu, or six boards or
artments.

hese boards, or their elements, were among the
iest institutions of this wonderful empire. The
ness of the first, or Board of Civil Office, is to
e care that all offices under the government are
perly filled, and that those to whom authority is en-
ted shall use it with moderation and discharge their
ral duties with punctuality. The members of this
rd are responsible for the conduct of all the viceroys,
istrates and civil officers of every description, and
obliged at stated periods to send in an account of
r proceedings to the emperor; so that if any of them
guilty of misconduct, it is almost sure to be made
wn, and they are punished according to their misde-
nors. Each governor of a province or city is obliged
end a report to the board once in three years as to
conduct of all magistrates under his jurisdiction,
also of any injuries done by himself to his poorer
hren when seated on the magisterial bench to dis-
se justice; and this statement is compared with that
hers, who have perhaps been secretly keeping a watch-
eye upon him; so that it is a dangerous experiment
a magistrate to attempt to conceal his own delin-
ncies, since they are almost certain to come to the
wledge of the board; and he is then punished not
for the offence, but also for the concealment.
se regulations are intended to protect the people
oppression, and must certainly act as a check to an
ue exertion of power on the part of the authorities,
ough they may frequently be evaded.

Digitized by Google

The second, or Board of Finance, has the charge of the government revenues, and its duty is to superintend all taxes and duties paid into the imperial treasury and storehouses; some being collected in money and others in kind. They regulate salaries and pensions, distribute the proper quantities of rice, silks and money which are allowed to princes and officers of state, and keep general accounts of the receipts and expenditures of the government, the various monopolies, the mines, the public mint and other sources of revenue. The third is the Board of Rites, to which belongs the direction of the state ceremonials observed among the Chinese. This board appoints the days for holding festivals and royal hunts, and for the performance of sacrifices and other religious rites. It regulates the costume to be worn by the different orders of the people, the etiquette of the court as well as, to some extent, of private society, the reception of ambassadors, the entertainments given by the emperor; and, in short, it has the superintendence of those outward forms and usages which in China are considered of so much importance. It superintends also education, the competitive examinations, and correspondence with foreign nations. The fourth is the Board of War, which has the control of the army and navy; the appointment of their officers, systems of discipline, commissary matters, postal arrangement by means of couriers, etc., and forts and garrisons. The fifth is judiciary in its character, the Board of Punishments, which superintends the execution of the penal laws, appeals, pardons, fines and cases of capital punishment. It is a fact which exhibits the great moderation and equity of the government that, among those hundreds

Digitized by Google

illions of subjects, capital punishment can in no case dministered without the final reference of it to this d and the imperial consent. The laws generally are and wise beyond those of other Asiatic countries; ed, they compare favorably with those of the best archies of Europe. Great corruptions have, how-, of late years especially, crept into the administra- of them. The sixth court is the Board of Public ks, which is charged with the care of the roads, the ls, bridges, temples, palaces and all public edifices. uring the Ming dynasty these boards were located at Nanking and Peking; but Shun-chi suppressed e at Nanking, and united the members with those eking, where all the business has since been trans- l, each of the six boards having its own separate lings.

s soon as the Tartar prince was firmly seated on the ne, the Russian emperor Alexius, the father of r the Great, sent an embassy to China, with a view stablish a commercial treaty between the two em- ; but the attempt failed from a curious circum- ce, and one that has since been a cause of dispute the British government. It was a custom of the ar sovereigns to exact from all those over whom claimed supremacy an act of submission called the au, which consists in making nine prostrations to ground. This ceremony is equivalent to an acknow- ment of vassalage; therefore the Russian ambas- r very properly refused to perform it, as it would have become him thus to commit the dignity of his er, who was an independent as well as a powerful ce. The refusal of the envoy gave great offence to

Digitized by Google

Shun-chi, who, in consequence, declined receiving th embassy. But this was not the only point of disagre ment between the two monarchs, for the Russians ha taken possession of some territories in Siberia whic were considered as a part of Manchu Tartary; and they would not give them up, but, on the contrar erected a fort there for the purpose of defending then the Chinese government commenced a war for the recovery, which was continued for a long time, the Ru sians still approaching nearer and nearer to China b new conquests, until at length the dominions of th emperor of Russia actually joined to the territories o China.

Not long after the failure of the Russian embassy, i 1655, the Dutch, who were very anxious to open trad with Canton and establish a factory there, sent am bassadors to the emperor with a petition to that effec They were very courteously received by the viceroy o Canton, who accepted the presents they carried to him.

The governor of Canton was a handsome young Ta tar of prepossessing manners, who invited the Dutch em voys to dine with him, and entertained them in a ver sumptuous style. They were received in the great ha of the palace by his mother, who had just arrived fro Tartary, and, according to the habits of the Tarta ladies, made no scruple of appearing before stranger of the opposite sex. The dinner was served in th Chinese fashion, on a number of small tables, not cov ered with cloths, but ornamented with painting an gilding, at each of which two guests were seated. Th meats were served in silver dishes and the wine i golden cups, and during the banquet a party of actor

Digitized by Google

ıdidly habited in the ancient costume of the coun-
performed a play at one end of the hall for the
ement of the company.

ıe Dutch were not a little surprised at the magnif-
e displayed by the Tartar governor, and departed
ly gratified with the reception they had met with,
rom which they augured favorably for their mission;
n this they were mistaken, for soon after, when they
ed at Peking, they were scarcely treated with com-
civility by the authorities there, who provided them
a miserable lodging and very scanty entertainment
the time was appointed for their audience.

ıe sovereigns of the East usually hold their levées
eak of day; consequently the ambassadors, to their
annoyance, were conducted to the palace over night
obliged to sit up in their state dresses, that they
t be ready at the moment their attendance was re-
d. Seated on the floor in an outer apartment, which
quite destitute of furniture, they had leisure to con-
late by the light of a few lamps a motley group of
gs in the same uncomfortable situation as themselves,
aiting also for the honor of being admitted to the
nce of the emperor. In one corner of the room
a barbarian envoy from a prince of the Southern
ars, dressed in a long coat of sheepskin, dyed crim-
with large boots, bare arms and a horse's tail dang-
from his cap. Contrasted with this rough-looking
onage, was the ambassador of a Mongol khan, who
a blue silk dress, so richly embroidered that it
ed like beaten gold; and very different from either
ese was the representative of the Grand Lama, who
ttired in a yellow robe, with a broad hat, like that

Digitized by Google

worn by a cardinal, and a string of large beads round his neck. There were many other figures, all equally novel to the eyes of the Europeans, who were no less objects of curiosity to the strangers.

At length the welcome dawn appeared, when, on a given signal, all started up, and shaking off the weariness that had oppressed them, followed the officials whose business it was to conduct them to the hall of audience. This hall is of white marble, the entrance to which is by five flights of steps; the middle flight being reserved exclusively for the emperor, and never profaned by the foot of any other person. Here a scene of extraordinary pomp and splendor exhibited itself to the astonished eyes of the Dutch. The glittering dresses of the attendants; the gorgeous banners displayed by the soldiers ranged on each side of the hall; the superb throne, around which were displayed figures of the sun made of gold, and silver circles representing the moon, with the crowd of officers and attendants in their state robes, produced altogether a most imposing effect.

The emperor had not yet made his appearance, but all the ambassadors were directed to prostrate themselves three times before the empty throne, and at each time of kneeling to bow down their heads to the ground three times till their foreheads touched the marble flooring. This was the very ceremony the Russian envoy had refused to perform; but as the Hollanders were extremely anxious for the success of their embassy, they did not think it prudent to make any scruple about the matter, and went through the ko-tau with a good grace. The sound of bells soon announced the approach of Shunchi; all present fell on their knees as he ascended the

Digitized by Google

, every eye being bent toward the earth, as if none worthy to look upon him. He walked up the hall a stately air and seated himself on the throne, when whole assembly arose, and the different envoys were forward to do him homage by a repetition of the prostrations; but not a single word nor even the test mark of notice did the haughty Tartar vouch- to the disappointed Europeans, who withdrew with ery kind feelings toward a prince before whom they humbled themselves to so little purpose. Both the ars and Chinese had, in fact, some contempt for the ch people, in consequence of having learned that e was no emperor or king in Holland; for they did understand the nature of a republic, but thought Dutch must be a very poor and mean nation, that d not afford to maintain a king. However, before ambassadors quitted Peking, they were officially in- ed that they might come to China once in eight s to bring presents, but not to trade. The presents ght by ambassadors were received as a kind of tribute acknowledgment of vassalage; and thus the Chinese bed the absurd notion that all the countries of Eu- from which embassies have been sent to the em- r of China were subjects to him. The bloody wars he last three reigns have compelled them to see their ake.

is one of the remarkable facts in the history of Ro- ism, which reveals how much of power, how much orldly policy, and how much of the elements of final at of its own ambitious ends it embodies, that this haughty Manchu ruler of the empire of China placed self under the tuition of a German Jesuit, named

Digitized by Google

Adam Schaal, whom he at length raised to the dignity of chief minister of state, and consulted on every affair of importance; so that, however strange it may appear, the empire of China was for a time governed in reality by a Christian missionary. The emperor would often spend the whole day with him at his own house, in order to profit by his learning and knowledge of public and of scientific matters; and although he himself never became a convert to Christianity, he did not prohibit others from embracing that faith, and allowed two churches to be built at Peking, where several missionaries came to reside.

In the mean time, the thousands of families who still preserved their attachment to the late dynasty and had emigrated to the island of Formosa, remained there with the Dutch, who were in possession of a great part of the country. But they soon had cause to repent of having admitted the Chinese loyalists into the island, for their numbers rapidly increased to an alarming extent, and it was discovered that they were holding a secret correspondence with the maritime chief Koshinga, who persisted in his opposition to the new Tartar government of China. This discovery excited some apprehension on the part of the Dutch, whose fears were not without foundation; for Koshinga, who had formed the bold project of conquering the island and setting himself up as an independent sovereign, landed with a force of twenty thousand men, and, being joined by the Chinese emigrants, demanded the surrender of the Dutch forts. A desperate conflict took place, in which the Dutch suffered very severely and were obliged to retire within the forts, from which they sent a deputation to the camp of

Digitized by Google

invader to propose terms of accommodation; but
hinga refused to make any terms, saying that For-
had always belonged to the Chinese, although they
allowed strangers to reside there, but that as they now
ired it for their own occupation, the foreigners must
ediately depart, as it was no longer convenient to let
remain. A regular warfare was then commenced
ossession of the island, which lasted many months,
the Dutch were obliged to give up the contest and
ke themselves to their settlements in Java, on which
hinga assumed the sovereignty in 1662, and was
d by the Europeans "king of Formosa." Great
es of Chinese loyalists from time to time left their
try to place themselves under his protection, so that
number of his subjects was constantly increasing,
he made frequent descents on the maritime prov-
of China guarded by the Tartars, who were much
ssed by his attacks.

bout the time that Koshinga achieved this conquest
emperor Shun-chi died, at the early age of twenty-
and was succeeded by his son Kang-hi, who was
only eight years old.

ue new emperor became one of the greatest monarchs
ever ruled over the Chinese territories. Being so
g when his father died, four of the ministers were
inted to conduct the government during his minor-
but as they were all rather advanced in years, and
gly prejudiced in favor of the ancient usages of the
try, they employed the authority with which they
entrusted to abolish the innovations made by the
emperor and restore all things to their former state.
cause of dissatisfaction was the toleration which had

Digitized by Google

been granted to the Christians, which they feared might in time, if it were continued, be prejudicial to the ancient forms of manners, customs and usages which had endured for so many ages; and as this was in their eyes the greatest evil that could possibly befall the country, they used their best endeavors to prevent it by putting in prison Adam Schaal and another German Jesuit, Ferdinand Verbiest, who had also stood high in the favor of Shunchi, and had been employed to assist Schaal in the affairs of the state. The two churches were then destroyed, and all who had professed the Christian faith were persecuted with the utmost severity by fines, imprisonment, exile, and some even with death. Another cause, as influential, was that the disputes which had arisen very shortly after their settlement in the country between the Jesuits and the Dominicans and other Romanist monks had degenerated by this time into a most violent and unseemly quarrel, and that these teachers of Christianity had begun to set a woeful example of uncharitableness, malice and contention. Precisely the same thing had happened a few years before in Japan, and had ended in causing the massacre of more than a hundred thousand Japanese. The two Jesuits were after a time liberated, but the general persecution of the Christians was continued till the young emperor was of an age to take the government into his own hands. One of his first acts was to put a stop to the cruelties to which the Christian converts had been subjected, and he made amends to Verbiest for the sufferings he had endured by raising him to the same rank which his father had bestowed on Adam Schaal, who had lately died of old age.

In the year 1692, Kang-hi issued a decree permitting

Digitized by Google

the free exercise of the Christian religion, and putting it, with regard to privileges and immunities, on the same footing with Buddhism, which may be called the dominant or most prevalent faith of the country; for the doctrines of Confucius, which were followed only by the most refined, were properly not so much a religion as a code of morals and manners.

During the regency Koshinga had died, but his son had taken upon himself the government of Formosa, and as he inherited his father's hatred toward the Tartars, and was equally powerful at sea, he constantly ravaged the whole line of the south-eastern coast of China. The naval force of the empire not being sufficiently strong to contend with that of the pirate king, the government issued an order that all its subjects dwelling near the sea-shore should withdraw ten miles into the interior, so as to leave only a barren tract of country to the invaders. The inhabitants of the Portuguese settlement of Macao were the only persons exempted from the general order; probably because the government was indifferent about the safety of a foreign colony, particularly as the country beyond was defended by the barrier-wall that confined the Portuguese within certain limits. A great number of villages near the coast were entirely destroyed, and thousands of families who had lived by fishing were reduced to great distress by being obliged to remove from the vicinity of the sea. The fishermen, however, converted their boats into smaller ones, in which, with the assistance of their families, they could continue their occupation in more shallow waters. The expulsion of the inhabitants from the sea-coast produced the desired effect; for the Formosan

Digitized by Google

chief, whose principal resources had been derived from plundering the maritime towns and villages, found his power decline with his means of acquiring wealth; and although he contrived, with some difficulty, to support his authority till his death, his son, about twenty years after the accession of Kang-hi, gave up his island in consideration of a title and a pension for life.

Formosa was thus united to the Chinese empire, and has proved a valuable acquisition, as it is extremely fertile, producing in abundance fruits, corn and rice, of which large quantities are sent annually to China. The loyalists who had taken refuge there, having lost their leader, made submission to the Tartar emperor, and received a full pardon, but were obliged to shave their heads, like the rest of the nation.

Such of the poor islanders as did not flee to the mountains in the interior, where they rapidly degenerated into an almost savage condition, were compelled to adopt the dress and manners of the people of the continent. They were cruelly treated by the Chinese because they had submitted to the Dutch and had adopted many European customs and notions. With more prudent management and a few hundred more troops the Hollanders might certainly have kept possession of Formosa.

But brief and, in some respects, unwise as was their dominion, the Dutch left behind them deep traces of their civilization and religion. The Jesuit Du Halde, who wrote seventy years after their expulsion, and who was not likely to judge too favorably of them, says of the Chinese on the island, "There are many who yet understand the Dutch language, who can read the books

Digitized by Google

of the Dutch, and who in writing use their letters; many fragments of pious Dutch books are found amongst them." The same Romanist writer takes pains to misrepresent the Protestant religion by saying that while they adored no idols, and abominated every approach to them, they themselves performed no act of worship whatsoever, and recited no prayers. The entire population of the island is at this day estimated at about three millions, which is as much as the population of Scotland, and more than that of several independent kingdoms on the European continent. Formosa has long been familiarly known as the granary of the Chinese maritime provinces, to which she stands in the same relation as Sicily did to ancient Rome. If wars intervene or violent storms prevent the shipment of rice to the coast, a scarcity presently ensues, and extensive distress, with another certain result, multiplied piracies by the destitute Chinese. In addition to the rice, which annually employs in the coast trade alone more than two hundred large junks, Formosa exports an immense quantity of sugar. Much of the camphor sold in the Canton market is also supplied by Formosa. Among the merchants of the island are men with very large capital and abundant commercial enterprise. The position of Formosa is admirable as affording facilities for trade; within thirty leagues of China, and a hundred and fifty leagues of Japan, its situation and resources make it a desirable station for the commerce which is now opening, and yet to be opened, in those long-forbidden lands. But, unfortunately, except Ke-lung, there is no good harbor for large vessels on the whole coast. That portion of Ilha Formosa, or "Beautiful Island,"

Digitized by Google

which is possessed by the Chinese colonists well deserves its name; the scenery is charming, the air wholesome and the soil very fertile. The numerous rivulets from the mountains fertilize the extensive plains which spread below. All the trees are so nicely ranged that when the rice is planted, as usual, in rows or in square plats, the vast plain of the southern part of the island resembles a garden. Almost all grains and fruits may be produced on one part of the island or another, but rice, sugar, camphor and tobacco are the chief exports. It is curious to remark that, though lying opposite to the Chinese coast, and within one day's sail of the port of Amoy, Formosa does not appear to have attracted the notice of the Chinese government till a modern date. According to their history, they had no knowledge of it till the year 1430, when an officer of the imperial court was driven upon the island by a storm. A century after this date it is described as being uncultivated and inhabited only by savages. According to recent accounts, some of these aborigines remain in a very rude condition; they occupy regions difficult of access, and are wholly independent of the Chinese. They have no king or common head, but are ruled by petty chiefs and councils of elders, and in many other respects resemble the tribes of North American Indians. They have no books, no written language. In their marriages, which are made by mutual choice, it is not the bridegroom that takes home the bride, but the bride that takes home the bridegroom, who lives in her parents' house and returns no more to the house of his father; and therefore, it is said, they think it no happiness to have male children. They are of a slender shape and olive com-

Digitized by Google

plexion; they wear long hair, blacken their teeth and tattoo their skins; they are said to be honest and frank among themselves, but excessively vindictive when outraged. In the mountains they go clad in deer skins. Some of them are more civilized, but these live in towns and villages in the plains or open country, and are completely in subjection to the Chinese. Hence there have been, and still are, frequent insurrections and internal wars. The capital of the whole island of Formosa is called Tai-wan, and is described as ranking amongst cities of the first class in China in the variety and richness of its merchandise and in population.

Kang-hi was a prince to make himself very popular, for he was a great hunter, and thus acquired a high military reputation among the Tartars, who regarded hunting and war as pursuits equally honorable and important; and he gained the good-will of the Chinese by honoring and rewarding literary merit, and by attending in person to the welfare of his subjects. Every year he made a progress through some of the provinces, to see that the magistrates performed their duties and that the people were not oppressed by them. On these occasions the people of the cities usually made a grand display; as, for instance, on his visit to Nanking in 1689, triumphal arches were erected in all the principal streets, at the distance of about twenty paces from each other, gayly adorned with ribbons, silks and fringes; and when he made his entry on horseback, with a numerous train of guards and gentlemen, he was met by a deputation from the citizens, bearing silken banners, canopies, parasols and other ornamental ensigns used by the Chinese on great occasions. The streets were crowded

Digitized by Google

with people as he passed along; but, although so many thousands were assembled, such was their habitual awe of majesty that not even a whisper disturbed the solemn silence which prevailed.

From Nanking the emperor proceeded to the wealthy city of Su-chau, which, from the beauty of its situation, the luxury of its inhabitants, and the circumstance of many of the streets being intersected with canals, on which pleasure-boats are continually gliding, has been called the Venice of China. Here the people laid down rich silks and carpets along the streets through which the royal train was to pass—a mark of respect that was highly pleasing to the emperor, who, instead of riding over them, as was expected, dismounted at the gate of the city, and desiring his whole suite to do the same, proceeded on foot to the palace; an act of consideration which probably did more toward raising the monarch in the public estimation than many of his greater deeds. Another incident is said to have occurred during this progress, which may serve to show the summary mode in which justice was executed upon those mandarins who were found to have abused their authority.

Kang-hi, who was a little apart from his attendants, saw an old man sitting on the ground weeping bitterly. Riding up to him, he inquired the cause of his grief. "My lord," said the old man, who was ignorant of the rank of his interrogator, "I have cause enough for sorrow. My only son, who was the joy of my life and the support of my declining years, has been taken from me by force to serve the governor of the province, and I have no one to comfort me in my old age or to mourn over my tomb." The emperor asked if he had endeav-

Digitized by Google

ored to obtain some redress. "Alas!" replied he, "how is it possible for me, a poor weak old man, to force a great magistrate to do me justice?" "We will presently see that," said the monarch; "get up behind me, and show me the way to this governor's house; perhaps it will not be so difficult to obtain justice as you may imagine." The poor man mounted as he was desired, and they forthwith rode to the magistrate's palace, where the imperial guards and a large party of grandees, who had missed the emperor, arrived just at the same time in great consternation. Kang-hi, entering the palace, charged the governor with his violent conduct. The offender, not being able to deny the accusation, was condemned to lose his head, and the sentence was executed on the spot; when the emperor, turning to the old man, said, "To make you amends for the injury you have sustained, I appoint you governor of this province, in the room of him who has proved himself so unworthy of that office. Let his crime and punishment be a warning to you to use your power more justly."

It was during this reign that the Chinese learned the art of casting cannon, in which they were instructed by the Jesuit Verbiest, under whose inspection about four hundred and fifty pieces of artillery were founded, to the great satisfaction of the emperor, who made a solemn feast under tents in the fields on the occasion of their being tried; his majesty and the court being lodged in an immense, splendid tent or temporary palace, containing a grand hall of audience and other apartments, all lined with embroidered silks. Gunpowder had been known and made in China from a very early period, but it had been used chiefly in the composition of fireworks,

Digitized by Google

of which the Chinese always made a great display at their festivals; and it is stated by the Jesuits that it was not till the early part of the seventeenth century that they became acquainted with its application as an agent in warfare, when the Portuguese, during the war with the Manchus, lent them three cannon for the defence of the city of Nanking, with men to manage them. The fame of Verbiest was considerably raised by the important service he had rendered to the state in furnishing it with artillery, and a title of honor was bestowed on him in consequence. He also gained much credit and influence by reforming the calendar, which had been suffered to fall into such confusion that it was found necessary to leave out a whole month of one year to bring it into regular order. Yet the composition of the almanacs is considered an affair of so much importance that it is the chief business of an assembly of learned officers, who compose what is called the Astronomical Bureau; and when the error in their calculations was discovered, the president was banished to Tartary for his incompetency for the duties of his office, and Verbiest was placed at the head of that department in his stead; according to that singular feature of the Chinese government which punishes inability in office as a crime on the ground that no man ought to undertake that which he is not able to perform, the same principle on which a military commander is sometimes disgraced in consequence of the loss of a battle or the failure of an enterprise in which he may have done his best to succeed.

As the astronomy of the nations of the East is a very interesting subject, some remarks upon its practical as-

Digitized by Google

pects may be interesting here. The appointments which relate to religious times and seasons or those of the state are considered of sufficient importance to require their regulation by a special bureau, which is subordinate to the Board of Rites. A principal employment of its members is to make the almanacs; they have also to calculate the eclipses, and to present to the emperor at the end of every forty-five days an exact statement of the position of the heavenly bodies, together with the observations which have been made during that time. An eclipse is considered a great event in China. Some time before it takes place notices are sent to the governors of every province and city throughout the empire, that they may prepare for the performance of the accustomed solemnities that are always observed on the occasion. Large printed bills are immediately posted on the public buildings, and orders are sent to the magistrates to assemble in the large halls appointed for that purpose, whither they repair on the morning of the given day in their robes of ceremony and take their seats at tables, on some of which are said to be delineated all the eclipses which have occurred for more than four thousand years.

The ceremonies observed on the occasion of an eclipse have somewhat of a religious character, and originated in ignorance of the causes of the phenomenon, which was anciently believed to be the forerunner of some dreadful calamity; and although the more intelligent classes of the Chinese are now aware that the effect is produced by natural causes, they are too much attached to their old customs to discontinue them. The magistrates being assembled in the Hall of Astronomy, place themselves at the tables before mentioned, waiting for

Digitized by Google

the commencement of the eclipse. The moment the sun or moon, whichever it may be, begins to be darkened, drums and gongs are sounded in the town, and the people all prostrate themselves, bowing their heads till their foreheads touch the earth, and in this position they continue as long as the orb remains shadowed; while some of the members of the Astronomical Board are at the observatory watching the progress of the eclipse and noting down their observations, which are afterward examined and compared with the computations made by the chief tribunal, and a report is transmitted to the emperor.

The distribution of the almanacs at the beginning of every year is also attended with many solemnities. There is no work in the world of which so many copies are printed as the Chinese calendar, the number being estimated at several millions, which is not improbable, considering the amount of population and that almost every family uses an almanac as an oracle; since, besides the usual information, it not only predicts the weather, but notes the days that are reckoned lucky or unlucky for commencing any undertaking, for applying remedies in diseases, for marrying or for burying; and, in short, it is consulted by the people in many cases where their own reason would be a better guide. The calendar is an imperial monopoly, and no other than that prepared by the Astronomical Board is allowed to be published, the law on this point being so strict that a violation of it would be punished with death. The almanacs are all printed at Peking, and according to the Roman Catholic missionaries, they formerly were, and it is possible now are, distributed through the empire in the following manner:

Digitized by Google

On a certain day appointed for the ceremonial in the capital, the principal officials repair early in the morning to the palace, while the members of the board, arrayed in their state dresses, proceed to their hall to escort the books, which are carried in procession to the imperial residence. Those which are intended for the emperor, the empress and the queens, are bound in yellow satin, and enclosed in bags of cloth of gold, which are placed on a large gilded litter borne by forty footmen clothed in yellow. Then follow ten or twelve smaller litters, enclosed with red silk curtains, and containing the books to be given to the princes, which are bound in red satin and enclosed in bags of silver cloth. These are followed by men bearing on their shoulders other conveyances, on which are piled the calendars intended for the grandees of the court and the generals of the army; the cavalcade is completed by the president and members of the bureau in sedans, followed by their usual attendants. On arriving at the palace, the golden bags are laid on two tables covered with yellow damask, when the members of the bureau, having first prostrated themselves, deliver them to the proper officers, who receive them kneeling, and carry them with great ceremony to the foot of the throne. The silver bags are sent in a similar manner to all the princes of the royal family, after which the ministers and other great officers of state present themselves in turn and kneel with reverence to receive their almanacs, which are regarded as gifts from the emperor. The ceremonies of distribution at the court being concluded, the books intended for the use of the people are sent by the bureau into every province of the empire, where the forms observed at the imperial palace are re-

Digitized by Google

peated at the offices of the chief officers, after which the people are allowed to purchase their almanacs; and as this is a privilege of which few omit to avail themselves, the sale must be immense and must largely add to the revenue.

The Jesuits availed themselves of the superstitious interest of the Chinese in astronomy to obtain the favor of the government and to propagate their religion. The Chinese had many astronomical instruments at a very early period of their history; but these were greatly improved and some new ones introduced by the Jesuits, who acquired extraordinary influence by their inculcation of the arts and sciences. The first clocks of our kind and the first watches seen in China were presented to Kang-hi by one of the Jesuit fathers; and another member of the fraternity, to gratify the ladies of that emperor's court, constructed for them a camera-obscura, an instrument with which they were much delighted, as it enabled them to see what was passing outside the palace gates. In consequence of the encouragement received by the Jesuits, Christianity made greater progress in China during the reign of Kang-hi than at any period either before or since. Many persons of rank, both male and female, openly professed the Christian faith, and a church was built for their accommodation near the palace; besides which, several places of worship for Christians were erected in different parts of Peking, as well as in other large cities. Some of the arts of China were bestowed upon the people of Europe through these missionaries. Among the edifices referred to was a church built by a French Jesuit named D'Entrecolles, at the famous village or town of King-tsz-ching,

Digitized by Google

where a great porcelain manufacture was then carried on; and there he made himself acquainted with the whole process of that beautiful art, which was first brought into Europe by him, when, on the death of Kang-hi, the Christian missionaries were obliged to quit the country. Among the Jesuits resident at this time in Peking was Gerbillon, a native of France, who was employed by the emperor on a mission into Tartary, the object of which was to negotiate a peace with the Russians, who had been at war with the Chinese ever since the rejection of their embassy by the late emperor Shun-chi, who refused to acknowledge their right to the territories they had occupied in Manchu Tartary.

The negotiations were successful; peace was concluded, and a trade established between Russia and China by a treaty signed by the two emperors, Alexius and Kang-hi, in the year 1689. The boundaries of the Russian empire, which had been the ground of dispute, were precisely defined, and it was agreed that caravans should be sent at stated periods to Peking, and be allowed to remain there until they had disposed of their goods. A caravanserai in the suburbs was allotted for the residence of the merchants, and their expenses while they remained were to be defrayed by the emperor of China. The trade thus conducted was a monopoly of the Russian government; but there were private merchants also who traveled to China, and transacted business on their own account with the Chinese merchants at an annual fair held on the frontiers; but they were not permitted to proceed to Peking like the government agents, nor even to enter the strictly Chinese territories.

Digitized by Google

The principal wars of Kang-hi, after the submission of Formosa, were with the Eleuth and Songares Tartars, which had been very large and powerful tribes. The former were completely subdued in the course of three years' warfare by the victorious arms of the Chinese emperor, who by this conquest greatly extended his dominions in Tartary. Before proceeding to extremities with the Eleuths, who had long given great trouble to the government, Kang-hi (in the year 1713) sent an embassy to the khan of the Tourgouth Tartars, then settled on the north bank of the Caspian sea. The Chinese wrote a curious account of the whole mission, which has been handsomely translated by Sir George Staunton from the original language. The details of the journey, with the emperor's own instruction for the conduct of his ambassador, are especially curious and interesting. To commemorate the glory of the war against the Eleuths, a French missionary made a series of clever drawings, and these were sent by the desire of the emperor to Paris and there engraved on copper plates. In the year 1721, Kang-hi, then far advanced in years, celebrated the sixtieth anniversary of his accession to the throne, and as he was the first sovereign of China whose reign had been lengthened to this term, a grand jubilee took place on the occasion throughout the whole empire. Sixty is a number held in especial veneration among the Chinese, and the sixtieth birth-day of any private individual is always celebrated with great festivities by the family; but the event of a monarch having arrived at that epoch of his reign, particularly one who was so much beloved and respected, was an especial cause of rejoicing, which was testified in the usual way

Digitized by Google

by sacrifices to the gods, illuminations, feastings, fireworks and a variety of amusements.

On all festive occasions in China the sacrifices constitute an important part of the ceremonials, and as there are no priests of the Confucian or state religion, the emperor officiates as high priest in the capital, whilst in all the other cities the governor or chief official acts in that capacity. The greatest annual festival on which the sovereign appears in his sacerdotal character is that of the celebration of the season of spring, which takes place about the middle of February, and is one of those ancient observances that help to preserve the primitive character of the nation. It is then that the emperor performs the part of the husbandman by ploughing and sowing seed in an enclosure set apart for that purpose near the palace—a ceremony never omitted by Kang-hi, who was very attentive to all observances that were held in reverence among the people. The day for the royal ploughing was fixed by the Board of Rites, and this ceremony was accompanied by many solemnities on the part of the emperor and those who were to assist at the sacrifices; such as fasting for three days until the evening of each, and abstaining from all kinds of amusements during that period. Several princes were also deputed on the eve of the festival to visit the Hall of Ancestors—a temple dedicated to the memory of the imperial relatives who had departed this life—where many rites and ceremonies were performed before the tablets on which their names were engraven.

Early on the morning of the festival the emperor, attended by the great officers of state, repairs to the Temple of the Earth, where he makes sacrifices and im-

Digitized by Google

plores a blessing on the labors of the spring, that they may produce a plentiful harvest; and when these rites are ended he descends from the temple into the field, where all the requisite preparations have been made by forty or fifty husbandman, who are in attendance. The emperor ploughs a few furrows with his own hand, and sows five sorts of grain; after which twelve grandees of the first rank plough and sow in turn, and then the work is completed by the professional husbandmen, each of whom receives a present of a piece of cotton cloth. The produce of this field is held sacred, and carefully preserved in a granary by itself, to be used for the most solemn sacrifices. The ploughing by the imperial husbandman takes place only in the capital, but in every large city a corresponding ceremony is performed, called "meeting the spring," when the governor assumes the character of high priest, and goes out in state, carried in a finely-ornamented sedan-chair, preceded by banners, lighted torches and music. He is followed by several high officers in their sedans, and by a number of litters, in which are placed children, who are fancifully dressed and crowned with flowers, representing various deities connected with the labors of the field. But the most prominent figure among the *dramatis personæ* is a huge earthen buffalo, the representative of the spring, which is borne in procession to meet the high priest, who delivers a lecture on the benefits of husbandry, which is one of sixteen discourses read annually to the people. At the conclusion of the lecture he strikes the buffalo three times with a staff, when it is immediately broken in pieces by the populace, and a number of little porcelain cows with which it was filled furnish materials for a

Digitized by Google

scramble. The rest of the day is devoted to amusements, among which the most popular are plays performed by companies of strolling actors, who set up temporary theatres in the streets; the expenses being paid, on this occasion, by the government.

It is thus, according to the Jesuits, that the rulers of China, both by precept and example, stimulate their subjects to the pursuits of agriculture, so essential to the support of the empire. The intention of these ceremonies is obviously to countenance that superiority in point of rank which the farmers and producers have invariably held over those engaged in mercantile pursuits; for the rulers of China, from the earliest period to the present, have always deemed it better policy to make the empire entirely dependent on its own resources for food and clothing, than to obtain those necessaries or add to its wealth by foreign trade, which has hitherto been only tolerated and never encouraged by the government.

But we are describing things which, if their forms remain, do not receive the respect they once enjoyed. From numerous recent authorities, and more particularly from that excellent publication, the *Chinese Repository*, formerly issued by the American missionaries at Canton, we learn that this great agricultural celebration has in many parts of the empire dwindled into an empty show; that only the most puerile parts of the ceremony are performed; that the emperor is often represented by proxy; and that even the magistrates, instead of putting their own hands to the plough, are frequently represented by inferior substitutes, who help to turn the whole thing into a mere mockery. In very few in-

Digitized by Google

stances are the pictures drawn by the Jesuits and other old writers to be taken as faithful representations of China, its government and people as they now are; in still fewer are we to expect that the ancient laws, rescripts and regulations are, to the very letter, carried out in practice.

The emperor Kang-hi rendered inestimable service to the nation by several literary productions. Two great dictionaries of the language—one for the learned, on which seventy-six profound scholars spent eight years of labor, and another for general use, less comprehensive—were prepared under his careful supervision, and are monuments, which will never decay, of his intelligence and wisdom. The production which, however, has made his name best known to all his people, and his influence most profoundly and beneficially felt, is the celebrated book to which we once before briefly referred, called the Shing-yu, or "Sacred Edict;" or, sometimes styled, more properly, the "Sacred Instructions." It is a collection of discourses upon practical subjects, each headed by a suitable proverb or text. They are sixteen in number, each a few pages in length, and are written in a pleasing and intelligible style. They have exercised an important effect upon the moral character of the Chinese people. He inculcates industry in the following style:

"Give," said he, "the chief place to husbandry and the culture of the mulberry tree, in order to procure adequate supplies of food and raiment. Of old time the emperors themselves ploughed, and their empresses cultivated the mulberry-tree; though supremely honorable, they disdained not to labor; and they did this, in

Digitized by Google

order to excite by their example the millions of the people. Suffer not a barren spot to remain a wilderness, or a lazy person to abide in the cities. Then the farmer will not lay aside his plough and his hoe, or the housewife put away her silkworms and her weaving. Even the productions of the mountains and marshes, and the propagation of the breed of poultry, swine and dogs, will all be regularly cherished, in order that food may be supplied in their season to make up for any deficiency of agriculture." Kang-hi, among his sixteen maxims, also insists on the necessity of magnifying academical learning, and of providing amply for district colleges, academies and schools for the common people. No one was to be left uninstructed—no school was to be left in poverty and neglect. Such was his desire and effort also. Yet the end has never been attained. At present, though the schools, both public and private, are rather numerous, they are generally poor. The emperor, in the strongest terms, denounced idolatries, and called the god Buddha an avaricious, unfilial scoundrel. But if he hated all manner of idol-worshipings, or what he called "new religions," Kang-hi himself did not adopt the Roman Catholic religion taught by the European missionaries. "Even this sect," said he, "who talk about heaven and prate about earth and of things without shadow and without substance—their religion, also, is unsound and corrupt. But because the teachers of this sect understand astronomy and are skilled in mathematics, the government employs them to correct the calendar. This, however, by no means implies that their religion is a good one. You should not on any account believe them. The law is very rigorous against these

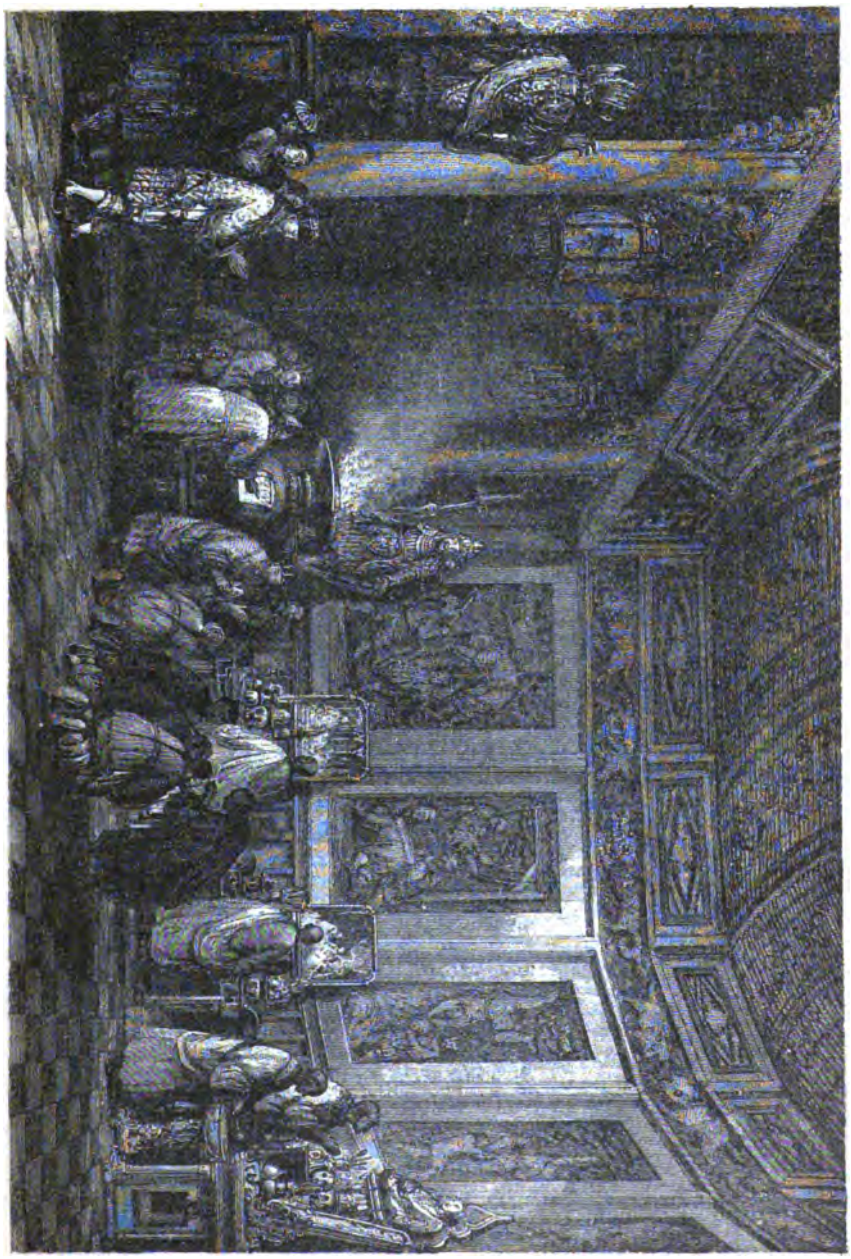
Digitized by Google

left-hand-road and side-door sects. Their punishment is determined in the same way as that of the masters and mistresses of your dancing gods or your male and female conjurors." He founded all religion on the duties of children to their parents. According to the emperor's system, every family had two living divinities—father and mother—and therefore it was unnecessary to go in quest of other gods or to worship on the hills, or to travel far to burn incense, or to pray to idols or to gods for happiness. In his wisdom he decreed that robbery and theft should be for ever extirpated; yet theft, robbery, piracy and murder appear to have multiplied in each successive reign.

The Sacred Instructions were amplified by Kang-hi's son and successor, Yung-ching, who by statute enjoined that they should be proclaimed with great form and ceremony throughout the empire on the first and fifteenth of every month. Before the commencement of the reading all present performed the ko-tau.

Kang-hi endeavored, with the assistance of the Jesuits, to make some improvements in the arts and sciences of China, especially in that of medicine, which has always been in a most deficient state. But the prejudices of the Chinese with regard to the dissection of human bodies is so strong that although several books on the subject of anatomy were published under the patronage of that enlightened emperor, the study was never prosecuted to any advantage; and so little is yet understood of the medical art that the greater portion of the Chinese people put more faith in spells and charms than in any remedies derived from professional science, and place very little reliance on the efficacy of a medicine unless it

Digitized by Google



Buddha Temple

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

be taken on a lucky day. Kang-hi died in the year 1722, having ruled over the Chinese empire sixty-one years—the longest reign recorded in the history of China since the patriarchal times.

The sovereign power had never been greater or more absolute than during this period, nor had it ever been equaled except while the sceptre was swayed by the powerful hand of Kublai Khan. Besides extending his dominions by his conquests over the Eleuths, Kang-hi obliged the Mongols to remove three hundred miles beyond the Great Wall, where he gave them lands and pastures, while he settled his own subjects of the Manchu race in the provinces they had vacated, thus uniting to China a large extent of territory without the intervention of a foreign nation. The Mongols, however, are still a constant source of uneasiness to the Chinese government, and are watched with the utmost jealousy by the Manchus, whom it is well known they heartily detest as the usurpers of that empire once so gloriously ruled by their own princes. These tribes until the present time range over the vast territories to the north-west of China Proper. They have no cities, but dwell in tents, some of which are as richly furnished as the halls of a palace, the floors being covered with Turkey or Persian carpets, the sides adorned with silken hangings, and every other article for domestic use being of a costly and luxurious description, and obtained in exchange for valuable furs from the Chinese. The Mongols are great hunters, and thus procure the skins of various animals that are highly prized. They are all trained to arms, and are also addicted to horse-racing, wrestling and other athletic sports. Their ordinary costume is a long dark-

Digitized by Google

blue robe, fastened round the waist with a leather belt; under-garments of cotton, leather boots and a cap of cloth or fur, according to the season. Their princes attend as vassals at the imperial court, and very often marry the daughters of the emperor, who is not unwilling to promote such alliances as a means of securing their fidelity. With the same view he sends rich presents to them every year, except when any signs of rebellion appear, in which case the gifts are withheld until submission has been made and the disaffected have returned to their allegiance. Their lands are held in fief and descend to the eldest son, who cannot take possession until he has received his investiture from the emperor—another means of keeping them in subjection.

It was during the long reign of Kang-hi that the English really obtained a footing in the empire. In the year 1664, in the time of Charles II., a single English ship had been sent to Macao, but such were the exactions imposed by the Chinese, and such was the effect of the malicious misrepresentations of the Portuguese, that the vessel was obliged to return without effecting sale or purchasing cargo. It is at this period that we first find mention made of *tea* as a commodity abounding in China, and very proper to be imported into England. English ships were again sent out in 1668, which opened a little trade at Formosa (then independent of the Manchus) and at Amoy. The fact of this brief traffic at Amoy is stamped upon our language in the permanent use of the word *tea* to designate the shrub, which is its name in the dialect of that vicinity; the proper name, in the court, the Canton and other more important dialects, is *chá* (or *chah*). In 1681 the East India Company ordered their

Digitized by Google

small establishments at Formosa and Amoy to be withdrawn, and that, if found possible, a trade should be established at Canton. They found the Manchu Tartars far more disinclined to trade and to any intercourse with them than the Chinese had been just before their conquest. These Tartars, in fact, appear to have been beset by the apprehension that the daring English mariners and adventurers would join the Chinese and help them to throw off the Manchu yoke. In 1689 the crew of an English ship, named the Defence, became involved in a quarrel with the natives, killed a Chinese and wounded two or three others. The Chinese, far outnumbering them, killed the surgeon of the ship and several seamen. But this was not admitted in extenuation by the authorities, and the vessel was obliged to go away without any cargo. By this time, however, tea was in so great a demand in England that it must be procured at any cost. The efforts of the East India Company were therefore renewed, and finally, in the year 1699, in the time of William III., they were allowed to have a factory at Canton, and a royal consul's commission was sent out to the chief of the company's council there. In spite of obstructions, interruptions and many serious grievances suffered at Canton, the Chinese trade has increased from this date, or from the commencement of the eighteenth century. But for *tea* it may be doubted whether England would ever have opened the trade at all.

Two hundred years ago the use of tea was unknown in England, but since that period it has been imported to an extent that has changed the habits and worked a domestic revolution, not only in that country, but in many parts of continental Europe. The gratification

Digitized by Google

of the taste thus acquired, the absolute indispensableness of

"The cup which cheers and not inebriates,"

has made that nation and our own dependent on China for much of the comfort of a large portion of every class of society. Perhaps the poorest of all are those who most of all are benefited and comforted by the introduction and extended use of tea. But it has become, in a manner, an article of necessity to the entire population. Queen Elizabeth and her maids of honor drank strong ale at their breakfast—the poorest washerwoman now-a-days would not take such a beverage when she can obtain her refreshing cup of tea. That the use of the fragrant herb, besides being a source of riches to individuals and of immense revenue to the state, has been highly beneficial in improving the moral character and promoting the domestic comfort of the people themselves cannot for one moment be called in question.

Under the same great emperor, Kang-hi, the Dutch sent another embassy to Peking, which was headed by Van Hoorn, a phlegmatic man, who had made up his mind to submit to any indignity that the Tartars might be pleased to put upon him. He and his suite performed the ko-tau over and over again, not in the emperor's presence, but before an empty throne; and having, by their performance of these prostrations, caused their nation to be enrolled among the tributaries of the empire, they were dismissed as loyal subjects, but without any benefit to their commerce or any favor or consideration whatsoever. This precedent was highly injurious to the character and dignity of the nations of the West, and to the cause of European intercourse and connec-

Digitized by Google

tion. For a hundred and thirty years the Dutch sent no more embassies to Peking, but they were allowed to carry on a trade at Canton on the same footing as the English.

The Russians watched with jealousy the advances of Western powers toward intimacy with an empire in so close proximity to their own, and upon whose colonial possessions they already began to cast a covetous eye. Peter the Great of Russia sent overland two more missions to China at this period. Ysbrandt Ides started from Moscow to Peking in 1698. His journey across the wilds and wastes of Central Asia took up more time than a voyage by sea, for it was not till a year and eight months had passed that "he could return thanks to the great God who had conducted them all safe and well to their destined place." Ides found it very awkward to eat, not with knives and forks, but with little ivory sticks (chopsticks); but his palate was particularly gratified by the soups, of which the chief ingredient was a green glutinous substance, said to be an herb found at a distance on rocks in the sea; in fact, it was the edible birds' nests, which form one of the favorite luxuries in China, though not produced in that country. At his first Chinese entertainment, while they were yet at table, a person came in, and on his knees presented to the principal officer a list of plays, out of which he selected one, the performance of which was immediately commenced. The prologue was spoken by a lady, who, in the eyes of our Russian envoy, appeared to be very beautiful and most magnificently attired in cloth of gold adorned with jewels. The acting then began, and Ides thought it very entertaining and equal to anything he

Digitized by Google

had seen in Europe. It has been remarked that the czar's envoy had probably never witnessed at Moscow any high displays of the dramatic art; but it appears that Ides had been a traveler before he came to the Great Wall, and that he had seen dramatic entertainments in Germany, if not in France. His own account of his mission contains but slight notices regarding its object, though it gives considerable information concerning the parts of China through which they traveled. He particularly mentions the interest of the mass of the people in the Buddhist idolatry; the astonishing populousness, order and tranquillity of the country, and the spacious road, bordered by magnificent seats and gardens, which leads to Peking. At court, Gerbillon, a French missionary, and Thomas, a Portuguese missionary, who spoke Italian, acted as his interpreters. Business or talk being over, Ides was amused by more plays, and by dances and juggling tricks. What amused him most was a company of elephants, which had been trained to assume every imaginable posture and to imitate every sound, from the blast of the trumpet, the roar of the tiger and the low of the ox, down to the clear, shrill note of the canary bird. The Jesuits, then in high favor, showed their spacious cloisters enclosed with high walls, their church elegantly built, richly adorned with altars and images, and capable of containing two or three thousand persons. They had also two globes, six feet in diameter, and a museum of European curiosities, in which their Chinese visitors seemed to take great interest. It is understood that Ides made arrangements by which Russian caravans, under the superintendence of the Chinese government, were to visit

Digitized by Google

Peking at regular intervals. But the subjects of the czar were found to be much addicted to strong potations, and to be very quarrelsome when in their cups; and this induced Kang-hi to threaten the entire discontinuance of the intercourse. To avert the evil, Peter the Great, in 1719 (during the last years of the long reign of Kang-hi), despatched an embassy under Leoff Vassilovich Ismayloff, "a gentleman of a family very well known and much respected in Russia, and a captain of the guards." This deserving Muscovite had in his suite a Scotchman, "honest John Bell of Antermony," who wrote a most interesting and truthful, as well as minute, account of the overland journeys and the doings of the mission. These gentlemen, on the 5th of December, arrived at the famous Great Wall, which filled them with astonishment. "The Chinese commonly call it, for its length, the Endless Wall. The appearance of it, running from one high rock to another, with square towers at certain intervals, even at a distance is most magnificent."[1] They entered at a great gate, which was closed every night, and always guarded by a thousand men under the command of two officers of rank, one a Chinese and the other a Manchu Tartar; "for it is an established custom in China, and has prevailed ever since the conquest of the Tartars, that in all places of public trust there must be a Chinese and a Tartar invested with equal power; this rule is observed both in civil and military affairs, the Chinese pretending that two in an office are a sort of spies upon one another's actions, and that thereby many fraudulent practices are either prevented or detected."

[1] BELL'S *Travels from Petersburg, in Russia, to divers parts of Asia.*

Digitized by Google

From the Great Wall they proceeded to Peking by nearly the same route as the former mission under Ides. Their unhappiness began with their arrival at the capital. They wanted to escape the humiliation of the kotau, but on this point the court was inexorable. Ismayloff, however, refused to prostrate himself until it was agreed that a Chinese ambassador, whenever sent to Petersburg, should conform to the usages of the Russians. This, as it has been observed, was certainly a safe stipulation to be made by a court which, till very recently, never condescended to send missions to any countries of the West. For their audience the Russians were conducted to a country palace, six miles westward of Peking. There, at the end of a noble avenue of trees, they found the hall of audience. After having kept them waiting a quarter of an hour, the emperor came in at a back door, and seated himself upon a throne, whereat all the company stood up. Then the master of the ceremonies desired the ambassador to advance, and conducted him by one hand, while he held his credentials in the other. Having ascended a few steps, the letter was laid on a table placed for that purpose, but the emperor beckoned to the ambassador, inviting him to draw nearer. Ismayloff took up the credentials, and, attended by a Chinese officer, walked up to the throne, and kneeling, laid them before the emperor, who touched them with his hand and inquired after his majesty the czar's health. Honest John Bell continues: "During this part of the ceremony, which was not long, the retinue continued standing without the hall; and we imagined, the letter being delivered, all was over. But the master of the ceremonies brought

Digitized by Google

back the ambassador, and then ordered all the company to kneel and make obeisance nine times to the emperor. At every third time we stood up, and kneeled on the ground again. Great pains were taken to avoid this painful piece of homage, but without success. The master of the ceremonies stood by, and delivered his orders in the Tartar language, by pronouncing the words *morgu* (down) and *boss* (up); two words which I cannot soon forget." In the afternoon, after the audience, they were feasted in the palace and entertained with music, dancing, tumbling and wrestling. Here the emperor was condescending and familiar, asking the ambassador many questions. Ismayloff had a good many more audiences, which were conducted with very little form or ceremony. The evident desirableness of keeping on good terms with the Russians, whose power was rapidly increasing and whose advanced frontier already pressed on the borders of their own empire, led the Chinese to treat their envoys with unusual respect, and to attend to the business they came to settle. The Russian trade, however, was restricted to the frontier stations of Kiakhta and Mai-mai-chin, and commissioners were appointed by the two powers to manage its details. The Russian caravans were no longer to be allowed to proceed to Peking, nor were any subjects of the czar to approach that capital. In 1727–8 a third mission was sent across the desert, under Count Vladislavitch, to obtain more favorable terms. The great Kang-hi was by this time in his grave, but his son and successor gave the ambassador a favorable reception. It was agreed that a sort of Russian college, consisting of six ecclesiastical and four lay members, should remain at Peking to study the

Digitized by Google

Chinese and Manchu languages, in order that good interpreters might be prepared and communications carried on more satisfactorily. The college, which still exists at Peking, was to be maintained at the joint expense of the Chinese and Russian governments. The members of the college were to be changed every ten years, but it is said that the czar often neglects to relieve them at the proper time, and that the members have occasionally been left there fifteen or even twenty years. The narrative of George Timkowski, who conducted the relief party sent in 1821, gives an account of his trip from Kiakhta across the desert, together with considerable information relating to the Kalkas and other Mongol tribes subject to China. His observations, illustrated by the learned notes and comments of Klaproth, have added considerably to our knowledge of this remarkable empire. The archimandrite, Batchourin, has written a description of Peking; but such works as the members of the Russian college have produced are, for the most part, still in their difficult language. Hitherto, the Russians have been much less given to authorship or to publication than travelers of other European nations; but there can be little doubt that the archives of the public offices at Moscow and Petersburg contain a vast deal of information respecting the Celestial Empire and its dependencies.

It has frequently been remarked by travelers that the tea brought overland by the Russians is superior in quality to the article which we receive by sea. Some say that the tea of the Russians is produced by better districts than those which supply us, while others attribute the difference to its being carried by land, and not

Digitized by Google

exposed to the deteriorating effects of a sea voyage. Erman, however, gives a very different account of this famous tea. He says: "This article is a mixture of the spoiled leaves and stalks of the tea-plant, with the leaves of some wild plant and bullock's blood dried in the oven. In Irkutsk, where an imitation of it has been attempted, elm leaves, sloe leaves and some others, have been substituted with tolerable success for those of the wild plants of China."

Some time before his death Kang-hi had nominated as his successor his fourth son, Yung-ching, who was installed (in the year 1722) with great pomp.

The ceremony of the installation, which is equivalent to a coronation, takes place in the great hall of the palace, which is decorated with the splendor always displayed by the Chinese on state occasions. This ceremony consists in the act of homage performed by the princes and grandees of the empire there assembled, who acknowledge with certain forms the right of the new monarch to ascend the throne, and make the nine prostrations before him. In former times, if the successor were the son of the deceased sovereign, the government was left during the period of mourning to the care of the ministers, while the prince remained in the deepest seclusion, even shutting himself up within the tomb, or causing a hut to be erected near it, where he would spend months in the indulgence of his sorrow. But this custom has not been followed by the Tartar rulers, who appear to be fully aware of the impolicy of leaving the management of the state to others, and therefore profess to respect the ancient practice, while at the same time they evade its performance, by pretending that their own inclinations have been

Digitized by Google

overruled by a consideration for the welfare of the people. The enthronement of an empress is worthy of notice as an illustration of the greater respect accorded in China to woman compared with what she receives in most other heathen countries. Yet as polygamy is tolerated, one or more of the secondary wives often receives high marks of imperial favor, particularly the mother of a prince who may be selected (for the succession is not governed by primogeniture) to be the heir to the throne. And the proper empress, or wife of the emperor, must defer to his mother if living. The mother holds the first rank among the females of the empire.

The name of Yung-ching signifies "First in concord," but the title does not seem very appropriate to the prince who assumed it. His reign was remarkable for little else than for his severe persecution of the Roman priests, whose proselytes had greatly increased, and who had certainly rendered themselves exceedingly obnoxious by their political intrigues and imprudent conduct. The Jesuits were banished from the court, the churches either destroyed or converted into heathen temples, and all Christian missionaries ordered to leave the country as persons dangerous to the government. Even his own relatives, those princes who, in the time of Kang-hi, had embraced Christianity and been allowed by that liberal-minded monarch to have a church for the exercise of their worship, were involved in the general fate of the converts, and sent as exiles, with their wives and families, to the dreary deserts of Tartary. The banishment of the Jesuits put a full stop to the progress of their religion and also of Western science; and in China the succeeding emperors have neither tolerated the

Digitized by Google

Christian religion nor given any encouragement to the introduction of our improvements.

In every respect, except his enmity to the Christian religion, Yung-ching is spoken of as a mild and beneficent sovereign, anxious to do good and extremely charitable in seasons of public calamity, such as failure of the crops or earthquakes, which latter are not unfrequent in China. The province of Chih-li (or Pe-che-lee) is particularly liable to these awful visitations, which were severely felt at Peking twice during the reign of Kang-hi, who is much and deservedly praised for his humanity to the sufferers; nor was Yung-ching less benevolent on the occasion of a similar calamity which occurred in 1730, when many houses and temples were thrown down in the capital and a great number of lives lost. Large sums of money were distributed, by order of the emperor, to repair the damage; and those families who were reduced by the destruction of their shops and goods to temporary distress were relieved and supported at the expense of the government until their houses had been rebuilt and their trade had recommenced. In 1725 a terrible famine afflicted the land, when the public granaries in every province were opened for the purpose of supplying the people with corn and rice at a small price; and the emperor, according to established custom, made solemn sacrifices in the Temple of the Earth, released numbers of prisoners who were confined in the dungeons of the capital, and performed other acts of propitiation of the gods, hoping thereby to avert the calamity.

The care that is taken to make a provision for the poor in time of need, by laying up stores of grain in every province, constitutes a main feature of the Chinese

Digitized by Google

policy; and, according to the ancient laws, is one of the chief duties of the sovereign, who is enjoined by Confucius, the revered instructor both of the prince and his people, to take care that the lands are cultivated so as to produce the necessaries of life for all; to attend to the fisheries and planting of trees; to be moderate in imposing taxes; to see that the means of instruction are furnished for every class; but, above all, to assist the people in times of scarcity, as a father would provide for the wants of his children. Yung-ching revived an old custom that had fallen into disuse, of inviting to a feast all persons eminent for their virtues. In his reign also many officers who had conducted themselves well in an inferior station were promoted to a higher rank. He encouraged agriculture by bestowing rewards on the most diligent laborers, and he brought under cultivation new lands at the extremity of the hilly province of Yun-nan, where he settled colonies and conferred honors on those who had exerted themselves to improve the country. He modified the restrictive laws with regard to emigration, allowing the inhabitants of the maritime provinces to repair to Siam, Malacca and the neighboring islands; on condition, however, that they should return to their native country—a stipulation that was perfectly in unison with their own feelings, which would lead them, even without such an injunction, to end their days in the place of their birth, that they might be entombed among their ancestors. During this reign the Russians fully established their trading-station on the banks of a small stream in Tartary, called the Kiakhta, which is about a thousand miles from Peking and more than three times that distance from Moscow. On each

Digitized by Google

side of this stream was erected a small town, or rather village, with a fort garrisoned by a few soldiers—that of the Russians being called Kiakhta, that of the Chinese Mai-mai-chin, which means the "depôt of commerce." The Chinese residents in Mai-mai-chin were agents employed by the merchants of great manufacturing cities to carry thither such goods as were likely to be marketable, as silks, both raw and manufactured, tea, porcelain, japanned ware, tobacco, rice, pearls, precious stones, spices, and those elegant toys of carved ivory for which the Chinese are so famous. They exchanged these articles with the Russians for rich furs, woolen cloth, linen, leather, tallow, glass and cutlery. The Chinese were not permitted to take their wives with them, nor could the Russians take theirs, on account of the length and difficulties of the journey; so that there were no women in the place, which must have been dull enough for those who were obliged to remain there a whole year, the term specified for the residence of the Chinese traders, who at the end of that time returned to their homes, when others were sent out to replace them with a fresh assortment of goods.

During the whole of this reign the British merchants of the East India Company trading to China were so much oppressed by the heavy duties imposed by the government, and the extortions privately practiced by its officers, that, although the commerce was never entirely stopped, it was very often interrupted.

Yung-ching died in 1735, having reigned about fourteen years, and was succeeded by his eldest son, the warlike and highly talented Kien-lung.

The paternal character of the government of China

Digitized by Google

is illustrated by the ceremonies following the death of an emperor. A public mourning is then observed with the deepest solemnities throughout the whole country; for it is not, as in Europe, optional to put on the outward symbols of sorrow, but the whole nation is bound, both by law and custom, to exhibit the same tokens of grief for the loss of him who is in a figurative sense the parent of every individual as each would display on the death of his own father or mother. On the death of the sovereign despatches announcing the event, written in blue ink, which is emblematic of a royal demise, are immediately forwarded to all the provinces. The Board of Rites then issues directions for the mourning, when the many millions of human beings that constitute the population of China clothe themselves in coarse sackcloth or white serge, lay aside every kind of ornament, and refrain from all festivities, either in public or private. During the first hundred days the men are obliged to leave their heads and beards unshaven. Marriages are not celebrated, nor are any sacrifices performed in the temples. Similar ceremonies are observed at the death of an empress-mother, but do not continue for so long a period, fifty days being the usual time of mourning on such an occasion; but the wives of the emperor are not thus publicly honored at their deaths, although in some instances the officers of the court have been ordered to take the balls which designate their rank from the tops of their caps, and not to partake of any amusements for a certain time.

Kang-hi had raised successively three princesses to the dignity of empress, and on the death of the last, to whom he had been exceedingly attached, he commanded

Digitized by Google

that all the great officers of state should go in turn to weep and prostrate themselves before the coffin, while he shut himself up alone to indulge his grief. Being afterward informed that four of the gentlemen of the bed-chamber had been seen eating and laughing together when they ought to have been sunk in sadness, he banished them from the court and deprived their fathers also of their employments. "Is it to be suffered," said he, "that my servants, whom I treat with indulgence and honor, should be so little touched with my affliction as to make merry whilst I am overwhelmed with sorrow?"

The funeral processions of the royal family are very magnificent. When a favorite brother of the emperor Kang-hi was carried to the place of interment, no less than sixteen thousand persons attended, most of whom bore ensigns denoting the rank of the deceased, or offerings to be burnt at his tomb. Trumpeters and mace-bearers, umbrellas and canopies of cloth-of-gold, standards, camels and horses laden with sacrifices, the coffin under a large yellow canopy, borne by eighty men, princes, princesses, officers and priests, made up the great and imposing spectacle.

The reigning family have some very magnificent places of sepulture, one of which is in Eastern Tartary, near the city of Shin-yang, four or five hundred miles to the north-east of Peking. It is there that the bodies of Shun-chi and his father, the great conqueror of the Chinese, are entombed; and several officers of the Manchu race reside there to take care that the tombs are kept in order and to pay the customary honors and make the sepulchral sacrifices at the proper seasons.

Digitized by Google

The tombs are built of white marble, in the Chinese style of architecture, and the large space of ground on which they stand is surrounded by a thick wall with battlements, as though the builders had feared that the sacred spot would have need of defence. The Chinese generally, whatever their rank, make as much display as they can possibly afford in their funeral rites. The procession is usually extended to a great length and preceded by solemn music; the melancholy tones of a sort of clarionet being accompanied at intervals by three strokes of the drum. White standards inscribed with the name and age of the deceased and a vast number of white lanterns are carried in the train. The coffin is surmounted by a canopy and followed by the chief mourner, dressed in a garment of sackcloth, fastened round his waist with a cord, and a cap of the same material with a white bandage. He is supported by his brothers or two nearest relatives; after whom succeed, in a numerous procession, the friends and relatives, all habited in coarse white cloth, some on foot, others in sedan-chairs covered with white serge, these being mostly the females of the family, who utter loud lamentations the whole way. One of the principal objects in the procession is the tablet, which is sometimes carried in a gilded chair, and is taken back, after the interment, to be placed in the hall of ancestors. At the side of the tomb are erected temporary buildings of mat or bamboo, where refreshments are laid out on tables by the attendants while the friends are making the sacrifices and burning incense at the tomb. If the deceased has been a gentleman of high rank, it is not uncommon for his sons to remain several weeks on the spot, living in

Digitized by Google

bamboo huts, that they may renew their expressions of grief and make new offerings each day to the manes of the departed, and, in obedience to the injunctions of the ancient sages, "sleep upon straw with a sod of earth for a pillow."

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XI.

THE GREAT KIEN-LUNG.

THE two great emperors of later ages in China were Kang-hi and Kien-lung. Their reigns are extraordinary in history for having covered each the term of sixty years—that of the former indeed was extended to sixty-one—and, including Yung-ching, who came between them, the father, son and grandson occupied the throne of China one hundred and forty-six years! And the reigns of the former and latter were as prosperous as they were long. Kang-hi was the ablest of the two and the more accomplished. His eminent literary character, and his solicitude for the intellectual and moral improvement of his people, have added a special lustre to his memory. But the name of his grandson will ever be connected with his, as worthy of the epithet "great," in the history of this dynasty.

Kien-lung succeeded his father Yung-ching in the year 1735. On the day of his installation, while performing the customary rites in the hall of imperial ancestors, the young monarch made a vow that, "should he, like his illustrious grandfather Kang-hi, be permitted to complete the sixtieth year of his reign, he would show his gratitude to heaven by resigning the crown to his heir, as an acknowledgment that he had

Digitized by Google

been favored to the full extent of his wishes." The vow was made in all sincerity, and the noble prince was spared to fulfill it. Not only in longevity, but also in the qualities which constitute a great ruler, he resembled his grandfather Kang-hi. He encouraged Chinese learning by cultivating it himself, and some of his poetical compositions are considered to possess intrinsic merit, independently of their being the productions of an emperor. The first public act of his reign was to recall from exile all who were still living of those unhappy members of the royal race who had been banished by his predecessor in consequence of their attachment to the Christian religion. The exiles returned in a very destitute condition, for all their property had been confiscated to the state, and as no portion of it had been restored, they had no means of subsistence but small pensions, to which they were entitled as princes of the blood, and which were wholly inadequate to the maintenance of a family.

It is a custom of long standing in China to provide for all the relatives of the emperor by granting them pensions in money, silks and rice; which allowances are larger or smaller according to the degree of affinity in which the pensioners stand to the throne; those who are more than five degrees removed being allowed only a bare subsistence. These princes, who are very numerous, occupy a most unfortunate position in society; for, with the exception of a few of the highest rank, who may happen to be honored with the emperor's especial favor, they are of necessity an idle, useless class of beings, treated as mere appendages to the court, and debarred from those opportunities of distinguishing themselves which

Digitized by Google

are freely accorded to all other members of the state. A prince of the blood is excluded from holding public employments or from the pursuit of any occupation with a view to emolument. He has therefore no inducement to give much of his attention to study, since learning does not procure for him the same advantages that are derived from literary attainments by men of humbler birth. As a body, therefore, the princes of the empire are said to be illiterate men.

There are two branches of these idlers—the first being descended in a direct line from the famous Manchu conqueror, Tien-ming; the second, from the uncles and brothers of that great hero. The former take precedence in rank, and are distinguished by a yellow girdle; while the latter, being more distantly allied to the emperor, are only permitted to wear a red girdle. They are all obliged to live within the precincts of the court, to attend all the levées, to follow in the train of the emperor whenever he appears abroad; and in fact they are mere puppets, who seem to exist for no other purpose than to increase the pomp of the imperial retinue.

The recall of the exiles gave hopes to those who were interested in the diffusion of Christianity that the emperor was inclined to countenance, or at least to tolerate, the preaching of the missionaries; which he did for some time. At length, however, the higher officers of the court presented a memorial on the subject to the emperor, who suffered himself to be persuaded, against his better judgment, not to afford any further protection or encouragement to the teachers of Christianity.

Digitized by Google

The powerful order of Jesuits, which had attained to great ascendency in the East, had awakened the jealousies and odium of the rival monastic orders and of nearly every king or government in Europe that remained within the pale of the Romish Church. About the middle of the reign of Kien-lung, or more toward its close, it was pursued, as one which was decided to be irreconcilable with the peace of the nation, with unremitting hostility, until it was considered to be entirely rooted from the soil of China. The Jesuits had become rich by trade as well as by the contributions of their followers. Their extensive property was seized and confiscated. This put an end to the exertions of the Jesuits for the conversion of the Chinese.

The ambition of Kien-lung was gratified by some important conquests in Western Tartary, where several Tartar tribes were rendered tributary and the rich city of Kashgar was brought under his dominion. But a later attempt which he made to subjugate the Burman empire was less fortunate. The invading army commenced hostilities by plundering a town and mart, which the Chinese had long been in the habit of frequenting with goods for sale. The Burmese monarch took immediate steps to repel the invasion by dividing his forces into two separate bodies, one of which marched direct toward the enemy, while the other, by a circuitous route, came behind them, and thus cut off their retreat. A terrible conflict took place, which lasted three days, and was most disastrous to the Chinese, who were hemmed in on all sides; so that, of all the army which entered the Burmese territories, not one man returned to tell the miserable tale of their defeat, for those who

Digitized by Google

escaped the sword were conducted in fetters to the Burmese capital, where they were made government slaves, according to the custom of that country. Those who understood any trade were obliged to practice it; those who did not, were employed as gardeners and field-laborers, and compelled to work hard, without recompense beyond a scanty supply of the coarsest food.

But, notwithstanding the unfortunate result of this expedition, the emperor made some important acquisitions to his dominions, amongst which was the kingdom of Tibet—an extensive country which is still little known, and chiefly remarkable as being the high seat of the Buddhist religion and the residence of Grand Lama or pontiff of that faith. Tibet is an advantageous possession to the Chinese empire, on account of its situation between the north-western frontier of China and the countries of various Indian and Tartar tribes, who might possibly be very troublesome neighbors but that their veneration for the Grand Lama keeps them from disturbing his dominions; so that Tibet forms a sort of neutral ground, which prevents the approach of an enemy on that side of the empire of which it now constitutes a part.

But of all the wars of Kien-lung none has so much interest as the contest with the Miau-tsz—a singular people who have existed in China from a most remote period of its history, yet have preserved their original freedom, and remain to this day independent tribes, though less numerous and powerful perhaps than before the armies of Kien-lung appeared among their mountains spreading death and desolation on every side.

Digitized by Google

Military Officer.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

We have mentioned in a previous chapter the mountainous districts inhabited by many different portions of this race, who are quite distinct from the Chinese, whose government they scarcely acknowledge, and whose civilization they do not share. The southern part of China was in a state of barbarism long after the north had been comparatively civilized; but how it happens that they have been permitted to remain unsubdued and independent has not been accounted for. Perhaps the mountainous nature of the region which they inhabit, and which gives them advantages over an enemy, may, with other causes, have tended to discourage attempts to subject them. They are governed by their own laws and have their own chiefs. Their independence of the Tartar government was shown by the retention of their hair, which was allowed to grow over the whole head, and, being of great length, was tied up in the ancient Chinese fashion. The Chinese consider them as a people totally different from themselves, insomuch that in their maps they even mark off that part of the country occupied by them, as though it were inhabited by a foreign race.

The intercourse of the Chinese with the Miau-tsz was sometimes of a friendly, sometimes of a hostile nature; for, like most barbarians who dwell in the vicinity of a fertile country, the Miau-tsz were addicted to plunder, and would occasionally make incursions into the plains, and carry off such spoils as fell in their way; while at other times they pursued a peaceful traffic with the Chinese, who purchased their forest timber, which abounds on the mountains, but is scarce in the level country, where all the ancient forests have long since

Digitized by Google

been cleared away, in order to afford space for the cultivation of rice and cotton to feed and clothe the overflowing population.

Although the Miau-tsz are not subjects of the emperor, yet every hostile incursion which they make against the Chinese is regarded by the latter as an act of rebellion. In the year 1770 one of the tribes made several marauding expeditions into the plains, and committed such extensive depredations that a military force was sent to invade their mountain territory, the emperor being resolved to subjugate or destroy their whole race. The imperial army entered the hills, which soon presented frightful scenes of bloodshed, for the people fought desperately in defence of their liberty; and so great was their dread of being brought under the authority of the Chinese government that even the women were seen fighting by the sides of their husbands. At length the Chinese general gained possession of their principal town, when the chief took refuge in a strong fortress at some distance, from whence he sent a deputation to the general, offering to acknowledge himself a vassal of the emperor, provided he might be permitted to retain his territories and rule over his people as before. But the mighty monarch, bent upon crushing the liberties of the mountaineers, sent forth his imperial mandate that the whole population should remove from their native hills to some distant part of the empire, where they might be kept in subjection, which they scarcely could be so long as they maintained the strong position they had hitherto occupied. The chief of the unfortunate tribe, to whom this sentence of expatriation was worse than death, collected his warriors around him, determined to resist

Digitized by Google

to the last, declaring that he would rather perish on his native soil than rule as a sovereign in a foreign land; but a still more melancholy fate than either awaited the brave barbarian, for, being at length made prisoner, he was conveyed with many other captives to Peking, where he was condemned to suffer an ignominious death, together with nineteen individuals of his family, who were beheaded at the same time with him; while some of his people, men, women and children, were dragged from their homes and distributed as slaves through various parts of the empire.

Still the Miau-tsz were not conquered; for although that one particular tribe was exterminated, there were others in different parts of the mountains, who soon afterward appeared in great numbers. "The emperor," says Sir J. F. Davis, "boasted that they were subdued, but there is reason to believe that this hardy people, entrenched in the natural fortifications of their rude and precipitous mountains, lost little of the real independence which they had enjoyed for ages. They have never yet submitted to the Tartar tonsure, the most conclusive mark of conquest, and their renewed acts of hostility have given serious alarm and trouble to the Peking government."

The latter part of the reign of Kien-lung is remarkable for the first direct intercourse ever held between the courts of Great Britain and China. An embassy was sent by his Britannic Majesty to the sovereign of the Chinese empire under the following circumstances. Soon after his accession to the throne, in 1720, Kien-lung had established a company called the Hong Merchants, consisting of the principals of a number of *hongs*,

Digitized by Google

or mercantile houses, who were invested with the exclusive privilege of transacting all business with Europeans; and these were prohibited from dealing with any other Chinese traders, and were obliged to purchase their tea, silks and other commodities of importance from the hong merchants, who fixed the price of all goods, either exported or imported, and regulated the terms on which foreigners were to conduct their trade with China. They were responsible to the government for the customs and duties on all goods brought into or sent out of the country; and they were also answerable to the foreign merchants for the value of their cargoes after they were landed; so that any losses sustained on either side were to be made up by them; yet their profits were so enormous that they grew in general very rich and lived in great splendor.

In the year 1771, however, the co-hong was dissolved, and then there was no restriction to prevent other Chinese merchants from trading with the Europeans; yet the hong merchants contrived to maintain their monopoly by making handsome presents frequently to the magistrates at Canton, who, in return, suffered no one to interfere with their trade. This led to very unfair dealings on the part of the latter, who, to indemnify themselves for the large presents they were obliged to make for the protection of their monopoly, charged most exorbitant prices for their goods and practiced all kinds of imposition on the European traders. The British merchants, who were the greatest sufferers by their extortions, endeavored to get a memorial presented to the emperor; but their petitions were never allowed to reach the court, and they had no alternative but to submit to imposition

Digitized by Google

or to give up the trade altogether. Some of the hong merchants had contracted very heavy debts with the English, which they refused to pay; and serious disputes arising on that point, as well as on many others, the British government at length determined to send an embassy to the court of Peking, to lay all these complaints before the emperor and solicit redress. Lord Macartney, former governor of Madras, was appointed ambassador on this extraordinary occasion, and being furnished with many valuable presents for the great Eastern autocrat, he set sail from Portsmouth, in September, 1792, and arrived at Canton in June, the following year. As the first British embassy to the Celestial Empire its history will continue to be interesting. The ambassador and his train were received with the highest marks of distinction, for the emperor had been apprised of their coming, and had sent orders to the governors of the different cities and provinces where they would stop in their way to Peking that every attention should be paid to them, and all things provided for their accommodation—a command which was most scrupulously obeyed, so that they were not only well entertained when they went on shore, but ample stores of provisions, with wine, tea and baskets of porcelain, were sent to their ships by the magistrates of several places where they cast anchor on the voyage from Canton toward the capital; for, as the empire is not open to the admission of strangers except by favor, those who visit it on state affairs are considered and treated as guests of the sovereigns or persons in his service for the time being, and not as travelers who are free to go where they please and to have what they choose to order in return for payment;

Digitized by Google

consequently, the accommodation they meet with depends very much on whether the mission be agreeable or not to his majesty. This fact was duly exemplified by the following circumstances which occurred at Chusan.

The British ships having to sail round the coast to the gulf of Pe-che-lee, required experienced pilots to conduct them along the shore, with which the English sailors were totally unacquainted. The governor was solicited to furnish proper persons for the purpose; on which he sent into the town of Ting-hai, the capital, to order all who had ever performed that voyage to repair immediately to the hall of audience. A great many men presented themselves, and among others, two tradesmen who had been to Tien-tsin, a city on the Pei-ho river, on their own affairs, and these were the individuals selected to perform the office of pilots to the British embassy. It was in vain they desired to be excused, on the plea that their business would be ruined by their absence, and their families reduced to great distress; the governor only replied that the emperor's commands were explicit and must be obeyed. The poor men, therefore, were obliged to go, inconvenient as it was to them.

The Pei-ho passes near Peking in its course to the gulf of Pe-che-lee, and has many populous towns and villages on its banks. The number of barges and junks continually passing up and down this busy stream is a proof of the wealth and populousness of the country, many of them being engaged in commerce, while many are government boats, employed chiefly in conveying to the capital grain and other produce of the land, collected from the people of the neighboring provinces, who pay their taxes, or rather rents, chiefly in kind. The junks

Digitized by Google

are strongly built and curved upward at each extremity, the stern being much higher than the bow. The sails are of matting or cotton, made to fold up like a fan, with bamboo yards or stretchers. Great labor is required in setting them, as the Chinese have no proper machinery for that purpose, so that all their manœuvres in working a ship are performed by actual strength. Most of the sailors, with their families, live constantly on board the junks, having no home on shore; and there are many companies of actors also who have no other dwelling-place than a covered boat on the river.

The government yachts which conveyed the embassy up the Pei-ho were extremely handsome and commodious; but as the Chinese officers had no idea that an ambassador could come for any other purpose than to bring tribute and do homage to the emperor on the part of his master, they had caused flags to be attached to the yachts, displaying these words in large Chinese characters, "Ambassadors bearing tribute from the country of England;" nor would they believe that the presents brought for the emperor were to be viewed in any other light. The viceroy of the province of Chih-li, a venerable old man about eighty years of age, had traveled nearly one hundred miles in obedience to the commands of his imperial master, to be in readiness at Tien-tsin to receive the English ambassador, who went on shore, accompanied by several gentlemen of his suite, to pay a visit to that high functionary.

While ascending the Pei-ho, a gentleman of the mission remarks, "The approach of the embassy was an event of which the report spread rapidly among the neighboring towns and villages. Several of these were

Digitized by Google

visible from the barges upon the river. Crowds of men were assembled on the banks, some of whom waited a considerable time to see the procession pass; while the females, as shy as they were curious, looked through gates or peeped over walls to enjoy the sight. A few, indeed, of the ancient dames almost dipped their little feet into the river in order to get a nearer peep, but the younger part of the sex generally kept in the background. The strangers, on their part, were continually amused and gratified with a succession of new objects. The face of the country, the appearance of the people, presented in almost every instance something different from what is offered to the view elsewhere. And a general sentiment prevailed that it was well worth while to have traveled to such a distance to behold a country which promised to be interesting in every respect."[1]

Tien-tsin is the great emporium for the north of China, as Canton is for the south. It extends for several miles along both sides of the river, on the banks of which are many quays and dockyards, with large public buildings, the chief of which are the custom-houses, warehouses and temples. The shops are handsome and well furnished, but the private houses are no ornaments to the streets, being built, as in all large Chinese cities, within a court enclosed by a brick wall.

The Chinese are never at a loss for a hall of reception, as they can construct, at a few hours' notice, a temporary building or pavilion of bamboo, covered with thatch above and matting on the sides, which, being carpeted

[1] Sir GEORGE STAUNTON, Bart., in his *Authentic Account of the Embassy, etc., taken chiefly from the Papers of his Excellency the Earl of Macartney.* London, 1798.

Digitized by Google

and adorned with silken hangings and other tasteful ornaments, answers all the purposes of a palace for occasions of ceremony. It was in such a hall that the gentlemen of the embassy were received by the viceroy of Chih-li, with all the attention due to their rank and the well-bred politeness which generally characterizes the manners of a Chinese gentleman.

It is remarked by Lord Macartney that men of rank in China appear to treat their domestics with a degree of kindness and condescension seldom met with in Europe; and yet it is most probable that the servants alluded to were slaves, for domestic slavery is common among the Chinese, and does not seem to be a very hard lot. In the higher walks of life the customs of society were found not to be devoid of the elegance and refinement of the most polished circles of Europe. The viceroy of Chih-li, whose advanced age made it extremely inconvenient for him to go on board the yachts, returned the ambassador's visit by being carried down to the shore in a chair, and sending an officer to the boat to present his visiting-card. The Chinese visiting-cards, however, are sheets of crimson paper, ten inches in length and four in width, the name and titles of the visitor being written down the right side of them.

From Tien-tsin the embassy proceeded to Tung-chau, a city distant from Peking about twelve miles, where the whole party landed; and as it was necessary to remain there a few days, a Buddhist temple was prepared for their accommodation, the priests being obliged to remove for the time to another monastery in the neighborhood, with the exception of one, who was left to watch over the lamps of the shrine. These temples are

Digitized by Google

always used as hotels on all occasions connected with the government; but the priests are not required to furnish the guests with entertainment as well as lodging, their table being supplied, free of cost, by the governor of the city, wherever they may be. The only thing difficult to be procured was milk, which is never used by the Chinese; neither do they make cheese or butter; but when it was understood that the strangers were in the habit of mixing milk with their tea, and that it was not pleasant to them without this ingredient, much trouble was taken to procure two cows, which formed a part of their train during the remainder of their sojourn in China.

The whole way, from the landing-place at which the yachts were stationed, to the temple where the ambassador and his suite were lodged, was like a fair. A great number of petty tradesmen, such as pastry-cooks, dealers in spirituous liquors and persons who keep eating-houses, had their booths for the sale of various refreshments, among which were tea and rice prepared for eating, which may always be had in the streets of every town in China, where a working-man may dine very well at any time for one or two cents of our money.

The English travelers went by land from Tung-chau to Peking, some in palanquins, others on horseback, and the rest in small rude carts with two wheels, which is the only kind of carriage used in that part of the country, and, having no springs, is a very uneasy conveyance. The road is usually broad, bordered on each side by willow trees of immense size, and paved with large flat stones. The pavement is in the middle of the road, instead of at the sides as with us, which is easily accounted

Digitized by Google

for by the rarity of wheel carriages, which are less common, even for long journeys, than sedans and horses. The party was escorted by a guard of soldiers, whose chief employment the whole way was to keep off the crowd with their whips, of which they did not scruple to make very free use; but curiosity was stronger than fear, and no sooner did the whips cease to play than the mob again pressed forward, while every wall, house-top and tree was thronged with spectators.

It was now the middle of August, and the emperor had not yet returned to the capital from his palace at Jeh-ho (called by Macartney Zehol) in Tartary, one of his numerous residences, where it was customary for the court to reside during the summer months. Jeh-ho is about fifty miles to the north of the Great Wall, and about five thousand feet above the level of the Yèllow sea; consequently it is much cooler than in China, and on that account is pleasant as a summer retreat. The country beyond the wall is wild and mountainous, and bears in its principal features a great resemblance to Savoy and Switzerland. There is a good road for general traffic all the way from Peking to Jeh-ho, parallel to which there is a private road, kept in the highest order by the soldiers, expressly for the use of the emperor and court. Traveling palaces or imperial hotels are erected at certain distances all the way from the capital, as the emperor never on any occasion condescends to take refreshment or pass the night at the house of a subject, although the palaces of some of the viceroys are little inferior to his own. The name Jeh-ho signifies Hot Streams, and was doubtless derived from some thermal and medicinal springs in the neighborhood.

Digitized by Google

The palace and gardens are situated in a romantic valley on the banks of a fine river overhung by rugged mountains. The park, which is very extensive, presents the most magnificent specimen of the Chinese style to be found in the whole empire, as the objects that are usually crowded together in too small a space to produce a pleasing effect are at Jeh-ho distributed over a vast area, the imperial park being not less than eighteen miles in circumference, including the palace and gardens of the ladies, which are enclosed within a separate wall. The western side of the park is occupied by thick woods of oak, pine and chestnut trees, covering the sides of the steep mountains, where a great number of deer are kept for the chase; the rest is laid out in ornamental pleasure-grounds, adorned with as many as fifty handsome pavilions magnificently furnished, each containing a state-room with a throne in it, and some of them having a large banqueting-hall, where entertainments are given on special occasions to the great gentlemen of the court.

Among the ornaments of these beautiful pleasure-grounds are small transparent lakes, filled with gold and silver fishes; and a broad canal, on which are several islands, adorned with pagodas and summer-houses of various forms, sheltered by groves of trees and fragrant shrubs. All Chinese buildings of this description are highly decorated, and generally bear some resemblance to a tent, which is evidently the model from which the architecture of China was originally designed.

Near the palace of Jeh-ho, on the side of a steep hill, stands the magnificent temple of Pu-ta-la, the largest and richest in the whole empire, covering above twenty

Digitized by Google

acres of ground, and built at an immense cost by Kien-lung, for whose service this splendid pile was erected. It consists of one large temple or monastery, with a number of smaller buildings and pagodas attached to it. The great temple is an immense square, eleven stories in height, these stories being distinguished by galleries running round the four sides of the building, containing the apartments of the lamas or priests, of whom there were not less than eight hundred at the time of which we are now speaking, so munificently was the establishment endowed by its founder. In the centre of the great temple is the golden chapel, where the priests perform their devotions. It derives its name from its gilded roof; and in the middle is a small space railed off, in which, elevated by steps, stand three altars richly adorned, each supporting a colossal statue, said to be of solid gold, but of course only gilded. The priests, who wear yellow robes, chaunt their service in a kind of recitative, striking drums at intervals; but there is no congregation; and although people sometimes go into this and other Buddhist temples from curiosity to observe the rites, none join in them.

It was at Jeh-ho that the emperor chose to receive the English embassy. The custom of Eastern sovereigns has always been to hold levees soon after daybreak;[1] and such was the practice of the emperor Kien-lung, although he had arrived at the advanced age of eighty-three. At the first appearance of dawn, on the day appointed for the reception of the embassy, were assem-

[1] This will remind the reader of the hour of the meeting of the Jewish Sanhedrim to try Jesus, "when the morning was come" (Matt. xxvii. 1); "as soon as it was day" (Luke xxii. 66).

Digitized by Google

bled all the princes of the imperial family, the principal officers of state, with a great number of lower officers and several Mongol chiefs, who had come, as was customary, to be present at the celebration of the emperor's birthday, which was drawing near, and was always kept with much ceremony. The hall of audience, on this occasion, was a magnificent tent in the park, supported by gilded pillars, at the upper end of which was placed a throne under a canopy, raised several steps from the ground, which last was covered with rich carpets and furnished with embroidered cushions of exquisite workmanship. From the top of the tent hung several of those elegant painted lanterns so conspicuous among Chinese decorations and unequaled for beauty in any part of the world. The emperor's approach was announced by the sound of gongs and trumpets. He was carried in a palanquin by sixteen bearers, a number that is not permitted to any other individual in the empire; and was surrounded by the usual appendages of Chinese dignity—flags, standards, fans and parasols. He was plainly dressed, as suited his venerable years, in a robe of yellow silk, with no ornaments about his person except a large pearl in the front of his black velvet cap.

The British ambassador, who was presented by the president of the Board of Rites, was most graciously received, although he did not pay that homage to which the great autocrat was accustomed, but merely bent one knee in presenting his credentials. This omission of the ko-tau by Lord Macartney excited many criticisms and comments. It may be reasonably supposed that the reigning emperor, at the close of a very long and prosperous reign, felt sufficiently assured of his own power

Digitized by Google

and greatness to dispense with such a ceremony; and that the authority of his son and successor, Kia-king, who was on the throne when the next British ambassador (Lord Amherst) appeared at court, having been shaken by frequent insurrections, and even by some attempts against his life, this circumstance rendered him—or, at least, his courtiers—more tenacious of external forms. Some compliments were exchanged, and several presents also; for the etiquette of the court of China requires that every envoy who approaches the throne shall be provided with a suitable offering, for which he usually receives a gift in return; but it should be observed that the former is accepted as a humble tribute due from an inferior, while the latter is conferred as a mark of extreme condescension. When the ceremonies were ended, a sumptuous breakfast was served up in the tent in the Chinese fashion; and while all present partook of the repast, a band of music played on the lawn, where tumblers and rope-dancers exhibited various feats of agility, and a play was performed on a raised stage. Such plays are largely historical; the acting, however, is unnatural.

They have no scenery, but very fine dresses; and, as no women are allowed to appear on the stage, the female characters are always performed by boys. At Jeh-ho the ladies of the court had a theatre for their own especial amusement, where plays were acted every day, which were sometimes attended by the emperor and his ministers, but more frequently by the ladies only. One of their greatest enjoyments was to form parties of pleasure on the canal, for which purpose there were yachts always in readiness, fitted up in the most elegant manner, but

Digitized by Google

so contrived that the fair occupants were entirely screened from observation.

There was no empress at this period, for the princess who had enjoyed that dignity was dead, and Kien-lung had not thought proper to raise another to the throne. The laws of China admit of only one proper wife; hence the Tartar sovereigns give to one a rank above the rest, and she alone is called empress, while the others have the title of queen. There were eight queens at this time—two of the first and six of the second rank; and these had each a certain number of ladies in her train, making altogether upward of one hundred females belonging to the court. So long as the emperor lives these ladies usually lead pleasant lives, but their subsequent lot is not very enviable, as they are then removed to a building near the palace, which may be termed a nunnery, since they are obliged, by the customs of the country, to pass the remainder of their lives within its walls in utter seclusion.

The English visitors stayed a week at Jeh-ho, and were present at the anniversary of the emperor's birthday, which is a holiday throughout the empire. The ceremonies of the court consisted principally in the grand birth-day ode, sung in chorus by voices innumerable, accompanied by deep-toned bells and solemn music. The emperor was present, but not visible, being seated behind a screen in a large hall, where all the courtiers were assembled in their state dresses to pay the customary homage, which was done by falling prostrate at the conclusion of every stanza of the ode, which has been thus translated: "Bow down your heads, all ye dwellers on the earth; bow down your heads before the

Digitized by Google

great Kien-lung!" an exhortation that was literally obeyed.

The two or three days which succeeded the birth-day were entirely devoted to shows, sports and festivities, in which all classes participated.

When the gayeties were over, it was intimated to the British ambassador that it would be proper to take his leave of Jeh-ho, and return without delay to Canton, whither the emperor's answer on the subject of the embassy would be forwarded. Instead of returning by sea, as they came, the strangers passed by the Canal and rivers through the provinces of Shan-tung, Kiang-nan, Chi-kiang, Kiang-si and Kwang-tung, or Canton, a journey which occupied about ten weeks. The highly-cultivated state of the country, the number, wealth and greatness of its cities, its abundant resources and myriads of inhabitants, were subjects of wonder and admiration to our travelers. The emperor wrote a very friendly letter to King George III., but did not accede to the request that he would allow the subjects of the latter to trade to Ning-po, Amoy and other maritime cities besides Canton, as they used to do before they were restricted to that one port. The mission, however, was in some degree successful, as the viceroy of Canton, who had encouraged the frauds practiced on British merchants, was removed from his office, while the governor appointed in his room received peremptory orders to put a stop to the grievances complained of; so that for a short time the trade was conducted on a fairer footing, when the abdication and subsequent death of Kien-lung afforded an opportunity for the renewal of all the former oppressions.

It was in the next year but one following Lord Ma-

Digitized by Google

cartney's embassy that the aged emperor of China completed the sixtieth year of his felicitous reign, and, in accordance with the vow he had made at its commencement, prepared to resign the throne he had filled with so much ability. He had had twenty-one sons, of whom only four were then living. The youngest was his favorite, and to that prince, who assumed the name of Kia-king, he determined to resign his empire. The sixtieth anniversary of his accession was celebrated by a grand jubilee throughout China, when many acts of munificence were performed by the emperor;[1] and among others, he desired that all the old men who had passed the age of seventy should be invited to a feast, prepared for them at his expense, in every district over the whole empire.

He reserved to himself the title of the *supreme emperor*, but he retired altogether from state affairs, and died soon afterward, at the advanced age of eighty-eight. He was highly distinguished as a patron of literature, to which, as we have stated, he was himself a valuable contributor. He was indefatigable in his attention to business, and his extensive charities in seasons of public distress do honor to his name. and give him a true right to that title which it is the aim of every good ruler of China to obtain—that of the Father of his People.

Kien-lung had not only kept together the vast empire, but had greatly extended its limits. Two events disturbed the equanimity of the imperial court and interfered with the British negotiations: the rajah of Nepaul had been waging war on Tibet, and the great French

[1] Sixty years complete a revolution of the Chinese cycle, which corresponds in their divisions of time with our century.

Digitized by Google

Revolution had sent the echoes of its astounding deeds as far as Peking.

On their return toward Canton the embassy and servants were conveyed a great distance on the Grand Canal. This great work is about six hundred and fifty miles in length. It is called by the Chinese the Chah-ho, or Gated river (*i. e.*, river with locks, or gates.) It extends from the Pei-ho river, near Peking, to Hang-chau, a great city south of Shanghai. It was commenced in the seventh century, and additions and improvements added until the last century. Its masonry in some places is solid and well built. The passage of boats from one level to another is ingeniously effected by drawing them by windlasses over embankments lubricated and protected by wet clay. The value of this channel for the internal commerce of the empire is beyond calculation. On the canal the travelers often saw the fishing-cormorants at their work. In some places there were thousands of small boats and rafts, built entirely for this curious species of fishery. On each boat or raft were ten or a dozen birds, which, at a signal from the owner, plunged into the water to catch the fish with their bills. It was astonishing to see the enormous size of some of the fish with which they returned to the boat.

The interval between the reign of Kien-lung and the important one of Tau-kwang was occupied by that of a man of inferior character, some notice of whom may be most fitly introduced at the close of this chapter.

It was in the year 1795 that Kia-king ascended the throne. The late emperor had chosen him to succeed

Digitized by Google

him, because he entertained a very high opinion of his disposition and talents for government. But the conduct of the new monarch soon proved that both his virtues and abilities had been very much overrated by the partiality of his fond father; for as soon as he was his own master he began to indulge in pleasures that would have been extremely unbecoming in a prince of less pretensions.

Kia-king seems to have imbibed no great taste for the restraints and etiquette of the Chinese court, which are doubtless excessively fatiguing, as every word and movement of the emperor ought to be in accordance with that dignified and even sacred character with which he is invested, and which most of the imperial rulers of China have made it their study to maintain. The Manchu emperors had all been eminently distinguished by the stately air and grave deportment naturally looked for in those who are venerated as beings partaking of a superior nature; but Kia-king was utterly destitute of these lofty attributes, and not only indulged in an immoderate love of wine, but selected his favorite associates from amongst the actors, who, in China, are considered the very lowest class of the community. It is even said that, when heated with wine, he sometimes degraded himself so far as to take a part in the dramatic performances of his chosen companions. An Italian Catholic missionary, named Serra, who was for many years employed at Peking, has given a very particular account of the extremely profligate habits of this very unworthy son of the great Kien-lung. After the early morning audience, from which no emperor can excuse himself, and a hurried despatch of the business submitted to

Digitized by Google

him, he generally retired to the company of his players, buffoons and tumblers, and afterward drank to excess. He would frequently proceed with players to the apartments of his women, in the interior of the palace; and it was remarked that his two younger sons bore no resemblance to himself or to each other. He even carried the comedians with him when he went to offer sacrifices at the temples of Heaven and Earth. The ministers openly remonstrated with him respecting these disgraceful propensities, but their admonitions were in vain; and one of them, the noble and faithful Sung Tajin, a man of very high talent, who was exceedingly useful to the state, was banished for presuming to speak freely on the subject of his faults. When summoned by the emperor and asked what punishment he deserved, he answered, "A slow and ignominious death." When told to choose another, he said, "Beheading." When asked a third time, he chose "Strangling." [These are the three gradations of capital punishment.] He was ordered to retire, and on the following day the court appointed him governor of Chinese Siberia, the region to which criminals are exiled. Thus, as Serra observes, the emperor, though unable to bear his censure, acknowledged his rectitude. The people soon became dissatisfied with a monarch whom they could not respect, and insurrections broke out in many parts of the country; incited in some cases by the elder princes, who felt themselves aggrieved at the preference that had been given by their father to their youngest brother.

Kia-king was as unpopular among the Tartars as among the Chinese; for, while the latter were shocked at his indifference to ancient customs, the former were

Digitized by Google

discontented at his neglect of the annual hunting excursions, esteemed as the grand business of life by all the Tartar soldiers, as well as by the tributary nations dwelling beyond the Wall. One of the consequences resulting from this state of affairs was the formation of secret associations, called Triad Societies, which are known still to exist to a vast extent. The Triads know each other by secret signs, like the Freemasons; their object is to overthrow the present government and to restore the native princes to the throne.

Kia-king severely persecuted the Roman Catholics in China. Some of the Roman missionaries had concealed themselves in remote parts of the country, where they appear to have been cherished by the rural population. Eighteen of them were discovered, dragged to prison and brutally beaten; six died in confinement; three were taken into the emperor's service, and nine were driven out of the empire. We have no data to show the number of native priests and converts who suffered death, torture, imprisonment and banishment in these sudden storms of persecution; but the total number was probably to be counted by hundreds. Political reasons were those which chiefly influenced the Chinese government. Between the years 1580 and 1724 there had been about five hundred missionaries sent out from Europe, and we know that they traversed the empire, and that some were very successful in propagating their faith.

In consequence of the disturbed state of the empire, numerous bands of robbers infested the interior of the country, while the pirates of the Ladrone Islands renewed their depredations on the coast. Among these

Digitized by Google

was a noted corsair, named Ching-yih, who was no less renowned and feared than the famous Koshinga had been in the time of the first emperor of the Manchu race. This formidable chief was in the habit of levying contributions on all the merchant vessels that appeared in the Chinese seas; he plundered the villages on the coast, and did not hesitate to engage in battle with the imperial fleet. It was strongly suspected that he received secret assistance from many Chinese merchants of Amoy and Canton, who were disaffected toward the reigning family. The extent of his depredations between the years 1806 and 1811 would be incredible if not well attested by English officers and other Europeans. Fishermen and other destitute classes flocked by thousands to his standard, and his audacity growing with his numbers, he not merely swept the coast, but blockaded the principal rivers, penetrated far into the interior of the empire, surprised and plundered great towns and took very many large war-junks. His exploits were marked with cruelty and every imaginable atrocity and abomination. At one time he controlled seventy thousand men, eight hundred large vessels and more than a thousand smaller ones.

Ching-yih was accidentally drowned, but his death did not put a stop to the lawless practices of his people; for his widow, who might have been esteemed as a great heroine in a worthier cause, took the command of the fleet, headed the rovers in all their piratical expeditions, and actually fought in several engagements with the government forces. These Amazonian qualities were combined with very extraordinary talents as a ruler; for she drew up a regular code of laws for the government of

Digitized by Google

her people, by which they were bound to act equitably toward each other, and thus order was preserved among them. For some time this female corsair maintained the sovereignty of the Chinese seas, insomuch that no merchant-ships could navigate them in safety without a pass from her, which she granted on payment of a certain toll, and this pass protected them from any pirate vessels they might encounter on their passage. At length disputes arose among the pirate captains, and the female chieftain, beginning to find her position a difficult one to maintain, concluded a regular treaty of peace with the governor of Canton, who was rewarded by government with a peacock's feather, the usual mark of distinction bestowed on a military or naval commander for any eminent service rendered to the state. The lady withdrew from the conspicuous situation in which she had placed herself to live in retirement, while most of the pirates, being thus left without a leader, made their peace and were received into the government.

In the mean time, the whole country was in a very unsettled state. The province of Chih-li was overrun with armed bands, composed partly of those who had become robbers by profession, and partly of native patriots, who joined with the banditti as a means of strengthening their force. All were equally terrible to the peaceful inhabitants, who were plundered with impunity; the robbers coming in such numbers as to intimidate the magistrates, some of whom were possibly more inclined to encourage than to oppose them. Some of these patriots profess merely an anxiety for the restoration of a native dynasty as the best means of promoting internal tranquillity, good order and prosperity; but

Digitized by Google

many of them entertain very wild, anarchical and communistic notions.

In the year 1813 the palace at Peking was suddenly attacked by a numerous body of armed men, who forced the gates and rushed into the great hall, with the intention of seizing the emperor and obliging him to abdicate the throne. A similar attempt had been made ten years previously, since which time Kia-king had taken care to have a strong bodyguard in constant attendance; and besides this precaution a double guard was posted at every gate; therefore it is supposed that the conspirators must have had confederates within the palace, who facilitated their entrance; otherwise there must have been a desperate struggle with the soldiers, which does not appear to have been the case. A terrible scene of confusion ensued. The princes and attendant officers surrounding their sovereign made a gallant defence; and one of Kia-king's sons had the good fortune to save his father's life by shooting two of the insurgents who were in the act of rushing upon the emperor. Much blood was shed before the palace was cleared of the assailants, who were, however, at length dispersed, and the insurrection was eventually subdued. Kia-king named as his successor the prince whose timely aid had preserved his life.

About three years after this rebellion another embassy was sent by the British government to the court of Peking, to complain anew of the manner in which the trade with England was conducted at Canton. The good effect produced by the interference of Kien-lung had been but temporary. Lord Amherst was the ambassador on this occasion. On the arrival of the em-

Digitized by Google

bassy at Peking the old dispute relative to the ko-tau, or prostration before the emperor, was revived, and the conduct of the ambassador was so entirely misrepresented to him that no audience was granted; and thus the English not only failed in obtaining a redress of grievances, but were disappointed of seeing the sovereign. It has been ascertained, however, that the agency of the provincial government of Canton was powerfully exerted against Lord Amherst's embassy, and that the emperor subsequently discovered, with much regret, the insulting proceedings of his ministers.

One grand object of this unsuccessful embassy had been, as before, to solicit a restoration of the privilege formerly enjoyed by British merchants of trading to other ports besides that of Canton—a privilege now obtained by other means, and not likely to be lost again. All European trade, as already stated, had been restricted to the single port of Canton by an edict of Kien-lung in the year 1755, when it was ordered that foreign vessels should only go thither at a certain season of the year, and not remain there longer than a given time, at the expiration of which they were either to depart entirely or withdraw to Macao; and this arbitrary decree had never been revoked. In consequence of the ports being thus closed against them, the British merchants were obliged to pay for the transport of tea from an immense distance, by which its price was considerably increased; for between Canton and the principal tea districts there were ranges of lofty mountains to be crossed and shallow rivers to be navigated, which made the carriage of goods a difficult, expensive and tedious process, the more especially as chests of tea, or any

Digitized by Google

other large or heavy packages, are not conveyed overland in wagons or by horses, but are slung on bamboo poles and carried by men, however long the distance may be. The boats on the canals and many of the rivers have to be towed or tracked by ropes; and this labor also, which in most countries is done by horses, is in China performed by men; so that, either on land or water, the number of laborers employed in the transit of merchandise is immense. To the resistance of all these interested parties in the interior and on the coast has been attributed the failure of the embassy.

The death of Kia-king, when sixty-one years of age, in 1820, is said to have been hastened by his excesses, and by his uneasiness and fear on learning, during a journey in the provinces, the sad condition to which the empire had fallen during his reign. There were, however, strong suspicions of secret assassination.

The emperor's will, a very singular document, was published to the people. In it was this passage: "The Yellow river has from the remotest ages been *China's sorrow*. Whenever the mouth of the stream has been impeded by sand-banks, it has, higher up its course, created alarm by overflowing the country. On such occasions I have not spared the imperial treasury to embank the river and restore the waters to their former channel. Since a former repair of the river was completed, six or seven years of tranquillity had elapsed, when last year, in the autumn, the excessive rains caused an unusual rise of the water, and in Ho-nan the river burst its banks at several points, both on the south and north sides. The stream Wu-chi forced a passage to the sea, and the mischief done was immense. During

Digitized by Google

the spring of this year, just as those who conducted the repair of the banks had reported that the work was finished, the southern bank at I-fung again gave way." The mention of this subject in the emperor's will is a sufficient proof of its importance. If the science of European engineers could put an effectual stop to the evil, it would be the most important physical benefit that was ever conferred on the empire. Even the European trade at Canton was annually taxed to meet the repairs of the Yellow river.

"The emperor's will," says Sir J. F. Davis, "proceeds to state the merits of his second son, the late sovereign, Tau-kwang, in having shot two of the assassins who entered the palace in 1813, which was the reason of his selection. It has been even supposed that Kia-king's death was hastened by some discontented persons of high rank, who had been lately disgraced in consequence of the mysterious loss of an official seal. The emperor's death was announced to the several provinces by despatches written with blue ink, the mourning color. All persons of condition were required to take the red silk ornament from their caps, with the ball or button of rank; all subjects of China, without exception, were called upon to forbear from shaving their heads for one hundred days, within which period none might marry, or play on musical instruments, or perform any sacrifice." Kia-king was succeeded by his second son, Tau-kwang.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XII.

TAU-KWANG AND THE OPIUM WAR.

THE emperor Tau-kwang, whose name signifies "Light of Reason," ascended the throne in the year 1820; and if he possessed not the wisdom and talents of his grandfather, Kien-lung, he endeavored to maintain the dignity of his exalted station, and was consequently more respected than his predecessor, the weak-minded and vicious Kia-king.

The distant Tartar tribes have always been found very troublesome dependants, and no sooner was Tau-kwang seated on the throne than a serious insurrection broke out in the western territories, which had been annexed to the empire by Kien-lung. Kashgar was one of the chief scenes of the revolt, which, after a struggle of several years, was at length suppressed by the Manchu imperial troops, who are said to have been guilty of dreadful barbarity toward the insurgents.

Peace was scarcely restored in the west when the internal repose of the country was disturbed by another rebellion of the Miau-tsz. The cause of this fresh outbreak does not appear to be known, but they poured down in great numbers from their native hills, under the command of a chieftain who assumed the name of Wang, or king, and not only displayed the imperial ensign of

Digitized by Google

the golden dragon, but wore a yellow robe, which is a direct assumption of the imperial dignity. All the mountain tribes, each governed by a separate chief, enlisted under the banner of this daring leader and descended to the plains, where they defeated the imperial troops and possessed themselves of four towns, from which they expelled the soldiers and mandarins, but did not injure the rest of the inhabitants, declaring by a public proclamation that they were not the enemies of the people, but of the government. By the spring of 1832 they had established themselves in the country to the north-west of Canton, holding a number of walled cities, and treating the industrious portion of the inhabitants with great kindness. At this time it was rather more than suspected that a good many members of the "Triad Society," whose object is the emancipation of the Chinese and the overthrow of the Tartars, had got among the mountaineers and were directing their measures and movements. Li, the governor of Canton, received orders from Peking to put an end to the rebellion; and with that view he assembled what he supposed would be a sufficient force to defeat them, but they were more formidable than he had expected, and his army was repulsed with great loss; in consequence of which misfortune he was degraded and deprived of his government, for the spirit of the law is that if a general is commanded to conquer he ought to obey. Another officer, the governor of Ho-nan, met with better success, and having retaken one of the towns occupied by the mountain bands, was rewarded with a peacock's feather, which is the highest badge of military distinction known among the Tartars. Still the rebellion was not terminated, and the Miau-tsz

Digitized by Google

held out with determined obstinacy for nearly six years, when in 1838 two imperial commissioners were sent from Peking to treat with them upon amicable terms, and induced them to return quietly to their homes—by what means is not exactly known, although it is suspected large presents were not spared. It was then publicly announced that the rebels had been obliged to make the most humble submission; but as they are as independent now as they were before, it is quite evident they were rather appeased than subdued, and, if they really were bribed to withdraw, will most probably repeat the same profitable experiment. About the same period there was also an insurrection in the island of Formosa, which was successfully quelled by the government.

In 1838 a war broke out of a totally different nature from any that had yet disturbed the Celestial Empire. The commercial intercourse between England and China had been carried on through the East India Company, and so it continued till the year 1833, when the term of its last charter expired, and all British subjects were equally at liberty to send out ships to China for tea and other produce of that country, which till then had never been exported by any vessels but those belonging to the privileged company. Independent merchants were less watchful against creating trouble with the Chinese, and less honest and less responsible in their dealings with them than the company. Troubles sprang up, and mutual suspicion and hatred increased between the two nations. But the great cause of the war was the fearful evils inflicted upon the Chinese, from the highest to the lowest, by the growth and illegal introduction of opium. The company had carried on an extensive trade

Digitized by Google

in this drug. The consumption of the narcotic had become enormous. Sir John F. Davis says, "The engrossing taste of all ranks and degrees in China for opium, a drug whose importation has of late years exceeded the aggregate value of all other English imports combined, deserves particular notice, especially in connection with the revenues of British India, of which it forms an important item. The use of this pernicious narcotic has become as extensive as the increasing demand for it was rapid from the first." The trade was contraband, for opium had always been prohibited as hurtful to the health and morals of the people. Yet the quantity imported into China had increased more than fivefold in twelve years.[1]

This had the effect of drawing the serious attention of the Peking government to the growing evil. Decrees were fulminated by the imperial court against all smokers, venders or purchasers of opium. They were to be beaten with a hundred strokes of the bamboo, to stand in the pillory and to receive other punishments. An imperial state paper says, "It seems that opium is almost entirely imported from abroad: worthless subordinates in offices and nefarious traders first introduced the abuse; young persons of family, wealthy citizens and merchants adopted the custom, until at last it reached the common people."

The denunciation might have been made far more

[1] This will be made manifest by the following statement:

Year.	Chests.		Dollars.	Total dollars.
1821	4,628	Average price,	1325	6,132,100
1825	9,621	"	723	6,955,983
1830	18,760	"	587	11,012,120
1832	23,670	"	648	15,338,160

Digitized by Google

general. The highest prince of the blood smoked his opium pipe, and so did the poorest peasant when he could get it. At Canton and all the frequented seaport towns there were public houses exclusively devoted to opium-smoking; at Peking, in the very palace, the ladies of the imperial harem and their emasculated attendants smoked opium, and would not be without it. In the year 1833 opium formed about *one-half* of the total value of British imports at Canton and Lintin, and the amount of the opium imported by that nation was greater than that of the tea exported by the Chinese.[1]

In the spring of 1834, when the British free-trading ships began to arrive and take in cargoes of tea at Canton, there was a visible increase in the sale of opium. That drug was also partly supplied by American and other ships. The long series of quarrels which led to the war between England and China did not, however, spring from opium alone. Many grievances in the way of trade were complained of before the issuing of the new regulations. In July, 1834, Lord Napier, chief superintendent of British commerce in China, John F. Davis, Esq., and Sir G. B. Robinson, second and third superintendents, arrived at Canton, their appointments having been made by the British government of that period, and their instructions principally drawn up by Viscount Palmerston, Secretary for Foreign Affairs, who appears to have entertained very incorrect notions as to

[1] The following were the exports and imports for that year:

Imports.		*Exports.*	
Opium	$11,618,167	Tea	$9,133,749
Other imports	11,858,077	Other exports	11,309,521
	$23,476,244		$20,443,270

Digitized by Google

the facility of extending foreign trade to other parts of the Chinese dominion, and as to the respect which would be paid to representatives of his government. Lord Napier was not treated with the respect which the authorities had been accustomed to pay to the experienced agents of the East India Company. An edict was issued commanding his lordship to return to Macao, and threatening to stop the trade. As the superintendent would not move, the trade was stopped on the second of September, and all intercourse with British subjects prohibited. Lord Napier immediately called up two British frigates to protect the shipping and persons of British subjects. These vessels, the Andromache and Imogene, were fired upon by the Chinese in their passage through the Bogue; but they soon silenced those batteries, got near to Canton and landed some sailors and marines at the factory. The Chinese made overtures for an accommodation. At this point, Lord Napier, affected by a sultry climate to which he was not accustomed, and by the delays and vexations to which he had been exposed, fell very ill. On the 19th of September it was agreed that the two frigates should be sent away, that he should return to Macao and that the trade should be reopened. On the 21st the frigates were ordered to leave the river, and his lordship left Canton for Macao in a native passage-boat provided by the Chinese authorities. The Chinese regarded him as a prisoner, and detained him five days on a journey of less than a hundred miles. The sufferings and annoyances he experienced on his passage down were too much for his debilitated frame, and he died at Macao a fortnight after his arrival there, and just three months since his land-

Digitized by Google

ing in China. The Chinese officers seized several workmen who were in the employment of Protestant missionaries and engaged in printing religious tracts, and, having severely bambooed them, dragged them to a filthy prison.

Lord Napier was succeeded by John F. Davis, Esq., with Captain Eliot for secretary. About a month after this (in November, 1834) an imperial mandate utterly forbade all traffic in opium. Shortly afterward, part of the crew of the English ship Argyle, which had anchored on the coast of China in consequence of damage at sea, were seized by the local authorities and kept as prisoners; and when Captain Eliot, now third superintendent, went up to Canton to demand their restoration, he was grossly assaulted by the authorities there and forcibly sent back. In a few days, however, the sailors were restored. The years 1836–39 were almost filled up with disputes and quarrels, arising from the confused state of affairs, and from the persistent efforts of the English to force opium into the accessible ports and harbors, particularly along the southern coast. There continued to grow up a stupendous system of smuggling, in which many of the Chinese officers were involved, and which those who sincerely deplored and resisted it were utterly unable to control.

The factories belonging to the merchants of Europe and America occupy a small space along the banks of the river, outside the walls of the city. There were at that time the British, American, French, Dutch, Austrian, Danish and Swedish; each consisting of several brick or stone edifices, built along the side of an open space of inconsiderable dimensions. Three streets in the suburbs,

Digitized by Google

leading from these factories, contained the shops where foreigners purchased all they required for their own use, for they were not allowed to enter the town. Within these narrow limits they were now closely confined, their lives being in danger if they ventured beyond them; and on one occasion a mob invaded their limits and a serious fight ensued.

In January, 1839, the government sent the police to search the native houses of Canton and seize opium wherever found. This led to a curious scene, highly characteristic of the democratic character of the Chinese institutions and the independence of the people. The people would not allow the search to begin until they had first searched the policemen, who were generally known as the greatest opium-smokers in the city. A few days after this the Canton authorities caused a native opium-smuggler to be executed in front of the factories, whereupon all the foreign flags were immediately struck. The governor took no notice of a remonstrance addressed to him by Captain Eliot.

A week after these occurrences the celebrated Commissioner Lin arrived from court, vested with the most absolute powers that were ever delegated by the emperor. When he arrived at Canton there were several British ships in the river, having not less than twenty thousand chests of opium on board. These he demanded should be given up without delay, to be destroyed. He blockaded the factories, and even threatened to put the occupants to death; on which the British superintendent—Captain Eliot—deemed it advisable to agree to the surrender of the opium, in order to secure the safety of his countrymen. Several weeks were

Digitized by Google

Leon-hing Street, Canton.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

occupied in the landing of the forfeited drug, during which the merchants were still detained in the factories; but as soon as it was ascertained that all the chests had been brought on shore, the troops were withdrawn and the captives left at liberty to depart.

In the mean time the commissioner had sent to Peking for instructions how to dispose of the property he had seized, and received the following order, in the name of the emperor: "Lin and his colleagues are to assemble the civil and military officers and destroy the opium before their eyes; thus manifesting to the natives dwelling on the sea-coast and the foreigners of the outside nations an awful warning. Respect this. Obey respectfully." In obedience to this command, on the 3d of June, 1839, the high commissioner, accompanied by all the officers, proceeded to Chan-hau, near the mouth of the river, where large trenches had been dug, into which the opium was thrown, with a quantity of quicklime, salt and water, so that it was decomposed and the mixture ran into the sea. The operations for destroying the drug continued about twenty days, and were witnessed on the 16th by several English merchants, who had an interview with Commissioner Lin. The market value of the property at the time was about twelve millions of Spanish dollars.

Some days before this transaction the British merchants had retired to Macao. This settlement still belongs to the Portuguese, who have their own government and the privilege of trying any offender by their own laws, even though he be a Chinese. They have forts garrisoned by about four hundred men, some fine churches, a monastery and a convent for nuns. The

Digitized by Google

Portuguese employ a great many black slaves as servants, but all the mechanics and workmen of every description, as well as the shopkeepers, are Chinese. The houses are built in the European style, and there a considerable number of English families were residing at the time.

Soon after the British merchants had removed from Canton to Macao, it happened that some English, American and Chinese sailors quarreled in the street, and that one of the latter was accidentally killed by a random blow. When the governor of Canton was informed of this unfortunate circumstance, he demanded that the culprits should be given up to justice, but as the Portuguese territory is not amenable to Chinese law, they of course refused to comply; however, a very short time after, the English and American seamen were tried by their own laws at Hong-kong, when they were acquitted of the murder, but five of them were found guilty of riot and sentenced to fine and imprisonment, with hard labor. The governor now gave orders that provisions should no longer be supplied to the English at Macao, on which Captain Eliot removed the whole fleet to Hong-kong, a rocky island about thirty-five miles to the east of that settlement, inhabited at that time chiefly by fishermen, but which has now become an English settlement, with a good town, built by its new occupants. In the mean time, the British superintendent had written to Lord Auckland, the governor-general of India, requesting vessels and men to assist in protecting the lives and property of British subjects in China, and thus, toward the close of 1839, the clouds of war were gathering rapidly over the Celestial Empire.

The High-Commissioner Lin no sooner became aware

Digitized by Google

that the British fleet had removed to Hong-kong than he issued a decree that all trade between the English and the Chinese should be suspended until the former had given a bond to obey the laws of the empire, signed with the names of all the owners of vessels engaged in the opium trade, as well as that of the superintendent. For a time, therefore, the trade was suspended, and the English ships remained in Hong-kong harbor, while the Chinese fleet was preparing to make an attack on them.

Hong-kong is one of a group of small rocky islands which are so numerous round the coast of China that one of the titles given the emperor is, "Lord of Ten Thousand Isles." The inhabitants were mostly poor fishermen, living on the sea-shore, in wooden sheds, and some in huts of a rude character, made of old junks and worn-out boats. It is not more than eight miles in length and five in breadth, exhibiting to the eye on the first approach a mass of steep rugged rocks, among which, however, are found a few fertile spots, where rice is cultivated; and the inhabitants enjoy the luxury of plenty of good water, which in many other Chinese islands is very scarce. The island abounds in granite, which many of the inhabitants are employed in hewing for exportation.

A number of British merchant vessels having collected below the mouth of the river, under the protection of two British frigates—the Volage and the Hyacinth—Lin sent Admiral Kwan to attack them. On the 3d of November, Kwan went through the Bocca Tigris or Bogue passage, and with sixteen war-junks gave battle. The frigates beat him off with great loss; one of his junks was blown up, three were sunk, and

Digitized by Google

the rest shattered and scattered. This defeat was a serious blow to the authorities at Canton, who had placed great dependence on the admiral. Lin and his coadjutors exerted themselves to strengthen the fleet, by building a number of gunboats of larger size and superior in construction to the generality of the war-junks, which were little different from the trading vessels. Nothing of special importance occurred till the month of June, when an armament arrived from India, under the command of Sir Gordon Bremer, which joined the British ships already assembled. There was a bold attempt made by the Chinese to destroy the whole fleet, by sending fire-ships into the midst of it, which failed.

Lin and the war party placed great confidence in the valor of their troops, which began to collect in large numbers, but in truth the Chinese army was not fitted to resist the European soldiery.

It may be remarked here that the entire force under the command of the government, including both the native troops and the Tartar legions, amounts to eight hundred thousand men, who are ranged under eight banners, and must always be ready for duty. Their colors are yellow, white, red and blue, which, variously bordered, form eight different standards. The Tartar soldiers are more effective than the Chinese, as they are warlike by nature, trained to arms and regularly organized; whereas the Chinese merely constitute a militia, as they dwell at their own homes, clothe and arm themselves according to their own fancy, and are very seldom required for actual service. Their chief duty, as military men, is to act as police in the cities; and in case of any local disturbances or rebellions of the mountaineers, they are

Digitized by Google

obliged to take the field; but, in general, they spend the greater part of the year with their families, engaged in cultivating the land; and as they receive pay from the government, every countryman is desirous of being enrolled as a soldier for the sake of increasing his means of subsistence.

Instead of striking Canton, however, Sir Gordon Bremer established the blockade of the river, and carried the British fleet northward, on the east coast of China. He had fifteen men-of-war, four war steamers and four thousand land troops.

The first conquest made by the English, on the 5th of July, 1840, was that of Chu-san—a fine island, about fifty miles in circumference, containing a dense population, and situated near the eastern coast of China. Tinghai, the capital, is a large city standing in a plain not far from the sea. Its high blue walls are fortified by twenty-two square towers, together with a wide moat, which runs nearly round the town; but these defences were of little use without artillery and soldiers, with which Tinghai was but ill supplied; so that the English took possession of it without any difficulty.

The flight of the inhabitants from Tinghai was followed by the plunder of all the houses and shops in which any property had been left—not by the invaders alone, but by the poorer class of Chinese. The presence of the English did not deter the pilferers from crowding into the town and carrying off whatever they could seize, till these depredations were in some measure checked by the British officers, who posted sentinels at the gates to prevent anything being taken out, except coffins for interment. These were suffered to pass with-

Digitized by Google

out question, until their numbers began to excite attention; when they were examined, and, as had been suspected, found to contain all kinds of goods that could be put into them. The English encouraged many of the citizens to return and reopen their shops, while the country people supplied them plentifully with provisions; but the climate was found unhealthy for the British troops, many of whom died there, owing, it is supposed, to the dampness of the flat lands, which are always so wet that the fields can only be crossed by the narrow paved causeways constructed for that purpose.

On the 19th of August the ships Hyacinth and Larne attacked a great Chinese force and batteries at the Macao barrier, destroying guns, taking the camp and killing about sixty soldiers. The men threw the blame of their quick and scandalous flight on the cowardice of the officers, who were the first to run away.

Nearly at the same time an imposing fleet anchored off Takoo, near the entrance of the Pei-ho river, at the North. Captain Eliot ascended the Pei-ho in a steamer as far as the town of Tien-tsin, where he entered into tedious negotiations with Ki-shen, the viceroy of the province, who had just been appointed imperial high commissioner. The grand object of this acute negotiator was to get the British force removed from the vicinity of Peking, to which city the distance by land was only one hundred miles. During the protracted conferences the admiral profited by the time to sail farther northward, and to visit the extremity of the Great Wall where it passes toward the sea. "As if in mockery of all natural obstacles, this gigantic barrier, between twenty and thirty

Digitized by Google

feet in height and twenty feet broad, displays itself as far as the eye can reach, traversing the very tops of the mountains, some of them computed at three thousand feet above the sea's level, and those farther inland much higher."[1]

It was at length agreed that the negotiations should be removed to Canton, and that the commissioners should be sent to that city to meet Ki-shen, the very same minister with whom they had been so idly conferring on the Pei-ho.

The fleet once removed from the Pei-ho, the Chinese knew that the course of the monsoon would prevent its returning thither for another year, or at least for eight months. The English barbarians had approached the capital of the Celestial Empire to present a respectful and obedient petition; they had been *compelled* to retire, and they all merited extermination. So ran various proclamations written with "the vermilion pencil."

Captain Eliot continued to treat with Ki-shen; but on the 6th of January, 1841, an edict was issued from Peking that all English ships and Englishmen should be destroyed wherever they should be met with near China. At the same time high rewards were offered by the Canton authorities for the bodies of Englishmen, dead or alive. The price put upon the commodore and the other chiefs was fifty thousand dollars apiece, if taken alive; for their heads, twenty-five thousand dollars. In consequence of this, Commodore Sir Gordon Bremer moved his forces, and on the 7th of January attacked and reduced the forts of Chuen-pi and Tai-kok-tau, near the Bogue, capturing one hundred and seventy-three Chinese guns.

[1] Sir J. F. Davis, *Sketches of China.*

Digitized by Google

Above these forts the river expands considerably in width, being in some places five or six miles broad, but toward Whampoa it again becomes narrow, and a little below that village divides itself into two branches, from which numerous streams and canals run in all directions through many miles of paddy-fields.

On the 26th of February all the Bogue forts were battered and taken. Poor Admiral Kwan was killed at his post, and four hundred and fifty guns were captured. There was a very strong Chinese force on the hills behind the forts, but they ran away in a panic as soon as the batteries were taken. Many lost their lives in attempting to swim across the river; and of the thousand men probably who did not escape on this day, nearly every one met his death.

The cruelty of the British in shooting the poor men as they vainly endeavored to escape in the water is spoken of among the Chinese with deep indignation. Those who had fought for a short time in the batteries were covered by very strong walls, and suffered little loss there.

On the morrow the smaller ships were moved up to the first bar. Here were found a long fortification on the river bank, an entrenched camp of over three thousand troops, defended by more than one hundred cannon, and a strong raft thrown across the river from bank to bank. The ships and steamers knocked the batteries to pieces, and some British troops and Sepoys being landed, drove the enemy before them, burned the camp and removed or destroyed all the stores, and then the steamers leisurely removed the great raft. In this affair some of the imperial troops displayed considerable courage; but, with their wretched discipline, the best of

Digitized by Google

them could not stand even before the Sepoys. By the 1st of March the lighter part of the squadron proceeded up the river to Canton, and on the following day Sir Hugh Gough arrived to take the command of the forces. On the 6th a proclamation was issued to the people of Canton, offering to spare the city from bombardment on condition of the population remaining quiet. The Chinese having fired upon a flag of truce, the British forces destroyed a fleet of their junks and boats, took possession of some of the suburbs of Canton and captured four hundred and sixty more guns. At this juncture, Ki-shen, degraded and deprived of his office, was removed as a state prisoner from Canton.

A new imperial commissioner arrived at Canton, and hosts of troops from the interior marched to the coast. Captain Eliot, for the third time, prepared to attack Canton. While so doing the ships were attacked by the Chinese with great guns and fire-rafts, which, however, were speedily disposed of. The Nemesis burned upward of sixty of the fire-rafts, and some small ships of war silenced the batteries along shore. Three days after this (on the 24th of May, 1841) the British forces commenced operations in earnest against Canton. On the morning of the 25th, Sir Hugh Gough, with about twenty-five hundred men and his artillery, moved toward the forts and camps on heights behind the city, distant about three miles. After firing at long shots about half an hour, the Chinese in immense numbers evacuated forts and camps, leaving ninety guns behind them. The British troops burned the camps, occupied the heights and bivouacked there for the night. With much reluctance, on the 27th of May, when everything was in

Digitized by Google

readiness for opening the fire, the authorities of Canton agreed to pay six millions of dollars for the ransom of the city. Four days after this five millions were paid, security was given for the remainder, and the British forces withdrew from Canton. Ferocious conflicts took place within the city between the lawless troops from the interior and the citizens, the soldiers wanting to plunder and the citizens defending their property. It is stated that in one of these affrays more than a thousand persons were killed in the streets.

Sir Henry Pottinger arrived on the 10th of August, 1841, at Macao, as sole plenipotentiary of Her Britannic Majesty. Before his arrival trade with Canton was fully reopened, and opium was smuggled more abundantly and more openly than ever. The court of Peking had not ceased levying troops to prosecute the war. The new British negotiator adopted a different line of conduct from that pursued by his predecessor, giving the Chinese authorities to understand that they must either accede to all the demands of the British government, or expect that very decided steps would be taken to force them into compliance. Not only did he require payment for the opium, but that other ports besides that of Canton should be opened to British trade; and he resolved not to terminate the war on any other conditions.

An expedition was immediately undertaken against Amoy, a strongly-fortified city and port in an island of the same name belonging to the province of Fu-kien, and situated within a spacious bay about halfway between Canton and Chu-san. The town is large and populous, defended by stone walls and batteries, and has from time immemorial been a place of great trade, its

Digitized by Google

merchants being classed among the most wealthy and enterprising in the Eastern world. It has a very fine harbor, with every convenience for loading and unloading ships, which can sail close up to the houses; and it also possesses a fine citadel, with a cannon foundry and vast magazines for military stores in the suburbs, which are separated from the city by a chain of rocky hills, over which a paved road leads through a pass with a massive gateway on the highest point. The streets of the city are narrow, but they contain several handsome temples and houses belonging to the officers and merchants.

The fleet destined to attack this important place appeared off Amoy on the 26th of August. The broadsides of the ships had little effect on the stone works, and it was not until a body of troops landed and drove out their garrisons, who stood manfully to their guns, that the fire slackened and the Chinese took to flight. The tremendous cannonading was continued for four hours, without the least real damage to the fortifications, and without killing more than between twenty and thirty Chinese.

When the city was entered by the British troops, it was found in much the same state as Ting-hai on a similar occasion. The most respectable of the inhabitants had fled and a great deal of property had been removed, but much had been necessarily left behind. The streets were soon filled with plunderers, who, in spite of the efforts of the soldiery, contrived to appropriate a vast quantity of goods to which they had no claim. Leaving a garrison at Ku-long-su, a small rocky island, forming part of the fortifications of Amoy, the expedition pro-

Digitized by Google

ceeded to Chu-san, which was speedily reoccupied, but not without the sacrifice of many lives on the part of the Chinese, who made an attempt to defend Ting-hai, but were soon obliged to surrender.

The next conquest was that of Chin-hai, a large and opulent city at the mouth of the Ningpo river, the occupation of which was a preliminary step to the attack upon Ningpo itself. Chin-hai stands at the foot of a lofty hill, and is enclosed by a high wall, about thirty-seven feet in thickness, over which may be seen the tall masts of vessels gliding along a branch of the river which runs through the town. On the summit of the hill is the citadel, which, from its commanding position, is most important as a military station, being, as it were, the key to both Chin-hai and Ningpo, the latter situated about fifteen miles up the river. This fortress is also surrounded by a strong wall, with massive gates, and on two sides the height is so precipitous that it is inaccessible, except at one point, where a narrow path winds from the sea, which skirts the base of the hill, and to this path there is no way by land. The citadel communicates with the town by a steep causeway to a barrier gate at the bottom of the hill, where a bridge over a moat leads to one of the city gates. When the British fleet arrived every point was fortified with batteries and guns mounted, while the hills were covered with encampments.

On the morning of the 10th of October about twenty-two hundred men, with twelve field-pieces and mortars, were landed to attack the citadel and entrenched camp. In these positions alone there were about nine thousand Chinese and Manchu Tartars, who formed in tolerable

Digitized by Google

order as the English advanced, opening a well-directed fire upon their front column, but quite neglecting two smaller columns sent round to turn their flanks; as these three columns opened upon them nearly at the same time, their whole force was completely bewildered, and soon broke and fled in all directions. Knowing nothing of the mode of asking for quarter, and not being themselves in the habit of giving quarter, while some fled into the country the greater part retreated toward the water, pursued by the British soldiery. Hundreds were shot or bayoneted, and hundreds more were drowned. Sir Hugh Gough sent out a flag, with a Chinese inscription on it, to inform them that their lives would be spared if they yielded, but not more than five hundred understood it so far as to throw down their arms. The water was covered with dead bodies, and, besides a large number of wounded, full fifteen hundred lost their lives. Meanwhile, the town and its defences on the north side of the river were bombarded by the ships and the troops driven out. Yu-kien, the very high official who commanded, on seeing that the day was lost, attempted to drown himself; and being prevented from so doing, he fled beyond Ningpo and committed suicide in another manner. At Chin-hai about a hundred and fifty pieces of brass ordnance, many iron guns, matchlocks and other military stores, were captured, together with great quantities of rice and other provisions. The bombardment caused the death of many poor, inoffensive townspeople, who offered no resistance.

Chin-hai was taken on the 10th of October, and on the following day the fleet proceeded up the river to Ningpo, having left a guard of three hundred men in

Digitized by Google

the captured city. The country is a highly-cultivated plain, intersected with numerous canals and abounding with cattle, which is an unusual sight in China. The villages are numerous, and a large town is situated at every five or six miles along the river, while in the distance are seen ranges of lofty hills, forming the boundary of a very charming prospect. The whole province of Chi-kiang is luxuriant and beautiful, and contains an immense population, all the towns and villages being crowded with inhabitants. Numerous families also dwell on the waters, which are enlivened by verdure, as the poor people who lead this amphibious kind of life cultivate some vegetables and flowers in pots on their barges.

In the same province, Hang-chau, which, under some of the early dynasties, was the capital of the empire, is still one of the most wealthy and pleasant cities of China. It is supposed to contain a population equal to that of Paris, and is adorned with many elegant buildings. The shops are handsome, and well stocked, not only with native produce, but with British manufactures, particularly broadcloth, which is very much used in this and the more northern parts of China. The country around Hang-chau is studded with ornamented villas and lofty pagodas, and is beautifully diversified with hill and dale, the former covered to the summit with a variety of trees and shrubs, among which the camphor and tallow trees are conspicuous—the one by its bright green, the other by its purple leaves; and as Chi-kiang is one of the principal silk provinces, plantations of mulberry trees are found in every part.

The city of Ningpo, now a place of interest as an im-

Digitized by Google

portant open port and field of successful missionary efforts, was taken without the least opposition on the part of the inhabitants, many of whom assisted the English to scale the walls and open the gates which had been barricaded, so that the terrible scenes which had occurred at Chin-hai were not enacted on this occasion. The inhabitants wrote on the doors of their houses the words *shun min*, meaning "submissive people." About one hundred and seventy-five thousand dollars in silver, many tons of copper cash, with rice, silk and porcelain, made up the most valuable prize yet taken. It was determined to occupy the city as winter quarters. Ningpo is a much larger city than Chin-hai, and being in the vicinity of the green-tea districts, it is very conveniently situated as a trading station for foreign vessels. It has six arched gates and is almost surrounded by water, the river running on one side almost close to the walls, and a canal forming a boundary to the remainder of the city, with the exception of a small part of the suburbs. The ramparts are high, and so wide that three carriages might be driven abreast on their summit, and the walls are strengthened by huge square buttresses on the inside.

The houses in Ningpo have generally two stories, the one raised above the other on pillars, each story having a separate tiled roof. All the good houses are within a small court, the latter paved with flag-stones, and ornamented with flower-beds and tanks for gold-fish. The principal entrance to these abodes consists of triple doors, but those which form a communication between different apartments are of many fantastic shapes. There are no glass windows, and when the English first arrived there

Digitized by Google

were no fireplaces, but the officers very soon supplied that deficiency in the houses where they established themselves.

A curious incident, illustrative of the Chinese character, is related by a British officer as having occurred during his residence at Ningpo. A paper was one day thrown over the wall addressed to the English, containing, among other arguments, this appeal to their feelings, so characteristic of the people of China, on the impropriety of remaining any longer in that country: "You have been away from your country long enough; your mothers and sisters must be longing for your return. Go back to your families, for we do not want you here."

In the month of March, 1842, the Chinese made a desperate effort to recover the cities of Chin-hai and Ningpo, which they entered at night by scaling the walls, but in both cases they were repulsed with considerable loss. At Ningpo about two hundred and fifty soldiers were killed in the market-place. This attack appears to have been the result of a plan concerted among the chiefs of the army and some of the governors, as a fleet of junks was sent just at the same time against Chu-san, but equally without effect.

Having failed in their enterprises, the Chinese forces assembled at Tsz-ki, a town about eleven miles from Ningpo, where they formed an extensive encampment, and endeavored to cut off the supplies that were carried every day by the country people into the city. This measure brought on an immediate engagement, and again the imperial troops were put to flight, leaving about six hundred dead upon the field. For two months after this

Digitized by Google

battle hostilities were suspended, and the markets, as in time of peace, were plentifully supplied with poultry, fish and very fine vegetables.

About this time the emperor removed to Jeh-ho for the summer, but haughtily refused to listen to the proposed terms of peace. On the 7th of May the British army left Ningpo on its progress toward the north. The intention of the general was to proceed to Nanking, and take possession of that important city as a prelude to the attack on Peking, provided the emperor should persist in refusing to make peace on the terms demanded by the government of Great Britain. On the coast of Chi-kiang stands the town of Cha-pu, the chief port of communication between China and Japan. It is situated at the foot of a chain of wooded hills, which, on the landing of the English, were covered with Tartar troops, who fled without making any attempt to prevent the invaders from entering the city. The Tartar inhabitants of Cha-pu—those who were able to bear arms being all soldiers—occupied a small division of the town, separated from that of the Chinese by a wall, and built with the regularity of an encampment, where they dwelt with their wives and children, many of whom were made widows and orphans on that fatal day; for when the soldiers fled from the heights a party of about nine hundred Tartars took refuge in a temple, to which they were pursued, and under the mistaken idea that if they surrendered no quarter would be given, they fired on the enemy, killing and wounding several British officers, upon which the British soldiery commenced an indiscriminate slaughter of these brave people, in which they spared but forty, whom they made prisoners, but after-

Digitized by Google

ward released. Many of the families of the city endeavored to escape from these horrible scenes, but were unable to do so from their terror of the barbarity and licentiousness of the Hindoo troops in the British army. Most of the poor women whose husbands were killed threw their helpless infants into the tanks and wells, and then destroyed themselves or each other.

Soon after the capture of Cha-pu the fleet entered the river Yang-tsz-kiang, or the "Son of the Ocean." This noble stream, which rises in Tibet, and flows through near three thousand miles of country ere it reaches the sea, is the largest river in the world except the Mississippi and the Amazon; and, considering the innumerable canals which it supplies with water to keep the country through which it passes under constant irrigation, the commerce carried on upon its bosom, the fruitfulness of its banks and the depth and breadth of its waters, it may well claim a place among the great rivers of the globe. The right bank of the Yang-tsz-kiang is more picturesque then the left, on account of the chains of hills which rise behind each other, and which are covered with rich and varied foliage, not merely in the distance, but sweeping down to the banks of the stream; while the country on the other side is flat and cultivated with rice, but rendered pleasing to the eye by many neat little villages. As the fleet sailed up the river the villagers flocked in crowds to the shore, to gaze at the novel spectacle of steamships on the waters of China. On the 20th of July the fleet anchored at Chin-kiang, a strongly fortified city, which, being situated at the point where the Grand Canal enters the Yang-tsz-kiang river, is looked upon as one of the keys

Digitized by Google

of the empire, and forms a barrier for the defence of the interior.

The river was in this part about a mile and a half broad, and near the shore, crowned with temples, since then destroyed by the rebels, rose the Kin-shan, or Golden Island, the beauties of which were so highly celebrated by foreigners who had seen it. The town was garrisoned by Tartars, and the hills overhanging the river were covered with encampments of Chinese troops, who fled. The Tartars, however, bravely defended the city, disputing every inch of ground, and firing incessantly from the ramparts, which were at length ascended by scaling-ladders, and after some desperate fighting, in which many Englishmen were killed, the British flag was planted on the walls. Still, the Tartars continued to resist with determined valor, fighting in the streets with their long spears and firing with matchlocks from the houses for several hours, till night came on, when they were obliged to give up the contest, and the inhabitants then began to make their escape from the city.

The taking of Chin-kiang is memorable for an extraordinary act of individual resolution. The Tartar general, who had made the greatest exertions to save the city, when he found that the contest was decided in favor of the enemy, went into his house, and, taking his accustomed seat in an arm-chair, had his official papers heaped around it, and ordered his servants to set fire to the dwelling. His body was found the next day much burned, but retaining the sitting posture in which he had placed himself to meet the approach of death. On the morning after the battle the streets were found strewed with the dead, the houses were mostly de-

Digitized by Google

serted, those of the government officers were in flames, the shops were broken open and plundered by the Chinese rabble, and female suicide was committed to a more fearful extent than even at Cha-pu.

But let us leave this scene of horror and proceed with the fleet to the famous city of Nanking, forty miles higher up the river. This ancient capital was still a large, populous and wealthy city; and although exhibiting none of that splendor which depends on the residence of the court, was still superior, in many respects, to the present metropolis. It was the residence of a great number of literary men, and had many flourishing manufactures, particularly those of silk and the cotton cloth which is known by its name. The city and its vicinity presented many objects of attraction, among which the Porcelain Tower occupied the first place. This celebrated work of art, and the temple to which it was attached, were built by the emperor Yung-loh before he removed the seat of government from Nanking to Peking.

The pagoda was the most elegant structure of the kind that had hitherto been seen by foreigners in China, and took its name from the tiles of white porcelain with which the solid brickwork of the building was covered, every tile being cast in a mould, with an indenture in the shape of a half cross, the bricks having a projecting piece of a similar form, which fitted into the cavity. The tower consisted of nine stories, and was remarkable for its correct proportions. Its form was octagonal, the angles being marked on each side by a row of tiles, red and green, placed alternately. A light balustrade of green porcelain ran round each story, at every corner of which

Digitized by Google

Bodhi and Pad-chumkee-ka Lady of Lamb

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

hung a bell. The staircase was within the wall and communicated with every floor. Each story formed a room with a painted roof, and contained a number of idols placed in niches; and each room had four windows, placed toward the four cardinal points. There were priests attached to this pagoda to keep it in good order and to see that it was illuminated at all festivals, the expenses being paid by the contributions of those who bestowed money for such purposes in the hope of propitiating the deities. Within a few years past, in a great fire which desolated the portion the city in which it stood, this remarkable structure was destroyed.

The ancient palaces, observatories and sepulchres were destroyed by the Tartars two centuries previously. Nanking before the rebellion was an eminent seat of learning, and sent more members to the Imperial College of Peking than any other city. The books, the paper and the printing of Nanking were celebrated through the country as being unrivaled. The best Chinese (called by us *Indian*) ink is manufactured in the neighboring cities. The silks, the teas and the various other products of this province render it the most valuable part of the whole empire, and its climate is excellent. The famous pirate, Koshinga, who so long possessed the island of Formosa, once sailed up to Nanking and laid siege to it.

It was about the middle of August when the British fleet arrived within sight of Nanking, which was garrisoned by about fourteen thousand troops; and here another sanguinary conflict was expected; but happily this anticipation was not realized, for just as the attack was about to be commenced, letters reached camp, and the British general, Sir Hugh Gough, was informed that

Digitized by Google

certain high commissioners, deputed by the emperor, were on their way for the purpose of negotiating a peace. These joyful tidings were speedily confirmed by the arrival of the three delegates. At the head of it was Keying, an uncle of the emperor, a man of extraordinary ability, who seemed fully to cast away the prejudices of his people against foreign improvements, and spoke in kind terms of Christianity and its benevolent principles, which seem to have impressed him, notwithstanding the tremendous calamities inflicted upon his nation by the nominal professors of it. The other members were Elepoo, the former governor of Chi-kiang, a member of the royal family, and a Tartar general. These high functionaries were conveyed on board the Cornwallis in a steam vessel, and opened the negotiations which terminated in a treaty of peace. The negotiations were renewed on shore, Sir Henry Pottinger being assisted by Colonel Malcolm, and Messrs. Morrison, Thom and Gutzlaff; and on the 29th of August, 1842, the treaty was fully concluded and signed on board the Cornwallis.

As the British plenipotentiary had yielded nothing of his demands, all the concession was on the part of the Chinese government. The articles of the treaty were summarily these: Lasting peace and friendship to be preserved between the two empires; China to pay the immense sum of twenty-one millions of dollars (of which twelve millions were to pay England the expenses of the war, three millions were claimed for debts due to English merchants, and six millions of dollars were required to remunerate the owners of the smuggled opium which Lin had seized in the Canton river); the five ports of Can-

Digitized by Google

ton, Amoy, Fu-chau, Shanghai and Ningpo to be open to the British, who should have the liberty of appointing consuls to reside in those towns; regular tariffs of import and export duties to be established, so that the merchants might not be subjected to impositions; and the island of Hong-kong was to be ceded for ever to the Crown of England. All subjects of Great Britain, whether European or Indian, then prisoners, were also to be released, without ransom or condition of any kind. And, lastly, the emperor was to grant a free pardon to all those of his own subjects who had incurred penalties by holding intercourse with the British officers.

The emperor objected strongly to the opening of Fu-chau, on account of its vicinity to the principal black-tea districts, alleging that if the English shipped their tea at this port, instead of at Canton, the trade of the latter place would be ruined, and great numbers of his subjects thereby injured; but as the object of gaining access to this port was the very one that formed the ground of objection on the part of the Chinese government—namely, to avoid the inconvenience and expense of bringing goods several hundred miles for shipment—this point was insisted on and eventually gained by the British plenipotentiary, who, as a security for the execution of the treaty, announced his intention of keeping possession of Chu-san and Ku-long-su until all the money should be paid and the rest of the terms fully completed.

Fu-chau, a place of considerable trade, and the capital of the province of Fu-kien, is seated on the banks of the Min, one of the large rivers of China. The country around is mountainous, and the scenery on the borders

Digitized by Google

of the river is described as being very romantic and beautiful, resembling here and there the most picturesque parts of the banks of the Rhine; and as the climate is much more temperate than in the southern provinces, Fu-chau will probably be more pleasant as a place of residence than Canton. The city stands on both sides of the river, the two parts being connected by a celebrated stone bridge, consisting of thirty-three arches, which is mentioned as a wonderful work of art by the Jesuit writers of the seventeenth century. The liberty of trading to Fu-chau is of importance, as the black teas can be brought in boats direct to the ships from the farms where they are grown, and thus the enormous expenses of land carriage to Canton will be obviated. Shanghai is one of the greatest commercial emporiums of Eastern Asia, being advantageously situated for native trade on the river Woo-sung near the Yang-tsz-kiang, and thus communicates with the Great Canal and the Yellow river. This port has a commodious harbor, and is frequented by trading junks from all parts of the empire. The streets are narrow, and most of them are paved with tiles. Although the shops are small, they are plentifully stocked with native commodities of all descriptions; and many of them contain European broad-cloths and other foreign goods. The great advantage of Shanghai as a port is its easy communication by water with the interior provinces of the empire, and with the populous cities on the Yang-tsz-kiang and the Imperial Canal. It has since the war become the great port of entry and exit for foreign commerce, and its population and wealth have increased fourfold. A large trade has been done on the Yang-tsz-kiang in

Digitized by Google

foreign steamers, which, though temporarily checked, will no doubt increase in the future to vast dimensions. Native steamers have already been built; a' line of American steamships connects it and other ports less favorably situated with California and the New World.

After the signing of the treaty at Nanking, Lord Saltoun was appointed governor of Hong-kong, where very extensive improvements had been made since the British had been in possession of the island. The new town, the principal part of which is built on a hill, contains many fine buildings, has an important commerce, and is a depôt of military and naval stores for the British government; but the climate is found to be unhealthy.

The Chinese, not without reason, view the Opium War, and its exactions and results, with great bitterness. The following is a specimen of the papers published by some of their writers in regard to the conduct of the English.

"Behold that vile English nation! Its ruler is at one time a woman, then a man, and then perhaps a woman again; its people are at one time like vultures, and then they are like wild beasts, with dispositions more fierce and furious than the tiger or wolf, and natures more greedy than anacondas or swine. These people have long stealthily devoured all the Western barbarians, and, like demons of the night, they now suddenly exalt themselves here. During the reigns of the emperors Kien-lung and Kia-king these English barbarians humbly besought an entrance and permission to deliver tribute and presents; they afterward presumptuously asked to have Chu-san, but our sovereigns, clearly perceiving their

Digitized by Google

traitorous designs, gave them a determined refusal. From that time, linking themselves with traitorous Chinese traders, they have carried on a large trade and poisoned our brave people with opium. Verily, the English barbarians murder all of us that they can. They are dogs, whose desires can never be satisfied. Therefore we need not inquire whether the peace they have now made be real or pretended. Let us all rise, arm, unite and go against them. We do here bind ourselves to vengeance, and express these our sincere intentions in order to exhibit our high principles and patriotism. The gods from on high now look down on us; let us not lose our just and firm resolution." The popular opposition to foreigners at Canton was remarkable in several ways, as showing the energy and freedom of the people. The paper above was agreed to at a great public meeting at Canton, and the officers of the province declared that they could not prevent its publication. Outbreaks continued to take place from time to time in Canton, and life and property were less secure for a number of years than they were before the war and treaty of peace. On the 8th of July, 1846, the patriots and the mob and thieves endeavored to burn and destroy factories. The foreign merchants on shore, being without any military or naval assistance, armed themselves and shot about twenty of their assailants, and thus restored tranquillity for a time.

At length it became evident that the local government had no faculty of suppression or coercion, and that it was utterly powerless to carry the stipulations of the treaty into effect. In May, 1847, several British vessels of war proceeded to the Bogue Forts and captured and removed

Digitized by Google

or destroyed all their guns. After this the populace of Canton became more submissive, and the Europeans were authorized by the local government to extend the limits of their factories and permitted to enjoy more freedom.

The British colony of Hong-kong, instead of proving a representative of the blessings of Christian institutions upon which the people of China would look with admiration, was the scene of every vice in its boldest and most unrestrained form. It was the headquarters of the diabolical opium traffic. The police, knowing as yet little of the Chinese or their language, were impotent to detect and punish crime. "It is very natural," says Dr. Gutzlaff, describing its condition, "that depraved, idle, wicked characters from the adjacent main should flock to the colony. The islanders themselves, nearly all fishermen are pirates when the opportunity presents. They are a roving set of beings, floating on the wide face of the ocean with their families, and committing depredations whenever it can be done with impunity. The stone-cutters have been working here for many years before our arrival; the majority of these men are unprincipled; they cannot be considered as domesticated among us, and are in the habit of going and coming according to the state of their trade. The most numerous class, who since our arrival have fixed themselves on the island, are from Whampoa; many of them are of the very worst character, and are ready to commit any atrocity." Under the very shadow of the British flag there were formed numerous nocturnal clubs and secret societies. The members of these societies bound themselves to stand by one another and afford mutual protection. Thus the other Chinese were afraid of denouncing their

Digitized by Google

crimes or informing against them. The proclamations of the governor had no effect toward dissolving or even checking these combinations.

The great Governor of nations made the Opium War a means, evil as it was, of breaking down the fence with which Manchu jealousy and Chinese pride had begirt the empire. But some of the immediate effects were most prejudicial to Christianity. The causes, the history and the results of the war created intense hatred and detestation of Christian nations. It was remarked at the time that one very visible effect of the English war upon the emperor Tau-kwang was his return to idolatry. Formerly he had professed to be a strict Confucian and to hold in contempt all manner of graven images. But now the idols in the empire were not sufficiently numerous for him, and new ones were imported and old ones brought again to light from the obscurity and neglect into which they had been allowed to fall. He prostrated himself and burned his incense before these deities, thinking that if he had done so before his hosts would not have been beaten by the unbelieving barbarians. This superstitious state of mind was rendered still worse by the occurrence of a scarcity which in many parts of the empire amounted to a famine, and by the void presented in the imperial treasury, which had been emptied by the war and the money paid for the peace.

Tau-kwang changed his chief ministers, but he could not find one with power and means to remedy the evils. He sent out circulars to the governors of the provinces, calling upon them for a correct statement of their debts and annual revenues, and he asked his grand council what was to be done to avert a general bankruptcy.

Digitized by Google

Many of the poor people gave up their lands and huts because they could not pay the taxes, many emigrated to foreign countries, and others turned robbers on land or pirates at sea and on the great rivers. The last class became so exceedingly numerous and so daring that even foreign ships were not always safe. But for the British squadron these pirates would have become far more formidable. The emperor ordered that a fleet should be built, and even that steam vessels, like those used with so much effect by the English, should be constructed. The Chinese workmen made a steamer in all outward appearances very like theirs; it had its funnel and its paddle-wheels, but to make a steam engine was quite beyond their skill at the time. They also constructed a few ships on the European model, but these were weak and badly manned, and they remained quietly at anchor under the protection of the Bogue Forts while the pirates were ravaging the coasts.

If the British negotiators had neglected many important points (as that of religious liberty in China), and had not concluded the best treaty which might have been made, they had neither done nor intended anything in an illiberal, exclusive spirit. The announcement of the British treaty of Nanking caused considerable sensation among the commercial circles, both in Europe and in America. The governments of Belgium, the Netherlands, Spain, Portugal, and even Prussia, deputed agents to confer with the Chinese authorities at Canton, to examine into the prospects of trade, and, if possible, to make commercial arrangements in the country. The United States sent a minister extraordinary to the court of Peking with a letter from the President

Digitized by Google

to the emperor. Mr. Cushing and his suite arrived in China in the frigate Brandywine in February, 1844, and took up their residence at Macao. They were very positively told that they could on no account be allowed to proceed to Peking, as the United States of America had never yet sent *tribute* to the emperor, and could not therefore be included among the tributary states of the empire, which merely meant that the Americans had not previously sent out any ambassador or minister. Although his negotiations were impeded by a riot in the city, which is subject to the Portuguese, Mr. Cushing succeeded in concluding commercial arrangements with the Chinese commissioners. The treaty of Wanghia, as it is called, was ratified by the President and Senate of the United States, and they sent the Hon. A. H. Everett to China as resident minister.

The war had caused great confusion and distress, without producing any considerable diminution of the population, which ever pressed too closely on the means of subsistence. Though contrary to the old laws, the government winked at the emigration which was going on at an increased ratio; yet the year 1846 brought a recurrence of scarcity and financial embarrassment. The servants of government, receiving no pay, were left to shift for themselves; and in so doing they had recourse to the most oppressive means of extortion, by which the poor people were frequently driven into open rebellion. Great bands of robbers traversed the country with impunity, for many of the troops sent against them joined their ranks, and the rest of the imperial forces were either too weak or too spiritless to attack them. At the same time the pirates reappeared

Digitized by Google

all along the coast. In 1847 there was a rebellious rising in several of the dependent states; the city of Kashgar and another place of importance were stormed and taken, and the whole of the imperial Manchu army was put to the rout. The chiefs of Kokonor, a very independent, unruly race, declared open war against the government, made inroads into the country, committed great ravages, levied contributions at the point of the sword, returned to their mountains loaded with booty, and left poverty, terror and despair behind them. Buddhists though they were, these terrible chiefs stopped an envoy of the Grand Lama of Tibet (in their faith a most sacred person), and plundered him as he was on his way to the emperor's court at Peking. A Tartar-Chinese army tardily took the field, and a long and desultory border war commenced, in which the cattle and other property of the Chinese and the quieter tribes of Tartars were plundered to a ruinous extent by the active enemy. These depredations scarcely left horses and camels enough to mount the imperial troops and carry their provisions and stores. Commissioner Lin gradually recovered from the disgrace he had incurred for not conquering the English, and being now in favor at court, he was sent to quell this and other rebellions on the borders. He retired in triumph, believing that by his address and energy he had quelled the insurrection, but some of those tribes took up arms and rallied as soon as he was gone, and he was again and again obliged to return to the scene of action. The holy land of Tibet was overrun by wild clans from the Himmaleh mountains and from Ladakh; the Grand Lama, believed to be the impersonation of the Divinity,

Digitized by Google

was made to tremble in Lassa, his remote capital, and his lamas or priests, after witnessing the plunder of their temples, were drowned by hundreds in the sacred river Sansoo.

As Tau-kwang approached his own end, the woes and miseries of the country thickened. In Ho-nan and elsewhere fearful inundations swept away the crops and deprived a vast population of their subsistence. Many of the sufferers were relieved by death; others dragged out a miserable existence by feeding on roots and wild herbs; everywhere in those districts were wretchedness, disease and death.

As the year 1849 was approaching, when, according to treaty, the city gates of Canton were to be thrown open to foreigners, the populace vowed that the barbarians should not go at large within their walls, and addressed a petition to the emperor, insisting that they had the right of settling this matter themselves. They threw up barricades, adopted other measures to repel the barbarians, and threatened to set fire to the factories. It is believed that these deeds were very unpalatable to Tau-kwang, who feared that they might bring upon him another war with the English. However, the poor potentate was compelled to yield to the Canton rabble, and to write back that "the will of the people was the will of Heaven."

Battered by all these storms and tempests, and sorely wounded in his pride, the health and strength of Tau-kwang rapidly gave way. He was never himself after the Opium War. About this time an event occurred which shows him to have been a man of great tenderness of heart, and reflects honor upon his character. On

Digitized by Google

ascending the throne, he had, according to a custom of his nation, adopted as mother a widowed princess of the imperial lineage, and this lady he continued to respect, to love and almost to idolize. His devoted, unvarying affection to her was that of the most affectionate of sons. This lady fell sick; he attended on her in person, as he had always done when she was ill, for twenty-nine years. On the 19th of January the lady took an airing in the garden, and he rejoiced in the belief that she was convalescent; but only five days after that time "she mounted the spirit chariot, and went the long journey." The emperor himself drew up the official account of her death and his own great grief. "We have been happy," said the paper, "in attending to her behests, as men are rejoiced by the sun which prolongs their lives; but we shall never see her again, we can never more look upon her affectionate countenance, and we are inconsolable! We received her last orders that mourning should be worn only twenty-seven days; but we cannot be satisfied with this, and therefore, as is right, we ourselves shall put on the filial garb for a hundred days, twenty-seven of which we shall pass in deep mourning." By his command divine honors were rendered to her throughout the whole empire; and in every important city tablets were erected to commemorate her extraordinary virtues.

Tau-kwang passed the twenty-seven days near the coffin, dressed in sackcloth, fasting with severity, drinking nothing but water, and sleeping near the remains of the dead on a hard couch. This seems to have finally broken the health of the aged emperor, who died about the end of March, 1851, after a troubled reign of thirty years.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIII.

RESULTS OF THE OPIUM WAR.

THE Opium War may be considered to be the grand crisis in the history of China—the point whence may be dated the change from the old things which had existed for twenty centuries to the new things which are to give her a place in the sisterhood of Christian nations, in the temple illuminated by the thousand new lamps wherewith modern scientific labors have dissipated the superstitions of the past, and cheered with new hopes and enjoyments the heart of man. Its decisive events have been related in the preceding chapter of this volume. It was watched with extraordinary interest by all the nations of the civilized world. Let us now proceed summarily to trace its results.

The most painful one was the ascendency which it gave to those who used their power for the purpose of forcing opium upon the Chinese nation and for overawing or corrupting the officers of the government. And the advantage gained was pushed until it was consummated in the legalization of the opium trade. Not that there were not other objects before the mind of the British people; but the most valuable article of the commerce which they hoped to extend was opium; none

Digitized by Google

was more vitally connected with the prosperity of their finances in India, none more necessary as a commercial equivalent for Chinese exports. Opium has more than any other cause been at the bottom of the difficulties with the Chinese government and people for two generations past.

The growth of the use of opium by the people of this empire is one of the strange mysteries in the history of mankind. The poppy and its extract, opium, were known to the ancient world. The Jews seem to have employed its virtues as a narcotic several centuries before the Christian era.[1] The Greek and Latin classical writers often introduce allusions to it in their prose and poetry.[2] The Turks, Persians and several Asiatic nations have

[1] Neither of the words "poppy" or "opium" occurs in our translation of the Scriptures, but there are evident allusions in both the Old and New Testaments to the poppy, which abounds in Palestine. The capsules or "heads" of it are supposed by Gesenius to be referred to in the Hebrew (*rosh*) of Deut. xxxii. 32 and elsewhere. The word rendered "hemlock" in Hos. x. 4 is the same. The "water of gall," in Jer. viii. 14, was a decoction of it.

[2] HOMER gives us descriptions of the effects of opium as used on the coasts of the Mediterranean sea three thousand years ago. In the *Odyssey* (book x.) he narrates how Circe stupefied the companions of Eurylochus and then changed them to swine. The following is Pope's translation of the passage:

"On thrones around, with downy coverings graced,
With semblance fair, the unhappy men she placed.
Milk newly pressed, the sacred flour of wheat,
And honey fresh, and Pramnian wines, the treat;
But venomed was the bread, and mixed the bowl
With drugs of force to darken all the soul:
Soon in the luscious feast themselves they lost,
And drank oblivion of their native coast.
Instant her circling wand the goddess waves,
To hogs transformed them, and the sty receives.
No more was seen the human form divine;
Head, face and members bristle into swine.
Still cursed with sense, their minds remain alone,
And their own voice affrights them when they groan."

Digitized by Google

long used it to a limited extent. But it was not till the present century that the demon of opium seemed to awake to the dreadful appetite for destruction, and go forth to be one of the direst enemies of the human race.

In China, the British, observing the passion of some of the Hindûs for its use, and the readiness with which it was communicated to the quiet and thoughtful Chinese, began to import it to Canton just before the period of the Revolutionary War in this country, and at a time when the profligacy and insane greed for money of Warren Hastings and his corrupt associates in the East India Company seemed to have stupefied the conscience of the nation. From a few hundreds of chests in a year the trade had grown at the time of the Opium War to thirty

The stimulating and intoxicating influence of opium was often infused into wine. This is described in book iv. of the same poem:

"Bright Helen mixed a mirth-inspiring bowl;
Tempered with drugs of sovereign use to assuage
The boiling bosom of tumultuous rage;
To clear the cloudy front of wrinkled care,
And dry the tearful sluices of despair.
Charmed with that potent draught, the exalted mind
All sense of woe delivers to the wind.
Though on the blazing pile his parent lay,
Or a loved brother groaned his life away,
Or darling son, oppressed by ruffian force,
Fell breathless at his feet, a mangled corse,
From morn to eve, impassive and serene,
The man entranced would view the deathful scene."

The source whence the knowledge of these medicinal or intoxicating virtues was derived is mentioned. It was in Egypt, that India of the West—

"Where prolific Nile
With various simples clothes the fattened soil;
With wholesome herbage mixed, the direful bane
Of vegetable venom taints the plain."

Digitized by Google

thousand chests, and has now risen to eighty thousand chests yearly.

The effects of this dreadful poison upon the human system are utterly destructive to the health of the body and the clear use of the faculties of the mind, to the happiness of the unfortunate family of the victim, to his success in business and to his usefulness to society. The face becomes pale and haggard, the eyes moist and vacant, the whole expression miserable and idiotic. The body wastes to a skeleton, the joints are tortured with pain. The sensation of gnawing in the stomach when deprived of the drug is described by those addicted to its use to be like the tearing of its tender coats by the claws of an animal of prey, while a return to it fills the brain with horrid and tormenting visions like the mania of delirium tremens. I have seen strong men, when unable to obtain their accustomed dose, crazy with the suffering, the face crimsoned in some cases, and the perspiration streaming down in a shower. Few individuals of those whom it possesses are able to find a sufficient antidote. The subject lingers a few years, and a dreary and unpitied death ends the scene. This is the history of tens of thousands in China, as well as in other countries. This most terrible form of intemperance affects all classes of society, from the most powerful, wealthy and learned to the most wretched beggar. One sees the lowest and vilest, even the impoverished and rotten lepers without the walls of the cities, drunk with it. When they cannot find money to purchase the drug, they buy the dirt which remains after it is refined, and abjectly scrape the bowls of the pipes used by their more favored brethren, and smoke this refuse. Women learn the

Digitized by Google

habit from their husbands and brothers, and when the woeful penalty of this indulgence comes upon the family, they find in opium a ready and familiar instrument to cut the thread of life and drop into the gulf of an unknown and dark future.

The introduction of opium was resisted with the most noble fidelity to the best interests of his subjects by the emperor Tau-kwang. When importuned by some of the officers of the government to consent to the legalization of the trade, he replied that he would not consent to derive a revenue from that which destroyed the lives and happiness of his people. No words could present the case more strongly than those used by one of themselves, who thus describes the calamities which he saw around him or in the future: "Opium is the author of the most pressing evils to the nation, the consumer of its substance, the destroyer of its people, the corrupter of its officers and the plotter of its final subjugation."

At first, the foreign supply, with the severity of the laws against its cultivation and use, sufficed to prevent attempts toward a home production of opium. But of late years, in the west, and in provinces where the control of the government is less recognized, considerable quantities of it are now raised, adding probably to the total amount used in the empire not less than one-half more than the quantity which is obtained from abroad. When, beyond the loss produced by the sending out of the country about fifty millions of dollars a year in specie, and the abstraction of that vast sum from the industrial and commercial employments of the people, we consider that which arises from the devotion of a large number of people at home, and of a very extensive share of the

Digitized by Google

soil to the growth of this noxious plant, and the incalculable amount of corruption and vice which directly flow from the whole traffic, then we are able to imagine something of its general disastrous results to the nation.

If we would form a more exact conception of the greatness of the injury wrought by this poison, we must follow it to the homes of the individuals who use it, amounting to not less than twelve millions of adults, representing the interests, the moral character and the happiness of sixty millions of the population who suffer directly from its effects.

The profits of the opium trade to Great Britain are enormous—not less than twenty to twenty-five millions of dollars a year. According to the estimate of an English newspaper published in China,[1] the total profit from the time when the trade began until the year 1854 was in round numbers three hundred and ten millions of dollars, and from that time to the present it is three hundred and forty millions more. The total is about six hundred and fifty millions in sycee silver—that is, silver without alloy, paid by weight. This is the actual net profit to the producer upon a trade which amounts to from sixty to eighty thousand chests a year, which are worth in all from forty to sixty millions of dollars.[2]

[1] The *North China Herald*, of Shanghai.

[2] The total import of opium into China at fourteen ports (as computed by the *China Overland Trade Report*) amounted in 1866 to 81,750 chests. Of this amount, 37,775 chests contained Malwa opium, the average price of which at Hong-kong was $807.70 per chest, amounting to $30,510,867. The remaining 43,975 chests contained Patna and Benares opium, the average price of which was $630.30 per chest, amounting to $27,717,442. Adding these two quantities, we have the number of chests of opium imported into China in 1866, amounting in value to the sum of $58,228,309. If we compare this with the balance of the commerce of foreign nations with that country, the conclusion is most painful.

Digitized by Google

The extent of the responsibility of the British government for the production and sale of opium I prefer to state in the words of one of its own subjects. The Calcutta correspondent of the London *Times* thus presents the case for the consideration of the readers of that influential paper:

"What are the facts? As to Bengal, I have gone through the poppy-fields of Shahabad, and have witnessed every detail of the manufacture in the enormous go-downs of Patna. Under a severe contract law, twice as penal as any that has ever been proposed for ordinary agricultural progress, and scouted by England, advances of money are annually made to the peasants of Behar, Benares and elsewhere. The state lies out of these advances for a year. Its establishment of highly-paid officials and oppressive or colluding native subordinates supervises every detail—the preparation of the fields, the sowing, the weeding, the scraping of the capsules, the collection of the crude juice, its transit to the state factory and its sale in Calcutta. Yet, in spite of its establishments, smuggling is the rule.

"The state of the case is this: China will have opium just as England will have gin and Scotland whisky.

The amount of tea exported from the open ports of China in 1866 was 1,183,042 peculs (of 140 lbs. each, amounting to 165,625,880 lbs.), which, at an average price of $36 per pecul, amounted to $42,589,512. The amount of raw silks exported from Chinese ports in 1866 was 32,462 peculs, which, at an average rate of $600 per pecul, amounted to $19,477,200. So that the entire exports of tea and raw silk were worth $62,066,712; for which the Chinese received in imports beyond the opium mentioned but $3,838,403, or about one-sixteenth of the value of what they gave.

In 1867, we learn from another source, the total value of the opium imported was 45,000,000 of taels, or about $63,000,000. The total exports from China of tea and silk together, for the same year, were 49,500,000 taels, or $69,300,000.

Digitized by Google

All facts go to show that the abuse of opium in China, while great, is by no means equal to that of alcohol in Europe. The moral question is not whether China may be supplied with opium, but whether England as a nation, as the ruling power of India, ought *in its official and national character*, to grow, manufacture and export the drug, the use of which has after two or three wars been legalized in China. Yet this is the position of England at this moment in relation to three-fourths of the opium exported from India."

What is the effect of the opium trade upon Christian missions? The writer, and every man who has been engaged in the work of preaching the gospel, healing the sick, instructing the young and disseminating the word of God, knows that the incessant and bitter objection urged by all classes to his efforts is that it is impossible that nations which carry opium in the right hand can have any boon of mercy in the left. An eminent official of the British government has, in a late work,[1] tried to throw the blame of the great hostility of the Chinese to the residence of foreigners at the ports which have been "opened" by the cannon and the sword, upon the Christian missionaries. He says in it: "What, in effect, is the natural and necessary effect of Christianity as the gospels have delivered it to us? Is it not of necessity antagonistic, entirely subversive to the whole scheme of government, which claims for the head of the state divine honors, and places the will of the emperor on the footing of a decree from Heaven?" No! It is subversive of the idolatry of the government, but not of the monarchical form of it. The emperor Con-

[1] Sir Rutherford Alcock, *Three Years in Japan*, chap. xxxvii.

Digitized by Google

stantine held the throne of Rome no less firmly when he inscribed the cross upon his standard, and exchanged the superstitions of paganism for the principles of justice and charity. Nor is the authority of Queen Victoria and of British law less submissively obeyed because the British people are disciples of Jesus Christ. The emperors Shun-chi and Kang-hi did not resist and persecute Christianity when it presented itself as a wise and beneficent system of truth, or until the sects of Roman priests contradicted its first reputation by their quarrels, covetousness and interference with the political affairs of the empire. Since the book referred to was written this gentleman has urged upon the government which he represents a restrictive policy with reference to missionary operations in the interior of China; and his views have been brought before Parliament by Lord Clarendon and other members. The consequence has been a reply containing a fair statement of the truth from the missionaries in China. They confirm this by some forcible illustrations. The following is one of them: A missionary was driven out of Ho-nan by a mob led on by the native gentry, whose feeling was shown by shouting these words after him, "You burned our palace; you killed our emperor; you sell poison to our people; now you come professing to teach us virtue!"

The opium traffic in India and China is the darkest stain upon the Christianity of the nineteenth century. Its calamitous effects are felt wherever the people of China emigrate and wherever the products of China are carried over the whole world. In the arrest of it the citizens of the United States are more deeply interested than any other people outside of China. Opium puts a

Digitized by Google

great stone in the path of the commerce with Eastern Asia; it hinders the development of departments of industry on our Pacific coast, which would discover and furnish numerous useful materials and manufactures to supply that commerce, and thus render great benefits to either continent; it is planting seeds of enervation, crime and disease in the Chinese who are coming to our shores, and creating corresponding vexation and injury to us; it keeps the sword of war continually unsheathed and wet with blood, the torch of conflagration constantly burning, and every puff of hostile wind distributing its sparks amidst materials which are ever ready to burn hotly; it makes the benevolent efforts of the preacher of the gospel of mercy, and of the Christian physician and teacher, appear like shallow and abominable hypocrisy, and the word of God itself something false and hateful, when offered by hands imbrued with so stupendous a crime against humanity and justice, against the conscience of man and against the laws of Heaven.

Would that it were possible to say that the hands of American merchants have not been stained by connivance with the crime of the opium trade in China! We are grateful to God that it has not been made "an official and national" business "to grow, manufacture and export the drug" by any other nation than Great Britain and its Indian dependencies. But our ships have helped to convey and distribute the poison; our merchants have partaken to some extent in the profits of the work; and we have given it a garment of respectability by the deceitful pleas with which we have palliated its enormity.

Nor do we lightly or censoriously tell the tale of

Digitized by Google

England's shame. She is our great Protestant sister amidst the European nations; the nearest to us in blood and spirit; and the one most interested with us in breaking every yoke and letting the oppressed go free, in sending forth the light which alone can dispel the gross darkness of the heathen. But in the spirit of one of her faithful sons we would point out her offences, that they may be amended. The opium trade was begun by a most unprincipled and avaricious Company. One of her noblest poets has painted its picture. His admonition as to the end of such policy should be heeded:

"Merchants, unimpeachable of sin
Against the charities of domestic life,
Incorporated, seem at once to lose
Their nature; and, disclaiming all regard
For mercy and the common rights of man,
Build factories with blood, conducting trade
At the sword's point, and dyeing the white robe
Of innocent commercial justice red."—
Britain "is rigid in denouncing death
On petty robbers; and indulges life
And liberty, and ofttimes honor too,
To peculators of the public gold,
That thieves at home must hang; but he that puts
Into his gorged and bloated purse
The wealth of Indian provinces, escapes;
Nor is it well, nor can it come to good."[1]

The reign of the emperor Tau-kwang will be commemorated in history on another account than that of the direct events of the Opium War. In the forests, when a fire has burned off the old trees of one kind, it is observed that it is another kind generally which springs up vigorously in its place. So the great Husbandman orders it with the race of man. The calamities of

[1] Wm. Cowper, *Task*, books i. and iv.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

nations—war, pestilence, famine—allow Him to plant among them some better seed and secure some more useful crop. Great religious reformations are often seen to follow them.

For twenty-seven years previous to the termination of the charter of the East India Company, a solitary, humble Dissenting minister, amidst the unconcealed contempt and scoffing of its aristocratic merchants and clerks, sat engaged in the great elementary work of Christian missions, the compilation of a dictionary and the translation of the revelation of God to man into the language of the people. The company's charter expired in the year 1834; and in that year he died. Its work and his work were to give place to a new order of things.

Morrison was joined at Canton but four years previous to his death by Bridgman, an American. The life of this first missionary from our country was spent, chiefly, in company with S. W. Williams, who had also charge of the printing, in the editorship of the *Chinese Repository*, a monthly magazine which for twenty years continued to pour out information designed to inform and interest our country and Great Britain in regard to the character, literature, public affairs and religion and spiritual wants of the empire of China. It has been replaced by several weekly newspapers published by foreigners at the ports open to their trade; by another monthly missionary periodical, the *Chinese Recorder*, issued recently by the American Methodist missionaries at Fuh-chau; and by several periodical publications at various ports in the Chinese language and character.

New translations of the Scriptures in more idiomatic Chinese have been made by Drs. Medhurst and Gutzlaff,

Digitized by Google

by missionaries connected with Baptist societies, and by a committee of missionaries of different societies meeting at Shanghai, in behalf of the great Bible Societies of this country and Great Britain. The last mentioned is the most satisfactory, yet it must in time yield to some one more perfect, in which Oriental students of the Oriental styles of thought and illustration shall be able to give to the Church of the Land of Sinim a translation which shall be universally acceptable and permanent.

The living expositor, taking the Word in his hand, followed the openings of commerce. Chapels were speedily opened at ports where foreigners were allowed to resort, and in the neighboring villages. And multitudes of the Chinese crowded to see and hear them—to see their strange raiment; and to hear warnings against the worship of gods, sages and ancestors, which in some breasts aroused bitter scorn and rage, but in others curiosity to know what better things these men had to give, for many are weary of the silly and vapid fables which their fathers brought from India.

Numerous translations of foreign books, or compilations from them in Chinese, were prepared by the missionaries; among which were histories of the world, of the United States and of the Jewish nation; treatises on geography, astronomy, medicine, anatomy and vaccination; almanacs filled with a variety of information; and other volumes and tracts suitable for family reading and to interest both young and old readers.

Next in the train followed missionary hospitals. Charitable surgeons of the East India Company had done something for the relief of the unlimited amount of suffering about them. In 1835, Dr. Peter Parker

Digitized by Google

commenced a hospital at Macao, which was transferred to Canton. Several thousands of patients each year have received gratuitous medicines from its dispensary or been cared for in its wards. The writer enjoyed the privilege of assisting there in medical labors and in preaching statedly the gospel in the native tongue, while residing in that city. The institution is now under the care of Dr. J. G. Kerr. Several pupils have been made well acquainted with medical science by the instruction there furnished. Some of the most distinguished officers and gentry of the province and of other parts of the empire have been indebted to the hospital for relief. And probably millions of copies of tracts and Christian gospels have been distributed thence, with the glowing tongue of grateful patients to interpret their truths, to every part of the country. Several other hospitals have followed in the work of doing good to both body and soul; those at Ningpo, Shanghai and Hong-kong have been specially useful. A medical society, supported by contributions from the foreign merchants, has for more than twenty years paid the expenses of medicines and other necessaries. The building was generously furnished for the hospital at Canton by Howqua, a leading Chinese merchant, who thus became in reality the principal contributor to its support.

Provision for the education of the young was the next step in the great work of Christian missions. The Morrison Education Society, formed at Hong-kong, established a school in 1835 as a monument to the memory of the founder of Protestant missions in China. Its pupils have been well trained, and several of them have become efficient and useful men in various spheres of

Digitized by Google

life. The missions of the several boards and societies represented in China—American, British, or composed of men from the continent of Europe—have generally aimed to plant good schools at their more prominent stations. Thousands of youths have in these been taught the most useful elements of our knowledge and the principles of Christianity. Some of the young men have been made acquainted with the more advanced departments of science. A few of the most promising of them have been sent to institutions of learning in America and Great Britain; and, what will seem almost incredible to our people, they have not only held their own as students in competition with those of our own race, but some of them have taken prizes or honors in various departments, as in botany, whose nomenclature at least might have been supposed too difficult for a native of China to master, and in English composition.

And yet the missionary work was but in its infancy at this period. Missionaries dared not go much beyond the six ports opened by the several treaties, and a few localities in their immediate vicinity; and even in those places life and property were not safe, and the labors of missionaries were hampered by the restrictions of the government and the opposition of the people. And yet the seed sown was taking root far and wide. There were evidences that people even in remote provinces were hearing of the new truths which strangers from the West preached to their countrymen, and were beginning to inquire what they meant. The Christian Scriptures were carried even to the palace of the emperor.

Tau-kwang—the "Light of Reason"—was succeeded on the throne by his son Yih-chu, with the title of

Digitized by Google

Hien-fung—"Universal Prosperity;" alas that the promises of hope should so often become the mock of experience! Instead of agricultural prosperity, the reign of the young monarch was ushered in with a widespread and exhausting famine. This, as usual, was followed by pestilence. The cities and villages became scenes of indescribable wretchedness; the poor being driven by suffering to desperation and crime, and the rich to severity toward them and to dissatisfaction with the government. The young and inexperienced emperor, worn out with vain attempts to relieve and propitiate his subjects, gave himself at length to indifference, and retreated to the chambers of the seraglio and the society of truculent courtiers, for peace. The western portion of the empire, remote and comparatively independent, was overrun with bands of robbers, and its population was banded in treasonable associations. The officers of government were inefficient and corrupt. There were witnessed such scenes of universal vice and misery as those which so often in European history have prepared the way for great and radical reformations.

In the summer of 1850 the foreigners upon the seacoast began to hear rumors of a strange religious movement in the interior, under the name of Christianity. A remarkable man, named Hung Sew-tsuen, at this time about thirty-seven years of age, had in his twentieth year, when animated with the ambition for liberty and political distinction which is common with the brighter youths of China, gone to present himself at an annual examination in Canton. There our faithful old friend Leung A-fah, the preacher and colporteur,

Digitized by Google

put into his hands, as he did into those of thousands of others each year, some copies of Christian books compiled from the Scriptures or explanatory of them. He threw them carelessly aside on reaching home, after some superficial scanning of their contents. Four years afterward, strange dreams or visions during a period of sickness brought some of their features to remembrance. But their truths did not powerfully affect him till 1847, when a friend of his became acquainted with these books, urged them upon his attention, and together they began the anxious study of their truths. The great doctrines of Christianity, even dimly seen through the medium of an idolatrous education, and interpreted by the stern precepts and examples of the Mosaic books, so fired the hearts of these lonely men that they could not but speak what they believed. Hung Sew-tsuen determined to revisit Canton and search out the disciples of his new creed. He found the Rev. I. J. Roberts, a Baptist missionary, who gave him further instruction, but refused, on account of his imperfect acquaintance with him, to baptize him or license him to preach.

He went back home, and commenced, with the addition of numerous converts made already by the labors of his believing kinsmen and friends, to preach his mongrel but earnest creed. They resisted the exactions of the surrounding idolaters, were persecuted, driven to organize, arm and discipline themselves for self-defence, then, encouraged by success, to destroy idol temples and priests and make battle with the local government. Their numbers increased. In October, 1850, they won an important victory over the imperial soldiery. They moved northward, conquering as they went. The prov-

Digitized by Google

inces of Kwang-si and Ho-nan were subdued. In March, 1853, they besieged the populous and rich capital of the last native dynasty, Nanking, and in eleven days took it by storm, having effected an entrance through a breach made in the northern wall by springing a mine. They put the Manchu garrison and their families, twenty thousand in all, to the sword. Their discipline until this time had been most severe and efficient. They strictly punished crimes, and counted in the list the use of opium. They observed the Jewish Sabbath with the scrupulousness of the ancient Pharisees; and the effect of their hymns, as sung by the strong masculine voices of many thousands of soldiers in the acts of worship, is described by the American and European visitors who went from Shanghai to see them as very grand and inspiring.

The Christian world was thrilled with the first news which reached them from Nanking of this wonderful movement. It seemed as if a nation had been born in a day, and as if the prophecies of Isaiah as to the mighty victories of the gospel were indeed about to be realized. But it soon became manifest that there was much political corruption, proud fanaticism and heathen ignorance of the principles of Christian truth mixed with it all. It was a mercy of Heaven that this revolution was brought to naught. A campaign against Peking failed. The European powers expelled them from the vicinity of the ports of Shanghai and Ningpo. Their discipline grew lax. Their forces were dispersed and demoralized. And the last sad scene of all this bright promise was the fall of Nanking in July, 1864, when multitudes of the miserable remnant of their host were mercilessly slaugh-

Digitized by Google

tered by the triumphant and revengeful imperialists. The poor man who started to be the reformer of his native empire came to a bloody end by his own hands.

This strange moral tempest in the sultry and diseased atmosphere of China, while it left wrecks in its course, yet did something to purify it. It taught the empire that there is one true God, the Creator and Governor of all. It made the claims of the Sabbath universally and forcibly understood. It lifted a protest against the curse of opium, at least for the time, even though some of these men fell afterward into its use. It distributed many hundreds of thousands of copies of the Scriptures, to be a seed which in his own time God will water in the hearts of millions with the influences of the Holy Spirit, and make a great means in the final renovation of Eastern Asia. And it is something most affecting, among the ravings of fanaticism and folly, to find in the proclamations of the leaders of this Tai-ping rebellion many of the most precious and consolatory Christian truths and announcements, such as these: "The kingdom of heaven is at hand."—"The whole world together sings the songs of peace."—"Jesus came into the world to ransom sinners by his death, and became an atonement for ten thousand times ten thousand of the inhabitants of the world." Not China alone will feel the power of this movement. To save his own capital the terrified emperor sent into the wilds of the north, and brought thence, to contend with the Tai-pings, large forces of Manchu and other Tartars, who were thus made acquainted with their principles and printed books. It was to no small extent by their efforts that Peking was

Digitized by Google

delivered. Many a Christian Bible has been carried back by them to the tents of their tribes.

The government was also under the necessity of calling in European and American aid. Several able officers were employed to drill native troops, which they did so successfully as to make them quite effective in battle. The manifest superiority of the people of Western nations in the art of war has greatly increased the respect of the Chinese for them, and prepared the way for the introduction of the sciences of peace.

Having briefly sketched the Tai-ping rebellion, we may return to observe that the brief reign of Hien-fung was made memorable by the tremendous calamities inflicted upon his country and capital by a war of another character, and with foreign powers.

The Opium War was far from subduing the pride of the Chinese. At Canton the population refused to accept the British interpretation of the treaties made at its close. Those of us who resided there were subject to the incidents of a prolonged conflict. Difficulties frequently occurred in which foreigners or natives were killed; and we could not go into the streets of Canton without meeting bitter insults and personal hazard, or venture into its suburbs or the neighboring villages with the assurance of a return alive. At the north, too, there were occasional troubles. At Shanghai they arose in connection with questions relating to the introduction of opium, the payment of duties, and the reasonable resistance of the Chinese authorities to the efforts of foreign merchants to extend their excursions and trade into the interior. Fruitless attempts were made by the British, French and Americans to obtain concessions of larger

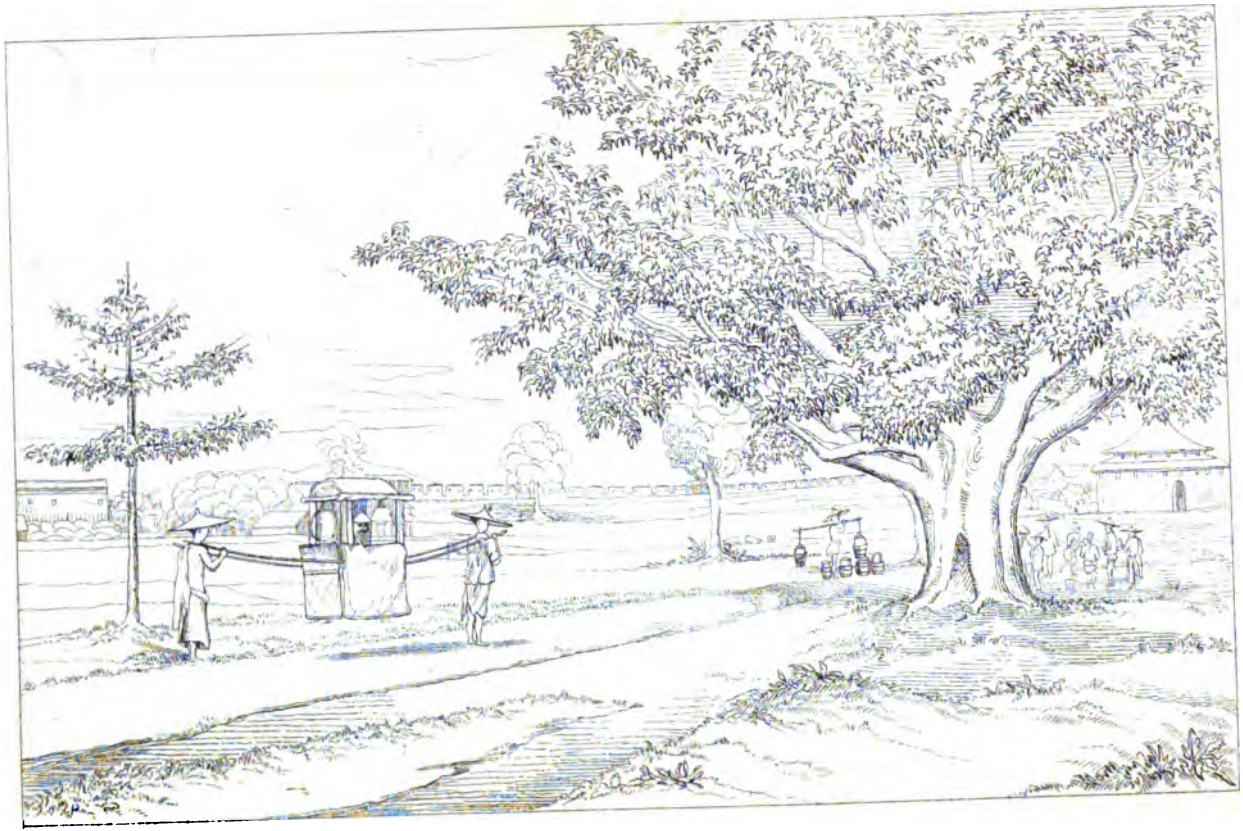
Digitized by Google

liberty. They and the Chinese were mutually irritated.

At length, in 1856, the smouldering fire burst forth, and, as has been too often the case in China, in a way to put Christian nations apparently in the wrong and the Chinese in the right. It had been for some time, in consequence of the disordered state of things upon the coast, the habit of the English authorities at Hong-kong to grant the protection of the British flag to native vessels engaged in carrying passengers and merchandise.[1] These vessels, however, often took opium on board, using the dread of the British power as a shield under which to smuggle it into the interior. A Chinese vessel on the Canton river, manned by Chinese, and thus engaged in smuggling, but whose register had expired a month before, was seized by the Chinese officers. The governor, Teh, at first refused to surrender the crew, averring as an additional reason that some of them were pirates; but, in compliance with the determined demands of the British, he at length sent them back, without an apology. He, however, subsequently promised not to seize foreign craft, but required that foreign nations should not sell registers to Chinese vessels.

[1] The English newspapers at the time complained bitterly of the injury which this practice was doing to their own legitimate commerce. The *Friend of China*, published at Hong-kong, declared that it tended to prolong the rebellion. That paper said: "Canton's character for supplying furniture of cunning workmanship must soon cease altogether, unless we have a change; the best of the bamboo-workers and hard-wood carvers having gone to the wars. Quiescent as matters appear on the surface, we doubt whether the rebellion was ever before at such a stage of what may be termed 'scientic action,' as it is now; and if foreign powers will but hold aloof, the thing may work out quicker than at present is generally expected. To Sir John Bowring's mischievous practice last year of granting the British flag to the Chinese vessels, are we now indebted for the long delay and its attendant consequences."

Digitized by Google



Outside of the City Wall, Canton.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

For this "insult" of capturing a vessel of their own nation, engaged in the violation of their laws, and in introducing a poison which was destroying multitudes of their people, it was resolved that the Chinese must be punished.

The first flagrant act of the war then inaugurated was the bombardment of the great metropolis of southern China in December, the destruction of a wealthy and important portion of the city, the slaughter of many innocent people, the beggary of many through the plundering of their property by the Chinese rabble amidst the confusion, and the subjection of the place to the control of a garrison of British and French soldiers for two years. Amidst these scenes of horror were some that were very affecting. One of them was the distress occasioned in a benevolent institution, the "Asylum for Indigent Females," through its being occupied by the foreign troops; another was the carrying forth by the Chinese of the coffins of their deceased kindred, which many of them seemed more anxious to bear away from the dangers of warfare and conflagration than to save their wealth and furniture, or even their own lives.

It may be briefly stated that in 1858 the allied forces went to the Pei-ho river with the purpose to reach Peking; they took the fortifications at its mouth, but were met by commissioners of the Chinese government, who formed with them a treaty, which was signed on the 26th of June. The force which went on shore at the taking of the forts found, in his rooms in a temple, the body of the commanding officer, Teh Kwei, covered with his own blood, which he had shed by cutting his throat, rather than submit to the degradation and ruin inflicted

Digitized by Google

upon himself and his family by his defeat. A touching and affectionate poem in memory of his deceased wife, by the commissioner Tan Ting-siang, who was afterward banished to the frontier for his misfortune in being connected with this calamity, was also picked up.

In the treaty of Tien-tsin are found two conspicuous articles. One guarantees the protection of the Chinese government to Christianity, with the preface that "the Christian religion, as professed by Protestants or Roman Catholics, inculcates the practice of virtue and teaches man to do as he would be done by." Upon this point it may be remarked that in the British treaty at the close of the Opium War in 1842 the subject of Christianity was not mentioned. It is not strange that after the East India Company had systematically labored to prevent Christian missions for two hundred years, these diplomatists should be loth to assume any interest in them. The commissioner Lagrené made provision for the protection of Christians in the French treaty of the following year. The other article in the treaty of Tien-tsin states that in evidence of her desire for the continuance of a friendly understanding, her majesty the queen of Great Britain consents to receive the "sum of two millions of taels ($2,800,000) on account of losses sustained by British subjects through the misconduct of the Chinese authorities at Canton, and a further sum of two millions of taels ($2,800,000 additional—making $5,600,000 in specie) on account of the military expenses of the expedition which her majesty the queen has been compelled to send out for the purpose of obtaining redress, and of enforcing the due observance of treaty provisions;" which was to be paid "by the authorities of the

Digitized by Google

Kwang-tung (Canton) province." There was another very memorable result of this treaty. In the tariff based upon the treaty, which was settled subsequently by a commission of two representatives from each nation, the legalization of the trade in opium was so urgently pressed by the English that the Chinese yielded their consent to its introduction, subject to a duty of thirty taels (forty-two dollars) per chest.

The next year the Chinese met in a very different manner from what they had anticipated the English and French, who appeared off the Pei-ho to have their treaties ratified, accompanied by several American and Russian vessels of war, containing representatives of those nations, which had also effected treaties. They had thoroughly fortified the mouth of the river, and refused the fleet admittance, and repulsed the attacks made by the allies both from sea and shore with a mortifying and disastrous defeat. In 1860 the allies returned with heavy reinforcements both of vessels and troops, destroyed the defences of the river, and soon took possession of the imperial capital.

The sacking of one of the luxurious palaces of the Chinese emperor was a scene such as has had few parallels in the rapine of modern war. The wealth of Eastern rulers is accumulated in depositories of costly robes of ermine, sable, sea-otter, Astrakhan lamb and other rare furs, or of rich satin loaded with splendid embroidery; in stores of silk and crape in rolls; in magnificent collections of vases and other ancient porcelain, and figures in jade and other stones; in vessels of gold, silver and bronze, of great value; in caskets of ornaments, glittering with diamonds, pearls, emeralds, rubies and

Digitized by Google

other precious stones; in museums of curiosities from foreign lands—clocks, watches, musical instruments and specimens of curious machinery and art; in large mirrors; in images and articles connected with the worship of the gods. Added to these are libraries of books, maps and pictures, and much that is of real and permanent value.

Into these great depositories of Oriental wealth, which had been multiplying for centuries, the regiments of European and Hindù soldiers, maddened by liquor, utterly beyond all restraint of their officers, profanely plunged, to gorge themselves with what pleased their drunken fancy, and to destroy an equal amount out of the pure love of destruction. They dashed the vessels and figures through the mirrors; knocked down chandeliers with clubs; smashed to pieces or took off porcelain jars and jade-stone figures and curious carvings of ivory; and carried away cartloads of costly silks and heaps of yellow imperial robes and court costumes. Low and vile men made themselves rich with the secret treasures of royalty. The officers shared in the intoxication of the hour. Some loaded their horses with the costly spoil and walked leading them to the camp. And the defenceless chambers of princes were crowded, after the foreign soldiery had left, with hundreds of native marauders from the neighborhood, who satiated themselves with the strange pillage. It was a grand national burglary!

For weeks after this scene of stupendous robbery the troops held a carnival of license. They turned upon their native companions in plunder and stripped their houses of their ill-gotten wealth. The want of coin to

Digitized by Google

pay for the liquor and the eatables they wanted was supplied by a factitious currency of articles stolen. Thus a roll of silk, which was worth in China fifteen to twenty-five dollars, and in this country two or three times that amount, was rated at one dollar. It was a sutlers' paradise.

Poor Hien-fung, on the approach of the "foreign demons," fled in terror to Jeh-ho, the summer retreat of his family in Tartary. There, crushed with mortification and abandoning himself to dissipation, he died the next year (August 22, 1861), at the early age of thirty.

Amidst the bloodshed and desolations of the war with China there was One overruling all for the accomplishment of His omnipotent ends of good, "calling a ravenous bird" from the West—"the man that executed his counsel from a far country." The immediate fruit of the British treaty was the opening of the new ports of Niu-chwang far to the north, Tung-chau in the northern province of Shan-tung, Tai-wan in the beautiful and fertile island of Formosa, Chau-chau or Swatow, east of Canton, and Kiang-chau in the large island of Hai-nan on the southern sea-coast, west of Canton; to these was added afterward Tien-tsin, the seaport of Peking. Treaties have since been made with Belgium, Italy and other secondary powers of Europe, which have added also to the advantages of the rest, inasmuch as each has usually claimed the introduction in its articles of a clause assuring to it all the privileges granted to "the most favored nation." Thus in the treaty with Denmark, in 1863, sixteen ports are enumerated as being open for trade, among which appear those of Nanking, Hang-chau, Chin-kiang and Kiu-kiang; the advantages allowed in

Digitized by Google

regard to trade on the Yang-tsz-kiang river are important; the coasting trade is thrown open to foreign shipping, and the restrictions are removed from the exportation of some important articles of food.

The chief anxiety of the French in their recent claims has been for increased protection to the Roman Catholic missions, through which chiefly their political influence is maintained. Thus we find the following article in their late treaty:

"The Christian religion, having for its essential object to lead men to virtue, the members of all Christian bodies (communions) shall enjoy full security for their persons, their property and the free exercise of their religious worship; and entire protection shall be given to missionaries who peacefully enter the country furnished with passports, such as are described in article eight. No obstacles shall be interposed by the Chinese authorities to the recognized right of any person in China to embrace Christianity if he pleases, and to obey its requirements without being subject on that account to any penalty. Whatever has been heretofore written, proclaimed or published in China, by order of government, against the Christian faith, is wholly abrogated and nullified in all of the provinces of the empire."

The government of France means by "the Christian religion" simply Romanism. It is advancing the interests of Roman Catholic missions by all the means at its command. The French minister has recently secured from the Chinese government an edict granting to the foreign priests the right to decide all questions of law between their followers and those natives who do not profess Romanism. The priests are thoroughly in con-

Digitized by Google

cert with their political supporters, and are working with great energy to regain the political influence which they enjoyed two centuries ago. Their statistics are not to be relied on. Multitudes whom they claim as Christians are simply idolaters baptized in the name of the Trinity, with no Christian knowledge, faith or life. But it is asserted by the Romanists that they possess throughout the empire twenty-four Catholic missions, under the charge of nineteen bishops and five apostolic prefects, who are of French, Italian, Spanish and Belgian origin. Each bishop has under him from four to twenty European missionaries. Each mission is subdivided into districts, according to the number of European missionaries. They claim several thousand native Christians in each mission. They profess to have twenty-four seminaries, in which natives are taught Latin, philosophy and theology; and numerous schools and orphan asylums. The most important college is near Shanghai, and has three hundred pupils, who are taught trades, painting, drawing and Chinese literature, and some are sent to Peking to take the degrees. The missions support several printing-establishments, and have issued several works on mathematics and theology. The French government has demanded, and obtained, the restoration of large amounts of property, formerly belonging to various orders of missionaries, which had been confiscated when they were banished from the empire. Their successors are employing this to re-establish themselves firmly in some of the principal cities. At Canton they are rearing a magnificent cathedral, which it is expected will cost three millions of dollars, overshadowing in size and effect every other edifice in the city. One at as great a

Digitized by Google

cost is to be built in Peking; others are in progress in other cities.

It requires little explanation to show the anxiety which the advances of Romanism awaken in the mind of the Chinese government. Having in view the experience of his grandfather Shun-chi, and his father Kang-hi, the emperor Yung-ching, upon whom, previous to his accession to the throne, they had counted as a friend, presented the reasons for it in words which are remembered by those who have succeeded him until this day. He well knew the control which the Roman priests assume over the political actions of their people. He said:

"Certain Europeans in the province of Fu-kien have been endeavoring to defeat our laws and trouble our people. The chief men of the province have applied to me, and I must repress this disorder. It is the business of the government with which I am charged; and I neither can nor ought to act now as I did when I was a private prince. You say that your creed is not a false one, and I grant this. But what would you say if I were to send a troop of Buddhist priests and lamas into your country to preach their creed? How would you receive them? You wish to make Christians of the Chinese, and that is what your creed demands, I know very well; but what, in that case, would become of us? The subjects of your king, the Christians whom you make, recognize no authority but you; in times of trouble they would listen to no other voice. I know well enough that there is nothing to fear at present, but when your ships shall come by thousands and tens of thousands, then, indeed, we may have disturbances."

Digitized by Google

An unanticipated but very important effect of the war was the opportunity which it gave to Russia to settle favorably to herself several long-standing questions of difficulty with China, and to secure the cession to her of a vast district of territory which she had long coveted in vain. The Russians began to settle in Siberia about the year 1587. By the treaty of Nerchinsk, made in 1689, it was agreed that the dividing line between the Russian territories and those of the Mongols and Manchus subject to the Chinese should be the river Argun and the range of mountains bordering the valley of the Amoor on the north. In order to watch her interests in Eastern Asia, in 1728 Russia succeeded in establishing a mission at Peking, which was to be renewed each ten years. She has gradually appropriated extensive portions of Sungaria. The war with England and France afforded an opportunity not to be lost for urging a claim to the valley of the Amoor river, which is the artery of communication between Eastern Siberia and the Pacific ocean, and the key to mining and agricultural regions of great value to her. Russia had already been pressing colonization to that region. A treaty was made, on the behalf of Russia, by Count Nicholas Muravief, governor of Eastern Siberia, May 28, 1858, at Aigun. This was repudiated, on the ground of some informality, by the Chinese government. A general treaty of peace between the two empires was, however, concluded by Count Putiatin, at Tien-tsin, June 13, 1858, in which Prince Kung represented the Chinese government. In 1860 another opportunity arose. Amidst the troubles of that year the demand for the cession of the northern shore of the Amoor was again urged; and on the 14th of No-

Digitized by Google

vember the Russian ambassador, M. Ignatief, signed another treaty with Prince Kung at Peking, by which that and far more was yielded. The vast regions between the Amoor river and the Olekma mountains, extending from the forty-eighth to the fifty-sixth degree of latitude, and from the one hundred and eighteenth to the one hundred and forty-first degree of longitude, with a tract several degrees in width running down the coast of Manchuria below the forty-third degree, were handed over to Russia, so far as the document shows, without an equivalent. The same treaty granted to the Russians, who had before been limited to Kiakhta, the right to trade at Urga and Kalgan, with ground for a trading-post and church at Kashgar. Arrangements were also made for frequent and rapid mail communications between St. Petersburg and Peking by way of Kiakhta. These have been much increased since that time, so that now our earliest telegraphic news from Peking comes by way of St. Petersburg. A portion of the territory granted by the treaty, it is true, had been long claimed by Russia. Its extent has been estimated to be over three hundred and sixty thousand square miles, which is equal to the surface of the New England and Middle States, with the Atlantic States of the South down to the Florida line. It contains valuable mines. Its commercial and industrial resources will be rapidly developed by the Russian "Amoor Company," incorporated in 1858 with a capital of $800,000, and power to increase it to $2,250,000. The trade with California has already been considerable. In 1861 there were eleven steamers running on the Amoor river, seven of them iron. Four of the eleven had been obtained in

Digitized by Google

America, and several others were soon to be added to the number there.

The Amoor is estimated to be over two thousand miles in length. The two branches which form it, called the Argun and Shilka, extend several hundred miles farther into the heart of the continent. The chief value of the vast country which the Amoor opens up to commerce lies in its mines. Gold, platinum, silver, lead, copper, iron, arsenic, marble, precious stones of various kinds, coal of good quality and salt, have been found in it. The sable, ermine and other furs exported have been valuable. Pearls have been found in some of the rivers. Large quantities of ginseng are dug by the Chinese on the Usuri, a southern branch of the Amoor, the sales of which in one year have amounted to two hundred thousand dollars. The port at the mouth of the Amoor is Nicolayevsk. The Russians are exporting thence their metals, woolen cloths, leather, glass and hemp, and receiving in return the products of China, Japan and the west coast of North America. The trade is, however, yet in its infancy. The Russian government is pushing its railroad connections toward Chita, on the head-waters of the Amoor (52° N. 113° W.). And it is urging the colonization of the valley of the Amoor. It has recently offered to the Fins, who have suffered greatly from the failure of crops in their own country, inducements in the shape of tracts of farming-lands, loans of money to procure cattle and agricultural implements, and freedom from taxes for twenty-four years. The influence of these colonies upon the future history of China will be very important.

The foreign commerce of China has increased im-

Digitized by Google

mensely during the past few years. Previous to the termination of the charter of the East India Company, in 1834, the exports amounted to about thirteen millions of dollars a year, and the imports to ten and a half millions; in a dozen years afterward they had more than doubled; in 1868 the total exports were one hundred and three and a half millions of dollars, the imports one hundred and ten millions. The chief articles imported were opium, various kinds of cotton and woolen goods, the precious metals and coal. Six-sevenths of the whole trade is carried on with Great Britain and her Asiatic and Australian colonies.[1]

The extent and character of the commerce between the continent of Europe and China has been greatly changed by the gradual increase of the facilities for it by the way of the isthmus of Suez. The first attempt to open an overland route for the mails and passengers

[1] The following is a summary of the total foreign trade for the year 1868:

	Imports.	Exports.	Total.
Great Britain	$36,718,000	$63,062,000	$99,780,000
Hong-kong	23,510,000	13,455,000	36,965,000
India	39,147,000	396,000	39,543,000
Australia and New Zealand	1,102,000	4,428,000	5,530,000
Straits Settlements and Cape	1,116,000	506,000	1,622,000
Canada	.....	355,000	355,000
Total for Great Britain and depend'cies.	101,593,000	82,202,000	183,795,00
United States	1,249,000	9,875,000	11,124,000
Continent of Europe and Channel Islands	489,000	7,831,000	8,320,000
Japan	3,921,000	1,405,000	5,326,000
Siam and Cochin-China	1,612,000	186,000	1,798,000
Philippine Islands and Java	870,000	618,000	1,488,000
Russia (overland), Siberia and Amoor provinces	141,000	1,207,000	1,348,000
South America	102,000	348,000	450,000
Grand total	$109,977,000	103,672,000	213,649,000

Digitized by Google

to the East was made by Lieutenant Thomas Waghorn of the British navy. He encountered great difficulties, having been compelled to make part of his transit upon the Red sea in an open boat. But his indomitable energy and courage triumphed over every obstacle and proved the feasibility of this route. An attempt in 1838 to obtain the co-operation of the merchants in China failed; but in 1844 he succeeded in interesting the Lords of the Admiralty and British merchants in the establishment of the Peninsular and Oriental Steam Company, which, in August, 1845, commenced to run a monthly steamer from Suez, by Point de Galle in Ceylon, to Hong-kong. The first vessel that arrived in China was the Lady Mary Wood, which brought the mails in fifty days from London. The mail service is now performed semi-monthly, and is extended to Shanghai and other ports to the north, and to Yokohama in Japan. The ports on the Mediterranean where connections are made in order to avoid the length of the sea-passage to Southampton are Marseilles, Trieste, and recently Brindisi in Italy.

No achievement of the age is more grand and memorable than that of the completion of the Suez Canal, which reopens, after it had been closed at least twelve centuries, the communication between the Red sea and the Mediterranean. Conceived by Sesostris about the time of the captivity of the Israelites in Egypt, partly excavated by Pharaoh Necos previous to the Babylonish captivity of that people, again undertaken by Darius the Persian,[1] completed by the Greek

[1] Herodotus (ii. 258) describes the course of the canal. He says that Pharaoh Necos sacrificed the lives of a hundred and twenty thousand Egyptians in excavating it, and that he did not complete it, in consequence of an oracle which

Digitized by Google

Ptolemies, and after long disuse again opened for a time by the Mohammedan Khalif Omar in the seventh century of our era, the history of this work covers more than three thousand years of time, and shows how important the commercial ends which could thus inspire so many dynasties of rulers. The route of the ancient canal was explored by the officers of Napoleon Bonaparte during his campaign in Egypt. Count Ferdinand de Lesseps, after overcoming difficulties which would have discouraged any mind but one capable of appreciating the grandeur and usefulness of the enterprise, and of looking to the perpetuation of his name in all future history as his chief personal reward, has succeeded in uniting the two seas, at an expense of eighty millions of dollars. The canal is one hundred miles in length, three hundred feet wide at the surface of the water, and twenty-four feet deep. It connects Port Said on the Mediterranean with Suez on the Red sea. The distance to the ports of the East will be made about nine thousand miles shorter to vessels sailing from the commercial centres of Western Europe, and seven thousand miles to those from our seaports, than by the passage by the Cape of Good Hope. It is estimated that six millions of tons of merchandise will annually pass through this gateway of the oceans, and that the income from it will be twelve millions of dollars. Passengers from England will reach Hong-kong in China in nearly the same time by Suez or by the Pacific Railroad across

warned him against it as being a work that would accrue to the benefit of barbarian nations.

RAWLINSON, in a note upon the above passage, says that a stone at Suez is inscribed in the Persian cuneiform character with the words, "Darius, the Great King."

Digitized by Google

this continent and the Pacific mail steamers from San Francisco—that is, in forty-one to forty-three days.

The past few years of the internal history of the Chinese empire have been, like those preceding, full of troubles. In the provinces north of the Yellow river large districts, laid waste by previous rebellions, remain waste and desolate, and have been overrun by another crop of the same pestilent marauders, who are designated the Nien-fi or "Northern Rebels." Three years ago they several times defeated large imperial forces sent against various divisions of them, and threatened the great cities of Chefoo, Han-kau on the Yang-tsz-kiang river, and even the capital itself. But little danger, however, is now apprehended from them.

The present condition of the western provinces of China it is difficult to ascertain. The country in the south-west is mountainous, and partially inhabited by tribes of people who differ much from the Chinese in customs, language and religion. There is a large Mohammedan element, which has found its home there for some centuries at least. Marco Polo says that the population of that part of the empire six hundred years ago consisted of a mixture of idolaters, Nestorian Christians and Saracens or Mohammedans. The latter, according to the Chinese accounts, were the descendants of some tribes who were called in by the emperors of the Tang dynasty in the years 750 to 800 A.D., to aid them in quelling domestic rebellions. They are denominated by the Chinese "Hwuy-sz," or "Hwui-hwui," which means the Ouigour Tartars. The most intelligent of them read the Koran in Arabic. They are described as more fair and taller than the Chinese. Many of them wear turbans.

Digitized by Google

It is declared by British officers in India, who have seen documents circulated in Nepaul by these Mohammedans, that in the year 1855 those of them who were working in the Lu-sunfu silver mines of Yun-nan rebelled against the Chinese government, and elected a sultan for themselves, whom they arrayed in the imperial yellow; and that they have maintained their independence until this time. Other rebellions have been reported in the western provinces or dependent territories in the west and north-west. But this is evident, that on the whole the government is stronger than it was some years ago. The prophecies, then so frequent and so confident, of the speedy downfall of the Manchu dynasty, are now rarely heard. The presence and aid of foreign nations have contributed largely to this result.

The numerous and dangerous insurrections against the imperial authority, and the manifestations of the vast superiority of the nations of the West in the art of war, have compelled the Chinese to seek instruction and assistance from them. Several American, English and French officers of ability have been employed to discipline and command Manchu troops. General Ward, an American, especially, was respected and trusted by the imperial government, to which he rendered important services in putting down the Tai-ping rebellion, and in the service of which he sacrificed his life in a battle near the city of Ningpo, in September, 1862. He was succeeded in command by General Burgevine, also an American, who, however, lost the confidence of the authorities, and at length abandoned them for their enemies, on account of difficulties about the payment of the soldiers and foreign officers. He lost his life by

Digitized by Google

drowning. An excellent English officer, Major Gordon, was of great service in 1863, in leading the imperial troops in the sieges of Fu-shan, Tai-tsan, Su-chau and other important cities. He afterward gave instruction in military science to Chinese officers, and drilled bodies of soldiers for them at Shanghai. The French commanders lent several intelligent officers for the same purposes. Two of these, Captains Lebreton and De Moidry, were killed by the rebels at Kiu-ting. Admiral Protet lost his life in the same battle.

The English inspector-general of customs at Shanghai, Mr. Lay, used his influence with the Chinese government to obtain a commission to purchase for it several vessels of war in Great Britain. A million of dollars was put in his hands for the purpose. But he went far beyond his instructions, incurred a heavy debt, which he secured in favor of the British government upon the vessels themselves, and added certain unjustifiable conditions designed to favor English interests. This discreditable proceeding provoked the just indignation of Prince Kung and of the representatives of other governments; and, in consequence, the purchase was repudiated by the imperial government and the vessels were sold. It has been announced to be the judicious policy of the Chinese to establish manufactories and shipyards, and make their own arms and build their own ships.

The young son of Hien-fung, Tsai-chun, then only seven years of age, was on the death of his father proclaimed emperor, under the name of Tung-chi. The empress-dowager, who was not his own mother, but who, having no children of her own, had adopted him as

Digitized by Google

her own son, according to the Chinese law, which imputes to the first and proper wife the children of the secondary wives, was made regent at Jeh-ho. Several other members of the royal family claimed a share in the authority, but the brother of the late emperor, Yih-su, Prince Kung, a very able and determined man, went there, promptly seized and condemned to death three of these rivals, and had himself proclaimed joint-regent with her. He set himself at once vigorously to work in rectifying abuses, enforcing the laws over the empire, repressing the rebellious disposition of some portions of the population, and encouraging the resumption of industry and commerce. He found an intelligent and faithful coadjutor in the queen-dowager, and in another female member of the royal household possessing a rank nearly equal to hers.

The young emperor, at this time in his sixteenth year, is placed in the hands of strict and honest tutors, who not only teach him faithfully the morality and wisdom of Confucius, but continually hold before him the noblest actions of his ancestry for his imitation, and, it is said, do not fear severely to reprove his faults. It is expected that he will during the present year assume the throne, as he will soon reach the age which has been fixed as appropriate for him to do so by the precedents of previous emperors, especially that of Kang-hi.

What imagination dare make the bold conjecture of what the condition of the empire will be at its close, should the reign of Tung-chi equal in length that of Kang-hi or Kien-lung? Will the career of this boy have been that of a persecuting Nero or that of a believing Constantine? Will China in the year of our Lord 1930 lie torn into

Digitized by Google

bleeding fragments by the resistance of paganism to the necessary progress of the gospel and the science of civilized lands—or will it be a homogeneous Christian empire, one of the grandest and strongest in the history of mankind, shedding blessings over the entire continent and its adjacent islands, and communicating them to distant lands to which it will have owed not alone a debt of great evil, but also a debt of greater good?

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIV.

AMERICAN RELATIONS WITH THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

THE relations between our country and China date back to the period when the United States were yet the colonies of Great Britain, and even had something to do with the measures which resulted in giving us national independence.

The East India Company early set itself to the development of a trade in the Colonies which would be profitable to its treasury. It sent here some of the tea which it brought from China, and sought for such products of the New World as would afford a profitable return cargo for its ships, and a means through which it could save the payment of specie in exchange for the merchandise of the Celestial Empire. The ginseng of the Northern Colonies was one of the first articles which proved advantageous to its purposes. Agents were sent to New England, who induced the Indians to search for this medicinal root by rewards of money, whisky, trinkets and calico. The Christian people who were interested in civilizing these wild tribes, elevating their morals and giving them the blessings of the worship of God on the Sabbath and of education for their children, were sorely grieved by the vagrant habits, the drunkenness and other vices which were fostered by this busi-

Digitized by Google

ness, and some of the first missionaries to the Indians, in their letters to the churches of the mother-country, made complaint of the injury which it did to religion.

The East India Company had some share in the political oppression which led the Colonies to revolt. Their charges for tea were so grievous that the people were compelled to smuggle it from their Dutch neighbors of the colony of New Amsterdam, on the Hudson. Lord Townshend, in 1767, carried a bill through Parliament which laid a duty of three pence a pound on tea, with something upon paper, glass and paints. This only increased the evil, and it aroused the question of the right to impose taxation upon those to whom the mother-country allowed no political representation. The colonists refused to use tea brought from England. The losses to the East India Company were, in consequence, so great as to threaten it with bankruptcy. It could not pay its dividends or debts, and its stock went down to half its former value. At the suggestion of Lord North, Parliament authorized the company to ship its tea to America without previously paying the duty in England. The people of Boston, of Philadelphia, of New York, of Charleston and of other places, now determined that tea should not be brought to the country. The first cargoes came to Boston. And there was performed one of the acts which began the great struggle for Independence. On the evening of the sixteenth of December, 1773, a company of citizens, disguised as Indians, seized three ships, which had recently arrived, and without injuring any other articles, in three hours broke open three hundred and forty chests of tea, and emptied what the company had bought at the fac-

Digitized by Google

tories at Canton, and transported twenty thousand miles, out into the icy and briny waters of the harbor. So the East India Company, the ill-gotten wealth it poured into the British treasury and its Chinese trade, have a niche in the history of this nation.

As soon as the war was ended, our people hastened to engage for themselves in the rich trade with China. The ship Empress, commanded by Captain Green, left New York for Canton on the anniversary of the birthday of General Washington, February 22, 1784, six months after the definitive treaty of peace with Great Britain was signed at Paris.

The development of the commerce with China has been in a remarkable and very important manner connected with that of our national territory, our internal trade and prosperity, and even with our missionary efforts in other parts of the world.

The winter climate of Southern China is raw and changeable; that of the north is quite cold. The people cannot afford fuel to warm their houses, and so protect themselves by an increase of clothing. The better classes, from the earliest history of the empire, have been accustomed at that season of the year to clothe themselves with an abundance of warm and rich furs. Robes and capes of various kinds are worn, some of which are very elegant and very expensive. They constitute, indeed, a not unimportant item of the wealth which is transmitted in families. Previous to the discovery of America these furs were supplied by the wild Asiatic tribes on the north and the west of the empire. The exportation of them from the colonies of the New World to China was begun by the English, Dutch,

Digitized by Google

French and Spaniards. The English North-west and Hudson's Bay Companies planted their posts and sent forth their agents and trappers over the vast regions north of the great lakes to the borders of the Arctic zone, and westward even beyond the Rocky Mountains. They collected the furs of the muskrat, otter, marten, ermine, beaver, silver and other species of fox, fitch, chinchilla, mink and the coarser ones of several other animals. But a sudden and great impulse was given to the fur trade by the discovery of the abundance of the sea-otter and other fur-bearing animals on the north-west coast of the continent, which was made by Captain James Cook and his companions during his third voyage to the Pacific ocean. When the information which they obtained was published in the winter of 1784, the attention of the mercantile world was at once directed to this new field for adventure. Numerous vessels were sent there within the next few years. These discovered new groups of islands in the Pacific ocean, and explored the scarcely known western shores of the continent. Captain Gray, who was the first man that carried the American flag round the world in 1787 to 1790, at that time explored Queen Charlotte's Sound, and during his next voyage, in May, 1792, discovered the Columbia river and named it after his own vessel. This was the basis of the American claim to the territory which the Columbia river drains.

The opening up of these sources of wealth upon the coast naturally suggested the importance of securing a connection with them across the continent, whose interior until that time was almost as unknown as the heart of Africa. It was considered to be as wild and incapable

Digitized by Google

of cultivation as the Sahara, and its place was marked upon the maps as the "Great American Desert." The first to penetrate and explore it were the hardy French and English trappers and hunters. They were encouraged by the support of rich merchants and companies—English, Russian, French and American—who furnished them supplies and purchased the spoils of their expeditions. In January, 1803, President Jefferson suggested an exploration of the Missouri and Columbia rivers at the expense of the government. This was agreed to by Congress, and Captain M. Lewis, who had been Jefferson's private secretary, and Lieutenant W. Clarke were sent forth upon the arduous work the next year. They reached the Pacific coast November 17, 1805, and spent the winter there. The narrative of their expedition was read with great interest throughout the country. Its great object was to show the possibility of commercial intercourse between the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of the American continent.

The fur trade now received a new impulse. Companies for its prosecution were formed in New York and in the valley of the Mississippi. The most successful of them was the American, which afterward became the Pacific Fur Company, projected by John Jacob Astor, of New York. He determined to establish a line of trading-posts along the Missouri and down the Columbia to the mouth of the river, where there should be a great central depôt for the interior and coast trade, and a post for the vessels which should connect it with the distant market in China. "He considered his projected establishment at the mouth of the Columbia as the emporium to an immense commerce; as a colony that would form

Digitized by Google

the germ of a wide civilization, that would in fact carry the American population across the Rocky Mountains and spread it along the shores of the Pacific as it already animated the shores of the Atlantic." The great end of all was to supply "China, that great mart for peltries," to avoid the long and hazardous voyage round Cape Horn and to bring our own nation into more close connection with the trade of Asia.[1]

The acquaintance which was formed by our merchants and trappers with the Pacific coast in the prosecution of this fur trade with China led, in the end, to its colonization by our people, to our acquisition of Oregon and California, and to the magnificent results which have followed in later years through the discovery of the abundance of the precious metals in the mountains of that slope of the American continent.

The ships engaged in the fur trade visited, in their course around the world, the ports on the eastern and western sides of South America, in which they tarried and bought and sold; and thus were made to exercise an important influence upon the character of that continent. And they brought into connection with the great world the lonely islands which lay in their track.

The history of the Sandwich Islands is peculiarly connected with this commerce. The fur ships were accustomed to time their departure from the Atlantic ports so as to reach the North-west coast in the spring. They traded during the summer up and down it with

[1] Many interesting facts relating to the fur trade can be gathered from LEWIS & CLARKE, *Expedition*, etc. (Philada., 1814); WASHINGTON IRVING, *Astoria*, chap. iii.; H. M. BRACKENRIDGE, *Views of Louisiana* (Pittsburg, 1814); ROBERT GREENHOW, *History of California and Oregon*, chaps. vi., vii. (Boston, 1845).

Digitized by Google

the Indians. In the fall they went down to the Sandwich Islands, and there refitted and laid in fresh provisions; dried, cleaned and preserved their furs; and purchased sandal-wood, sharks' fins and tortoise shells for the China trade. The second spring they returned north for a further supply of furs, in the fall touched at the islands again to put them in order and thence sailed away for China. An exchange of their cargo for tea, silk and porcelain was soon effected there, and they joyfully hastened upon the wings of the monsoon toward their Atlantic homes.

The name given by the Chinese to the Sandwich Islands was Tan-hiang Shan, the "Sandal-wood Islands." This name they bear commonly in the Chinese language till this day, though the sandal-wood has long ago been cut off, so that now only a bush of it can be found here and there on the mountains. It is wonderful to trace out the chain of influences as they affected the people of these and other islands. The trade in sandal-wood enriched a few of the prominent chiefs. Kamehameha, an ambitious chief of the island of Hawaii, was furnished by it with a part of the means necessary to prosecute his determination to make himself master, first of the large island on which he lived, then of the whole group. He compelled his people to search for the precious fragrant wood, hew and clean it and carry it down the mountain sides upon their backs. He traded it for vessels, guns, ammunition and stores. He succeeded in conquering the whole of the islands. This removed some of the greatest obstacles to the future efforts of the missionaries of the gospel. Through the tractable native Hawaiians, who were employed as seamen on the ships engaged in

Digitized by Google

this same trade, the attention of American Christians was turned to those interesting people. The presence of two of them, Obookiah and Hopu, at New Haven, helped to kindle the missionary impulses which created the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions, in June, 1810, and led one of its first missionary companies, in 1819, to undertake the conversion of the Hawaiian nation to Christ. Thus the commerce whose end was to clothe with costly furs the wealthy inhabitants of the empire of China was appointed by the Providence which wisely and mercifully manages the world to be a means to surround it with a rich belt of celestial blessings to our race.

It would be exceedingly entertaining to trace the effects of the commerce between China and America upon the development of the civilization of the New World in other respects besides those mentioned. Our space in this volume permits us, however, to speak now of but one of them—that is, the advancement of the art of ship-building.

The fresh teas were brought down from the interior to Canton in the autumn. The first "chops," or lots, in the market were sold at several cents a pound higher than those which came in from two to four weeks later. There was much competition among the foreign merchants for the early teas, and anxiety to be the first to get them into the markets of this country or Europe. And this will be understood when it is remembered that a difference of only two cents in the pound, in a cargo of one thousand tons of tea, makes forty thousand dollars more or less in the profits of it. The decline in the prices of the teas after the sale of the first chops sug-

Digitized by Google

gested the construction of swift ships, which would enable the owners to take advantage of the fall, and yet land their cargoes first in the Atlantic ports. Hence, immediately after the Opium War, there began to appear in the Chinese waters long, trim vessels, whose narrowness of beam, sharp lines, tall masts, heavy spars and weight of canvas appalled the old salts of the trade, who shook their heads and pronounced them nothing but coffins, that could not stand up in a hard storm. However, these "clippers" were but the forerunners in a great reformation of the art of ship-building; and now the days of the "Cleopatra" and the "Bull-dog" and the "Duke of Marlborough" have passed away, and the generation of the "Wings of the Morning" and the "Carrier Dove" and the "Morning Star" has taken their place. Other nations have caught the spirit of advancement in the construction of sailing vessels, especially for the China trade. And with each returning spring we read of the splendid races of the clippers from China, a grand and exhilarating contest over an ocean track from one to the other side of the globe, compared with which the strifes between the youths of rival universities in England and America look like child's play.

And the same great causes will in time dispense with canvas. The age of steam on the ocean is already begun. The commerce with China and India has cut out for itself a new channel through the Isthmus of Suez. It will soon cut another through the Isthmus of Darien. But either isthmus is adjacent to tropic seas, in which a vessel with sails alone may lie for days, and even for weeks together, upon a surface as smooth as polished glass, but made dangerous in places by currents and

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

submarine rocks. Steam is essential to the accelerated communication of the future. Within a generation or two from the present one the great oceans of the world will be covered with fleet lines of vessels propelled by steam or some more compact, economical and effective power, and engaged in the universal distribution of the gifts with which Providence has favored the different climes and races of man. And it is interesting to consider, in connection with the subject before us, that it is the necessities of the intercourse with China which will most imperatively demand this great advancement and inaugurate this great commercial era.

The history of American diplomacy in China presents nothing of special interest previous to the Opium War. As soon as possible after its close, the Hon. Caleb Cushing was dispatched as the first minister plenipotentiary from the United States to that empire. A treaty was made with Ki-ying, a member of the royal family, and three subordinates acting in connection with him, which was signed at Wang-hia, July 3, 1844. There were some remarkable advances manifest in this treaty upon those previously made by Sir Henry Pottinger, the British plenipotentiary. In a dispatch on the subject from Mr. Cushing to the Secretary of State, he enumerates sixteen "provisions which are not embraced either in the English treaty of Nanking or in the treaty supplementary thereto." Some of them are important and remarkable, as exhibiting the different spirit which animates the treaty of Wang-hia. The protection of Christian converts or the right of Christian missionaries to follow the openings of commerce had not been brought forward in the British treaty. But in that of Wang-hia, as Mr.

Digitized by Google

Cushing mentions, "Citizens of the United States are permitted to have all accommodations at each of the five ports, not only as heretofore in the construction of mercantile and dwelling-houses, but also for churches, cemeteries and hospitals. Chinese scholars, who might act as teachers or assistants of missionaries, had formerly been liable to severe punishments. To guard against this in the future an article was inserted in the treaty making provision for the employment by Americans of persons to teach the languages of the empire, and the purchase of books was legalized." It was argued by the American minister, and assented to by the Chinese commissioners, that to persecute and oppress such of its subjects as either gave instruction or sold books to foreigners in China was a great obstacle to the study of the languages of China, and thus to the acquisition of the means of satisfactory intercourse with its government. The painful and delicate subject of the opium trade was discussed. This had not been directly mentioned in the English treaties; but it was provided by the treaty of Wang-hia that citizens of the United States engaged in this, or any other contraband trade, should receive no protection from the American government, nor should the flag of the United States be abusively employed by other nations as a cover for the violation of the laws of China.

The general character awarded to the people of the United States by the Chinese has been that they are more peaceable and more friendly to them than any other foreigners. It suits the subjects of European governments to ridicule this assertion when it is made by Americans; but I know by experience that it is true,

Digitized by Google

and so well have other nations been aware of it that individuals of them have been known, when threatened by a furious Chinese mob, to declare that they were "men of the country of the flowery flag." The activity of the American missionaries in preparing and circulating gospels and tracts in the native tongue, and the influence of the hospital of Dr. Parker, which was resorted to by thousands of patients annually from the whole province and from great distances in the interior, had more to do with producing this kindly feeling than even the republican and pacific character of our nation.

A beautiful and touching illustration of this feeling occurred at Amoy. The amiable and devoted Rev. Dr. David Abeel was one of our missionaries at that port. Among the Chinese gentlemen with whom he was acquainted there was Seu Ki-yu, an intelligent and able officer, who was subsequently made governor of the province of Fu-kien. The results of the war greatly excited the interest of this gentleman in regard to the geography and history of the nations of the West. He procured translations from works in our language, more especially extracts from Murray's Cyclopedia of Geography, and spent many hours with Dr. Abeel and others gathering information from them. This was thrown together and published by him in 1848, in a work containing ten parts or volumes, under the name of "A General Survey of Maritime Countries." He gave in this work a fair account of the colonization of America and of the War of Independence. But it was the character of our Washington which specially and deeply impressed him. He dwelt upon the life and actions of Washington in one of his chapters as something which equaled the ancient

Digitized by Google

Chinese ideals. The following extracts will convey an idea of this portion of the work:

"Washington was born in the ninth year of the emperor Yung Ching. His father died when he was but ten years of age. He was trained up by his mother. While yet young he manifested much intelligence, both in regard to civil and military affairs, and excelled in personal strength and courage. Washington first held a commission in the war of the English against the French, in which he led out his troops against the marauding aborigines of the southern parts of the country, and conquered them. But the English general did not fairly represent to the government his worthy deeds. His countrymen, however, desired his acceptance of an important office; but this sickness compelled him to decline.

"At the period when the people rose up in rebellion against England, they urgently besought Washington to become their commander-in-chief. He at once accepted the position. Without arms, ammunition or provisions, Washington roused his countrymen to action by his own patriotic spirit. He planted his army first near to the capital of one of the provinces, before which the English commander-in-chief had collected his ships of war. Suddenly a storm rose and dispersed the ships, which gave Washington an opportunity to attack and obtain possession of the city.

"The English general subsequently collected his forces and drove Washington from his position. His soldiers now became greatly disheartened, and wished to lay down their arms, but he, with the same heroic spirit which he had exhibited from the first, having reorgan-

Digitized by Google

ized his army, again attacked the English, and this time with success. From that time, during eight years of bloody conflict, while his army was often reduced and weakened, the spirit of Washington was undiminished. The English army in the mean time became exhausted. The French raised a large force, crossed the sea and joined Washington in resistance to the English. The Spanish and Dutch governments favored peace. The English, unable to continue the contest, concluded a treaty with Washington, according to which the northern part of the continent, a cold region, was retained by them, while they yielded the southern part of it, a fertile country.

"When Washington had established the government upon a firm foundation, he disbanded the army and desired to return to the pursuits of husbandry, but the people would not consent to it, and pressed upon him the office of Chief Magistrate. In an address to Congress, Washington said, 'To obtain a kingdom for one's self, to transmit it to posterity, were a criminal ambition. Integrity should distinguish those who are to be elevated to this position in the nation.' Surely Washington was an extraordinary man. His successes as a soldier were more rapid than those of Shing and Kwang, and in personal courage he was superior to Tsau-pi and Liu-pang. With the two-edged sword [of justice] he established the tranquillity of the country over an area of several thousand miles. He refused to receive pecuniary recompense. He labored to rear an elective system of government. Patriotism like this is to be commended under the whole heavens. Truly it reminds us of our own three great ancient dynasties! In administering the

Digitized by Google

government he fostered virtue, he avoided war and he succeeded in making his country superior to all other nations. I have seen his portrait. His countenance exhibits great mental power. Who must not concede to him the character of an extraordinary man?"

The subsequent career of the author of this remarkable tribute to the character of the Father of his Country is full of interest to us, and may be mentioned here. Such encomiums paid to a person of the West, whose nations seemed to be the fountain of all evil to China, offended the imperial government. In 1850, the noble and candid Seu Ki-yu was degraded and sent into private life, in his native province of Shan-si. There he remained until after the accession of the present youthful emperor to the throne, under the regency of Prince Kung. Since that his intelligent acquaintance with foreign countries has led to his being summoned to the council for foreign affairs. In March, 1867, when seventy years of age, he was placed by an imperial decree at the head of the new "Institution for Giving Instruction in the Arts and Sciences of the West," which has been established at Peking, and has excited so much interest in America and Europe. On learning of this appointment, the President of the United States, through the Hon. W. H. Seward, as Secretary of State, sent to Peking a portrait of Washington, which Mr. Burlingame presented to the venerable Seu Ki-yu, with a written expression of the gratification of the government of the United States on account of the honor done him.[1]

[1] On this occasion, after the act of presentation, an interesting conversation took place between Mr. Burlingame and the Chinese ministers present, of which the following is a portion:

Digitized by Google

The government of the United States viewed with anxiety the new breaking out of hostilities between

Mr. Burlingame: "The presentation of this picture indicates a commerce of thought. We have borrowed many useful ideas from you. Some of our arts were originally derived from China, and perhaps we may have some things to offer in exchange—industrial arts, physical sciences, and religious truth."

Wen-Siang: "Our maxim is, in everything to inquire for the best method and to adopt it for our own, no matter where it may originate."

Mr. Burlingame: "The institutions of our country present many points of resemblance to your own. For instance, the elective principle which pervades us is quite analogous to your practice of admitting all honest citizens to the privilege of a fair competition for the honors and emoluments of office."

Wen-Siang: "With you that excellent system descends from Washington, who refused to transmit to his successor a legacy of hereditary power, but preferred to leave it in the hands of the people."

Mr. Burlingame: "Like your ancient sovereigns, Washington honored agriculture by himself holding the plough, and, like them, he inculcated the doctrine that rulers should employ moral influence in preference to physical force."

Tan: "Nothing is more desirable than that nations should conform in their practice to a principle which is at once so just and so humane."

Tung: "That is the surest way to conciliate the love and respect of other nations, for our sacred books lay down the principle that 'those who respect others will be respected, and those who love others will be loved.'"

The written reply which Mr. Burlingame received to his letter to the Chinese statesman was as follows:

"SIR: I yesterday perused your highly-prized address, in which you have bestowed upon me such high commendation, in presenting me the painting of the portrait of Washington, the founder of your honorable country. As I and my associates again and again looked at this beautiful and elegant gift our pleasure and admiration increased, and we could all only the more value and appreciate this worthy remembrance of you.

"Among all the great men of your land, I think that Washington stands first, for his surprising capacity. He founded and planned its enduring institutions as a pattern for all ages, and his merit makes him a perfect link to connect the great men of antiquity with those who will come in all time, so that his name will surely be honored by mankind through all ages.

"I beg to renew my thanks, in sending you this answer, and avail myself of the opportunity to offer my wishes for your highest happiness."

"SEU KI-YU."

"His Excellency Hon. ANSON BURLINGAME,

"*United States Minister.*"

Digitized by Google

Great Britain, supported by France as an ally, and China in the year 1856. President Buchanan sent thither the Hon. William B. Reed to watch the course of events, and to act the part of a mediator and peace-maker when the opportunity should offer. In this he was sustained by the influence of Russia. Mr. Reed arrived in Hong-kong, on the fine war steamer Minnesota, November 7, 1857. He at once set himself to remove the difficulties between the English and Chinese, and save if possible the further effusion of blood. He endeavored in vain to persuade the proud and obstinate governor Yeh to yield, and save Canton from bombardment. He proceeded to the north, and made on behalf of his government a treaty of peace with China which was signed June 18. The first article of the treaty contains a significant reference to the posture of the United States in relation to the war then in progress, as well as to any which might thereafter arise. The article says:

"There shall be, as there have always been, peace and friendship between the United States of America and the Ta-Tsing Empire, and between their people respectively. They shall not insult or oppress each other for any trifling cause, so as to produce an estrangement between them; and if any other nation should act unjustly or oppressively, the United States will exert their good offices, on being informed of the case, to bring about an amicable arrangement of the question, thus showing their friendly feelings."

A subsequent article of this treaty is to be interpreted by keeping in view the bitter root of the difficulties between Great Britain and China which led to the previous war of 1839 to '42, and to this war. After stating the

Digitized by Google

ports where Americans shall be permitted to reside and their vessels to trade; it continues in the following language:

"But said vessels shall not carry on a clandestine and fraudulent trade at other ports of China not declared to be legal, or along the coasts thereof; and any vessel under the American flag violating this provision shall, with her cargo, be subject to confiscation to the Chinese government; and any citizen of the United States who shall trade in any contraband article of merchandise shall be subject to be dealt with by the Chinese government, without being entitled to any countenance or protection from that of the United States; and the United States will take measures to prevent their flag from being abused by the subjects of other nations as a cover for the violation of the laws of the empire."

It was a very interesting fact, which was remarked at the time with great pleasure in our country, that the first announcement of news from the Old World made by the Atlantic telegraph cable, August 25, 1858, after the ascription of thanks and utterance of hope in the words, "Glory to God in the highest, on earth peace, good-will toward men," was that peace had been made between China and the European allies!

The development of the foreign trade with China during the brief time which has passed since the last war has been very great. The exports and imports at its close amounted to some eighty millions of dollars a year—now it is two hundred and thirteen millions. The American government has been represented most of the time by the Hon. Anson Burlingame, who has taken the lead, with remarkable ability and success, in establishing

Digitized by Google

the policy of peaceful co-operation between the chief treaty-powers, in encouraging the Chinese to adopt a more wise and progressive policy in their intercourse with foreign nations and in the introduction of the improvements of the age. He has been cordially supported in this by Sir Frederick Bruce, the late British minister, by M. Berthemy, the late French minister, and by the representatives of the other powers. Several very important reforms have been inaugurated, and the germs of beneficial Western systems or institutions planted; upon which subject we cannot, however, dwell now.

It has been a point of the first magnitude to arrest at once the alienation of Chinese territory to any foreign power. The history of British India has illustrated the results of even small and feeble beginnings in that way. The sites for factories and forts at Surat, Armegum and Hoogley, two centuries ago, were the little acorns whence grew the oaks which came to overshadow the nations of the Indian peninsula. The sites of the factories at Canton, Shanghai and other ports were claimed already by some of the consuls to be wholly under foreign jurisdiction. That at Shanghai, as the centre of the extensive trade at that point, covered several square miles, was occupied with costly and capacious foreign buildings, and was becoming the abode of a large and wealthy Chinese population. The representatives of the several commercial powers came to see the dangers to their common interests and those to the future unity and permanence of the Chinese empire, which were involved in the permission of the claims to the jurisdiction of any one of them over these seats of trade; and they agreed together, notwithstanding the indignation and protests

Digitized by Google

of some of their subjects, to sustain the original authority of the Chinese government, while they maintained whatever local administration of justice might be required by the necessities of their own people.

Some of the foreigners claimed privileges which had not been conceded by treaty. There was a continual disposition to transgress Chinese forms and laws. And some well-meaning and some interested parties pressed the construction of railroads, telegraphs and other accessories of trade and travel in a manner calculated to thwart the increasing sense of their usefulness among the Chinese and delay their final establishment.

While these and other serious matters were pressing upon the minds of the able officers of the Council of Foreign Affairs at Peking, Mr. Burlingame, who had been in China six years, determined to resign his post and return to America. The news of it excited much regret among both Chinese and foreign diplomatists. The former endeavored in vain to dissuade him from his purpose. Failing to accomplish this, he was invited by Prince Kung to a farewell entertainment, at which were present many of the leading officers of the government. During it they expressed to him their gratitude for his offices to them as an intelligent and disinterested counselor and friend. And they seem to have conceived at this time the thought of putting the relations of the empire with foreign countries upon a more just and equal basis, by sending to them an imperial embassy of which he should be the head. They promptly consulted some of their more reliable friends among the foreign gentlemen at the capital, and in two days after they tendered to Mr. Burlingame, much to his surprise,

Digitized by Google

the appointment of minister plenipotentiary of China to the Western powers.

The designation of Mr. Burlingame to the most responsible and honorable office of being the first plenipotentiary of the empire of China in modern ages to any nation of the West may be considered to be a national compliment to the United States, for the following reasons. It was, no doubt, their experience of the sincere and generous friendship of the representative of the government of the United States which induced the proposal of the Chinese to him to undertake this mission. The burning and terrible memories of the past, and the peculiar temptations to the abuse of the trust to their own advantage, would probably have prevented the appointment of a subject of any first-class European government, and that of one of a secondary nation would not have carried with it sufficient weight. The jealousies of the leading European powers, it would be foreseen, would probably defeat the general ends of the embassy under the leadership of any one of them. And it was doubtless the same causes, and the liberality and friendship it had always shown, which led to the selection of the government of the United States as the first one to which the embassy should be sent, in order to secure its general designs. And subsequent facts have proved that had the embassy been otherwise constituted, or had it gone first to either of the European courts, it would have wholly or comparatively failed in the attainment of its splendid successes.

Mr. Burlingame left the Chinese capital on the 25th of November, 1867. The embassy consisted, besides the principal, of Chih-kang and Sun Chia-ku, a Manchu

Digitized by Google

Hon. Anson Burlingame.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

and a Chinese officer, each wearing the red ball on his cap which indicates an official of a rank next to the highest in the empire; J. McLeary Brown, formerly of the British legation, and M. Deschamps, as secretaries; Teh Ming and Fung I as Chinese attachés, and several other persons in subordinate positions. The embassy was detained five days on the way to Tien-tsin, which was distant but two days' journey, and put in some peril, by bands of mounted robbers. It went to Shanghai, thence to San Francisco, where it was most cordially welcomed by both the American and Chinese mercantile communities. It reached Washington in May, 1868. The embassy was treated with much distinction at the American capital. No American statesman was so capable and disposed to enter cordially into its objects as the Secretary of State at that time, the Hon. William H. Seward, whose mind had long apprehended the great features of the policy which American and foreign nations should pursue in relation to the Chinese empire. On the 16th of July the Senate of the United States ratified a treaty which he had made in behalf of this country with the representative of the Chinese government.

The treaty defines and fixes the principles of the intercourse of Western nations with China, of the importance of which I have already spoken. It secures the territorial integrity of the empire, and concedes to China the rights which the civilized nations of the world accord to each other as to eminent domain over land and waters, and jurisdiction over persons and property therein. It takes the first step toward the appointment of Chinese consuls in our seaports—a measure promotive of both Chinese and American interests.

Digitized by Google

It secures exemption from all disability or persecution on account of religious faith in either country. It recognizes the right of voluntary emigration and makes penal the wrongs of the coolie traffic. It pledges privileges as to travel or residence in either country such as are enjoyed by the most favored nation. It grants to the Chinese permission to attend our schools and colleges, and allows us to freely establish and maintain schools in China. And while it acknowledges the right of the Chinese government to control its own whole interior arrangements, as to railroads, telegraphs and other internal improvements, it suggests the willingness of our government to afford aid toward their construction by designating and authorizing suitable engineers to perform the work, at the expense of the Chinese government.

The treaty expressly leaves the question of naturalization in either country an open one. And we would fain hope that no attempt will be made to construe the clause granting exemption from all disability or persecution on account of their religious faith, which should properly protect the Chinese against injustice or violence as to their religious worship or professions, so as to imply that Buddhism possesses equal civil privileges and immunities with Christianity, or may violate our Sabbaths with the clamor of its public demonstrations, or interfere with our common-school education or our judicial oaths. This the Christian sentiment of the nation would justly abhor, and the omnipotent God surely chastise.

While slavery existed in the United States the Senate would not have ratified a national covenant which accords so freely the rights of equal humanity and equal

Digitized by Google

civilization to a tawny race not of European blood. That covenant will be kept with good faith on our part. It is in harmony with the article of the Constitution recently adopted,[1] which says that no State shall "deprive any person of life, liberty or property without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of its laws." This article we accept as the text in the Constitution of which this treaty is one example. It must sweep away the legal disabilities to which the Chinese have been subjected on the Pacific coast, permit them to obtain the sheer rights of humanity, and punish the villains who now plunder, abuse or murder them under the assurance that the testimony of witnesses of that race will be rejected in our courts.

The members of the embassy visited a few of the leading points of interest in the country, though they refused as a rule to accept municipal honors tendered to them. They were particularly interested in a visit to the grand cataract of Niagara and to the State prison at Auburn, New York, the order, discipline, cleanliness and healthfulness of which impressed upon these ministers a lesson that should be imitated in the terrible places of punishment in China, which are in the condition of those of Europe during the Middle Ages. They enjoyed visits to the cities of Boston and New York. Reviews of bodies of soldiers, of fire-brigades and other honors were offered to them, which would exert an important influence upon their estimate of the value of Western civilization.

It is not necessary to follow in detail the progress of

[1] The Fourteenth Amendment, section 1.

Digitized by Google

this first imperial Chinese embassy. In England it was received at first very coldly, and it was some months before proper attention could be secured from the government to its objects. At length, however, on November 20, it was presented to the queen at Windsor Castle. The audience-room was filled with the royal family and distinguished members of the nobility. Mr. Burlingame was presented to her Majesty by Lord Stanley. He addressed her in the name of the emperor of China, expressing desires for her continued health and happiness and the prosperity of her reign, making a happy allusion to her friendship to the nation of which he was a citizen, that whence the embassy had last come. He then presented his credentials from the emperor of China as his ambassador, a document richly painted upon a sheet of yellow satin. The Chinese members of the embassy were then introduced to the queen. At a luncheon served to the company in the castle, Lord Stanley took occasion to say that his own sentiments perfectly accorded with those of Mr. Burlingame relative to China. He said: "It is true that a certain degree of opposition, originating in ignorance of the real object of the Chinese mission, coupled with a desire to adhere to the old traditional British coercive policy, met Mr. Burlingame on his arrival in England, but this has all passed away. Mr. Burlingame, by his dignified course and feeling the grandeur and importance of the high trust confided to his care, has conducted himself in such a manner as to completely disarm opposition and create a favorable impression not only for China, but for the United States; for, while acting as the representative of the emperor of China, his dignified bearing and

Digitized by Google

progressive ideas have exhibited him as a true type of the representative American." Lord Stanley then concluded by expressing the belief that the cordial principles which are fast influencing the nations of the world have changed foes to friends.

What heart is there that will not join in the cordial wish that the treaties made by the embassy with Great Britain, France, Prussia and other European powers may be the commencement of a new era in the diplomatic and national intercourse of China with those and all other lands of the West!

It has been questioned whether the government of China really means to fulfill the pledges made in its behalf by Mr. Burlingame and realize the hopes he has excited. This is certain, that the sense exists of the necessity of new relations with foreign governments, of a larger accordance with their spirit and principles, and of the introduction of many of those arts which make them superior in warfare and in influence over the happiness and condition of mankind. It is certain that the powerful party which supports him will be greatly affected by his personal influence and that of the members of the embassy and others who have of late years become acquainted with foreign lands and the improvements of modern science, among whom must be classed the scholars of Protestant missions, and even the returned Chinese visitors to California, Australia and other countries. But it is no less certain that the bad behavior of foreign smugglers of opium, acts of violence at the ports frequented by foreign shipping, the political intrigues of Romish priests and the failure of the powers which have contracted with China to fulfill their part, in the letter

Digitized by Google

or the spirit, may defeat or procrastinate the benefits which have been hoped for.

But whatsoever the course of other powers in the future toward China, we may trust that the posture of the government of the United States toward her will be unchanged; that the oldest and the newest empire of the world will mutually support, enrich and benefit each other, and that the younger will continue to act for the elder the friendly part of a mediator and interpreter with the other nations of the West.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XV.

ANCIENT CONNECTIONS WITH THIS CONTINENT.

OUR ancestors four centuries ago found numerous races of men, very different from any they had ever before seen, occupying this newly-discovered continent. And our further acquaintance with them shows that these races differ as much from each other as they differ from the people of Europe. In stature, in complexion, in the features of the face, in the shape of the skull, in pursuits, in domestic usages, in religious worship, in the measure of intellect and in energy, they widely vary. The widest contrasts have existed among those on the Pacific coast. The wretched Digger tribes are among the lowest of mankind. They lie on the ground in the sun, their low foreheads, bushy thickets of short hard hair filled with vermin, black skins, large mouths and small vacant eyes indicating a nature little above that of the brutes. And yet down that coast formerly ranged the Toltec and the Aztec, the remains of whose cities still exist, whose civilization compares with that of the nations of Southern Asia; and southward we find the remains of those of the former inhabitants of Central America and of Peru, which are fully as wonderful. One of the most interesting topics of the present volume will be the evidence that these civilized people were of Asiatic origin.

Digitized by Google

Whence originated the tribes of the Atlantic coast? —is a question which we will not here discuss. They have been claimed by learned men writing in behalf of the Jews, the Phœnicians, the Irish and the Welsh. Some men of learning do not doubt that the Scandinavian mariners traced our Atlantic coast from Greenland southward the whole length of our New England States, and deposited the seeds of communities which sprang up in wild forms there.[1] And yet the narratives of those of them who returned to Europe show that they had found races of men already existing there. Whence came those races? The legends of some of them—translated by Schoolcraft and others—point to a long and dreary path, by many successive migrations, from the farthest north-west. And in this we find one cause of so great diversities in their character.

The way in which the first colonies were formed upon the Pacific shores must be borne in mind. They certainly neither originated from one spot, nor were commenced at one period. It seems reasonable to suppose that the earliest individuals found their way hither in the most remote ages of history, that as their number increased they slowly moved toward the south and west, forming naturally as they progressed new habits, new ideas, new sounds in speech, new peculiarities of constitution. Those longest here would impart most powerfully their acquired characteristics to the whole. And yet there would be manifest features impressed by the

[1] The most satisfactory accounts of these are contained in the *Antiquitates Americanæ* of RAFN (Danish Counselor of State) and the communications of himself, Repp and others in the *Mémoires de la Société Royale des Antiquaires du Nord;* Copenhague; 1836-39, pp. 369-385, and 1840-43, pp. 5-15, 80-131, 155-162.

Digitized by Google

elements added from time to time by successive additions from the Old World. Thus we may trace the sources of peculiarities which we find among the races of the New World.

The *first* class of evidence of the Asiatic origin of the former races of this continent we find in the great agencies of nature employed from age to age by the great Governor of the world, as it were appointed to bring them hither.

The ocean was by our fathers regarded as a great salt pond; its waters only moving in the disturbance of its surface by the winds, or as they rose and fell by the attraction of the moon. But later generations have discovered that it is animated by a mighty universal life, which circulates from pole to pole and around the globe. Cook and the earliest adventurers upon the mild Pacific observed the great currents which sweep, some with great rapidity, governed by the zone and by the conformation of the opposite continents, with majestic flow from shore to shore. They have now been laid down upon our charts and described by geographers. Much light has been thrown upon those of the North Pacific by the careful observations made in our naval and mercantile vessels. Great interest has attached to the successive developments of the fact that a vast current almost fills the immense surface of that portion of the Pacific within the temperate zone, resembling the Gulf Stream in the Atlantic ocean. Rising in the tropical zone, south of the Chinese coast, its genial warmth is expended at last upon the shores of California and Mexico, and even upon those of Peru. Its velocity, opposite the Japanese Islands, reaches seventy or eighty

Digitized by Google

miles a day. Its effects upon the climate of the American coast are very great. "The winters are so mild in Puget's sound, in latitude 48° north, that snow rarely falls there, and the inhabitants are never enabled to fill their ice-houses for the summer; and vessels trading to Petropaulowski and the coast of Kamtschatka, when they become unwieldy from accumulation of ice upon their hulls and rigging, run over to a higher latitude on the American coast and thaw out, in the same manner that vessels frozen up on our own coast retreat again into the Gulf Stream until favored by an easterly wind."[1] Just as the current of the Atlantic Gulf Stream transports the tropical logs from the shores of the Caribbean sea and strands them upon the Hebrides and Norway, so that of the *Kuri-siwu*, or "Black Stream," as the Japanese style it, bears the waifs of Asia to the Aleutian Islands and the north-west coast of America.

The winds, too, have a great commission to fulfill. The lesson of modern observation is that they too move in their courses according to the appointment of a supreme and all-wise will. The monsoons of the Indian and Pacific oceans are linked in a continuous chain. What is known in the Western Pacific as the south-west monsoon commences in gentle breezes, blowing steadily, however, day and night in one direction from April till October, off Madagascar, sweeps along the whole length of the continent of Africa and the whole breadth of Asia, whitening the billows of the China sea with the violence of a gale, and is felt with diminishing power to the centre of the Pacific ocean; and so is most important as an aid to the solution of the question we are now con-

[1] *Narrative of the United States Japan Expedition*, vol. ii., pp. 363-370.

Digitized by Google

sidering, as to the origin of the American races. The effects of this vast atmospheric tide, whose semi-annual ebb and flood outreach the opposite extremes of the eastern hemisphere, in awakening and facilitating intercourse and trade among the numerous countries and islands within its limits, impress the attention of one who is conversant with that part of the world. But it has further ends. It is like the gifts of revelation to the Jews, which find their highest significance and their wisest interpreters in the opposite side of the world and in the end of time.

The stupendous hurricanes of the Indian and Pacific oceans have of late years been explained. They were formerly regarded by seamen with the utmost terror. Whence and how they came and went was as incomprehensible to that class of men as any other awful calamity with which he that is permitted to go to and fro in the earth, walking up and down in it, chose to visit them. But now it is known that an arm of infinite wisdom sways their great movements. Those of the northern and southern hemisphere rise respectively near the equator and move outward toward either pole. Those of the southern hemisphere invariably revolve on their centre, in the same direction with the hands of a watch; that is, from north to east, south and west. Those of the northern hemisphere whirl in the opposite direction, or contrary to the course of the hands of a watch. Those which rise in the China sea are guided by the geography of the coast and move in its general direction, and within two or three degrees of it pass the Japanese Islands, vex in their wrath the waters of the North Pacific, and often stretch away even to the vicinity of the

Digitized by Google

Sandwich Islands. It requires little imagination to conceive how potent an agency are these typhoons, or hurricanes, in distributing the populations of the shores which they visit.

Now let us present a *second* class of evidence as to the source whence these races in America sprang. We have abundant proof that vessels from the Asiatic side have been wrecked upon the American coast and upon the island groups of the Pacific ocean within the memory of man.

The voyager through the seas that skirt the empires of China and Japan will be amazed to see the countless vessels of every kind whose heavy, yellow mat sails and high, painted poops spot the blue waves. Some of them are transports, deeply laden with rice, salt fish, provisions of every kind and all manner of wares and dry goods. There is a boundless internal commerce between city and city, or province and province, or with neighboring countries within two thousand miles' distance. Some are the homes of a population of probably several millions in all, that, like aquatic birds, are ever on the wing and subsist wholly by fishing. Families are born, live and die upon them, who only visit the shore to obtain the necessaries of life or to propitiate the gods that rule the sea. Merchants, pilgrims, emigrants and others travel upon these various classes of vessels.

These craft sometimes are driven from or mistake their course. And when the demons of the terrible typhoon drive through their fleets, numbers are hurried far off into seas unknown to them, to be speedily sunk, or to be tossed about they know not whither for weary months, subsisting upon the cargoes of provisions on

Digitized by Google

board of them, the fish they catch and the rains of heaven, or to be cast upon remote islands or countries and see their native land no more.

A dozen cases of Japanese or Chinese junks picked up at sea, or wrecked upon our north-west coast or the Sandwich Islands, have come to my knowledge, by the newspapers or in conversation with seamen, within but a few years. I have seen Japanese in San Francisco thus rescued at different times. Captain C. J. W. Russell, for some time a resident among the Indian tribes north of the Columbia river, informed me that he found there legends of vessels which had been cast upon that coast, having people of a strange nation on board; and he presented me with two copper coins obtained from the Indians, which both contain the inscription, in Chinese characters, "KWAN-YUNG. CURRENT MONEY." "Kwan-yung" is the name of the emperor under whose reign the money was coined, but I have been unable to ascertain whether he was Chinese or Japanese, or when he lived. If Chinese, they are more than two centuries old, since they do not possess the Manchu characters which distinguish the issues of the present dynasty. Part of the crew of a Japanese junk, wrecked upon our shores about 1832, found their way to England and thence to China, and there they assisted the Rev. Mr. Gutzlaff to translate into their native tongue portions of the word of God.[1]

Four thousand years may have elapsed since the first

[1] DIBBLE, *History of the Sandwich Islands*, pp. 12, 13, mentions a crew of Japanese brought there in 1839, and another in 1840, by whale-ships. The *Hawaiian Spectator*, vol. i., describes at length a Japanese junk that came in there with four survivors on board in 1832. The natives when they beheld them exclaimed, "It is plain now that we are from Asia!"

Digitized by Google

craft coasted from point to point along the Asiatic shores. Who shall say when the first wretched band, after weary months of hunger and thirst, wakened the echoes of the human voice among the wildernesses of this virgin hemisphere? From that day to this it is probable no century has passed without involuntary additions from the parent climes.

An analogical argument as to the origin of the American races may be drawn from the spread of the Malay family. The migrations of mankind in every age seem to pursue, if possible, nearly the same threads of the earth's latitude along which they were commenced. They naturally prefer kindred climates and productions of the earth to which men and the domestic animals have been accustomed. And, as has been shown, the winds of heaven and the currents of the ocean are disposed to gratify this tendency. Thus the Malay stock is essentially tropical and nautical. From their primeval starting-point upon the shores of the Indian ocean they have crept eastward and westward, following their burning native sun, until now we behold the remarkable expansion of affiliated tribes and dialects, from Madagascar upon the one extreme as far as to the Sandwich Islands, the last Polynesian group, upon the other. Never penetrating far inland upon the Asiatic and African continents, they have yet displayed a maritime enterprise and endurance that has bridged vast oceanic expanses. The islanders of the Pacific voluntarily hazard voyages to distant groups, carrying them several days out of sight of land in their tiny canoes. At the Sandwich Islands, after a careful comparison of the native language with several dialects of the Chinese,

Digitized by Google

I could observe no analogies of importance beyond the natural infantile sounds common to all the tongues of the globe. And it appears to have not much connection with the Japanese, Corean and other branches of the Chinese family of languages at the north. But on the other hand, there are many of its words found in the vocabularies of the Malay, and of the Marquesan, the Samoan, the New Zealand and other Pacific groups; and the Rev. Mr. Bishop and other intelligent missionaries assured me that, stretching far over all the intervening and disordered forms of human speech, they have been astonished to find almost the accents of their Hawaiian disciples half-way around the world, among the persecuted Christians of Madagascar.[1] This dispersion of the Malays over a breadth of ten thousand miles of the tropic zone renders just the inference that the Chinese race especially, which is so much more numerous and energetic, employing vessels so much more capacious, some of them measuring hundreds of tons burden, and freighting these vessels with provisions so much more substantial and cured with salt or sugar, should have successfully endured even longer and more perilous voyages over the flowing seas of their own temperate zone. The manifest Malayan origin of the Pacific Islanders is a premise which almost of necessity implies the Chinese and Japanese origin of the swarms that we trace from all parts of our continent back to the north-west coast.

Third. Reference may be made to the fact that legends

[1] W. Ellis, the well-known English missionary, comes to the same conclusion (*Polynesian Researches*, vol. iv., p. 461. London, 1854): "The aboriginal languages of Madagascar and the South Sea Islands are strikingly analogous, if not identical."

Digitized by Google

exist among the Asiatic nations of people that have wandered to and populated regions far to the east of them.

The Jesuit missionaries among the Tartars heard them narrate traditions that some of their ancestors had been borne across the waters to a far-off continent upon cakes of ice. Humboldt advances the idea that the Toltecs or Aztecs may be the descendants of a body of Huns, who, according to the Chinese historians, emigrated under their leader Punon, and were lost in the north parts of Siberia.[1] The intelligent Japanese appear to have possessed not only some ideas of the existence of regions far toward the sunrise from their island home, but to have familiarized them in connection with the designation of the land by the name Fusang. But the Chinese afford us more distinct information than any other nation as to the locality and character of this Oriental Atlantis. They seem to have borrowed for it the Japanese appellation Fusang, unless that be imagined to owe its derivation to the language of the land itself. The following article, translated from an extensive Chinese Encyclopædia (the *Yuen-kien-lui-han*, pp. 44 and 45, of the 231st volume or book), will entertain the reader:

"FUSANG.—In the first year of the reign of the emperor Wing-yuen, of the Tsi dynasty [about A.D. 499], some Shaman priests, men of learning, came to King-chau from Fusang. They described the country as situated some twenty thousand Chinese furlongs[2] to the east of Ta-han, and eastward also from China. It derives its name from the wood called *fusang*, which abounds

[1] *Tableaux de la Nature*, i., 53, and *Political Essay on the Kingdom of New Spain*, vol. i., p. 101.

[2] The Chinese *li*, or furlong, is rather longer than two of our furlongs.

Digitized by Google

there. The foliage of the *fusang* tree resembles that of the jatropha. The early sprouts are like those of the bamboo. The fruit is eaten as we do pears. The bark is woven into cloth for garments and for embroidery. The cities are unwalled. They possess some literature, their paper being made of the bark of the *fusang*. The soldiery are not clad in mail, and do not venture to engage in open battle."

The account proceeds to mention some circumstances to illustrate the severity with which crimes were punished by imprisonment for various terms, and even for life; the penalty, according to the grade of the offence, involving either self alone or the immediate offspring, or sometimes even those to the seventh degree of relationship, and the sale into slavery of children born in prison. It notices as a peculiarity of the trial of prisoners, that they "ate and drank in the presence of the judges." It continues as follows:

"The king is styled the *yih-ki*, the first rank of nobility the *tui-lu*, the second the inferior *tui-lu*, the third the *na-tuh-sha*. The king travels in great state, attended by bands of martial music. The royal apparel is varied each two years, and the five colors—green, red, yellow, black and white—are adopted for that period in succession. Many kinds of wheeled vehicles are in use, drawn by horses, oxen and deer. Deer are raised also to furnish milk for the manufacture of fermented spirits. Pears grow there of a red species which keeps sound throughout the year. The cat-tail reed or rush is exceedingly abundant. So also is the peach. Of iron there is none, but copper is found there. The mode of contracting marriage is for the lover to erect a temporary

Digitized by Google

dwelling close beside that of the maiden he desires, and to serve her, even in menial offices, for a whole year. If not pleased with him, she is then at liberty to discard him; if mutually satisfied, the nuptials are consummated. Buddhism did not originally exist in that country. But in the second year of the emperor Ta-ming of the Sung dynasty [about A.D. 459] five *pi-keu*, or mendicant priests, from Ki-pin, went through the country distributing Buddhist writings and setting up images. Its form of religion has in consequence undergone a change."

The question whether the Chinese by Fusang can mean North America has been discussed with much interest by American and European scholars. There was no knowledge here, it is objected, of the peach; and there were certainly no horses. Yet the points of resemblance between their descriptions of it and those of the Aztec empire furnished by the Spanish writers are so numerous and distinct that the general opinion favors the view that they are the same. It was advocated by De Guignes, by several of the French missionaries,[1] by Horn, Scherer, Sir William Jones, Paravey, Neumann and Humboldt. Bradford,[2] Schoolcraft,[3] Gallatin, Mc-

[1] There is an interesting presentation of the subject in *Lettres Edéfiantes et Curieuses* (Paris, 1843); iv., 1–75.

[2] BRADFORD expressly says that the Japanese ships once visited the countries west of them as far as the Indian Archipelago, and had reached the shores of North America to the east, which they knew by the designation Fusang.—*American Antiquities*, p. 233.

[3] H. R. SCHOOLCRAFT, in his numerous and valuable works on Indian antiquities, often takes occasion to speak of the Oriental origin of the language, legends, religions and customs of our aborigines. For example, in the *Algic Researches* (vol. i., pp. 44, 45) he says:

"That the tribes themselves are of Oriental origin is probable from the grammatical structure of their languages and their mode of expressing thought. But it is apparent that their separation took place at a very ancient period."

Digitized by Google

Culloh, Squier and other writers on American antiquities, maintain the same opinion.

It has been asserted that the name Fusang probably means Japan. The reply may be made that the Chinese have no such name for Japan, and say that the country spoken of is six thousand miles eastward of Japan. It has been imagined that the name is derived from a species of wood produced in the latter country; but the Japanese have no such name for any tree, as I am assured by Dr. J. C. Hepburn, the author of the dictionary of that language which has been lately published, and one of the best scholars in that literature.

There are several points of the Chinese accounts from which I have quoted that deserve to be compared with what we know of the Aztecs. Among them are their use of the bark of various trees for cloth and for paper, their possession of a hieroglyphic system of writing, and the number of their written volumes, which was so great that the Spaniards say they heaped up "mountains of them" and burned them. The observation that the criminal on trial "eats and drinks in the presence of the judges" finds a remarkable counterpart in the words of the familiar history of Prescott: "The judges wore an appropriate dress, and attended to business both parts of the day, dining always, for the sake of dispatch, in an apartment of the same building where they held their session—a method of proceeding much commended by the Spanish chroniclers, to whom dispatch was not very familiar in their own tribunals." The abundance of copper and the want of iron is mentioned, while it is said "they did not esteem silver and gold." Here again we notice a strange coincidence. "The use of iron, with

Digitized by Google

which their soil is impregnated, was unknown to them. They found a substitute in an alloy of copper and tin, and with tools made of this bronze could cut the hardest metals" and stones. The extraordinary assertion that they "did not esteem silver and gold," meets its parallel in the enumeration of the revenue of the Aztec emperor, where our American historian says: "In this curious medley of the most homely commodities and the elegant superfluities of luxury, it is singular that no mention should be made of silver, the great staple of the country in later times, the use of which was certainly known to the Aztecs."[1]

The letters of Cortes to his sovereign, the emperor Charles V., contain numerous pictures which seem as if painted from Asiatic originals. Thus, in describing the palace of Mutezuma, he says of the carvings, "The gold and the silver are wrought so naturally as not to be surpassed by any smith in the world; the stone-work is executed with such perfection that it is difficult to conceive what instruments could have been employed, and the feather-work is superior to the finest productions in wax or embroidery." Its separate edifices were beautified by numerous "conservatories of flowers." Its royal meals were "served by three or four hundred youths, who brought on an infinite variety of dishes." Its etiquette was so tedious that "no sultan or other infidel lord, of whom any knowledge now exists, ever had so much ceremonial in their courts." The members of the court wore dresses of cotton which "could not be equaled in the whole world, either in texture or in the variety and

[1] *History of the Conquest of Mexico*, vol. i., pp. 32, 138, 140.

Digitized by Google

beauty of the colors, or in the workmanship."[1] These letters of Cortes strongly remind one of the narratives of Marco Polo, Rubruquis and the early Roman Catholic missionaries to India, China and Japan. And, indeed, it was not to be wondered at that he should imagine he had reached the remoter provinces of those countries.

There was everything to beguile the Spaniard into the belief that he saw before him "the Indians" themselves. When he cast his eyes over the country he beheld the same respect paid to agriculture as a profession, the same dependence of government on the products of the soil chiefly for its revenue, and the payment of taxes in kind; also similar modes of irrigation to increase the yield of the earth, hills terraced and cultivated to their very summits, and large public granaries in which the excess of the luxuriant harvest was deposited for years of drought and famine. In the place of trade he saw the same association of merchants and mechanics into powerful guilds for the protection of their privileges and their prices. In the street the coolies bore the burden that belongs, in our ideas, to the horse or the ass, and there were no wheeled carriages. The soldier strutted by him in armor of quilted cotton holding the bow and arrows. In the workshop he was delighted by the same dazzling exhibition of fine porcelain, of lacquer-work in wood, of cotton cloth, of silk spun from the thread of a worm, of precious stones skillfully cut and polished and of different metals splendidly enchased. About the abodes of wealth he wandered in brilliant gardens, containing collections of plants then not excelled by any in Europe, adorned by sparkling pools

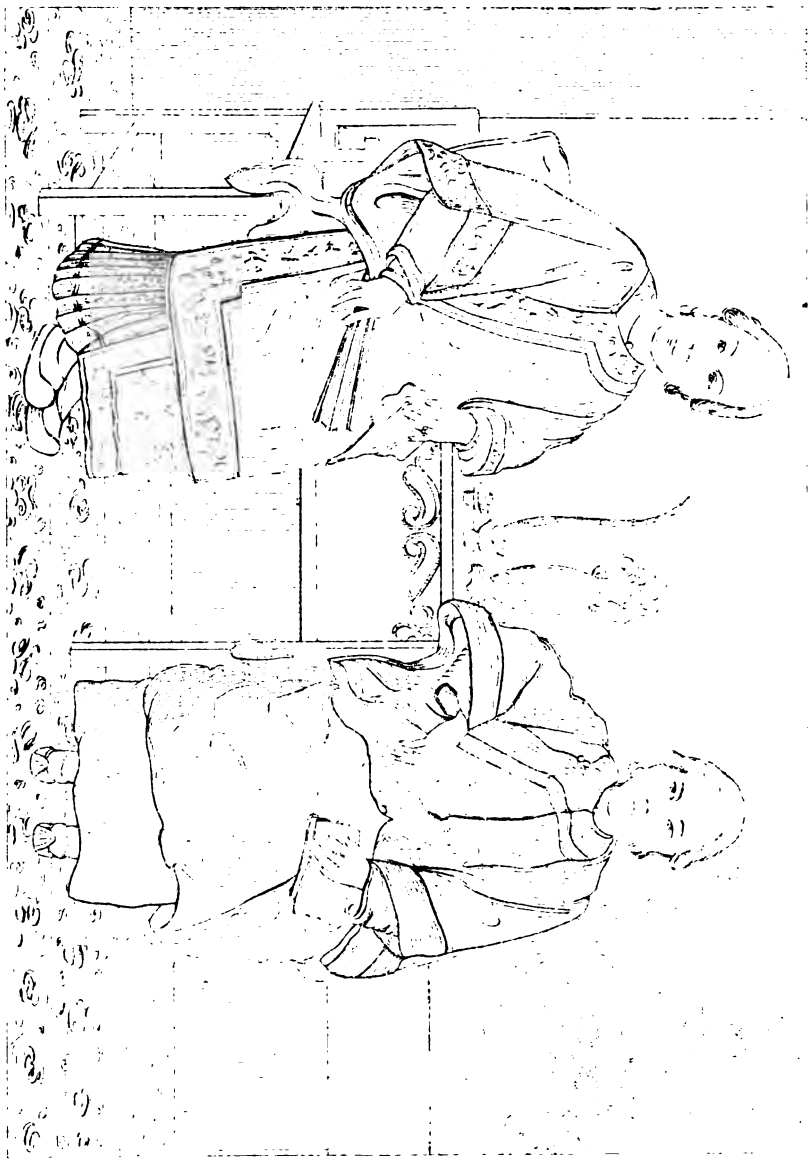
[1] Letter ii., chap. v. (Translation by George Folsom; New York, 1843).

Digitized by Google

and airy pavilions, whose graceful pillars were inscribed with poetic or fanciful quotations. Within those abodes he witnessed the same regulation of marriage, one proper wife, with an unlimited number of inferiors in concubinage; the same jealous separation of males and females at their meals, and the same frivolous employment of high-born females in the arts of embroidery, music, gambling and the toilet. Did he mingle in the social life of the Aztecs, the abundance of sweetmeats at their feasts and the succeeding exhibitions of plays and juggling, the ceremonious gifts, the use of snuff and the peculiar mode in which the smoke of tobacco was inhaled into the lungs, might have cheated him into the belief that he enjoyed the hospitality of some mandarin of Kwang-tung. Should he converse with a company of students, their attention to astrology, their use of a hieroglyphic and ideographic system of characters in writing, the surprising resemblance of the calendar and the principle of the annotation of time, which has been so much remarked by the learned of Europe, nay, even as minute a circumstance as the mode of preserving their books, not in scrolls, but in alternate fan-like folds, would have confirmed his delusion. And how would he have accounted for some things still more peculiar, such as that remarkable usage, common to the Chinese and Aztec emperors, of appointing stated days for the public assemblage of their courts to hear something like a hortatory moral discourse addressed to them, or such an institution as the establishment of public literary examinations of prose and poetical compositions and the bestowment of prizes and rewards to successful candidates?

The Chinese descriptions of Fusang say that Buddhist

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

priests went there in the fifth century of the Christian era and converted the people to their faith. To those who judge according to Western ideas of the facility of the communication of such a fact, if anything like it did occur, back from the one continent to the other, this statement will seem incredible. But it will not seem so to those who know that, rapidly and widely as important news fly by the agency of the newspaper, in the nations of the East they spread almost as swiftly by the mouths of merchants and sailors and monks and government couriers, and by beacons, and almost as by some instinct of the sharp-sighted and quick-eared people. And there are strange links which lead parts the remotest from each other to feel a mutual religious sympathy. Alfred the Great sent the bishop of Sherborne to bear his greetings from Britain to the Syriac Christians in India; Prester John sent a commission from Tibet to the pope of Rome; and the roving tribes of Northern Asia and America communicate to vast distances, and from one side to the other of the straits which divide the Old from the New World, important matters of concern, either social or spiritual.

But whether the information of the success of Buddhism across the waters ever became known at its original seats is a secondary question. The main one is that it really did give its character to the Aztec institutions. This is very manifest to one acquainted with it in Asia who will trace the countless points of resemblance in this respect between the Aztecs and the Buddhist nations of Eastern Asia. They resemble each other in their primary ideas of the divine Being, of good and evil spirits, of the depravity of matter and of the transmigration of the soul; in their general use of monastic forms and dis-

Digitized by Google

cipline; in their penances, ablutions, almsgivings and public festivals; in the employment of water as a symbol of sanctification; in the worship of their household gods; in the offices of their tutelary gods; in the devotion of the priests to the studies of astrology and astronomy; in the admission of virgin females to the vows and rites of the cloister; in some of the titles and functions of various prominent deities; in the bells struck with a wooden mallet; in the incense, liturgies and chants of their worship; in their use of charms and amulets; in their erection of charitable hospitals for the sick and asylums for the disabled classes of society; in the assumption of the right to educate the youth; in some of their forms of burial, or burning the dead and the preservation of the ashes in urns.

Besides the notices of Fusang in the Chinese literature which we have considered, there are imperfect legends found among other Asiatic nations of the ancient discovery and population of distant regions across the "Great Eastern Ocean." The French father Aquila, for instance, mentions the existence among the Tartars of some relating to ancestors of theirs who, they said, wandered far to the north-east and crossed to another country upon cakes of ice.

A *fourth* class of evidence, as to the Asiatic origin of the early races of this continent, I will notice but briefly. It is analogous to that employed under the last head to explain and illustrate the Chinese accounts of Fusang. It consists in the resemblances of language, customs and religion among the people of this continent to those of the nations of Eastern Asia.

The straits named by the empress Catharine of Russia

Digitized by Google

after a German officer in her employ, Vitus Behring, are far more narrow and easily passed than is commonly supposed. From East Cape in Asia to Cape Prince of Wales in America the distance is but thirty-six miles. They are each high and prominent, so that they may be seen from the opposite sides in clear weather. In the summer, large canoes, under sail or paddled by the natives, often cross, either singly or in fleets. In the winter the straits are frozen solid, and the people come and go on the ice as upon the snow of the mainland.[1] It is not strange then that the dialects of the Tchuktchis and other tribes on the Asiatic side should be easily traced in those of the people occupying the higher latitudes of this continent. A large number of Tchuktchi words are the same in the Esquimaux language.[2]

[1] The narratives of Captain Cook and several of the Arctic voyagers illustrate these statements. The following is from a late visitor to that region, in the service of the United States expedition which explored a route for the proposed telegraph to the Russian possessions (FREDERICK WHYMPER. *Travel, etc., in Alaska*, pp. 278, etc.):

"Scientific men are now agreed as to the Asiatic origin of the Esquimaux, even of those who have migrated as far as Greenland. Of the Mongolian origin of the Tchuktchis themselves no one who has seen individuals of that people would for a moment doubt. [A story is here told by the author of a Tchuktchi boy, taken to San Francisco by Colonel Bulkley, the engineer-in-chief of the telegraph expedition, who constantly passed there for a Chinese.] That the Aleuts also are of an Eastern stock is to my mind undoubted. The inter-tribal trade carried on so regularly every year *vid* Behring's Straits proved with how little difficulty a tribe of wandering Tchuktchis might cross from Asia and populate the northern coasts of America. Open skin-canoes, capable of containing twenty or more persons with their effects, and hoisting several masts and sails, are now frequently to be observed among both the sea-coast Tchuktchis and the inhabitants of Northern Alaska."

[2] WHYMPER gives the following comparative vocabularies of a tribe in Alaska and the Esquimaux of Greenland (*Travel*, etc., pp. 253, 254):

	Malemute.	*Greenland Esquimaux.*
I	Wounga	Uanga.
He	Oona	Una.

Digitized by Google

The Athapascas, or Chipewyans, occupy the vast regions between Hudson's Bay and the Rocky Mountain range, south of the Esquimaux. They declare that they came from Siberia, and of the truth of this their dress and manners and religious practices bear witness. At far-distant points upon the continent connections may be observed with them. The language of the Apaches in Mexico has been found to very closely resemble that of the Athapascas.[1]

Commencing with the portion of the continent occupied by the Toltecs and the Aztecs, of which sufficient has been said, we find the Pacific shore occupied down to Peru in South America with a succession of nations whose civilization is of the same Asiatic kind, not inferior in the grandeur of its remains, and as distinctly marked by the symbolism of the religions of the lands of the East. The prevailing style of the ruins of the temples of Yucatan is Buddhist. The paintings in which the sacred red is the prevailing color, the rich and orna-

	Malemute.	*Greenland Esquimaux.*
We	Wurgut	Uagut.
You	Itlepit	Iblet Illipse.
Man	Inuet	Angut Innuit.
Woman	Achanuk	Arnak.
Day	Oblook	Utlok.
Sun	Sickunyuk	Sekkinek.
Water	Imuk	Imék (salt water) Imak.
Snow	Kanik	Kannik.
Ice	Seko	Sikkó.
Head	Neakuk	Niakok.
Face	Keenyuk	Kenak.
Mouth	Kanuk	Kánnek.
Teeth	Keeutik	Kigutit.
Wood	Kushuk	Késsuk.
Canoe	Omeuk-puk	Oomiak.

[1] Prof. W. W. TURNER, of Washington city, quoted in Pritchard, ii., 519.

Digitized by Google

mented cornices, the heavy beams of carved wood, the elaborate sculpture in stone, the recurrence of symbols common in Chinese and Japanese temples, especially the figures of serpents, or dragons, encircling the ornaments and prominent parts of the edifices, give an Oriental aspect to them.[1] A good enamel covered some of the excellent specimens of earthenware. And the taste exhibited in some of the palaces was so cultivated and correct that some of the ornaments "tried by the severest rules of art recognized among us would embellish the architecture of any known era."[2]

The great Japan or North Pacific current, after warming the coasts of North America, is lost upon the northwestern shores of South America; just as its Atlantic counterpart, after imparting its mild temperature to Western Europe, disappears on the coast of Africa. And it is finally upon the coast of Peru that this giant river of the ocean would land things borne upon its surface.

The legends of Peru indicate the occasional mysterious appearance among them of men and women of races superior to that which had existed there. Such were Manco Capac and Mama Oello Huaco, a man and woman who said they were "children of the sun," which is an exact translation of the name of Japan, and also of a title commonly given to the emperor of China; and who taught them the arts of civilization much higher than any

[1] STEPHENS (*Travels in Central America*, etc., i., 314) says of the House of the Dwarf at Uxmal: "The emblems of life and death appear on the wall in close juxtaposition, confirming the belief in the existence of that worship practiced by the Egyptians and all other Eastern nations, and before referred to as prevalent among the people of Uxmal."

[2] STEPHENS. *Travels*, etc., i., 389.

Digitized by Google

before known in Peru. Whence came these strange visitants? There seems no explanation possible save by the presumption either that they found their way from the land of the Aztecs, or that they were passengers upon one of those ancient vessels, built with the greatest solidity, and laden with rice, wheat, barley, dried and salt provisions and fruits, which traffic through the Eastern Pacific and are swept abroad over the surface of that great ocean by the typhoons, of which there are several in a single autumn. Save for the difficulty of collecting water from the rains after the supply on board has been exhausted, there is no reason why a few persons might not survive upon such a ponderous craft as long as some of our shipwrecked seamen have done upon rocky islets in the heart of the same ocean. The history of many a European or American Alexander Selkirk, who midst such a scene has cried,

> "I am out of humanity's reach,
> I must finish my journey alone,"

puts in our hand a thread which may guide us out of the darkness and mystery of the origin of the empire of the Incas into the light of a rational interpretation of it. The hindrance to this is more in the imaginations of our scholars in their closets than in the facts of providence annually transpiring in that hemisphere.

The customs and institutions of the Peruvians, when first visited by the Spaniards, wonderfully resembled what the same discoverers found in Mexico. They have been painted with such life, minuteness and beauty by numerous writers in our own tongue that we can dispense with a description of them at this time. What has been previously said of those of the Aztecs may almost be

Digitized by Google

applied to those of the Incas. The Oriental character of the South American race, if there be difference, is even more marked than that of the people of the North. The construction of the royal roads which led to Cuzco and Quito is equaled by no masonry outside of the Chinese empire.[1] The skill in the composition and working

[1] This whole most interesting subject is presented with the greatest possible brevity; but in relation to the military roads of the Peruvians I may be allowed to quote the following paragraphs from the most eminent philosopher of our day, who himself inspected these wonderful remains, which are so Asiatic in their character, to show how broad and fertile is the field of research:

"The impressions produced on the mind by the natural characters of these wildernesses of the Cordilleras are heightened, in a remarkable and unexpected manner, from its being in those very regions that we still see admirable remains of the gigantic work—the artificial road of the Incas—which formed a line of communication through all the provinces of the empire, extending over a length of more than a thousand English geographical miles. We find placed, at nearly equal distances apart, stations consisting of dwelling-houses built of well-cut stone; they are a kind of caravanserai, and are called tambos and sometimes Inca-pilca (from *pirca*, the wall?). Some of them are surrounded by a kind of fortification; others were constructed for baths, with arrangements for conducting hot water; the larger were designed for the use of the family of the monarch himself. . . . In the pass between Alausi and Loxa, called the Paramo del Assuay, as we were leading our heavily-laden mules with great difficulty through the marshy ground on the elevated Plain del Pullal, our eyes meanwhile were continually dwelling on the grand remains of the Inca's road, which with a breadth of twenty-one English feet ran by our side for above a German mile. It had a deep understructure, and was paved with well-cut blocks of blackish trap-porphyry. Nothing that I had seen of the remains of Roman roads in Italy, in the south of France and in Spain, was more imposing than these works of the ancient Peruvians, which are, moreover, situated, according to my barometric measurements, at an elevation of 12,440 (13,258 English) feet above the sea, or more than a thousand feet higher than the peak of Teneriffe. . . . There are two great artificial Peruvian paved roads, or system of roads, covered with flat stones or sometimes even with cemented gravel (macadamized); one passes through the wide and arid plain between the Pacific ocean and the chain of the Andes, and the other over the ridges of the Cordilleras. Milestones, or stones marking the distances, are often found placed at equal intervals. The road was conducted across rivers and deep ravines by three kinds of bridges —stone, wood and rope bridges (Puentes de Hamaca, or de Maroma), and there were also aqueducts or arrangements for bringing water to the tambos (hostelries

Digitized by Google

of metals, in the cutting of gems and in the weaving of fine tissues, carry us back to Eastern Asia. The extended canals for the irrigation of large districts of country, often carried along mountain ranges or piercing them by stone-paved aqueducts; the postal arrangements for the use of the court; the military organization of able-bodied men by decimal numbers; the solemn ceremonial of the Inca going forth in the spring and inaugurating the general agricultural labors of the year by ploughing with a golden plough;—where but to the same far-off source shall we look for the origin of such works or usages? And in Peru we find Buddhism in all its characteristics—the twofold principle in nature, the transmigration of souls, the perpetual celibacy of

or caravanserais) and to the fortresses. Both systems of roads were directed to the central point, Cuzco, the seat of the government of the great empire, in 13° 31′ south latitude, and which is placed, according to Pentland's map of Bolivia, 10,676 Paris, or 11,378 English, feet above the level of the sea. As the Peruvians employed no wheel carriages, and the roads were consequently only designed for the march of troops, for men carrying burdens and for lightly-laden lamas, we find them occasionally interrupted, on account of the steepness of the mountains, by long flights of steps, provided with resting-places at suitable intervals.

"Sormiento, who saw the roads of the Incas whilst they were still in a perfect state of preservation, asks, in a Relacion which long lay unread, buried in the library of the Escurial, 'How a nation unacquainted with the use of iron could have completed such grand works in so high and rocky a region (caminos tan grandes y tan sovervios), extending from Cuzco to Quito on the one hand, and to the coast of Chili on the other? The Emperor Charles,' he adds, 'with all his power, could not accomplish even a part of what the well-ordered government of the Incas effected through the obedient people over whom they ruled.' Hernando Pizarro exclaims, 'In the whole of Christendom there are nowhere such fine roads as those which we here admire!' The two important capitals and seats of government of the Incas—Cuzco and Quito—are one thousand English geographical miles apart in a straight line (S. S. E., N. N. W.), without reckoning the many windings of the way; and including the windings, the distance is estimated by Garcilasso de la Vega and other Conquistadores at 'five hundred leagues.'"—A. Von Humboldt, *Aspects of Nature*, pp. 415–418.

Digitized by Google

both monks and nuns, the fasts, the penances, the cloisters and convents, the sacrifices, the processions, the schools for youth and novices, the burial with the face toward the west. The imprint is so distinct that Rivero and Von Tschudi plainly infer that "Quetzalcoatl, Bochica, Manco Capac, and other reformers of Central America (including Mexico and Peru), were Buddhist priests, who, by means of their superior learning and civilization, sought to rule the minds of the natives, and to elevate themselves to political supremacy."[1]

It is pleasant to review the several branches of evidence, which I have stated in its most condensed form, that to Eastern Asia we are to look for the great fountain whence flowed the ancient races whose architectural remains on this continent are so wonderful, whose history is so full of romantic interest, and whose mission it was to occupy the New World until the appointed time when from Europe the Protestant Christian nations should be brought to prepare a mould which should be the final ideal of just and beneficent government, into which should be cast first the forms of European nations and finally those of their own offspring in Asia.

And poor Mexico! Happy will be the day when the intelligent industry of the Chinese shall restore the Oriental fertility and beauty and wealth of the land of the Aztecs. A generation or two more, and they will begin to find their way to its rich mines and tropical valleys. It will be strange indeed if it be to become servants to those who have fallen so much from the manly vigor of the men who conquered the country three hundred years ago!

[1] *Peruvian Antiquities* (translated by F. L. Hawks), p. 17.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVI.

CHINESE IMMIGRATION.

DURING fifty-five centuries, at least, it pleased the Creator of the world to confine its population, its history, its good and its evil, chiefly to one of its hemispheres. Three centuries ago the other hemisphere, which had been visited by but a few of the inhabitants of the one opposite, and had been kept in the shadow until the hour for the sun of an unending day to rise upon it, was suddenly revealed. Its mountain tops began then to receive the light which had so long shone upon the Old World. Now that light has descended to every plain and valley. And the atmosphere is purer here, and the light shines brighter here than it did through any of the clouded skies of that other side.

God had a meaning in this great plan of human history. All the nations of Europe hastened to secure each a possession in this New World. But they have been all dispossessed save one. The Protestant Anglo-Saxon race now occupies all that is valuable of North America, and moulds the destinies of the rest of the continent and of South America.

Three centuries and a half ago the African was brought here. He was taught agriculture, the uses of clothing, of various valuable arts and of letters, and the

Digitized by Google

knowledge of one great God, who stretched out the heavens, who "formed the earth and made it, and he created it not in vain; he formed it to be inhabited." The task of his tuition has been accomplished. A door has been opened for his return.

The Asiatic comes—a very different pupil. Rich, acute, polished, dextrous in many arts, what he asks is chiefly the knowledge of the way of life, eternal life. Shall we impart to him of the fruits of the vineyard which we are enjoying, or shall we entreat him shamefully and send him away empty?

The commencement of the emigration of the Chinese to this country is so important as an era in the history of both hemispheres that we may well devote a chapter to considering its nature and circumstances.

That any of that nation should leave their own country and come to one so remote from it strikes many persons with surprise. But this is only because their information or reflections have been bounded so much by the circle of the interests of their own and kindred races. The Chinese are an enterprising people. At a remote period they were somewhat acquainted with Western lands. Some notice has been taken in another part of this volume of the very ancient intercourse between China and the nations of Central and Western Asia, of that later with Rome in the days of her pride, and of that with India and Arabia in the earlier ages of the Christian era. Mutual commercial connections then existed; caravans passed and repassed; imperial embassies went and came; religious pilgrimages were made far into the West, and some seem to have gone eastward in return, men groping over the face of the world for

Digitized by Google

some favored spot where they hoped that the veil which covers the throne of mercy might be more transparent, and where they imagined the sounds of the invisible world might be more intelligible. And some of the great invasions of barbarians, those of the Huns, the Mongols, the Turks and other tribes, which destroyed the pagan empire of Rome or scourged the nations which relapsed into its idolatries, were simply great emigrations of Chinese nomads, who, held at bay by the power which had built the Great Wall, opened for themselves a path of advance by conquest into the heart of Europe, and to the shores of the North sea. There is then no reason in the history of ages past for supposing that motives may not be presented which will attract the merchant, the herdsman, the religious pilgrim or the ambassador from China or the adjacent countries to make a temporary, or in the end permanent, home in a country which our own commerce has made so accessible to them.

And in the present age great numbers of the Chinese have gone abroad to traffic, labor, work in mines, or as devotees or to see the world. There are millions of Chinese emigrants in all the countries north and west of the empire, even as far west as India, in the streets of whose capital Chinese workmen manufacture excellent shoes, which are distributed over the country for the use of European residents, and among whose hills Chinese agriculturists are raising tea which is adding a new item to the revenues of the British crown.

A favorite field for Chinese emigration during many centuries past has been the islands of the Indian Archipelago. To many of these their labor and their com-

Digitized by Google

merce has been a boon beyond price. They have built and manned vessels of the wood cut from the native forests, created valuable departments of trade, turned wild jungles into cultivated gardens, and opened mines of gold, silver, tin, diamonds, and other metals and precious stones. They have proved beyond all other races the most intelligent and energetic associates of the European in the development of the boundless mineral and commercial wealth which the Creator has so prodigally lavished on those islands. In China and in the Indian Archipelago I have observed with great interest the benefits of this commerce.

The narratives of disinterested travelers among those islands are interspersed with pictures of the pleasing results of Chinese labor there. The following specimen is from the pen of an intelligent English gentleman. The scene is among the mountains of Borneo.

"After crossing the swamps we ascended a hill, and on arriving at the top, a sudden turn of the path brought to view one of the finest prospects I had ever beheld. Immediately below us stretched an extensive valley teeming with cultivation and covered with villages and cottages; the Sinkawan river, here about fifteen yards wide, winding through it. The south-east side of the valley was bounded by a range of mountains about fifteen hundred feet in elevation; but to the north-west the ground stretched in gentle undulations as far as the eye could reach.

"Our path led through a series of gardens, which, in addition to many kinds of culinary vegetables, produced sugar-cane, maize, plantains and a variety of fruits. After a delightful walk through the valley for about

Digitized by Google

three miles, crossing the river several times by means of wooden bridges, we arrived at the large village where we were to breakfast. The street was crowded with people, who left a small space in the centre for us to pass on to the court-house, where I found the kung-sze had prepared an excellent repast, having been informed of my intended visit by a messenger, who had been sent to Montradok from the coast the previous night.

"After leaving this place, we continued our route in a north-east direction. A few miles beyond the village we crossed several trenches about three feet wide and from three to fifteen feet deep, which I discovered to be exhausted gold mines. The soil in which the trenches were dug was of a clayey nature and rather poor, but not so much so as to render its cultivation unprofitable, for the rice-fields in the neighborhood appeared to be in a very flourishing condition. We continued to cross these trenches for about six miles, the distance between them being from twenty yards to half a mile, and then struck to the south-east over several ranges of small hills, the valleys between them being generally cultivated.

"Many of the farmers' cottages were built of unburnt brick and covered with thatch, and being invariably surrounded and shaded by fruit trees, they bore a stronger resemblance to those which adorn an English landscape than any habitations I had seen since my departure from my own home. Houses for the entertainment of travelers were erected at intervals on the roadside, and at noon we entered one of them to rest ourselves and to partake of some refreshment."[1]

The position of the Chinese in Borneo is thus de-

[1] GEO. WINDSOR EARL, *The Eastern Seas*, pp. 280–282.

Digitized by Google

scribed by a sprightly German lady who visited the island in the course of a journey round the world:

"The Chinese play in Borneo very much the part of the Jews in Poland and Hungary. All trades and mechanical arts are in their hands; they farm or work the mines, and also cultivate the land with incomparably more care than either Dyaks or Malays. Their food, as might be expected, is much better. They keep, as I have said, both pigs and poultry, and they raise vegetables and fruit.

"In general, the Chinese may be regarded as the *citizens* of the country, the Malays as the peasants and the dependant Dyaks as the slaves."

The Americans who judge of the habits of the Chinese from what they witness in the crowded and filthy shops of San Francisco may obtain a more just conception of their disposition when allowed scope to exercise it, from the following sketch by the same writer of a Chinese residence in Java:

"In the evening we paid a visit to the Chinese campan, which, with its pretty houses and remarkable cleanliness, forms a favorable contrast to that of the Malays. The houses are built of brick, but are as neat and white as if the whole campan had been that moment finished. They are not large, but are enough so to lodge even a numerous family with convenience. Neither windows nor doors are wanting—the former provided with handsome balconies, and all the wood and frame-work painted in dark oil colors. The front of the house is encircled by a verandah, from which you enter a reception-room, which takes up the whole length of the house, and where you find the ground covered with matting and the walls with

Digitized by Google

looking-glasses and pictures, and a sufficient number of tables, chairs and presses. In the background are doors leading into the ordinary sitting-room, and almost in every house there is a small altar in the state apartment.

"As we entered several of the houses we found the inhabitants seated at supper. The wives of the Chinese, like those of the Malays, are excluded from their company at meals, and dine and sup in the kitchen or in their own little chambers. The table was covered with a white cloth; there were plates, glasses and bottles upon it, as well as good food. One could have joined them in the meal with pleasure; while when the Malays eat they are disgusting to look at, crouching on the ground wherever they may happen to be, and cramming handfuls of rice into their wide-open jaws.

"The Chinese in the towns are merchants or artizans; they are unwearied in their industry, but not unwilling to allow themselves some domestic conveniences and comforts."[1]

Other testimonials to the industry, thrift and usefulness of the Chinese from recent visitors to the islands of this great archipelago might here be presented if necessary, but these are sufficient to show their character.[2]

It is true that the laws of China have forbidden emigration to foreign countries, just as its government has endeavored to exclude the commerce of those countries from its seaports, or to keep it confined in fetters at one of them. The present imperial dynasty has been averse to permitting other nations to enjoy free intercourse with

[1] IDA PFEIFFER, *Second Journey Round the World*, pp. 109, 279, 280.

[2] The recent volume of Prof. BICKMORE contains some useful facts and statistics relating to the Chinese in the islands under the dominion of the Dutch.

Digitized by Google

its subjects, perhaps for the same reasons which it has had for not allowing its subjects liberty to visit lands where they might imbibe sentiments that would make them troublesome at home. This is a policy quite natural in a small tribe of bold semi-barbarians suddenly lifted to the control of an empire so great, the intelligence and enterprise of whose population has made their own position constantly precarious. The Manchus were too shrewd not to be made wary also by their experience of the superior abilities of the people of the West, and their acquaintance with the arts of a higher civilization and more effective warfare; especially by what they early obtained from their acquaintance with the Roman Catholic missionaries, who cast cannon for them and conveyed to them many presents of a kind suited to show the superiority of Europe in those respects. The intrigues of those same men showed them also how dangerous would be the encouragement of an increase in their numbers; they were even compelled to expel the Europeans, useful as they were to them. The convenient concentration of the foreign commerce in the hands of the wealthy company at the port of Canton, called the Hong merchants, added large sums to the imperial treasury. Thus it has seemed in several important respects to the interest of the government to put a barrier round the avenues of entrance and egress, and almost to cut off the communication of the nation with others. And this jealous and despotic policy, sad to say, has been justified to the nation itself by the selfish and inhuman behavior of Europeans who visited its ports; by the piracies, the wars, the forcible introduction of the opium poison, and other gigantic crimes against humanity and

Digitized by Google

offences against the sense of right that belongs to the heathen as well as the Christian breast. Outside of the range of these causes, we are not justified in the assertion that a spirit of national exclusiveness exists. Certainly, with the same provocations *we* would have hurled a race of intruders from our shores with more of resentment than the Chinese have manifested toward us.

The commencement of the immigration of the Chinese to California was one of the events which made the year 1848 so memorable in modern history. In the same year in which so many of the thrones of Europe were abased and liberal constitutions given to the people, the thrill of a new life was communicated to the nations around the Pacific ocean by the discovery of gold in California. No magnet less powerful than reputed mountains of this precious metal would have so thoroughly excited them. The stream from China began to set in when the tidings were borne across the Pacific by our merchant vessels. At once the Americans, English, French and other foreigners hastened to prepare in the Chinese ports cargoes of such merchandise as would be suited to the wants of the new country so suddenly filled with people. Clothing, articles of food, even houses constructed in parts which could be easily put together, were hurriedly collected and sent over. The Chinese were equal to the occasion. The most remarkable monument of their capacity is a large and handsome pair of stone buildings, under one roof, three stories in height, which have been generally occupied by banks or express-offices, upon Montgomery, the principal business street of San Francisco. This pair of buildings is composed of granite, in our style of architecture, of which every stone was

Digitized by Google

cut, fitted and laid in its place without mortar in the province of Canton; the whole was then taken down, shipped with the men who were to erect it on this side of the ocean and erected in 1852, to the entire satisfaction of the gentleman who contracted for it. The cost of these buildings was a hundred and seventeen thousand dollars; they were at once rented for the sum of thirty-six thousand dollars a year.

Chinese of all classes and occupations were infected with the same "fever" which spread over our own Atlantic States. And those who remember the strange compound of the refined and the base, the good and the bad, the men of all professions and employments, who were cast together into the mines of California, will understand how the same variety existed among those who were drawn by the same motives and in the same haste from the opposite shore of the Pacific ocean.

The sudden commixture of races like ours and the Chinese, which had never before been freely brought face to face on equal terms, at first excited among our people a warm interest in them. The Chinese were kindly treated, publicly welcomed, and the imaginations of men looked forward to the commercial advantages which this practical contact of the West and the East seemed to promise to our nation.

But when it was found that the industrious Chinese miners to some extent interfered with the whites, that they willingly continued to work while others were idle, that they could be hired for less wages than our miners chose to accept, that they did not learn our language readily or mingle freely with our people, or join in our amusements, which often were barbarous enough, then

Digitized by Google

the public sentiment began to turn against them. Their very common-sense arrangements for lodging and other conveniences, in their "companies," became a ground of alarm, and the superintendents and clerks whom they elected to attend to the club or company-houses which they built were imagined to be rich capitalists who had imported the members of the company and were using them as their slaves.

The Chinese who have thus far emigrated to California are almost exclusively from the province of Canton in the South, a region whose people have been more ready to venture to a country inhabited by a European race since it has been there that European trade has centered for the past three centuries. Canton is a rich and fertile province. It is usually estimated to cover about eighty thousand square miles, and to contain a population of a little over twenty-seven millions of people—that is, three hundred and thirty-seven to the square mile. It may be said to be the Italy of the empire, being the most southern province and the mildest in its climate. Though but four-fifths the size of Italy, it has more people. It contains fifteen departments, which are subdivided into ninety-one districts. The most populous department is that of Kwang-chau, in which is the city of Canton, the capital of the province and the great seat of foreign trade. This department embraces fifteen districts. It is about one hundred and twenty miles long and about as broad, if a long, irregular projection into the sea be considered. It lies around a fine bay, studded with high islands, and the mouths of three large rivers come together near the city. The alluvial districts in the region of the city of Canton are the

Digitized by Google

The Palace of Mercadente, San Francisco.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

most populous. Towns embowered in bamboo, a species of banyan and other trees meet the eye on every hand. The level portion of the soil is cultivated as only the Chinese know how to do in order to obtain the utmost possible returns from Nature. The view appears like a great garden bounded by ranges of hills. The narrow streets of the towns are densely crowded with men following every trade and means of procuring a subsistence which the necessities of human nature can suggest. The waters swarm with vessels and boats devoted to a far greater variety of uses than vessels upon the water are applied to among the nations of the West. Hundreds of thousands of the people of the province live wholly upon the rivers and sea. In the front of Canton the scene upon the water presents as great a variety of employments and structures as that upon the land. It is from these towns and hamlets that the Chinese in California have come, and the women here are chiefly from this population upon the water, which is considered to be of an inferior race and more vicious than that on shore. These women are purchased from their parents or owners and brought to this country mainly that they may be devoted to licentious and wretched lives.

The word "coolie" is wholly inappropriate to the Chinese immigrating to this country, as much so as it would be to apply it to the mixed population of our own race which may be found laboring in the mining regions.

The origin of the word is to be found in India.[1] And

[1] It is properly from the Hindustani. *Quli*, or *kuli*, signifies simply a porter or bearer of burdens. There are several subdivisions of the *quli* caste, according to the nature of the burdens they bear.

Digitized by Google

the mistaken ideas which have arisen on this subject have come from confounding the Chinese people and customs with those of India, where the entire social system is widely different. The English writers familiar with Indian usages, and viewing all the nations of the East through the medium of the press in their great colonial presidencies of Bengal, Bombay and Madras, have originated in Great Britain and America gross mistakes in regard to the other countries of whose trade the East India Company held also a long monopoly. The British traders in Canton attached Indian appellations to many articles of solely Chinese próduce or use. Of all the names of weights, measures, coins and officers, scarcely one is properly a Chinese word. Indeed, the difficulty of pronouncing intelligibly the native sounds has led to the gradual formation at Canton of a jargon the words and grammar of which are the most novel and ludicrous. The Hindustani word "coolie" is one of those thus inflicted upon the Chinese, who have no caste among them, and no class whom it exactly represents.

It must not be supposed that because the Chinese received their Buddhist religion from India therefore they adopted the system of caste. Much as it is interwoven with the customs of India, the Chinese mind, which is so practical and reasonable, has revolted against it. And this is indeed one of the most convincing illustrations of the superiority of the Chinese race to that which inhabits India. The system of "caste" prevalent in the latter country is familiar to all. It is known that there exist there four distinct and fixed divisions of society. We designate them by the word which the first

Digitized by Google

Portuguese and Spanish navigators applied to them from their own language—*casta*, "a race or lineage." The native Sanscrit name for them is *varras*, "colors." Of these castes the Hindùs say that the highest, the *Brahmins*, came originally from the head of the supreme creator, Brahm. They form the chief of all the castes, and are the authoritative expounders of the sacred books. The *Vishya*, or *Bias*, sprang from his body, constituting the chief supporters of the body politic, the agriculturists and capitalists. From his arms issued the defenders of the state, the *Kshatriya*, or military caste. The *Sudras*, or laborers, sprang from his feet. They are the most degraded of all, performing only servile duties. They are employed in tilling the soil and in menial occupations. The Vedas, or sacred books, are closed against their perusal. Thus caste is regarded as a divine and sacred ordinance, and the Hindùs consider the nature of the people of the different employments to be entirely dissimilar, so that it would be as impossible for a man belonging to one of the lower castes to be transformed into a higher caste, or perform the offices of it, as it would be to change a dog into a horse or a tiger into an elephant. Under these four great divisions there is a multitude of inferior distinctions of caste, each like a band of iron round its members, so that a man can scarce perform a solitary act—can neither eat, drink, be born, nor die—but he is made to feel its power. It is the most complicated, burdensome and despotic superstition with which the human race has been cursed. A man who breaks his caste becomes an outcast, is abandoned by his relations and friends and so wanders about till death. The fear of losing it, or

Digitized by Google

being exposed for acts which would hazard this, often causes the most shocking murders, and infanticide and other crimes.

It should be kept very clearly before the minds of our people, by all who are interested in the Chinese at home or in our country, that with this diabolical system that nation has no sympathy whatsoever. In the social system of China there is no such thing as caste. The less imaginative, calculating Chinese adopts Buddhism because it is all around him, the religion of every land with which his is contiguous, just as the furniture is tinged green in the room whose windows are curtained with green; but many of its characteristics are repulsive to his spirit. Buddhism is positive, systematized and minatory; his cherished patriarchal traditions are neither. He rejects the odious perceptive portions of the Hindù creed. He offers no human sacrifices; he burns no widows; he sanctifies no abominable licentiousness, as a part of temple worship; he perplexes himself with no frequent or minute ritual; he eats, drinks and is merry; nor is he at all sensible of such sin before Heaven as to require the painful mortifications and grievous burdens so eagerly borne by the Hindù. The whole apparatus of caste the Chinese flings away as something uncomfortable and unnecessary. And so the social and political system which is built upon this pantheistic base. There are no fixed divisions in the body politic; no employments necessarily hereditary; no essential differences of nature; no permanence of rank; few offices beyond the reach of the humblest individuals gifted with talent and energy. And, strange as the declaration may appear to many who have formed

Digitized by Google

their ideas from the writings of men wholly unacquainted with the real character of the Chinese and their institutions, or of some who have only repeated the perverse or unfounded assertions of calumniators, it is yet true that few nations maintain opinions or practices on many points in politics which are more democratic than theirs.

There is not a solitary "coolie" in California in the Hindù sense of the word. The laboring classes of China in the employment of foreigners have been sometimes styled "coolies." If justly, then a porter or laborer of any nation similarly employed is a "coolie;" for there is no more essential degradation in their case than in that of others. If it be said that European or American laborers often acquire wealth and assume a more elevated station in society; so, it may be replied, does the Chinese "coolie" about the factories at Canton or Shanghai. The bearer of the sedan-chair or the porter of the tea or silk warehouse belongs to a class subject to no cincture of contempt—one from which some of the wealthiest and most influential merchants have sprung, and embracing occupations sometimes accepted in turn by their sons for the sake of learning the language and customs of foreigners who trade there. The "coolie" becomes the comprador, or butler, who is entrusted with the care of the money and other property of the foreign merchant, and in time accumulates a fortune which enables him to purchase some high and honorable position under the government. Then, as it would be justly held to be degrading to style a laborer of our own race in any country, whatsoever his particular occupation, a "coolie," so it is not right to attach to the

Digitized by Google

Chinese the odium of a social debasement which is peculiar to another country, to other institutions, and to another and most dissimilar race of people. The word is one which ought to be wholly dropped when speaking of the Chinese. It represents a class, a caste and a man, in its proper sense and original use, for which there is no equivalent in their own empire or among the Chinese in California, Peru, the West Indies or any other land.

The means to pay the expenses of the voyage are obtained by Chinese emigrants to California in the same way in which they are by our own people in similar circumstances. One sells out his little shop. Another leaves the farm on which he was born, and where his father lived before him, in the hope of bringing back money enough to pay off some troublesome debts, or to enable him to add a few acres to it, or to give to his son a good education. A third is aided, if he has been unfortunate in business or afflicted in his family, by contributions from a few of his relatives. A fourth borrows money at a high rate of interest, which is to be paid on his return. After the most careful inquiry on the subject from all classes of Chinese, I have never been able to hear that any were brought over by capitalists and worked as slaves are, against their will and for the advantage of the employer. This fiction, so often repeated to their disparagement in print and otherwise in this country, arose from the clubs or companies which the Chinese are accustomed to organize in any region where a number of them may be temporary strangers together.

Very different from the entirely voluntary emigration of the Chinese from the neighborhood of Canton,

Digitized by Google

paying their own expenses, is that to which the distinctive epithet of "coolies" has often been applied, which has been directed principally to the West India Islands and Peru.

After the abolition of slavery in British Guiana in 1838, the planters in that country anxiously turned their eyes abroad in search of free labor. In 1839 several hundred Hindùs, most of them of the coolie caste, some of them Mohammedans, were carried there from the presidencies of Calcutta and Madras. The experiment, though at first not satisfactory, proved sufficiently encouraging to lead the colonial government to send for more. It also brought their wives, when willing, without cost to them. The contracts were generally for a term of five years, the coolies to be returned at the expense of the colony. They were paid four dollars a month, and food and clothing were found them. But the length and expense of the voyage and return, the sickness of the coolies on the plantations, the shortness of the term of service, and the uneasiness of the British people lest this might lead to a renewal of what would be virtual slavery, have interfered greatly with this emigration. It has been, however, very beneficial to the colony, whose most important products were multiplied fourfold in twenty years. English missionaries have interested themselves in the instruction of these coolies, but their temporary residence and the temptations around them have made it an unpromising field for religious efforts.

About 1850 the Spaniards began to export cargoes of coolies from Amoy to the island of Cuba. The region in the first place was flooded with placards inviting men

Digitized by Google

to engage in sugar-planting and as shepherds and laborers there for terms of five to eight years. They were offered four dollars a month, which was twice the amount they could earn at home, with besides two suits of clothes, medical attendance, sufficient fixed allowances of rice or flour, beef, pork or fish, sugar and tea, land to cultivate vegetables, Sunday as a day of rest, free passage for wife and children, with pay to these also if able to work, and permission to be released from their contract in one year, if desired. Many Chinese at ports along the coast were entrapped and kept in confinement in barracoons until they could be carried against their will on shipboard. Lewd women, intoxicating drinks, debts at gambling-tables, were part of the machinery. Once on the ships, they were shamefully abused, confined like criminals, and not sufficiently fed. In a cargo of five hundred and six, two hundred and twenty-eight died; in one of two hundred and ninety-six, a hundred and sixty-three pined to death with hunger, grief and sickness.

When landed in Cuba the contract was sold commonly for about four hundred dollars to planters or others needing labor; and this was the commencement of the brutal infliction of all the wrongs of practical slavery. It was to the interest of the employer to get all the work possible out of the amount of bone and muscle put in his power for a limited time. Their death was a discharge from all debts due to them. If they survived the term, he forced them into new contracts. Friendless, helpless, their condition, as some of their friends in China said, was that of "hell on earth." Some committed suicide. Not a few of the Spanish mayorals, or

Digitized by Google

overseers, were murdered by the desperate objects of their cruelty.

The more recent accounts from Cuba show that the general impression as to the usefulness of Chinese labor is becoming more definite in its favor. And the present tendency is toward the abolition of African slavery and the employment of the Chinese. Some of these people, notwithstanding the fearful odds against them, have done well pecuniarily. They have become peddlers, gardeners, mechanics, and even doctors, and shown a native enterprise which may at some future time place the relations between them and the indolent Spaniards upon a very different footing from that in which they stand toward each other at present.

The coolie trade to Peru and the Chincha Islands, which was begun in 1849, was one which crimsons the cheek with shame that we belong to the same race of beings which could enact all its crimes, or that we in any wise as a nation share in the proceeds of its chief end, the procuring of guano as a manure for our markets and those of other Christian countries. In the digging of the guano, which consists of the deposits of a small sea-bird like a pigeon, upon the broken cliffs of the islands, to the depth of from one to two hundred feet, the coolies were forced to prepare their food before the dawn of the day and commence work as soon as they could see. They were obliged daily to dig five tons of guano and wheel it to a distance of over one-eighth of a mile. If not able to accomplish the task, they were flogged in the most cruel manner. No Sunday was allowed for rest. Many were made sick, or disabled by sores caused by the guano on their limbs. In their de-

Digitized by Google

spair numbers of them committed suicide, some drowning themselves by leaping from the cliffs into the sea, others going beneath the masses of guano when about to fall while digging it, so that they were buried alive.

The crimes engendered by this coolie trade were as fiendish as any that ever disgraced the slave trade with Africa. I have spoken of the villanies by which the victims were first duped and entrapped. Being completely in the power of the foreign seamen, on the bosom of the ocean, ignorant of where they were going, starved, sick, in despair, life was of small account to them. They committed the most desperate acts and provoked the like upon them. The scenes enacted upon the ships which carried them there were sometimes truly horrible. The Waverly, an American ship, in October, 1855, put in at the Manila, in the Philippine Islands, to bury the captain, who had died of dysentery. Having anchored in the bay, the mate, who was in command, was proceeding to lower the body into a boat, when the Chinese, either because some of them wished to go ashore, or, as some thought, on account of some superstitious prejudice, interfered to prevent his doing so. The mate discharged a revolver among them, and shot one man dead. The crew then having armed themselves drove the whole of the Chinese below and battened down the hatches, and the mate proceeded on shore with the body of the captain. He returned to the ship in the evening, but took no measures to learn the condition of the Chinese who were shut down without air or light. When the hatches were opened the following morning, two hundred and fifty-one of them were found dead! Scenes as terrible occurred on several other ships about the same period.

Digitized by Google

Within the past few years they have from time to time startled the people of Christian countries. In the winter of 1865 the captain of an Italian ship, the Napoleon Canavero, when the Chinese became rebellious, drove them below by force of arms and fastened down the hatches. The Chinese, rather than be suffocated to death, set fire to the ship. The Italians, finding they could not extinguish the flames, abandoned the ship without opening the hatches, and the whole of the Chinese on board are supposed to have in this awful way perished.

There were acts permitted by a just God which now and then paid back upon the whites a portion of the debt of vengeance due. Chinese pirates suffered themselves to be taken aboard coolie-ships, armed with concealed weapons, and at a suitable opportunity rose and murdered the officers and such of the crew as they did not need for the management of the vessel, and then made their escape to the nearest land.

The representation of these terrible transactions to the several governments interested led our Congress, in 1862, to prohibit ships of the United States engaging in the transportation of coolies or involuntary emigrants; to conventions between the Chinese government and the English and French ministers regulating it, in 1860 and in 1866, the provisions of which were adopted by the United States, according to instructions from the Secretary of State, in August of the same year; and subsequently to the closing of the Portuguese port of Macao against this trade by a proclamation of the governor of Macao and Timor, in 1868.

The agreement between the English, French and

Digitized by Google

American authorities and the Chinese government contains some admirable points. It requires emigration agents to be responsible men, under the supervision of the consuls of the various countries, and acting through a license from the Chinese authorities, which may be revoked for abuse of its privileges; it minutely states the points which should be specified in contracts in order to protect the emigrant;[1] it provides for rest from labor on the Sabbath, that is, one day in seven, and against any man being forced to labor more than nine hours and a half in the day; the engagement must not exceed five years; the cost of the passage home of the emigrant and family is to be paid, or if he re-engage for another five years, one-half that amount shall be paid in addition as a premium; each emigrant is required to appear before the Chinese officer previous to embarking and to give his voluntary assent and signature to the contract; a list of names of emigrants is to be sent to the

[1] It may be of importance to mention these points. The article reads as follows:

"ARTICLE VIII.

"The contract shall specify:

"1*st*. The place of destination and the length of the engagement.

"2*d*. The right of the emigrant to be conveyed back to his own country, and the sum that shall be paid at the expiration of his contract to cover the expense of his voyage home, and that of his family should they accompany him.

"3*d*. The number of working-days in the year and the length of each day's work.

"4*th*. The wages, rations, clothing and other advantages promised to the emigrant.

"5*th*. Gratuitous medical attendance.

"6*th*. The sum which the emigrant agrees to set aside out of his monthly wages for the benefit of persons to be named by him, should he desire to appropriate any sum to such a purpose.

"7*th*. Copies of [the most important] articles of these regulations.

"Any clause which shall purport to render invalid any of the provisions of this regulation is null and void."

Digitized by Google

foreign consul interested and the local authorities at the place of destination, and provision is made for inspection of the vessels as to health and fitness for the voyage. At the close of this valuable document, Prince Kung, in behalf of the imperial government, formally revokes the old prohibitions and declares "that the Chinese government throws no obstacle in the way of free emigration—that is to say, to the departure of Chinese subjects, embarking of their own free-will and at their own expense for foreign countries." But he threatens punishment with the extreme rigor of the law upon attempts to bring Chinese under engagements except according to these regulations; declares death to Chinese found kidnapping, and forbids unlicensed foreign emigration-agents, or operations at other than the open ports.

The interesting question, whether contracts compelling coolies to labor for a term of years can be so made in China by one who designs to import them to the United States as to be of substantial value on their arrival here, has been decided in the negative by the Department of State of the United States, and its opinion has been expressed that anything like "the apprentice system" is not to be encouraged in this country.[1] However, Chinese laborers, like any others, are at liberty to come voluntarily, and under contracts which are assignable, and if these be violated, they are subject to action for pecuniary damages.[2]

[1] *Papers relating to Foreign Affairs*, etc., 1866: Part I, pp. 492–494, 506–507.

[2] The following is an extract from the act of Congress, passed July 4, 1864, entitled "An Act to Encourage Immigration." Having authorized the appointment of a "Commissioner of Immigration," it continues as follows:

"SEC. 2. All contracts that shall be made by emigrants to the United States, in foreign countries, in conformity to regulations that may be established by the said commissioner, whereby emigrants shall pledge the wages of their labor for

Digitized by Google

The extent of the emigration of the people of China to this country in the future will be largely governed by ourselves. It is true that their numbers are vast, that their wages are small, and that they love work and are capable of doing much that we need to be done. But, on the other hand, they are proud, afraid of the sea and afraid of our race, and love home and kindred. They will not come in considerable numbers without pressure on our part.

The early rush of Chinese immigration to California was largely the result of the efforts of our own people. In the year 1849 three hundred came over, in 1850 four hundred and fifty, and two thousand seven hundred in 1851. Many of these took back gold and confirmed the fact of its existence. Foreign shipping merchants hastened to take advantage of the disposition to emigrate. Those in Hong-kong and Canton circulated placards, maps and pamphlets, presenting highly-colored accounts of the "Golden Hills." Numerous ships sent out native agents to obtain passengers. The consequence was the increase of the number of immigrants in 1852 to over eighteen thousand, of whom only twenty-five were women. More than eleven thousand arrived in the months of June and July. But several of the vessels

a term not exceeding twelve months, to repay the expenses of their emigration, shall be held to be valid in law, and may be enforced in the courts of the United States, or of the several States and Territories; and such advances, if so stipulated in the contract, and the contract be recorded in the Recorder's office in the county where the emigrant shall settle, shall operate as a lien upon any land thereafter acquired by the emigrant, whether under the Homestead law, when the title is consummated, or on property otherwise acquired, until liquidated by the emigrant; but nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize any contract contravening the constitution of the United States, or creating in any way the relation of slavery or servitude."

Digitized by Google

were old, filthy, rotten craft that had gone through their term of ordinary service, been used then for whalers and afterward abandoned. So much sickness was produced among the Chinese on them that those at home became alarmed, and the next year not one-fourth the number came.

The number of Chinese on this side of the ocean in 1856 amounted, as I found by careful investigations made at my request into the records of their companies, to about forty thousand men and perhaps three thousand women. Nine thousand more had returned, and fourteen hundred had died. The number of men in this country in 1868 the Rev. A. W. Loomis, who is better acquainted with them as a people than any other person on the Pacific coast, judged from his inquiries then to be about sixty-one thousand, and there had been over forty-six thousand departures and nearly four thousand deaths.

Mr. H. C. Bennett,[1] of San Francisco, at the close of last year made an examination by the aid of their companies which led him to estimate that there are now about ninety thousand in this country; that is, that there had arrived from China, since 1848, a hundred and thirty-eight thousand men, of whom thirty-seven thousand had returned and over ten thousand were dead. Of the number here less than half are in California. There is no reason for supposing that there are more Chinese than the number which this gentleman supposes now in the country. Of these ninety thousand persons, it is supposed nearly five thousand are women

[1] Secretary of the San Francisco Chinese Protection Society, an organization which was formed on account of the cruel and unprovoked injuries sometimes inflicted upon these industrious people by bad characters about the city.

Digitized by Google

and about two thousand are children. Probably two-fifths of these are females and children living in San Francisco, as it is difficult to provide for them outside of the large towns.

The stream which begins to set in from China to the New World does not remain in California. It flows wherever a channel is open for it by the discovery of new mines, by the opening of new opportunities of trade or by the requirements for human labor. It is supposed that fifty thousand Chinese are distributed over other Pacific States and Territories. Half of these are in Montana and Idaho; a fourth of them are in Oregon and Nevada; the remainder are distributed along the lines of railroad eastward and in Colorado and Utah, and a few in Mexico and in the Mississippi Valley. As the number increases, they will press on into all the States and Territories of the West and South, into all the provinces of Mexico and into all the countries of South America and all the islands of the Pacific ocean. The wants of those vast, almost untenanted portions of the globe, abounding in all the requisites of productive soil, of variety of esculent plants, of mineral wealth, of water communication to sustain a large population, can only be met by the immigration of a race so capable as the Chinese. And the Creator has prepared a treasury of labor in that empire from which those lands and islands can draw without danger of exhaustion. This only we can now foretell, that the handful of Chinese now on this continent is but the trickling of the rivulet which will swell into a river that will spread over all the New World, and over all the islands of the great ocean which fills the side opposite to that which has

Digitized by Google

been the scene of the civilization which has been our heritage.

The general subject of Chinese immigration is so broad that it might readily be expanded into a volume; but I must dismiss this chapter with some practical suggestions which it is important that our people should consider.

It must have forced itself upon the observation of most well-informed persons that the populations of different parts of the Chinese seacoast are quite dissimilar in character. Those of the province of Canton have more of that which might be supposed to result from many centuries of communication, and of conflicts too, with foreigners; they are more enterprising and intelligent. Those of the province of Fu-kien and the portions of Canton near it, who have traded more largely with the Indian Archipelago, Siam and the neighboring semi-civilized countries, are bold and energetic, but more rude; it is there that infanticide abounds, and the people are more uncultivated and ignorant than they are in any other part of China visited by foreigners. The inhabitants of the valley of the Yang-tsz-kiang river are more mild, timid and inefficient. The people of the northern provinces begin to approach the Tartar type; they are physically larger, their food, temperament and habits are those of a northern latitude. The "coolie" emigration to Cuba and in the hands of the Spaniards has been largely from Fu-kien; there has been very little from any ports of the north; the emigration to California has been almost exclusively from the districts about Canton. It is probable that these differences of temperament may exercise a considerable influence upon

Digitized by Google

the directions which the large emigrations of the future shall take.

It is a most criminal and perilous matter to attempt to treat the intelligent Chinese race after the same fashion as was formerly done with the negro, and deceive and confine them in "coolie-ships." The horrible transactions, of which I have mentioned a few, will continually recur with similar provocation. Vessels will be burned, officers and crews slaughtered, and cargoes of men will destroy themselves and all on board rather than be enslaved. The Chinese know what liberty is in their land beyond any other in Eastern Asia. They will do just what a body of Americans would do if driven to desperation.

Emigrant ships on the Pacific should be subjected to legislative requirements, in respect to the amount of room allowed to passengers, as to diet, as to ventilation, as to cleanliness and as to medical attention, and should be inspected by disinterested and capable agents of the government, just as the same class of vessels on the Atlantic ocean. There can be no excuse before God or man for the terrible mortality which has occurred on some of the vessels containing Chinese passengers. Let the government attach a legal and sufficient pecuniary penalty to the loss of life on shipboard and it will cease. The improvements in the whole matter of hygiene on shipboard have accomplished results within the present century that to many must seem truly wonderful, especially in connection with those which make long voyages. A report on the subject of quarantine, made by a committee of the British Parliament, consisting of Lord Carlisle and others, some years ago, brought out the

Digitized by Google

facts that when the system of transportation of convicts to Australia was first adopted, in some of the earlier voyages one-half of those who embarked were lost; later, on the passage to New South Wales, in the "Hillsborough," out of 306 who embarked, 100 were lost, and in the "Atlas," out of 175 who embarked, 61 were lost. In the period from 1795 to 1801, out of 3,833 convicts who embarked, 385 died, or nearly 1 in 10. But after *the principle of pecuniary responsibility* for the lives of passengers began to be applied, in 1801, out of 2,398 who embarked only 52 died, or 1 in 46. The improvement has continued up till the present time, when it amounts to only 1½ per cent., which is even lower than the average mortality of the same class living on shore. On the steamers of the Pacific mail line from San Francisco to Shanghai and Hong-kong there appears to be reasonable care exercised. But there are numerous sailing vessels, carrying Chinese passengers elsewhere, which should be made the subjects of strict supervision, and, where the laws are violated, of just punishment.

Those Chinese who make voluntary contracts, which they clearly understand, if honorably and kindly treated, will as a general rule be disposed to abide by them. But it should be a point most carefully guarded by the legislatures and courts in the parts of the country where they shall be employed that they shall be only subjected to pecuniary liabilities in cases of violations of contract. The infliction of corporeal punishment upon them will not alone be a great wrong which may lead to very grave results in the case of the parties inflicting it; it will moreover be a door to the return of those who may have them in their power to the scenes of barbarity and

Digitized by Google

tyranny for which our nation has too recently atoned to eternal Justice by a sea of blood!

An immigration which does not include virtuous females will of necessity be a vicious, unhappy, troublesome and unprofitable one in any country. It is cheaper to pay the passage of such women—wives, mothers, daughters, sisters—than for any community or any employee of a considerable number of men to be without their offices and influences. The Chinese is a race among which the affection for kindred holds a high place, and over which it exerts a powerful control. Every possible means ought to be employed to check the coming of the wretched, pestilential creatures now brought over, and to encourage the men to bring their families.

And in all the general measures, legislative or commercial, which we adopt in reference to this element of our population, we ought to remember that we are not acting for temporary, or personal, or our own national interests; but that we are set by divine Providence in a position which demands that we should be inspired by loftier and broader motives, which are derived from the suggestions of an enlarged observation of history, a sincere devotion to the best interests of humanity, and by a humble and earnest desire to be but the instruments by which the Supreme Being shall execute his great and beneficent plans.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVII.

CHINESE LABOR.

IT is important before as a nation we introduce to a large extent Chinese labor that we should form some distinct conception of its character, of the probabilities of its usefulness and the objections to the employment of it.

The close observer will soon discern that several elements are fundamental in regard to Chinese labor—the antiquity of the social system, the respect for intellectual employment, the density of the population and the difficulty of obtaining subsistence. These make it peculiar in any of those respects in which it differs from labor in any other country. They imply that the institutions have become thoroughly settled; that the arts have attained a high degree of perfection; that there are broad lines between the rich and the poor, and between the intelligent and the ignorant; that the poor must exercise ingenuity, industry and thrift to support life; that the characters of men will be more definite; that the employments will be more numerous and each branch better understood; and that remuneration will be fixed at lower rates.

We may group the characteristics of Chinese labor under four heads: the industry of the people, their

Digitized by Google

habits of economy, their intelligence, and the variety of their employments. Let us consider each of these more fully.

The first impression made upon the traveler in China in relation to the teeming multitudes around him, after that of the mere novelty of forms and costumes, is the intense industry of nearly every one he sees. The river people do not wait for wind or tide, but drive vessels as large as our brigs and schooners by numerous long side-oars or immense sculling-oars behind or on either quarter of the stern; and the water is crowded with men and women and children, toiling in their vessels of various shapes, buying and selling the commodities of the loom, the garden or the shop. On the shore he looks over a landscape every portion of which except barren hillsides is cultivated to the highest degree and covered with different kinds of grain, vegetables and fruit. The narrow streets are packed with men intent upon all the varied employments of the inhabitants of great cities, and are lined on either side with shops for the manufacture and sale of the countless articles which a numerous and luxurious population can require. Abodes of wealth adorn the more retired streets or the suburbs. The rich project and push their larger schemes; the poor struggle and toil for the subsistence of the passing day. There is no Sabbath known, and few holidays are observed. No equal population of any other part of the Old World is more intently and incessantly busy than that of the cities and towns of China.

The physical system of the Arab or the North American Indian through successive generations has become conformed to his roving and predacious habits. His

Digitized by Google

blood and flesh are like those of the wild animals of the forest or the desert. But ages of toil seem to have tamed the nature of the Chinese till now patience and diligence have become elements of both mind and body. They work because they love work, honor work and maintain happiness and self-respect by work. Work is a necessity of the muscular and mental, like food for the digestive, or air for the pulmonary system.

Foreigners in China see this national characteristic exhibited in manifold ways. The tea they purchase is prepared with an amount of manual labor that is almost beyond belief. The tender leaves are separately rolled, and finished with a twist in the preparation of some kinds of it. The amount and variety of manipulation which the Chinese think necessary and cheerfully bestow upon the tea, to retain its highest flavor, is the principal reason why its culture has not become extensive in any of the numerous other countries where the plant itself thrives. Silk is wrought with a care and embroidered with a delicate and patient skill which are not elsewhere known in the preparation of the fabric. The paintings upon rice-paper are so elaborately finished in every vein and stripe and spot and tint of a butterfly's wing, or of the petals of a tiger lily, or of the bright feathers of a tropical pheasant, that one has to examine them carefully to be satisfied that they are not the article itself attached to the surface. In the ordinary employments of the household, whatever faults may be attributed to the Chinese indolence is not included among them. They are ready, at all hours, promptly and patiently to obey all orders which they understand and which relate to their own sphere.

Digitized by Google

The next cardinal virtue of the Chinese is economy. The sustenance of the masses of humanity within the limits of the empire requires the utilization of every possible material suitable for food, raiment, fuel or the mechanical arts. There is scarcely any imaginable form of matter for which some use is not found. And the ingenuity with which cheap and common materials, such as bamboo, paper, slate or pottery, are applied to purposes of necessity, comfort or ornament is remarkable and sometimes even amusing.

The employer may be sure that in any department of labor in which he can trust the honesty, or be thoroughly cognizant of the conduct of laborers, there will be care exercised as to tools, utensils, raw material and the odds and ends, the saving of which may possibly constitute the chief advantage in the business. When food is provided it will not be wasted, though it may be disposed of otherwise. Clothing will be kept, so long as the native pride is maintained, scrupulously neat, as to external appearance at least. And we may remark, as a special virtue in a people who possess so few means of accurately measuring time, the punctuality of the Chinese. They understand the value of time and are economical of it, just as they are of money. They are willing to give full measure of time in work when they are satisfied with the wages. They claim few holidays, except some days at the New Year, and possibly one in the spring and fall to repair the tombs of kindred and friends.

The wages paid for Chinese labor in this country will in the first place be cheaper than any other. The sum obtained by laboring men in their own country, from

Digitized by Google

their own people, is equal to but a few cents a day; from foreigners they expect, as cooks, coolies, etc., from three to seven dollars a month, and to find themselves. In California they are paid thirty dollars a month in factories and on railroads. In the mines they have usually been hired at about two-thirds the wages of white laborers.

Yet it may usually be expected that the wages of Chinese laborers, when they become acquainted with the work to be done and with our people and language, will rise. They are shrewd, ambitious, and will not be satisfied to be placed upon a much lower scale than others who can do no better work than themselves. They will in the future probably not command the rates paid to white laborers. They have qualities which will always make them valuable.

A third general characteristic of Chinese labor is intelligence. In the south of China the people are so generally taught to read that it is rare to meet with a man who does not know the common printed characters in books. They think for themselves, and generally perform their work in a straightforward and sensible manner. When necessary to learn foreign methods of mechanical or other work, they readily comprehend the explanations, ascertain what is essential, and learn the necessary manipulations or forms. It is however important to teach them correctly at the beginning, since their arts and methods are so very different from our own, and they have been so long accustomed to follow their old precedents, that when they take up ours and once fix them in their memory it is difficult to induce them to change.

Digitized by Google

In this feature of the Chinese there is a ground of great superiority over laborers of some other races. The painful stolidity of some of the ignorant European whites and of most of the degraded Africans of this country is rarely seen among this swarthy people.

Combined with intelligence is willingness. It amounts to cheerfulness and mirthfulness among each other and those with whom they feel at ease. But to employers generally they manifest a most refreshing promptness and willingness to do just what they are asked to do. The habit of deference and politeness is instilled with their mother's milk. The first care of a father is to teach his son the language of proper respect toward kindred and superiors. Amid all the necessary jarring and jamming of the crowded streets of a Chinese city, or of the countless boats in a swift tide upon a Chinese river, the amount of good nature, forbearance and courtesy exhibited is a constant source of pleasant surprise to those who have been accustomed to the oaths, the bad passions and the blows seen and heard in similar circumstances in our sea-coast cities or on our rivers in the East or West. Many are the times in which the missionary in China, acquainted with the language, when he hears the angry and bitter words which the presence of foreigners provokes, turns to the crowd and appeals to them in some little pleasantry, or with the inquiry whether they consider such conduct to be polite; in a moment the sound of their own tongue and manifestation of acquaintance with "good manners" disarms them, and they express regret for what has been offensive. The ordinary labor of servants is done without the surliness and muttering and reluctance which are considered by

Digitized by Google

many persons of that class to be a prerogative in virtue of their condescending to an inferior position.

One other characteristic of Chinese labor may be noticed—its variety. In an old country the employments of men are far more numerous than they are in a new one. Society, as some classes become wealthy, multiplies its demands for articles of use, comfort and luxury; and as other classes become poor, they quit the ordinary and crowded paths of industry, and ever seek to discover some which may be more untrodden and remunerative. Different as are the society and employments of China from those in America, yet it may be said that there is scarcely a generic want there which has not some counterpart here. Hence it is one of the principal elements of value in the Chinese immigration that we find men acquainted with a great variety of useful knowledge, and skill in the agricultural, mechanical and other arts.

The first aim of those who early came to this country was to work in the mines. Seeing the want of cooks, washermen and waiters, many soon were induced to adopt these less laborious and hazardous employments, and quickly amassed sums sufficient to satisfy them, at a time when cooks in families were paid forty or fifty dollars a month and washermen received three dollars a day for renovating soiled clothes. In the mining regions of Montana, Nevada and other portions of the Pacific coast the people now eagerly welcome this neat, sober, industrious race to fill these offices in the household or community. Many an exhausted and sick American wife greets a Chinese servant as a boon beyond price.

The Chinese soon after their first advent upon this

Digitized by Google

coast began to explore other avenues of gain. Some became shopkeepers of various kinds. Representatives of wealthy mercantile firms in Canton or Hong-kong established houses in San Francisco, with branches in the mining towns. Doctors and druggists opened their shops for the relief of the suffering. Butchers sold pork and poultry as in their own cities and villages. Tailors and shoemakers began to ply their trades. And thus the Chinese quarters of San Francisco, Sacramento and other places in California began to assume the appearance of the streets of their native cities. And gamblers and lewd women followed, and became even more bold and wicked than the same classes at home.

Employments useful to our own people were early established by the Chinese among us. The gardens upon the hillsides, thoroughly irrigated, manured and tilled, supplied to our towns a constant abundance and variety of fresh and cheap vegetables. A few men cut and prepared kindling and other wood for fuel. A large number found employment in fishing, and in various kinds of common labor.

The good points of Chinese labor have been enumerated. Have these people no faults? Yes. They are suspicious until they become thoroughly acquainted with us; they are often dishonest; they often lie; they feel unsettled in this country; and they are in danger of temptations to sensual indulgences.

Suspicion of whites is not to be wondered at in a people who for ages past have been plundered and harassed by Western nations as have the inhabitants of the southern coast of China. But, beyond this, suspiciousness is an attribute of all heathen races. The want of

Digitized by Google

Pl. 1. Pterodactylus Kochi.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the virtues of Christianity necessarily creates mutual want of confidence. But when the experience of the Chinese shows them that an American is a sincere and disinterested friend, they exhibit their esteem and gratitude in numerous pleasing ways, and are ready often to load him with gifts beyond their means.

They generally require to be watched to prevent dishonesty and pilfering. But when articles are committed to their care, and their honor and better feelings are appealed to, they are punctiliously faithful. And when they are won to unreserved confidence in employers, the most implicit trust may be reposed in them.

They are not sensible of the evil of lying like those educated under the light of the inspired word of Him who searcheth the heart and bringeth every secret thing into judgment. Yet they are sensitive to moral considerations, and may be made to feel the shamefulness and wrong of falsehood.

They feel here like strangers in a strange land; and this sometimes, as in the case of our own people in new countries, makes them unsettled and unhappy. But, on the other hand, their habits at home are just the opposite from this; and when satisfied with employers and wages, they often continue in one place a long time.

The pure and stable morality of those who know the truths of Christianity of course they lack. They are a heathen people. And yet their very heathenism is not the fantastic, obscene and bloody religion elsewhere seen in Asia, which insults the reason and the sense of mankind, and sends its stench into the heavens.

These are the chief defects of Chinese labor. And yet it requires our people a considerable time to become

Digitized by Google

accustomed to the strange-looking race who go so quietly and, as some unused to them would imagine, slowly about their daily tasks. They will not bear goading and harsh language. They abhor irritability and despise fitfulness. They rebel against irregular hours of toil and bad and insufficient food. When cruelly maltreated and wronged they become sullen, and at last burst out in acts of self-destruction or desperate resistance—not vengeance, properly, for they do not nurse revenge.

To this grouping of the better and worse characteristics of Chinese labor the remark must be added, that the individuals of it differ greatly from each other. We too much judge nations by particular people of them with whom we happen to be acquainted. There are as great diversities of temperament and capacity to be found under swarthy as under white skins.

There are some practical difficulties also in connection with the employment of the Chinese. One is, the slowness and labor with which they learn our language. Its polysyllabic character, and the combination of several consonants in a single syllable, make it hard for them to pronounce it; and the entire dissimilarity of its sounds from those by which they represent names or ideas makes them difficult to remember. It is almost as hard for them to learn English as it is for us to learn Chinese. Yet there are among them some who speak English fluently and accurately. Another difficulty sometimes arises in employing them from their clannish disposition. This leads them to act in concert for the accomplishment of their purposes, and to indulge hostility toward their countrymen with whom they are at feud.

The fields for the application of Chinese labor in this

Digitized by Google

country are chiefly those of agriculture, manufactures, mining, public enterprises and the wants of the household.

Of the capacity of the Chinese as domestic servants so much has been said that I shall add to what has been said before but a word. Their characteristics of industry, economy and intelligence must make them a treasure in many an American home. And it is the pleasant experience of their usefulness in families which has made so many of the better class of people in California and the neighboring States their warm friends, and impatient with the injuries which chiefly low white foreigners have inflicted upon them.

In agriculture we may occupy these immigrants in employments familiar to our nation, or we may use their knowledge and skill to introduce new products and processes.

In the cultivation of the cereals the farmers have been able to accomplish a great deal toward making California a great producing and exporting State. The wheat crop is now more valuable pecuniarily to the State than the gold. It was expected that the surplus alone of the produce of wheat the last season in California would be sixteen and a half millions of bushels, that there would be three and a half millions more in Oregon, and that these twenty millions would bring in from abroad not less than eighteen millions of dollars. Farmers have introduced other remunerative crops. Hops have handsomely rewarded the labors of some of them. Fruits have attained a perfection under the long-continued and unclouded sun of California such as is nowhere else seen; and the abundance of them is almost beyond belief.

Digitized by Google

Tons of delicious peaches and pears last summer went to rot under the trees in many orchards around the bay of San Francisco simply because there were such quantities that it would not pay to bring them to market. With all this boundless wealth of nature, it is chiefly Chinese labor that is, and must be, employed to carry on the various processes of cultivation and the garnering of the proceeds. By this means they can be brought within the range of successful competition with the same products in the markets of Europe and of the Atlantic States. Without this labor the contest may as well be given up. No doubt, however, the time is coming when these vegetable riches will prove a boon to the regions less favored of the skies. The fruits of the Pacific coast especially will, in a variety of ways, be prepared by careful Chinese fingers for safe exportation, and be distributed over this and distant lands.

But it is not the mere toil of these people which will profit us. They have for ages been acquainted with the cultivation of plants whose products form the most valuable constituents of the wealth of nations. Chief among these stand cotton and silk.

The most profitable production of the soil of the United States has been cotton. Southern and Eastern Asia are the original seats of the culture of cotton. It was taken from Eastern Asia to Persia and Arabia. Our common names of some of its tissues are derived from the Chinese. Nanking, or Nankeen, the ancient capital, is the region from whence the most substantial web has been obtained.

The name of this most valuable species of mallow has been, by some philologists, derived from the Arabic;

Digitized by Google

but we may look for it with more probability in the designation of the district of Khoten, in the western extreme of the Chinese dominions, one of the most ancient and fertile spots in the world. The name is but slightly changed to Kustana in the venerable Sanscrit language of India. The word *kat* has passed into the Chinese. Marco Polo found cotton and skillful artisans in that region six hundred years ago. He says that in the kingdom of Cotan "they have all things in abundance, a large supply of silk, with vineyards and good orchards. They carry on merchandise and manufactures, but are not men-at-arms." They still pay their tribute to the emperor of China in home-grown cotton, and a Chinese geographer states that the plant in that country "covers the fields like yellow clouds."

The favorite cotton region of China is the alluvial valley of the great Yang-tsz-kiang river, which is somewhat like the Sacramento in its moist, fat soil and frequent inundations. However, it is also cultivated in Canton province. I have made inquiries, and find there are some natives of that province in California who are acquainted with the process.

It has been asserted by some intelligent men that California is unsuited to the growth of cotton. The sensitiveness of the plant to cold, the dryness of the summer winds and the absence of dews have been urged as reasons for the failure of some experiments in raising it. But while these causes may hinder the cultivation of some favorite varieties, it should be remembered that other varieties have been found indigenous to that coast, and which formed material for thread and cloth before the white races visited it; others still are natives of the

Digitized by Google

island groups of the Pacific, where they grow to be stout trees a dozen feet in height and some inches in diameter, and others inhabit Eastern Asia, which though less remunerative in their yield or choice as to fibre, yet supply hundreds of millions of pounds to those nations, and are so hardy as to be cultivated upon the mountain sides five thousand feet above the sea. There are parts of the Pacific coast where superior cotton has been found to grow well, the staple being long, the texture strong and the appearance silky; and competent judges in the Southern States have declared that specimens shown them have been of a quality superior to that commonly seen there. Some remarkably fine specimens have been sent from the neighborhood of Los Angelos.

The manufacture of the cottons for the insatiable markets of China and India will certainly in the end find its centre on the Pacific coast of North America. It is a mere question of time. There the material, the capital, the laborers and the markets most naturally come together. The most far-seeing minds of Great Britain begin to regard the fact with anxiety. They are projecting English colonies upon Borneo, New Guinea and other tropical islands, where the same advantages may possibly be concentrated in the hope of retaining the predominent national advantages of this trade under their own control. The following extract is taken from an article which appeared a few years ago in the London *Times;* and it may be remarked that its recommendations have engaged the attention of practical Englishmen, who are endeavoring to carry them out in the islands of the Indian Archipelago or ocean south of it. The writer says:

Digitized by Google

"The various places hitherto suggested for the extension of cotton cultivation—such as India, the west coast of Africa, the West India Islands, etc.—may always be serviceable as an auxiliary supply, but it will never be grown in sufficient quantities to influence the market. By the plan I propose, cotton may be grown so extensively that the short and inferior qualities would be only used in the manufacture of paper, for which there is a great scarcity of material.

"A tropical climate is undoubtedly the indigenous and most suitable one for the production of cotton, the plant being perennial, and yielding two crops annually; whereas in the Southern States of America the plant is annual, one crop only being produced, which is liable to injury by the variableness of the season. The requisites, therefore, are to obtain a large tract of land of adequate fertility, at a nominal value, and a plentiful supply of laborers adapted to a tropical climate, who would work at a moderate rate of wages, and thereby render production as remunerative as slave labor. The great field for obtaining tropical laborers is *China* (India can also furnish a large number of emigrants). The low rate of wages they obtain in their own country makes them admirably adapted to compete with coerced labor, which they will eventually supersede. The natural disposition of the Chinese to emigrate in search of employment, which they cannot obtain in their own country, is well known, the sugar estates in Java, the gold mines of Borneo, etc., being worked principally by Chinese settlers; and even the wilds of Australia and California have long abounded with these enterprising people. In the British and foreign West India colonies and

Digitized by Google

Brazil many have been imported, though the expense of transporting them such a distance is very great.

"The large island of New Guinea, or one of the adjacent islands to the north of Australia, offers the greatest facility for the establishment of a cotton colony on the grandest scale. With a fertile soil, and within a few days' sail of China and India, there can be no doubt the most extensive and rapid colonization would take place, and that in a few years the settlement would become one of the most flourishing in the world."

This English writer assumes what facts do not support—that a tropical climate is that which best suits cotton. The cotton of tropical Asia and Africa has not been equal to that of Georgia and the American Gulf States; and in China the cotton of Kiang-su and other provinces about the mouth of the Yang-tsz-kiang river, in lat. 31° north, is preferred to that of the coast several hundred miles to the south. On our Pacific coast there are climatic conditions probably as favorable to its growth as those which exist in the Gulf States. The soil is alluvial and rich. The location is in the great line of intercontinental trade. The genius of the people, the certainty of commanding the best improvements in machinery, and the presence of capital at the fountain-head of the precious metals, are pledges of success. And the labor required for successful cultivation, manipulation and the work of the mill will be obtained from the natural source across the ocean of that which is among the cheapest and best suited to these ends. It will be our own fault if that region of our continent, through this conjunction of advantages in respect to the supply of Eastern Asia with manufactured

Digitized by Google

cotton, does not become one of "the most prosperous in the world."

There is another textile fabric which is naturally suggested to the mind in connection with cotton; it clothes millions, it is more valuable in the same amount than cotton, and its great source has been the empire of China. Were it possible to make ours a country which should largely produce, use and export silk, all the disadvantages of the Chinese immigration would be indeed comparatively incidental and easily to be overlooked. China is emphatically the land of silk—the name was probably derived from silk—and silk is its most rich, beautiful and universally cultivated production. Its exports of raw, unmanufactured silk alone are worth to the nation from twenty to thirty millions of dollars a year. Its value to it in all the countless forms of use cannot be estimated in money.

California possesses extraordinary advantages for the cultivation of silk, among which are, first, the climate. Some of the best French silk-growers, after having thoroughly examined the relative adaptation of different parts of Europe, Asia and America, have pronounced California the best country in the world for this great department of industry. The chief reason is the regularity of the long and warm summer, with the entire absence of thunder or storms during the month of June, when the worms feed. The same cause has much to do with the remarkable freedom of the worms from diseases which carry off from one-fourth to three-fourths of the entire number of them yearly in France. Another advantage connected with the climate is that the heat of the sun in summer has been found sufficient to hatch in

Digitized by Google

three days the eggs when placed under roofs exposed to its rays and properly protected, while in other countries this process must be accomplished by means of artificial heat and with much expense and trouble.

The best food of the silkworm, the mulberry, has been found to flourish remarkably well in California. The soil is so rich that it grows and leaves with great luxuriance, without the cost of the heavy manuring and the amount of cultivation required on the shores of the Mediterranean. Some of the silk-growers have also asserted that the worm in California produces from a third to a half more eggs than it does under less favorable circumstances.

The cost of land and buildings is very small in California compared with what it is in France or Italy. The rent of an acre there will purchase three acres here. And there is here no need of the heavy and extensive buildings used there.

The relative cost of labor is a principal item of advantage. It has been ascertained that in California one attendant, on account of the advantages which have been described, will suffice for the production of the amount of silk which would require in France eight attendants. And the wages for which the Chinese can be procured, who understand the cultivation of silk better than any other nation and love this kind of quiet and regular employment, renders it certain that our Pacific coast will in the future be, next to China, one of the largest silk-producing countries in the world.

At the State agricultural fair held at Sacramento in September, 1869, I saw a fine assortment of silk in all stages of advancement. The progress of this interesting

Digitized by Google

business has recently been very rapid. The number of mulberry trees in the State, which was twenty millions last year, had multiplied fivefold within three years. It was estimated that from seventy-five to one hundred millions of cocoons would be produced. The State encouraged this by the offer of a bounty of three hundred dollars for each hundred thousand good, marketable cocoons, and an award of two hundred and fifty dollars for each plantation of five thousand trees of two or more years' growth. Individuals were embarking actively in the culture of silk in the central and southern counties of the State. A firm at the Mission of San Gabriel had made a contract to hire forty Chinese families for a period of four years, agreeing to furnish to each family a small house and garden, which would become its property in case of its remaining there. Much interest is felt in the success of a Japanese colony near Placerville. A Dutch gentleman, Mr. J. H. Schnell, has purchased there two thousand acres of land and planted upon it a colony of Japanese at his own expense. He had been a resident of the principality of Aidzu, and interested in the improvement of the condition of its people. The civil war having unsettled him, he determined to emigrate to California, and induced these families to accompany him. They have built twelve houses in Japanese style for residences and places for the care of silkworms and the weaving of the fibre into various fabrics for the California market. They have set out fifty thousand mulberry trees. The cocoons exhibited at the State fair were very large and fine. These people have also introduced tea, bamboo, oil and other plants, some specimens of which were shown there.

Digitized by Google

The inquiry is often made, whether the Japanese is not a more desirable race, as relates to its subserviency to our national wants, than the Chinese? Perhaps the conception of the difference between them may be made easy to most persons by comparing it to that which exists between the French nation and the British. The Japanese are more quick, nervous, susceptible and easy in their intercourse. But they are more volatile, more petulant and quarrelsome and more licentious. The immorality of Japanese society is shocking to the better class of Chinese, and they so speak of it in emphatic language. The Japanese have taken what is best in their literature from the Chinese classics, teach Confucius in their schools and speak the Chinese as a polite language in their wealthy families. And they distinctly recognize the superiority of the empire, of which their own is but a satellite, in their writings. Some of the Japanese will come to this country, and should be welcomed, to learn here the arts and the wisdom of which Providence has made us the repository and the almoners. But it is chiefly the Chinese who can repay to our nation anything like benefits equivalent to those we may communicate.

A feature of the production of silk which has within a few years attracted much attention in Europe is that of the variety of moths which have been found to form the characteristic fibre. One of these is the ailanthus silkworm (*Bombyx cynthia*), which had been described about the middle of the last century by French missionaries in China, but was brought before the attention of the Italian silk-growers by Fantoni, a missionary from Piedmont, in 1856. M. Guérin Meneville satisfied him-

Digitized by Google

Swamp Ghosts and Leprechauns

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

self of its value, and introduced it widely and successfully in France. The emperor Napoleon has exhibited warm interest in the business. The advantages of the fibre over that of the common worm (*Bombyx mori*), which feeds upon the mulberry, are that the tree (*Ailanthus glandulosa*) which sustains the worm is very common and hardy, and grows even upon sterile soil; the moth itself is not tender and subject to diseases like the other, and is not affected by wind and rain; the product is more strong and durable; and the goods manufactured from it will be much cheaper than ordinary silk, though not so brilliant in color. Another species of silk has still more recently been manufactured in France. It was obtained from the Japanese *Tusseh* moth (*Antheræa yama-mai*), also through the efforts of M. Guérin Meneville. It is of a brown color, wanting in lustre, but very firm and durable. It is easily wound from the cocoon, and can be worked to great advantage with cotton or wool. Experiments were made in California as to the usefulness of the *Saturnia ceanotha*, a silkworm feeding upon a shrub (*Ceanothus*) common upon the hills. Other species adapted to our use will, it is supposed, be brought to light in the course of our increased acquaintance with those empires in which the manufacture of silk was a subject of universal interest for many centuries before our forefathers and the Romans and Greeks ever knew of the existence of this royal material. We will thus discover what will be suitable to the varieties of the climate of our extended country and open up sources of wealth to every portion of it.

The English in India, having succeeded so well in the culture of cotton and tea, have turned their attention to

Digitized by Google

that of silk. Various species of silk-producing moths have been long known in that country. The following interesting description is given of those in India, China and America, together with some hints that may be useful to us, by the entomologists Kirby and Spence:[1] "The most important species known are the Tusseh and Arindy silkworms. These insects are both natives of Bengal. The first (*Saturnia paphia*, Linn.) feeds upon the leaves of the jujube tree, or *byer* of the Hindùs, and upon the *Terminalia alata glabra* (Roxburgh), the *asseen* of the Hindùs, and is found in such abundance as from time immemorial to have afforded a constant supply of very durable, coarse, dark-colored silk, which is woven into a cloth called *tusseh-doot'hies*, much worn by the Brahmins and other sects, and which would be highly useful to the inhabitants of many parts of America and the south of Europe, where a light and cool, and at the same time a cheap and durable, dress, such as this silk furnishes, is much wanted. The durability of this silk is really astonishing, as after constant use for nine or ten years it does not show the least appearance of decay. These insects are thought by the natives of so much consequence that they guard them by day to preserve them from crows and other birds, and by night from the bats. The Arindy silkworm (*Saturnia cynthia*, Drury), which feeds solely on the leaves of the palma christi, produces remarkably soft cocoons, the silk of which is so delicate and flossy that it is impracticable to wind it off; it is therefore spun like cotton, and the thread thus manufactured is woven into a coarse kind of white cloth of a loose texture, but

[1] *Introduction to Entomology* (Phila. ed. from 6th London), pp. 224, 225.

Digitized by Google

of still more incredible durability than the last, the lifetime of one person being seldom sufficient to wear out a garment made of it. It is used not only for clothing, but for packing fine cloths, etc. Some manufacturers in England to whom the silk was shown seemed to think that it could there be made into shawls equal to any received from India. A moth allied to this last species, but distinct, has been described and figured by Col. Sykes, who met with its leather-like cocoons composed of silk so strong that a single filament supported a weight of a hundred and ninety-eight grains. There can be little doubt but that silk might be advantageously produced from it, as the caterpillars which spin it feed indiscriminately on the teak tree, the mulberry, the *bor* (*Zizyphus jujuba*) and the *osana* (*Terminalia alata glabra*).

"Other species are known in China. 'We have obtained,' says the writer of a letter in Young's *Annals of Agriculture*, 'a monthly silkworm from China, which I reared with my own hands, and in twenty-five days have had the cocoons in my basins, and by the twenty-ninth or thirty-first day a new progeny feeding in my trays. This makes it a mine to whoever would undertake the cultivation of it.'

"There seems no question that silk might be advantageously derived from many native silkworms in America. An account is given in the *American Philosophical Transactions* (v. 325) of one found there whose cocoon is not only heavier and more productive than that of the common kind, but is so much stronger that twenty threads will carry an ounce more." The authors proceed to notice several moths known in various parts of North and South America and the West Indies whose

Digitized by Google

silk has been wrought into clothing, handkerchiefs, pasteboard and other articles.

These writers[1] make a suggestion in regard to the manufacture of other articles besides the thread and its manufactured products from the silkworm, which will be interesting to some of our own people. They say:

"It is probable, too, that other articles besides silk might be obtained from the larvæ which usually produce it, particularly cements and varnishes of various kinds, some hard, others elastic, from their gum and silk reservoirs; from which it is said the Chinese procure a fine varnish, and fabricate what is called by anglers *Indian grass*. The diminutive size of the animal will be thought no objection when we recollect that the very small quantity of purple dye afforded by the *Purpura* of the ancients did not prevent them from collecting it."

An English company was formed for the development of the supply of silk from India and other colonial possessions, after the attention of the people had been turned to the importance of this business by the Paris Exposition. It was styled the Silk Supply Association. Its objects are thus stated: "1. To stimulate the production of silk, by cottage cultivation and otherwise, in every country where the mulberry tree is capable of giving food to the silkworm. 2. To encourage the introduction and exchange of the eggs of the best kind of silkworms in silk-producing districts. 3. To offer practical suggestions and encouragement to the producers of silk for improving the quality and securing a better classification, and for ensuring greater care in the reeling of the silk. 4. To promote the cultivation of silk in

[1] KIRBY and SPENCE, p. 226.

Digitized by Google

the various silk-producing districts in India where the production of silk has not recently increased, and in other districts of India where the cultivation of the silk-worm has almost ceased, but which are known to possess special advantages, by the growth of the mulberry tree and the habits of the people, for its propagation. 5. To promote the exportation of cocoons from countries not well able to reel them. 6. To communicate with the foreign, colonial and Indian departments of Her Majesty's Government, and to obtain the aid of the English representatives in the British colonies and consular agents in all foreign countries to promote and extend the cultivation of silk."

American naturalists in the Atlantic States have sought for such kinds of native moths as might be made useful in the manufacture of silk. Dr. Barton, of Philadelphia, made some interesting experiments upon various native caterpillars which are found in the woods of Pennsylvania. Dr. D. Bethune McCartee, an American medical missionary at Ningpo, in China, when on a visit to this country recognized an American moth as the same with one from which large quantities of pongee silk are made in the northern parts of that empire. It is the opinion of Jaeger and others that other American moths, such as *Cecropia luna*, *Polyphemus* and *Promethea*, will be employed in supplying coarse silk. The fibre obtained from them may be made into goods of great strength and durability, which may be worn for several years. It will be a strange thing indeed if the practical and inventive genius of our country will long allow sources of national wealth, which are turned to so much advantage in India and China, to lie uncultivated.

Digitized by Google

The manufacture of silk has been fairly begun in various parts of the United States. Thirty years ago much attention was directed to the subject, and a fever of speculation in a species of mulberry (*Morus multicaulis*), which is one of the best kinds of food for the worm, swept over the country and enriched a few, but unfortunately left far more persons impoverished and disgusted.

A few factories, however, in various States were kept in operation; sufficient to show the practicability of maintaining the business in this country. One of them, which I visited with much interest thirty years ago, was that at Economy, on the Ohio river, below Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, where the work was carried on by a secluded and semi-monastic sect of Germans, with entire success. The census returns of 1860 show that there were in that year four hundred and fifteen silk manufactories in the United States; of which Connecticut had one hundred and forty-four, New Jersey one hundred and thirteen, New York eighty, Pennsylvania twenty-eight, Massachusetts thirty-six, New Hampshire seven, Kentucky four and California three. The amount of capital invested in the business was estimated to be two millions of dollars. This has rapidly increased. It was supposed, in 1865, that the capital invested was about five millions of dollars.

The men and women engaged in the silk factories are at present principally Europeans. It is supposed that there are between fifty and eighty thousand of them. The American Emigration Company has agents in the seats of silk manufacture to select and forward them to this country. It is a work well adapted to females, being

Digitized by Google

clean and not laborious. In one trimming factory in New York, out of three hundred employés about fifty only are men. This factory pays six thousand dollars per month in wages. Another factory employs women in nearly all departments. They tend the looms and do most of the spinning, winding and warping. Out of fifteen hundred hands, more than two-thirds are women. The wages paid are high: to men from twenty to twenty-four dollars a week, to women from four to ten dollars.

Even at these rates, which are three times what are paid in Europe, we have been able, with the advantage of a duty of sixty per cent. and the difference of freight, insurance and exchange, successfully to compete with foreign silk. A single establishment in Connecticut now produces annually six hundred thousand yards of dress silks, comprising gros grains, poplins, foulards and pongees; of belt ribbons one hundred thousand pieces are produced, and this factory still further turns out each year sixty thousand pounds of "thrawn" and an equal quantity of "spun" silk. Large quantities of silk dress goods are also made at Paterson, New Jersey, and at various points in the State of New York. Foreign sewing-silks and fine dress trimmings are being crowded out of our markets. The latter materials are at present manufactured at thirty establishments in Philadelphia, and the former article is produced elsewhere in very large quantities.

The attention of the silk manufacturers of Europe has of late been strongly turned to the advantages offered them in this country. Projects have been entered into to form colonies in the Western and other States to carry on their business. One of these, in Kansas, has so far

Digitized by Google

made progress as to authorize the French gentleman most interested to send back flattering inducements for his countrymen to join him.

But a few years will pass before the Chinese will be dispersed over the Mississippi valley and Western and Southern States, and the manufacture of the several practicable varieties of silk will be carried on, by whatsoever advantages their knowledge and capacity for such labor afford, in other portions of our country besides California. There seems to be no reason why the tens of millions of dollars which we annually pay to England, France and other European nations for this fabric may not be expended in enriching our own land.

There are other textile plants, the value of which is yet to be determined by experiment, that furnish the Chinese with fine raiment. One of them is the hemp nettle (*Urtica nivea*), which grows several feet high and yields three crops in the course of the year, between June and October. It supplies, by boiling, pounding and bleaching, the principal material for the beautiful "grass-cloth," resembling our linen, though more bright in texture and pearly in color, which the Chinese wear in the summer, and call *hia-po*, or "summer-cloth." There is a creeper (*Dolichos bulbosus*) which gives to the poor a strong yellowish fibre suitable for more common uses. But these materials of agricultural and manufacturing wealth can only be hinted at here.[1] English botanists are inquiring into the character of some of

[1] A new textile plant, the Ramie (*Bœhmeria tenacissima*), is now attracting much attention. It resembles hemp, nettle and other *Urticaceæ*, and it is claimed that it is "as fine, as white and twice as durable as flax, and more productive than cotton, and will sell for twice the price of cotton." It was brought from Java to France in 1844. It grows well in the Gulf States and parallel latitudes.

Digitized by Google

them, and introducing those most suitable into their own colonies. The Chinese manufacture paper out of a variety of materials, some of which may prove useful to us. The bamboo is the most common, and I have seen beautiful paper made of it by mills in this country. There is a curious plant which has been styled the "Nepal paper plant," which has been used for centuries in China and some of the countries west of it. It has been said by a British botanist (Dr. Campbell) that it makes a paper "as strong and durable as leather almost, and quite smooth enough to write on, and for office records incomparably better than any India paper."

The practicability of introducing or cultivating through Chinese labor the numerous esculents and beverages of the Oriental world cannot be more than briefly alluded to in this volume. The question of the cultivation of tea in this country is one which has long interested our botanists and horticulturists. There is nothing to prevent it in respect to climate. The best Chinese tea comes from between latitudes 25° and 33°, but it grows down to the tropical shores of the China sea on one extreme, and in the mountain regions amid heavy snows on the other. It is the opinion of the best judges that good tea can be produced in almost any climate here south of New England. The plant loves broken hillsides, a light soil, the neighborhood of streams and a good deal of moisture. The smooth, dark-colored, leathery, serrated leaf is best when plucked from shrubs between four and seven feet in height. But the plant under the most favorable circumstances rises to five or six times that height, with leaves proportionably large, but too rank for use. There are many parts of the

Digitized by Google

United States where it could be easily grown. The preparation of the leaf for commercial uses is performed at an expense of time and labor in China which would be intolerable to any other nation. The cost of the finest tea there is more than twenty dollars a pound; but that is confined to a few fancy kinds, which our uncultivated taste could scarce distinguish from others of one-tenth the price. The results of all the manipulation by the Chinese, it is believed by gentlemen who have thoroughly examined its processes, could be readily secured by machinery, so that we could in time afford to produce our own tea.

The success of the British in raising tea in Assam is encouraging to us. In the year 1834 they began to cultivate the wild plant which had been found growing abundantly in the vicinity of the Brahmapootra river. The results induced them to form joint-stock companies for its enlargement in England and India. Chinese laborers and workmen were imported, who taught Hindù coolies. The difficulties and outlays connected with new and extensive enterprises in a wild region several hundred miles from the sea have been fully met. A few years ago sixty companies were there engaged in tea-culture. A large territory has become populous and animated with life, industry and civilization through this new source of colonial wealth. The Europeans are introducing tea into other parts of Northern India, but their families are chiefly supplied with the article from Assam; and the exports to England from the latter region have become considerable and will be rapidly increased.

The tea plant is cultivated in Java and other islands of the Indian Archipelago, and in Brazil and some

Digitized by Google

other countries. Twenty years ago it was raised in our Southern States. Dr. Junius Smith found it would grow well in South Carolina. There is no reason why so valuable a plant may not be domesticated in many other parts of our country, particularly in the South.

There have been found in various parts of Asia more than a hundred and thirty kinds of rice. Those commonly used by the people of Canton province they greatly prefer to what we raise in the Carolinas, though smaller and more yellow, on the ground that they are more palatable and nutritive. Sugar is manufactured by the Chinese in immense quantities and by economical processes, much of it by voluntary crystallization. It is never produced from the sorghum, which has been found so useful in the United States, but is there only known in a few localities, chiefly as furnishing cane for chewing. Numerous valuable fruits may be transplanted from Asia to the soil of the New World. The finest ground or peanuts sold at the stands in the streets of the Atlantic cities are from the Pacific coast, but it is not yet known here that the most abundant and cheap oil of the Chinese, used like that of the olive of Europe for food and burned in the lamps for light, is obtained from this nut.[1]

No vegetable gift of the Old World to the New will be more truly valuable than the bamboo. It will meet some of the greatest wants of the prairies and plains. It

[1] The cultivation of this plant, both for eating and for oil, is attracting much attention in the South. Portions of the lowlands of Virginia and North Carolina have been more remuneratively devoted to this than to any other crop. In 1868 it was estimated that sixty-two thousand bushels were sold and shipped; in 1869 perhaps one-fourth more than that amount, the prices ranging from one dollar and forty to two dollars and sixty cents a bushel, according to the quality.

Digitized by Google

is employed in various parts of the world for fences, grows rapidly in brakes and affords a nutritious food, when young, to cattle. There are many very different varieties, unlike in color, size and grain, and adapted to many valuable purposes. Poles, ropes, furniture, tubes, paper, cups and a thousand useful and ornamental things are made out of the bamboo. On the land and on the water its uses are almost beyond description. It has seemed to me in looking at the cane-brakes of the South that Providence has already supplied the valley of the Mississippi and our Southern States with a plant which in the hands of the Chinese must prove valuable in coming days. The "cane" (*Arundinaria macrosperma*), though of a different botanical order from the bamboo (*Bambusa arundinacea*), possesses some of its most useful qualities. The hard silicious surface, the long straight rods, the hollow tubes of various sizes, the edible sprouts, suggest a great abundance of applications.

The capacity of the Chinese to adapt themselves to our wants as laborers and workmen has been fully proved. In the factories of various kinds, at San Francisco and elsewhere on the coast, they work with the endurance of men united to the nimbleness and facility of our women in similar occupations. They are equal to the severe labors of foundries, brick-yards, rope-walks and tanneries. They may be seen busily wrapping the tobacco leaf into cigars and cigarettes, or plying the sewing-machine to manufacture flannel shirts, or cutting and stitching light slippers for the American trade.

The Chinese upon our Pacific coast have proved themselves admirable miners. When the hostility of white foreigners has driven them out of the better mining

Digitized by Google

Halliday Race

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

regions, or compelled them to remain satisfied with diggings which have already been washed over two or three times, they have still toiled patiently and diligently. During the dry season, while most others were lying idle, they might be seen making repairs, digging and collecting the dirt into the best situations to take advantage of the coming rise of water, or at other work. In the employment of our people they have proved of great value at quartz-mining. Rock which could not be worked by white labor, with wages at seven to three dollars a day, can be made profitable when Chinese can be got to extract the ore and deliver it at the mill at two dollars or less. Thus districts which had been almost abandoned have revived and all classes of the population been directly benefited. For although the laboring class of whites objected to the low wages paid to the Chinese, yet the possibility of carrying on mining operations furnished themselves with other and better employments, and so sustained life in the community. And the mining licenses, of four dollars each per month, which have been exacted with scrupulous punctuality and faithfulness to duty—nay, sometimes, that the collector might be sure he was on the safe side, two or three times in the same month—have in some counties paid the entire ordinary expenses of the county, whose treasury would otherwise have been bankrupt.

The public enterprises which are covering the Pacific coast with the peculiar advantages of modern civilization are to a large degree the fruit of the patient and cheap labor of the Chinese, either hired there or induced to come by the offers of a liberal recompense published in their own seaports. The roads among the mountains,

Digitized by Google

the leveling of the rugged and broken streets of various cities and towns, the introduction of pure water from distant streams into these places, the reclamation of swamp or overflowed lands and similar important enterprises, have owed their projection and success mainly to the fact that there were thousands of laborers to be procured at rates which would render the outlay of capital remunerative.

The construction of railroads has given employment to eight or ten thousand Chinese at a time. But for the opportunity to perform this work by Chinese labor, it is declared by the directors of the Central Pacific Railroad that they would not have dared to undertake it. The usual wages paid is thirty dollars a month. In the ordinary grading and other labor they are equal to whites. They work cheerfully eleven hours a day. They are never drunk one day and good for nothing the next. There is no fighting. An overseer who had had much experience with them told me that their quiet, steady way of working accomplished full as much as that of any other laborers, and without driving and bad temper. The route of the Central Pacific road, extending from Salt Lake to Sacramento, lies chiefly among the mountains, with steep grades and numerous tunnels. That at the summit of the Sierra Nevadas, seven thousand feet above the sea and a hundred and five miles east of Sacramento, is one thousand six hundred feet long. The tunnel at Emigrant Gap, near Cisco, is three hundred and fifty feet in length; there are others, longer or shorter. They are all cut wide enough for a double track. A competent engineer stated that in this heavy and laborious "rock-work," requiring patience and care,

Digitized by Google

the Chinese were the best hands that could be obtained. The vice-president of the company said that he wished they had twice as many Chinese in their employ as they had been able to get.

When one considers the immense amount of labor which must be performed in laying down the railroads that are necessary to open up the incalculably vast mineral resources of all the States and Territories on the Pacific slope and in the interior of the continent, and to transport them to the Pacific and Atlantic sea-ports, the presence of a race so accessible and so capable as the Chinese impresses the mind as a divine providence appointed to meet this national want. No other nation could furnish the supply required. And these people seem to possess just the qualities we need in such labor.

The supposition that the Chinese are a class who work for wages not sufficient to maintain laboring men comfortably, and who subsist upon cheap and refuse food, is unfounded. In the towns they certainly are fond of good living, and the costly dinners to which they have invited their friends in California have been often described in our newspapers. In frequent visits to the mining regions I made it a point to satisfy myself upon this subject. I sought also the testimony of gentlemen extensively acquainted with them. A couple of extracts from the numerous letters which I received will set the truth, which it is important for our people to know, in its proper light.

A merchant doing a large business in one of the principal cities of the interior wrote as follows: "It is impossible for me to give an accurate estimate of the amount of goods sold in this city to Chinamen. I have

Digitized by Google

conversed with several of the mountain merchants, and they give it as their opinion that more than three-fourths of their sales to Chinamen are for American products. Almost every merchant in the mines has more or less Chinese trade, and a good many of them are dependent almost entirely on them for their business. The following are the kind of goods, provisions, etc., they consume the most of: potatoes, cabbage, pork, chickens, flour and almost every article of vegetables raised in this State; they buy clothing, shoes, boots, blankets, American brandy, whisky, gin, hams, beans, lard, codfish, lobsters and almost every article of American production to some extent. As they become Americanized, the demand for American products increases with them. Their trade is valuable, being almost entirely cash. They are generally prompt in meeting their contracts. They are shrewd and close dealers, but spend their money freely for luxuries and comforts. It is said when a Chinaman does not live well it is because he has not the money to procure such as he would like. The Chinamen say that the estimate is made that they spend in the country seven-tenths on an average of all the money they make. Dealers with them in the mines are of the opinion that their estimate is nearly correct; it is the opinion, at least, of those I have conversed with."

A professional gentleman whose pursuits led him to travel widely over the State wrote to me as follows: "In frequent journeys extending from the head waters of the Feather to the Merced, I can say I have reason to believe that among the American mining population there is no other class of foreign miners who do not speak our language who sustain so high a character for industry,

Digitized by Google

honesty and direct patronage of American productions and enterprise. I have often inquired of merchants as to their business with the Chinese, and almost always been answered that their trade was very extensive and important; that while they consume large quantities of imported provisions from China, yet they also purchase much that is American, and often that which is most expensive, even luxuries, such as chickens, eggs, fresh meats in cans, pork, even when it might be twice as dear as beef, melons, fruit, etc.; that the Chinese would purchase when the expense was such as to deter Americans, for the Chinese would have what they wanted, cost what it may. They are generally free from drunkenness, quarrels and lazy habits, which characterize many others in the mines, and labor faithfully, satisfied when none others will work. I have just called upon an agent of the California Stage Company in this place, and was told by him that, to the best of his judgment, taking all their stage routes together, full one-quarter of their passengers during the last year had been Chinese; that they patronize public conveyances in proportion to their numbers more than Americans. I find also that the Chinese are often employed as cooks, and are very well spoken of as such, as also in other kindred occupations. They seem to be almost universally respected among the mining and laboring portion of the inhabitants. I can say decidedly, I believe that among the working-classes in the mountains they are truly considered as worthy of much regard, and the strong feeling is that they ought not to be taxed as high as they are; that they ought to have legal protection from those who rob and steal from them, even to murdering them, for they have

Digitized by Google

no redress unless an American is witness to the deed, and comes in with the law to their relief; and that their oath ought to be allowed in legal tribunals, at least so far that a jury or court might, if it judged best, receive their testimony. I am strongly of opinion that the opposition to the Chinese arises from prejudice, and not from their interfering with any American interests, and is almost entirely confined to the unproducing class in our country—to gamblers, loafers, liquor-dealers, etc." Other testimonies would but serve to sustain the above. They corroborate the views which I have presented in this chapter.

I have not considered this subject now in its higher civil and moral relations. But this much is evident, that, looking at the advent of the Chinese race in the New World in the light of an accession to the sum of the physical labor which is necessary to meet our agricultural, manufacturing, domestic and other wants, both its characteristics and the partial experience of those who have tested it upon our Pacific coast show that it must be regarded as a great, opportune and valuable national benefit.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVIII.

POPULAR GOVERNMENT IN CHINA.

THE sentiments of Americans with regard to China have hitherto been principally formed by the writings of men born and educated under monarchical institutions. The earliest and the most abundant productions which have made us acquainted with that remote and exclusive empire have been those of the Jesuits, Lazarists, Dominicans, Franciscans and priests of other Roman Catholic orders, who began vigorously to attempt the conversion of its people to their system of Christianity more than three centuries ago. The French, German and other authors who have described China have been chiefly indebted to the narratives, reports and histories of these men, which have been numerous, full and well written, for their facts and the conclusions from them. But these priests fear and hate popular liberty. "No means must be omitted," said Pope Clement XIII., "to exterminate the fatal pest, which spreads through so many works." We know how the late Gregory XVI. was infuriated by "that pest of all others most to be dreaded in a state—unbridled liberty of opinion"—"that worst and never sufficiently to be execrated and detestable liberty of the press, for the diffusion of all manner of writings." The principles, the desires, the

Digitized by Google

interests of these men all disposed them to magnify the majesty, the authority, the wealth, the extent of the imperial power. They slavishly courted it in China; they magnified it in Europe. They dread the power of the people in China, as we have the evidence they do in America. There is little for Americans to learn from their books as to what exists of it in China.

The other chief source of American knowledge has been the books written by servants of the British government, or by British travelers or missionaries. There is much that is valuable in them. Yet two fatal influences corrupt most of their conceptions of the Chinese political system. The first is that of their previous monarchical ideas. The second is that of the immense stake which Great Britain has in the opium traffic. The national conscience and judgment are perverted, so far as justice to the Chinese is concerned, by the one fact that Great Britain supports her Indian government, enriches multitudes of her subjects and preserves the control of Oriental commerce, by the cultivation in India and annual sale to China of fifty millions of dollars' worth of opium. These people dare not consider the virtues of the innocent family whom they are robbing, and whose house they are burning over their heads.

Now that China is brought to be our nearest neighbor on the west and her interests and ours are so much identified, we must examine her institutions for ourselves, and from a new position.

A fairer estimate of the Chinese will take the place, on the one extreme, of the blunders or misrepresentations as to her political character which held up their empire as a model government; and on the other extreme of the

Digitized by Google

mistake and folly of those as to her moral character which painted her people as the most vicious or sensual of the heathen. A letter was published some years ago from Dr. S. Wells Williams, the Chinese Secretary to the American Legation at Peking, and author of the work entitled "The Middle Kingdom," in which he says: "The Chinese race has, perhaps, risen as high as is possible in the two great objects of human government—security of life and property to the governed, and freedom of action under the individual restraints of law."[1] The object of this chapter is to exhibit them in such a light, as the deduction from the writer's experience among them in their own country and in California.

There are few nations of the world among whom the freedom of the people is more large, more squarely founded upon their intelligence, or more carefully guarded against despotism, than it is in China.

To those who are acquainted with the history of mankind this will not seem strange. For though it flatters our national vanity to assume representative forms to be the pleasant fruit of bitter seed and of long and painful cultivation, yet this is not the truth. The first state of men in society is one of political equality. The first natural advance toward its organization is their election to authority of those most capable of protecting them and punishing the vicious. Where society has remained most peaceful and unchanged we may expect to find its original institutions less disturbed. The dispersion of great families, interferences with regular occupations, long migrations, wars, changes of circumstances, tend to break them up. The planting of mankind upon a new

[1] *New York Observer.*

Digitized by Google

hemisphere is like a new creation, in which a small number of individuals, compelled to meet the first necessities of existence, return to the primitive ideas of government.

To men, therefore, who are informed as to the past history of the nations of the earth and as to their present relative condition, it will seem credible that the oldest and most unchanged of them should not be so different as many believe from the newest of them, which has revolutionized the forms whose tyranny drove its founders beyond their reach to another hemisphere; that China should be the freest nation of the East, as the United States is of the West. Nor will it seem improbable that the notions which many entertain of the Chinese, which are gathered from the writings of Europeans as prejudiced against the one as they are against the other, and indeed very ignorant of the real condition and spirit of either, or else formed from the partial and superficial observations of some of our own people, should prove to be mistaken and unjust.

The classical student will see the force of this when he remembers the political system of ancient Rome—an empire whose history has some remarkable points of analogy to that of China. Beneath the monarchical rule, which became more and more strong until the popular liberty was at last crushed by it, there rise constantly to view institutions which display the power of the people. Thus the "tribes"[1] held their separate regular assemblies; they elected officers who at length came

[1] The English word "tribe" comes indeed from the Latin *tribus*, signifying originally one of the *three* clans, the Ramnes, the Tities and the Luceres, which at an early period embraced in one or the other of them the whole of the people.

Digitized by Google

to be represented in the Senate and even administer the government. They were governed by their own regulations or laws; they aided the state in the collection of debts and in the punishment of crimes; they had a certain control over the property of their members and over its transmission to heirs; they did not permit intermarriage between families connected with different tribes; they maintained each a particular religious worship, and they exercised a benevolent care over their own poor, supplying them when necessary with food. The members of various trades formed another class of popular associations which were possessed of great power in the state. In the time of Numa there were nine of these colleges or associations: pipers, goldsmiths, carpenters, dyers, girdle-makers, tanners, potters, workers in brass, and one embracing the remaining trades.

In India the despotism of successive conquering races has been checked and ameliorated by the continued maintenance from the earliest ages of the system of clans or village communities, which is described by Henry Sumner Maine,[1] a very able English lawyer, a member of the supreme council of India, to be "more than a brotherhood of relatives, and more than an association of partners. It is an organized society; and besides providing for the management of the common fund, it seldom fails to provide, by a complete staff of functionaries, for internal government, for police, for the administration of justice and for the apportionment of taxes and public duties."

A nation of Europe whose extraordinary friendship to our own has often puzzled politicians of both that and

[1] In his work on *Ancient Law*, pp. 254, etc.

Digitized by Google

our continent, who did not see the deeper principles which bind them together, Russia, which wonderfully unites the ancient with the modern and the Oriental with the European in her political and social structure, may be given as another example of the power of the ancient republicanism. It may be said that the government is more in the hands of the people than with the emperor and aristocracy. This is the key to the astonishing advancement of Russia in wealth, freedom and power within a few generations past. The empire was built upon the subjugation of numerous cities and tribes, independent and democratic in their form. And now these elements are again leavening the whole system. The communes hold triennial elections; voters must be twenty-five years of age and the elders elected not under thirty; no man can vote who has been convicted of crime; persons of any useful employment are eligible to office; the poor consider themselves equal with the rich; the only distinction in the garments is in the richness of the material, not in the shape or fashion, and they eat together at the same table; the officers elected are the elders, a number of councilors, a collector of taxes, with the necessary assistants, an overseer of the public granary and the police; provision is made for the supply of recruits for the army; and the commune is allowed, if it desire, to establish a local bank. A general council of representatives from these village councils is held in each county or district once in three years, which elects a chief elder, a permanent council, a board of arbitrators and a secretary. Thus it will be seen how much power resides with the people of Russia and how far the general government yields local affairs into their hands. Even

Digitized by Google

the mines discovered on the property of individuals are not claimed, as is the case in many countries of the West, by the government; and to this many of the great families owe their rise.

I have mentioned these ancient republican institutions, or their remains, in order to justify the comparison made between those of China and the United States. It must surprise many of our people to observe how much their features resemble those of our own forms, save that ours are overridden by no foreign conquests, and as yet by no successful ambition within our own borders; and further, that ours are more complete and extensive. But the freedom of the people in China is superior to that in either Rome, India or Russia; and I will now describe in what it consists and upon what it is founded.

Let us take up three leading features of the Chinese government: the theory of the imperial power; the principles on which the general government is administered; and the forms of local popular government which universally exist. As the latter is the most interesting subject, the first two will be discussed more briefly.

The theory of the imperial power is that the people are not subjects to be ruled by fear, but children to be inspired and controlled by affection and gratitude toward a father who with unceasing anxiety watches over and cares for them all. There is a book of remarkable interest in a moral view which well illustrates this. It is a series of moral discourses prepared by the emperor Yung-ching upon the basis of sixteen maxims of his father, the great Kang-hi (who reigned from A.D. 1661 for sixty years), for the purpose of having them read to the people of the whole empire at the beginning and

Digitized by Google

middle of every month. The first of these "Sacred Instructions" is upon "filial piety." Yung-ching says: "The definite design of our sacred Father was to govern the empire through the principle of filial piety. Upon that principle is founded the unchangeable laws of heaven, the government of providence on earth and the common obligations of all men." In the second discourse, upon the duties of families and kindred to each other, he applies the idea practically: "The kindred which spring from the same stock are like the streams which flow from one fountain, or like the branches which grow upon one tree. Though these differ, as the one may in its course flow through extended districts, or as the other in its branches may ramify more widely, yet the source of the stream and the root of the tree remain the same. Thus with the maintenance of the principle of filial piety. Harmony is promoted by it in the family, in the village and in the city; the spirit of unity is breathed abroad; general happiness is enjoyed, and a scene of peace is presented."[1] And it is but just to say that these admirable sentiments are repeated in the state-papers of each succeeding emperor of that great nation.

The comparative freedom of the people of China is, in the next place, made manifest in the political principles upon which the general government is administered. To secure an intelligent, capable and faithful magistracy, the foundation of all preferment is planted upon *education*. To this fact the admiration of the world may be boldly challenged. Hear it, nations of the West! It is not hereditary perhaps without personal honor, it is not the power of wealth, it is not the claims of

[1] SHING-YU, Discourses i. and ii.

Digitized by Google

Returning Thanks to the gods after the harvest

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

favoritism, it is not pandering to popular prejudices or interests, upon which the aspiring in China are encouraged to place their hopes, but upon education! The best writings of their sages from the earliest ages are compiled into books for the instruction of the young. Schools abound, taught at cheap rates by advanced students, or supported by endowments or charitable contributions. Books in common use are much cheaper than in this country. The examinations of children in the villages are conducted monthly by the elders, at which a simple theme is proposed, upon which they write their juvenile essays. And examinations, upon given topics in prose and in poetry, chiefly moral, historical and political, are held at times and places which vary according to their importance, for scholars at successive stages of advancement until they reach the highest, which is held once in three years at the capital of the empire. The successful competitors at the higher ones receive appointments to the offices under government. I was at Canton upon the occasion of a great triennial examination of candidates for the second degree, which entitled to the best offices of the cities and districts of a province of twenty-one millions of people. Seventy-two were to be selected. For a chance among that number seven or eight thousand educated men presented themselves, some of them white with old age. Two imperial commissioners from Pekin presided. The candidates were all shut up in the close rooms of a range of buildings provided for these occasions, and could not come out until their essays on the five themes given were completed. The whole city and province were in a ferment of interest. Heralds were in waiting, who, by swift

Digitized by Google

boats, horses and running, conveyed tidings of the result to every part of the province; and in their native towns the successful ones were welcomed with banners and music and feasts of joy. I have shed tears of regret that in my own dear country no such sublime and delightful spectacles are witnessed. The incorporation of this great elementary principle is the thing most wanting in the republicanism of the United States. We may not want "compulsory education," the refuge and the instrument of despotism. But we do want sound education, not alone for the children of more favored classes, but also in schools open to all, maintained at the public expense, and leavened by the fundamental truths of Christianity, to be the great avenue to social honor and to political power. Here lies the mighty secret of the stability of China. Without education founded upon the revelation of God, we have little to hope for the future of America.

The principles on which the government is administered are forcibly brought before us in the consideration of the numerous methods which have been introduced to guard against abuses and ensure impartiality and honesty. Four of these are particularly worthy of observation:

First. The officers of the general government are detached from local influences by the rule that no man shall hold office in the province of which he is a native.

Second. The dangers connected with the growth of such influences in any portion of the country are provided against by another rule which fixes a term for holding office, and that a comparatively short one—only three years. If the question be asked whether this pro-

Digitized by Google

vision may not spring from the jealousy of a foreign ruling dynasty, the reply is at hand, that it was established in the fifth century of the Christian era, and appears to be held as a fundamental idea of the political system.

Third. A Board of Review, or Censorate, at Peking, is appointed to revise all documents sent to the court and inspect the conduct of officers, from the humblest of them even to the emperor upon the throne. Officers connected with this department report from every part of the empire acts of official misconduct. The courage with which this Board and its servants expose and rebuke even the most wealthy and powerful and secure their punishment is often surprising and worthy of admiration. They do not spare even "the Son of heaven," when the welfare of his subjects seems to require his vices to be sternly reproved; and some of them have suffered death in consequence. The histories of the empire hand down with language of praise the names and actions of those who have been most faithful. This remarkable feature of the government has attracted the attention of the monarchical powers of the world. Sir Geo. T. Staunton, in making the translation of the Penal Code of the present dynasty, adds the note, that "The Tribunal of the Censorate has the power of inspecting and animadverting upon the proceedings of all the other boards and tribunals of the empire, and even on the acts of the sovereign himself, whenever they are conceived to be censurable."[1] But it is not a mere censorship for criticism. The French Jesuit, Du Halde, presents it in its highest office of a constant monitor of the

[1] *Penal Code*, etc., note to Section 171.

Digitized by Google

responsibility of the government to the people. He describes the censors in his work on China[1] as the representatives of the people, to whom the emperor himself is compelled to yield; for, "should he injure them he would really increase their honor, and obtain for himself odious epithets, which the appointed historians of the empire would scrupulously transmit to posterity." He says the court is compelled to degrade officers whom they persist in accusing, "to avoid disgusting the people, and sullying its own reputation."

Fourth. Another of the methods by which the welfare of the people is secured is the system of official reports to the Six Boards, or Departments,[2] of the government; which reports virtually appeal to the popular sentiment of the nation for its support, through the *Peking Gazette* and other means of universal publication. This Gazette (whose proper name is the *King Chau* or "Reporter of the Capital") is a pamphlet of forty to sixty pages, published each one, two or three days, as the matter is supplied. It is distributed over the whole empire in a limited number of copies to leading points, which are there rapidly reprinted by various means, and supplied to officers, to men of wealth who pay about twelve dollars a year for copies which they retain, and to circles of readers who hire them successively for sums which diminish according to the time after their publication, just as the London *Times* and other expensive newspapers are supplied in England

[1] Vol. i. pp. 71 and 250.

[2] These are, 1, the Department of State; 2, the Department of Revenue; 3, the Department of Rites; 4, the Department of War; 5, the Judicial Department; 6, the Department of Public Works.

Digitized by Google

and on the Continent. The officers of each province in turn publish their reports or subjects for popular information or consideration. And indeed the walls of Chinese towns are covered with placards of every kind, political, commercial, quack-medicines, etc., just as they are in this country. Thus a thinking and intelligent people keep public affairs incessantly under their own eye.

These statements as to the theory of the imperial power and the principles of the general administration possess great weight in estimating the true character of the political institutions of China, and evince an amount of popular intelligence, liberty and power which will bear comparison with that of the monarchical countries of Europe.

But an acquaintance with the structure of the general government is not the true way to comprehend the extent of the freedom which the Chinese enjoy. This is only to be learned from a careful study of their popular forms, which are distinct from that and which often successfully oppose it. I refer to the organizations of the clans; the town or district councils; the trade associations, and the clubs or companies established for occasional or special objects. The secret societies for political and other purposes are numerous and powerful, but an account of them does not come within our scope in considering the lawful institutions of the country.

The first mentioned, and, it may be justly said, the fundamental and most ancient, organization of a political nature is that of the clan.

The clan stands in China just where it did in the Hebrew commonwealth and the kingdoms of Judah and

Digitized by Google

Israel, at the foundation of the whole structure. No man thoroughly conceives the polity of the Hebrew people who looks at it through the medium of European and Western models. There are many features of it which it is most important, as illuminated by divine revelation, for the statesman, the scholar, the Christian, to examine; such are the operations and effects of the fundamental republican form, united with the primary honor accorded to the lineal representative of the founder of the clan; the conjunction of secular and religious purposes and agencies in relation to the education of the youth; the legislative and other powers of these lesser presbyteries, or of the general assemblies, of the representatives of the people; the functions of the elders, judges and other officers, and their place in the Church and State, both ancient and modern; the police regulations of villages and towns; the energy of a military system, either for defence or offence, which is built upon free and republican institutions and the affection of the people; the jealousies and quarrels of clans and tribes and their ruinous results; the regard of the general government to the rights of those of a local character, even in the appointment of the two hundred and twelve porters at the gates of the temple at Jerusalem, "according to their genealogy in their villages," and the provision for "their brethren in the villages to come, after seven days, from time to time, with them;" the careful observance of natural laws as to consanguinity and marriage, and the effects of polygamy and other infractions of them; the precise and scientific nomenclature of degrees of kindred, as throwing light on the tribal systems of the nations of the world and as an evidence of the de-

Digitized by Google

scent of the human species from one stock; the nature, benefits and evils of frequent popular festivals; the laws as to the entail, the conveyance and the restoration of property, pledges, pawnbrokers and the collection of debts; the provision from the public funds for the wants of the poor and the infirm; the reservation of a proportion of the produce of years of abundance in public granaries to meet the wants of years of scarcity or famine; the origin and obligation of the use of sevenths in respect to time and of decimal numbers in respect to property, as seals of the divine right in them and as measures of duty in the consecration of them for religious purposes; the fundamental principles in the punishment of criminals and the modes of inflicting it; the exceeding reverence for the aged and the honorable; the regard for the dead, and the use to be made of the examples of the wise and good; the ideas as to the seminal principle of life in the human bones, the care to be exercised in preserving them and collecting them in and about the ancient sepulchres of the family, and the resurrection of the dead; the annual religious observances connected with the repair and care of burial places; the peculiar force of the prophecies of the Scripture, the comfort of the specific promises and the solemnity of the warnings as to "families" and "kindred," and as to the "*gentiles*," or nations whose peculiar social edifice is reared upon the relation to ancestry;—these are some of the topics which arise in the investigation of the nature of clans as they did exist in Palestine, and as they do exist in China and to a less extent in other portions of the Old World, and among the remains of the Indian tribes on our own continent. I employ the analogy of the Hebrew clans to

Digitized by Google

the Chinese in order to simplify the idea of the latter in the minds of the people of this country and to show their democratic nature; and further, that I may suggest this as one of many kindred themes which open broad and fertile fields of remunerative research, which is of a nature to comfort the mind and strengthen the purposes of the foreign missionary of the Gospel, and to peculiarly interest and instruct the people of our country as to some relationships and bearings of republican institutions which may be new to many of them and are most important for us to understand who see the beginning, but not the end, of our national life.

The general designs of the support of the clan organizations may be briefly stated to be these: defence against the power of the general government; mutual aid and protection in business and the common transactions of life; festive enjoyments; and the maintenance of the worship of the spirits of the dead. There are about four hundred and fifty clans in the empire.[1] Branches of the most important of them are found in nearly every province. A town, however, never consists of people of one clan alone, since a man is not allowed to marry a woman of the same name. The organization of them is so complete that, while it sometimes secures justice to the innocent, it may besides thwart the designs of the government, and even of justice. In some parts of the country they keep up bitter and even bloody quarrels from generation to generation; and the chiefs of the clan at Pe-

[1] The *Pih Kia Sing* or "Collection of Family Names," a book written upon this subject, which is taught in schools, gives the whole of them, with brief notices of their origin. The foreign races, of course, are not mentioned in it, and I have been told that there are some proper Chinese who do not belong to any of the clans.

Digitized by Google

king are able to prevent the punishment of murder and violence committed by members of it elsewhere. In the country in the south of China we have seen tombs broken up and defaced, the dikes of rice-fields destroyed and property abused, through the feuds of hostile clans.

Emigrants do not generally maintain these organizations. I know of none in California.

The second class of powerful popular organizations in China is the trade associations, or guilds. They resemble those for similar objects in Europe and America, and therefore need no special description here. They are there, as here, often beneficent in their operation, and yet often oppressive. In a monarchical or despotic government they are useful as a check against its tyranny; but it is still doubtful whether they are not more of an injury than a benefit, since they interfere with healthful competition, remove incitements to industry, and provide opportunities for the arts of intriguing and worthless men, or resorts for the depraved. It is stated that there are a hundred and fifty of their halls in Canton. They spend a great deal of money in parades and acts of idolatrous worship.

The third class is that of town and district councils. This forms the highest advance toward a regular representative government. They exercise the local powers of government to such an extent that the imperial officers rarely dare to rouse them to general resistance. The local administration of justice is left almost wholly in their hands. Police arrangements and taxation for local purposes are within their jurisdiction. The elders elected are generally continued so long as they perform their duties with satisfaction to the people. They are

Digitized by Google

allowed a salary of from two to four hundred dollars a year. The elders of a district which may embrace fifty or a hundred towns and villages meet in a distinct council, which has its central hall and a president and other necessary officers, who receive sufficient salaries. The cities are divided into large wards, which have their separate councils, but act together by representatives when occasion requires. Their administration is very effective. The police of the city of Canton number about a thousand. The streets, which are only a few feet in width, have a gate at the end of each square, which is closed at night, and guarded by a watchman, who also strikes the hour upon a loud-sounding hollow piece of bamboo.

During the stormy times succeeding the Opium War, foreigners seeking to enlarge their former restrictions often came into conflict with these councils and proved the extent of the popular power. We were effectually prevented renting houses, after agreeing to pay the most outrageous, exorbitant rents, by a simple notification from the council of the ward of the city in which they were situated that if the owner admitted us to the building it would be destroyed and himself put to death. Nor was the governor-general, with the power of the emperor to back him, able to sustain us against such a decree.

These democratic bodies do not hesitate to resist the imperial officers. A mandarin who had made his name detested by his evil deeds was met one day in going forth with his retinue by an aged, white-haired coolie bearing a heavy burden. The old man was unable quickly to clear the way, and the officer commanded

Digitized by Google

him to be thrown down and beaten. The enraged inhabitants of the ward closed their shops, and did not rest until the man who treated hoary hairs with disrespect and a poor man with such cruelty was driven from the city.

A robber of desperate character was detected amidst a crowd in the court of the Wa-lam temple listening to the recitations of a story-teller. He killed a soldier before he could be overpowered. He was tried, and sentenced by the judge to be beheaded in the temple, and his vitals to be laid upon the altar as a sacrifice to the spirit of the slain soldier. So unusual a punishment created much excitement in the district. The ward councils took up the matter and prohibited the execution of the sentence, but gave permission for the head of the soldier, if he were decapitated at the execution-ground, to be hung up near the temple as a terror to evil-doers.

The imperial government is much less to be blamed than the people of Western nations have supposed on account of the disturbances which have occurred with foreigners. The local democracy was more often the offending party. And their resistance in turn was the result of the misdeeds of our people. After the conclusion of the bloody Opium War, which seemed to them a most inexcusable and tremendous crime from beginning to end, it was made one of the provisions of the treaty with Great Britain, August 29, 1842, that five new ports were to be opened for foreign trade, and it was generally understood that the same privileges would as soon as practicable be granted at Canton. The people, however, resisted, being alarmed at the idea of the introduction of British traders and soldiery within the city,

Digitized by Google

confident in their numbers, and filled also with a superstitious terror of the powers of "the foreign demons," whom they supposed to be of a constitution and nature different from their own and much to be dreaded. Their local councils proclaimed that a hundred thousand "braves" had been enlisted to carry on the war to the extermination of these "devils;" Ki-ying, a most able and intelligent governor, was completely baffled in his efforts to maintain peace; and neither the power of their own government nor the continued threatening demonstrations of that of Great Britain could subdue them, until finally Lord Elgin and Baron Gros, supported by the allied English and French fleets, bombarded the city in December, 1857, burned down a considerable portion of it, and placed it under a military control which continued for two years. The Presbyterian Mission buildings and library were among the property destroyed.

In what has been said in regard to the general government in this chapter, it is the theory of it, and its better aspects chiefly, which have been presented. If it be thought I have gone too far, I might sustain this view by quotations from the most intelligent men who have come into direct acquaintance with the Chinese. The eminent British statesman, Sir George T. Staunton, speaks with admiration of the Chinese system of law, and studied the language and made a translation of the Penal Code of the present dynasty. Concerning this translation, the *Edinburgh Review*[1] said: "The most remarkable thing in this code is its great reasonableness, clearness and consistency; the business-like brevity and

[1] In a number published shortly after the publication of the translation—that for August, 1810.

Digitized by Google

directness of the various provisions, and the plainness and moderation of the language in which it is expressed." To this might be added the fact that this code is revised from time to time under the supervision of the emperor and in accordance with the judgment of his wisest counselors, and new editions are published and circulated over the empire. Thus it has acquired the force of a written constitution, and the lines of justice which it draws the emperor himself scarcely dares to exceed. It "savors throughout of practical judgment and European good sense." Thomas Taylor Meadows, Esq., a thorough student of the Chinese literature and politics, interpreter in the British service in China, declares that the Chinese "enjoy an amount of freedom in the disposal of their persons and property which other European nations than the Russians may well envy them." He says that if civilization should be moral and mental before material, then "the Chinese civilization has from the earliest ages been the highest in *kind*, whatever it may have been in *degree* or in the extent to which it has been practiced." He urges strongly some features of it upon the British government for its adoption, and says that in some points of it "the Chinese are practically more Christian than the Christians of the West."[1]

Nor is it denied that in the administration more especially of the general government in China there have existed, and do exist, great abuses and corruption. In so far as these facts relate to the general government alone the objection built upon them does not affect the estimate we place upon the popular forms. But it will

[1] *The Chinese and their Rebellions*, pp. 28, 120, etc.

Digitized by Google

be granted that these have had a share in the universal increase of evil which the best classes of Chinese testify with great grief has grown up within the past half century. And this may be accounted for by the following reasons. The imperial power is in the hands of foreigners, the Manchu Tartars, who are hated by the people, and who have yielded to bribery to obtain means to carry on the government. The popular mind has been everywhere unsettled, the better classes held in anxiety and vice allowed to prevail, on account of the prevalent spirit of rebellion; many treasonable societies have sprung up, and the people have freely quoted the words of old prophecies and oracles, to the effect that the time has come for the overthrow of the present general government. Tremendous corruption, beggary, crime, death, have followed the vast enlargement of foreign trade; most terrible, most inexcusable, most widespread of all the sources of them has been the cultivation by Europeans and Americans of the fatal passion for opium. And one other cause of the universal increase of evil, I hesitate not to say, has been the decay of religious sentiment. The fruit of wars and rumors of wars, of men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth, is—when superadded to religious systems which are bad, worn-out and ready to vanish away—that iniquity abounds. Hence the present heart-affecting condition of China seems to hold in dark relief before our eyes this one principal thought—the stupendous national necessity for the gospel!

It is not assumed, superior as the institutions of China are to those of any other heathen countries, and to those

Digitized by Google

of not a few nominally Christian countries, that their principles bear comparison with those which are the ripened and most precious earthly fruit of Christianity. On the contrary, they will be changed; the time has come for that change; the people will enjoy a more secure, thorough, happy and abiding freedom—a rock on which their whole social structure shall be reared anew, high in the centre of which shall stand in its beauty and glory a new temple upon whose front shall shine the inscription, "Holiness unto the Lord." And all the nations of that boundless continent shall rejoice with them.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIX.

THE CHINESE COMPANIES IN CALIFORNIA.

ONE of the most curious features of social order in California is the Chinese companies. The quiet and timid subordination of the Chinese to our laws, however arbitrary and severe, and the pride or vanity which regards all swarthy races as almost beneath our consideration, have hidden from the eyes of Americans the features and transactions of, as it were, another world all within itself.

I have described in the previous chapter some of the numerous popular organizations which exist in their native land—their clans, their trade associations or guilds, their town and district councils, and their clubs or companies for various specific designs. Let me proceed to speak of the companies which they form here.

The Chinese "companies" in San Francisco, with their branches in the principal towns of the State and neighboring regions where that people resort in large numbers, have been a continual puzzle to Americans. They have regarded them as a degraded and stupid race, reared under a cruel despotism, and most of them brought here under the name of "coolies" to work for capitalists who owned them and received the proceeds of their labor, these capitalists being the heads of the com-

Digitized by Google

panies. The most absurd stories of this kind have been incessantly repeated to the great injury of the Chinese by newspapers and in the legislature. My acquaintance with them, and the entire confidence they reposed in me, on account of aid often rendered to them in their difficulties, enabled me to obtain information which I now proceed to lay before the reading and thinking people of the country, just as I often have spread much of it before the people of various parts of California.

Wherever a large number of Chinese from one province are thrown together in another province of the empire, or in any of the countries or islands whither they trade or emigrate, they at once form associations for the control, protection and general benefit of their members, which are analogous to the councils of their native towns and districts. Among a people of so much shrewdness and common sense, as may be supposed, these objects are thoroughly accomplished. First let us notice their houses or halls.

Upon the southern side of Telegraph Hill, which shields on the north the harbor of San Francisco from the ocean winds which rush through the Golden Gate, a large frame structure stands conspicuous, that is evidently of Chinese architecture, yet different in its appearance from the Chinese dwellings in the city. The front is painted light blue, and from it projects an airy portico. A pair of lions, carved in wood, guard the wide doorway. Above and on either side of it are gilded tablets, with upon each an inscription of several large Chinese characters. This building has often been referred to as "a temple." But its object is not religious.

It is an *Ui-kun* (pronounced *Ooy-koon*) or company

Digitized by Google

house. The large tablet over the door tells, if English alphabetic letters be employed for the Chinese characters, the name of the company,

"YEUNG-WO UI-KUN."

The two perpendicular inscriptions on either side are poetical lines. They read as follows:

TSEUNG KWONG HÁM MÁN LI.
SUI HI P'O T'UNG YAN.

"May the prosperous light fill a thousand leagues."
"May the auspicious air pervade mankind."

The two smaller lines on either board contain the words, "*Set up on a fortunate day of the 8th month, 2d year of the Emperor Hienfung.*"—"*Carved by Fan Yi.*"

Upon entering the house by the side door, an uncovered area, in accordance with the Chinese custom, is seen in the middle, from which rooms open toward the front and rear, and stairs ascend on either side to the second story. The smaller apartments below are occupied by the managers and servants of the company. The largest room or hall is pasted over with sheets of red paper covered with writing. These contain a record of the name and residence of every member of the company, and the amount of his subscription to the general fund. The upper story and the attic, with the outbuildings on the upper side, are, it may be, filled with lodgers, nearly all of whom are staying but temporarily on a visit from the mines, or on their way to or from China. A few sick persons lie on their pallets around, and a group here and there discuss a bowl of rice, or smoke and chat together. In the rear is the kitchen. [All is quiet, orderly and neat.]

This building is the house of the company, which em-

Digitized by Google

Chinese Restaurant, San Francisco

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

braces, since scarcely a solitary individual chooses to separate himself from association with his own neighbors and people or deprive himself of their sympathy and assistance, the entire body of emigrants from three beautiful and rich districts which lie around the Pearl river and its estuary down to the ocean. Heang-shan, at the mouth of the bay, in which the Portuguese colony of Macao is situated, is thirty miles long from north to south, and twenty-five miles wide; Tung-kwan and Tsang-ching are each larger, but have less intercourse with foreigners. The company had some years ago another building, owned by the three districts in common, at Sacramento, and the Heung-shan men had one of their own in Stockton; to these it may have since added others elsewhere as they have been needed for the accommodation of the members, especially as depositories for the baggage of miners.

For the full information of the people of our own country as to the real nature of these "companies," which has been so much misunderstood and widely misrepresented, and in order to show in a plain and convincing way the intelligence and capability of this very practical people, I procured, by a formal application to the Yeung-wo company, a copy of its constitution and rules, a literal translation of which, sentence for sentence, I now give:

"NEW RULES OF THE YEUNG-WO UI-KUN.

"Since it is necessary for the government of such associations, and the promotion of the common good, that some rules should be adopted, we, members of the Yeung-wo Company, now dwelling in a foreign country,

Digitized by Google

have established those which follow. Those which formerly existed in a general form we deem it necessary to draw up in a new and definite shape, and to publish them to all men, since successive immigrations have become less substantial in their character, and troubles have sprung up like thorns. They are in conformity with the customs of the foreign country in which we are sojourning. We trust they will be exactly observed by common consent. They were adopted in the following order on a fortunate day of the ninth month of the year 1854:

"People of the three districts of Heung-shan, Tung-yuen and Tsang-ching are required to report themselves at the company's room; otherwise, the company will exercise no care for them in their concerns.

"The entrance fee shall be ten dollars; if not paid within six months, interest will be expected. These fees may be paid to collectors sent for the purpose into the Northern and Southern Mines, in the fourth and tenth month of each year. No fees will be required from those proved to be invalids, or from transient persons. Receipts for payment of fees must be entered on the books and bear the company's seal. Disputes will not be settled between persons who have not paid the entrance fee. Members purposing to return to China must make the fact known to the agents, when their accounts will be examined, and measures will be taken to prevent it if the entrance fee or other debts remain unpaid. Strangers to the agents of the company must obtain security in persons who will be responsible for their character and debts. Members leaving clandestinely shall be liable to a fine of fifty dollars; and the security for a

Digitized by Google

debt for helping one thus to abscond shall be fined one hundred dollars.

"In the company's house there must be no concealment of stolen goods; no strangers brought to lodge; no gunpowder or other combustible material; no gambling; no drunkenness; no cooking (except in the proper quarters); no burning of sacrificial papers; no accumulation of baggage; no filth; no bathing; no filching of oil; no heaps of rags and trash; no wrangling and noise; no injury of the property of the company; no goods belonging to thieves; no slops of victuals. For the weightier of these offences complaint shall be made to the police of the city; for the lighter, persons shall be expelled from the company. Baggage will not be allowed to remain longer than three years, when it must be removed; nor more than one chest to each person.

"Invalids that cannot labor, are poor and without relatives, may be returned to China at the expense of the company for their passage-money; but provisions and fuel and other expenses must be obtained by subscriptions. Coffins may be furnished for the poor, but of such a careful record shall be kept.

"Quarrels and troubles about claims in the mines should be referred to the company, where they shall be duly considered. If any should refuse to abide by the decision of the company, it will nevertheless assist the injured and defend them from violence. If, when foreigners do injury, a complaint is made, and the company exerts itself to have justice done, without avail, it ought to be submitted to. Whatever is referred for settlement to the assembly of the five companies conjointly cannot again be brought before this company alone.

Digitized by Google

"Where a man is killed, a reward shall be offered by the company for the capture and trial of the murderer, the money being paid only when he has been seized; the members of the company shall subscribe each according to what is just. If more than the anticipated amount is required, the friends of the deceased shall make up the deficiency. Complaint shall be made of offenders to the civil court, and proclamations for their arrest shall be placarded in the principal towns; but any one found guilty of concealing them shall pay all the expenses to which the company has been put. Difficulties with members of other companies shall be reported to the agents of this company, and, if justice demand, shall be referred for the judgment of the five companies conjointly. Offences committed on shipboard, upon the sea, shall be referred to the five companies conjointly. Difficulties brought upon men by their own vices and follies will not receive attention. Thievery and receiving of stolen goods will not be protected; nor will troubles in bawdy-houses, nor those in gambling-houses, nor debts to such, nor extortions of secret associations, nor the quarrels of such associations, nor those who are injured in consequence of refusal to pay their licenses, nor smuggling, nor any violation of American laws. The company will not consider complaints from a distance of a doubtful character, or without sufficient proof. No reply will be made to anonymous letters, or those without date and a specification of the true origin and nature of difficulties. Names must be carefully given in all complaints from the interior. No payments of money will be made in the settlement of cases where the rules of the company are not complied with. Where the con-

Digitized by Google

duct of an individual is such as to bring disgrace on the company and upon his countrymen, he shall be expelled, and a notice to that effect be placarded in each of the five companies' houses; nor will the company be responsible for any of his subsequent villainies, or even make any investigation should he meet with any violent death. Costs connected with the settlement of disputes shall be borne by the party decided to be in the wrong. In difficulties of a pressing and important character in the mines a messenger shall be sent thence, and a judicious person shall at once accompany him to the place. In any quarrel where men are killed or wounded the person who originated it shall be held accountable. Any defensive weapons belonging to the company shall be given to individuals only after joint consultation, and the register of their names. Those requiring such weapons for defence shall give security for their return. If any shall take them on their own responsibility, they shall be held accountable for any consequences.

"Any one using the seal of the company, or addressing a letter in its behalf unauthorized, shall be severely censured if the matter be unimportant; if a serious offence, he shall be handed over to a court of law. The parties and witnesses in cases shall be examined under oath. Representatives from the people of different counties and townships shall be notified by the agents of the company of the time of any meeting; and when assembled they shall not leave until the business be dispatched. Notices of meetings upon urgent business shall be marked with the words 'urgent case;' the representatives so informed shall be fined ten dollars if not present within an hour of the time. In arbitra-

Digitized by Google

tions the agents of the company, the representatives and the witnesses shall all be put on oath.

"Claims for debts, to avoid mistakes, must particularize the true name, surname, town and department of the debtor. The manager of the company shall give the claimant an acknowledgment, which shall be returned again when the money is paid. No claim can be presented for less than ten dollars. Claims presented through the company must, when afterward paid, bear the receipt of the company; else the debtor will not be allowed to return to China. Persons making false claims against an individual shall recompense him for any expenses to which he shall be put in consequence thereof. Accounts must be acknowledged by the debtor to be correct before collection. A person appointed as collector must give a receipt for the account. A creditor in returning to China must name an agent who will receive the payment of any sums due to him. Accounts sent from China for collection may be accepted by the company. The manager will not pay over collections except upon the presentation of the paper of acknowledgment he has previously given. Part payments must bear the receipt of the company. In cases of dispute about debt, the debtor may return to China if a representative from his district is willing to become his security. Debtors shall not be hindered returning to China on their pleading poverty or chronic sickness. In losses occasioned by oversight of the agent he shall be held responsible for the amount, unless he declare them upon oath to have been not fraudulent. Claims for debt, if unpaid, must be again put on record at the expiration of three years. Claims presented by a member of

Digitized by Google

another company shall be certified by the manager of that company, and when recorded shall be subject to a fee of twenty-five cents.

"This company shall elect three managers; one to attend to the internal affairs, one to attend to the business with Americans, and one to be the treasurer; and these shall mutually assist one another.

"A faithful servant shall be hired as a house-servant and porter.

"A committee of four shall be elected as counselors, who shall be allowed five dollars a month for refreshments. The monthly accounts of the company shall be counted till the last Sunday of the month, on which day the committee shall audit and publish them by a placard.

"The treasurer shall never retain more than four hundred dollars in his own hands at one time; and his deposits in the treasury, and payments from it, shall be under the supervision of the committee of four. The treasury shall have four different padlocks, and each of the committee shall have one key. The treasurer must always be present when money is taken out.

"Should the committee employ collectors who have not been duly elected by the company, they shall be held responsible for them. The accounts of the company shall be closed with each month, that there be no private or wasteful employment of its funds; and in cases of fraud a meeting shall be called and the offender expelled. When inadvertent mistakes are made in accounts, the committee shall state them to be so on oath, and the correction shall then be entered. Managers or committeemen whose accounts are not clear shall be censured. None but the managers shall have common access to the

Digitized by Google

account-books. Payments in behalf of the company shall, when made at their house, be endorsed by the committee, but in the interior they may be made by the proper manager alone. The office of the managers shall be kept open daily from eight o'clock in the morning until five in the afternoon. The doors shall be closed at New Year's for three days.

"Managers shall not use offensive language toward each other; but any differences shall be settled by a meeting of the company. If lodgers at the company's house do not comply with the regulations and respect the authority of the managers, they shall be expelled by a meeting of the company. Managers who may be remiss in attending at the office shall be mulcted to twice the amount of their salary for the time lost."

In the summer of 1854 I addressed to each of the companies a series of questions in regard to their principles and operations, in order to elicit authentic information which I could use in explaining the character of the Chinese to our own people. The answers were most clear and satisfactory. I translate one of them *verbatim* as a sample of the whole. The comparison of the company to "American churches," which is made in this one only, and the careful detail of its benevolent purposes, had a rather amusing origin. Not long previously the superintendent had come to me with the inquiry whether it would not be possible to have their building made free of taxes, as he understood that American churches and benevolent institutions were granted that privilege. I explained to him that a club or company of its character, designed in the first place for purposes of mutual convenience, had no more right to claim such

Digitized by Google

Interior of Lord Temple's Gate Entrance

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

immunity than a hotel, which often gives food and lodging to the distressed or to beggars, or than a multitude of associations which from their nature must in some cases relieve suffering. He determined, however, to attain his object by some means or other, and made application for the release of the building from taxation, on the ground of its belonging to a benevolent institution. He put over the entrance to it a sign designating it an "Asylum;" and besides, to carry out his purpose, induced the company to order an image of the god Kwán-tí from China, and set apart a large room for the worship of it. This he told American visitors was a "Chinese church!" His efforts, however, failed, for on my furnishing the assessors with an exact account of the purposes of the company the tax was laid upon the house, much to his disgust. With the exception of this, the brief compendium given is fair and reliable. The "Four Districts," with the other two subsequently connected with them in the company, are all in the province of Canton and not remote from its capital city.

"SZE-YAP COMPANY.

"Our house is built throughout of brick. It is surrounded also by a brick wall. It is situated in Pine street, San Francisco. We have also a frame house in Sacramento. The company was originally composed of people from the four districts of San-ning, San-ui, Hoi-ping and Yan-ping; hence our name, Sze-yap (which means 'four districts'). Afterward men from the two districts of Hok-shan and Sze-ui also entered it. We did not, however, change our name on this account.

"In China it is common to have councils, and in

Digitized by Google

foreign countries *ui-kuns*, or company-halls. The object is to improve the life of their members and to instruct them in principles of benevolence. They are somewhat like American churches. The buildings furnish beds, fuel and water to guests who remain but for a short period; also a lodging-place and medicines for the infirm, aged and sick. Means are bestowed upon the latter to enable them to return to China.

"There are three agents employed by the company, also a servant who sweeps the house.

"The number of our members that have arrived in this port, according to the record made at their landing, from the first until December 31, 1854, has been about 16,500. Of these there have returned perhaps 3,700. In April of last year above 3,400 separated and formed the Ning-yeung Company. More than 300 have died. There are at present in California, altogether, about 9,200. We do not know the number who have left this for other countries.

"Except the buildings used by the company, we have no other property. This has been purchased by the members, who have subscribed of their free-will, some twenty, some fifteen, some ten dollars. A portion has been paid in; some will be paid when they are ready to return home. This is a perfectly voluntary matter; there has been no coercion used. Nor is any money required from the disabled, the sick, the aged, or those making a second voyage to this country.

"The objects to which the subscriptions of the company have been devoted are as follows:

"1. The purchase of ground and erection of the buildings used by us.

Digitized by Google

"2. The salaries of agents and servants.

"3. For fuel, water, candles and oil.

"4. To assist the sick to return home.

"5. For the bestowment of medicines.

"6. For coffins and funeral expenses of the poor.

"7. For the repairs of tombs.

"8. Expenses of lawsuits.

"9. Taxes upon our frame house at Sacramento.

"10. Drayage and other outlays for passengers landing or departing by ship.

"The unpaid subscriptions amount to $35,000; the names of others who have not yet stated the amount they intend to give will be good for perhaps $6,700 more.

"The agents of the company are elected. At the election all the districts must have a voice. If from any one no members are present, it must be heard from. The agents must be men of tried honesty, and are required to furnish security before they enter upon their office. Their election is for the term of six months, of the expiration of which they must give notice and call a new election. But if they be found faithful to their duties, they are eligible to re-election.

"Our company has never employed men to work in the mines for their own profit, nor have they ever purchased any slaves or used them here."

Thus ends the exact translation of the rules of these "Chinese companies," institutions which have alarmed and distressed so many good people in California and throughout the United States; which have been made a ground of so much reproach against them, on the part of interested politicians and others inimical to them; but institutions which have no parallel for utility and

Digitized by Google

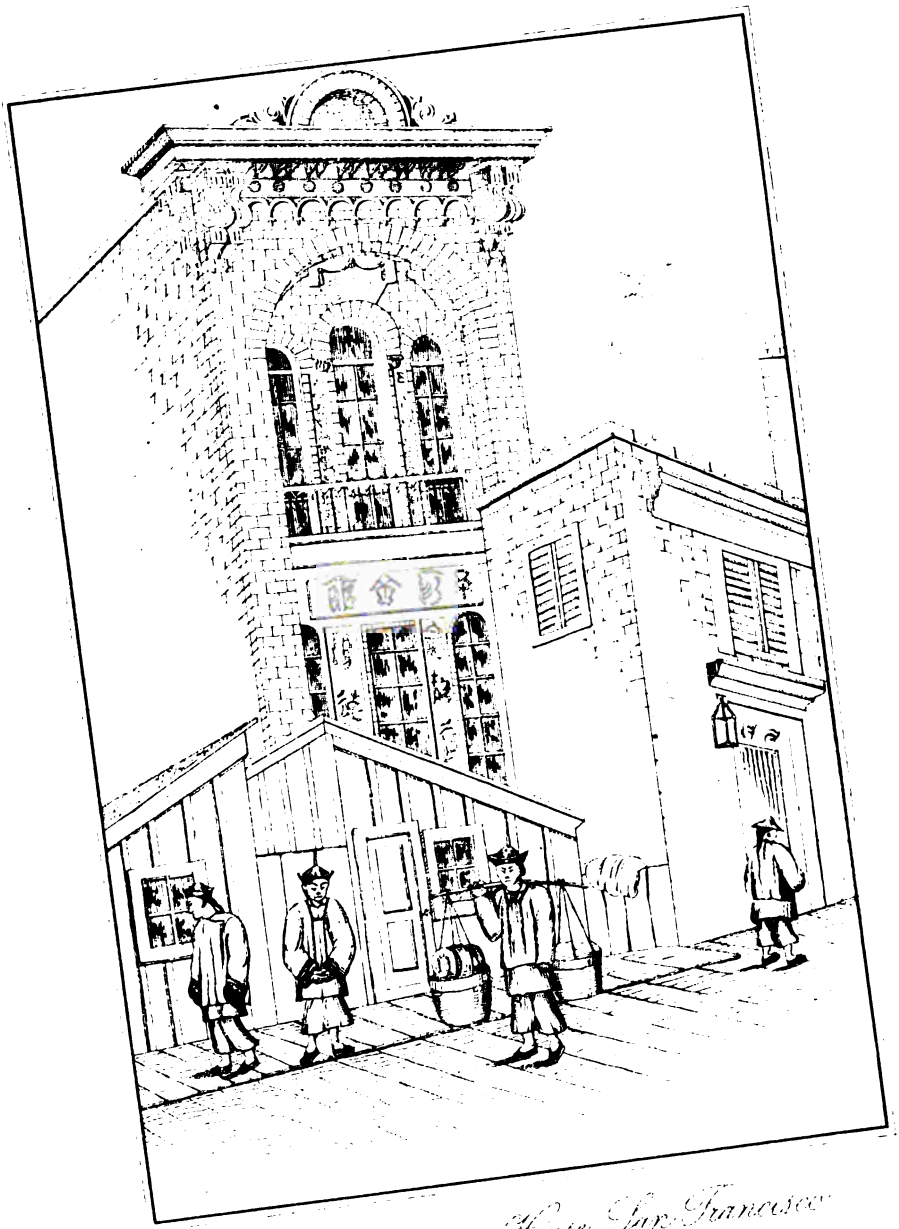
philanthropy among the immigrants from any other nation or people to our wide shores.

It has been objected to these companies that they have brought slaves to this country to work in the mines. But they have all declared that they have never owned, imported or employed any slaves. There is slavery, or peonage, of a certain kind in China, but it is very different from the bondage of Africans as formerly seen in the United States. It is said there are a few, certainly not a hundred individuals, of that class here; but they never have been employed by the companies and work probably on their own account. Americans have nothing to fear from that source.

The funds of the companies are not used for mercantile purposes, or to obtain revenue, and indeed are paid out nearly as fast as they come in. The treasuries of several of these companies are now empty or in debt. Many of their people never become able to pay their fees, and are on the other hand sources of great expense. The salaries of the managers and clerks are usually from eighty to a hundred dollars each per month; those of the servants, perhaps sixty dollars. The only property held by the companies is just what is absolutely necessary to accomplish their objects; such as a lot of ground, house and furniture in San Francisco, and a house perhaps at Sacramento, Stockton and other principal towns in whose vicinity their members mine or trade.

Conveniences are afforded by the companies' houses, for lodging and the storage of baggage, and they are a headquarters where friends and acquaintances from the same locality may meet; just as if the citizens of Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania or Louisiana should

Digitized by Google



Chinese Company House San Francisco

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

erect separate club-houses in San Francisco and other towns in California, to be places of general rendezvous for the people of those States. These companies are a great saving of expense and trouble to the Chinese, and are a remarkable illustration of their practical wisdom.

Great facilities are afforded through the companies for the collection of debts. Accounts are sent, if there be any doubt about their payment, to the agents at San Francisco. Here the people are constantly going and coming; debtors can be more easily reached; their circumstances are known; and if they refuse to pay, complaints are made to our courts of law, they are arrested and the claims are obtained.

Disputes between miners and others are settled at the company houses without the expense, delay and trouble of a resort to our courts of law. A friendly arbitration is held before a meeting of their company, or before a joint committee of the five companies, where the case is more difficult, or when persons of different districts are involved. The proceedings on these occasions are generally calm, judicious and satisfactory to the disputants. In former days, encouraged by the examples of lynching among our own people, the companies sometimes took the law into their own hands so far as to inflict corporal punishment upon offenders in their houses, but such practices are now disclaimed by them. Those doings are now past, and offenders are handed over by them to our courts in cases which their counsels cannot adjust. These associations have been of much service to the Chinese. Without them California could not have been so exempt from crime and strifes among them.

It cannot be doubted that the companies have generally

Digitized by Google

thus far been beneficial in their influence. They have been most useful in the unsettled and lawless condition of our own people in earlier days, and in districts where such a state of things now exists. It was in such circumstances right and proper that these people should make for themselves temporary arrangements and rules with a binding force even akin to law, just as the same thing is necessary among a train of emigrants crossing the plains to Oregon or California, or a party of miners upon a prospecting expedition to a remote or unknown region. These rules accomplish the ends of mutual assistance, the promotion of order and the punishment of the unruly. Yet it is, of course, understood that in all of them the laws of the country are acknowledged to be fundamental. What may be constituted by any such association is but supplementary to the laws of the country for purposes which they could not reach or particularize.

But when American society becomes more settled, itself under the influence of law and a correct moral sentiment, and the Chinese secure in the possession of the ordinary rights of humanity, it is desirable that these companies should be discouraged. They tend to perpetuate the local feuds and jealousies of the far-off communities from which these strangers come. They give cunning and troublesome men opportunities of undue influence over them in this land. The money collected is a source of corruption in various ways, and has occasioned suits in our courts in which large amounts obtained from members, many of whom were at a distance and could not prevent the wrong, have been squandered. There is danger of occasional interference

Digitized by Google

from them with our institutions, and of their being made in the future, when, at least, children born in this country shall become voters, an engine for evil in the hands of politicians. And it is in connection with these companies chiefly that the public forms of idol-worship will be maintained, and the spirit of love of country and kindred be appealed to in order to prevent their people being brought under Christian influence or conforming to our civilization. Hence it is to be hoped that, without interfering with them by legislative or public means so long as they do not violate our laws, kindly influences will be exerted gradually to win the Chinese individually from their control, and to make these people feel that their protection and welfare are to be promoted by a closer union with the better elements of the American population, and by falling into the general current of our opinions, usages and religion.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XX.

A REMONSTRANCE TO CONGRESS.

A STRANGE scene was witnessed in one of the principal mining counties of California. A company of Chinese had purchased at a large sum some claims covering the bed of a river, and undertaken to turn the stream, in order to reach the gold deposited there, as is often done by the Americans. A quiet little settlement was formed on the shore, and two firms of Chinese merchants set up stores there. A large amount of money was expended for lumber and other necessary articles. The work was successful. The Chinese began to reap the reward of their toil and outlay.

One dark night a band of seven armed white men suddenly appeared in the camp. Attacking the unsuspecting Chinese with unearthly yells, and firing their pistols among them, they put them to flight and chased them to some distance from the spot. They proceeded to seize the gold that could be found. Then they entered the stores and plundered them of money and such articles as were of any use to them to the value of two thousand dollars. To end the work they set fire to the buildings, and by the light thus made carried their plunder to the opposite side of the river, where they composedly set themselves down as the proprietors of the whole claim by the right of possession.

Digitized by Google

Some friends of the Chinese brought suit against these scoundrels before a neighboring justice for the restoration of the property. In defence the men set up a remarkable plea. It was simply this, that "they thought the Chinese could not work the claim to so good advantage as they could." And—what is still more remarkable—their friend, the justice, gave a decision in their favor on the ground of this plea! The friends of the Chinese next tried to bring a suit against these men at the county-seat for larceny and incendiarism. But though some Americans in the vicinity of the place had seen the fire and the carrying of the goods across the river, none were found willing or able to identify the robbers. The Chinese who knew them were not permitted, according to law, to bear witness against white men. The result was that the perpetrators of these crimes went free and remained in possession of the property which they so summarily had made their own. The industrious Chinese, beggared and in debt, were forced to leave the place.

There was a similar occurrence, which took place at a bar in another river, not long afterward. A man sold a claim to Chinese miners. They industriously began to work it. Three days subsequently he came back, asserted that it was his and undertook to drive them away. They resisted. A fight ensued, in which he struck, or kicked, one of them so as to fracture the thigh bone. Another he struck with a revolver under the ear so as to terribly bruise his neck and jaw and prevent his taking nourishment except in soup or other liquid forms. The same man received another dangerous blow upon the spine. His life was despaired of for a time. The

Digitized by Google

Chinese, however, succeeded in holding the claim. The white man escaped without punishment.

It is not necessary to continue the painful recital. Who committed these barbarous and cruel wrongs, such as it would scarcely have been imagined could occur in a civilized and Christian country? It was not often Americans. A cloud of villains of every country and complexion—English convicts from Australia, Spanish and Mexican robbers, low and vicious white foreigners of other nations—hung on the skirts of the laborious Chinese. They went in gangs and made robbery a business. They stealthily watched the Chinese miners, kept out of sight of the better class of white people who were friendly to them, and when a favorable opportunity would arrive, pounced down upon them and plundered them, sometimes those of several camps in one night. If resisted, they maimed or murdered them without scruple. It was counted rather a matter of sport, like a deer or bear hunt, to rush into a Chinese mining camp at midnight, wake the occupants with hellish yells, discharge their pistols among them and plunder the tents or cabins of whatever was valuable.

These robbers and murderers were, however, often quite conscientious. Just as in Italy the same class make scrupulous distinctions of right and wrong, honor and dishonor in their transactions, and ask the friendly help of the Virgin Mary and saints when about to engage in them, so these gentry in California satisfied their minds that it was a religious duty to rob and shoot heathen. A Mexican, who was hung at Mariposa much in opposition to his judgment of what was right in the matter, protested to the last that his case was a very

Digitized by Google

hard one. It was true that he had killed and robbed a good many Chinese. "But," said he, decidedly, "Christian people ought not to hang me for that." The Americans, however, viewed it differently and swung him to the limb of a tree, that the example might shed light as to some of the first principles of morals upon the consciences of some of his companions. A few such acts of justice have a marked illuminating effect upon the minds of men like these.

It was the saddest feature of the terrible trials of the Chinese that so many of them were inflicted in the name of the law. The license law of the State subjected all foreigners "not eligible to citizenship" to a monthly tax of four dollars. This was applied by the tax-collectors solely to the case of the Chinese. An army of them ranged continually over the mining districts equipped with blank licenses. They often compelled the Chinese in a camp to pay the mining license, though they might not be engaged in mining, and were traders, or cooks, or men engaged in other work, or transient visitors, or even sometimes though they were invalids, who were disabled by fever or rheumatism or accidents. They frequently came back before the month was out, or one would follow another, giving fictitious receipts. If the men refused to pay, they struck, stabbed or shot them; perhaps tied them to a tree and whipped them; perhaps drove them on foot with a horsewhip, the collector riding behind lashing them as they ran, to some town where they could exercise other compulsory measures. A tax-collector in the mountains once related to a company of persons, in my hearing, with great glee, how he had so "run" some Chinamen on a dark night, when

Digitized by Google

the ground was covered with snow, in which they often fell down, he yelling and lashing them from his horse. The collectors were often followed by cormorants to whom they sold for a trifle the property of Chinese which they had "forfeited" for non-payment. And when there were none so to purchase, these officials sometimes in mere wantonness destroyed bedding, boots and other articles.

The wretches who committed all these atrocities felt secure under a threefold cover. First, but few comparatively of the Chinese could speak our language, or knew how to obtain justice. In the next place, the "officers of justice" were too often under the control of the men who committed the offences. They were nominated and elected by them, and these villains were careful to let it be known that their votes would be cast against any man who favored the Chinese. And of even the poor privilege which a dog enjoys, to bark at the hand that has smitten him, these strangers have been deprived. They have not been allowed to speak out in an American court and say, "This was the man that shot down before my eyes, in cold blood, my brother, and robbed his dying body of the gold for which he had been slavishly toiling for years in order that he might send it home to make more happy the old age of our father and mother." They have not been permitted to open their lips before a magistrate against the band of foreign cut-throats who the winter through have gone from one lonely camp to another among the gulches compelling the miners to reveal the place where they had hidden their dust—perhaps by the argument of a rope round their necks, the other end of which was drawn across a beam overhead

Digitized by Google

until they had but the choice to give up or die, perhaps by that of a loaded revolver, or a sharp knife—and to declare, "I know this one by his black skin, by the scar across his right cheek, by his low forehead and malicious scowl, and by his coat and sash. I know him well—his name is ——." They could not asseverate before a tribunal which had the power to correct the grievance, "I paid on such a day five hundred dollars to the defendant, and he has violently, by force of arms, dispossessed me of the property." The Supreme Court of California, in 1855, made a decision, in order to exclude all Chinese testimony against white men, which briefly amounts to this: first, a native of China is an African negro; second, a native of China is an American Indian; third, a native of China has no rights which an American white man is bound to respect; therefore murderers and robbers of any nation may commit what crime they please against such without concern as to American courts.

The conduct of the Chinese under their accumulated trials was wonderfully prudent, conciliatory and respectful. They did not attempt to organize resistance to those who oppressed and injured them, even where they had the power temporarily to do so; for they knew that this would fearfully react upon them. They patiently bore what they could not avoid. If driven from one place, they quietly went to work at another. In their intercourse with the whites they were charitable to the suffering and ready to give to public claims; and they always supported their own poor. Thus they won the cordial friendship of the more respectable and moral classes who became acquainted with them, and who, notwithstanding

Digitized by Google

the repulsiveness of some of their vices, could not but become enlisted in their defence.

In 1855, after one of Gov. John Bigler's denunciatory messages to the legislature in regard to them, a very intelligent and gentlemanly merchant, Mr. Lai Chunchuen, put in my hands a reply, in behalf of the merchants of San Francisco, with the request that it might be translated and published in our language. It attracted much attention at the time, and extracts from it were published in the newspapers of the Atlantic States. The following passages give a fair specimen of it. The reader will probably join in the conclusion of most of those who have seen it, that our Chinese friend had the best of the battle:

"We have read the message of the Governor.

"First. It is stated that 'too large a number of the men of the Flowery Kingdom have emigrated to this country, and that they have come without their families.' Among the reasons for this course we may mention the following: The wives of the better families of China have generally compressed feet. They are accustomed to live in the utmost privacy. They are unused to wind and waves. And it is exceedingly difficult to bring families upon distant voyages over great oceans. However, a few have come; nor are they all who may do so. But there have been several injunctions warning the people of the Flowery Land not to come here, which have awakened anxiety, so that our minds have not been satisfied as to the possibility of bringing families.

"Some have remarked that 'immigrants from other foreign countries bring their families; their homes are distributed over your State: some engage in manual em-

Digitized by Google

ployments and amass wealth; thus mutual interests are created, mutual civilities extended and common sympathies excited; but, while in every respect they adopt your customs, on the contrary, the Chinese do not.' To this we rejoin, that the manners and customs of China and of foreign countries are dissimilar. Its ancient ideas are prevalent yet. But what if, as foreigners, we do differ somewhat from your honorable nation in hats and clothes and other small matters, while there is much that is common? In China itself people differ. In China there are some dissimilarities in the inhabitants of various provinces, or departments, or counties, or townships, or even villages. Their dialects, their manners, their sentiments, do not wholly accord. Their articles of use are not all made by one rule. Their common customs all differ. One line cannot be drawn for all. And just so it must be in all parts of the world. It would certainly appear unreasonable, when the officers and merchants of your honorable country come to our Middle Kingdom, were they to be rebuked for not knowing our language, or for not being acquainted with our affairs.

"It is objected against us that 'vagabonds gather in various places and live by gambling.' But collections of gamblers as well as dens of infamous women are forbidden in China by law. These are offences that admit of a clear definition. Our mercantile class have a universal contempt for such. But obnoxious as they are, we have no power to drive them away. We have often wished these things were prevented, but we have no influence that can reach them. We hope and pray that your honorable country will enact vigorous laws by

Digitized by Google

which brothels and gambling-places may be broken up, and thus worthless fellows be compelled to follow some honest employment, gamblers to change their calling, and, moreover, your own policemen and petty officials be deprived of many opportunities of trickery and extortion. Harmony and prosperity may then prevail, and the days await us when each man can in peace engage in his own sphere of duty. Such is the earnest desire of the merchants who present this.

"It is, we are assured, the principle of the government of your honorable country to assure the peace of the common people, and that it has at heart benevolence to all mankind. Now the natives of China and of other countries possess one common nature. All must agree that good and evil do not exist anywhere alone. All nations are really the same. Confucius says, 'Though a city have but ten houses, there must be some in it who are honest and true.' Suppose then we see it officially declared that 'the people of the Flowery Kingdom are altogether without good in them,' we cannot but be apprehensive that the rulers do not exercise a liberal spirit, and that they yield their own knowledge of right to an undue desire to please men.

"But of late days your honorable people have established a new usage. They have come to the conclusion that we Chinese are the same as Indians and negroes, and will not allow us to bear witness in your courts! And yet these Indians know nothing about the relations of society; they know no mutual respect; they wear neither clothes nor shoes; they live in caves and wild places. When we reflect upon the honorable position that China has maintained for many thousands of years,

Digitized by Google

upon the wisdom transmitted by her philosophers, upon her array of civil and of military powers, upon the fame of her civilization, upon the wealth and the populousness of her possessions, upon the cordial tenderness with which successive dynasties of emperors have treated strangers, deeming native or foreigner all as one, and then behold the people of other nations heap ridicule upon us as if we were the same as Indians,—we ask, is it possible that this is in accordance with the will of Heaven?—is it possible that this is the mind of the officers and the people of your honorable country?—can it be possible that we are classed as equals with this uncivilized race of men?

"Finally. It is said that 'henceforth you desire to prevent the immigration of people of the Flowery Land.' Hitherto our people have been interested in your sacred doctrines. We have tried to exercise modesty and reason. If we can henceforth treat each other with mutual courtesy, then we shall be glad to dwell within your honorable boundaries. But if the rabble are to harass us, we wish to return to our former homes. And we will speedily send and prevent the embarkation of any that have not yet come."

This letter of Lai Chun-chuen, numerous articles explaining their peculiarities, the efforts of their friends in their behalf and the general sense of their importance as tax-payers and laborers, created a more just public opinion in favor of the Chinese. A law which had been passed by the legislature of the winter of 1854–'55 to exclude them from the mines was repealed by that of the winter following. But yet they were unceasingly harassed by lawless men. Sometimes a public meeting

Digitized by Google

was held in a mining district, or in a county, where they had made large investments and were quietly and industriously pursuing their callings, and under the influence of men who were generally either foreigners or unprincipled persons who were willing to follow at their bidding and help them in their iniquitous proceedings, resolutions were adopted to drive out the Chinese. Notice was immediately served upon them to leave by a certain day. If they had not abandoned the ground by the appointed time, at whatever sacrifices, losses and suffering, they were hunted out by armed men and their property seized or destroyed.

It was not alone the Chinese miners who suffered by these lawless and cruel acts. Where they were beggared, their merchants and Americans to whom they owed money for lumber, clothing, tools, provisions, etc., necessarily shared in the loss. And the prosperity of various parts of the State was materially injured by the outrages which drunken, worthless men, who were comparatively but a handful of the population, were allowed to commit. And, indeed, there was scarcely a manufacturing, mercantile or transporting interest in the State which was not more or less affected by the troubles of this large and industrious class.[1]

[1] The statement of the editor of a newspaper published in one of the northern mining counties of California illustrates this point:

"For two years past, a very large portion of the gold taken from the mines has been the product of Chinese labor, and the traders in mining localities can attest that a very small portion of this has ever been carried out of the country, the assertions of city editors to the contrary notwithstanding. Chinese labor has literally kept alive the trade of most of the mining towns during the past season. The richer mines—all claimed or owned by the whites—have been poorly supplied with water; little work has been done, and little gold has therefore been drawn from that quarter; but all the time the patient and plod-

Digitized by Google

Worn out at last with their trials and losses, some of their more intelligent men took a lesson from the course of the Europeans and Americans in China, and determined to send a remonstrance to the Congress of the United States. This document was put in my hands to translate and take such steps as were necessary to have it properly brought before that body. It would no doubt have been written with a brush upon a sheet of silk and presented with due form. But some misapprehensions in it in regard to the powers of Congress, and certain temporary reasons, led me to postpone the fulfillment of their wishes. Upon the failure of my health I brought it with me to await the time, if life were spared, when the wakening sense of the importance of our national relations to the Chinese should justify my publishing it.

ding Johns are delving among the rocks and ravines of the foot-hills—in places where a white man would starve, rather than work in at all—packing water in buckets to rock out their six bits a day to buy their daily provender and pay the tax-gatherer for the poor privilege of working."

Another editor, in a county neighboring to the above, makes the following statement in defence of the Chinese:

"Business in some of the small mining camps in our county would be wholly suspended during the summer months were it not for them. They are content to work laboriously for two dollars a day, and work claims which no others would. They make good hands, and are frequently hired by the miners. We have heard but little complaint against them by the miners, and the feeling which at first existed against them, and which was greatly exaggerated, is fast wearing away. They are a sober, quiet, industrious, inoffensive class of men, and, in our opinion, are a great benefit to our county. They pay annually into our treasury, for licenses alone, from sixty to eighty thousand dollars—a sum we cannot afford to lose. They pay our merchants promptly for every article they buy. They attend to their own business, and are rarely engaged in brawls. The mines they work would be unproductive were it not for them, being too poor to pay others for working them. Where is the miner in our county who would toil from early 'morn till dewy eve' for two dollars a day, with no prospect of obtaining more? A Chinaman will do it cheerfully, but other miners will not. For the last year but few of them have worked on their own account, being principally hired by miners."

Digitized by Google

That time seems to have arrived. It does not seem proper now to send it to Congress, inasmuch as the persons who projected and prepared it are some of them not in this country; the author of the paper, I have been informed, is dead, a victim to the use of opium; and the circumstances under which it was written are somewhat changed.

The author referred to was Mr. Pun Chi, a young merchant in San Francisco, a man of good Chinese education, and who had picked up some acquaintance with our people and their institutions in his trade with them and during his attendance at the mission-school under my care.

This remonstrance is thoroughly Chinese, and will aid our people to understand the views and feelings of that people. There is an acute perception of the strong points of their position, and of the arguments which will have most weight with the best class of the American people, that is characteristic of them. They appeal to us as a reasonable people. The Chinese look upon war and the argument of the sword only as a last necessity. This paper illustrates their national character. Such is the measure, or, if the expression be preferred, the style, of their civilization that they regard military men with much the same dislike that they do pugilists or butchers. Hence they resort to diplomacy in their management of neighboring nations, and their statesmen are often, it must be confessed, adepts at bragging, fibbing and tricks equal to those of Europe or America.

It is certainly something at which the governments of the West may be astonished, and from which they might learn a lesson of the first utility, that China governs

Digitized by Google

vast territories, which more than equal in extent her own surface, chiefly by moral suasion. Every kingdom on her borders pays her tribute, receives the writings of Confucius as the best compendium of what is reasonable and right, makes her language that of its polite classes of society and the medium of communication with strangers, and imitates her arts and her usages.

It will be noticed how, therefore, with something like amazement, the Chinese who have emigrated to America find themselves regarded with dislike, their language unknown to us, their philosophers despised, and insult and wrong heaped upon them like the vagabond tribes of Indians. And it is nothing but gold, the immense difference of remuneration for every sort of labor, and gain on all kinds of traffic, or the want of gold, in failing to realize what they have expected, and their consequent debts, which makes them endure the humiliation for one day. They writhe under it, and cannot comprehend it. If the reader can put himself in their position and in their frame of mind, he will be able to appreciate the document now offered for his perusal.

It will be a source of surprise to many of our people, but nevertheless it is in accordance with the national mind, that they should dwell so emphatically upon the moral and religious considerations of the case. There is a quiet dignity, a deep sense of wrong, a freedom from a threatening or revengeful spirit, and a declaration of their entire submission to the action of our authorities in their case when deliberate and final, which must win for them the sincere respect, sympathy, and even admiration, of reflecting and honorable men.

There are, as they say, twelve topics which they de-

Digitized by Google

sire the legislators of our nation to weigh in connection with the appeal made to them for their interference to rectify the abuses of provincial legislation, and for their decision of the questions connected with the permanent residence of the Chinese here. The first three are preliminary and general. (§ 1). They begin with an appeal to our religion. They say that there is a supreme and universal government which has constituted China the most ancient, great, favored and beneficent nation of the world. We have been granted the instructions of Jesus, the Western counterpart of Confucius. Then why do we not practice them? (§ 2). They then define the principles upon which good government should be founded—upon reference to moral, not mechanical power, upon education, and upon respect for virtue. (§ 3). They represent (with some truth, but too favorably) that the conduct of their own government should be an example to ours in its care of the lives and property of foreigners, and the justice rendered to them in its courts; and it is claimed that no other foreign immigrants more deserve to be justly dealt with in this country, since no others pay so large an amount of the public revenue, or are more submissive to our laws; and this will be more clearly seen the better we understand them. There are seven matters in respect to which they desire legislative interference; that is, (§ 4) the general annoyances inflicted upon the Chinese, beginning with the time they land, and from all kinds of people; (§ 5) the outrageous cruelties and crimes of which, from the want of legal protection, they are the subjects; (§ 6) the oppression and wrongs of the miners; (§ 7) the violations of law by the appointed collectors

Digitized by Google

of taxes; (§ 8) the unjust practices of the nominal courts of justice; (§ 9) the troubles arising from the importation of abandoned women; and (§ 10) the neglect to inflict the penalties of the laws against gambling. Finally, they make two special requests; first (§ 11), that their companies may be allowed, from their universal acquaintance with all the Chinese of the country, and their responsible representative character, to take cognizance of minor offences against the law committed by their own people and report them to our courts; and second (§ 12), that Congress would, as the highest legislative authority, decide the main and most anxious questions affecting Chinese interests in this country; that is, if the previous policy of encouraging trade and immigration is to be reversed, and if they are to be for ever liable to injustice and injury, they respectfully beg that it may be plainly stated by a declaration to that effect, and that effectual measures may be adopted to prevent our traders from enticing further immigration, and, by fixing a limit as to time (three years), to enable and compel the present entire Chinese population to take its departure. They demand that in justice Congress shall settle these questions, and make laws which shall either banish them from the country or else give them security and peace.

Such is the tenor of this remonstrance to the authorities at Washington. It will be seen that it exhibits a fair conception of the powers of a supreme legislative assembly, and yet is defective of necessity in not discerning the lines which divide the authority of the Federal and State legislative bodies. Some of its expressions are peculiar. But, on the whole, the doubt may be ex-

Digitized by Google

pressed whether a body of immigrants from any European nation, in some remote part of our country, who had been here but for a short time and were still ignorant of our language and constitution, would have prepared a plea more intelligent, more forcible and more reasonable.

A REMONSTRANCE

FROM THE CHINESE IN CALIFORNIA TO THE CONGRESS OF THE UNITED STATES.[1]

The sincere and gracious attention of your honorable body is earnestly requested to the consideration of certain matters important to our peace as foreigners, the following statements of which may be relied upon as certainly true and correct:

We are natives of the empire of China, each following some employment or profession—literary men, farmers, mechanics or merchants. When your honorable government threw open the territory of California, the people of other lands were welcomed here to search for gold and to engage in trade. The ship-masters of your respected nation came over to our country, lauded the equality of your laws, extolled the beauty of your manners and customs, and made it known that your officers and people were extremely cordial toward the Chinese.

[1] Such is the ability displayed in this appeal that I judged it best to prevent suspicion of its being either factitious or overwrought by submitting it with the translation to one of the most thorough and competent scholars in Chinese literature, the Rev. Dr. Nevius, author of the interesting volume entitled "China and the Chinese," recently published by Harper & Brothers, New York. He sent me, before leaving this country on his return to his labors in the North of China, the following note, with permission to publish it:

"I have examined carefully this appeal of the Chinese to Americans made through Dr. Speer, and find that this translation is a true and faithful rendering of the original.

"JOHN L. NEVIUS.

"New York, October 31, 1868."

Digitized by Google

Facsimile of Cely Lung & Co. Hong Kong Factories

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Knowing well the harmony which had existed between our respective governments, we trusted in your sincerity. Not deterred by the long voyage, we came here presuming that our arrival would be hailed with cordiality and favor. But, alas! what times are these!—when former kind relations are forgotten, when we Chinese are viewed like thieves and enemies, when in the administration of justice our testimony is not received, when in the legal collection of the licenses we are injured and plundered, and villains of other nations are encouraged to rob and do violence to us! Our numberless wrongs it is most painful even to recite. At the present time, if we desire to quit the country, we are not possessed of the pecuniary means; if allowed to remain, we dread future troubles. But yet, on the other hand, it is our presumption that the conduct of the officers of justice here has been influenced by temporary prejudices and that your honorable government will surely not uphold their acts. We are sustained by the confidence that the benevolence of your eminent body, contemplating the people of the whole world as one family, will most assuredly not permit the Chinese population without guilt to endure injuries to so cruel a degree. We would therefore present the following twelve subjects for consideration at your bar. We earnestly pray that you would investigate and weigh them; that you would issue instructions to your authorities in each State that they shall cast away their partial and unjust practices, restore tranquillity to us strangers, and that you would determine whether we are to leave the country or to remain. Then we will endure ensuing calamities without repining, and will cherish for you sincere gratitude and most profound respect.

Digitized by Google

The twelve subjects, we would state with great respect, are as follows:

§ 1. *The unrighteousness of humiliating and hating the Chinese as a people.*

We have heard that your honorable nation reverences Heaven. But if they comprehend the reverence that is due to the heavenly powers, of necessity they cannot humiliate and hate the Chinese. Why do we aver this? At the very beginning of time, Heaven produced a most holy man, whose name was Pwan-ku. He was the progenitor of the people of China. All succeeding races have branched off from them. The central part of the earth is styled by its inhabitants the Middle Flowery Kingdom. That is the country of the Chinese. The regions occupied by later races are distributed round and subordinate to it. Heaven causes it to produce in the greatest variety and abundance, so that of all under the sky this country is the greatest, and has bestowed upon it perfect harmony with the powers of nature, so that all things there attain the highest perfection. Hence we see that Heaven most loves our Chinese people, and multiplies its gifts to them beyond any other race.

From the time of Pwan-ku till the present, a period of many tens of thousand of years, there have been born among us a host of sages, such as Fu-hi, Shin-nung, Hwang-ti, Yau, Shun, Yu, Pang, Wan, Wu and Chau-kung. Gifted by Heaven, they attained consummate excellence. Their beneficent influence extended not alone around them, it shed peace upon all nations. In the days of Yau our people were styled the Tang, which has been a favorite designation of themselves until now.

Digitized by Google

After some centuries, Heaven again produced a sage pre-eminent and alone in his excellence, whose name was Confucius, whom it made the great teacher of China. He combined what was greatest and best in all that preceded him, and became the teacher and exemplar of all ages. As to things on high, he showed men the fear of Heaven; as to things on earth, he taught them virtue. The sages of whom we have spoken had the wisdom to discern that all men on earth are one family. Now what is meant in styling all men on earth one family? It is, that the people of China, or of countries foreign to it, are all embraced, as it were, in one great circle of kindred, with its parents and children, its elder and younger branches, its bonds of unity; the pervading principle, love; no one member debased, none treated with dislike. Again, after several centuries, Heaven brought forth one Jesus, and ordained him to be a teacher to foreign lands. Now Jesus also taught mankind the fear of Heaven. He showed that the chief end is to pray for eternal life. He comprehended the reverence due to Heaven, and the obligations of virtue. He was in accord with the holy men of China. He looked on all beneath the sky as one great family. He did not permit distinctions of men into classes to be loved or despised. But now, if the religion of Jesus really teaches the fear of Heaven, how does it come that the people of your honorable country on the contrary trample upon and hate the race which Heaven most loves, that is, the Chinese? Should this not be called rebellion against Heaven? And how is it possible to receive this as of the religion of Heaven?

Digitized by Google

§ 2. *An appeal to the principle which lies at the foundation of Chinese government and society.*

The wise men of China plant at the very foundation of government the idea of virtue, not that of physical power, just as do those professing the religion of Jesus Christ. Virtue is that which commands the intuitive submission of the human will. Great vessels of war and powerful artillery may destroy cities and devastate a country. That is physical power. But moral power is essentially different from mechanical power. The noblest illustration of moral power is the teacher at the head of his school—as much so as the locomotive and the telegraph are of mechanical skill. It is the spirit of man that deserves respect, not his form. If the spirit be noble and good, although the man be poor and humble, his features homely and his apparel mean, we honor him and love him. If the spirit be not so, though the man have wealth and position, though his countenance be beautiful and his clothing rich, we regard him with contempt and dislike. But we do affirm that the reason why the people of your honorable country dislike the Chinese is this, and no other—they look at the plain appearance and the patched clothes of their poor, and they do not think how many spirits there are among them whom they could respect and love.

§ 3. *A brief statement of the manner in which our Chinese government acts toward foreigners.*

China possesses a mutual trade with all foreign lands. When a man from another country arrives in China, none of our officers and common people treat him other-

Digitized by Google

wise than with respect and kindness. In case he be defrauded or injured, where it is a small matter the offender is fined or punished corporeally; in a graver one he forfeits his life. Even though there be no witnesses, still the local officers must thoroughly inquire into the circumstances. In murders and brawls, if the criminal be not discovered the magistrate is called to account and degraded from his office. When a foreigner commits a deed of violence against a Chinese, a spirit of great leniency and care is manifested in the judgment of the case. Not because there is not power to punish. But we sincerely dread to mar the beautiful idea of gentleness and benignity toward the stranger from afar.

Now why is it that, when our people come to your country, instead of being welcomed with unusual respect and kindness, on the contrary they are treated with unusual contempt and evil? Hence many lose their lives at the hands of lawless wretches. Yet though there be Chinese witnesses of the crime, their testimony is rejected. The result is our utter abandonment to be murdered and that of our business to be ruined. How hard for the spirit to sustain such trials! It is true some persons reply that the Chinese who come here are of no advantage to the country. Yet if a calculation be made only of the amount of licenses we pay, the value of our trade, the revenue to steamers, stage companies and other interests, amounting to several millions of dollars per annum, can it be affirmed that we are of no advantage? But, besides, it is to be considered that we Chinese are universally a law-abiding people and that our conduct is very different from the lawlessness and violence of some

Digitized by Google

other foreigners. Were it not that each so little understands the other's tongue, and mutual kind sentiments are not communicated, would not more cordial intercourse probably exist?

§ 4. *The perpetual vexations of the Chinese.*

The class that engage in digging gold are, as a whole, poor people. We go on board the ships. There we find ourselves unaccustomed to winds and waves and to the extremes of heat and cold. We eat little; we grieve much. Our appearance is plain and our clothing poor. At once, when we leave the vessel, boatmen extort heavy fares; all kinds of conveyances require from us more than the usual charges; as we go on our way we are pushed and kicked and struck by the drunken and the brutal; but as we cannot speak your language, we bear our injuries and pass on. Even when withindoors, rude boys throw sand and bad men stones after us. Passers by, instead of preventing these provocations, add to them by their laughter. We go up to the mines; there the collectors of the licenses make unlawful exactions and robbers strip, plunder, wound and even murder some of us. Thus we are plunged into endless uncommiserated wrongs. But the first root of them all is that very degradation and contempt of the Chinese as a race of which we have spoken, which begins with your honorable nation, but which they communicate to people from other countries, who carry it to greater lengths.

Now what injury have we Chinese done to your honorable people that they should thus turn upon us and make us drink the cup of wrong even to its last poisonous dregs?

Digitized by Google

§ 5. *Fatal injuries unpunished.*

Your Supreme Court has decided that the Chinese shall not bring action or give testimony against white men. Of how great wrongs is this the consummation! To the death of how many of us has it led! In cases that are brought before your officers of justice, inasmuch as we are unable to obtain your people as witnesses, even the murderer is immediately set free! Sanctioned by this, robbers of foreign nations commit the greatest excesses. It is a small thing with them to drive us away and seize our property. They proceed to do violence and kill us; they go on in a career of bloodshed without limit, since they find there are none to bear testimony against them. Let us mention some cases. In the third year of the present emperor, and seventh month, at B——, Yu Lin-shing, a Chinese, was shot and killed by an American. The murderer was apprehended and brought to the place of justice. He was released without condemnation. In the ninth month, at S——, Yu Waingok was murdered by a foreigner. In the same month, at B——, one of our countrymen was killed by an Indian. In the fourth year, second month, near M——, a man named Chiu Man-sze was shot with arrows, by Indians, and killed. In the sixth month, in L——, Liu Kiu was put to death by an American; the murderer was captured and put in prison; but, as usual, was released without trial. In the eleventh month, a Spaniard robbed and murdered one of our countrymen. In the fifth year, on the fourth day of the fifth month, a collector of the mining licenses killed Ching Ping, at P——. About the middle of the same month, at

Digitized by Google

M——, the collectors of the licenses killed three men because they would not pay more than was justly due; their names were Wa Hon, A-Tang and A-Sui.

It would be impossible to enumerate the men that have been killed; we have mentioned these as a few of them. To collect a catalogue of crimes is certainly not a work of pleasure. But behold the root of them all in the prejudice and hate of your honorable nation! In cases where it is possible to procure the testimony of your people as to an injury, the Chinese may obtain reparation; but suppose there are occasions where, if none of your people know of a crime, Chinese were allowed to take up the case and to state their acquaintance with it, some of these stains of blood would not continue unwashed. Some object that the Chinese bear false witness. Do such not know that the Chinese do not understand your language?—or that within your courts of justice, too, there are corrupt men?—or that in the strifes of public litigation there may be found men of every country who will bear false testimony? Why, then, is this burden laid upon us Chinese alone? Suppose there be false witness borne, are the judges of your honorable country blind and stupid, so that they cannot discern it and estimate testimony at its value? Because here and there a Chinese or two has proved a perjurer, shall it prejudice our entire nation? Shall this degrade us beneath the negro and the Indian? This is a great injustice, such as is not heard of in our Middle Kingdom! It injures your fair name. Every nation under heaven mocks at you. Hence it is not alone we Chinese that suffer, but blessings are lost thereby to your own land.

Digitized by Google

§ 6. *The persecution of the Chinese miners.*

If a Chinese earns a dollar and a half in gold per day, his first desire is to go to an American and buy a mining claim. But should this yield a considerable result, the seller, it is possible, compels him to relinquish it. Perhaps robbers come and strip him of the gold. He dare not resist, since he cannot speak the language, and has not the power to withstand them. On the other hand, those who have no means to buy a claim seek some ground which other miners have dug over and left, and thus obtain a few dimes. From the proceeds of a hard day's toil, after the pay for food and clothes very little remains. It is hard for them to be prepared to meet the collector when he comes for the license-money. If such a one turns his thoughts back to the time when he came here, perhaps he remembers that then he borrowed the money for his passage and expenses from his kindred and friends, or perhaps he sold all his property to obtain it; and how bitter those thoughts are! In the course of four years, out of each ten men that have come over scarcely more than one or two get back again. Among those who cannot do so, the purse is often empty; and the trials of many of them are worthy of deep compassion. Thus it is evident that the gold mines are truly of little advantage to the Chinese. Yet the legislature questions whether it shall not increase the license; that is, increase trouble upon trouble! It is pressing us to death. If it is your will that Chinese shall not dig the gold of your honorable country, then fix a limit as to time, say, for instance, three years, within which every man of them shall pro-

Digitized by Google

vide means to return to his own country. Thus we shall not perish in a foreign land. Thus mutual kindly sentiments shall be restored again.

§ 7. *The irregularities of the collectors of the license.*

These occur wherever the Chinese are engaged in mining; and they are not the acts of one man. The collectors of the license have no appointed districts: one man comes at this time, and a stranger the next. They have no appointed period: some come for the month's dues to-day, and to-morrow they require them again. In collecting from the miners who have money they extort heavy amounts besides. To miners who have none they refuse to grant time, and then demand the sums which they owe from other persons. If these refuse to pay them, the collectors seize their purses and take their last grain of gold. Should the Chinese dispute with them, they assault them with pistols and other weapons, and some of the miners may lose their lives, and there is no redress. Hence, when it is reported that the collectors are coming, those who have no gold are forced to fly in terror; those who could pay are thus frightened and follow; then they are pursued and beaten, perhaps killed. Occurrences like these are common. They all arise from the rapacity of the collectors and from the want of just regulations. Now we ask, first, that, in the collection of the licenses, each district shall be allotted to a certain man; that the boundaries of it shall be clearly defined; that other collectors shall not be allowed to come within them; that the day of each month when the collector will receive the license-money shall be previously published by placards; that on the payment

Digitized by Google

of the four dollars he shall give the miner a written receipt as evidence, to prevent his being compelled to pay the money again; and that in the cases of those who are unable to pay, firstly, some extension of time may be granted; if at the second demand they still have no means to pay, security may be required from their fellow-miners, with some further extension of time; at the third demand, if neither they nor their security are ready to pay, then their property may be seized for the amount. There are none of us who would not gladly submit to such regulations as these. They would be just to both parties. And your losses from the miners running away or hiding their money would cease.

§ 8. *Usages to which we object.*

Our people have been told of the excellence of the institutions of your honorable country; but when they have come to the new State of California, they have found them to be strange indeed. We know not from what nation came the men that have taken the lead in creating this condition of things, nor where rests the obligation of reforming it, but you cannot be ignorant of some things the truth of which we have seen and known. Allow us briefly to speak of them. Causes at law are not judged according to what is true or false; the strongest faction is counted to have the truth. In contentions between men it is not considered what is crooked and what is straight; sufficient money makes a man's claim appear straight. The treatment of men is not regulated by their characters for virtue or for vice; a fine exterior is accepted for virtue. New laws are constantly published, only to be changed again in a brief time. Suits that

Digitized by Google

should be determined are postponed again and again. A person of purity and integrity appears in court and he is but ridiculed and insulted the more; a violent and wicked man, and he is paid the more respect. Cases involving money come before these tribunals, and they excite covetousness; cases of property, and they create envy of a man's abundance. Murder is allowed to escape without the forfeit of life; robbery occurs without the apprehension of the offender. False rumors are made a pretext to arrest men; officers apprehend the innocent in order to oppress and fine them. They practice neither humanity nor justice. Their ambition and their schemes terminate simply in gold and silver. Justice demands that political institutions such as these should speedily be reformed, or you will meet with the scorn of the whole world.

§ 9. *A request for the adjustment of the difficulties in regard to abandoned women.*

At first all the abandoned women who came to California from Hong-kong were boat-women from the sea-coast: one of them arrived here during the first year of Hien-fung (1851). At that time, we Chinese proper, fearing that other people would mistake these for our own females, and thus disgraceful conceptions of us be spread abroad, specially requested your authorities to banish them. But the local authorities, not comprehending the evil, would not consent to their removal. From that time the number of those coming has constantly increased, and the flood of poison has become more and more wide and deep. It is now our request that you will enact laws for the correction of this griev-

Digitized by Google

ance. We beseech you to stringently require commanders of vessels, while they carry these women away, to bring no more of them back. And a time should be fixed within which all here shall be compelled to leave, themselves providing the means, and returning to their own people. Thus will we be rid of this spreading poison and be relieved of this disgrace.

§ 10. *A petition that gambling may be severely punished.*

In our Middle Kingdom gambling is forbidden by law. Formerly, on account of its not being forbidden in your honorable country, many men learned this vice, and the results have been deeply injurious. Now we are fortunate in having a law against it passed by you and put into operation. If only men knew that they must rigidly obey it, and if from this time forth there shall be no secret granting of licenses, then we might hope that those who had learned this vice might return to honest occupations.

§ 11. *A request in regard to the management of criminal cases.*

At present, people from all nations are coming indiscriminately to your honorable country. Certainly many of them are good; but there are also bad persons among them. It constantly happens that the good are compelled to reap some of the fruits of the evil deeds of the vicious. Among our Chinese there are some bad people; and only the Chinese can know who they are. If you will permit the Chinese merchants, they will prepare private statements as to such persons, vouching for them by the signature of their names. Thus rogues

Digitized by Google

may be justly punished, and will understand that the laws are to be respected, and will be deterred from the commission of crimes; and they will return to the ways of virtue.

§ 12. *A request for an enactment appointing a time when the Chinese shall finally return to their own land.*

When we were first favored with the invitations of your ship-captains to emigrate to California, and heard the laudations which they published of the perfect and admirable character of your institutions, and were told of your exceeding respect and love toward the Chinese, we could hardly have calculated that we would now be the objects of your excessive hatred—that your courts would refuse us the right of testimony; your legislature load us with increasing taxes and devise means how to wholly expel us; your collectors, even before the law is made, begin to demand larger sums, and to compel the month's payment for shorter periods than that time; that foreign villains, witnessing your degrading treatment of us, would assume the right to harass, plunder and rob us, possibly kill us; that injuries of every kind would be inflicted on us, and unceasing wrongs be perpetrated; that if we would desire to go, we would be unable to do so, and if we desired to remain, we could not. But now if, finally, you do not will that we should mine and traffic in your honorable country, we beg that you will fix by law a limit of three years, within which we may collect our property and return to our country; and that you will strictly forbid your ship-captains to use inducements for people to come, and, if they do not obey, severely punish them. Thus we will endeavor after the

Digitized by Google

lapse of three years to leave upon your honorable soil not a trace of the Chinese population. If, on the other hand, you grant us as formerly to mine and trade here, then it is our request that you will give instructions to your courts that they shall again receive Chinese testimony; that they shall cease their incessant discussions about expelling the Chinese; that they shall quit their frequent agitations as to raising the license fees; that they shall allow the Chinese peace in the pursuit of their proper employments; and that they shall effectually repress the acts of violence common among the mountains, so that robbers shall not upon one pretext or another injure and plunder us. Thus shall your distinguished favor revive us like a continual dew.

To the translation of this Remonstrance I will only add the expression of the sincere hope that the members of the Congress of the United States and of the legislatures of those States in which Chinese are now laboring, or may do so in the future, will give a thoughtful consideration to the subjects presented in it. There is a propriety about it which should ensure their respect. There is a reasonableness and justice in the requests and suggestions which should cause them to be weighed and adopted, if only we except that of the reference of questions relating to the characters of persons accused of crimes to the opinion of "the Chinese merchants," meaning probably their Association, or Exchange, in San Francisco. Personal prejudices, jealousies among the people of different clans and districts, and their displeasure with some who leave the religion and customs of their fathers and adopt those of our country, might

Digitized by Google

make such an opinion one which it would be unsafe for our courts to follow. It would be better to accede to their final petition and fix a time within which their immigration to this country should cease, those here depart, and intercourse be, so far as practicable, suspended, than that we should go on in a descending course of oppression, rapacity and reckless destruction of property and life, which can only terminate in the greatest national calamities to us and to them.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXI.

MORAL ASPECT OF CHINESE IMMIGRATION.

IN preparing the preceding chapters of this volume, and describing, as I have heartily done, the industry, the gentleness, the intelligence, the charity of the Chinese, a voice has often whispered in my ear, as from some thoughtful inquirer of my own nation, Are not these a heathen people whom you are so praising?—have they not the vices of heathenism? I cannot close this chapter without confessing that they are heathen, and that we discover in them the vices of the tribes of mankind without the light of God's truth to teach them, and without the power of God's truth to give elevation and strength to their moral character. They seem to occupy a superior position compared with other heathen nations, and yet, alas! they are heathen.

Then the question rises, What are "heathen?" The heathen were originally heath-ers—the dwellers among the heath; those who wandered away from the fenced abodes of knowledge and happiness and plenty; the ignorant, desolate outcasts, who are so numerous in the old countries; the gypsies, the lepers, and all that wild, despised, wretched herd. Here is the typical idea. We apply it to all the races of man who are without the Bible; to those who are wanderers from the way of life,

Digitized by Google

and are in the wilderness as respects their knowledge of the living and true God, pardon of sin, true holiness and heaven. They see the dim light of nature and of their traditions from the patriarchal age; they hear the still small voice of natural conscience; but they are without the clear light of the revelation which we enjoy.

In the religious writings of the Chinese one discerns the generic attributes of heathenism—ignorance and fear with regard to God, pride and self-indulgence as to the man. The ignorance of God is the parent of superstition, which fills heaven, earth and hell with imaginary beings and monsters; the fear excites men to the worship of them, and this consists chiefly in offerings to propitiate their anger. Pride conceals the sinfulness of human nature and puffs it up with conceit of its own powers; self-indulgence plunges the man into the gratification of his low appetites.

There are some most touching admissions of their ignorance of all beyond the reach of their own senses or the monitions of human reason and conscience to be found in the pages of the great teachers of China. Thus Confucius, when inquired of as to the nature of the gods, used language which reminds one of that of Socrates when the weeping disciples to whom he had taught so much of negative truth besought him for something positive to dispel the fears of death and "charm" away their sorrow. It is said he exclaimed, "How vast is the power of the gods! Look, and you cannot see them. Listen, and you cannot hear them. They have a personality essentially related to us. And yet how they compel the whole race of man to fast and to array themselves in their best robes, that they may sacrifice to them,

Digitized by Google

is unfathomable as the sea. They seem to be above. They seem to be on our right hand and on our left. As the ode says:

> 'The influence of the gods upon the mind
> What mind can measure?
> To the utmost let our duty be performed.'

Behold, the secret things they bring to light! Be sincere, for you can conceal nothing. This is certain."[1]

The best lesson which Mencius, who stands next to Confucius in the regard of the wise and good of China, had to teach was only what related to the duty which man owes to his fellow-man. When the king of Wai invited the wisest men to visit his court, he condescendingly said to Mencius, "Venerable sir, since a thousand miles has not been esteemed too great a distance for you to come, will you now inform me what there is of profit to my kingdom that you can bestow?" The philosopher replied, "O king! why speak of profit? I have only benevolence and justice—nothing more." He then proceeded to inveigh against the ambition and covetousness of all classes of society, and declare that there were two principles which would bring happiness and order to every house and fidelity to every subject of the throne; and he cried, "O king! only talk then of benevolence and justice. Wherefore speak of profit?"[2]

Both Confucius and Mencius saw with bitterness the utter inefficacy of truth which looks no higher than earth to reform society or to stay the power of human passions. The vices of the courts they visited too often quenched the flickering lamp of reason in their hands.

The popular faith has gradually shaped its conceptions

[1] CHUNG-YUNG, leaf 10. [2] SHANG-MANG, leaf 2.

Digitized by Google

of things in the heavens in accordance with what is seen on earth. It is supposed that there is a chief of the gods, Shang-ti, who resembles the Jupiter of the Romans, and whose attributes are described to be infinite power and knowledge, so that some foreign missionaries have advocated the use of the name to signify the true God; a mistake, however, as great as that of using the name of Jupiter or Zeus with that sense. It is the common belief that there is a hierarchy in the heavens nearly corresponding with that of the empire on earth, the rank and power of the gods being relatively the same with those of the successive grades of civil officers. So practical is this faith that the officer in the flesh ruling over a province when traveling, if he finds it convenient to occupy the temple of a god of a celestial dignity inferior to his own, may not scruple to order the god to be put out of doors for the time being. Nor, in truth, do any evil results usually, in their experience, follow.

The theatrical performances which the Chinese have introduced into California, and with rather poor success attempted, in the employment of certain Americans, who cruelly deceived and defrauded them, to exhibit in some of the Atlantic cities, are partly religious in their nature. The Chinese have a legend in regard to their origin, which is as follows:

About eleven hundred years ago, upon the night of the annual festival in honor of the moon, Lo Kung-un, an attendant upon the emperor Hieun-tsing, was walking abroad and turning his eyes to that luminary. In a rapture of devotion he flung up into the sky the staff which he bore in his hand. It was instantly trans-

Digitized by Google

Chinese Theatre

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

formed before his eyes into a bridge. Having invited his imperial master to accompany him, he mounted upon it to the moon. They found there the gates of a splendid palace. Upon entering it, the two beheld beneath a spreading cinnamon tree a company of females of noble aspect, clad in white and seated upon white celestial birds, which sang with delicious sweetness. The company seemed to be amusing themselves, and their visitors heard at the same time strains of music of a wonderfully pure and majestic kind. They returned back to earth, to the palace of Si-king, but could recall, alas! scarce half the words or notes of the song which they had heard. But Yang King-tah, having formed some conception of it, wrote it down and arranged it, and presented it to the emperor. He commanded a band of more than three hundred singing girls to be formed, to which was committed the rehearsal of the music. These women having performed in the inclosure of the imperial pear orchard, play-actors have since then borne the designation of "the fraternity of the pear orchard."

The celebration of this worship of the moon in China is very striking to the eye of a stranger from a Christian land. The fifteenth day of the eighth Chinese month, which occurs about our mid-autumn, is sacred to this occasion, and is a day given to general festivity. The shops are closed. The air is rent by continual explosions of gunpowder. Flags of many forms and colors, most of them painted with astrological emblems, are seen waving in the south wind. Peculiar fatty cakes, the upper crusts of which are enriched with various devices in red and yellow paint, and called "moon cakes," are presented on that day by friends to each other and

Digitized by Google

by the rich to the poor. But one of the most interesting ceremonies of the day is the erection of lanterns on poles above each house at nightfall amidst the thunder of innumerable cannons, gongs and drums. Being suspended in pairs and disturbed by the wind, one sees, from an elevated place, a waving phosphorescent sea, which stretches far away to the distant hills. It is an act of idolatrous adoration from a million of souls together to the orb which is supposed to reveal herself in her full during this month with more splendor than at any other period of the year.

The worship of the god To-ti has been introduced into California. His name signifies that he is a "god of the earth;" that is, one who guards the particular localities where his image is set up. It is said that the original god worshiped under this name was once a prefect named Yang Shing, who lived during the third century of the Christian era. He ruled over a department whose inhabitants were remarkable for being small of stature and delicate in their appearance. It was the practice of the emperors of that period to annually carry off several hundred of them to the palace, where they were mutilated in their persons and made chamberlains, and thus were devoted to a cruel, perpetual slavery and separation from their homes. This humane officer having strongly represented their case to the emperor, they were relieved from that oppression. Hence after death he was deified by the grateful people with the name of To-ti and worship instituted in honor of him in Taou-chau, which has spread abroad until it is now celebrated all over the empire. He is classed among the gods of happiness and of wealth. He confers prosperity

Digitized by Google

in business. His more especial care is the protection of streets and dwellings from evil spirits and ill-fortune. It is understood now, however, that it is not this same individual who is worshiped in connection with each image and in various streets, but a mere image is erected, to which they attribute the presence of the spirit of some other man of virtue and renown whom they prefer, especially of some one who may have lived in their own neighborhood.

The god of fire, Hwa-kwang, is worshiped annually on the twenty-eighth day of the ninth month by many of the Chinese in this country, in order to secure his protection of their shops and dwellings from being burned. He is commonly represented with a third eye in the middle of the forehead, with which he is supposed to be able to see a thousand miles and to watch over the welfare of his friends even in the darkness of the night.

To guard their health many worship Pin Tseuh, who was a celebrated physician of antiquity not long after the times of Fuhi, the founder of the empire. A demi-god gave to him some medicine, which he was to take during thirty days, that enabled him to see the internal motions and disorders of all the viscera of his patients. He extensively exercised the power thus acquired, and gained great fame. It is declared that he was even able to raise the dead.

The women worship gods and goddesses, who they imagine protect them in their dangers, afford them help and comfort in their times of trial and grant them the objects of their desire. The images often seen of a goddess with a child in her arms are generally those of

Digitized by Google

Kwan-yan, "the hearer of cries," to whom they and some classes of men who are much exposed to danger, such as sailors, offer devout worship. This goddess was a virgin of the province of Fu-kien, who on account of her holiness was granted miraculous powers, which she exerted specially in behalf of those who were in trouble. In many points her worship reminds one of that of the virgin Mary by Romanists.

There are several rooms fitted up in San Francisco and other places on our Pacific coast for temples. They are chiefly connected with "company houses," are quite a source of revenue to some men who have the care of them, and will be zealously maintained on that account, and because the gods are sometimes those which are worshiped by the people of the district in China whence the members of the company have come.

The characteristic and favorite religion of the Chinese is the worship of ancestors and the spirits of the dead. The interpretation of this is very simple. It is but the affection and the reverence of children for parents following them beyond the veil of the invisible world and attributing to them the continuance of their willingness and power to aid. And the worship which is rendered to these spirits may be said to be just what human parents might be supposed to require, only in a more ethereal form.

In San Francisco each spring and autumn a noisy procession with gongs, drums and clarionets, having several wagons loaded with trays containing whole roast pigs, ducks, chickens and other meats, and pastry, confectionery, fruit and cooked vegetables, proceeds to the neighboring cemeteries. They are despatched from the

Digitized by Google

streets of the city and received at the grounds with the firing of innumerable crackers. The offerings are formally presented to the spirits in front of the tombs, whisky is sprinkled in the air for their refreshment, and paper money is burned and thus put into spiritualized currency such as they can use. The remainder of the day, after the public duties have been performed, is devoted to feasting and social enjoyment.

In the cities of China this festival is the most popular of all in the round of the year. It is celebrated with great fervor by all classes of people. Offerings are made by each family separately. In the court of the house there may be seen a heap, perhaps several feet in length, of various articles of clothing and common household use, generally made of paper, though sometimes of the ordinary materials, with bundles of silver and gilt paper for money. The court is lighted up with gaudily-painted candles in rows around the sides. The dwellers of every age all busy themselves in making the arrangements necessary. Hot rice and other substantials, nuts and liquor or tea, are brought out. When all is ready, acts of worship are performed. Then the pile is kindled, and the rice and liquor are thrown up into the air. Every scrap of paper is religiously gathered and burned, probably that the garments of the spirits may not be defective. The more savory articles of food, however, are not thus profusely scattered about, but after they have stood long enough for the worthy ghosts to abstract their essence, they seem still capable of affording considerable relish to the coolies and boys that scramble for them. Many of the Chinese believe that these provisions are insipid after the ghosts have satisfied their hunger, but

Digitized by Google

some are so bold as to say that they do not notice much difference in the taste. It is not alone what is required for food and raiment that is despatched to the unseen world. Through the agency of flames, which spiritualize them and waft them up, houses completely furnished, horses, servants, sedan-chairs and numerous articles of worldly luxury or ornament, find, as these deluded people believe, access there.

The same intense feeling of attachment to kindred leads them to offer oblations to the spirits of the deceased, to make annual visits to their tombs in order to repair them, and to carry back to the burial-places in their native villages the bones of those who die away from them. Thousands of skeletons have thus been taken from California. The people of various districts of the province of Canton have formed among themselves on the Pacific coast benevolent societies whose members pay each a fee of several dollars. This guarantees the transportation of their bones home in case of their own death, and helps to do the same for those of all the individuals who have come from the same district. Hundreds of thousands of dollars have been paid by these societies for coffins, internal transportation, that on shipboard and other expenses.

These associations are purely voluntary, and may not be connected with their *ui-kuns*, or "companies." The following is a translation of a portion of the report of one whose headquarters was at San Francisco, styled the Chih-shin (or beneficial) Association:

"The benevolent purposes for which the Chih-shin Association was established were first put into effect in the autumn of eighteen hundred and fifty-four. The

Digitized by Google

work was carried on till the present time—that is, the summer of eighteen hundred and fifty-five—and now, on the second day of the fifth month (June) is completed. A vessel has sailed conveying the coffins to our native villages. There remained, however, but a balance of somewhat over four hundred dollars, which we fear would be scarcely enough to pay for their transportation from Hong-kong to Pun-sha-wan, and would not meet the expenses of the sacrifices to the dead. After consultation together, it has been resolved that those who have not paid be requested to hand over at once the subscriptions due, for remittance to China, so that the amount necessary may be made up for the sacrifices and for the erection of tombs, and that the accounts of the Association may be closed. We present the following report, and request gentlemen to notify us of any mistakes in it previous to the expiration of the eighth month. When the subscriptions have been paid the books will be forwarded to China and the tombs be put up. No provision, however, will be made for tombs for those whose friends here do not pay before the time limited expires, and record will be also made of their deficiency. We desire earnestly the payment of the sums due, that these benevolent objects may be accomplished and that they may bear their good fruits. We pray all to exert themselves to this effect, that the end may be attained, no excuse left those who are negligent, and that all may share the happiness and the merit which they deserve."

This extreme anxiety concerning the bones of the dead is caused by the belief that their spirits will haunt the survivors if proper respect for them be not shown,

Digitized by Google

that the fortunes and the bodily health and comfort of their descendants depend largely upon the proper selection of the tombs of parents and kindred, and by the interest felt in each other by members of the same clan or neighborhood. The selection of a proper spot for the tomb is a matter of great concern. The professional diviner is employed to examine lucky sites and decide upon the one most suitable. The hills around a Chinese city are scattered over with tombs, for there are no common cemeteries. The great points in regard to sepulture are to secure high ground on either side, especially on the left—dry ground and yet proximity to a stream which curves toward the tomb at its nearest point, as this tends to direct the general good influences of nature toward it—and the absence of any large rocks on the surface. Wealthy men spend thousands of dollars in ascertaining a spot where their spirits will be satisfied and which will secure prosperity and health to their families. And bloody fights sometimes follow the interference of one clan or family with the tombs of another.

The *fung-shwui*, or powers of nature (literally, "winds and waters"), must be consulted in regard to many individual and public affairs. It is a mysterious superstition, which is universal and most powerful. All classes of society humbly bow before it. If the house be lower than some around it, or if it front unsuitably toward some quarter of the compass, or course of a stream, or the ordinary currents of wind, or if it be overshadowed by the tree of a stranger or enemy, then no expense will be spared to correct the evil. One method is, to erect a tall flag-staff which shall overpower the antagonistic influences. The direction given in an almanac for the man-

Digitized by Google

ner of doing this will convey an idea of its meaning. It is as follows:

"For a fortunate flag-staff use a long, solid beam. To a transverse pole, at the top, suspend a wooden cover formed of four sides and an inclined roof like a house, to protect the lantern beneath from the rain. Write upon one side of the lantern, in a handsome character, the word 'Peace;' on the opposite the name of the god *Tsz-mi-yuen.* Then the god will enter and establish himself there. If there be any evil influence exerted upon you from the neighborhood, whether it be from a large tree, from a lantern-staff, from a high residence, from a watch-tower, from an official residence or building, or from the house of an enemy, the erection of this staff will be found efficient for your protection. Should there be a house in front of your family residence higher than your own, let a staff of moderate height be raised at your back door or in the open court behind the house. If there be a dwelling-house or a high wall behind you, raise a flag-staff in your front open court, or before your door, to counteract its influence. Thus you will obtain prosperity."

There is a slavish bondage to appointed times and seasons which are supposed to be lucky or unlucky. The almanacs are full of directions in regard to matters which may be done or which should be avoided on days which the stars, the powers of nature and the gods constitute to be lucky or unlucky.[1] Thus the lives of men and women

[1] The following directions with regard to certain unlucky days will serve as a specimen:

"*General matters to be avoided.*

"On *ham chi* day: to make a visit to a distance to a feast; to marry a wife.

Digitized by Google

are made miserable, families are subjected to great and unceasing inconvenience and expense, and a large class of men, many of whom are very wicked and cunning, is supported in a life of imposture and folly.

The blessings or calamities of life are referred to a multitude of influences good and evil which act upon the person, the family or the employments, and which must be traced out and means taken to propitiate the sources of them. Thus, on a given day, if a man be taken with a fever, he consults the diviner or books on the subject, and is informed that he received the evil influence in a north-east direction. It may have originated from the evil gods of the four points of the compass, from wandering gods, from injurious male or female spirits, or from the gods of the household, or from displeased spirits of one's ancestors. There will probably be, he is told, chilliness and then heat in the extremities and in the bones and muscles. It is a very serious disease. He is instructed to take five hundred sheets of a certain prepared black paper money, a horse made of paper, a cup of water, a bowl of rice and some fruit and

"On *kau lung* day: to build a vessel; to start on a voyage; to build a bridge; to finish the roof of a house.

"On *sam pat chi* day: to enter upon the discharge of official duties; to go to war.

"On *ng pat u* day: to speculate or gamble for money; to apprehend knaves; to pay a visit for consultation as to personal affairs.

"On *ze hil:* to open a granary.

"On *tsŭt hi:* to build an outhouse.

"On *cheung tun* day: to make exchanges of property; to open a place of business; to make clothes; to have any new person enter the house.

"On *hut chi* day: to use moxa in the cure of disease; to kill horses, oxen, pigs, sheep, dogs or chickens for food."

On certain other days named: "To engage in a lawsuit; to betroth a wife; to arbitrate a business; to collect debts; to lay by money; to remove to a new house; to return to a place from a distance."

Digitized by Google

wine. He must arrange and offer these in a northern direction. A return of good fortune will be the result. There is furnished to him also a form of a charm, which is to be written and pasted on the wall for his future protection.

The Chinese, in common with all the other nations of Eastern Asia, hold decided views in regard to the reward of good and punishment of evil deeds, both in this life and in that which is to come. Thus we find in a tract by Lau-tsz, the founder of the Tauist, or Rationalist, sect the following passage:

"Adversity and prosperity have no door of entrance except as men draw upon themselves the recompense of their good or evil deeds. Yet this follows our acts just as shadow follows substance. For this reason there are in heaven and on earth gods which have the oversight of crime. In proportion to men's offences do these gods shorten the measure of their years. With shortened years is sent also poverty. Sorrow and care are inflicted upon them. Mankind are stirred up to hate them. Vengeance follows them. Prosperity flies from them. The stars of evil shed upon them calamity. Thus life is early exhausted and they perish. The gods of the constellations about the North star stand always above men in order to record their sins, and at the appointed hour to snap the thread of life. Within the body the three gods of death abide, and twice in each month ascend to the court of heaven to report the misdeeds of men. The gods of the fire-place do the same as each successive month is closed. If a man's crimes be excessive, his years are cut off by scores; if less, they are cut off in smaller measures. But, be his sins great or small, when

Digitized by Google

they have reached a few hundreds in number he must entirely forsake evil if he would ask for length of days."

It is a doctrine of the Buddhist priesthood which is commonly accepted by the people that the spirit, on leaving the body, at once passes to give its account before the presence of "the ten judgment gods," and is there confronted with the records of all its good and evil deeds. Evil spirits stand up as its accusers and good spirits as its advocates. According to the award then given, it passes into some higher or lower form of being or place of reward or of punishment. The good are sent into some more prosperous and happy form of being, or directly into a paradise of the gods and saints. The bad are punished by being consigned to inhabit the bodies of the more wretched and suffering inhabitants of earth, or those of brutes or reptiles, or are driven by demons into some one of the numerous hells. The punishment corresponds somewhat in its nature with the character of the vices or crimes of the offender. Gluttons and debauchees, for instance, are represented as plunged in lakes of blood and filth; those that hoard grain in order to raise the price of it and wrong the poor as changed into starving brutes; those that have deceived and deluded the young as freezing in lakes of ice; those cruel to beasts as devoured by them in turn; and those guilty of lying and falsehood as having their tongues torn out by the roots or pierced through with red-hot iron daggers; the most wicked are tossed by demons into furnaces of fire. The general ideas of future reward and punishment appear to have been handed down from a very early period in the history of mankind.

Digitized by Google

Buddhist monastic institutions are common in every city. The priests and nuns make vows of abstinence from animal food, of perpetual celibacy and of poverty. They dress in long black or gray robes, and wear their heads shaved all over and their feet bare. In the monasteries they celebrate matin and vesper services, recite long liturgies in honor of various gods, which are in the Pali, a dead language. They mark the number of the prayers repeated with the strokes of bells, they illuminate the gloom with long painted candles and perfume the air with incense. There is a multitude of points of analogy which plainly indicate the Asiatic source of most of the corruptions of the Christian Church in the West.

It should be understood by all our readers that a Chinese does not consider himself connected with any one sect unless he be a regular priest or formally associated with it. Men and women worship where and when they think proper, and just such gods or goddesses of any sect as may please them. A god of one temple may be preferred to-day, that of another for a different object, or the same object, to-morrow. The officers of a city are accustomed to select a variety of deities and publicly announce acts of worship to them at convenient seasons, in order to secure habits of reverence for religion in the popular mind.[1] And this is done by men of great intel-

[1] The following appointments for the "sacrifices of the eighth month" were made at Canton:

2*d day*. To Wan-chang (a god of literature) at his own temple; offered by the commissary of grain.

6*th*. The provincial treasurer will offer at the temple of Wan-chang.

7*th*. To the gods of the soil and the gods of grain.

8*th*. To the gods of the wind.

12*th*. To the god of war, Kwan-ti; by the provincial judge.

15*th*. To the dragon king.

Digitized by Google

ligence, who privately laugh at the follies and superstitions to which they have given public sanction.

In comparing the Chinese systems of superstition with those of India, we observe some very marked differences which indicate the superior mental character of the former. Caste, while Buddhism is accepted as a general creed, is stricken from it in China, along with all its burdensome and odious precepts as to food, clothing and the intercourse of men. In the public worship of the gods there are no acts of indecency or licentiousness. And there are no exhibitions of cruelty, like hook-swinging, the terrible car of Jugernaut, the burning of widows or systematic murder. There are many features of Chinese idolatry which are absurd, painful and offensive, but none so revolting or terrible as those.

The very summary view which I have presented of the superstitions of the Chinese is sufficient to show plainly that they possess important portions of the revelations made by God to the first members of the human family, or distributed from their seat in Palestine, by the agency of the surrounding commercial nations, into

16*th*. The prefect of the department of Kwang-chau will sacrifice to Chau-chung.

21*st*. To the god of Nan-hai district, Hung Shing-wang; by the provincial treasurer.

22*d*. To the Queen of Heaven; by the salt commissioner.

24*th*. At the temple of Yen-lang; by the prefect of Kwang-chau.

25*th*. To the gods of fire.

Besides the above, there are celebrated during this month the birth-days of nine gods; among them, the gods of the moon, of the fire-place, "Buddha of the kindling-lamp," the spirit of wine, gods of thunder, etc. The tenth day is the anniversary of the birth-day of the emperor, on which divine honors are paid to him in all the provinces. From the 3d to the 27th the gods of the constellation Ursa Major descend on a special visit to the earth to inspect and settle the affairs of men, over which, since those stars never set, they are supposed to keep incessant vigil.

Digitized by Google

all the ancient world, and that God follows them with the voice of conscience and his Spirit. Yet this truth they have corrupted, so that now all the praise and honor which belong to God they give to their idols, to imaginary beings, to the spirits of sinful men like themselves, to the stars of heaven, or to evil spirits.

The stories of their special worship of Satan under the name of "Joss" are utterly untrue. It is strange that they should have been so often repeated of late, even in respectable magazines and in religious newspapers whose editors and contributors have had abundant access to books which give correct information on this subject. They do use charms and other superstitious means to avert the anger and prevent the malicious injuries of themselves and families by evil spirits. But it is wholly unjust to class these among their acts of religious worship.

Outside of the realm of what could be designated religious worship, there exists in the Chinese mind a multitude of imaginary monsters, bred in air, earth and sea, which hold them in constant dread of their power. Their books speak of multitudes of nameless things of terrible shapes which haunt the streets, the hills, the rivers. When traveling on boats, I have sometimes sat listening at night to the stories of strange sights and sounds which the boatmen had to tell—how in the lonely watches they had heard the flapping of unseen wings which rushed by their heads, and heard noises which filled them with terror. They set up in our streets and mines the images of the gods of their native land, because they know nothing of the only true God, in the hope of protection from the injuries which malicious

Digitized by Google

beings inflict, to shield them from influences poisonous to health and harmful as to their pursuits.

Thus it will be seen that Chinese idolatry is the same essentially with idolatry in other heathen lands—a strange mixture of ignorance and fear; a bowing before sun, moon, stars, spirits of dead sages and dead kindred, and imaginary beings of good and evil; blind anxiety to avert judgments for conscious guilt; the possession of light, but refusal to follow its guidance; the distinct knowledge of right and wrong, but the obedience of the great mass, with here and there some noble exceptions, to the impulses of nature and of sense. In China, the character of the people, their physical circumstances, the peculiarities of their history, have saved the race from the utter and fearful debasement which is seen in the case of some other heathen nations. Still, the elements, the tendencies, the penalties, of Chinese heathenism are the same.

It has been maintained by some unthinking persons that the universal toleration of religion in America requires equal respect to be paid to Buddhism as to Christianity, and this interpretation has been put upon an article in the Burlingame treaty. It is freely acknowledged that there must be no persecution for religious opinions; no interference with religious worship which does not publicly violate our laws; no disabilities on account of their faith which shall exclude these people from security of person, peaceful possession of their property and the defence of their natural rights before our courts of justice; no exclusion of their children from the advantages of public education. But it must be remembered that a multitude of decisions have established

Digitized by Google

the legal maxim that "Christianity is the basis of the common law." Chancellor Kent says, "Christianity is part and parcel of the law of the land."[1] This means specially Christianity as a system of morals. The reason of this is that the revelation which God has given to us

[1] The reflections of the profoundest foreign observer of American institutions are very weighty in regard to this subject. A. DE TOCQUEVILLE, *Democracy in America*, vol. i., pp. 332–335:

"The Americans combine the notions of Christianity and of liberty so intimately in their minds that it is impossible to make them conceive the one without the other; and with them this conviction does not spring from that barren, traditionary faith which seems to vegetate in the soul rather than to live.

"In the United States religion exercises but little influence upon the laws and upon the details of public opinion, but it directs the morals of the community, and by regulating domestic life it regulates the state.

"I do not question that the great austerity of manners which is observable in the United States arises, in the first instance, from religious faith. Religion is often unable to restrain man from the numberless temptations of fortune, nor can it check that passion for gain which every incident of his life contributes to arouse; but its influence over the mind of woman is supreme, and women are the protectors of morals. There is certainly no country in the world where the tie of marriage is so much respected as in America, or where conjugal happiness is more highly or more worthily appreciated.

"I do not know whether all the Americans have a sincere faith in their religion—for who can search the human heart?—but I am certain that they hold it to be indispensable to the maintenance of republican institutions. This opinion is not peculiar to a class of citizens or to a party, but it belongs to the whole nation and to every rank in society.

"Religion in America takes no direct part in the government of society, but it must nevertheless be regarded as the foremost of the political institutions of that country; for if it does not impart a taste for freedom, it facilitates the use of free institutions.

"It may be believed, without unfairness, that a certain number of Americans pursue a peculiar form of worship from habit more than from conviction. In the United States the sovereign authority is religious, and consequently hypocrisy must be common; but there is no country in the whole world in which the Christian religion retains a greater influence over the souls of men than in America, and there can be no greater proof of its utility and of its conformity to human nature than that its influence is most powerfully felt over the most enlightened and free nation of the earth."

Digitized by Google

in the Bible is the infallible standard of moral truth, of moral right and of moral duties; and that every other system of teaching is human, defective and more or less perversive of morality.

Christianity and paganism are radically and for ever irreconcilable. The one adores, worships and serves the true God; the other adores, worships and serves false gods and devils. The one is founded on eternal truth, the other on the delusions of the father of lies. The one civilizes, elevates, blesses men, families, nations; the other bestializes, fosters ignorance, prejudice and deception, fills society with fanaticism or its opposite, skepticism and contempt for all religion, degrades woman, blights the spirit of scientific inquiry and stops the improvement of the useful arts. The one leads to virtue and morality, the other to loathsome vices and abounding crime. The one to prosperity, to national influence and power; the other to decay, contempt and final overthrow, if there be an almighty God who rules the world and is a righteous judge.

A necessary conclusion from these premises is, that the morality of Christianity deserves certain political immunities in favor of the maintenance of its teaching; which means chiefly that its edifices should not be taxed by law, on the ground that its influence is worth far more pecuniarily to the government than the amount of money at which its property would be assessed for taxation. It is cheaper, that is, to remit twenty millions of dollars to teach men principles which will make them honest, industrious, merciful and chaste, than it is to pay a hundred millions to punish them for murders, violence, robberies and licentious crimes. But it seems to be a

Digitized by Google

just conclusion that idolatry, which tends to blind even the natural light which God has given to man through tradition and conscience and nature, should at the least not enjoy similar immunities. It should not be persecuted. But its property should be counted, the same as that devoted to all ordinary purposes, subject to taxation. On the lowest ground of consideration, its moral influence is not pecuniarily equivalent in value to the amount of taxes which its property should pay.

Should the testimony of the Chinese be admitted against white persons in our courts of justice? The decision of the supreme court of California, that they shall be excluded on ethnological grounds, is simply contemptible in the eyes of men of science. The Chinese is as far removed from the Indian or the negro as is the Indo-European family. The numerous westward migrations of portions of the Turanian family indeed have made ourselves to be more closely allied with the Indian than the Chinese are. The only conclusion from such a method of reasoning is that if the Chinese are Indians, then *we* are Indians; if the Chinese are negroes, then *we* are negroes. But, without reference to the origin of the races, this confusion of what is distinct, this dangerous mode of construing law by expediency and policy, meet with the severe reprobation of every sound lawyer. "Statutes, for any cause, disabling any persons of full age and sound mind to make contracts, are to be construed strictly; for, though founded in policy and a just regard to the public welfare, they are a derogation of private rights." And "statutes made in derogation of the common law are to be construed strictly."[1]

[1] CURTIS, *United States Digest*, iii., p. 486.

Digitized by Google

Nor is it right to exclude Chinese testimony on the ground of religion. They have rights of humanity which must be protected. They should be held to be *competent* to bear witness where those rights are affected; the only question can justly be as to the degree of *credibility* to be allowed to them. The question arises, Should their oath be received in our courts? The English common law grants that it shall. Starkie (on *Evidence*) says: "All persons may be sworn who believe in the existence of God, a future state of rewards and punishments, and in the obligation of an oath." This is generally understood to include pagans, especially those of the Buddhist and Brahminic creeds, who acknowledge a Supreme Moral Governor above all the gods, and one or more tribunals before which an exact account must be given of every act in the body; and who appeal to him and to other deities by oath. In the case of *Omichund* v. *Barker* it is laid down as a principle that any belief other than Christianity, which acknowledged a supreme and future Judge, justified the admission of an oath, and that it is to be administered in any mode that may be binding on the conscience. An atheist may not be sworn. "But," says the report of the case, "at this day it seems to be settled that infidelity of any kind doth not go to [against] the *competency* of a witness." Redfield says, "This must mean infidelity as contradistinguished from *Christianity*." The case of *Omichund* v. *Barker* referred to the depositions of certain Hindûs, a people more swarthy in color than the Chinese, and inferior to them in intelligence and in moral and religious character. Lord Mansfield, alluding to this and others similar, says that since that time "the nature of an ap-

Digitized by Google

peal to Heaven, which ought to be received as a full sanction to evidence, has been more fully understood." An American jurist says, "All that is now required is, that the oath should bind the conscience of the witness." "It is obvious that a sincere Deist, a Mohammedan, or a pagan of any name, if he believe in the existence of God, as above defined, may feel the sanction of an oath as binding on his conscience as the most devout Christian."[1] Pagans of perhaps every important nation of Asia have been admitted to testimony in English and American courts. Lord Henry Brougham, and other most enlightened judges, have sanctioned the admission of the testimony of Chinese, who have of late years been often brought into the courts by the now extensive commerce with their empire. It must be held to be a right in common law until changed by statute.

It is a right which the State of California, following the examples of several others in the Union, solemnly recognizes when it says: "No person offered as a witness shall be excluded on account of his opinions or matters of religious belief."[2] And allowing the exceptions which its most illustrious commentator does, of those who have committed crimes which made them technically "infamous," or are "interested," the great motto of the common law, as given in words, should be blazoned on the walls of every hall of justice: "All witnesses, of whatever religion or country, that have the use of their reason, are to be received and examined."[3]

There has been much doubt as to whether it is better to allow Chinese witnesses to swear by their heathen

[1] *Vermont Reports*, xiii., p. 367.
[2] *Practice Act*, 1856, § 192.
[3] BLACKSTONE, *Com.*, iii., 369.

Digitized by Google

deities. In California I resisted this, and prepared a form of oath addressed to the Supreme and Only True God, which was used in some of the courts. I think such an oath will have as binding a force upon the witness as most others; and, besides, it does not give the solemn sanction of our courts of justice to their superstitions, and can be, and should be, more justly and severely punished as perjury.

At the present time, it must be confessed, the Chinese opinion of our courts of justice is not high. This is brought to view in the Remonstrance to Congress. It is a subject of common conversation with them. An amusing expression of it occurred at Sacramento. A Chinese went into an intelligence-office in search of a situation. While there the conversation turned upon the case of one of his countrymen, named A-Chung, who had been arrested a few days before for murdering a Chinese woman. The proprietor of the intelligence-office expressed his opinion that A-Chung would be hung. The man instantly replied, "He no hang. He all same as Melican man. He got two thousand dollars! You sabe! no hab money, he hang. Hab plenty money, no hang."

The character of their women in California has been an objection constantly urged against the Chinese there. Among the better class of that people this is a very bitter subject. One of the first of their people who came to California was a woman from Hong-kong. She was a bold, cunning, bad woman, who saw at once the profit which might be reaped from the importation of abandoned women. She had several brought over. The respectable Chinese in San Francisco used their

Digitized by Google

utmost efforts to compel their return, but in vain. The matter was brought before our courts, and these men were compelled by our laws to submit to what they saw would be a cause of untold injury to their and our people. In my conversations with them and admonitions in regard to this vice, I was often met with this reply: "Well, if there are bad women here, it is the American courts that are to blame." It is hard to see how we could have kept them from coming, but this the Chinese could not understand.

There are now in California probably about eight thousand Chinese females. The most of these are from the *tan-ka*, or "boat-people," an ignorant, vicious race, inhabiting the boats upon the rivers and in the harbors of Canton province. They are considered by the people on shore to be foreigners from the neighboring countries. These women have been bought generally from their parents, guardians or owners at sums varying from thirty to two hundred dollars each, according to their age, personal appearance and accomplishments. Some of them have been taken by the Chinese who are in circumstances to do so to be their secondary wives, the Hagars and Zilpahs of their Oriental domestic life. There are now several hundred Chinese children at least on our Pacific coast; some persons have even affirmed that there are three thousand. The Chinese men are anxious to have children. They are fond of them; and they desire sons, whom they may carry back home to take care of them in their old age, and to maintain the family name and the sacrifices to the dead.

The majority of these poor women lead a dreadful life. We prescribed for many of them in our dispen-

Digitized by Google

sary. The diseases which are the consequence of their depraved life are too terrible to describe. Young and pretty girls presented masses of putrid and poisonous rottenness. And yet the haunts of crime where they were found were partly supported by the money of profligate Americans.

The testimony of some Americans who go to China as seamen and traders as to the general tone of female character in the Chinese ports is sometimes bad enough. And indeed many of these men possess the first qualification of competent witnesses, so far as their acquaintance extends. But those who have had intercourse with the better classes of society, and with the population removed from the debauching influence of the ports, testify decidedly that woman occupies a more elevated position in China than in any other heathen country. Women are never allowed to take part in theatrical exhibitions. The wives are generally chaste, the sanctity of domestic life is rarely invaded, and the relation of even the secondary wife, when one is taken in order to increase the number of children, is not abused to general licentiousness. When women advance in life they are treated with great respect and tenderness by their children and grandchildren. The empire is now virtually ruled by the widowed empress of Hien-fung during the minority of her son Tung-chi. Some of the best fruit of missionary labor in China has been among the women. Several missionary ladies have informed me that the estimate of female character in China by some of our earlier missionaries was a mistaken one; that the more they had become acquainted with the women removed from intercourse with foreigners the more they found that was

Digitized by Google

interesting and pleasant in them, and the more that was hopeful in respect to the influence of the gospel upon them, and upon their families and kindred.

Upon principles of Christian morality the Chinese should be induced, by every possible means, to bring their wives and families to this country. They must be corrupted and their influence corrupting so long as they do not bring them. The difficulties in the way are great. Their prejudices, the expenses of living here, the wants of parents and of children in China, and many other excuses, will be given. But inducements should be offered by employers and ship-captains toward bringing their families with them. Their moral improvement would be thus greatly accelerated.

Gambling is a passion with the lower classes of the Chinese. They are brought up to the habit of playing games of chance and investing their juvenile pocket-money upon the results. They bet upon dice, lots, tosses of coin and of marked pieces of wood, the whirling of pointers to mark letters and figures on a card, and many other methods of appeal to the gods of fortune. When they grow to adult years the majority of them superstitiously hope for prosperity through their favor. In California, the favorite game is that of "squaring cash." A handful of *tsin*, the common small copper coin, larger than a silver dime, with a hole in the middle, is taken from a quantity in a large bag, laid down upon a table and quickly covered with an inverted cup. Bets are then made as to the number which will be left after all the multiples of four have been taken away. With a pointed stick the counter separates them by four at a time. Each one round the table is at liberty to bet

Digitized by Google

whether there will finally be a remainder of one, two, three, or none. Over this simple game they hang entranced the night through, watching, after their bets have been put on record, the slow act of division by the pointer which is to decide the balance. The sad results are the same among them as with our own people who follow such practices—fevered excitement, heavy losses, treachery and dishonesty to friends in business, remorse, suicide. Many a poor fellow has destroyed himself with opium rather than endure the penalties of his folly. There are among the Chinese, and especially among the more wealthy and educated class, a large number who hold such games to be exceedingly disreputable and immoral. They rebuke them in the severest language, and give away small printed tracts which exhibit their bad results. The penal code of the present dynasty declares that persons convicted of gambling for money or goods shall be punished with eighty blows of the bamboo, and that the money or goods staked shall be forfeited to the government. It condemns gambling-houses to similar forfeiture. If an officer of government be found guilty of the offence, he must be punished more severely than other persons. I have seen, in China, the officers, though sometimes they are bribed to keep their eyes shut, yet often pounce down upon these establishments and clean them out thoroughly. There is far more gambling in California than among the same number of people in China. Inviting signs to try their luck, and promising wealth, meet the eyes of the strangers from the mines at every turn. Many a man who has borne a reputable character in his native town is there beguiled into evil, beggared and ruined.

Digitized by Google

Smashing a pea's to bits

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The national vice of opium-smoking is enfeebling and destroying many of the Chinese in California. There is none the influence of which is more to be regretted in regard to its future influence upon Chinese industry in this country. Its effects have been described elsewhere in this volume (chap. xiii.). They need not be recited again. I have had some sad experience in connection with the abuse of opium. Some of the brightest young merchants who entered my school fell victims to it. A fine young man, who had been thoroughly educated at our boarding-school at Canton, became a slave to it. It seems often to select the brightest and noblest. Like a serpent, it winds around them its slow and fatal coil and strangles them to death.

The heavy duty upon opium leads to innumerable devices to smuggle it. Thus another source of corruption is opened. The whole effect of this abominable poison upon all who touch it seems destructive of the first principles of morality.

But, while we dwell upon the public vices of the Chinese, let us not forget that they have been remarkable in California for some excellences.

Though they have occasional fights between men of different companies, who cherish the old animosities of their native villages, yet they are the most industrious and peaceable race in California. There are fewer murderous brawls among them than among any other people.

It is a matter of wonder to Americans that there is so little drunkenness among the Chinese. It is their universal custom to take a small quantity of their rice-whisky, our American article, or of brandy, after dinner.

Digitized by Google

They sometimes become somewhat merry at the table, and some even intoxicated. But while drunken men of every other nation may be seen reeling, swearing, behaving indecently, in the streets of the cities and towns of California, a drunken Chinese is never seen.

Their own poor are provided for out of the funds of the companies and by subscriptions among those who have the means. They manage to bear what is a heavy burden. And many a sick man has been sent back to China in the same way. I have heard of cases of sick Americans and white foreigners in the mines to whose relief the Chinese had contributed handsomely.

In their native land the Chinese are accustomed to give money freely to religious and benevolent objects. The structure of society there, the denseness of population, the number of the poor, and the distinct Buddhist promises of reward to the benevolent and specifications of punishment upon the cruel, the selfish and the avaricious, have a powerful effect in stimulating acts of charity and liberality. An immeasurable amount of poverty and suffering meets the eye of the foreigner in China. But yet those who have the means dispense money with much generosity. Our missionaries, particularly during the scenes of famine, sickness and general distress which have accompanied the recent wars and rebellions, have often witnessed the most liberal efforts made to feed the hungry with rice and other food, to supply clothing to the destitute, and to provide medicines for the sick and coffins for the dead. In some cases charitable Chinese gentlemen, who were not Christians, seeing the benevolent labors of missionaries, have voluntarily put considerable sums of money into their

Digitized by Google

hands, to be used in connection with them. At Canton there are large native hospitals for aged persons, for lepers and for foundling children. Within a few doors of my house was a warehouse where coffins were gratuitously furnished to the poor. We often saw bridges or other conveniences erected by persons of fortune for the accommodation of the public, and tea given gratuitously on the street to the thirsty coolies and laboring men.

This summary view of the moral aspect of the Chinese immigration to this country suffices to show of what strange and diverse elements heathen morality is composed. It is like the conglomerate rock in which fragments of what is solid and beautiful are imbedded in a soft and worthless mass, from which they easily fall out; the whole of which crumbles under the assaults of the winds and rains and is unfit for the walls of a house. It is hard to convey to a Christian mind the idea of how so much knowledge of what is right can be mixed with so much uncertainty and perplexity; so much of effort to do right with such want of correct principles and motives in it; so much of beneficence to the suffering with so much of selfishness; such a sense of the evil and destructive nature of sin with such helplessness in resisting its temptations; such flashes of light to show the narrow path of life and the rewards and penalties of the future world, with such indifference to follow their guidance and willful turning to ways of their own choice. It is our encouragement to know that in this mass there are elements which, when pulverized and wet and moulded, and subjected to the power of fire, will come out in forms which will be valuable and enduring.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXII.

THE GLORY OF AMERICA.

FOR America there is reserved a peculiar glory in the history of mankind.

We seem to see starting from the fountain-head of history two great streams of civilization. One tends westward. Its course is marked by a succession of empires, each arresting its flow and spreading its waters out into a wider area, yet existing but for a few centuries. Such were Babylon, Egypt, Phœnicia, Persia, Greece, Rome, the Arabs, Venice, Spain. There is a distinct progress through a succession of forms of political life, intellectual culture, advancement of the arts and religious experience. At last it is barred by the shores of the Atlantic. The leading purposes of the great Ruler of nations were chiefly accomplished in it four hundred years ago.

A second stream tends eastward. In two great reservoirs, in the South and in the East of the continent, it collects its waters. Each of these, China and India, develops within itself a characteristic and vigorous, but entirely different, style of life, sentiment and religious worship. Whatever the empires of the West have boasted of themselves, no one of them has equaled in all respects either of these two. To-day England styles

Digitized by Google

India one of her colonies, but the mistress contains forty millions of people, the colony a hundred and sixty. China contains four hundred millions. And with the exception of the advance which the West owes to the power of Christianity, purifying and sweetening all the relations of man to man, as well as of man to God, and to that of the more true and penetrating scientific acquaintance with the works of God and its direct practical fruits, it is questionable whether European society has on the whole excelled that of China.

The world four centuries ago was ready for the final expansion of the Divine purpose. The navigators Diaz and De Gama open the way to India and China; precisely at the same time Christopher Columbus opens that to America. Spain, enticed by its riches, presses forward to occupy this immense new field which God has manifestly prepared in harmony with his designs. She performs her allotted part, and is set aside. France in turn attempts, in vain, to occupy a large place here. England sends tardily, carrying in their hands an open Bible and the articles of political and religious liberty, a handful of humble believers in Christ. Now the English language and institutions control the whole continent. A homogeneous, free, mighty republican nation stands prepared for whatsoever work the Almighty, whom she spiritually serves, calls upon her to perform.

The past few years have witnessed a mighty acceleration of the great end. A series of events more strange than any romance suddenly compels our nation to colonize the Pacific shore, enriches her with unprecedented wealth in all the precious metals, exposes the vast agricultural capacity of the soil, spans with railroads and

Digitized by Google

telegraphs the breadth of the continent from ocean to ocean, and connects the western shore with China by regular mail steamships. It seems like a hurried and startling dream, but a dream in which the voice of God is heard.

Let us look at what the almighty Worker is doing at the same time on the opposite Asiatic shore. The series of recent events there is as full of meaning—the termination of the East India Company's charter, the Opium War, the translation and circulation of the Scriptures, the Tai-ping rebellion, the second war, the severe pressure of European powers on every border and coast, the opening of the whole empire to commerce and the preaching of the gospel, the Burlingame embassy to the West, and the steps toward the acceptance of Western and Christian civilization.

It was in that year of marvels, 1848, when the thrones of half the kings of Europe were successively shaken to the foundation, and the pope of Rome fled from his seat in the disguise of a footman, that the sovereign Ruler of the nations unveiled his plan upon our Pacific coast. Unnoticed at the moment by the multitudes who were intently gazing upon the commotions of Europe, he commenced there a more wonderful work. The sudden uncovering of the gold of California was the means by which the immigration of the Chinese was to be turned to this New World. For centuries past the most philosophic minds have predicted the vast consequences which should ensue when the two opposite currents of empire, going the one eastward, the other westward, since the beginning of time, should at last meet and flow together. Upon our Pacific coast this consummating event of the history of the world has now commenced.

Digitized by Google

The immediate political effects must be very great both to Europe and to Asia. Humboldt said a result of this nature was "important to all Europe." "The problem of the communication between the two seas . . . is of the greatest interest for the balance of commerce and the political preponderancy of nations." It must revolutionize the character of the governments of Asia. The Isthmus of Panama, a mere "neck of land, the barrier against the waves of the Atlantic ocean, has been for many ages the bulwark of the independence of China and Japan." He says, in relation to the subject of the free communication between the two oceans, "Then only can any great change be effected in the political state of Eastern Asia." [1] But it does not seem to be necessary, because caste-ridden India could only be regenerated by European conquest, that the same should be the case with China and Japan. We may rather expect that the interests of both America and Europe will be better subserved and the renovation of those empires be most peacefully accomplished by the maintenance of their independence and the application of such stimulus as they need to their own capacities and resources.

It is the appointed office of America to be the ground in which the best benefits of European institutions shall be planted and be improved and indefinitely multiply, but which the toil, the experience and some of the peculiar products of Asia shall assist to enrich and to beautify.

The religious results of this final commingling of the opposite courses of civilization we can only conceive or describe by taking the language of inspiration. That

[1] *Political Essays on the Kingdom of New Spain*, book i., chap. ii.

Digitized by Google

plainly reveals the prospect of a period when there shall be a great coming together of nations, spiritually all believe and literally most scholars also concede, which shall cause the heavens to sing, the whole earth to be joyful and the mountains to break forth into songs of gladness.[1] And a large share of this rejoicing of the worlds above and below shall be because "these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and the west, and these from the land of Sinim," or China, the last and largest and stoutest nation among all that have resisted the truth.

The office of the continent of America in the Divine plan for re-ennobling humanity and planting again on earth the reign of holiness and innocence, as that plan has in recent ages become more plain to us, has powerfully affected many of the greatest minds both in the Old and in the New World. Berkeley was one of whom Sir James Mackintosh wrote: "His works are, beyond dispute, the finest models of philosophical style since Cicero. Perhaps they surpass those of the orator in the wonderful art by which the fullest light is thrown on the most subtile of human conceptions." Nor was he liable to the charge of being a mere visionary speculator and scholar. The same eminent critic says of a brief tract of his of a political character, "Perhaps the *Querist* contains more hints, then original, still unapplied in legislation and political economy, than are to be found in any equal space."[2] His whole character was so elevated that even the cynical Pope ascribed "to Berkeley every virtue

[1] ISAIAH, chap. xlix.

[2] *Dissertation on the Progress of Ethical Philosophy*, sec. vi., pp. 147–151. The tract is contained in BERKELEY'S *Works*, vol. ii., pp. 237–280.

Digitized by Google

under heaven."[1] The conclusion to which the learning and the piety of this extraordinary man brought him is embodied in his famous "Verses on the Prospect of Planting Arts and Learning in America,"[2] of which the following are the first and last stanzas:

"The Muse, disgusted at an age and clime
Barren of every glorious theme,
In distant lands now waits a better time,
Producing subjects worthy fame.

"Westward the course of empire takes its way:
The four first acts already past,
A fifth shall close the drama with the day;
TIME'S NOBLEST OFFSPRING IS THE LAST."

In the full possession of these ideas, he dedicated his life to giving them practical effect so far as lay within his power. The noble critic before quoted says: "It was when thus beloved and celebrated that he conceived, at the age of forty-five, the design of devoting his life to reclaim and convert the natives of North America, and he employed as much influence and solicitation as common men do for their most prized objects in obtaining leave to resign his dignities and his revenues, to quit his accomplished and affectionate friends and to bury himself in what must have seemed an intellectual desert. After four years' residence at Newport, in Rhode Island, he was compelled, by the refusal of Government to furnish him funds for his college, to forego his work of heroic, or rather godlike, benevolence." Berkeley specially determined to found a college which would grow to be a great institution and be a light to the colonies from Europe and to the aboriginal races. As to the former, he said: "In Europe, the Protestant religion

[1] *Epilogue to the Satires*, Dial. ii. [2] *Works*, vol. ii., p. 294.

Digitized by Google

hath of late years considerably lost ground, and America seems the likeliest place wherein to make up for what has been lost in Europe, provided the proper methods are taken." And he expected great results from the spread of knowledge among the native tribes. He said, "Many, it is to be hoped, may become powerful instruments for converting to Christianity and civil life whole nations, who now sit in darkness and the shadow of death, and whose cruel, brutal manners are a disgrace to human nature." In truly grand and powerful language he appeals to the people of England to give him the means which he needed to establish and endow such a college. "A benefaction of this kind seems to enlarge the very being of a man, extending it to distant places and to future times; inasmuch as unseen countries and after ages may feel the effects of his bounty, while he himself reaps the reward in the blessed society of all those who, 'having turned many to righteousness, shine as the stars for ever and ever.'"[1]

He pled the importance of the conversion of America with great effect. On a certain occasion, in London, a number of witty noblemen and scholars laid a plan to turn his missionary zeal into ridicule. The Christian philosopher, having patiently listened to them, "begged to be heard in his turn, and displayed his plan with such an astonishing and animating force of eloquence and enthusiasm that they were struck dumb, and after some pause rose up together, with earnestness exclaiming, 'Let us set out with him immediately.'"[2]

[1] *Proposal for the Better Supplying of the Churches in the Foreign Plantations, and for Converting the Savage Americans; Works*, vol. ii., pp. 288–293.

[2] WARTON on *Pope*, quoted by MACKINTOSH.

Digitized by Google

When Berkeley's plan of a college at Newport failed, he took a very warm interest in the prosperity of the institution already planted at New Haven, and on his return to Great Britain, in 1732, left to Yale College a tract of land, with his dwelling-house, to found three scholarships, and his library, which President Clapp said was "the finest that ever came together at one time to America."[1]

In the New World, high above any other intellect which it has produced, stands that of Jonathan Edwards. Well as his history is known in this country, I may here recall to mind his interest in the missionary work of the Church on this continent. "However small the propagation of the gospel among the heathen here in America has been hitherto, yet I think we may well look upon the discovery of so great a part of the world as America, and bringing the gospel into it, as one thing by which divine Providence is preparing the way for the future glorious times of the Church, when Satan's kingdom shall be overthrown, not only throughout the Roman empire, but throughout the whole habitable globe, on every side and on all its continents."[2]

And Edwards was no less sincere than Berkeley. This man, of whom Mackintosh declares, "his power of subtile argument was perhaps unmatched, certainly unsurpassed among men,"[3] spent six years in his prime, commencing with the forty-eighth year of his life, as a missionary among the Housatonnuck Indians on the mountainous frontiers of Massachusetts, and it was in

[1] E. BALDWIN, *Annals of Yale College*, pp. 45–48.

[2] *History of the Work of Redemption; Works*, vol. i., p. 469.

[3] *Dissertation*, etc., p. 129.

Digitized by Google

the intervals of the humblest missionary labor that he wrote his masterpiece, the "Inquiry into the Freedom of the Will." From this employment he was called to be president of Princeton College. Yet so great was his humility that he earnestly and "with tears" resisted the pressure of the trustees and his friends toward that position.

Could the leaders of public sentiment in America be led to climb to a point from which they could form some conception of the grand, comprehensive views of an Edwards or a Berkeley, to share some of their boundless sympathy with all human kind, as fellow-creatures of one heavenly Father, as possessors of the same imperishable nature, and as fellow-seekers of a rest to come, far away as some of them, bewildered and perishing, have wandered from the knowledge of the truth; and also to put on some of the angelic readiness of those men to forget self and to seek and save those lost members of our race,—then how easy would it be to settle all the questions which have been started in respect to the coming here, the employment and the relations to us of the Chinese.

America can be regarded, by those who look at its geographical position and relations, at the history of its populations, at its discovery and colonization by Europeans, and at the providential management of the concerns of our nation, only as divinely designed to be a School of the Nations.

We would consider now specially why the Chinese race have been brought here, and what lessons they are to learn.

The first lessons which deeply impress the thoughts

Digitized by Google

of these strangers are those connected with *the arts.* Men that have been passengers on the huge junk which drifted helplessly before the wrath of the tempest and was in continual danger in difficult places, find themselves upon a swift and magnificent vessel which does not need a pair of big, staring eyes on the bows to find her way, nor charms upon the rudder to enable it to act; they learn to look for help and safety not to a dumb wooden idol, but to a mighty power which surpasses all they have ever imagined. It has limbs of iron, heart of fire, lungs of steam, ravenous appetite and thirst, with the strength of a thousand horses, and yet tractable to the touch of a man's finger. What a teacher is the steam-engine, in all its thousand applications in this country, to the strangers whose nation never till recently possessed one!

They commence work upon one of our railroads. In what a domain of wonders do they live! The thundering locomotive and cars, instead of the train of weary coolies—the sweep of the road, setting at defiance all the superstitions as to winds and waters and hills—the punctual and daily requisitions, without respect to stars, or gods, or luck. And instead of the miserable, jagged, broken copper coin, the only one of China, the mint lays in their willing hand the golden eagle, which is worth twelve thousand of the other, and represents, in recompense for a few days' work, as much as they would have saved in a whole season among their kindred.

They had lived in abject terror of the gods of lightning, with bodies like leopards or like birds of prey; now they learn that this mysterious power is seized and compelled to carry our verbal messages of business or of

Digitized by Google

affection thousands of miles, in an instant of time, over mountains, rivers, continents and oceans.

Their best weapon of war has been the ancient match-lock gun, with its slow fuse of nitrous rope and uncertain results; the repeating pistol and rifle, the bomb, the iron-clad monitor, tell them the necessity of new means of protection and warfare for their nation.

The magic finger of the sewing-machine, armed with its powerful needle, waiting without weariness or repining to perform, regularly and beautifully, the work of twenty of themselves, speaks to the minds of the women.

There is an impressive message to distant friends in every photograph, in which the subtle and fleeting shadow itself is caught and fastened upon the paper, and the definite and expressive features of the countenance of the absent one are represented as no human pencil or graver could do it.

Thus in our numerous arts there are lessons taught to wondering, attentive, reflecting pupils which will be repeated in tens of thousands of little centres of influence upon another continent.

When the Chinese have become sufficiently acquainted with our language, they desire to go to our schools, to read our books and to learn something of our *sciences*. What a new world expands before their mental eye! They realize now why it was they had seen first on the ocean the tops of the masts of an approaching ship—the world is round, and China cannot therefore be the central country of it. They discover that each planet is also a distant world, and cannot therefore be a palace of a god suspended above the clouds. They ascertain the laws of nature which they had imagined to be the opera-

Digitized by Google

tions of dark and terrible influences connected with spiritual powers which must be propitiated at every step. From what bondage are they liberated! How different the spirit which this blest tuition breathes into their whole nature! The men who are thus disenthralled form a new race. They are a different order of beings from their fathers. The fruits of modern discoveries are borne in a thousand beneficent applications to the requisitions of human life. Men's homes become more comfortable, their cares less exhausting, their relationships more happy, their pleasures more refined and more connected with the mind. Those who have tasted these fruits can nevermore sit down content under the shade of the antiquated customs of their native villages. They must teach in turn what they have been taught, and kindle lamps which shall be multiplied and shine no man can tell how manifold or where.

The Chinese learn in this country lessons of incalculable importance in *politics*. They behold the amazing spectacle of an emperor chosen each fourth year and the uttered will of every adult subject counted, in order to decide who shall sit as the "Son of heaven," the chief executive of the laws affecting the life, pursuits and peace of men. They witness the expansion of their own village and limited republicanism into a colossal and vigorous national form. They learn principles as to equality, freedom and the rights of man; as to the fundamental importance of a general and elevated system of popular education; as to the rock of moral and revealed truth upon which sound civil law must be founded; as to the relation of a free and universally circulated newspaper literature for the information of

Digitized by Google

the common people upon all the questions which affect their interests, and many others which will most surely be borne in their minds, work themselves out in applications to society after their return to China, and be the beginning of a leaven which will in God's time affect the whole lump of the social order of China and the nations which imitate its institutions.

But the great end for which the Former of the world planned and built this continent, introduced its successive tenants to the occupancy of their apartments, or for their appointed terms, was that they might be instructed in the highest of all knowledge, that of his attributes, claims and promises of grace. This *divine knowledge* is imparted to the Chinese by various methods. They are detached from the myriad superstitions of their native homes and streets and streams and hills. They behold here places of worship in which there are no images, no symbols, no idolatrous pomp and noise. They are informed of an eternal, almighty, omnipresent Creator and Judge. The expiatory sufferings of Christ, the simplicity of his teaching and his mercy to the afflicted impress their minds when they read of them in the Scriptures or hear them narrated. They feel the powerful influence of the Sabbath and its arrest of all the ordinary current of business and amusement; some of them are gathered into its delightful, precious schools. They are distributed into families where they associate with Christian parents and with children who win their affection and talk to them of Jesus and heaven. The first effect of residence in this country is to loosen the religious sentiments of the past. In this process some float away to irreligion and immorality and are lost.

Digitized by Google

The next effect is that of the collection of others around the rock of truth and their salvation.

The initiatory stages of this moral training are slow. The conversions of individuals are but the drop here and there of the shower of the early dawn. But they will be followed, in due time, amidst the great revivals of which this New World appears to be the appointed field, by simultaneous multitudes—the floods of "the rain in the time of the latter rain" for which the prophet tells us we may "ask."

How animating is the spectacle of all the various agencies by which the great Teacher carries on the education of a race which he has inducted into this School of the Nations! How potent the influence of its members when again he restores them to their native continent and sets them to scattering to vast provinces, remote colonies, dependent nations, and even to distant portions of the continent and to barbarous islands, the precious seed of knowledge with which here their bosom has been filled!

From the elevation which embraces in the sweep of its view all these grand outlines, movements and tendencies of human history, let us look at the political questions which have been started with regard to the Chinese who come to America. Shall they be allowed to immigrate to this country? Shall they be encouraged to bring their families? Shall they be permitted to engage in mechanical occupations? Shall they be admitted to testify in our courts against white persons? Shall they be granted the right to vote in our elections? Shall their children have a place in our public schools?

There is a generic principle running through the

Digitized by Google

whole of these questions. It is that of the maintenance of the political inequality of races in the New World. The fruits of this principle are these efforts to expel, to restrain, to trample upon and to degrade the Chinese who have chosen to immigrate to America. There are objections to their immigration, and so there are objections, which have sometimes risen to become party issues, to the immigration of some classes of Europeans. But it has been wisely ordered that the great principles which shall govern the treatment of all who choose to make this continent their temporary or permanent home have become firmly established, so that no efforts of men can now move them. As they relate to the questions under consideration, they may be grouped under the following heads:

First. The grand designs of Providence in the establishment of this nation, some of which have been sketched in this chapter.

Second. The announcement of the principles upon which our government was founded. The Declaration of our Independence stated: "We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they were endowed by the Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed." These comprehensive words seem almost an inspiration of the omniscient God, penned, as they were, in the interest of those resisting oppression, to anticipate the case of nations which possess the same self-evident and inalienable rights, but whose residence on this soil was then

Digitized by Google

not contemplated and who might become the subjects of oppression at our own hands.

Third. The principles of the Constitution of the United States, which was ordained and established "to establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, promote the general welfare and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity;" and whose latest amendments have secured these rights and blessings to men without distinction of race or color.

Fourth. The late explicit national covenant[1] that "Chinese subjects visiting or residing in the United States shall enjoy the same privileges, immunities and exemptions in respect to travel or residence as may there be enjoyed by the citizens or subjects of the most favored nation"—which follows a provision in the same terms applicable to citizens of the United States in China.

Fifth. The spirit of the men who make this opposition. The most of them are ignorant foreigners, at first actuated by ignorance, prejudice and selfishness, but now excited and led by their priests, and by demagogues, in a spirit of opposition to humane efforts for the good of the Chinese and with the purpose of thus obtaining greater control over them for other ends.

Sixth. The ordinances of the law of God, "Ye shall have one manner of law, as well for the stranger as for one of your country."[2] This principle was applied to the civil law, and, in case of the adoption of the Hebrew faith, to the ecclesiastical law.

Seventh. The eternal principles of right which the Governor of the world has written in the chambers of the human heart and made deeper and more authorita-

[1] *Treaty of* 1868, Art. vi. [2] Lev. xxiv. 22; Num. ix. 14.

Digitized by Google

tive than any statutes of human appointment. Alexander Hamilton presents their nature with the clearness of the light of the sun:

"The Deity has constituted an eternal and immutable law, which is obligatory upon all mankind, prior to any human institution whatever. He endowed man with rational faculties, by the help of which to discern and pursue such things as were consistent with his duty and interest, and invested him with an inviolable right to personal liberty and personal safety. Natural liberty is a gift of the beneficent Creator to the whole human race; civil liberty is only natural liberty modified and secured by the sanctions of civil society. The sacred rights of mankind are not to be rummaged for among old parchments or musty records. They are written, as with a sunbeam, in the whole volume of human nature, by the hand of Divinity itself, and can never be erased or obscured by mortal power."[1]

Eighth. The stern assurance that there is a supreme government of the Ruler of nations which looks simply at the great principles of right and wrong in the conduct of nations, takes no account of their prejudices and excuses, and in due time asserts and displays to the universe the divine justice and power by the terrible punishment of oppressors and wrongdoers, and the compensation of those who have suffered from them. The history of African slavery and the judgments it brought upon us is surely a lesson which this nation should never forget. If we choose to inaugurate a similar course of wrong in the case of the Asiatic pupils whom God has sent here to be taught from the book of knowledge which he has

[1] *Works*, vol. ii., pp. 43, 61, 80.

Digitized by Google

put for the purpose in our hands, then we and our children must make up our minds to receive a similar or even a more tremendous retribution than that which has filled the land with blood, with ashes and with tears.

The general abstract right then of the people of the continent of Asia to participate in the benefits which divine Providence has previously conferred in the New World upon those of European and African stock is as plain as the sun in the heavens. The Chinese cannot be refused the rights which every other race save the barbarous Indian shares, and which have been granted to him when civilized. On the other hand, it cannot be denied that the Chinese, like the European and the African, needs a preparatory discipline. He is not qualified for immediate advancement to the higher forms of the school.

The question of the preparatory qualifications necessary for citizenship in the case of the Chinese is one of the most serious that has come before the people of the United States. The continent will in the course of time be occupied by millions of them. They are naturally one of the shrewdest races of the world. Scarcely any other race can compare with them in capacity for organization and in adroitness in political management. This is manifest in their astonishing control over all the nations contiguous to them, with comparatively little resort to force, and by their dexterity in undoing by strategy what the European powers forced them to concede at the mouth of the cannon. Men like Mr. Meadows, who are thoroughly acquainted with them, confess, as he does, that the Chinese possess that "power of combination for common purposes which distinguishes the Anglo-Saxons

Digitized by Google

among Western nations."[1] Such a people, holding the balance of power by a compact minority, may sway the politics of a State, may decide a presidential election or the supremacy of a political party in some crisis of the nation. No question relating to the African race is a hundredth part so important as that which fixes the political power of the coming Chinese.

There are three chief elements of danger—their paganism, their ignorance of our language and laws and simplest education, and their temporary residence.

Paganism and its mass of superstitions is in its essence a denial of the elementary principles of that great and eternal system of truth on which the political systems of all the countries of the West hitherto represented in this republic are reared. It is in its nature subversive of morality, even though the Chinese have maintained a comparative purity of morals and social freedom, because their great common sense led them to resist the introduction from abroad of many of its worst features. Christian America cannot unsettle the foundations of her wondrous history, her present power, her future hopes. "Christianity and civilization," said a most able statesman, "have labored together; it seems, indeed, to be a law of our human condition that they can live and flourish only together."[2] There must be the utmost care taken, in the case of this unprecedented and unanticipated infusion of materials into the processes of a chemistry which has hitherto produced the most beneficent results, that they shall not precipitate all of good, and end in combustion, explosion and ruin. The judiciary

[1] *The Chinese and their Rebellions*, pp. 27, 114.

[2] DANIEL WEBSTER, Speech on Greek Revolution, *Works*, vol. iii., pp. 74, 75.

Digitized by Google

Scholar of Presbyterian Mission School
San Francisco

Tsui Shing-cheung
Elder of Chinese Presbyterian Church, San Francisco

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

of this country will abide by our treaties with China and will enforce the provisions of the recent amendments to the Constitution of the United States which guarantee to all men "equal protection of law," and that no State shall "deprive any person of life, liberty or property without due process of law," whatever may be his "race or color."[1] But in the interpretation and execution of all treaties and laws affecting persons, property, forms of oaths and education, the principle of the civil toleration of moral evil should be most carefully discriminated from the sanction of it, and the endurance of it from the maintenance of it.

An intelligent acquaintance with our institutions and principles should be made imperative where application is made for the privilege of naturalization, and the converse duty is obligatory upon us of affording all possible aid in the way of schools and other educational advantages. And the warning cannot be given in language too strong, that if these claims of reason, humanity and patriotism be despised, the hereditary jealousies of their native districts and clans, the unavoidable control of the masses of them by those most acquainted with our laws and customs, the tricks of our politicians, their untaught passions and their uncorrected fears, will inflict upon us severe and not unmerited retribution.

Few of the American people and far fewer of the Chinese went to the Pacific coast with a purpose to remain there. They, like ourselves, have migrated voluntarily, in the hope of speedy fortune, leaving families, mortgaging, it may be, property to obtain money loaned at excessive rates of interest, and expecting to return within a

[1] So Judge SAWYER decided at San Francisco, in October, 1869.

Digitized by Google

few years. Not one in every ten thousand of them thinks near so much of us as we think of ourselves. They have no idea that the American eagle is so grand in his aeronautic displays as the Chinese dragon. Their hearts are tenderly fixed upon provision for aged parents; a peaceful decline for themselves, in some village shaded by the orange, the bamboo and the mulberry; and to be laid at last to rest by the graves of their fathers. Their residence is essentially transient. If left to themselves, few will seek naturalization. And since our laws relating to it contemplate strictness as to the abjuration of foreign allegiance, evidence of fixed purpose to make this new world their home, and the security of the asseveration of one or two citizens to that effect, peculiar care is justifiable that, with reference to them, the evidence of sincerity be sufficient. Let us be faithful to the great principles of Christian truth, let us act wisely and yet generously, in all our transactions with the people of China. Upon it our prosperity and peace depend more than is now conceived.

The tenor of this volume must have made it plain that the beneficent work of guiding the Chinese people in the United States to the knowledge of Christian truth may be directed and led by the missionaries who are set apart by boards and societies, but the great ingathering of the Chinese into the Church must be the result of the efforts of Christians brought in contact with them in the family, the farm, the shop, the factory, the mine, the highway. It must be done by the kindness of men and women and children, by teaching them our language and knowledge useful to them, by tender and prayerful Sabbath-school instruction, by the distribution of Christian

Digitized by Google

tracts and copies of the gospels with patient efforts to acquaint them with their meaning, by interesting them in the house and people of God, by exhibiting to them the virtues of Christianity, and showing them that Christians are just, truthful, honest, charitable and merciful. A tree which brings forth fruit so sweet and good they will desire to possess, to cultivate and to propagate.

The first religious body to send the gospel to the Chinese in California was the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions. The writer of this volume went in 1852 to San Francisco to meet the thousands of those people then pouring monthly into the country, some of whom he had known in the course of his previous residence in China. His labors were begun among their sick, of whom there were great numbers on account of their crowded condition during their long passage over upon the old and rotten ships which were engaged in transporting them, and the bad and insufficient food given to them on shipboard. These labors were continued, while he remained there, in a dispensary, with the assistance of some medical friends. Regular preaching in their own language was commenced during the winter, which was well attended. A church was organized November 6th, 1853, composed of several men who had been members in China. This was the first Chinese church in the New World. The first elder, Mr. Lai Sam, was the brother-in-law of the well-known Leung A-fah, so often mentioned in the Life of Dr. Robert Morrison, who was the first native Protestant preacher of Christ in connection with modern missions to China. The next step was the opening of a night-school, with which was often connected lectures on astronomy, geography, chemistry and

Digitized by Google

other sciences, illustrated by proper apparatus or a magic lantern. The American population was addressed at suitable opportunities in sermons and courses of lectures in San Francisco and the principal towns of the State, the object of which was to explain the character, customs and wants of the Chinese, to remove misapprehensions, and to enlist Christians of every name and benevolent persons in efforts to instruct and befriend them. An excellent brick building was erected for the use of the mission, furnished with chapel, dispensary, school-room and a dwelling for the family, from contributions chiefly obtained in San Francisco. To reach both Chinese and Americans throughout the State and outside of it, a newspaper named *The Oriental* was commenced, and published, at first weekly, afterward monthly. Mr. Lee Kan, who had received a good English education in China, was the assistant editor. It was lithographed in Chinese on the one side and printed in English on the other. The information disseminated in this sheet was of material benefit to the Chinese. Twenty thousand copies of it were distributed the first year. The Chinese during the second year paid for the lithographing of their side by contributions from the companies. The influence of this paper, of pamphlets addressed to the legislature and largely circulated over the State, and of other agencies—to which many of the most influential gentlemen of the State, connected with various departments of enterprise which were benefitted by the presence of the Chinese, and many intelligent and Christian people, lent their aid—were the leading means by which the combination of powerful enemies, who had succeeded in having a law passed in 1854 designed to expel the

Digitized by Google

Chinese from the mines and from the State, or to degrade them to a condition of peonage or slavery, was defeated, and a repeal of the law triumphantly carried during the next session of the legislature. Five years of this excessive labor brought the missionary to the borders of the grave, and he was compelled to quit the field.

In 1859 the Rev. A. W. Loomis, formerly of Ningpo, China, resumed the work of preaching and teaching in the Mission House. His faithful and incessant efforts for the good of the Chinese have been followed with success. Converts from time to time have been added to the Church, some of whom have been men of most sincere and active religious character and very useful in Christian labors among their own countrymen. From this centre an influence has been exerted over thousands coming and going through the port of San Francisco by tracts and other means. Frequent contributions from the pen of Mr. Loomis in American periodicals have served to enlist a general interest in the missionary work.

The Rev. J. L. Shuck, of the Baptist church, during several years, commencing with 1854, performed a considerable amount of missionary labor among the Chinese at Sacramento, in connection with his pastorate over an American congregation. The Rev. E. W. Syle, of the Episcopal church, spent usefully in the same cause parts of the years 1855 and 1856, in San Francisco. Each of these gentlemen had previously resided in China, as had also the Rev. O. Gibson, of the Methodist Episcopal church, who began to labor in San Francisco in 1868, and promises to be the means of engaging that numerous body of Christians in effective Sabbath-school and other instruction of the Chinese.

Digitized by Google

Within two years past numerous American churches in California have been roused, by the enlarged communication with China and immigration of the Chinese, and the public attention to them, to establish efficient Sabbath and other schools for their benefit. This we may hope will prepare the way for that general popular interest in them as individuals which must be the chief hope of good for them.

These are the small beginnings of the effort of American Christianity to perform the duty assigned to it by Providence in this great School of the Nations. The beginnings of this movement of the Chinese race are in themselves but small. But wherever the members of it in coming days shall be scattered, among the Christian homes or fields or factories of all our country, let us hope that the Divine design in bringing these strangers from far will be kept in diligent remembrance. Our land has been chastened by affliction to prepare it for a great work for the good of mankind. Let us not, like the vain king of old, display our precious things, our silver and gold and spices and armor, and forget the "wonder that was done in the land," to inquire of which was the chief end for which the ambassadors of a neighboring powerful empire had been moved to come to him. God, who in judgment made the disappointed pilgrims to be the scourge of Israel, will visit kindred folly and sin in us with some kindred penalty. The most noble and imperishable memorial of even a Berkeley or an Edwards is the love which leads to the consecration of intellect, learning and influence to a species of work which is most of all on earth like what was assumed by the incarnate Son of God.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIII.

THE FUTURE OF THE CHINESE RACE.

THREE empires fill the vision of the future—the United States, Russia and China. Great Britain alone compares with them in the extent of her colonial possessions; but hers are remote and widely scattered, and will when ripe as to the Divine purposes fall away from her, as the United States has done, and become centres of independent influences. Each of the three nations named has vast contiguous colonies; each is wholly in the northern hemisphere; and each is animated throughout by the same general spirit, and possesses a certain unity in aims, laws, language, social habits and religious sentiments; and there are some peculiar features of resemblance and mutual interest existing between them all.

The rapid and mighty growth of the first two of those nations, and the prospect of the development of the long-treasured resources of the third, have deeply moved the prophetic minds of the latter days. They were pondered by that extraordinary man, born in a little island of the Mediterranean sea, who held at one time the continent of Europe at his feet, with whom we can compare no other as to the energy and capaciousness of his mind and as to his acquaintance with the secrets of European power. He anticipated confidently the time when the

Digitized by Google

Russian emperor "would make an irruption into Europe at the head of some hundred thousand of those barbarians on horseback and two hundred thousand infantry, and carry everything before him;" when Russia would "become mistress of Constantinople, get all the commerce of the Mediterranean and become a great naval power;" when she would take India from the British, and when, through the influence of America and Russia, all Europe would become "either republican or Cossack."

Napoleon looked forward also to the future power of China. He foretold the influence of the wars which England has continued to make upon that empire as an education of it in the art of war which was "madness" in a European government. He said to his Irish surgeon: "It would be the worst thing you have done for a number of years to go to war with an immense empire like China and possessing so many resources. You would doubtless at first succeed, take what vessels they have and destroy their trade, but you would teach them their own strength. They would be compelled to adopt measures to defend themselves against you. They would consider, and say, 'We must try to make ourselves equal to this nation. Why should we suffer a people so far away to do as they please to us? We must build ships, we must put guns into them, we must render ourselves equal to them.' They would (continued the emperor) get artificers and ship-builders from France and America, and even from London; they would build a fleet, and, in the course of time, defeat you."[1]

An American statesman, distinguished above others for comprehensiveness of intellect, said with regard to

[1] B. E. O'MEARA; *Voice from St. Helena*, ii. 55–70, 179; i. 472, etc.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the great movement which is now bringing China and America into close relations: "Even the discovery of this continent and its islands, and the organization of society and government upon them, grand and important as these events have been, were but conditional, preliminary and ancillary to the more sublime result now in the act of consummation—the reunion of the two civilizations, which, parting on the plains of Asia four thousand years ago, and traveling ever afterward in opposite directions around the world, now meet again on the coasts and islands of the Pacific ocean. Certainly no mere human event of equal dignity and importance has ever occurred upon the earth. It will be followed by the equalization of the condition of society and the restoration of the unity of the human family.

"Who does not see that henceforth every year European commerce, European politics, European thoughts and European activity, although actually gaining greater force, and European connections, although actually becoming more intimate, will nevertheless ultimately sink in importance; while the Pacific ocean, its shores, its islands, and the vast regions beyond, will become the chief theatre of events in the world's great hereafter? Who does not see that this movement must effect our own complete emancipation from what remains of European influence and prejudice, and in turn develop the American opinion and influence which shall remould constitutional laws and customs in the land that is first greeted by the rising sun? Although I am no Socialist, no dreamer of a suddenly-coming millennium, I nevertheless cannot reject the hope that peace is now to have her sway, and that as war has hitherto defaced and

Digitized by Google

saddened the Atlantic world, the better passions of mankind will soon have their development in the new theatre of human activity."[1]

The past twenty years have developed most rapidly the plans of the Almighty with regard to the great nations which skirt the Pacific. We can now look forward more clearly than Napoleon, or than Mr. Seward could when he spoke the words quoted, to their probable future. The Asiatic Russia will excel in time the European division of that empire; and so the course of empire in this continent will westward take its way, until the Pacific shore shall bound its advance and the civilization of its States exceed that of the rest of the continent, like that of the western shores of Europe exceeds that which remains upon the Black sea and the Adriatic. The exuberant forests of the Amazon, the Orinoco and the Paraguay shall be subdued, and that magnificent southern continent imitate the arts and the institutions of the northern. The islands of the Pacific, which are now rapidly expanding their agricultural and commercial wealth, will be covered with plantations of sugar, coffee, cotton, tea and rice, and their ports be the places of rest and refreshment for fleets whose sails shall whiten the surface of that great and mild ocean, like clouds floating in a blue sky, or like doves flying through it to their windows.

The manifest beginnings of this change are seen in some of these fields. Thus in the Sandwich Islands, where two generations ago Captain James Cook found four hundred thousand naked cannibals and scarcely a single useful production, there are now but one-eighth that

[1] WILLIAM H. SEWARD, Speech in the Senate of the United States on *Commerce in the Pacific ocean*, July 29, 1852, pp. 12, 13.

Digitized by Google

number of natives, and they are rapidly passing away. But they have obtained all that is most valuable in our manufactures, education and Christianity. The stores in Honolulu and Lahaina are as well filled and handsome as those of an American town. These islands export now yearly a surplus of twenty million pounds of sugar, one and a third million of rice, one-third of a million of coffee, one-quarter of a million of wool, a third of a million gallons of molasses and considerable quantities of fine sea-island cotton, hides, goat-skins, salt beef, tallow, pulu (a fine, yellow, cotton-like substance, which grows upon the stalks of a species of fern, that is suitable for mattrasses), whale and sperm oil, whalebone, oranges, bananas and other fruits, various vegetables and salt. They raise, in addition, wheat and other grains, figs and other delicious fruits and numerous domestic animals. But the chief dependence of these products and exports is based upon Chinese labor. This was first introduced about 1854. For some years the planters and laborers did not understand each other. But within a few years past difficulties and misapprehensions have been overcome. Chinese labor is now highly prized. And some of the Chinese have cordially embraced Christianity; one of them, named A-heung, has been licensed to preach in Hawaian and Chinese, and is esteemed an eloquent and useful minister. The office of the Hawaian race is accomplished; the American and Chinese will henceforth occupy its place. In the Sandwich Islands is illustrated a course of things which will be repeated successively in time all over the numerous island groups and upon the shores and in the interior of America and elsewhere in the world.

Digitized by Google

This contact with American and other foreign influences is designed by Providence to benefit America by the supply of labor which is the prime want of the continent; and He will regulate its coming and its relations here for the good of a nation whom he has so peculiarly kept and favored hitherto. But his appointment of the design of this School of the Nations will be ever kept in view. China will be educated by the return of her emigrants, but she will need our direct assistance in a thousand ways. She needs able, liberal, sincere diplomatists, like him whose energetic efforts have recently for the first time given to her a respectable position among the great powers of the West;[1] translators to transfer the treasures of our sciences, law and religion into that widely-used language; teachers of Western literature; Christian and philanthropic merchants; intelligent and moral artisans and engineers to make the nation acquainted with the improvements of later centuries; botanists and geologists to explore her flora and mineral deposits;[2] and, above all, fervent, well-educated, self-sacrificing and energetic missionaries of the gospel.

[1] The recent loss of Mr. Burlingame at this juncture in the history of China is one which the whole world feels. The sealing of the work, which he was in the act of perfecting, by his death has had some parallels within our remembrance as a nation which should make that work more memorable and honored.

[2] The two works of Mr. R. PUMPELLY, entitled *Geological Researches in China, Mongolia and Japan* and *Across America and Asia*, are valuable contributions to the knowledge of the countries named. The spirit of them is most liberal and honorable. Mr. P. says, in respect to his more extended knowledge of the Chinese nation, "I learned to free myself from the prejudices which every traveler is apt to contract upon the coast, and during my subsequent travels to look upon the people, with whom I was thrown much in contact, from an entirely different standpoint." He fully sympathized with the just and "broad-minded policy" of Mr. Burlingame and Sir Frederick Bruce, and dated from its establishment "a new era in the history of Eastern diplomacy."—*Across America and Asia*, p. 269.

Digitized by Google

As Napoleon prophesied, the events of the last thirty years have thoroughly waked the Chinese government to the necessity of fitting itself to cope with the powers of the West. It has introduced our military discipline among the Manchu soldiers and has established four great arsenals, one of which, at Shanghai,[1] employs a thousand men, is manufacturing arms and has built several vessels of war after foreign models. The first of these was a side-wheel steamer, launched in 1868, one hundred and eighty-five feet in length, carrying six twenty-four-pounder brass naval howitzers and three other guns, with every foreign appliance in the best style. Some larger vessels have been built since then. Mr. Falls, an American, is the superintendent of this arsenal. The government has sanctioned the opening of coal-mines for the supply of fuel to steamers. It has granted the right of inland navigation on the Yang-tsz-kiang river to an American and Chinese company, which last year owned six fine steamers running each alternate day to Hankow, and six others sailing regularly to Ningpo,

[1] The good fruits of our Mission-school at San Francisco have been often brought to the observation of the writer. One of the leading Chinese officials, named Lam Tai-sam, connected with this arsenal, was a young man for whom I obtained a situation in the machine-shops of the Pacific Mail Steamer Company. He built in California a small model steamer, which worked admirably, an engine for other purposes and a small locomotive, from patterns shown him. This he attached to a little car and ran it round a little track, at Sacramento and elsewhere, as an exhibition. This *Chinese* locomotive and railroad were, I believe, the first on the Pacific coast! This enterprising man will make his mark in the future of China.

It may not be out of place to mention that Mr. Fung Tang, the able representative of the Chinese in California before the Congressional Committee of Ways and Means and on several other important occasions, took occasion, at the grand banquet in honor of the inauguration of the Pacific Mail line across the Pacific, in January, 1867, to express in a handsome manner his indebtedness some ten years previously to the same school.

Digitized by Google

Chefoo and Tientsin.[1] It has opened its coast trade—which has been immensely increased on account of the injuries done to the Grand Canal during the Tai-ping Rebellion—to foreign ships. It has given license to telegraphic communication between its seaports. It will by degrees introduce railroads, though these will be much interfered with by the superstitions in regard to the *fung-shwui*, or powers of nature, fear of disturbing the tombs of the dead, and apprehensions of opium-smuggling and foreign violence and crime. It has established the university at Peking and schools at Shanghai and Fuh-chau for the instruction of its ablest young men in Western science. It has encouraged the introduction of the divisible and fine metal type and of printing by machinery from our missions. And several of its leading statesmen have publicly declared that they are not afraid of Christianity; inasmuch as Buddhism and other idolatrous sects of China are foreign, and they see no reason why the doctrines of Christ may not have their day.

The good and the bad influence of our civilization has already been powerfully felt in every portion of the empire. Missionaries and travelers say that whatever provinces they visit they find opium, foreign goods, Christian books and a surprising general acquaintance with the leading ideas of Christianity; the latter the result of the vast distribution of Christian Scriptures and tracts from the missionary stations on the coast and by the Tai-ping rebels, and of the curiosity as to the doctrines of them created by the strange events of recent years. The changes of the generation past in China are

[1] There are about fifty other steamers, American, British and French, and four tug-boats running to and from ports in the north and several at the south.

Digitized by Google

amazing; how much more so will be those of the next one, and of each successive one, as the tide of a new social and moral life shall rapidly rise and roll over the land!

The eye of implicit confidence in the fulfilment of the promises of God stretches forward to the time when China shall be all and completely Christian. The giant pagodas, built to concentre the favorable influences of deified Nature upon the surrounding gardens and villages, no longer crown the lofty hills. The innumerable altars, beneath every green tree and at every crossing or division of the ways, and at every gate and corner and open place among the habitations of man, no longer reveal the delusion of souls by the prince of evil. The flags, fluttering with symbols and inscriptions, the carved pillars, the glaring inscriptions about the front doors and entrances of the streets, the processions of bald and long-robed priests, the white smoke of incense from every house, the massive temples crowded with gilt and painted idols, the monasteries and nunneries embowered in groves even in the heart of populous cities, the theatres, the dens of crime, the smuggling and piratical boats, the cruel filthy prisons, are for ever cleansed away. The din of gongs, the scream of wind instruments, the roar of gunpowder in crackers, guns and cannon, the clamor of the intoxicated crowds of worshipers, all the discordant and painful noises of idolatry and superstition and folly and vice, are silent. The Holy Spirit has breathed over the scene of moral corruption, and of the debasement by the powers of hell of what is most holy and wise and heavenly among men. Life has taken the place of death; light prevails instead of darkness.

Lift up your eyes! See the white spires of Christian

Digitized by Google

churches and schools rise from those cities and towns. See the Sabbath spell stop the furnaces of factories and mills, which during the week enrich the inhabitants with all the products of Christian civilization, but now release their weary toilers to enjoy a holy rest and to throng with their swarthy faces the ways that lead to the houses of God. Yonder lie steamers waiting at the wharves for liberty on the morrow, panting to bear their vast and varied freight from city to city where they thickly border the mighty rivers. The iron railways, the telegraphic wires, stretch from valley to valley. You survey the same loveliness, the same peace, the same prosperity, which charm and satisfy the mind and the heart in a summer landscape of favored America or Britain. How complete, how wonderful, how delightful the transformation! Simply the faithful and unwearied preaching of the gospel of the Lord Jesus Christ has done it all. Men believed in him as the only Lord and Saviour; they cast away their idols; the blessings of modern Christian civilization all followed in their turn. It began feebly and slowly but progressed with ever multiplying rapidity and volume. And these changes which a few years have wrought in one nation are but a part of universal transformations, such as it were idle to attempt to conceive or to picture, which shall extend to all the race of man, and make this whole earth seem like a new earth, and these heavens above us like new heavens. Then shall Jesus' kingdom be come; then shall his will be done in earth as it is in heaven.

39 13

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

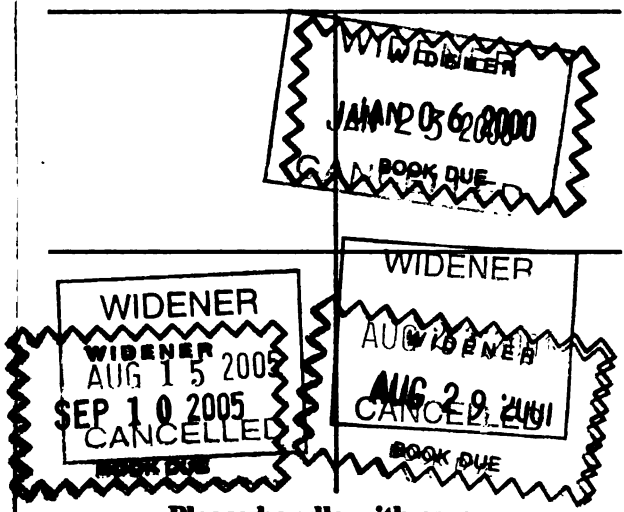
3 2044 011 643 517

This book should be returned to

The borrower must return this item on or before the last date stamped below. If another user places a recall for this item, the borrower will be notified of the need for an earlier return.

Non-receipt of overdue notices does not exempt the borrower from overdue fines.

Harvard College Widener Library
Cambridge, MA 02138 617-495-2413



Please handle with care.
Thank you for helping to preserve library collections at Harvard.

BK 2004

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google